DEWEY

Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Devised by

MELVIL DEWEY

16th Edition

Volume 1

Tables

FOREST PRESS INC

LAKE PLACID CLUB
ESSEX COUNTY
NEW YORK

© Melvil Dewey
1876, 1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919
© Library Bureau
1888, 1891, 1894, 1899
© Forest Press Inc
1951
© Lake Placid Club Education Foundation
1922, 1927, 1932 1942, 1952, 1958

Words which the editors have reason to believe constitute trade marks have been designated as such by the symbol ®. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such a designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trade-mark.

The Library of Congress has cataloged this publication as follows

Dewey, Melvil, 1851-1931
Dewey decimal classification and relative index 16th ed
Lake Placid Club, N Y Forest Press [1958]

2 v (viii 2439 p) 26 cm

First published anonymously in 1876 under title A classification and subject index. 2d-14th editions published under title Decimal classification and relativ index

Contents —v 1 Tables.—v 2 Index.

1. Classification, Decimal. I. Title.

Z696 D519 1958 025.43 58-9964

Library of Congress

First Reprint 1959

THIS BOOK WAS COMPOSED, PRINTED AND BOUND
IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
AT KINGSPORT PRESS INC KINGSPORT, TENNESSEE

Contents

Volume 1

Volume 2

Foreword

"We earnestly request all users to give us the benefit of their criticism in order that sometime our successors may actually bring out the perfect book " This invitation which appeared in the foreword to the Standard (15th) edition was of course not accepted by "all users" but a generous number did respond in print through correspondence or orally This extensive criticism both favorable and unfavorable cannot be summarized here but its constructive nature provided specific guidance for the preparation of this edition and led to a request on the part of the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation that the Library of Congress assume the responsibility for the editorial work Responsibility for editorial policy rests with the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee a joint committee of the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation the American Library Association and the Library of Congress

Editions 2-14 of the classification were each characterized largely by the addition of expansions of particular parts of the classification After the 14th edition appeared in 1942 many American librarians came to believe that a standard edition in which all parts of the classification were expanded to the same degree would be preferable to one in which some parts appeared in extreme detail while others were relatively unelaborated In response to this desire for a standard edition the 15th edition which appeared in 1951 included reductions of those parts which were deemed to be in too great detail expansions of parts insufficiently detailed and in addition to provision for new concepts a modernization of the terminology

Criteria for the 16th edition were adopted by the Editorial Policy Committee in 1953 and revised in 1955 to guide the editorial staff in the preparation of an edition to meet the criticisms that the 15th edition was insufficient for the needs of many libraries In the restatement the objectives of this edition were described as follows

> The 16th Edition shall be designed for use in the classification of books and similar materials in general libraries regardless of size except (1) those libraries which prefer to use an abridged edition and (2) those libraries with special collections which prefer to use close

Clapp V W *Progress towards the 16th edition of Dewey* Journal of Cataloging and Classification v 12 p 197 98 Oct 1956

classification for which extremely detailed expansions are needed Its structure should be such that it can be applied broadly or in detail, depending upon type and size of library This requires maintenance of the flexibility of notation in the DC—a valuable feature not common to all classification schemes—which makes possible the shortening of numbers without damaging the structure of the schedules, so that the same edition can be used by libraries varying greatly in size Stability of the fundamental structure of the schedules should be maintained, so that any part of any one of the three types of editions—abridged, regular or standard, and a possible future bibliographic edition—can be used with parts of the others, without making total reclassification necessary The 16th Edition should also take into account, in both introduction and schedules, the needs of library schools in teaching the theory, principles, and practice of the DC [2]

The most important decision that faced the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee was whether to follow the principle of *continuity and integrity of numbers* or that of *keeping pace with knowledge* These principles and the Committee's decision are well stated in Godfrey Dewey's preface to the 7th edition

> In the making and editing of any classification, two basic principles are constantly in conflict One is the DC traditional policy of integrity of numbers, which enables its users to depend on each new edition to include few or no relocations of topics but to include expansions which are based on the schedules in earlier editions, thereby achieving continuity and avoiding the cost of reclassification The other principle is the philosophy of keeping pace with knowledge, which holds that any classification scheme, to retain its usefulness must from time to time, restate or redefine and regroup or rearrange subjects according to the changed concepts of a new generation The first principle strongly urged by Melvil Dewey, governed the editorial policy of the first 14 editions, the second principle influenst largely the editorial policy of Edition 15, resulting in relocation of something like a thousand topics, about 300 of which would appear in an abridged edition
>
> Professional opinion of these policies has varied widely but with no clear cut majority either as to principles or practice In order to determine as clearly as possible the wishes of the library profession, and to incorporate the readjustments to meet those wishes in the present

[2] Journal of Cataloging and Classification v 12 p 93 April 1956

abridged edition instead of waiting several years for Edition 16 publication of this edition was delayed for several months to give time for a questionnaire to be sent to nearly a thousand representative libraries and library schools In the light of that questionnaire about 55% of the relocations promulgated in Edition 15 are being retained about 45% restored to the status of earlier editions culminating in Edition 14 At the same time the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee has expressly confirmed for the future the guiding principle of integrity of numbers accepting the recommendation of the Special Advisory Committee on the Decimal Classification appointed by the ALA Division of Cataloging and Classification that relocation of subjects be made sparingly and only upon overwhelming need and demand

The Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee knows that the conflict between these two principles will prevent any library classification from reaching the status of "the perfect book" but still invites criticism of this edition with the hope of making further improvements in the 17th edition

The Committee has nine members six of whom are appointed for six year terms with nominations alternating between the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation and the American Library Association the other three representing Forest Press Inc the Library of Congress (as long as LC maintains its concern with the Decimal Classification) and the Cataloging and Classification Section Resources and Technical Services Division of the ALA Present members are Elizabeth C Borden Godfrey Dewey Virginia Drewry Carlyle J Frarey Bertha M Frick Evelyn M Hensel Harriet D MacPherson Lucile M Morsch and Fremont Rider Others who served during the preparation of this edition are Verner W Clapp who served as chairman until October 1956 Janet S Dickson the late Milton J Ferguson Richard O Pautzsch and Mrs Lela de Otte Surrey

Lucile M Morsch
CHAIRMAN DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION
EDITORIAL POLICY COMMITTEE

Washington D C
1 May 1958

Editor's Introduction

History

The confusion of the contents of the Amherst College Library in 1872 must have presented to Melvil Dewey student library assistant a similar challenge to that of his mothers pantry when at the age of five he re arranged it systematically Always an enthusiastic reformer and urged on by his hatred of waste of time it probably did not seem to him un usual that at twenty he should try to bring order out of chaos a situation which had evidently been of little concern to his predecessors Ulti mately in solving the problem at Amherst he achieved a high degree of order for a vast number of libraries the world over

After study of the classification of knowledge as conceived by Aris totle Bacon Locke and other philosophers and the recently publisht[1] library classifications of Schwartz and Harris Dewey decided to use a scheme of arranging books by subject based upon Harris s inversion of the Baconian order of History Poesy Philosophy This decision to use a subject arrangement was a radical departure from the almost universal practice of arranging books alphabetically by their authors names or by size or accession or even color

The problem of devising a simple scheme of notation was possibly more difficult than deciding upon the plan of arrangement None of the philosophic classifications used such a device The Schwartz scheme was complicated by the addition of symbols for size and the Harris notation provided only for classes not for single books Dewey s visits to libraries in New York and New England revealed only how much need there was for an efficient system The three existing schemes for decimal arrange ment of books du Maine s in 1583 the Glasgow *ca* 1790 and the Shurt leff in 1856 evidently did not impress Dewey All three were based upon numbering shelves rather than books In a moment of inspiration born of intensive study and thought came the solution which now seems so sim ple the application of Arabic numerals used decimally as notation for books arranged by subject

The Amherst Library Committee may well have been somewhat star

[1] For simplified spelling in this work see the section on *Spelling* below

tled to receive from a student assistant three papers proposing, not only a revolutionary classification scheme for the library, but also a carefully considered account of its merits and how it was especially adapted to the needs of the Amherst Library However, it approved the proposal, and, with the advice and help of others, the following three years were devoted by Dewey to improving and extending the original plan and in reorganizing and classifying the library

In 1876 *A Classification and Subject Index for Cataloguing and Arranging the Books and Pamphlets of a Library*, an improved and amplified version of the original plan, was publisht anonymously In the years that followed, Dewey was instrumental in establishing a number of library organizations which, in turn, contributed to the success of the new classification Almost simultaneously with the publication of the classification, the American Library Association and an organization later to be known as the Library Bureau were founded The *American Library Journal* issued its first number in the same year Eleven years later, the first library school was opened at Columbia University Thus, for the first time, the library profession was given a multiplicity of outlets for the expression and propagation of its increasingly liberal concept of the function of libraries and the resultant necessity for efficient library operation

In its radical departure from the old order, the Decimal Classification was wonderfully fitted to the progressive spirit of this period of transition It never lacked adherents and they never lacked channels for spreading their enthusiasm How widespread its use and popularity in the United States had become is well illustrated by the creation in 1930, because of popular demand of a section in the Library of Congress for the purpose of assigning Decimal Classification numbers to books which libraries using the scheme might be expected to acquire A recent estimate has shown that about 96 percent of the public libraries in the United States, 89 percent of the college and university libraries and 64 percent of the special libraries follow the system

Use of the classification has spread outside the United States to Canada, Latin America Europe, Asia, Africa and Australia In part, or in its entirety, it has been translated into French Spanish, Portuguese, German, Dutch, Czech, Greek Hebrew Turkish Japanese Korean Indonesian, Malayalam and other languages

Some impetus to this general acceptance was given by the Institut International de Bibliographie in 1895, when it decided to use the DC as

the basis for a bibliographic classification for its international subject index. In 1905 the Institut publisht the *Classification Décimale*, using the basic plan of the DC expanded considerably and employing supplementary symbols to designate subject relationships. In 1927–1929 a revision was publisht under the title *Classification Décimale Universelle*. Both of these are referred to interchangeably as the CD, the UDC, and the Brussels Classification. They have been translated in full or in abridged form from the French into a number of other languages, including Dutch, Swedish, German and English. Differences have appeared thru the years between the DC and the CD, due in part to the more complex demands of a bibliographic classification, but the basis is still fundamentally that establisht by Dewey.

Basic Plan

The Decimal Classification divides all knowledge, as represented by books and other materials which are acquired by libraries, into nine main classes numbered by digits 1 to 9. Material too general to belong to any one of these classes, such as newspapers and encyclopedias, falls into a tenth class numbered 0, which precedes the others. The classes are written as hundreds, thus 000 is general works, 100 is philosophy, 200 is religion. Each class is separated into nine divisions, with general works on the class occupying a tenth division which precedes the others. Thus 500 is pure science in general (dictionaries, periodicals, collected essays, and the like), while 510 is mathematics, 520 is astronomy and allied sciences, 530 is physics, and so on. Each division is again divided into nine sections preceded by a general section, thus 510 is mathematics in general, 511 arithmetic, 512 algebra, 513 elementary Euclidean geometry. Further division to any extent whatsoever which may be desirable to bring together like materials and separate unlike ones may be made by the addition of digits following a decimal point. Altho most numbers in this edition do not exceed six digits in length, i.e., three to the right of the decimal point, nevertheless the requirements of the literature in various subject fields which have grown rapidly since Melvil Dewey's original scheme was developt are such that the numbers extend sometimes to nine and in a few cases to even more digits.

All the books acquired by a library may be clast according to the tables provided by the DC, each being assigned to, and markt with the number of the class, division, section, or subsection to which it belongs, the num-

ber being the device which brings together on the library's shelves all its books on a given subject, placing them next to books on related subjects, and placing related subjects together as part of the broad class which contains them, the whole in an orderly progression

The basic pattern is presented in a series of summaries, the first of which shows the ten classes, the second the one hundred divisions, and the third the approximately one thousand sections Use of the classification will rapidly make one familiar with the first two summaries and much of the third

The three summaries are followed by full classification tables, often called schedules which present in numerical order all classes, divisions sections, and subsections to the full degree of expansion required by most general libraries of practically any size Because the schedules are filled with definitions, scope notes, synonyms, cross references, directions, and other helpful devices which are described below, it is important that the classifier always refer to them before attempting to class a specific book, he should never attempt to do this from the summaries alone, which are supplied simply as a sort of bird s eye view of the full schedules Scattered thru the schedules are 76 special summaries which supplement the general ones by showing the pattern of division of various three , four , and five figure numbers which in their full development, are so complex as to be difficult to view as a whole

In volume two is an alphabetic index, no less important a part of the classification than the tables, which supplies for all headings and many synonyms and related terms the number where each subject may be found in the schedules Because the index is "relative," showing where the various relations of a given subject may be clast, the classifier should refer to it even when he feels certain just where in the full tables the subject of his particular book belongs, to make sure that he has not overlookt a better number

Full explanation of how to use the schedules the index and supplementary tables follows

Mnemonic Aids

Numerous devices recur thruout the schedules which promote the ease of use of the system One of these is the repeated use of certain numbers with the same meaning For example, 450 is Italian language, 850 is Italian literature, 945 is Italian history, 035 is Italian encyclopedias, 075 is

Italian newspapers, and so on In each of these cases the digit 5 stands for Italy This does not, of course, mean that 5 always denotes Italy, for its use is required in many other contexts, but Italy is always represented by 5

This mnemonic feature is especially useful in the areas of language, literature, geography, and history In class 400 language, and class 800 literature, 2 means English (*e g*, 420 English language, 820 English literature), 3 German, 4 French, 5 Italian, 6 Spanish, 69 Portuguese (469 and 869), and so on Under each *language*, 3 means dictionaries, 4 means synonyms, 5 means grammar, *e g*, English dictionary 423, French synonyms 444, Portuguese grammar 469 5 Under each *literature*, 1 means poetry, 2 means drama, 3 means fiction, 4 means essays, 5 means oratory, *e g*, German drama 832, Italian oratory 855 In class 900 history, Europe is 940, and 942 means England, 943 Germany, 944 France, 945 Italy, 946 Spain, 946 9 Portugal, under 950 Asia, 951 means China, 952 Japan, 954 India In this fashion, the modern history of the entire earth is spread out over 940–999

Each of these systems of division, the language division of 400 and the geographic division of 900, particularly the latter, are repeated in many appropriate places Geography itself is class in 910, and geography of specific parts of the world is in 914–919 *divided like* 940–999 Thus, whereas 940 is history of Europe, 914 is geography of Europe, whereas *942* is history of England *914.2* is geography of England, whereas 946 9 is history of Portugal 914 69 is geography of Portugal In the same way, 336 4–336 9 is public finance of specific countries, with public finance of the United States in 336 73 because history of the United States is 973 This kind of division is not limited to whole countries a guidebook to Detroit, Michigan is 917 743 4, because history of Detroit is 977 434 the reader will observe that the digits following 91 (for geography and description) are the same as those following 9 (for history), with the decimal point always following the third digit In exactly the same way, many numbers thruout the schedules may be divided like 940–999 or like other appropriate sequences of numbers which have been spelled out at different points in the schedules, thus rendering it unnecessary to repeat long sequences over and over For example, 312 3 statistics on incidence of specific diseases is divided like 616 medicine, so that, since 616 912 is medical treatment of smallpox, 312 391 2 is statistics on incidence of smallpox In a few cases, a number may be divided like the entire classification 000–999, most noteworthy of these is 016 bibliography, which

may be divided by any appropriate number e g bibliography of medical treatment of smallpox 016 616 912 bibliography of English fiction 016 823 bibliography of history of Detroit 016 977 434

By far the most frequently used division is that like 940–999 or like 930–999 (930 is ancient history) A list of the numbers which may be divided like these numbers follows the relative index

The classifier should not permit his fascination with the possibilities of dividing one number like another to lead him into ill advised combinations which may turn out to be more confusing than helpful Addition of digits not specifically provided in the schedules is likely to result in the blocking of a number which a future edition may expand in a way which will serve his purposes more satisfactorily It is always preferable if local additions are required to use letters or other devices instead of digits Numbers are fascinating things but the unwary can trip over them The classifier should also remember that the instruction divide like" always means to divide like another number *only where applicable*

Form Divisions

Altho the classification is generally by subject except in class 800 literature subarrangement for the form of presentation of a subject is often desirable To provide for this the classifier may use the regular form divisions a full list of which immediately precedes the complete tables The chief ones are

01 Philosophy and theory
02 Handbooks and outlines
03 Dictionaries and encyclopedias
04 Essays and lectures
05 Periodicals
06 Organizations and societies
07 Study and teaching
08 Collections and polygraphy
09 History and local treatment

It will be noted that while these are known as form divisions and handbooks dictionaries periodicals are true forms some of the divisions are more properly subject aspects e g philosophy study and teaching history The chief point to be remembered however is that most subjects can be treated according to any one or more of these forms or aspects

The form divisions may be used with any subject when applicable For example a dictionary of science 503 study and teaching of mathematics 510 7 history of Italian poetry 851 09 When two divisions are applicable

e g, lectures on philosophy of science, 01, 07, 09, which are partly of a subject nature, should be preferred to 02–06, 08

Altho the form divisions may be used with any subject, they should not be used indiscriminately It is, for example, wise not to divide by them when the number to be divided is more than four or five digits in length, except where the possibility is explicitly shown in the schedules, lest their use block the library's taking advantage of expansions which may be introduced into future editions This is particularly true when the subject which the classifier proposes to divide has a broader meaning than the subject of the book being classified A form division should not be used when the specific aspect is otherwise provided for by the schedules, *e g*, 655 1 history of printing, 704 9 collected writings on art the schedules often, but not always, lead the classifier from the expected form division number to the number which has been used in its stead The relative index, too, has entries leading to such deviations from form division numbers, *e g*, Theory music 781 In general, except in the 900's, form division 09, as well as other numbers which the tables recommend be divided like 930 or 940–999, should not be divided closer than by the country, or in the United States by the state Furthermore, any title should be class by its most specific subject before subdivision by place is considered, *e g*, taxation in the United States 336 209 73 (or preferably just 336 2) rather than 336 73 public finance in the United States Likewise, a form division for a specific work should be applied only to the narrowest number which includes the book, *e g*, essays on English history in 942 004, not in 940 04 or in 904

In general, only one 0 is required to identify a form division, *e g*, 503 not 500 03, 510 7 not 510 07 However, in certain schedules it has been necessary to use 0 with a special meaning and then the classifier should, and normally is instructed in the schedule itself to, use two 0's for the form divisions, in a very few cases, three 0s are required for form divisions For example, in class 900 a 0 is normally used to distinguish period divisions in history, so that history of England in the Tudor period is 942 05, while a periodical devoted to English history is 942 005, and

[illegible] elections are 352 004,

[illegible]

[illegible] e tables under the ten major classes *e g*, 109, 204, 303 Under other numbers they are spelled out only for specific reasons, such as when the form division of a number has been extended to take on a special but related meaning in addition to

the normal one, or instead of the normal one which is not applicable to the specific subject

Annotations in the Tables

Even with careful choice of terms for the headings corresponding to the numbers in the classification tables, it may be difficult for the busy classifier under the pressure of his daily work to decide where various titles should be clast For example, altho it is easy enough to determine that a general work on the history of England should go in 942, it is not so obvious what should be done with a book on the history of the Commonwealth of Nations [illegible]
essays, and a collec [illegible]
on gambling class [illegible]
for World War I go with works on the war, in history, or with works on public debt, in economics? To assist in making such decisions quickly and easily, this edition of the DC is the most extensively annotated of any in its long history Notes are of several varieties

Definitions are supplied for terms which might not appear in common reference sources, and also to distinguish the specific meaning intended from among a variety of common meanings

Scope notes indicate the aspects of a given subject which are intended to be included in a specific number A special kind of scope note is "comprehensive works," which means that, when different aspects of a subject are clast in different places, works treating of the subject comprehensively are clast at the place indicated, it is always followed by a cross reference telling where to class specific aspects For example, comprehensive works on penmanship are clast in 652 1, but some specific aspects of the subject are clast elsewhere, *e g*, handwriting analysis and identification 137 7, handwriting analysis in criminal investigation 364 12 paleography 417, manuscripts 091, methods of teaching writing in elementary schools 372 51

Inclusion notes enumerate parts of a topic and closely related topics which, because the amount of book literature is expected to be insufficient to justify their having separate numbers are clast in the same number as the main topic Sometimes an inclusion note under a broad topic is intended to apply to each of the subdivisions of that topic which are provided for separately, *e g*, the note, "including selection, deterioration, preservation, construction properties" which appears with 691 building

construction materials is meant to apply to each subdivision 691 1 timber 691 2 building stones 691 3 concrete and reinforst concrete 691 6 glass and so on

Instruction notes supply specific directions of various sorts e g when to use irregular form divisions when to divide like another number or series of numbers when to arrange subtopics alphabetically where to find alternative provision for a subject where to class topics which in an earlier edition were clast at the place where the note appears

Cross references which are printed in *italics* refer the classifier to other numbers where he should class related topics thus to a degree serving to differentiate between numbers For example under 309 2 social planning the classifier is told to see 338 9 for economic planning and 711 for planning of physical facilities Many references especially those following "comprehensive works" scope notes are "blanket" references which advise the classifier to turn to that one of a group of related topics which is the subject of the specific book in his hand Such a reference may be found at 942 history of England *"For a specific part of the Commonwealth of Nations see the part e g Canada* 971*"* and at 770 photography *"For a specific application of photography see the subject e g astronomical photography* 522 63*"* The classifier must not let himself become baffled by references which at first sight appear to be "blind" that is to lead to non existent numbers Upon examination he will realize that each such number referred to has been built from a base number by addition of digits authorized in a "divide like" note or of digits coming from the form division table

Centered headings which appear with the numbers and headings centered on the page instead of with numbers in the usual number column and which show the spread of a sequence of numbers which is spelled out in detail immediately following perform two functions One function is to show the organization of material by serving as a substitute for a broad comprehensive number when such does not exist and cannot be inserted Such a centered heading is 787 1 787 42 bowed string instruments used to distinguish these subdivisions of 787 string instruments and their music from 787 5 787 92 plectral instruments The other function is to serve as a prop for various notes which need not then be repeated over and over with each specific number when no single broad comprehensive number is available for the purpose Examples of such headings are 231–237 specific subjects of doctrinal theology and 940–999 medieval and modern history of specific places Centered headings

are not to be confused with sets of consecutive numbers shown in the number column, which are followed each by one heading without further breakdown The distinction may be seen clearly by examining centered 974 101-974 104 and non centered 974 201-974 204.

Alternative Provisions

Every library has problems, needs, demands on its services which are to some extent unique, and this is necessarily reflected in its classification practices Protestant theological seminaries, for example, will usually prefer to have works on the sacraments in 265, while Roman Catholic seminaries will more likely prefer 234 16 Most libraries like to class travel in a given country separately from its history, but some institutions, particularly those serving as popular reading centers, find it more suitable to class travel right along with history In particular, special libraries have classification needs divergent from those of general libraries The present edition is intended for general libraries of almost any size except the very smallest, but the editors have made alternative provision from time to time for libraries having varying needs Unlike the situation in earlier editions, each alternative provision is indicated in such a way as to show clearly the 'editors' preference" Libraries using the alternative will do so with awareness that, while their practice has official standing, it will not be supported by the numbers assigned from this edition to Library of Congress cards, DC numbers on LC cards will always follow the "editors' preferences" With these exceptions, great effort has been made to supply a clear-cut number for each topic, without overlap or dual provision

One especially vexing problem for which alternatives have been offered as a palliative is that of classification of the history (and, by extension, all other topics divided geographically like 940-999) of territories which, as a result of the political vicissitudes of the past half century, have undergone one or more changes of political affiliation The classification of numerous areas has been, so to speak, frozen in earlier editions in the number for the nation of which each such area formed a part when the classification tables were first developt Many large libraries would now find it forbiddingly expensive to reclassify works on these areas into the numbers for the nations of which today they form a part, and, even if reclassification were undertaken, no one would be so foolhardy as to say that the map will in the future remain static On the other hand, some libraries find their service seriously hampered because areas are not clast

according to 1958 political affiliation After study of a number of possible solutions, the editors have decided to follow the principle that position on the map rather than political ties should determine classification, so far as "editors' preference" goes, but still to permit alternative arrangements for those libraries which require them Hence, the classifier will find, thruout the 940's and 950's, for example, directions to "class works on a specific part of Pakistan with the part, *e g*, East Bengal 954 145, if preferred, class all specific parts of Pakistan in 954 7"

Variations

It would not be practical, or even possible, to indicate all variations required for their own specific purposes by the multiplicity of libraries which follow the DC in its general pattern It is readily recognized that few institutions are likely to follow the schedules verbatim Small libraries will find expansion too great and numbers too long this is discust below under the heading *Structure* Some libraries will desire further expansion for certain subjects And some will require reorganization of schedules and changes of emphases

An institution needing an expansion should consult with the Editorial Office, which if the need appears to have general support, will undertake to prepare it If an expansion is not immediately available, the broad classification should be made to serve until the official expansion is ready A good expansion takes a great amount of time for study, research, interviewing, and correspondence, and necessitates a broad and dispassionate over all approach Such a project is generally of too great magnitude for the majority of librarians with their full quota of other duties The librarian going ahead on his own to make changes or expansions should remember that once the change is made, whether good or bad, the library, because of the expense of reclassifying is likely to be saddled with it indefinitely unable to make use of official expansions and improvements in subsequent editions

There are, however, ways of simplifying the tables which the editors recommend, not only to small libraries but also to libraries with special collections There is no avoiding the fact that, historically, the DC is based upon a Protestant Anglo-Saxon culture In spite of this, as we have shown in the section on *History* of the classification, its use has been accepted in many parts of the world, not only in western Europe, but also in eastern Europe and the Orient, where the space and expansion of num

bers devoted to American and English literature, United States history, Christianity, western philosophy, and so on, are out of proportion to the needs of libraries. Yet the editors have considered that they had a prime responsibility for furnishing a satisfactory and useful classification for the libraries of the United States, and solution to the problem of a classification universally acceptable has not yet been found In spite of this, the present edition has made a start toward providing more useful expansions of topics in which libraries of cultures other than Protestant, Anglo-Saxon, and Western are likely to excel It is the editors' expectation that the next edition, the 17th, will do still better

But the library which has a large collection on subjects and in languages not strongly represented in United States libraries has a real problem in that the base numbers for the subjects in which it specializes are so much longer than the numbers for those in which U S libraries more often specialize It is, therefore, recommended, that, when needed, a letter or combination of two letters be used as a substitute for a long base number, *e g*, works on Arabic language in 4A0–4A9 (to be shelved first in the 400 class) instead of 492 7–492 79, Arabic literature in 8A0–8A9, works on Buddhism in 2B instead of 294 3, works on history of Brazil in a Brazilian library in B instead of 981 (provided, of course, that the library has not followed the suggestion given at 920 to class biography in B, in which case another symbol would be required) This same suggestion may also be of use to libraries in any country with large collections on subjects with long base numbers An institution specializing in electrical engineering could use E in place of 621 3, shelving it as if it were 621 3 UN may be used in place of 341 13 Examples could be multiplied Other simplifications are suggested in the schedules at appropriate places

Use of Letters

Altho the DC is a classification based on figures used decimally, it may be modified and supplemented by letters of the alphabet used in several ways and for a variety of purposes In the first place, letters may be used as a substitute for one or more digits in the class number, as recommended above, or they may replace the whole class number Some of the most widely used of these are suggested in the schedules, *e g*, B for individual biography in place of a three-figure or longer number from the

920s F for fiction in English or other vernacular language instead of 813 823 833 etc especially in public libraries Other uses are J for juvenile fiction JF (or jF) for fairy tales in juvenile collections JE (or jE) for easy picture books for the very young

Second letters may be used in front of class numbers to show special location or special form of material e g R for reference books as in R423 J (j) for classified juvenile books M for music scores in one library and for maps in another F G I for French German Italian respectively in a popular foreign language reading department of a metropolitan public library

Third they may be used in the formation of book numbers which supplement class numbers by distinguishing the separate books clast in a single number usually by an alphabetic author arrangement

Use and construction of book numbers is discust in Bertha R Barden's pamphlet *Book Numbers* publisht by the American Library Association in 1937 Most libraries build book numbers from the Cutter or Cutter Sanborn tables A special book number arrangement for subdivision of 822 33 William Shakespeare appears at the end of volume two

Thruout the schedules the classifier will find recommendations that specific subjects within classes be arranged alphabetically e g under 920 biography and 598 8 Passeriformes or perching birds

On the assumption that most libraries use Cutter Sanborn book numbers it is often recommended that in a given class which is to have alphabetic sub arrangement by subject A1 be used for general works The purpose of this is to segregate general and comprehensive or collective works at the beginning of the class instead of permitting libraries to fall into the trap as some have of mixing subjects and authors in one alphabet For example under 923 173 biographies of Presidents of the United States it is unwise to shelve a work on all the Presidents by a hypothetical Samuel Wilson in W753 next to Baker's life of Woodrow Wilson in W754B16 The collection belongs in A1W753 and will be followed on the shelves by works on John Adams in A214

The classifier will also find alphabetic arrangement sometimes offered as an alternative to systematic arrangement One of the most sweeping of these is under 974–979 where it is proposed that local history be arranged alphabetically under each state of the United States as an alternative to systematic arrangement under several thousand counties each with its own number

One more use of A1 (or Z9 if preferred) may be suggested as a device to gather together early material in a class where timeliness is of special importance, such as in technical subjects like aeronautics

Structure

Ideally, a logical classification should be divided into parts, each part into subparts, each subpart into still smaller units, with the notation showing the structural breakdown at each level, until the specificity of existing literature is reached To do this in the DC, however, frequently results in unreasonably long numbers, particularly in those areas where whole new disciplines of science have sprung up since the original pattern was establisht by Melvil Dewey and his successors, as, for example, in the technical revolution in electronic engineering 621 38

It has, therefore, been necessary at countless places in the tables to establish or to continue from earlier editions irregular structure of the decimal numbers In some places, not enough digits are available in a decimal system to provide for all the subdivisions of a topic which require separate provision, as, for example, in the countries of Europe under 940, where Spain and Portugal must share 946, and no less than five countries share 943 In other places, more digits are available than are required for the subdivisions of a subject, and it seemed wise (in the past more than in the present edition, where the editors have been chary of using up all available numbers) to place topics subordinate to a larger topic in numbers coordinate with that of the larger topic, as, for example, in 221–224, where 221 is used for the Old Testament as a whole, and 222–224 for its parts

It is possible, of course, to retain regular subject structure, even when the notation is irregular, by use of indention and type face, and this has been done in the present as in past editions All too often, classifiers do not notice that structure is always shown by indention, and they may ask, for example, why is the Bahai faith, which is an independent religion, clast in 297 89 as a subdivision of 297 Islam, without realizing or understanding that the two numbers are coordinate by indention and by size of type

There are two major reasons for maintenance of regular numerical structure to the greatest extent compatible with common sense The first is that it makes it easier to teach and learn the DC and its principles, and

the second is that it makes it less troublesome for the small library to cut back schedules for use in classifying small groups of books, and then to expand, as the libraries become middle sized and eventually large, simply by adding figures to the numbers already assigned to books Since the present edition is designed for use by libraries of various sizes, classifiers in those institutions which wish to cut the schedules back should be especially wary as to the hazards of irregularity, the meaning of indention, and the best ways to reduce the length of numbers without incurring the risk at a later date of having to change numbers rather than merely to lengthen them It is all very well to decide that no number longer than four digits will be used and all digits beyond the fourth will be lopped off But to do so will throw all material on electric power generation, storage batteries, house wiring radiocommunication, and railway electrification into one number, and also will place works on Bahaism with those on Moslem sects On the other hand, the library which decides to class all works on birds in 598 2 will find itself in difficulties when, at a later date, it wishes to expand and finds that the various orders of birds are in 598 3-598 9, numbers which are coordinate in length but subordinate in meaning to 598 2 *Reduction of the schedules must be performed judiciously*

Degree of Expansion

Since this edition is intended for use in general libraries of any size, its fullness is based upon the number of titles which large libraries may be expected to acquire in any given subject The editors have tried to provide enough subdivisions but not too many, and have been guided by the principle that the existence in American libraries of more than twenty titles which would fall in a given number raises a presumption in favor of subdivision The detail varies from one part of the tables to another, depending on the amount of material which has been publisht and is likely to be acquired by libraries In this respect, the 16th edition varies distinctly from earlier editions, where some sections were developt beyond the needs of general libraries and other sections not at all As compared with the two editions immediately preceding Edition 14 has 31,364 separate entries in the tables Edition 15 has 4 688, while Edition 16 has 17,928 However because of the greater fullness of treatment thru annotation, Edition 16 is at least 25 percent greater in over all size than Edition 14

	16	*15*	*14*
000	333	156	897
100	499	109	2028
200	760	284	805
300	1703	810	2527
400	324	188	319
500	2083	635	3649
600	4031	955	9860
700	1407	456	2880
800	302	285	2024
900	6486	810	6375
	17,928	4,688	31,364

Edition 16 has approximately 63 000 index entries, very close to the number in Edition 14

Dealing with Long Numbers

Altho the maximum length of numbers in an ideal system should perhaps not exceed six digits, which, with even distribution and constant density, would allow one million separate numbers, no such ideal can be achieved short of making a brand new decimal classification Structure and expansion, discust in the two preceding sections, create many unavoidably long numbers, notably when divide-like provisions are followed

Long numbers create hazards in transcription onto books, cards, and call slips, and no way to minimize these can be suggested However, long numbers can be affixt to the spines of thin books, and made less unsightly on cards, by increasing the number of lines of the class number from one to two or even three It might be decided arbitrarily to divide all numbers longer than six digits into two lines, e g ,

336 343	336	338	and even 331
	3432	456141	892816
			1073

An interesting device used by a few libraries is to limit the numbers on the books, used for shelving purposes, to a predetermined number of

digits say 4 or 6 and to give on catalog and shelflist cards the complete numbers based on the full schedule with the shelving digits in black and the additional digits in color

Relocations

The problem created by the relocation of topics in the 15th edition from the numbers provided for them in the 14th and earlier editions is explained in the *Foreword* All relocations of topics from the 14th and 15th editions to new numbers in the 16th (and obviously this includes all the relocations of the 15th which in the present edition must remain as relocations from the 14th or by return to the 14th become relocations from the 15th) are shown in the schedules both at the number where now located and at the number relocated from and in the index

A series of conventions has been establisht to show relocations A set of [square brackets] is employed in the schedules to distinguish numbers which are no longer in force or no longer in force with the meaning indicated a dagger † preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 14th edition while an asterisk * means the same for the 15th edition In the index the dagger and asterisk have the same meanings but superseded entries are preceded by the word *formerly* in italics rather than enclosed in square brackets

When the classifier has these meanings well establisht in his mind he should have no difficulty in understanding the relocation notes and should be able with little trouble to annotate this edition at those places where he decides not to reclassify so as to continue to follow 14th or 15th edition practice without actually using the older volumes themselves except for occasional reference

One kind of relocation has not been shown in the index or in the tables except at the place relocated from This is the "shotgun" relocation which directs the classifier to class works on a given subject thruout the whole classification A list of numbers from which "shotgun relocations are made follows

†174 1–4

†336 14

†336 279

*336 395

†526 99

There are in this edition 1,603 relocations Of these, 832 are total, meaning that the entire number has been dropt, while 771 are partial, meaning that, while some topics have been shifted from a number, certain other topics remain in it Counting both total and partial relocations, 851 are from the 14th edition and 618 from the 15th Of those from the 14th, 487 were already in the 15th, 255 are from one subdivision to another of a number not that far subdivided in the 15th, and 109 are relocations of topics the location of which in the 15th cannot be determined because of its extensive reduction of numbers Of the relocations from the 15th edition, 528 were restored to their 14th edition locations, 42 are from one subdivision to another of a number not that far subdivided in the 14th, and 48 are relocations of topics the location of which in the 14th cannot be determined because of insufficient expansion Finally, 134 of the relocations are new, that is, they are from both the 14th and the 15th editions, these have been made only for what appear to the editors to be fairly compelling reasons In tabular form

	000	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	Total
From 14											
Already 15	5	33	5	103	7	97	150	64	9	14	487
15 not divided	5	9	1	23	1	87	73	38	1	17	255
15 not clear	1	1		10		50	32	10		5	109
Total	11	43	6	136	8	234	255	112	10	36	851
From 15											
Back to 14	16	14	24	131	19	87	156	56	3	22	528
14 not divided			3	1	1	5	16	1		15	42
14 not clear	2		2	1		13	12	6	3	9	48
Total	18	14	29	133	20	105	184	63	6	46	618
From both 14 & 15		4	3	17	3	22	50	24	2	9	134
Grand total	29	61	38	286	31	361	489	199	18	91	1603

Of this total, not more than 50 may be regarded as major that is requiring the average large general library to reclassify more than about 30 titles each, nearly all of these are the kind forst upon the editors because of relocation from Edition 14 to Edition 15

Obsolescent Schedules

In one subject area a special situation exists Concepts in the fields of inorganic and organic chemistry 546–547 have changed so completely

since the schedules were first developt that it was out of the question to interpolate modern concepts thru expansion of the existing schedules Accordingly, these two sections have been revised thoroly with little regard to earlier provisions, and with old numbers used with new meanings as required Since immediate adoption of these all new schedules may be prohibitively expensive for many libraries, obsolescent schedules are supplied following the relative index, based on the 14th edition schedules, with provision for certain new concepts and with helpful expansions Libraries taking advantage of the expansions should note, however, that these obsolescent schedules will be dropt in Edition 17, and that reclassification to the new schedule should be undertaken before 17 appears (in approximately seven years) if that is at all possible

Evolutionary Development

To minimize the periodic major readjustments incident to the coming of a new edition and to establish a continuous flow of information keeping pace with knowledge, the publishers have arranged that purchasers who return a card enclosed in this volume will receive "DC Additions, Notes and Decisions" as they accumulate, probably quarterly, and also notices of any new special expansions available at a nominal price Thus with the current edition and these supplements, DC will always be up to date

Suggestions for Use

How to Use the Tables and Index

It is wise to learn the ten main classes Knowledge of the hundred divisions and numerous sections and subsections should follow gradually from use, without the necessity of special study, and will result more quickly if the tables are consulted first rather than the index Locating the subject of a book within the scope of its main class brings familiarity with the class as a whole When the tables are used in this way, the index should be checkt to verify the result obtained

How to Determine the Subject of a Book

There are several methods of deciding upon the subject of a book These may be used in varying combinations where the subject is obscure

Colburn, Godfrey Dewey, Walter A Hafner, and Howard Haycraft, all of whom have brought together in happy marriage the acumen of the business man and the bibliophily of the librarian and scholar

To the members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee, whose names are enumerated in the *Foreword*, and especially to its successive chairmen, Verner W Clapp (wearing another of his many hats) and Lucile M Morsch, both of whom have always been ready with wise counsel and strong support when the going was difficult

To the many members of the Special Advisory Committee on the Decimal Classification of the ALA Division of Cataloging and Classification (later the Cataloging and Classification Section of the ALA Resources and Technical Services Division), and especially to its chairman, Janet S Dickson, from all of whom came help when needed, based in many cases upon what must have been a staggering amount of time and study To the library administrators who supported the members of this committee so generously

To all the unorganized advisers, librarians and subject experts, more than two hundred strong, from libraries, laboratories and classrooms thruout the United States and in many nations abroad

To the officers of the Library of Congress, who supported the editorial project with warmth and wisdom from the time that it was first proposed by the ALA, following publication of Edition 15, that the Library undertake it, Luther H Evans, L Quincy Mumford, Verner W Clapp (another hat), Lucile M Morsch And, for his weekly and sometimes daily doses of common sense, his brilliant understanding of all the problems encountered in the editorial work, his constant availability as a bulwark in all vicissitudes, most especially to my immediate superior, John W Cronin

To my predecessor as Editor, the late David Judson Haykin, who laid out the guidelines, recruited most of the excellent staff and set the project on its way

To my colleagues in the Decimal Classification Section of the Library Alice M Kenton and Elva L Krogh, both of whom, in addition to their normal duties in assigning DC numbers for use on LC cards, gave countless hours toward the timely completion of the editorial work

To Alpheus L Walter and his staff of the Library's Card Division for gracious assistance in a variety of ways, most notably in printing and

arranging a quarter of a million cards for the index and in printing thousands of copies of preliminary schedules

To the Editorial Office staff First, to those who joined it briefly to work on special schedules, Jay Allen, Harold Beyerly, Marjorie Clopine, Paul Gratke, the late Chauncey M Louttit, the late John B Montignani Next, to the former members of the regular staff, Mary Anglemyer, Belinda Dameron, Elsie Glynn, Eleanor Hungerford, Margaret M Levchenko Then, particularly to those who worked very long hours at high pressure during the final year, Dorothy Fauntleroy Gover, Marie Molnar Henshaw, Marietta S Korson, Elsie Kresge Yoder Finally, to that jewel of an associate, John C Pressey, who, of us all, knows the most about the DC

Conclusion

The reader is referred to the introduction by Melvil Dewey, which follows, for more complete information on many matters briefly toucht upon in the foregoing It is reprinted, with a few minor changes, just as Dr Dewey wrote and spelled it, and should be read in the context of the time in which it was written Some statements in it and some examples are now obsolete, or do not apply specifically to the present edition, but the general principles enunciated are as true in 1958 as they were in 1876 or in 1926

A much briefer but apt quotation from Dewey in 1876 must close this introduction "A scheme can be satisfactory in use only to those who realize inherent difficulties and are satisfied because of their knowledge that a plan free from annoying difficulties is wholly unattainable"

Benjamin A Custer
EDITOR

Dewey Decimal Classification
Editorial Office
Processing Department
The Library of Congress
Washington D C
21 April 1958

Melvil Dewey's Introduction

Orijin and growth. The plan of this Clasification and Index was developt erly in 1873, the result of long study of library economy as found in hundreds of books and pamflets, and in over 50 personal visits to libraries. This study convinst me that usefulness of libraries myt be greatly increast without aded expense. Only a fraction of the servis posibl cud be got from them without clasification, catalogs, indexes and other aids, to tel librarians and readers what they containd on any givn subject, yet, by methods then uzed, this cud be dun satisfactorily only at a cost so great as to be prohibitiv to all but a few welthy libraries. With rare exceptions, libraries wer growing rapidly. Catalogs, made at great cost, soon became antiquated. Methods uzed involvd frequent rearranjement, renumbering and remarking of books, and of necesity remaking of catalogs and indexes, as the only escape from a confuzion that seriusly cripld usefulness. In this costly repetition, work of previus librarians was larjly lost. The great need was a sistem which wud enable each to stand on the sholders of his predecessors, and fully utilize their labors, which wud make work dun today permanent, insted of sumthing to be superseded in so few years as not to be worth doing in the best way, which wud supply the best applyances, insted of leaving yung librarians not only to lern how to work but to make all their own tools.

Practical use for 54 years proves that this sistem wil accomplish this result, for with its aid catalogs, shelflists, indexes and references, essential to this increast usefulness, can be made faster and cheaper than by any method not having its essential features, and, when dun, they ar better and vastly more permanent. Practical utility and economy ar its keynotes and no theoretic refinement has been allowd to modify the skeme, if it wud detract from usefulness or ad to cost.

It was chiefly necesary to find a method that wud clas, arranje and index books and pamflets on shelvs, cards of a catalog, clippings and notes in scrapbooks and index rerums, references to all these items, and indeed any literary material in any form, as redily as an ordinary index gyds to proper paje of a bound book. This difficult problem was solvd by uzing

no reference marks except the simplest simbols known to the human mind, arabic numerals with their uzual arithmetic values and by aiding their unequald simplicity by many practical nemonic [mnemonic] devices

Tho the importance of clasification was recognized, the filosofic sistems proposed wer so difficult fully to understand or apply that not 1 person in 1000 cud uze them practicaly Decimal Clasification simplicity and even more its Relativ Index hav made this work 10 fold eazier In recent years, use of the sistem has spred rapidly in all civilized cuntries, meeting success in thousands of different applications In its simpl form a skoolboy can quikly master it and keep for instant reference not only his books but every note, clipping or pamflet Almost every profession and occupation has lernd its wonderful laborsaving powers It is in daily use by miriads of business and professional men who wud never even attempt to understand or uze the old sistems

By mere adition of figures, without chanjing this shorter form, this very simpl sistem is redily made to record the utmost refinements of specialists, and the Relativ Index, as simpl as a, b c, sends the novis to the exact place where the expert has clasifyd the matter sought Thus 942 is history of England, and 942 99055 is history of County Pembroke in Wales, under Elizabeth, 5th of the Tudors A colon between 2 numbers to mean 'in relation to', and other combining simbols for time, languaj etc make of the sistem a compact shorthand for each fact But this brevity is les important than the eaz with which matter so markt can be arranjed (giving figures and decimal point their common arithmetic value), stored as compactly as wisht and found agan in the least posibl time

The sistem has been found equaly valuabl for cataloging indexing analyzing and summarizing, and for clasifying, numbering and arranjing books and pamflets on shelvs

The 1st edition, publisht in 1876, 12 pajes of tables containing 1000 sections, was criticized as altogether too elaborate for even a larj library As fast, however, as the Relativ Index with its remarkabl powers became known the rapidly increasing uzers askt for further subdivisions til Tables hav grown from 2600 entries in Index of 1876 to 43 000 in this edition 12, becauz it has been found so eazy to gain the admitted great advantajes of close clasification, and yet, by means of this Index, avoid the old difficulties

Extent of use The rejister of libraries which hav actualy adopted it, tho growing rapidly, is incomplete Libraries often uze the sistem for

many years before we lern the fact We rejister all byers of the Clasification, so far as known but do not assume that a library has adopted the sistem becauz it has orderd the book A L A Bulletin, Sep 1926, p 167, estimates a use by about 14,000 libraries There is also an immense use (for which not even approximate statistics can be furnisht) by individuals with their private, business and professional colections of books pamflets etc, and in their correspondence and notes files The sistem has been adopted, not only thruout U S, but in other parts of North America, in South America, in many European cuntries, and, stil more distant, in Asia, Hawaii, Philippines, Java, Australia and Africa, and the Tables ar known to hav been translated, either wholy or in part, into French, German, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Norwegian, Russian, Hungarian, Bohemian Chinese and Japanese

The table below shows the growth of the editions

Edition	Date	Number of pajes				Copies printed
		Preface etc	Tables	Index, etc	Total	
1	1876	12	12	18	42	1000
2	1885	66	162	86	314	500
3	1888	4	227	185	416	500
4	1891	41	234	191	466	1000
5	1894	"	235	"	467	2000
6	1899	"	260	210	511	7600
7	1911	48	420	324	792	2000
8	1913	"	462	340	850	2000
9	1915	"	465	342	856	3000
10	1919	"	517	374	940	4000
11	1922	61	551	376	988	5000
12	1927	67	683	491	1243	9340
13	1932	75	902	670	1647	9750
14	1942	80	1048	799	1927	15632
15	1951	55	469	192	716	11200
15 Rev	1952	56	"	402	927	11045

What is the Sistem? A Subject Clasification with a Relativ Index [1] so numberd or letterd that reference is compact, accurate and quik, is the

[1] Tho the author is interested only in the usefulness of the sistem not in questions of priority of its invention extended investigation by others fails to show that this most important feature of the sistem—the Relativ Index on which all else hinjes—had ever before been uzed as here to index by a singl reference most diverse mate

essential feature, anything beyond this is merely applying this plan with varius helps and accessories Any subject clasification with a *relativ* index in which the entry indexes a book in the ordinary way, and also indexes shelvs, cards, clippings or any other literary material, is a form of this sistem

Notation We devized and experimented with several notations by means of numbers, letters, and combined numbers and letters, with bases of 26, 35, 50, 100 and 150, yet none seemd good enuf to warrant publishing details, except that here printed, based on simpl arabic numerals with their uzual decimal powers International adoption of this sistem is larjly becauz no one ever complains that any clasification is too simpl, while there is constant complaint of complexity Decimal simplicity has so commended itself that many think of it as the only form tho obviusly it wud be just as much a 'relativ index sistem' if the clasification wer wholy markt by letters or other simbols

The Subject Index is the simplest application of a b, c the simbols next in simplicity to 1, 2, 3 This use of the simplest 2 sets of simbols known, with their common meanings has givn our notation its worldwide reputation as the simplest yet devized

Best known decimal form Decimal form means simply that heds ar groupt and numberd with common arithmetic figures uzed decimaly This, the only decimal form thus far carefuly elaborated and publisht is commonly spoken of as if it wer the only posibl form of our orijinal plan, tho obviusly an infinit variety of relativ index sistems' in decimal form *cud* be made by filling the outline with different heds, or with the same heds in different order

To make out new heds involvs labor and cost vastly beyond the dreams of any person who has not tryd exactly this work Time actualy spent on tables here printed, by varius committees and individuals, totals hundreds of years and has cost an immense sum Uniform and urjent advice of the experienst is to adopt a poorer skeme alredy made rather than un dertake so herculean a labor When dun the maker may posibly be

rial Relativ location had been uzed, but not in the present combination with the subject index, which givs it most of its value The Clasification Tables while adopt ing sugjestions from many sources ar orijinal in their sistem of arranjement and no tation and in many minor features The decimal form and many nemonic features hav not been found in erlier use, tho since their invention in 1873 these as wel as the Subject Index and other features hav been very frequently copid often with but oftener without, aknowlejment of their source But we ar glad to find this sistem which has cost so much labor, doing good servis even for those who neglect to mention where they found so valuabl a laborsaving literary tool

better suited with it, but few if any others wil be It is wizer for anyone whose time is of value, to uze it in sumthing more practicaly useful to himself and his library than in trying to construct a 'satisfactory' skeme of clasification No one yet ever wholy suited himself or anyone else, and probably no one ever wil By adopting this alredy workt out he saves much time and money, and gains the immense advantaj of uzing a sistem in common with thousands of others, so that he may utilize their labors and investigations and share with them economies of cooperation

Relativ Subject Index This alfabetic Index, the most important feature of the sistem, consists of hedings gatherd from a great variety of sources, as uzers of the sistem hav found them desirabl in 54 years experience After all these efforts, many new heds ar aded in each new edition

The Index gyds in both numbering and finding books In assyning numbers, the most specific hed that wil contain the book having been determind, reference to that hed in Index givs proper clas number Conversely, in finding books on any givn subject, reference to Index givs number under which they ar found on shelvs, in shelflist, or in clast catalog When any new subject cums up, interline it and its sinonims in Index, with clas number decided on, so clasifyer may be uniform with himself in future work

The Index givs similar or sinonimus words, and the same words in different connections, so any inteligent person wil surely get the ryt number A reader wishing to know sumthing of the tarif looks under T, and, at a glance, finds 337 as its number This gyds him to shelvs, to all books and pamflets to shelf catalog, to clast subject catalog on cards, to clast record of loans, and, in short, in simpl numeric order, thruout the whole library to *anything* bearing on his subject If he turns to Tables, he sees that it means clas 3, Sociolojy, division 3, Economics section 7, Protection and free trade, but *the number alone is enuf to clas the book or find* it, for either clasifyer or reader If he had lookt under P for protection, or F for free trade, or D for duties, or C for customs, or under any other leading word relating to his subject, he wud hav been referd to 337, or sum one of its subdivisions

Had he lookt for 'railroad he wud hav found after it 22 separate entries, each preceded by a word or fraze indicating the faze of the subject in the skeme A book on railroads may treat of the desirability of government ownership, control etc and then is clearly a question of social syence, or it may be a practical handbook for an employee, ex

plaining business methods of railroading, running trains, handling freight, etc when it is as clearly one of the useful arts The clasifyer knows to which of these heds his book belongs, and the reader knows in which of its fazes he wishes to examin the subject Moreover, 3 and 6 beginning the numbers clearly indicate caracter of each clas But even if significance of these figures is entirely disregarded, no confuzion results, for, on consulting the numbers in catalog, in skeme, or on shelvs the difference is clearly seen In other cases, it is more useful to keep books on the same subject together, tho treated from different standpoints A glance at the Index tels either reader or clasifyer which plan has been adopted

All topics in blakface typ in Index ar further divided in Tables, where one may see the subheds This saves reprinting all these subdivisions, which wud increase Index bulk many-fold, e g if one having a book on 'prison labor' looks in the Index for 'Convict labor' or 'Prison contracts, he finds at once its special number 331 51, but if, on the other hand he thinks to look only for jeneral subject 'Labor', he finds in blakface typ the entry 'Labor, political economy, 331', and turning to Tables he finds under 331 the subdivision '331 51, Convict labor', the exact topic in hand

The greatest objection to a clast catalog has always been the difficulty in knowing just where to clas a book and just where to look for it when again wanted Different librarians, or the same librarian at different times, clast the same or similar books in widely different places Where one man did all the work for many years, there was a degree of uniformity, but even then there was danjer of looking at the same book at different times from different viewpoints, thus cauzing confuzion When the daily pres is ful of one faze of a subject, tendency is strong to clas all books on this subject from current viewpoint, and next year, if a different side of this same subject is before the public, there is same tendency to clas books from new viewpoint, therebv separating similar books and bringing together books on different fazes But fortunately practical usefulness does not require that the ideas of this or that one be followd, but only that books of same caracter be always put in same place, and that there be sum means of knowing redily what that place is The Relativ Index, with its cachwords, was desynd and is found in use to meet both these requirements, for it insures that books on same faze of any subject cuming before the clasifyers shal be assynd to same place and that any reader seeking these books shal be referd instantly to that

place If this is dun all requirements of a good clasification ar fild If it is not dun the sistem is a failure for the only real test of any skeme is its helpfulness to its uzers

Sum prominent opponents of clast catalogs admit that the Relativ Subject Index in deciding where to clas a book at first and where to look for it ever afterwards has removed their strongest objections Certainly it wud be imposibl to make an Index more compact or eazier of reference

This Index allows a great part of the work of clasifying to be dun in advance by experts in larj central libraries with ampl resources thus securing at a mere fraction of uzual cost better and more uniform results than wud be posibl to the ordinary clasifyer and reducing labor to much narrower limits than ever before

To these thousands of subjects hav been carefuly assynd their individual numbers many of them after long consideration and consultation with specialists No one person is lerned enuf to clas wizely books on all subjects and syences but botanists can assyn all botanic subjects to the ryt number mathematicians all mathematical topics and thus the Index wil in time becum as accurate as the best skolarship of the day can make it Even if the decision reacht is not always wizest all practical purposes ar servd becauz as each clasifyer copies the number from same Index all books on that subject ar together and as each reader get his number from this same Index he goes directly to the book he seeks

What Relativ Index includes The Index containing 43 000 entries and constantly being enlarjd by ading new subjects aims to include all topics exprest or implyd in Tables together with every corresponding sinonim likely to be sought but does not include most names of cuntries towns animals plants etc except when mentiond in Tables e g it can not enumerate all species of trilobites but when clasifyer has found from proper reference books that Remopleurides is a trilobite the Index sends him to 565 393 and he can clas his monograf on that subject

Tables The essential complement of the Subject Index is the Tables of Clasification so mapt out as to show in 4 ways—i e by size of typ face of typ indention and number of figures prefixt—each subject's rank in the Clasification

The field of knowlej is divided into 9 main clases numberd 1 to 9 and cyclopedias periodicals etc so jeneral as to belong to *none* of these clases ar markt 0 (naught) and form a 10th clas e g clas 1 is library of Filosofy clas 5 library of Syence clas 9 History etc These special

clases or libraries ar then considerd independently and each is sepa rated agan into 9 special divisions of the main subject numberd 1 to 9 as wer the clases jeneral works belonging to *no* division having 0 for their division number Thus 59 is division 9 (Zoolojy) of clas 5 (Syence) A 3d division is then made by separating each of these divisions into 10 sections numberd in same way with 0 and the 9 dijits and this decimal subdivision is repeated til it secures as many subsections as may be needed in any topic Thus 513 is section 3 (Jeometry) of division 1 (Mathematics) of clas 5 (Pure syence) This number giving clas divi sion section and subsection if any is cald the clas number and is ap plyd to every book and pamflet belonging to the library All jeometries ar thus numberd 513 all mineralojies 549 and so thruout the library all books on any givn subject bear the number of that subject in this skeme

Where 0 occurs before the decimal point in a clas number it has its normal zero value Thus a book numberd 510 is clas 5 division 1 but *no* section i e treats of division 51 (Mathematics) in jeneral and is limited to no 1 section as is jeometry markt 513 500 indicates a treatis on syence in jeneral limited to no division 0 occurring in the 1st place wud in the same way show that the book was limited to no clas e g a jeneral cyclopedia which treats of all 9 clases

With the same jeneral sense 0 is often uzed to indicate chanje in caracter of subdivision meaning in this case basis of subdivision chanjes at this point i e figure (or figures) following 0 apply to what precedes *in jeneral* e g 505 indicates syence in *jeneral* treated in the form of a periodical In history clasification is by cuntries (i e *jeografic*) and as minute jeografic divisions ar needed for travels gyd books and various other uses the figures 1–9 ar jeneraly uzed for jeografic subdivisions and agan for further jeografic subdivisions as far as needed and 0 followd by another figure for time division i e the figures before the 0 indicate the locality as a whole while figures after the 0 indicate the special time at which the history of the locality is being considerd e g 942 06 con sisting of 942 (*jeografic* division) and 06 (*time* division) means history of England in *jeneral* in time of the Stuarts while 942 6 and 942 67 mean respectivly history of eastern England and history of Essex co to which the same time division may be aded giving 942 606 and 942 6706 as the history of those localities under the Stuarts As any subdivision may be ading figures 1–9 be givn 9 further subdivisions any desired degree of minuteness may be secured in clasing special subjects

First subdivision under many rubrics is used for General and theoreti

questions to provide for such specific topics as ar common to all or most of the principal subdivisions of a relativly broad subject

Coordination Theoreticly division of every subject into just 9 parts is absurd Practicaly it is desirabl to clas as minutely as posibl without use of aded figures and decimals on which our skeme hinjes allow 9 divisions as redily as fewer This has proved wholy satisfactory in practis tho apparently destroying proper coordination in sum places

Where more than 9 divisions ar needed the difficulty is commonly obviated by grouping on singl numbers the subjects most closely allyd or by assyning 1–8 specificly to most important subjects and grouping minor subjects on 9 as Other Since any of these groups may be further subdivided for specific topics as needed provision is thus made for an unlimited number of subjects

As in every skeme many minor subjects ar under jeneral heds to which they do not strictly belong In sum cases these heds ar printed in distinctiv typ e g 829 Anglo Saxon under English literature The rule has been to assyn these subjects to the most nearly allyd heds or where it was thot they wud be most useful The only alternativ was to omit them altogether If any such omission occurs it wil be supplyd as soon as discoverd for we intend to provide in the Tables a place for every known topic

New subjects A new topic is always closely related to sum existing hed If there is no blank number availabl it is combined with the hed nearest allyd and when important enuf distinct provision for the new cumr is made by ading another decimal The sistem is thus capabl of unlimited expansion and can never break down for lak of room for growth

Choice and arranjement of heds Detaild explanation of selection and arranjement of the many thousand heds wud be tedius but everywhere filosofic theory and accuracy hav yielded to practical usefulness The imposibility of making a satisfactory clasification of all knowlej as preservd in books has been appreciated from the first and theoretic harmony and exactness hav been repeatedly sacrificed to practical requirements

Sequence of allyd subjects Wherever practicabl heds hav been so arranjed that each subject is preceded and followd by most nearly allyd subjects and thus aded convenience is secured both in clast catalogs and on shelvs e g Bilding (690) follows Mekanic trades (680) at end of Useful arts and Arkitecture follows at beginning of Fine arts

Students of Biolojy (570) find fossil life or Paleontolojy (560) before and vejetabl life or Botany (580) after this followd in turn by animal

life or Zoolojy (590), ending with Mammals (599), while Useful arts (600) begin with human Anatomy (611) under Medicin, thus giving a regular growth from fossil plant thru vejetabl and animal kingdoms to living man

Cachtitles In naming hedings, strict accuracy has often been sacrificed to brevity, for short familiar titles ar more important than that terms chosen shud express fully and exactly caracter of all books clast under them Many subjects, apparently omitted wil be found in the Index, assynd with allyd subjects, to a hed which bears the name of the most important only Reference to the Index wil decide at once most doutful points

Form distinctions The clasification is mainly by *subject* or *content* regardless of form but an aded form distinction for jeneral treatises is found practically useful

Thus in Syence there ar many compends, dictionaries essays, periodicals and socyeties, treating of Syence in jeneral, and so having 0 for the division figure, but treating it under different forms, and therefore divided into sections according to this form 501 for filosofy or theories of Syence, 502 for compends, 503 for dictionaries etc This treatment is as nearly as practicabl uniform in all clases Creasy's 15 decisiv battles' is 904, the 1st figure being 9, becauz the book is clearly history, the 2d figure 0 becauz limited to *no* division of clas 9 and the 3d figure 4, becauz the book is a colection of essays

The 10 main clases ar regularly divided by form e g 809 history of literature in jeneral For divisions sections or subsections having *enuf* jeneral material to make such division advizabl form numbers, preceded by 0, may be uzed (e g 820 9, history of English literature, 821 09, history of English poetry), except when 0 and the following number hav been otherwize assynd e g 821 04 English liric poetry, *not* essays on English poetry 942 05 England in time of the Tudors *not* a periodical on English history A history of English literature is 820 9, not 809 becauz every book belongs to the *most specific hed* that wil contain it so 809 is limited to histories of literature in jeneral Books treating of many clases such as jeneral cyclopedias or periodicals go in clas 0 and ar then divided by form into cyclopedias periodicals, socyeties or newspapers

Do not confuze form number 07 meaning methods of study or teaching', with number for same subject under 375 which is for its value as a means of education or for its curiculum place

These form distinctions ar introduced at the beginning of the clas be

cauz the number of jeneral works is larj and these 1st numerals wud otherwize be unuzed

Form divisions always hav the same set of numbers, preceded by 0, ie 1 filosofy, theories etc, 2 compends, outlines 3 dictionaries cyclopedias, 4 essays lectures letters etc, 5 periodicals, magazines etc, 6 so cyeties associations, transactions, reports etc, 7 education, study, teaching training etc, 8 poligrafy, colections etc, 9 history Thus a periodical on a subject has the subject number followd by 05, e g a periodical on public helth, 614 05

But if the number alredy ends in 0, 0 is not repeated before form division figures e g a zoolojic magazine is 590 5, not 590 05

Minute clasing On first publication in 1876, a common criticizm was that 1000 heds cud never be successfuly uzed, however desirabl so close clasification myt be As soon, however, as actual experience proved it as eazy to uze 1000 heds in the new sistem as 100 in the old, the obviusly great practical value of close clasing led one uzer after another to urj strongly publication of more subdivisions Minute as ar many now givn there ar none that sum hav not askt for and almost none that others hav not declared needless Subdivisions ar made in such a way that one may uze all or any part and ignore the rest without difficulty or confuzion, thus allowing each to uze minute subdivisions where he wishes or needs them without being forst into refinements in subjects where he has few books or litl interest Since the degree to which any skeme shal be applyd is optional with each clasifyer and close analisis is useful to everyone in defining content or in clarifying differences between related subjects, even elaborate skemes ar printed in ful if no essential objection has been brot against them by the best qualifyd critics The 1st 3 figures only may be uzed when preferd and the rest show the scope of the subject On many topics minute subsections ar printed simply for this purpose, and for use in indexing periodicals and socyety transactions, and in keeping notes Note typ is uzed for topics clearly useful only to specialists or as showing scope Many others probably belonging in same category, if doutful ar in regular typ of their grade

The advantaj of close clasing is unquestiond, if the uzer knows just what it is With this plan it is not only practicabl, but comparativly eazy If there ar only 10 books on a givn topic, it is useful to hav them in groups amung themselvs for otherwize they wud hav only accidental order, which is of servis to no one A reader wishing a specific book shud go, not to shelvs but to catalog where he can find its place quickest If

he wishes a specific subject, he is sent instantly to its exact place by the Subject Index If he wishes to study the library's resources at the shelvs he wil be *greatly helpt by minute clasing* A teacher showing his pupil the material on any subject wud, if there wer only 20 books, surely *put together* those covering same points, even if there wer only 2 Much more shud librarians group closely their greater colections, that readers may gain sumthing of the advantajes of an experienst gyd

Thus every specialist has his own special library If a student of syence in jeneral, he is sent to clas 5, if his department is zoolojy, his library is 59, if his specialty is shels, he finds all works and references on that subject in library 594 Whether a specialist needs it or not, every subject, being a library by itself, shows resources and wants as no catalog can A catalog can not be made to take satisfactorily the place of handling books themselvs This advantaj weighs most in a colej or socyety library, where many go to the shelvs, but even if only librarians ar admitted, close clasing is worth its cost becauz of aded power givn

Tentativ tables More and more minute subdivisions hav been specialy cald for til the 1000 heds of 1873, with 2600 index entries in edition 1, hav increast til they command 43,000 index entries, in edition 12 After getting many sugjestions, sumtimes hundreds, for aditions or further subdivisions of sum subject, we draft a skeme and test it on a sampl colection To get larjer cooperation in perfecting it we sumtimes print the new draft in Tables without including its new words in Index, so every uzer wil see what is proposed and if interested may test it on his own work and submit sugjestions for improvement Then in the next edition, with this great help, needed revisions can be made and all new words inserted in Index

As result of agreement between Institut International de Bibliographie and ourselvs we hav included in edition 12 many I I B expansions while sum other expansions recently prepared by us hav not yet, for lak of time, been submitted to I I B and must therefore, strictly speaking be regarded as tentativ til accepted by that body, but as these expansions wer developt with view to such acceptance we look for litl chanje and their larj number has made it impractical to designate them

Nemonics [mnemonics] Heds hav sumtimes been arranjed to secure nemonic aid in numbering and finding books without the Index thus China has always number 1 In Ancient history, it has the 1st section, 931, in Modern history, under Asia it has 951 Similarly the Indian number is 4, English, 2, German, 3, French, 4, Italian 5, Spanish 6 Russian,

7, European, 4, Asian, 5, African, 6, North American 7, South American, 8, and so for all divisions by languajes or cuntries Italian 5, for instance, is in 035, 055, 065, 450, 850, 945, and other many others This nemonic principl is specialy prominent in Filolojy and Literature, and their divisions, and in *form* distinctions uzed in the 1st 9 sections of each clas Filosofy, methods or theory, occurring as a hed, is always 1, dictionaries and cyclopedias ar 3, essays, 4, periodicals 5, associations, socyeties and institutions, 6, education, 7, poligrafy or colections, 8, history, 9 In numerus cases several minor heds ar groupt together as Other, uzualy numberd 9

While Italian is always 5, 5 is by no means always Italian Grammar is 5, Periodicals ar 5, Asia is 5, Oratory is 5, etc Even wer it posibl, to limit 5 to Italian wud waste numbering material, and results wud not justify cost The purpose is to giv practical aid, not to follow fanciful theory A clasifyer marking a French grammar, remembers that all Filolojy begins with 4, and, as French is always 4 and grammar 5, he knows the number *must* be 445 Italian (5), poetry (1), is plainly 851 with no danjer of being mistaken for 'poetry of grammar' or 'theory of Asia,' becauz the numbers also hav those meanings This feature is an *aid*, not regular method, and in all doutful cases one refers at once to Index or Tables Sugjested difficulties ar uzualy creations of injenius theorists and not outgrowth of practical experience

Wherever practical, this nemonic principl is uzed in subdividing sections 558, Jeolojy of South America, is subdivided by ading the *sections* of 980, History of South America Jeolojy of Brazil then *must* be 558 1 nemonicly, the 1st 5 is Syence, 2d 5, Jeolojy, 8, South America, and 1, Brazil Any library attendant or regular uzer of the skeme recognizes 558 1 at a glance as Jeolojy of Brazil This nemonic feature occurs in several hundred places, and is of great practical utility in numbering and finding books without catalog or index, and in determining caracter of any book simply from its call number Extent of use is shown in 5 tables appended to main Index, giving alfabetic lists of (1) subjects, with clas number of each, which may be subdivided jeograficly, (2) form divisions, with figures to be aded in making such division, (3) languajes, with their clas numbers, which may be further subdivided filolojicly by ading figures givn in Index table 4, (4) filolojic divisions, with figures to be aded in subdividing any languaj in Index table 3, (5) literatures, with their clas numbers, which may be further subdivided by ading form divisions from English literature

As in close subdivision, wish for nemonic correspondence has never outweighd any claim of greater usefulness In many cases choice between numbers was hardly perceptibl e g whether in filolojy order shud be French, Spanish, Italian, or French, Italian, Spanish In such cases nemonic numbers wer givn preference, and 54 years use has proved this wizest Great gain, beside eaz of remembering, results from this *uniform* use of same numbers with same meaning whenever similar division is made Wherever division by languajes or cuntries is made, it follows filolojy or history numbers, and in Tables, the note 'Divided like 900 fully takes the place of reprinting all history subdivisions This saving justifys use of these numbers in sum cases, even where a sumwhat different order myt seem more nearly fitted to the special case, e g in 342, constitutional history of Canada (342 71) and Australia (342 94) next that of England (342 42) wud be better than our order which separates them both from England and from each other Stil by following the uzual 'procrustean' numbers, many topics can be subdivided minutely without further study, by simply applying history or languaj subdivisions A singl ilustration of the astonishing power this principl givs wil suffice, tho thousands myt be givn 016 is Bibliografy of special subjects, divided like main clasification', therefore by aid of tables under 581, 016 581974742 redily translates itself to all uzers into 'Bibliografy of flora of Albany co, N Y' While these 12 figures myt never be uzed, if a specialist wishes minute division, it is redy to his hand, conforms to Index, and wil be clearly understood by anyone familiar with our plan A specialist wud in such cases probably adopt a contraction for his long number, and uze in ful only the minute divisions

Decimalism Utility has not been sacrificed in order to force subjects on the decimal procrustean bed *Decimals hav been uzed as servants, not as masters* When subjects ar combined or separated into just 10 heds, it has been from no necesity of the skeme, but becauz it seemd most useful, all things considerd In many cases there wer orijinaly only 3 to 7 heds insted of 10, but uzualy, during years of testing before publication, it proved advizabl to divide sum of these heds, as it took no aded space or labor On the other hand, there wer cases where more than 10 heds seemd more natural and, as any number up to 100 is provided for by ading one decimal, this was dun in most cases As only 1000 sections wer first printed, it was often necesary to put 2 or more closely allyd topics together under the same number, as must stil be dun whenever a library limits number of figures uzed to 3, but during 54

years use subdivisions hav multiplyd, til now nearly every topic has its own special number The skeme givs us for each topic, as it wer, a case of 9 pijeonholes, with a larj space at the top, and we uze them as every practical business man uzes such pijeonholes about his desk If, as in 220, there ar les than 9 main topics, it is often convenient to uze the extra spaces for subdivisions Thus we keep separate, under Old Testament, historic, poetic, and profetic books, and under New Testament, the Gospels, Epistls and Apocalips Spaces ar there, and it is convenient to uze them for jeneral works on those groups—a reason that experience proves a good anser to the charj of lak of coordination, tho indention and typ in Tables make that charj baseless Then in 280, having more than 9 topics, if we ar uzing only 3 figures we put Congregational in same space with Presbyterian, and small denominations together in the last box, just as a business man puts his papers in his pijeonholes If he insisted on having a different case made to order for each use, it wud cost over twice as much, he cud not group them together or interchanje them, and they wud not fit offis shelvs

There has been perverse misapprehension of this feature, and critics oftenest stumbl over 'procrustean 10'. In fact, this is an element of usefulness A railroad also has the fault that it is procrustean in its path and in its times It can not cum to yur door nor wait yur convenience, as does the automobile, it can not go to the fields for its loads of produce, it can not turn out for obstacls, but *becauz it is procrustean* it can do its larj scale work much better and quicker and cheaper The paralel cud be fairly extended to many other cases, but any thotful mind wil recognize that the economy and eaz of working the Decimal sistem ar larjly dependent on its being procrustean To this we owe much of the great simplicity of the Relativ Index, many nemonic correspondences, and the useful 0 to indicate form and period divisions Our intersecting lines of space and time in History, etc , of languaj and form in Filolojy and Literature, and scores of similar advantajes, depend wholy on 'procrustean 10', or else on sum other number equaly procrustean, but lacking the advantajes of exact correspondence to our arithmetic

Relativ location Economy and simplicity cald not only for the Subject Index, but also for sum plan of consolidating the 2 sets of marks previusly uzed, one teling *what* subject a book treated, the other *where* the book was shelvd By relativ location and decimal clas numbers we make our simpl arabic numerals tel of each book and pamflet, both *what* it is, and *where* it is

In fixt relation, to find book, pamflet, clipping or note is like finding a man when yu know his town, street, hous and room

In relativ location it is like finding a soldier if yu know his army, division, rejiment and cumpany If John Smith is 3d man in 2d row of Cumpany B, rejiment 69, 4th division, whether the rejiment is in camp, on parade or on march, his place is not determind by the bit of ground on which he stands, but by his relation to the rest of the army If soldiers ar ded and in the cemetery they ar as eazily found by fixt as by relativ location But if the army is alive and militant, as every library or private working colection o't to be, its resources shud be *findabl* whether in camp, on march or in action

In arranjing books on shelvs, the formerly common absolute or fixt location by shelf and book number is wholy abandond, relativ location by clas and book number being our chief feature Accumpanying clas number is the book number, which prevents confuzion of different books on the same subject In finding books, numbers markt on baks ar followd, the upper being the clas and the lower the book number Clas is found in its numeric order amung clases, just as shelf is found in fixt sistems Shelvs ar not numbrd, as increasing different departments, opening new rooms, and any arranjing of clases to bring books most circulated nearest delivery desk, wil at different times bring different clas numbers on any givn shelf New books, as recievd, ar numberd and put in place, in same way that new titles ar aded to card catalog

Thus all books on any givn subject stand together, and no aditions or chanjes ever separate them Not only ar found together all books on sub ject sought, but most nearly allyd subjects precede and follow they in turn being preceded and followd by other allyd subjects as far as practicabl Readers not having access to shelvs find short titles arranjed in same order in shelflist, and ful titles, imprints, aded subject entries, references, notes etc in clast catalog

Parts of sets, and books on same or allyd subjects, ar never separated as they ar sure to be, sooner or later, in a library arranjed on fixt plan unless it be frequently rearranjed and recatalogd, a procedure too expensiv even for very welthy libraries Relativ sistem clas and book numbers remain unchanjed thru all chanjes of shelving, bildings or order of clases

Amung hundreds of points raizd by librarians as to its practical workings and usefulness, the only one in which it was not shown to be equal

or superior to erlier sistems was that in this relativ location a book which this year stands e g at the end of a certain shelf, may not be on that shelf at all another year, becauz of uneven growth of parts of the library This slyt objection, however, inheres in any sistem where books ar arranjed by subjects, rather than by shelvs, windows, doors, and similar non intelectual distinctions

Sizes on shelvs Most libraries hav abandond close distinction of sizes It is true that this distinction saves a litl space, but at far too great a cost for every distinction of sizes makes a paralel clasification If books ar groupt in 5 sizes, one must look in 5 places before he can be sure of having seen them all

It is better to shelv octavos and all smaller books together in 1 series and arranje in paralel libraries only quartos and folios, which ar too larj to stand on regular shelvs showing series in which any oversize book is put by a size letter prefixt to the book or clas number, e g 749 qA or q749 A shows that book A on Artistic furniture is too larj for regular shelvs, and so is placed in q or quarto series Or uze a wood or paste board dummy to show location of a book not in its regular place But, however solvd size problems ar no more trublsum with Decimal than with any other clasification

Catalogs

Any sistem of catalogs may be uzed with this skeme, but the 2 es sentials of even the simplest sistem ar name or author catalog and shelf list The chief uses of this sistem for catalogs ar for shelflists and for clast catalogs on cards

Name catalog In this arranjed strictly by names of authors and of persons or places writn about, the clas number holds a subordinate place yet is constantly useful If printed it appears in a singl colum as in the Relativ Index, and where there is no subject catalog one can rap idly pik out books on any topic by glancing down colum for clas number wanted

Shelflist Here clas number is again hyly important, as it makes this list the most useful form of brief subject catalog giving author's name and brief title of every book on specific subject bearing that clas num ber

Clast catalog In the clast card catalog the clasification is mapt out

abuv the cards by projecting gyds, making reference almost instantaneus Subjects ar arranjed in 1, 2, 3 order of their decimal subject numbers exactly as in clas tables, and cards of each subject ar then subarranjed alfabeticly by authors (or, in sum cases, e g biografy or local history, by subjects) or cronolojicly, or by book numbers

The printed subject catalog on this plan is also most compact and satisfactory in use Under each clas number ar givn the library s resources on that subject, the heding giving for convenience name as wel as number of subject, e g '513 Jeometry' Jeneral notes ar printed in finer typ under jeneral heds, and a relativ index at the end shows just where to open the book to find any topic As clas numbers ar put in place of paje numbers, this index servs for *any* catalog, list or library arranjed on this plan

Dictionary catalog The dictionary catalog is as eazily uzed with this sistem as with any other, and is at present on the crest of its wave of popularity Its failure to meet skolars' requirements has often been pointed out While far the best for an index it stil leavs much need of a good clast catalog But difficulties both of making and of uzing a clast catalog wer formerly so great that there was a conviction amung many librarians that notwithstanding its great advantajes, the idea must be abandond as impracticabl tho other eminent authorities ably argued that the poorest clast catalog was better than one unclast and that any use of such a catalog was in itself a lesson in bibliografy Now that the serius difficulties of making a good clast catalog hav been so larjly removed by the simpl arabic numerals and Relativ Index of this decimal plan, the merits of clast over the more common dictionary sistems ar dubly prominent

The Subject Index of this sistem is a skeleton dictionary catalog covering everything not fully coverd by the 'name catalog Insted of giving book titles under each hed, the number *refers* to all those titles simply and directly The index may be made on any of the varius dictionary plans, with all the advantajes it may possess To us, simplest seemd best We giv only short heds with brief indication in doutful cases of view point taken in assyning clas numbers

We therefore unite advantajes of dictionary and clast catalogs not by mingling them and so losing much of simplicity of one and as much of excelence of the other, but by realy uzing both, each with its own merits Only one set of titles is needed for our clas numbers make this availabl for both catalogs

Advantajes

Shelvs The sistem on the shelvs is the simplest form of relativ location Many libraries hav adopted it for shelf arranjement, where catalogs recently printed, or larj investment in another plan, made it too expensiv to chanje anything else

Shelflist By simply printing the shelflist at any time an admirabl subject clas list is made for any topic on which there may be present interest, e g if a town contemplates a new water supply, interest is greatly stimulated, and everything about waterworks is wanted The librarian has only to open his shelflist to 628 1 and 352 6 and print it. This great advantaj is gaind with but slyt variation from the form found best in its regular use as a shelflist for examination of shelvs to detect losses and misplacements

Accession book Where shelf mark colums ar uzed, tables of number of books aded on each subject ar redily made A glance shows caracter, by subjects, of books aded during any givn period, for, wherever this clas number occurs, it tels not only *where* the book is shelvd but also *what* it is about

Pamflets These clas numbers applyd to pamflets, whether catalogd or uncatalogd, hav proved specialy satisfactory Number is writn on upper left corner, and pamflets ar shelvd in pamflet boxes, side by side with books on same subject, or they may be kept in vertical files or on special shelvs divided every 10 cm by perpendicular partitions, or, if preferd, each pamflet may be put in exact place as if bound Litl expense is incurd, and yet entire pamflet resources of the library on any subject can be produced almost instantly The immense advantajes of this clast arranjement, both in economy and usefulness, wil be appreciated by every keeper of a pamflet colection A name or author catalog is made on slips if time allows The pamflets themselvs ar the best subject catalog Placing all material under its clas number on regular shelvs, has the great advantaj of enabling anyone examining a subject to see all resources in 1 place, so far as posibl

Sale duplicates The same arranjement is admirabl here Duplicates ar so constantly chanjing that a catalog can hardly be afforded, and a sub ject arranjement on any other plan that this is difficult to maintain, Stil, it is very important that there be sum means of knowing what duplicates there ar on any givn subject By simply penciling clas numbers on books

and arranjing these numericly, it is posibl to giv the information more quikly, cheaply and satisfactorily than in any other way

Charjing sistem Clas numbers may be uzed for charjing with the following advantajes Minutest statistics of circulation can be made by simply counting charjes and entering the number for each clas on a report sheet If filing is dun by call numbers, as either a primary or a secondary consideration, whereabouts of any book lent or amount of use of any subject is quikly found, file givs an up to date record of all books lent in any subject, e g cards filed under 52 show for Astronomy or those under 822 for English drama just how many and what books ar out and who hav them Such a circulation table, always at hand, and with no extra expense or labor, since it is a natural part of the sistem is hyly prized by all interested in caracter of jeneral use of the library while it can by trifling labor be converted into a permanent record by entering on a report sheet If a reader's card is uzed, caracter of the individual's reading is here shown and never before has so much attention as now been givn to educating readers' tastes

Subject references For these it has peculiar advantajes Many uzers ar undertaking analises and cros references to an extent hitherto tho't wholy or almost imposibl These few figures tel as clearly as a long heding exactly what the reference is, while gain in eaz of use is even greater than in time and space saved in recording The clearness and directness of the method aid wonderfuly in this work References to transactions, or chapters in essays, may be made in the most compact and uzabl form

Recataloging or reclasifying When Amherst College in 1873 first adopted this plan and began to recatalog its library it was found (as in hundreds of cases since) entirely practicabl to chanje to the new sistem gradualy, as means allowd, without interfering in any appreciabl degree with circulation Methods employd for thus chanjing without interrupting use must vary according to different conditions The essential feature is enuf distinction between old and new call numbers to be eazily recognized by attendants If old call numbers consist wholy of figures the initial letter of the Cutter author numbers furnishes this requisit All numbers of figures only ar then recognized as old, and all numbers containing a letter as in the new sistem

Adaptability The sistem is so flexibl that it adapts itself to almost any circumstances It may be uzed with proportionate results in almost any one of its applications without the others It may be applyd to pamflets alone, bringing order out of caos, and solving this vext and vexing prob

lem, or it may be uzed for catalogs, leaving shelf arranjement as before or it may be applyd to shelvs, while the catalog is dictionary or any other typ

Arabic numerals Arabic numerals can be writn and found quicker and with les danjer of confuzion or mistake than any other simbols Therefore roman numerals capitals and small letters, and similar simbols found in most clasification sistems ar entirely discarded, and by exclusiv use of arabic numerals thruout shelvs and indexes catalogs and other records, there is secured the greatest accuracy, economy and convenience This advantaj is specialy prominent in comparison with sistems where author's name or the title must be writn in calling for or charjing books and in making references

Endowment of special departments Another great advantaj is peculiar adaptability to special endowments One specialy interested in any subject can often be induced to endow that subject thus providing for bying each year all the best publications

If John Doe is specialy interested in opera the library says 'Giv us $1000 as endowment of 782, and we wil call it the Doe Library of Dramatic Music' There wil be found every book, pamflet, newspaper clipping or manuscript that the library has or can get on this subject Gifts from others wil be placed in the Doe Library, the donor s name being givn on the bookplate and for jenerations to cum every person interested in opera wil be grateful for yur foundation' In this way 782 is assynd to John Doe, and his pride is stimulated in developing it If another man with larjer means and interest wil endow the whole subject of music 780, there is no difficulty or impropryety in including 782, the Doe Dramatic Music Library, as the 2d section of 780, the Roe Music Library

This is one of the most promising fields for development, for almost every library has amung its readers sum specialy interested who if properly approacht wud endow sum topic, even if a small one and this relativ location, with its definit number expressing just the ground coverd, may be of great servis in working up these special endowments

Summary To sum up its claims It is by far most inexpensiv, eazily understood, rememberd and uzed practical rather than theoretic, brief and familiar in nomenclature, susceptibl of partial and gradual adoption without confuzion convenient for arranjing pamflets, sale duplicates, and notes and for indexing, and in keeping statistics and cheks for books off shelvs, a satisfactory adaptation of card catalog principl to shelvs It

shelvs books compactly, uzes simpl and few simbols, can be expanded, without limit and without confuzion or wasted labor, both in catalogs and on shelvs or in catalogs alone, cheks thuroly and conveniently against mistakes, admits redily numerus cros references, is unchanjeabl in its call numbers, and so givs them in all places where needed, in its Index affords an anser to the greatest objection to clast catalogs, and was the 1st satisfactory union of the advantajes of clast and dictionary sistems.

Sugjestions to uzers

Hold book in ryt hand and turn with left, then both clas numbers and index heds show most plainly on left marjins and reference is quicker when eye follows left pajes only

Numeration In thinking or speaking of clas numbers, to avoid confuzion always divide at the decimal point, and name it, e g read 942 27 'nine forty-two, point twenty seven', never 'ninety-four two twenty-seven' If 'point' wer omitted, the ear myt redily interpret 270 2 (two seventy, two) as 272, while 'two seventy, point two' can never be misunderstood.

Plan of book

Tables First paje shows 10 clases into which all topics ar divided Next paje shows 9 divisions of each of these 10 clases, in a birdseye view of the whole skeme on a singl paje Then follows a sinoptic view of 10 pajes, one for each clas showing the 9 sections of each division of each clas

Following these sinopses is the complete clasification, which repeats in proper order, clases, divisions and sections, with all subsections For convenience of uzers, who thus get fuller and clearer ideas of the field which each number covers sinonimus terms, exampls brief notes, dates and varius cachwords ar often aded to main heds Therefore all refer ences to numbers shud be lookt up in the ful tables of subsections, uzing summaries only when a merely sinoptic view is wisht

Index Next an alfabetic index of all heds refers by clas number to exact place of each in Tables This Index includes also, as far as found, all sinonims or alternativ names for heds, and any other entries likely to help a reader find his subject more redily Even a uzer who knows just

where to turn to his subject in the Tables, may, by consulting the Index, be put on the trak of valuabl allyd matter which he myt otherwize overlook

Use of Tables and Index

Familiarity with Clasification Get a jeneral knowlej of the skeme by lerning the 10 main clases (yu wil soon know the 100 divisions also without special study) so that yu can tel to what subject a givn number belongs from its 1st figure, without referring to Tables Specific knowlej of minute divisions wil cum gradualy, but rapidly, from use Assyn numbers by uzing Tables alone, and then always verify yur result by the Index Thus yu wil more rapidly acquire knowlej of the Clasification and facility in its use To do this decide first to which of the 10 clases the subject belongs, next, take that clas as if there wer no other, and decide to which of its 10 divisions the subject belongs, then, in the same way, select section and subsection, thus running down yur topic in its groovs, which becum 10-fold narrower at each step As a chek against error, even tho familiar with the skeme, uze Index freely

Subject of a book To find this out, consult

1 **Title**, since it is jeneraly chosen to show what the book is about, but as many titles ar vague or misleading never clas from title alone but always examin also

2 **Contents table**, which is best gyd to true subject If there is no contents table read

3 **Hedings of chapters**, or marjinal topics

4 **Preface** Unless alredy certain glance thru this to each author's viewpoint and verify impressions gaind from title and contents

5 **Reference books** If preceding means fail, consult relyabl bibliografies clast and annotated catalogs biografic dictionaries histories of literature, cyclopedias, reviews etc for information about caracter of book

6 **Subject matter** If 5 shorter methods abuv fail, examin subject matter of book itself, and if stil in dout, to avoid mistakes, put aside on an 'under consideration' shelf til yu can examin more thuroly or consult

7 **Specialists** Experts ar uzualy glad to examin any new books in their departments, enuf to clas them, i e to define their true subject and relations Old ones they know where to put alredy

Be specialy careful when dealing with flexibl terms, e g child welfare,

to make sure of the caracter of its application in that individual book

After deciding what the book is about, find this subject in Tables, either thru Index or by uzing Tables directly, which for beginners is a longer process, seldom to be trusted without subsequent reference to Index, e.g Pollock's *Land laws* myt naturaly be clast from Tables alone as '333, Land ownership, ryts, rent', which seems exactly to fit this book Index, however, shows 2 numbers, both referring to land laws, but from different viewpoints, i e 347.2, legal, and 333, economic The object of this book, as seen in the preface, is to giv a popular presentation of English statutes pertaining to landholding, not to discuss history and theory of land laws from economist's viewpoint It should be clast '347 2, Realty', which myt hav been overlookt but for Index

Assyning clas numbers 1 Practical usefulness controls *Put each book under the subject to the student of which it is most useful*, unless local reazons 'attract' it to a place stil more useful in yur library

2 *Content* or real subject of which a book treats, and not *form* or accidental wording of title, determins its place Following this rule, put a filosofy of art with Art, not with Filosofy, a history of mathematics with Mathematics, not with History, for filosofy or history is simply the *form* which these books hav taken Their true content or subject is Art or Mathematics, and to the student of these subjects they ar most useful

3 Always remember that the question is not 'where wil one probably look for a certain book, but 'under what subject is the book of greatest value', e g it is of litl consequence whether one wud be apt to look' under 595 16 for Darwin s *Formation of vegetable mould*, but of much consequence that one studying erthworms shud find that book in 595 16 Erthworms, since it is chiefly valuabl as a study of erthworms habits Anyone wanting that special book shud look for it in catalog under Darwin

4 Giv every book most specific number which wil contain it This varies in different libraries according to number of figures uzed e g specific number for 'compulsory vaccination' is 614 4738, but in a library uzing only 3 figures, most specific number posibl is 614, which must take everything on Public helth

Sumtimes a library unwizely puts all books of a division together, if but few, e g all mathematical works ar markt 510 It takes just as many figures and in most cases just as much labor and if a man wants the 1 calculus in the whole library he has to serch thru perhaps 100 volumes in 510, when otherwize he wud instantly find it standing alone as 517

5 'Predominant tendency' or obvius purpose of a book uzualy decides its number at once Stil a book often treats of 2 or more subjects In such cases put it where it wil be most useful, and make aded entries for all subordinate subjects For a clast catalog giv the aded entry numbers on both bookplate and main subject card as wel as on aded entry cards

It is a markt advantaj that these aded entries notes etc may be made from time to time at convenience It is necesary at first to determin only predominant tendency of book in order to clas it aded entries ar made whenever found desirabl

Supply these numbers indicating more closely caracter of book as rapidly as posibl, and invite all specialists in connection with their reading, to call attention to every desirabl aded topic notist The numbers take litl room, ar eazily aded and in most cases ar very valuabl

6 If 2 subjects hav distinct paje limits, jeneraly clas under 1st and make analitic entry under 2d, but if 2d is decidedly more important or much greater in bulk clas under that, with analitic entry under 1st Always put a book under 1st subject, unless there is good reazon for entering it under another

7 Consider not only scope and tendency of each book, but also [illegible] and specialties of each library

Any subject of which a library makes a specialty naturaly 'attracts' allyd subjects This influence is strongest in minute clasing To ad[illegible] this variation, many subjects hav in this skeme 2 or more places according to these different sides e g a book on skool hyjiene', which a medical library puts under 613 has also a place in 371.7, where education specialists require it

8 If a book treats of a majority of the sections of any division, giv it division number insted of most important section number with aded entries Unless sum one section is so prominently treated as to warrant placing the book in it, clas a book covering 4 or more sections under division number e g clas a volume on lyt, heat and sound under [illegible] most fully discust with aded entries for the others, but if it treats also of mekanics, hydrostatics and neumatics, clas as 530, or jeneral fisics tho no mention be made of electricity magnetism or molecular fisics

9 When a book deals with 2 consecutiv and closely allyd subjects jeneraly clas with 1st and regard this as including 2d but if 2d is decidedly predominant clas with this and either disregard 1st or make aded entry, according to importance of that portion

10 To secure uniformity, make for future reference ful notes of all

difficulties and decisions, for it is more important to put books on same subject *together* than to put them in a more nearly absolutely correct place These notes shud be writn on broad marjins of the Clas Tables or in an interleavd copy or on P slips arranjed by clas numbers like a clast catalog

11 Keep colected works, libraries etc together, and assyn, like individual books, to most specific hed that wil contain them or assyn to most prominent of varius subjects treated, with aded entries for others, or, better, separate and clas parts as independent works

This last practis constantly grows in favor, and many librarians now larjly disregard uniform bindings and 'series' lettering and, unless contents of volumes ar so connected that they can not be separated, clas each under most specific hed that wil contain it

12 Clas translations, reviews, keys, analises, ansers and other books *about* specific books with orijinal book, as being there most useful

Number of figures uzed in clas number Decide this according to circumstances in each library Small libraries often uze minute subsections beyond 3 figures only in certain divisions like Travel, 913-919, where closer jeografic division is specialy needed, and in 400 and 800, when a 4th figure is needed to separate different languajes

In very small colections 2 figures myt do til growth required further division, but it is economy, and saves handling books again to uze at least 3 figures at first, even in smallest colections In larjer or rapidly growing libraries all subdivisions may be uzed for same reazon tho number of books may not then seem to justify it Whether there ar 1 or 1000 books on any topic, they take no more shelf space if clast minutely and work is dun once for all When larj accessions cum, even if a century later, this number wil not hav to be alterd A library having but 20 books on Education myt think it unwize to uze the ful skeme, but the whole 20 wud go on a singl shelf, and take no more room and the Index wud refer more exactly to what was wanted Number of books yu hav on any subject has in this sistem no special weight In relativ location any number of consecutiv topics without a book wastes no space on shelvs or in catalogs Numbers ar merely skipt This not only does no harm, but has great negativ value, as looking for a number and finding it blank or skipt shows that yu *hav nothing on that subject*—information 2d in value only to finding sumthing, for one need no longer serch

The practical objection to close clasing is that it givs a longer number when this is uzed to charj by in a lending library In a reference library

ful subsections shud always be uzed Where short numbers ar imperativ, giv ful clas number on another part of the bookplate, not to be uzed in charjing, but as a gyd to contents. Thus when a clasifyer has once examind a book and found out just what it is about, he records it to benefit others

Bilding numbers

Jeografic divisions In dividing by cuntries according to note 'Divided like 930–999', found so often in Tables, ad only the number following initial 9, for this 9 means not localíty but simply clas 9, History, e g 942, history of England, analyzd is 9 history, 42 England (4 Europe, 2 England). If jeolojy of England is wanted, ad to 55 (jeolojy number) 42 (number for England) and yu hav 554.2 History of N Y state is 974 7, of which 747 is locality number, 353 9747, number for N Y state administration, is bilt by ading to number for state administration, 353 9, number for N Y state, 747

Languaj and literature In 890, where directed to 'divide like 490', note that 890, Minor literatures, and 490, Minor languajes, correspond exactly, so that only figures following 49 ar to be aded to 89 to bild a minor literature number, e g Polish languaj is 491 85, ading 185 to 89, Minor literatures, givs 891 85 Polish literature In brief, to form literature from filolojy numbers substitute 8 for 1st figure, 4, e g Sanskrit languaj 491 2, Sanskrit literature 891 2 Under 490, the filolojic divisions (dictionaries, grammar etc), and under 890 the form divisions (poetry, drama etc) shud be uzed only when clas number represents a *specific* languaj or literature, e g 491 7 Russian, but *not* 497 North American, awaiting further division by languaj

If directed to 'divide like main clasification', as in 016, number for required subject is aded exactly as it stands in Tables, e g bibliografy of Polish poetry, 016 891851

Combining numbers in a way not printed in Tables must be dun with great care, or confuzion results Many uzers, fascinated with the posibilities of the sistem, make combinations more injenius than useful, e g 'The horse's foot and how to shoe it' was once markt 636 1682, i e blaksmithing number, 682, aded to horse number, 636 1 Horseshoeing is now in Tables as 682 1, while 636 168 means American ponies

Often a clasifyer ads a figure to show sum distinction It seems short and desirabl, but later he may find he has shut himself off from uzing

sum other division greatly preferd For his personal aditions, letters or other simbols not numbers shud be uzed Every aded simbol must be clearly writn in Tables and Index Never trust memory for decisions

Book numbers

The call number of a book (number by which it is cald for) jeneraly consists of both clas and book numbers The same clas number applys to all books on same subject, the book number distinguishes each individual work from all others in that clas, and is the same for all volumes or copies of same work When a specific volume is wanted the number for that volume must be aded to clas and book numbers to complete the call number Most important methods of assyning book numbers ar

Author numbers Invention of translation sistems by which a name is represented by its initial, with remaining letters translated into numbers, e g Freeman, F85, has led most libraries to arranje books under each clas number alfabeticly by authors or in local history by towns, or in individual biografy and bibliografy by biografees and bibliografees This keeps together all works by same author or on same town or same biografee, etc and even in larj clases enables one to find any book redily without consulting catalogs One great advantaj is that same author has same book number in every subject, i e figures ar 'significant' like our clas numbers, and translate themselvs into names Great practical nemonic convenience results from this form of book number Most widely uzed of these translation sistems is C A Cutter s, known as 'Cutter numbers', publisht by Library Bureau

Special author tables A 2d method, for authors having special numbers, e g Shakspere, 822 33, or Milton, 821 47, is uniform use for such authors, of book numbers A-N, with O Z assynd on basis of their individual works, as ilustrated under 'Special author tables', on pajes following Relativ Index

Time numbers A 3d arranjement of books under clas numbers is cronolojic by date of 1st publication Its advantaj is in presenting historic development of subject, the book writn erliest being on the left, the latest work on the ryt, and then of any givn book it is evident that all those on the left wer writn before it, all those on the ryt after it In syence and useful arts this has special value, while in literature author arranjement is better W S Biscoe's translation sistem of dates givs a more compact and satisfactory mark for year than date writn in ful (For ful

explanations and table see 'Biscoe time numbers', on pajes following Relativ Index)

Accession order A 4th arranjement simpler but otherwize les desirabl, is in accession order, 1st book put in a clas being numbrd 1, and 2d 2, the 3d 3

It is entirely practicabl to uze 2, 3 or all 4 of these methods at same time in same library, one peculiarity of the sistem being the eaz with which it may be adapted to almost any special circumstances The advantajes of the cronolojic numbering ar most markt in syence and useful arts the alfabetic is best in clases where names of authors or subjects outrank dates, and special author numbers in cases where clas number alredy indicates author, so corresponding indication in book number wud be useless duplication, while the old accession-order plan is good in special colections which must be kept separate and ar no longer aded to, since here the extreme simplicity of 1, 2, 3 order is secured with no sacrifice It is stil better, if this last method is uzed, to adopt A, B, C, insted of 1, 2, 3, as 26 insted of 9 books may be markt with 1 caracter, and chiefly becauz it is hyly desirabl that each book number begin with a letter, which can not be mistaken for end of clas number if writn on same line, e g 1st book under 513, if numberd 1, myt be so writn as to confuze with subsection 513 1, but 513A cud not be misinterpreted If figures ar uzed, take care to write them as a fraction or with separating dash, e g 513 or 513–1
1

Variations practicabl in adjusting to special local requirements

Sum uzers assume that adopting Decimal Clasification and Relativ Index carries with it other parts of the sistem uzed by the author at Amherst Wellesley or Columbia colejes or in New York State Library In fact, the plan in each differd sumwhat from all the others, and many of the thousands of public and private libraries now uzing it hav adopted stil other variations, for special constituency, circumstances and resources of each library must be considerd in deciding what is best for it This decision shud be made by one familiar, not only with the library and its needs, but also with all methods of any merit and with comparativ eaz and cost of introducing them into any givn library

Cautions Having decided to adopt this sistem in its *decimal* form as workt out and printed determin whether to adopt certain variations,

noted ın 1–5 below as practıcabl, and ın sum cases useful and desirabl The ınexperienst uzer ıs very lıkely to feel entırely competent, wıthout readıng more than a sıngl paje of the Tables, regardless of ıts bearıngs on hundreds of other places, and without so much as lookıng at the author's explanatıons, to ınstıtute a serıes of 'ımprovements' Experıence shows that nothıng cud be more dısastrus It seems a sımpl matter to put a topıc a lıne hyer or lower, but ın sum cases thıs may affect over 100 Index entrıes, and there ıs no posıbl way to be sure of correcting them except by examınıng each of 43,000 heds Proposed chanjes, carefuly studıd out and submıtted as ımprovements, ar frequently shown by our old records to hav been adopted and uzed ın the exact form proposed tıl unforeseen consıderatıons forst us to chanje to the form as prınted Even after years of experıence one ıs not safe ın pronouncıng on an apparent ımprovement wıthout consultıng volumınus records of prevıus experıments

Even sum who hav uzed the sıstem longest hav been mısled ınto adoptıng chanjes whıch on tryal they wer compeld to reject, goıng bak to orıjınal form at cost and confuzıon of 2 chanjes In so apparently sımpl a thıng as ıntroducıng subdıvısıons on blank numbers, mıstakes ar often made, and when too late to correct them the makers regret theır neglect to consult the edıtor and secure advıce and cooperatıon of those most famılıar wıth the manıfold ınterrelatıons Even wer the ındependent dıvısıons equaly good, they do not agree wıth those whıch wıl later be prınted ın Tables and Index, so that every copy of the prınted skeme wıl hav to be corrected ın manuscrıpt before ıt ıs uzabl ın that lıbrary The only safe rule ıs to *make no chanjes or subdıvısıons* without submıtting them to the edıtor, who wıl gladly advıze on such matters wıthout charj, not on ground of any superıor wızdom, nor even becauz of larjer experıence ın thıs specıal work, but becauz ın thıs way only can ıt be lernd ıf correspondıng subdıvısıons hav been alredy assynd sumwhat dıfferently

A uzer who adopts prınted form avoıds crıtıcızm sure to be aımd at any posıbl skeme The moment he makes 1 'ımprovement' he must defend all hıs heds or alter them to suıt each crıtıc Much tıme ıs saved by sayıng that the skeme ıs uzed as prınted, and blunders ar the author's, not the uzer's A lıst of chanjes made by others wıthout consultatıon was wrıtn for thıs cautıon, but ıs omıtted lest ıt seem ınvıdıus It ılustrates how eazy ıt ıs for able men to make what no one questıons after explanatıon to hav been outryt blunders, ın ımprovıng and adıng to' the

printed skeme We ar always grateful for sugjestions from anyone, and, having alredy spent so much time in efforts to improve this sistem for the common good of all uzers, invite cooperation of those interested in completing needed subdivisions and eliminating any errors that remain in either Tables or Index

Sugjested variations

The following brief notes show the most important variations found practicabl in the 'relativ index and location sistem,' oftener cald the Decimal Clasification or Dewey sistem', or oftenest simply D C'

1 Letter or simbol notations for chanjes or aditions To protect other uzers from confuzion, the publishers insist as entitled to by copyryt that D C numbers shal not be printed with chanjed meanings or aditions, without sum clear indication of the fact in the number itself If reazons which led to adoption of form printed ar not conclusiv to an other, we wish to remove any obstacls to his use of the sistem with such chanjes as shal satisfy him This can redily be dun by uzing a letter or sum other caracter than the 10 dijits, to mark chanjes, e g if yu wish a different set of subdivisions under any number, make it out to suit, and letter it a b, c etc It wil arranje in its exact place and exact order without difficulty, and no other uzer of the sistem wil be confuzed by yur forms In Index, cancel 1, 2, 3, etc yu hav discarded, and write in a, b, c, etc adopted Whenever yu uze our exact numbers, uze also our exact and universal meanings for them as indext For any aditions or chanjes of yur own, uze letters or simbols of yur own which can not be mistaken for ours, uzing of course, our figures to the place where difference begins e g if yu want a new heding next to 551 34, Icebergs, it can not properly go as decimal 1 Mark it 551 34a and it arranjes as wisht If yu wish to chanje a hed from one place to another, cancel it where it stands and *leav that number blank* in Tables Then insert the hed in its new place as abuv, as if it had never been in our Tables Unuzed decimals ar often alredy appropriated for authorized subdivisions, tho they may not be printed til several editions later

This plan of introducing letters or other simbols wherever each uzer pleazes wil giv all needed freedom to the personal equation and desire for 'orijinality, and meet all real wants for peculiar clasification in peculiar cases

Fiction In sum cases it is uzualy best to modify clas numbers by letters as abuv In popular libraries half the circulation is often fiction It

is a great saving to omit clas number entirely and uze merely book number, it being understood that *no* clas number means 'fiction' Sum libraries go stil further and for fiction omit book number as wel as clas number Sum even omit book numbers in other clases

Juvenils After fiction, great circulation makes juvenils a good place to economize, if they ar kept separate, as is uzualy desirabl in popular libraries Books ar clast as if for adults (except that a short number may be uzed) J being prefixt to show their special caracter This givs J alone as clas number for juvenil fiction, J942 is a child's history of England These books ar arranjed *in a paralel library by themselvs*, so J942 *cums* between J941, juvenil history of Scotland, and J943, juvenil history of Germany

The separate J library can at any time be abandond by distributing J books amung the regular clases, either ignoring J entirely, or preferably by putting all J books by themselvs at end of each clas number In former case, if shorter numbers hav been uzed for juvenils than for adults they shud be extended to correspond, in latter case, numbers may either be extended and the books shelvd at end of exact subdivision or the shorter numbers may be retaind and the books groupt at end of entire section, e g *all* juvenil works on English history may be kept under short number J942 and shelvd after all adult works on English history, both 942 alone and 942 with subdivisions

There ar thus 3 methods 1, to hav a separate J library, 2, to hav J books by themselvs at end of each clas number, 3 to hav J books in alfabetic order amung other books on same subject In this last case J is useful only to call attention plainly to their juvenil caracter

Unless shorter numbers ar uzed for juvenils than for adults the same marking is uzed for all these plans, and one can be chanjed to another by simply distributing books the other way and teling attendants

Biografy For this larj clas, opinions differ as to best treatment Beside the plan printed in Tables the following methods ar widely uzed

For *individual* biografy, i e that relating to a singl person (including books containing biografies of not more than 4 persons)

1 Put all biografies in one alfabet of names of *persons ritn about*, uzing 92 for clas number, and indicating the subject or biografee by a Cutter book number, e g life of Grant, 92 G76 This is most compact for charjing, and is preferd in popular libraries of larj circulation Insted of 92 for clas number B is often uzed, but is les desirabl since it has no lojical place in a numeric arranjement on shelvs and is sumtimes confuzed with the author's initial in fiction

2 Distribute biografy as far as posibl to subjects it ilustrates leaving of course under 920 the lives not bearing specialy on any subject e g all lives of musicians go under 780 and its subdivisions life of Wagner being 782 2 insted of 927 82 as in Tables When 9 is uzed to indicate history of a special subject 92 may be uzed for its biografy e g 780 9 History of music 780 92 Biografy of musicians

Collectiv biografy may be clast in a singl group under 920 or by subject under 920–928 as in Tables or distributed thruout the clasification according to 2d plan givn abuv for individual biografy, subarranjement with any of these methods being alfabetic by author

Paralel libraries This treatment of fiction juvenils and biografy ilustrates the principl Its other chief application is for languaj colections Sum libraries hav a constituency not reading English and so need a paralel library in Italian or Swedish etc This is most eazily made by simply prefixing languaj initial to clas number If arranjed in one series of subjects this initial is ignored or all books in the special languajes may be groupt under initial letters at end of each clas number The paralel library is made by simply putting together all books having same languaj initial and then arranjing by clas numbers Initials uzed ar F French G German I Italian Sp Spanish Sw Swedish Dn Danish Du Dutch N Norwegian W Welsh A Arabic etc Where only 1 languaj is so markt in a givn library jeneraly only 1 letter shud be uzed so as to avoid an extra letter in charjing e g S wil anser for either Spanish or Swedish if uzed in only 1 sense A prefixt letter may however hav been uzed with a different meaning e g R for Reference necesitating more than 1 letter for the languaj prefix *even if only 1 languaj* is represented by the initial e g Ru for Russian This plan has proved very satisfactory in actual use

Combining languaj and literature Same principl can be applyd also in combining each languaj with its literature if it is preferd to abolish class Filolojy and make it simply an appendix to Literature e g uzing 82f for English filolojy and ading filolojy subdivisions English dictionaries wud becum 82f3 English grammars 82f5 etc arranjed either just before or just after English literature 820 821 etc and reverse wud hold true if a filolojist wisht to abolish Literature and make it an appendix to Filolojy

Reference library To separate books most needed the best plan is to mark R before clas numbers and arranje books together as an R library When books ar to go into jeneral colection again draw a line thru this letter

In same way it frequently happens that a jeneral private library is givn on condition that it be kept together, e g Phoenix library of Columbia University This has P prefixt to clas number, and thus is a paralel library by itself An initial is better than * or similar mark for it helps memory and is just as brief Same plan applys if the library has an 'inferno' for books not uzed without permits, or for distant rooms where books worth keeping but seldom cald for can be arranjed in a paralel storaj library

Stil another provision is made in 080, 8 being regular number for jeneral colections (as in 508, 520 8 etc) for those special libraries which can not be separated becauz of binding or conditions of gift but insted of the 3 figures in 080 a singl letter, as described abuv, indicates the special colection and it is eazy to lern location of the few special colections of any one library

Omission of initial O in the clas Jeneral works' has been tryd, e g 51 insted of 051 for an American periodical but is not advized for the eye gets so in the habit of reading as Sience any number beginning with 5, that there is a mental hich if e g jeneral periodicals ar writn 51, etc insted of 051, etc Another reazon is that Institut International de Bibliographie regards as neglijibl a final 0 and uzes the 1 and 2 figure numbers as we uze those same numbers fild out by 0 to 3 figures e g 1 for filosofy, like our 100, 22 for Bible like our 220 Also in clasification it sumtimes happens that the 1st 2 figures ar obvius at a glance but time must be taken to determin the 3d It is convenient to write these 1st figures, but if a mathematical book receivs its 1st 2 figures (51) this unfinisht number is likely to be confuzed with the 2 figure number 51 This danjer may be larjly avoided by writing the decimal point after a blank e g 51 , to show that a figure is omitted

2 Contractions for specialists The sistem is often uzed by specialists for very minute work, where decimals run out to 6 or more places Theoreticly it is better to write all these figures thus showing relation to the universe of knowlej but there is no practical gain to justify the labor if a great quantity of slips must be numberd A specialist working on 'Swedish poetry of the aje of Gustavus can uze a singl letter insted of the ful 839 715 and save 5 caracters in numbering each note or a dash may be writn for all but the last figure thus —5 A body of such notes can be inserted together in their place in an index at 839 715 with a colord card to mark the special groups with litl danjer of confuzion Stil a stickler for theoretic completeness wil write a ful index number for each separate slip

3 Use of alfabet or cronolojy for final subdivisions While our plan is decimal as distinguisht from dictionary we *always alfabet* wherever that is more useful Indeed the main feature of our plan is its alfabetic Relativ Index Frequently in minute divisions it is economy to arranje alfabeticly or by dates without uzing a translation sistem This is specialy true in index rerums and notes of specialists After numbers hav been uzed as far as that is the most useful form then either the name chosen for hed or the year can be inserted at the end e g towns in a givn state individual birds or insects cuming under one number, names of men writn about in biografy etc Sum may prefer to adopt this plan in places where we hav chosen a grouping e g in chemistry to put all metals in one alfabet under 546 3 insted of uzing numbers 546 3–99 If this chanje is wisht a more complete one wil probably be better put all elements metallic and nonmetallic in 1 alfabet under 546 Such use of the alfabet cauzes no confuzion with the Index as it simply subdivides more closely, unless as in the case of 546 3 the alfabet replaces heds alredy printed In this case cancel all subsections in the Tables by drawing a line obliquely thru heds discarded and mark in marjin Alfabet by elements e g

546 3	Metals	Alfabet by elements
31	Alkali group	
32	Potassium	
33	Sodium	
34	Lithium	
35	Rubidium	
36	Caesium	

Then find each of these heds in Index and cancel all figures after 546 3, e g

Potassium inorganic chemistry 546 3~~2~~
Rubidium, " 546 3~~5~~

This plan has special value in this place as new elements ar discoverd from time to time and can redily be inserted in alfabetic place Stil many chemists think it valuabl to hav similar metals groupt together for convenience of study and to cover books writn on the group as a whole and also think it important to hav a number for rejected elements becauz literature and references about them remain and must be provided for

4 Broken order Another common and often desirabl variation for shelf arranjement is to break sequence of numbers to get most uzed books nearest delivery desk Theory keeps numbers in strict sequence

but a hyer rule everywhere is 'sacrifice any theory for a substantial gain' Practicaly there ar few libraries where it is not best to break order of clases Often divisions ar best arranjed out of numeric place, e g 520 Astronomy may be wanted in a room accessibl at nyt, fiction, juvenils and biografy ar always wanted near the delivery desk in a public library, and in strict order ar as likely to cum at the most distant point Numberless local reazons may make a broken order desirabl There need be no hesitation in adopting it if enuf is gaind, but there shud be charts clearly showing where each division starts, e g, after 430 'Preceding 830', after 520 'In observatory', it being necesary to specify room for books entirely removed from jeneral library arranjement The summary of 100 divisions is furnisht by Library Bureau, on celluloid charts, to show location Opposit each division shud be markt its beginning on shelvs, and it is eazy to vary the order as much as desirabl, tho of course the nearer the divisions run in regular order, 000–999, the eazier it is for a stranjer to find his way about Variations in order of sections ar les wize and seldom necesary, but if made, a wood or cardboard dummy in regular place shud hav markt on its side the actual location of any section removed

This broken order plan is best for bringing together filology and literature of each languaj without altering numbers or prefixing any letter Let 420 be shelvd just ahed of 820 430 ahed of 830, and so for all languajes making the jeneral note that all 400s ar shelvd just ahed of corresponding 800s, and remembering that after main languajes 4 or more figures ar required to indicate languaj alone so Portuguese filology goes between 868 and 869 Russian between 891 69 and 891 7, Bohemian between 891 85 and 891 86 etc

5 Pro and con division of topics It is very useful in many cases to separate books on a topic with strongly markt sides, so either set of views and arguments may be seen by itself This has been dun in sum cases by subdivision e g 337 Protection and free trade In others it is equaly useful and can be indicated by an aded mark, e g 324 3 Woman suffraj The number may be uzed for jeneral works, giving facts etc and advocates and opponents may be separated by + and – for positiv and negativ, or by p and c, the initials for pro and con, which tho short ar too long for a circulating library to uze in charjing but may be disregarded for that purpose if book numbers ar so assynd as to distinguish In reference libraries on cards, etc most wil prefer to write out *pro* and *con*, to mark the 2 groups The order on shelvs is of course alfabetic, i e 324.3 324 3c 324 3p or if + and – ar uzed, the uzual order is followd +, –

These 5 notes sujest the ranje of variations which may be made and ilustrate D C adaptability to widely different conditions

Bibliografic modifications

After study of all other avalabl sistems the Decimal Clasification was adopted in 1895 by the newly organized Institut International de Bibliographie (known as I I B) as best adapted for its projected universal subject bibliografy to cover ultimately all subjects in all languajes in all periods of the world's history

Determining factors wer

1 Decimal Clasification was of topics independent of languaj or exact sinonim by which exprest
2 Its notation was in itself the only international languaj since it consisted solely of arabic numerals uzed all over the world
3 Its decimal principl allowd indefinit intercalation

Overdetaild as the Clasification alredy seemd to many librarians lak of subdivision was the Institute's 1st difficulty and it urjd us at once to enlarj the Tables State Library duties at that time made concentration on this imposibl but we promist cooperation and criticizm if I I B wud draft required extensions When its remarkably rapid work precluded even adequate criticizm it was authorized to publish its tables and assured that the American revision wud vary from them as litl as practicabl At Geneva in 1924 the harmonizing of the American and European editions was agreed on and to D C editor was delegated the very extensiv work of checking the variant forms and recommending which shud be kept a work which is now wel under way

Obviusly bibliografic and jeneral library use ar so different that in sum cases what is clearly best for real needs of skolarly specialists where any simbols can be uzed on index cards wud be quite impracticabl for a public library which must hav simbols that can be markt on the bak of books redily uzed by the unskild public in writing call slips and rapidly handld by low priced runners and yung clerks This difficulty can however often be obviated by allowing alternativ forms

I I B has devized and uzes injenius simbols expressing many interrelations and greatly increasing numbering capacity But these new simbols ar thot by many too complex for ordinary shelf or catalog use tho 25 years use by I I B with unskild clerks has proved that this objection is more fear than result of fair tryal They ar givn here broadly for personal notes of specialists and other close clasifyers to whom their vast prac

tical advantajes wil strongly appeal, and as a key to notation on I I B bibliografic cards Elaborate details and explanations ar in *Classification decimale*, Brussels, 1905, of which a new edition is announst for 1927 Obviusly these simbols allow subdivision of the same number in many different ways without confuzion

The most important of these devices ar *3 Relation syn* and *6 Place syn* and their use in libraries where they hav been tryd has proved that it is entirely practicabl, even for marking books

The wide and ever-growing ranje of application of certain subjects makes it imposibl to subdivide satisfactorily by assyning definit numbers, but use of colon to show relation between *2* subjects provides an automatic method which can be uzed with any subject for unlimited sub division (For ilustration see note under 150 Sykolojy)

Use of ( ) round a local number provides an automatic method of local subdivision for any subject, as there may be need in an individual library, while the simbol shows instantly the *local* nature of the subdivision

1 **Accretion syn** + This simplest of simbols equivalent to 'and, indicates exactly what it sugjests that the articl so numberd treats of all subject numbers connected by +, e g 637+614 32 a work concerning dairies and also on inspection of dairy products

2 **Cupling syn** – This is uzed for cupling to a subject a series of subdivisions common to a group of subjects, as 400 Filolojy (e g 45–3 Italian dictionary, 45–4 Italian sinonims, 45–5 Italian grammar, 46–3 Spanish dictionary, 46–4 Spanish sinonims, 46–5 Spanish grammar), 800 Literature (85–3 Italian fiction, 85–4 Italian essays, 85–5 Italian oratory 86–3 Spanish fiction, 86–4 Spanish essays 86–5 Spanish oratory), 546 Inorganic chemistry (546 51–3 Oxids of led 546 51–4 Sulfid of led 546 51–5 Chlorid of led, 546 56–3 Oxids of copper, 546 56–4 Sulfid of copper, 546 56–5 Chlorid of copper, 546 57–3 Oxids of silver, 546 57–4 Sulfid of silver, 546 57–5 Chlorid of silver) It shud, however, be uzed only where such use is specificly mentiond in the Tables, as confuzion wud other wize result This syn is so similar to that commonly uzed for 'to and in cluding' that when it is uzed with Institut meaning it is advizabl to uze word 'to' for the other meaning

3 **Relation syn** This is most useful simbol of all, as it involvs no chanje of number except omission of final 0 by those preferring shortest form It indicates merely that subjects so connected ar *considerd in relation to each other*, thus affording means of expressing almost limitless

interrelations e g ethics in relation to fine arts is 17 7 (or better, in ful 170 700) Vice versa art in its ethical aspect is 7 17 (or 700 170) order of numbers before and after colon depending on emfasis or on subject with which they ar to be arranjed

4 Form syn (0) Form or jeneralities ar exprest by a parenthetic number beginning with 0 This is further subdivided as follows

(0) Form simbol, e g 335 (0 843) means Socialism treated in form of a French novel

(00) Subdivisions peculiar to a subject, e g for history it means sources It is further subdivided and in sum cases modifyd by a hyfend figure e g 9(44) (001–3) means *Catalog* of *official* sources of French history, (001) meaning official sources and –3 meaning catalogs, indexes lists etc

(01)–(09) ar the same as our regular form numbers 01–09 Obviusly we can not replace our long establisht simpl form numbers by sumthing so much more complex that it is impracticabl for shelf use

5 Universality syn ∞ The mathematical syn of infinity is uzed with place and time syns to mean Without limitation' with place syn (see 6 below) it means including all places', e g 9 (∞) History of all cuntries, with time syn (see 8 below) it means 'covering all periods', e g 9 (∞) "∞" History of all cuntries at all times

6 Place syn (3)–(9) These replace our regular cuntry subdivisions found in 930–999, but do not conflict as I I B merely leavs D C 930–999 vacant, and writes History of France 9(44) insted of 944 Other auxiliary place numbers indicating jeneral rejion direction, jeolojic place prehistoric time, etc ar also provided in place curvs

7 Languaj syn = This syn preceding languaj numbers as found in 400 Filolojy, indicates subdivision by languaj e g 523 5=9185 means a work on meteors in Polish, 91 85 being filolojy number for Polish languaj in 400

8 Time syn " " Numbers denoting time division ar writn in quotes I I B skeme givs an elaborate time division sistem based on exact dates, e g "1922 12 11 , meaning year 1922, 12th month 11th day

9 Jeneral points of view syn 00 Each of the following numbers for point of view (except 005) has also a series of subdivisions

001 Speculativ idea purpose plan etc
002 Realization execution construction etc
003 Economic industrial production cost and sale prices etc
004 Servis and use workings administration

005 Equipment and apparatus

006 Bildings and establishments detuls of organization and servis

007 Special personnel

10 A to Z Alfabetic arranjement by name of person place or thing is indicated according to circumstances by initial or whole name

Sequence of these simbols in clas number may be varid by uzers to produce any special arranjement wisht but unless distinct notis of this is givn sequence is arbitrary in the following order

() " " = - A Z

e g 9(44)"17"=2 History of France in 18th century writn in English

Other uses

Tho this sistem was devized 1st for library catalog and shelf arranje ment 54 years hav developt many new applications Nearly every ad ministrativ department feels directly the great economy and in every field of literary activity this clasification has been found a great labor saver whose practical usefulness has exceeded the most sanguin hopes of its erly frends

Bookstores The plan is a great convenience to both dealers and cus tomers when applyd to miscelaneus stok Very often a much wanted book specialy if not recently publisht is reported 'not in stok when D C arranjement by subject wud hav reveald its place at once Specialists often find on shelvs books they wud never hav orderd but ar glad to by after examination Experience proves it profitabl for a dealer to arranje his books so each person may find what he is interested in without ex amining entire stok

Offis files A great file of papers is like a library in miniature Experi ence the world over proves that while alfabetic and numeric sistems ar invaluabl for many purposes complete usefulness demands close clasing as material grows The best plan is to combine simplicity of numeric and utility of clast as in this Decimal Clasification and Relativ Index uzed by most libraries The simplest posibl printed index of 43 000 heds tels in stantly by what number to mark or to find any paper Insurance is markt 368 This means clas 3 Sociolojy division 6 Associations and institu tions section 8 Insurance Fire insurance is 1st subdivision so every paper about fire insurance is markt 368 1 and goes in the drawer in nu meric order where it can instantly be found thru the printed Index

54 years use in a score of cuntries has proved this numeric sistem with

its Relativ Index a marvelus laborsaver Clasification is a necesity if all material on any givn subject is to be redily found The labor of making one's own clasification is uzualy prohibitiv, if wel dun By adopting the skeme in jeneral use by libraries this labor is saved and numbers ar in harmony with those of thousands of other catalogs and indexes in which the same number has the same meaning for as pointed out at a recent international congress these numbers ar the only international languaj of perfectly definit meaning amung all civilized nations and also cheapest and quickest in application

A successful man is uzualy a clasifyer and chartmaker This applys as much to modern business as to syence or libraries Hyer education differs from elementary in studying not mere facts but their *relations to all other facts* Alex Bain wizely said to lern to clasify is in itself an education The man of much business or affairs must study every problem in its manifold relations i e must clasify and make charts of his results Without these he is like a sailor in stranje waters sooner or later shiprekt unless he uzes charts to find safe channels as wel as to avoid roks and shoals A larj business or work unclasifyd or uncharted is not a worthy organization but mere material from which a clever brain may construct one It differs in efficiency from the ideal as a mob of men differs from a wel disciplind army Piles of brik and mortar ar not a templ any more than heaps of typ ar Shakspere's works tho if clasifyd and set each in ryt relation to the rest the transformation is brot about

Scrapbooks The plan has proved the best for keeping newspaper clippings Uze manila sheets of uniform size (we find 20x25cm best) Write clas number of subject in uzual place on paje and mount clippings on sheets as in a common scrapbook These sheets ar arranjed numericly like a clast card catalog sheets of each clas being further arranjed when desirabl, under alfabetic subheds When one sheet is ful insert another at the exact place Thus perfect clasification is kept up without blank sheets and at smallest outlay of money and trubl Scraps thus mounted ar shelvd either in manila pamflet cases or in patent binders or ar kept in vertical files

Index rerums These ar best made on standard P size (7 5x12 5cm) cards or slips Lyt weight catalog card stok is best for private indexes etc It costs only ⅔ as much as hevy bristol takes only ⅔ room and handls eazily

Where durability and convenience of handling ar les important than cheapness uze common hevy writing paper Novises often greatly di

minish usefulness of the card sistem by uzing ordinary machine-cut cards or slips varying in hyt so much as to make quik and accurate manipulation imposibl Extreme variation to be tolerated is 1 mm or 1/25 inch This wil be understood by placing a 7 4cm card between two 7 5cm cards In rapid turning, fingers make a brij across taller cards and mis the lower one entirely Cards must be accurately cut or they lose half their value and in many cases necesitate recopying material at a cost 10 fold greater than to hav thrown away imperfectly cut cards or slips at the outset

Clas number is writn in upper left corner, any alfabetic subject hed follows at ryt, and notes fil card below Cards ar then filed in order of clas numbers, the cards of each clas being further arranjed like scrap sheets, according to any alfabetic subheds

Paper the size of scrap sheets, 20x25cm, arranjed and stored the same way may be uzed insted of cards This has the advantaj of a ful letter paje in syt at once, and holds over 5 times as much as card While the sistem can be applyd to slips or sheets of any size, there ar literaly hundreds of accessories and conveniences exactly adapted to these 2 sizes, which ar uzed much more than all others combined, so it is folly to begin on another size, and lose the advantajes of this uniformity If intermediate sizes must be had, the best ar Billet 10x15cm, Note 12 5x20cm, and Ms 15x25cm Often uzers of sum other size finaly find it profitabl to chanje to either P, 7 5x12 5, or to L, 20x25cm, even at cost of re-writing many notes

After 50 years use of P size, countless millions of cards ar in catalogs and indexes in scores of cuntries, so it wud be quite imposibl to chanje from 7 5x12 5cm But recent study and experiments hav shown that sheet or room proportions ar most pleazing in ratio of 1 to square root of 2, or about 5 to 7, i e ratio of the side of an equal-side triangl to its hypotenuse An immense practical advantaj is that this is the only ratio where continuus halving givs always the same ideal proportion This results in markt economy in cutting sizes from larj standard sheets The favorit letter sheet is 19x27 cm This fits most vertical and other files We now uze it insted of 20x25 and 15x25 Half this size is a pleazing small quarto, 13 5x19, and its quarter is a very convenient pocket size, 9 5x13 5cm These replace our old Note and Billet sizes

Note books ar best in loos leaf form A much poorer method is to take a bound blank book, and assyn clas numbers in order, giving about the space it is tho't each wil require, and, when pajes so assynd ar ful, note at bottom where rest of the material may be found This has all objec-

tions of old fixt location as compared to relativ and wil hardly be adopted by any person who has ever seen loos leaf simplicity and economy

Scores of devices for convenient handling and storing of these slips and sheets and of pamflets ar manufactured The ful descriptiv and ilustrated catalogs of Library Bureau giv details

Topical indexes Clas numbers ar uzed to index books red Simpl numbers take the place of a series of words and results can be handld arranjed and found much quicker Such entries may be kept separate or combined with index rerums

Advantajes for making topical indexes of colected works periodicals transactions etc wil be evident to every indexer or librarian These consolidated indexes may be arranjed together with the card catalog of the books or by themselvs as seems best in each case

These ar only a few of the sistem's varid applications Enuf hav been mentiond to show its wide adaptability to wants of librarian student and business man

---

This brief account has probably faild to meet sum objections which may be raizd and could eazily be anserd

Tho much elaborated and in sum few points alterd the essential caracter of the plan has remaind unchanjed from the first Revision and expansion constantly in progress involv many new interrelations As extensiv advance testing of new skemes is not always posibl practical applications ar sure to develop unnotist faults Clasifyers ar therefore askt to uze new tables criticaly and report defects of any kind with proposed remedies and any needed subdivisions also any heds needed for the Index All such criticizms ar a decided help and favor

Aknowlejments

The labor on Clasification and Index has been wholy beyond appreciation of any who hav never attempted a similar task

In his varid reading correspondence and conversation on the subject the author has doutless recievd many sugjestions and gaind ideas which it is now imposibl for him specificly to aknowlej The *Nuovo sistema di catalogo bibliografico generale* of Natale Battezzati of Milan adopted by the Italian publishers in 1871 tho he copid nothing from it more

than any other singl sistem stimulated his study of the problem The plan of the St Louis Public School Library and that of the Apprentices' Library of New York, which in sum respects resembld his own, wer not seen til all essential features wer decided on, tho not givn to the public In filling the 9 clases of the skeme, the inverted Baconian arranjement of the St Louis Library was followd The author has no wish to claim orijinal invention for any part of his sistem where another has been before him and wud gladly make specific aknowlejment of every aid and sugjestion wer it in his power Tho at its start a litl book, it came not forth except by grievus labor

Much valuabl aid has been renderd by specialists, who hav assisted greatly in developing tables Amung these ar many wel known skolars, and to all most cordial aknowlejment is made Without such assistance, the present development cud not hav been attaind, for many minds wer necessary to supply teknical and special lerning absolutely essential in filling minute heds Indeed, in many subjects the author's share has been limited to modification necesary for teknical adjustment to his skeme, of material prepared by specialists To many prominent librarians we ar indetted for valuabl sugjestions and appreciativ criticizm While these frends ar in no way responsibl for any remaining imperfections, they shud hav credit for many improvements made in these 54 years of revision, during the 1st 3 of which the skeme was kept in manuscript, that its many details myt be subjected to actual tryal, and modifyd where improvement was found practicabl

We ar under deep obligation to Institut International de Bibliographie for its great volume of valuabl work, covering almost the whole ranje of subjects, and also for its advice and criticizm during progress of our own expansions To Dr C W Andrews, John Crerar Librarian Chicago and to American Library Association clasification committee, of which for past 10 years he has been chairman we ar greatly indetted for interest and advice

W S Biscoe From 1st publication to the present, the most extended and valued assistance has cum from my colej clasmate, associate and frend, Walter Stanley Biscoe, my 1st assistant in Amherst College Library, in charj of which he succeeded me, resyning to accept again in 1883 the place next me in Columbia College Library, and again resyning in 1889 to becum librarian in charj of clasification and catalogs in New York State Library This book is witness to the rare unselfishness with

which he has givn time taken from rest and recreation to this work, in which he shared my interest and faith

May Seymour Except a year in charj of clasification in the Osterhout Library she was with me 34 years from her entrance to the 1st Library School clas in 1887 til her deth June 14 1921 At New York State Library clasification was her department til she was made director s asistant For 32 years every item of work on new editions past thru her hands For each of editions 4–10 she did all editorial and much con structiv work secured expert cooperation cald attention to faults or omissions and sought the best availabl compromize where doctors dis agreed devoting to this vast labor rare skolarly industry and a loyalty for which no words of thanks can be adequate She shared my faith in its immense usefulness did the hardest work and deservs the gratitude of all who profit by this invaluabl laborsaver I often askt that her name appear on the title paje of the book to which she gave so much but she persistently refuzed

Her place as editor was taken by one of her own choosing Dorcas Fellows who more than anyone else had workt closely with Mis Seymour for 25 years and who wil giv future editions the benefit of cumulativ experience in which she so larjly shared D C uzers ar congratulated that Mis Seymour s position is held by the one whom she herself chose as best adapted to carry on her work For 5 years past her hedquarters hav been in New York State Library at Albany which has long been regarded by many as D C s library home but recent developments in re lations of American Library Association Library of Congress and Deci mal Clasification hav resulted in an invitation from L C to D C to make its home henceforth at that Library, where most appropriately D C s servis to American libraries which is the chief factor in its work wil be coordinated with undertakings previusly instald by the national library extending stil further the latter s alredy great servises to the libraries of the cuntry at larj

Future of D C

Mis Seymour had a stedily growing wish to make D C a permanent force for education by greatly improving its ful short and outline edi tions and by printing cheap special editions (indext) for many prom inent divisions e g education medicin enjineering agriculture As a

memorial to her, all copyryts and control of all editions hav been givn to Lake Placid Club Education Foundation in establishing which she had been warmly and activly interested, and which was charterd by the University of the State of New York, Jan 26, 1922, with these objects

'as an educational institution, to restore to helth and educational efficiency teachers, librarians and other educators of moderate means, who hav becum incapacitated by overwork, to establish, maintain and aid skools, libraries or other educational institutions, specialy at Lake Placid, and to institute organize or foster other movements to advance public welfare thru education, by means of the Foundation pres, conferences, forums, addresses, gyded reading, and similar ajencies'

To this Foundation was at once givn all voting stok and surplus of Lake Placid Co which owns the 10,000 akers and 391 bildings of Lake Placid Club, thus assuring permanent financial support, which has alredy been further increast by gifts and bequests from interested frends Under Foundation auspices future editions of D C wil be publisht, on absolute condition that entire reciets abuv necesary expenses be uzed forever solely for improving D C and extending its usefulness, thereby preventing posibility that the work shud ever be made a source of either individual or institution profit A committee on D C, consisting of the most interested Foundation trustees, in consultation with committees of American Library Association and Institut International de Bibliographie, wil insure observance of the abuv condition

D C has becum an international laborsaver It therefore justly belongs to its uzers as a whole All who contribute to the stedy improvement of future editions may kno that they ar helping to make stil more useful a sistem which is so greatly helping stedily increasing thousands scatterd all over the civilized world

MELVIL DEWEY

LAKE PLACID CLUB N Y
Dec 10, 1926

Previus editions hav been dated Amherst College Library, June 10, 1876, Columbia College Library, Aug 10, 1885 and Aug 30, 1888, New York State Library, Dec 25, 1890, Lake Placid Club, Ap 10, 1911, Ap 10, 1913, Oct 1, 1915, Aug 11, 1919, and Aug 31, 1922

Summaries

Summaries

The first summary gives the ten classes, the second the hundred divisions, the third the sections In the second summary are included, so far as space permits, those topics which are by indention coordinate with divisions, but which are based on numbers not ending in 0, e g,

440 French, Provençal, Catalan

The tables show that 449 Provençal language and 449 9 Catalan language are coordinate with 440 French language

Likewise, in the third summary are included, so far as space permits, those topics which are by indention coordinate with sections, but which are based on numbers of more than three digits, e g,

387 Marine & air transportation
943 Germany & central Europe

The tables show 387 7 air transportation coordinate with 387 marine transportation, 943 6 Austria, 943 7 Czechoslovakia 943 8 Poland coordinate with 943 Germany

First Summary: Classes

000 General works
100 Philosophy
200 Religion
300 Social sciences
400 Language
500 Pure science
600 Technology
700 The arts
800 Literature
900 History

Second Summary Divisions

000 General works

010 Bibliography
020 Library science
030 General encyclopedias
040 General collected essays
050 General periodicals
060 General societies
070 Newspaper journalism
080 Collected works
090 Manuscripts & rare books

100 Philosophy

110 Metaphysics
120 Metaphysical theories
130 Branches of psychology
140 Philosophical topics
150 General psychology
160 Logic
170 Ethics
180 Ancient & medieval
190 Modern philosophy

200 Religion

210 Natural theology
220 Bible
230 Doctrinal theology
240 Devotional & practical
250 Pastoral theology
260 Christian church
270 Christian church history
280 Christian churches & sects
290 Other religions

300 Social sciences

310 Statistics
320 Political science
330 Economics
340 Law
350 Public administration
360 Social welfare
370 Education
380 Public services & utilities
390 Customs & folklore

400 Language

410 Comparative linguistics
420 English & Anglo-Saxon
430 Germanic languages
440 French, Provençal Catalan
450 Italian Rumanian
460 Spanish Portuguese
470 Latin & other Italic
480 Classical & modern Greek
490 Other languages

500 Pure science

510 Mathematics
520 Astronomy
530 Physics
540 Chemistry & allied sciences
550 Earth sciences
560 Paleontology
570 Anthropology & biology
580 Botanical sciences
590 Zoological sciences

600 Technology

610 Medical sciences
620 Engineering
630 Agriculture
640 Home economics
650 Business
660 Chemical technology
670 Manufactures
680 Other manufactures
690 Building construction

700 The arts

710 Landscape & civic art
720 Architecture
730 Sculpture
740 Drawing & decorative arts
750 Painting
760 Prints & print making
770 Photography
780 Music
790 Recreation

800 Literature

810 American literature in English
820 English and Old English
830 Germanic literatures
840 French Provençal Catalan
850 Italian Rumanian
860 Spanish Portuguese
870 Latin & other Italic literatures
880 Classical & modern Greek
890 Other literatures

900 History

910 Geography travels description
920 Biography
930 Ancient history
940 Europe
950 Asia
960 Africa
970 North America
980 South America
990 Other parts of world

General works

000 General works

- 001 Knowledge, learning
- 002 The book
- 003
- 004
- 005
- 006 Information & communication
- 007 Research in general
- 008
- 009

010 Bibliography

- 011 Universal & general
- 012 Individual persons
- 013 Specific classes of writers
- 014 Anonymous & pseudonymous
- 015 National bibliographies
- 016 Subject bibliographies
- 017 Classified catalogs
- 018 Author catalogs
- 019 Dictionary catalogs

020 Library science

- 021 Establishment & purpose
- 022 Buildings
- 023 Government & personnel
- 024 Regulations for use of libraries
- 025 Management & operation
- 026 Special libraries
- 027 General libraries
- 028 Reading & reading guidance
- 029 Literary methods & labor savers

030 General encyclopedias

- 031 American encyclopedias
- 032 English encyclopedias
- 033 German encyclopedias
- 034 French encyclopedias
- 035 Italian encyclopedias
- 036 Spanish encyclopedias
- 037 Russian encyclopedias
- 038 Scandinavian encyclopedias
- 039 Other encyclopedias

040 General collected essays

- 041 American essays
- 042 English essays
- 043 German essays
- 044 French essays
- 045 Italian essays
- 046 Spanish essays
- 047 Russian essays
- 048 Scandinavian essays
- 049 Other languages

050 General periodicals

- 051 American periodicals
- 052 English periodicals
- 053 German periodicals
- 054 French periodicals
- 055 Italian periodicals
- 056 Spanish periodicals
- 057 Russian periodicals
- 058 Scandinavian periodicals
- 059 Periodicals in other languages

060 General societies

- 061 In Canada & United States
- 062 In England & Wales
- 063 In Germany
- 064 In France
- 065 In Italy
- 066 In Spain & Portugal
- 067 In USSR & Finland
- 068 Other general societies
- 069 Museums

070 Newspaper journalism

- 071 Canada & United States
- 072 England & Wales
- 073 Germany
- 074 France
- 075 Italy
- 076 Spain & Portugal
- 077 USSR & Finland
- 078 Scandinavia
- 079 Other countries

080 Collected works

- 081 Individual authors
- 082 Several authors
- 083
- 084
- 085
- 086
- 087
- 088
- 089

090 Manuscripts & rare books

- 091 Manuscripts
- 092 Block books
- 093 Incunabula
- 094 Rare printing
- 095 Rare binding
- 096 Rare illustrations or materials
- 097 Bookplates
- 098 Works remarkable for content
- 099 Curiosa and eccentric books

Philosophy

100 Philosophy

101 Value & use
102 Handbooks & outlines
103 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
104 Essays & lectures
105 Periodicals
106 Organizations & societies
107 Study & teaching
108 Collections
109 History

110 Metaphysics

111 Ontology
112 Methodology
113 Cosmology
114 Space
115 Time & duration
116 Motion & change
117 Matter
118 Force & energy
119 Quantity

120 Metaphysical theories

121 Epistemology
122 Cause & effect
123 Freedom & necessity
124 Teleology
125 Finite & infinite
126 Consciousness & personality
127 Unconscious & subconscious
128 The soul
129 Origin & destiny

130 Branches of psychology

131 Physiological psychology
132 Abnormal psychology
133 Occult sciences
134 Hypnotism
135 Sleep dreams somnambulism
136 Differential psychology
137 Psychology of personality
138 Physiognomy
139 Phrenology

140 Philosophical topics

141 Idealism & related topics
142 Critical philosophy
143 Intuitionism
144 Humanism & related topics
145 Sensationalism
146 Naturalism & related topics
147 Pantheism & related topics
148 Liberalism & related topics
149 Other philosophical topics

150 General psychology

151 Intelligence & aptitudes
152 Sensation & perception
153 Cognition
154 Memory & learning
155 Imagination
156 Intuition
157 Emotions
158 Conation movement instinct
159 Volition & motivation

160 Logic

161 Induction
162 Deduction
163 Logic based on faith
164 Symbolism & mathematical logic
165 Fallacies & sources of error
166 Syllogism
167 Hypothesis
168 Argument & persuasion
169 Analogy

170 Ethics

171 Ethical theories
172 Political
173 Family ethics
174 Occupations
175 Recreation
176 Sex
177 Social relations
178 Temperance & intemperance
179 Other ethical topics

180 Ancient & medieval

181 Oriental philosophy
182 Pre Socratic Greek philosophy
183 Sophistic & Socratic philosophy
184 Platonic philosophy
185 Aristotelian philosophy
186 Skepticism & Neoplatonism
187 Epicurean philosophy
188 Stoic philosophy
189 Medieval Western philosophy

190 Modern philosophy

191 United States & Canadian
192 British
193 German & Austrian
194 French
195 Italian
196 Spanish & Portuguese
197 Russian & Finnish
198 Scandinavian
199 Other modern philosophies

Religion

200 Religion
201 Philosophy & theories
202 Handbooks & outlines
203 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
204 Essays & lectures
205 Periodicals
206 Organizations & societies
207 Study & teaching
208 Collections
209 History

210 Natural theology
211 Knowledge of God
212 Pantheism
213 Creation of universe & earth
214 Theodicy
215 Religion & science
216 Good & evil
217 Worship
218 Immortality
219 Analogy

220 Bible
221 Old Testament
222 Historical books
223 Poetic books
224 Prophetic books
225 New Testament
226 Gospels & Acts
227 Epistles
228 Revelation (Apocalypse)
229 Apocrypha & deuterocanonical

230 Doctrinal theology
231 God
232 Christology
233 Man
234 Salvation
235 Saints, angels devils
236 Eschatology
237 Future state
238 Christian creeds
239 Apologetics

240 Devotional & practical
241 Moral theology
242 Meditations & contemplations
243 Evangelistic writings
244
245 Hymnology
246 Christian symbolism
247 Sacred furniture & vestments
248 Personal religion
249 Family worship

250 Pastoral theology
251 Preaching (Homiletics)
252 Sermons
253 Pastor
254 Church & parish administration
255
256
257
258 Parish welfare work
259 Other parish activities

260 Christian church
261 Christian social theology
262 Government & organization
263 Sabbath & Sunday
264 Ritual & liturgy
265 Sacraments & other rituals
266 Missions
267 Religious associations
268 Religious education
269 Public spiritual renewal

270 Christian church history
271 Religious orders
272 Persecutions
273 Heresies
274 In Europe
275 In Asia
276 In Africa
277 In North America
278 In South America
279 In other parts of world

280 Christian churches & sects
281 Primitive & Oriental churches
282 Roman Catholic Church
283 Anglican churches
284 Protestantism
285 Presbyterian & other
286 Baptist churches
287 Methodist churches
288 Unitarian Church
289 Other Christian sects

290 Other religions
291 Comparative religion
292 Greek & Roman
293 Teutonic & Norse
294 Brahmanism & related
295 Zoroastrianism & related
296 Judaism
297 Islam & Bahaism
298
299 Other religions

Social sciences

300 Social sciences
- 301 Sociology
- 302 Handbooks & outlines
- 303 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 304 Essays & lectures
- 305 Periodicals
- 306 Organizations & societies
- 307 Study & teaching
- 308 Collections
- 309 History, social planning

310 Statistics
- 311 Theory & methodology
- 312 Demography
- 313
- 314 Europe
- 315 Asia
- 316 Africa
- 317 North America
- 318 South America
- 319 Other parts of world

320 Political science
- 321 Forms of state
- 322 State & church
- 323 State & individuals
- 324 Suffrage & elections
- 325 Migration & colonization
- 326 Slavery
- 327 Foreign relations
- 328 Legislation
- 329 Political parties

330 Economics
- 331 Labor economics
- 332 Financial economics
- 333 Land economics
- 334 Cooperation & cooperatives
- 335 Economic ideologies
- 336 Public finance
- 337 Tariff policy
- 338 Production economics
- 339 Income & wealth

340 Law
- 341 International law
- 342 Constitutional law & history
- 343 Criminal law
- 344 Martial law
- 345 United States statutes & cases
- 346 British statutes & cases
- 347 Law treatises
- 348 Canon law (Ecclesiastical law)
- 349 Foreign law

350 Public administration
- 351 Central governments
- 352 Local governments
- 353 United States governments
- 354 Other countries
- 355 Elements of warfare
- 356 Infantry
- 357 Cavalry & mounted services
- 358 Other arms & services
- 359 Naval forces

360 Social welfare
- 361 Social work & agencies
- 362 Services to special groups
- 363 Political societies
- 364 Criminology & correction
- 365 Penology
- 366 Associations
- 367 Social clubs
- 368 Insurance
- 369 Other associations

370 Education
- 371 Teaching, school organization
- 372 Elementary education
- 373 Secondary education
- 374 Adult education
- 375 Curriculum
- 376 Education of women
- 377 Religious & moral education
- 378 Higher education
- 379 Education & the state

380 Public services & utilities
- 381 Internal commerce
- 382 International commerce
- 383 Postal communication
- 384 Telecommunication
- 385 Railroad transportation
- 386 Inland waterway transportation
- 387 Marine & air transportation
- 388 Highway & urban transportation
- 389 Metrology & standardization

390 Customs & folklore
- 391 Costume
- 392 Customs of life cycle
- 393 Treatment of the dead
- 394 Public & social customs
- 395 Etiquette
- 396 Woman
- 397 Gypsies
- 398 Folklore
- 399 Customs of war

Language

400 Language

- 401 Philosophy & theory
- 402 Handbooks & outlines
- 403 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 404 Essays & lectures
- 405 Periodicals
- 406 Organizations & societies
- 407 Study & teaching
- 408 Collections, dialectology
- 409 History & local treatment

410 Comparative linguistics

- 411 Written language
- 412 Etymology
- 413 Lexicography
- 414 Sounds of language
- 415 Grammar
- 416 Prosody
- 417 Inscriptions & paleography
- 418 Texts
- 419 Nonverbal communication

420 English

- 421 Written & spoken elements
- 422 Etymology
- 423 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 424 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 425 Grammar
- 426 Prosody
- 427 Early & nonliterary forms
- 428 Textbooks for learning English

429 Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

430 German

- 431 Written & spoken elements
- 432 Etymology
- 433 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 434 Synonyms antonyms homonyms
- 435 Grammar
- 436 Prosody
- 437 Early & nonliterary forms
- 438 Textbooks for learning German

439 Other Germanic

440 French

- 441 Written & spoken elements
- 442 Etymology
- 443 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 444 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 445 Grammar
- 446 Prosody
- 447 Early & nonliterary forms
- 448 Textbooks for learning French

449 Provençal & Catalan

450 Italian

- 451 Written & spoken elements
- 452 Etymology
- 453 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 454 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 455 Grammar
- 456 Prosody
- 457 Early & nonliterary forms
- 458 Textbooks for learning Italian

459 Rumanian

460 Spanish

- 461 Written & spoken elements
- 462 Etymology
- 463 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 464 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 465 Grammar
- 466 Prosody
- 467 Early & nonliterary forms
- 468 Textbooks for learning Spanish

469 Portuguese & Galician

470 Latin

- 471 Written & spoken elements
- 472 Etymology
- 473 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 474 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 475 Grammar
- 476 Prosody
- 477 Historic & nonliterary forms
- 478 Textbooks for learning Latin

479 Other Italic

480 Classical Greek

- 481 Written & spoken elements
- 482 Etymology
- 483 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 484 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 485 Grammar
- 486 Prosody
- 487 Historic & nonliterary forms
- 488 Textbooks for learning Greek

489 Modern Greek

490 Other languages

- 491 Other Indo European languages
- 492 Semitic languages
- 493 Hamitic languages
- 494 Finno Ugric, Turkic, other
- 495 Languages of East Asia
- 496 African languages
- 497 North American Indian
- 498 South American Indian
- 499 Austronesian & other

Pure science

500	**Pure science**
501	Philosophy & theory
502	Handbooks & outlines
503	Dictionaries & encyclopedias
504	Essays & lectures
505	Periodicals
506	Organizations & societies
507	Study & teaching
508	Collections
509	History & local treatment
510	**Mathematics**
511	Arithmetic
512	Algebra
513	Geometries
514	Trigonometry
515	Descriptive geometry
516	Analytic geometry
517	Calculus
518	
519	Probabilities
520	**Astronomy & allied sciences**
521	Theoretical astronomy
522	Practical & spherical
523	Descriptive & astrophysics
524	
525	Earth (Astronomical geography)
526	Mathematical geography
527	Celestial navigation
528	Ephemerides
529	Chronology
530	**Physics**
531	Mechanics of solids
532	Mechanics of fluids
533	Mechanics of gases
534	Sound
535	Optics
536	Heat
537	Electricity & electronics
538	Magnetism
539	Modern physics
540	**Chemistry**
541	Physical & theoretical
542	Chemical laboratories
543	Analytic chemistry
544	Qualitative analysis
545	Quantitative analysis
546	Inorganic chemistry
547	Organic chemistry
548	**Crystallography**
549	**Mineralogy**
550	**Earth sciences**
551	Geophysics & related subjects
552	Petrology
553	Economic geology
554	Geology of Europe
555	Geology of Asia
556	Geology of Africa
557	Geology of North America
558	Geology of South America
559	Geology of other parts of world
560	**Paleontology**
561	Paleobotany
562	Invertebrate paleozoology
563	Simple forms
564	Mollusca & molluscoidea
565	Other fossil invertebrates
566	Vertebrate paleozoology
567	Anamnia
568	Sauropsida
569	Mammalia
570	**Anthropology & biology**
571	Prehistoric archeology
572	Anthropology
573	Physical anthropology
574	Biology
575	Organic evolution
576	Microbiology
577	Philosophy of biology
578	Microscopes & microscopy
579	Collection & preservation
580	**Botanical sciences**
581	Botany
582	Spermatophyta
583	Dicotyledones
584	Monocotyledones
585	Gymnospermae
586	Cryptogamia
587	Pteridophyta
588	Bryophyta
589	Thallophyta
590	**Zoological sciences**
591	Zoology
592	Invertebrates
593	Simple forms
594	Mollusca & molluscoidea
595	Other invertebrates
596	Vertebrates
597	Anamnia
598	Reptiles & birds
599	Mammalia

Technology

600	**Technology**	650	**Business**
601	Philosophy & theory	651	Office management
602	Handbooks & outlines	652	Writing
603	Dictionaries & encyclopedias	653	Shorthand
604	Essays & lectures	654	
605	*Periodicals*	*655*	*Printing & publishing*
606	Organizations & societies	656	
607	Technical education & research	657	Accounting
608	Collections	658	Industrial management
609	History & local treatment	659	Other topics in business
610	**Medical sciences**	660	**Chemical technology**
611	Human anatomy	661	Industrial chemicals
612	Human physiology	662	Explosives & fuels
613	Hygiene	663	Beverages
614	Public aspects	664	Food technology
615	Therapeutics & pharmacology	665	Oils, fats, waxes, gases
616	Medicine	666	Ceramic & allied industries
617	Surgery	667	Cleaning & dyeing
618	Other medical specialties	668	Other organic products
619	Comparative medicine	669	**Metallurgy**
620	**Engineering**	670	**Manufactures**
621	Mechanical engineering	*671*	*Metal manufactures*
622	Mining & mining engineering	672	Iron & steel manufactures
623	Military & naval engineering	673	Other metal manufactures
624	Civil engineering	674	Lumber industry
625	Railroad & road engineering	675	Leather & fur industries
626		676	Pulp & paper
627	Hydraulic engineering	677	Textile & fiber manufactures
628	*Sanitary & municipal*	678	Rubber & rubberlike materials
629	*Other branches of engineering*	679	Miscellaneous products
630	**Agriculture**	680	**Other manufactures**
631	Farm & farmstead	681	Precision apparatus
632	Plant injuries, diseases, pests	• 682	Small forge work
633	*Field crops*	683	Hardware
634	Fruit culture & forestry	684	Furnishings
635	Garden crops	685	Leather goods
636	Livestock & domestic animals	686	
637	Dairy industry	687	Apparel manufacture
638	Useful invertebrates	*688*	*Small articles*
639	Hunting & fishing industries	689	
640	**Home economics**	690	**Building construction**
641	Food	*691*	*Materials*
642	Dining & food service	692	Business practices
643	*Home planning*	693	Systems
644	Home utilities	694	Wood construction
645	Home furnishing	695	Roofing & roofing materials
646	Clothing & personal appearance	696	Plumbing & pipe fitting
647	Household management	697	Heating, ventilating, cooling
648	Household sanitation	698	Detail finishing
649	Child care & home nursing	699	

The arts

700	**The arts**
701	Philosophic aspects
702	Handbooks & outlines
703	Dictionaries & encyclopedias
704	Essays & lectures
705	Periodicals
706	Organizations & societies
707	Study & teaching
708	Galleries museums collections
709	History of art
710	**Landscape & civic art**
711	Area planning
712	Landscape architecture
713	Landscaping roads
714	Water features
715	Woody plants
716	Herbaceous plants
717	Structures
718	Planning cemeteries
719	Natural landscapes
720	**Architecture**
721	Architectural construction
722	Ancient architecture
723	Medieval architecture
724	Renaissance & modern
725	Public buildings
726	Ecclesiastical buildings
727	Educational buildings
728	Residential buildings
729	Design & decoration
730	**Sculpture**
731	Materials & techniques
732	Ancient & primitive sculpture
733	Classical sculpture
734	Medieval sculpture
735	Renaissance & modern sculpture
736	Carvings & carving techniques
737	Numismatics
738	Ceramic arts
739	Art metalwork
740	**Drawing & decorative arts**
741	Freehand drawing
742	Perspective
743	Specific subjects
744	Technical drawing
745	Decorative art & design
746	Textile handicrafts & waxwork
747	Interior decoration
748	Glassware & stained glass
749	Furniture & accessories
750	**Painting**
751	Painting materials & methods
752	Color theory & practice
753	Epic paintings
754	Genre paintings
755	Religious paintings
756	Historical paintings
757	Figure paintings
758	Other subjects collections
759	History of painting
760	**Prints & print making**
761	Relief processes
762	
763	Lithographic processes
764	Chromolithography
765	Metal engraving
766	Mezzotinting & aquatinting
767	Etching & dry point work
768	
769	Collections of prints
770	**Photography**
771	Equipment & supplies
772	Metallic salt processes
773	Pigment processes
774	
775	
776	
777	
778	Specific fields of photography
779	Collections of photographs
780	**Music**
781	Theory & technique of music
782	Dramatic music
783	Sacred music
784	Vocal music
785	Instrumental ensemble
786	Keyboard instruments
787	String instruments
788	Wind instruments
789	Percussion & mechanical
790	**Recreation**
791	Public entertainment
792	Theater
793	Indoor games & amusements
794	Indoor games of skill
795	Games of chance
796	Athletic & outdoor sports
797	Aquatic sports
798	Equestrian sports
799	Fishing hunting shooting

Literature

800 Literature
- 801 Philosophy & theory
- 802 Handbooks & outlines
- 803 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 804 Essays & lectures
- 805 Periodicals
- 806 Organizations & societies
- 807 Study & teaching
- 808 Literary composition
- 809 History & criticism

810 American literature
- 811 American poetry
- 812 American drama
- 813 American fiction
- 814 American essays
- 815 American oratory
- 816 American letters
- 817 American satire & humor
- 818 American miscellany
- 819

820 English literature
- 821 English poetry
- 822 English drama
- 823 English fiction
- 824 English essays
- 825 English oratory
- 826 English letters
- 827 English satire & humor
- 828 English miscellany

829 Old English literature

830 German literature
- 831 German poetry
- 832 German drama
- 833 German fiction
- 834 German essays
- 835 German oratory
- 836 German letters
- 837 German satire & humor
- 838 German miscellany

839 Other Germanic

840 French literature
- 841 French poetry
- 842 French drama
- 843 French fiction
- 844 French essays
- 845 French oratory
- 846 French letters
- 847 French satire & humor
- 848 French miscellany

849 Provençal & Catalan

850 Italian literature
- 851 Italian poetry
- 852 Italian drama
- 853 Italian fiction
- 854 Italian essays
- 855 Italian oratory
- 856 Italian letters
- 857 Italian satire & humor
- 858 Italian miscellany

859 Rumanian

860 Spanish literature
- 861 Spanish poetry
- 862 Spanish drama
- 863 Spanish fiction
- 864 Spanish essays
- 865 Spanish oratory
- 866 Spanish letters
- 867 Spanish satire & humor
- 868 Spanish miscellany

869 Portuguese & Galician

870 Latin literature
- 871 Latin poetry
- 872 Dramatic poetry
- 873 Epic poetry
- 874 Lyric poetry
- 875 Latin oratory
- 876 Latin letters
- 877 Latin satire & humor
- 878 Latin miscellany

879 Medieval & modern Latin

880 Greek literature
- 881 Greek poetry
- 882 Dramatic poetry
- 883 Epic poetry
- 884 Lyric poetry
- 885 Greek oratory
- 886 Greek letters
- 887 Greek satire & humor
- 888 Greek miscellany

889 Byzantine & Hellenic

890 Other literatures
- 891 Other Indo European
- 892 Semitic literatures
- 893 Hamitic literatures
- 894 Finno-Ugric Turkic other
- 895 East & Southeast Asian
- 896 African literatures
- 897 North American Indian
- 898 South American Indian
- 899 Austronesian & other

History

900 History

901 Philosophy civilization
902 Handbooks & outlines
903 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
904 Essays & lectures
905 Periodicals
906 Organizations & societies
907 Study & teaching
908 Collections
909 Medieval & modern world

910 Geography, travels

911 Historical geography
912 Atlases & maps
913 Antiquities
914 Geography of Europe
915 Geography of Asia
916 Geography of Africa
917 Geography of North America
918 Geography of South America
919 Geography of other places

920 Biography

921 Philosophers
922 Religious leaders
923 Persons in social sciences
924 Philologists
925 Scientists
926 Persons in technology
927 Persons in arts & recreation
928 Persons in literature
929 Genealogy & heraldry

930 Ancient history

931 China
932 Egypt
933 Judea
934 India
935 Mesopotamian & other empires
936 Ancient European tribes
937 Rome
938 Greece
939 Other Mediterranean

940 Europe

941 Scotland & Ireland
942 England
943 Germany & central Europe
944 France
945 Italy
946 Spain & Portugal
947 USSR & adjacent areas
948 Scandinavia
949 Other areas of Europe

950 Asia

951 China & Korea
952 Japan & adjacent areas
953 Arabian Peninsula
954 Subcontinent of India
955 Iran (Persia)
956 Near East (Middle East)
957 Siberia
958 Central Asia
959 Southeast Asia

960 Africa

961 North Africa
962 Egypt & Sudan
963 Ethiopia (Abyssinia)
964 Morocco
965 Algeria
966 West Africa
967 Central (Equatorial) Africa
968 South Africa
969 South Indian Ocean islands

970 North America

971 Canada
972 Mexico & Caribbean
973 United States
974 Northeastern states
975 Southeastern states
976 South central states
977 North central states
978 Western states
979 Far western states & Alaska

980 South America

981 Brazil
982 Argentina
983 Chile
984 Bolivia
985 Peru
986 Colombia Panama Ecuador
987 Venezuela
988 Guiana
989 Paraguay & Uruguay

990 Pacific Ocean islands

991 Indonesia & Philippine Islands
992 Sunda Islands
993 New Zealand & Melanesia
994 Australia
995 New Guinea (Papua)
996 Polynesia Micronesia Hawaii

997 Atlantic Ocean islands

998 Arctic Regions

999 Antarctic Regions

Form Divisions

The use of form divisions is described in the *Editor's Introduction*. These divisions are not separately indexed but are included in the relative index, *e g* under Theory following various relations "*see also specific subjects* —01"

01 **Philosophy and theory**

Including psychology

012 Classification

Divisions of the subject and their interrelations

For library classification see 025 4

013 Value and usefulness

014 Terminology

Including nomenclature, etymology, systems of scientific and popular terms

For dictionaries see form division 03

014 8 Systems of notation

Including symbols, abbreviations

014 9 Techniques of writing

015 Theories based on sciences

Divide like 500, e g theories based on mathematics 015 1

016 Miscellaneous theories

To be used also for bibliography and indexes by those libraries preferring to class bibliographies with their respective subjects rather than together subdivided by subject, e g bibliographies of chemistry 540 16 instead of 016 54

017 Systems of units and measures

Including methods of measurement

018 Scientific and technical methods

Including methodology

For experimental methods see form division 072

02 Handbooks and outlines

Works treating the subject as a whole, briefly, in a systematic way

Including syllabuses, manuals, digests

024 Books for special classes of persons

026 Laws and regulations [*formerly* †000 37]

026 3–026 9 Laws of specific countries or places

Divide like 930–999, e g, laws and regulations in Vermont 026 743

027 Patents [*formerly* †000 38]

028 Technique

03 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

Including concordances, vocabularies, glossaries

For systems of terminology, see form division 014

04 Essays and lectures

05 Periodicals

058 Annuals

Including directories

For lists of members of a specific organization, see form division 06 and its subdivisions

059 Almanacs

Including calendars of events

06 Organizations and societies

Including history, reports, charters, lists of members

061 Government organizations

International, national, state, local

061 1 International government organizations

Including organizations the delegates to which are appointed by the member governments

061 3–061 9 Government organizations of specific places

Divide like 930–999, e g, government organizations of Minnesota 061 776

062 Nongovernment organizations

Divide like form division 061, e g, nongovernment organizations in United States 062 73

063 **Congresses and conferences**

Divide like form division 061, e g, international conferences 063 1

For conferences of societies which have permanent organizations, see form division 062

065 **Commercial establishments**

For commercial publications, see form division 085, management of specific businesses and industries, 658.9

069 **Persons in relation to the subject**

Persons interested in the subject, studying it, occupied with it as a vocation or an avocation, their character, condition, duties, activities

Including professional ethics

For economic aspects of specific occupations and professions, see 331 7, biography, 920

07 **Study and teaching**

071 **Schools**

Including courses of study, methods of teaching the subject in schools

071 1 Colleges and universities

Divide like 930–999, e g, universities in England 071 142

071 2 Secondary schools

Divide like 930–999, e g, secondary schools in California 071 279 4

[†071 3] Elementary schools

Class in *372 3–372 8*

071 4 Correspondence courses

071 5 Extension work

Including institutes, workshops

072 **Research and experiment**

Including laboratories, experiment stations, laboratory manuals

074 **Museums and exhibits**

Divide like 069 1–069 7, e g, museum equipment 074 3

075 **Collecting**

Including collecting as a hobby

076 **Problems and questions**

Including solutions, answers, exercise books, examination questions

078 **Equipment for study, teaching, use**

Including instruments, apparatus, teaching aids

079 **Competitions**

Including prizes, awards

08 Collections and polygraphy

081 ***Collected works of a single author***

Including criticism and appraisal of a person's work

082 **Collections of works by several authors**

082 2 Collections of extracts, quotations, abstracts

083 **Tables and formulas**

Including statistical tables [*formerly also* 1000 31], blank forms, tables of mathematical formulas, numerical tables, conversion tables, reckoners, tables of results

083 8 Lists and inventories

Including catalogs of articles

For commercial catalogs, see form division 085

084 **Audio-visual aids**

Including portfolios, albums of illustrations, charts, designs

For collections of illustrative material on a specific subject in a specific medium, see the medium, e g , collections of engravings on a specific subject 769 4, collections of photographs 779

084 3 Slides

084 5 Filmstrips

084 6 Motion-picture films

Including sound motion pictures

084 7 *Phonorecords*

Including disc, tape wire recordings

085 **Commercial publications**

Including prospectuses, price lists, commercial catalogs

086 **Models and modelmaking**

088 **Miscellany**

Including curiosa anecdotes, frauds

088 7 *Trade-marks*

089 **Artificial collections**

Including scrapbooks

09 History and local treatment

090 1 Ancient and primitive history to ca 500

Comprehensive works

For ancient history in a specific country see form divisions 093–099

090 2 Medieval history, ca 500–1500

090 3 Modern history, ca 1500–

090 4 *20th century history*

091 Zones and physical regions

For Frigid Zones see form division 099 8 zones or physical regions in specific places f rm divisions 094–099

091 2 Temperate Zones

091 3 Torrid Zone (Tropics)

091 4 Mountainous regions

091 5 Desert regions

092 Biography

Including case histories

To b[illegible] [illegible]phies with [illegible] than toget[illegible] [illegible]mists 540 92 instead of 925 4

Under 092 arrange individual biographies alphabetically by biographee using A1 for collective biographies

093–099 History and local treatment in specific countries or places

Divide like 930–999 e g history in England 094 2

For comprehensive works on ancient history see form division 090 1

Tables

Symbols and Devices Used in Tables

Coordination and subordination are always shown by indention and type face, and usually also by length of number

A number in [square brackets] is no longer in force or is no longer in force with the meaning indicated

A dagger † preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 14th edition

An asterisk * preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 15th edition

General Works

000 General works

001 Knowledge, learning, scholarship

Including intellectual cooperation

Class research in general [*formerly* *001] in 007

002 The book

Value and influence of the book

Including comprehensive works on "the book" in general, history and making of books, book arts [*all formerly* *655 4]

For printing, publishing, bookselling, see 655, *reading and reading guidance,* 028

003

004

005

006 Information and communication theories

Including cybernetics

For memory and learning, see 154, *communication services,* 383–384, *linguistics,* 400, *social control,* 301 152, *nonverbal communication,* 419, *animal communication,* 591 59, *automatic control engineering,* 629 8, *computing machines,* 510 78, *information storage and retrieval,* 010 78, *automation in production,* 658.561

007 Research in general [*formerly* *001]

For research in a specific field, see the subject, e g, mathematical research 510 72, *social organization and institutions,* 301 4

.9 **Competitions**

Including prizes, awards

008

009

010 Bibliographic science and technique

Including book collecting, bibliomania, bibliographic control and documentation

For book rarities, see 090, *library acquisitions,* 025 2, *bibliographies of children's books,* 028 52, *library instruments and apparatus,* 025 078

.78 Information storage and retrieval

Comprehensive works

For machines used in information storage and retrieval, see 510 78, *storage and retrieval systems in business,* 651 5

011 Universal and general bibliographies

Bibliographies not limited to any specific subject, time, or place

Class general library and sales catalogs [*formerly* *011] in 018–019

For general bibliographies arranged by subject, see 016

012 Bibliographies and catalogs of individual persons

Bibliographies of works by or about a person

Arrange alphabetically by name of person

For bibliographies of persons clearly limited to a specific subject, see the subject, e g , bibliography of Wagner 016 782 1

013 Bibliographies and catalogs of specific classes of writers

Bibliographies of works by specific classes of writers, e g , alumni of a college, members of a religious organization

Divide like 000–899, e g , writings of members of American Library Association 013 020 622

For bibliographies of a special class of writers on a specific subject, see the subject, e g , historical works by Jesuits 016 9, *of theses by students in a specific college or university the school, e g , theses from Columbia University* 378 747 1

.9 Writings of foreign residents in a specific country

Divide like 930–999 by country of adoption, e g , foreign authors in France 013 944

Divide further under each country with 0 like 930–999 for country of origin, e g , American authors in France 013 944 073

014 Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works

Divide like 030, e g , English anonymous works 014 2

For bibliographies of anonymous and pseudonymous works on a specific subject, see 016

015 National bibliographies and catalogs

Bibliographies of works publisht in a specific place: country, city, publishing house

Including publishers' catalogs, lists and indexes of government publications, histories of publications in a place covering writings in all subjects as well as in belles-lettres

Divide like 940–999, e g , bibliographies of books publisht in Belgium 015 493

For bibliographies of works about a specific place, see 016, e g , works about Belgium 016 949 3, of works publisht in a specific place on a specific subject, the subject, e g , works publisht in Belgium on mathematics 016 51, general library and sales catalogs, 017–019, literary histories of a place covering belles-lettres only or primarily, the 800's

016 Subject bibliographies

Including bibliographies arranged by subject, bibliographies on a single subject, e g , works about music [*formerly* *781 97] 016 78

Divide like 000–999, e g , bibliographies on mathematics 016 51, with the exception of bibliographies of music itself 781 97

If preferred, class bibliographies on a specific subject with the subject, e g , bibliographies on mathematics 510 16

Class general classified catalogs [*formerly* *016] in 017

017–019 Library and sales catalogs

Catalogs of collections too general to be clast in 012–016

Including union catalogs

017 Classified catalogs [*formerly* *016]

Including author and subject catalogs bound together

For dictionary catalogs, see 019, catalogs of a specific subject, 016

.1 Catalogs of general libraries

For catalogs of private and family libraries, see 017 2

.2 Catalogs of private and family libraries

Including catalogs of private libraries which have been merged into general libraries

.3 Auction catalogs

.4 Booksellers' catalogs

For auction catalogs, see 017 3

018 **Author catalogs [*formerly* *011]**

Including catalogs arranged by publication date accession date

Divide like 017 e g auction catalogs arranged by authors 018 3

019 **Dictionary catalogs [*formerly* *011]**

Including alphabetic subject catalogs

Divide like 017 e g dictionary catalogs of college libraries 019 1

For catalogs of books on a specific subject see 016

020 **Library science**

Including libraries librarianship

If preferred class a specific aspect of library science with the aspect e g accounting for libraries 657 834 (instead of 025 11) wages of librarians 331 281 02 (instead of 023 8) library buildings 727 8 (instead of 022 3)

[26] Laws and regulations

Class in 021 89

6 **Societies, associations, clubs, conferences**

Including Friends of the library

For library departments or commissions see 021 82 *"Friends of a specific library the library e g Friends of the Knox College Library* 027 777 349 *associations devoted to a specific kind of librarianship the subject e g of medical librarians* 026 61

622 National associations

623 State and regional associations

624 Local clubs

711 Library schools

For courses of instruction in specific types of schools see 020 716–020 717

713 Training and apprentice classes

Including in service training

716 Courses in colleges and universities

717 Courses in normal and high schools

021 **Library establishment and purpose**

Including comprehensive works on libraries and museums

Use 021 001–021 009 for form divisions

For museums see 069 *relations with museums* 021 3

021.1 Libraries as storage centers

Including central or regional depositories of materials, cooperative storage [*formerly* *022.4]

For bibliographical centers, see 025.35

.2 Libraries as educational force

Role of libraries in education of children and adults thru planned, purposeful reading

[illegible]

guidance, 028

.3 Libraries and other institutions

Relations with other educational institutions, e g , schools, museums

Including relations with teachers, pupils

For libraries owned and administered by schools, see 027 82

.4 Library service to groups thru nonbook mediums

Including study clubs, reading and discussion groups, lectures, institutes, television and radio broadcasts, plays, music, films, exhibitions

For adult education clubs, see 374.2, social activities in libraries, 021.5

.5 Libraries as source of recreational reading

Including social activities

.6 Library extension and cooperation

For libraries and the state, see 021.8

.62 Units of service

Including branches [*formerly* *027 42], county and regional libraries, library stations, school deposits

*Class bookmobiles [formerly *021 62] in 021 65*

For administration of county and regional libraries, see 027 42, a specific branch library, the library, e g , Donnell Library Center of New York Public Library 027 474 71

.63 Centralization

Grouping of smaller libraries into systems

.64 Coordination and cooperation between libraries

Comprehensive works

For cooperation in a specific activity, see the activity, e.g , cooperative cataloging 025.35

.65 Traveling libraries

Including bookmobiles [*formerly* *021 62], direct mail loans

021.7 **Library publicity**

Including use of press, radio, television, lobbying to gain and maintain interest and support

For "Friends of the library," see 020 6

.8 **Libraries and the state**

Relations with government jurisdiction higher than that by or for which library is administered

.81 Government supervision

.82 Library commissions

For commission reports on public libraries, see 027 4, *special work of a specific commission, the subject, e g , New York State Commission on School Libraries* 027 82, *commissions as boards of trustees of a specific library, e g , Detroit Library Commission,* 023 3

83 Government aid

Including grants of money from higher jurisdictions, local subsidies

.84 Gifts of books

Including public documents, copyright deposits

For gift work in libraries, see 025 26

85 Exchanges of publications

Exchanges by states or central authorities, local or foreign, e g , United States Book Exchange

For exchange work in libraries, see 025 26

86 Privileges and immunities

Including remitted duties, free importation, free or reduced postage

88 State or local hindrances

Including politics

89 Library legislation

Comprehensive works

For laws on a specific subject, see the subject, e g , law concerning library commissions 021 82

.894–899 Legislation in specific countries or places

Divide like 940–999, e g , library legislation in France 021 894 4

021.9 **Library support**

Including appropriations, endowments, taxation, other methods of raising money

For aid from higher jurisdiction, see 021 83, *library finances,* 025 11

93 Gifts of money or books

Including CARE book program

For gifts from higher jurisdiction, see 021.84

022 Library buildings

For library quarters in schools, see 371 622

.1 **Location and site**

Including surveys with reference to field of work, e g, accessibility to population served, provision for growth

.2 **Building materials and protection of library**

Including insurance

.3 **Plans for library buildings [*formerly* *727.8]**

Including detail drawings design, construction, general description of library buildings

31 Library designs and plans by kind of library

Divide like 027, e g, plans of college libraries 022 317

For plans of a specific library, see 022 33

33 Library designs and plans by country

Including plans of specific libraries

Divide like 930–999, e g, plans for Public Library of Cincinnati 022 337 717 8

.4 **Library storage and shelving**

Class storage buildings, cooperative storage [*formerly* *022 4] in 021 1

For book arrangement and preservation, see 025 8

42 Shelving cases [*formerly also* †022 44] and shelves [*formerly also* †022 45]

Including wall cases, alcoves galleries, fixt or movable shelves, shelf supports

43 Stacks

Including stack rooms, arrangement of cases, aisles, flooring, floor load

[†022 44–† 45] Cases and shelves

Class in 022 42

[† 46–† 47] Closed cases and cases and shelves for large books lying flat

Class in 022 48

48 Special cases

Including cases and shelves for large books [*formerly* †022 46] closed cases [*formerly* †022 47] cases for maps engravings photographs films slides

5 **General reading rooms**

Including comprehensive works on reading rooms study rooms

For reading rooms for special material see 022 63

6 **Administrative and special rooms**

Including rooms for special collections instruction rooms recreation rooms

61 Rooms for trustees or outside organizations

63 Rooms for special material

Divide like 025 17 e g newspaper rooms 022 633

7 **Lighting**

Including natural lighting windows skylights artificial lights and fixtures lighting of stacks

8 **Heating ventilation, air conditioning**

9 **Furniture, fixtures, equipment**

Including chairs tables desks files bulletin boards exhibition furniture

94 Carriers and communication systems

Including book trucks book lifts pneumatic tubes mechanical carriers

95 Elevators

96 Floor coverings

023 Library government and personnel

For library management and operation see 025 government of a specific library or kind of library 026–027

1 **Constitutions and bylaws for governing boards**

Including charters local ordinances

023.2 Appointment and tenure of office

Including examination, certification, promotion under federal, state, local civil service

.3 Governing boards

Including trustees, regents, library committees

.4 Executives

Place in library government

Including chief librarians, directors department heads

For titles and duties of executives in hierarchy of positions see 023 71–023 72

.5 Staff

For directories of the staff of a specific library, see the library, e g , of Philadelphia Free Library 027 474 811

.51 Qualifications

Including personality and character [*formerly* †023 52], mental and natural ability [*formerly* †023 53], physique and health [*formerly* †023 54]

[† 52–† 54] Personality, character, mental and natural ability, physique, health

Class in 023 51

55 Staff meetings

.6 Hours of service

Including daily schedules, holidays vacations

.7 Titles and job descriptions

Including duties of positions

Use 023 700 1–023 700 9 for form divisions

71 Executives and directors

Including chief or principal librarian

72 Department, division, section heads

73 Public-service professional staff

Including librarians of special subjects, reference, adult service, children s librarians assistants [*formerly* †023 74]

74 Nonpublic service professional staff

Including catalogers, classifiers acquisitions librarians

Class professional assistants in public service [*formerly* †023 74] in 023 73

023.75 Subprofessional assistants

Including student assistants, apprentices, volunteers

76 Clerical staff

77 Trades, mechanical, and building staff

Including bookbinders, electricians, carpenters, painters, machine operators

For janitorial staff see 023.79

78 Pages, messengers, deck or stack attendants

79 Janitorial staff

Including janitors, watchmen, elevator operators, cleaners

8 Classification and pay plans

Including pension and retirement plans, job classification

Divide like 023.7, e.g. salaries of catalogers 023.84

9 *Staff manuals*

Including staff rules, codes

For ethics of librarianship see 020.69, manuals of a specific library, the library, e.g. of Enoch Pratt Free Library 027.475.26

024 Regulations for use of libraries

1 Readers' qualifications

Including age, residence, references, registration

2 Fees or free use

Including membership fees, nonresident fees

3 Hours of opening

4 Days of opening or closing

5 Reading room use

Including access to catalogs, access to shelves, use of reference books

6 Home use

Including loans, fines, renewals, reservations, restricted borrowing

68 Interlibrary loans

7 Special privileges

Including rental books

8 Mutilation, losses, abuses

025 Library management and operation

Librarians' part in supervising acquiring organizing, utilizing, preserving books for use

Including administration and supervision of various departments of libraries

For administration, management, general procedure manuals of specific libraries and types of libraries, see 026–027

SUMMARY

025 1	Executive and general management
.2	Acquisition
.3	Cataloging
4	Classification
.5	Service to readers
6	Circulation service
7	Bookbinding and book repair
8	Book arrangement and preservation
9	Janitorial and maintenance service

078 Instruments and apparatus

Including library applications of puncht card systems

For use in a specific type of library work, see the type, e g, puncht card systems in circulation work 025 6

.1 Executive and general management

.11 Finances

Including endowments, gifts, appropriations, fees, assessments, accounts, payrolls, expenses

For government aid from higher jurisdictions, see 021 83, *library support,* 021 9, *salaries and wages,* 023 8

12 Printing and publications

Including forms, catalogs, bulletins, reports

For a specific publication, see the subject, e g, catalogs 017–019

129 Duplication processes in the library

Including microphotography, printing by stencil, offset, letterpress, photostating, other processes for duplicating library materials

For machines and mechanical processes, see 652 4

.15 Correspondence

Including stationery, dictation machines typewriters, letter files

025 17 Treatment of special materials

Comprehensive works on arrangement care use

For special work of a specific department see the department e g cataloging of incunabula 025 341

171 Manuscripts archival material rarities

Including treatment of material in archival depositories

172 Pamphlets

173 Serials and documents

Including periodicals newspapers magazines annual reports national state local documents

174 Broadsides

175 Clippings

176 Maps and charts

Including atlases globes

177 Audio visual materials

Including prints engravings picture collections slides films

178 Music

Including scores phonorecords

179 Other special materials

Including microreproductions museum material

[† 18] Administration of individual libraries

Class in 026–027

2 **Acquisition**

For book collecting see 010 *lists and aids to selection and buying* 011–019 028

21 Book selection process

Including principles of duplication exclusion censorship weeding cooperation specialization

For lists of "best books see 016 *selection for children* 028 5

22 Methods of acquisition

Including sources e g jobber book store publisher subscription prices discounts relations to antiquarian book trade auctions

Class order work in 025 23 exchange and gift work in 025 26 special materials in 025 29 accessioning in 025 24 preparation for shelves in 025.25 [*all formerly* *025.22]

.23 Ordering and receiving [*formerly* *025 22]

025.24 Accessioning [*formerly* *025.22]

.25 Ownership marks and physical preparation for shelves [*formerly* *025.22]

.26 Exchange and gift work [*formerly* *025.22]

Including duplicates deposits

For exchanges by state or central authorities see 021 85

.29 Acquisition of special materials [*formerly* *025 22]

Divide like 025 17, e g, acquisition of phonograph records 025.298

.3 Cataloging

For use of library catalogs see 028 7, *catalogs themselves* 017–019

32 Cataloging rules

For cataloging rules for special materials see 025.34

33 Subject headings

Divide like 000–999 e g, subject headings in science 025.335

.34 Cataloging of special materials

Divide like 025 17, e g, cataloging of maps 025 346

.35 Cooperative cataloging

Including organization and preparation of union catalogs, bibliographical centers

.37 Filing

.4 Classification

Including principles systems, notation

For philosophic classification of knowledge, see 112

43 Classification schedules

46 Classification of special subjects

Including schedules for special subjects

Divide like 000–999, e g, classification of music 025 467 8

.5 Service to readers

Comprehensive works

For service to a specific class of readers, see the class, e g, service to children and young adults 027 62, *regulations for library use,* 024

52 Reference service

Including administration of reference libraries [*formerly* †027 424 3], reference function of libraries

For use of books as sources of information see 028 7

025.54 Adult reader service

General service to adults for self-development, recreation thru reading

For reader guidance, see 028 8

.6 Circulation service

Including administration of circulation work, charging systems, equipment, interlibrary loan

For regulations for home use, see 024 6, *for interlibrary loans,* 024 68

.7 Bookbinding and book repair

Including mending, cleaning, oiling, preparation for binding, operation of bindery within library organization, comprehensive works on conservation, preservation of books, manuscripts, other library materials

For methods of preventing damage or wear, see 025 84, *bookbinding industry,* 655 7

.8 Book arrangement and preservation

Including shelf lists, book numbers, fixt location

For library storage and shelving see 022 4

82 Inventory

84 Preservation

Including prevention of injuries, damage by heat, insects, wear and tear

.9 Janitorial and maintenance service

Including care, cleaning, safety, maintenance of order

For buildings and fittings, see 022

026 Special libraries

Comprehensive and miscellaneous works

Including administration of specific libraries [*formerly* †025 18], special collections in general libraries, histories reports, statistics, bulletins, handbooks, circulars by or about specific libraries

Use 026 001–026 009 for form divisions

Divide like 000–999, e g , medical libraries 026 61

For activities, functions, features of special libraries or of

027 General libraries

Comprehensive and miscellaneous works on libraries not limited to a specific field

Including administration of specific libraries [*formerly* †025 18], histories, reports statistics bulletins, handbooks, circulars by or about specific libraries

Use 027 001–027 008 for form divisions

For specific activities, functions, features of general libraries or of a specific general library see the subject, e g, cataloging in Harvard College Library 025 3, catalogs of a specific general library, 017–019

03–09 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e g, libraries in France 027 044

For a specific library, see the library e.g, Boston Public Library 027 474 46 a specific kind of library, the kind, e g, college libraries in Massachusetts 027 774 4

.1 Private and family libraries

Including libraries which have been merged into public libraries

Divide like 930–999, e g, private collections in San Francisco 027 179 461

2 Proprietary, society, club, athenaeum libraries

Limited to semiprivate libraries requiring an election to membership for admission

Divide like 930–999, e g, Boston Athenaeum Library 027 274 46

For society libraries merged into public libraries, see 027 4

3 Subscription and rental libraries

Including circulating libraries

Divide like 930–999 e g, rental libraries in Denver 027 378 883 1

.4 Public libraries

Including urban, town village, school district libraries

For branch libraries, see 021 62 national and state libraries, 027 5 library extension 021 6

42 County libraries

Including regional libraries

Class branch libraries [*formerly* *027 42] in 021 62

[† 424 3] Reference libraries

Class in 025 52

43–49 Public libraries in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e g, Cleveland Public Library 027 477 132

027.5 **Government libraries**

Including national, international, state libraries

Divide like 930–999, e g , Library of Congress 027 575 3, United Nations Library 027 574 71

For government agency libraries, see 027 65

.6 **Libraries for special groups**

Including service of general libraries to special groups

For libraries on special subjects, see 026

62 Libraries for children and young adults

Including work with children and young adults in public libraries

For school libraries, see 027 8

.625 Children's libraries

Including instruction to children in use of books and libraries

Class young adults' libraries [*formerly* †027 625] in 027 626

For children's reading, see 028 5

.625 1 Storytelling in libraries

Comprehensive works

For storytelling in schools, see 372 214

626 Young adults' libraries [*formerly* †027 625]

.63 Libraries for foreign-born and minority groups

.64 Libraries for industrial workers

Including labor union libraries

.644 Marine and ship libraries

Including merchant marine libraries

For warship and government navy yard libraries, see 027 65

.65 Government agency libraries

Including army military post and camp libraries, warship and navy yard libraries, police and fire department libraries, United States Information Service libraries in foreign countries

For government department libraries devoted to a specific subject, see 026, *e g* , *United States Department of Agriculture Library* 026 63

027.66 Welfare institution libraries

Including library service for the handicapt

662 Hospital libraries

Libraries for patients

Including libraries for patients in sanitariums, homes for the aged, comprehensive works on libraries for patients and staff

For medical libraries in hospitals, see 026 61

.663 Libraries for the blind

665 Prison libraries

.67 Religious organization libraries

Sectarian or denominational libraries not limited as to subject, e g, in monasteries, Salvation Army

For religious libraries, see 026.2, church school libraries, 027.83

.7 **College and university libraries**

Including junior college libraries libraries of learned societies

Divide like 930–999, e g, Bodleian Library 027 742 57

.8 **School and church school libraries**

For children's libraries, see 027 625, children's reading, 028 5, library quarters in schools, 371 622

.82 School libraries [*formerly also* †371 64]

822 Types of school libraries

822 2 Elementary school libraries

Including kindergarten

822 3 Secondary school libraries

823–829 School libraries in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g, elementary school libraries in Michigan 027 827 74

83 Church school libraries

Including parish, parochial libraries

028 Reading and reading guidance

Including lists of books, collections of book reviews not limited to any one subject, designed as aids in selecting individual reading

For teaching of reading, see 372 41, self education for adults, 374 1, abstracting, 029 4

074 Book displays

028 1 **Book reviewing**

3 **Reading courses**

Including discussions and lists of books for individual reading Great Books study lists

Class Great Books study program [*formerly* *028 3] in 374 22

For remedial reading in elementary education see 372 413 *remedial reading other than in elementary education* 428 4 *bibliographies of best books* 016

5 **Children s books**

Including children as authors

52 Bibliographies and lists of children s books

Includ ng lists for elementary and high school reading [*formerly also* †371 643]

7 **Use of books and libraries as sources of information**

Including use of reference books catalogs

For use of reference books on a specific subject see the subject e g reference books in music 780

8 **Reader guidance**

Including reader s advisory service

9 **Reading habits and tastes of the community**

029 Literary methods and labor savers

1 **Improved methods of learning**

Incl iding techniques of reference standard sizes use of colors card systems cooperative methods

For abbreviations and shorthand see 653 *mnemonics* 154 1 *book classification* 0?5 4 *adult education* 374 *methods of study* 371 3

2 **Literary laborsaving tools and devices**

Including appliances and equipment used to prov de short cuts in literary and educational work

For office equipment and methods see 651 *arrangement of books and pamphlets* 0?5 8 *audio visual aids and devices* 371 33

3 **Clippings, scrapbooks, files**

For records and files in business see 651 5

4 **Abstracting and note taking**

5 **Indexing**

029 6 **Authorship techniques**

Preparation of manuscript or copy in acceptable form for publication or use

Including the "business" of writing how to write for profit [*both formerly* *808 06], editing and editorial work, literary plagiarism, comprehensive works on plagiarism, comprehensive works on authorship technique and composition

For literary composition, see 808, *proofreading*, 655.255, *journalism*, 070, *preparation of theses*, 378.242, *script writing for radio*, 791 442, *for television*, 791 452, *for motion pictures*, 791 432 *manuscript typewriting*, 652.323, *plagiarism in any other field, the subject, e g , musical plagiarism* 781 61

030 General encyclopedias

Including curiosities, questions and answers, quizzes

For encyclopedias devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e g , encyclopedias of social sciences 303, *puzzles*, 793 73

031 American encyclopedias

Encyclopedias in English language, originating in North America

032 English encyclopedias

Encyclopedias in English language originating outside North America, e g Encyclopaedia Britannica

033 German encyclopedias

Divide like 430, except 439 5–439 83 e g , Dutch encyclopedias 033 931

For Scandinavian encyclopedias, see 038

034 French encyclopedias

Divide like 440, e g , Catalan encyclopedias 034 99

035 Italian encyclopedias

Divide like 450 e g , Rumanian encyclopedias 035 9

036 Spanish encyclopedias

Including encyclopedias written in Spanish but originating in Latin America

Divide like 460 e g , Portuguese encyclopedias 036 9

037 Russian encyclopedias

8 **Other Slavic encyclopedias**

Divide like 491 8 e g , Polish encyclopedias 037 85

9 **Ukrainian encyclopedias**

038 **Scandinavian encyclopedias**

Divide like 439 6–439 83, e g , Norwegian encyclopedias 038 82

039 **Encyclopedias in other languages**

Divide like 420–429, 470–499, except as provided above, e g , modern Greek encyclopedias 039 89

040 **General collected essays**

Collections of essays, addresses, lectures, by one or more authors, too general to go with a specific subject, collections of nonliterary essays

For collections of literary essays, see the 800's, *e g , French literary essays* 844, *collections of essays on a specific subject, the subject, e g , essays on religion* 204

041 **General collected American essays**

Essays in English language by North American writers

042 **General collected English essays**

Essays in English language by writers outside North America

043 **General collected essays in German**

Divide like 033

044 **General collected essays in French**

Divide like 034

045 **General collected essays in Italian**

Divide like 035

046 **General collected essays in Spanish**

Divide like 036

047 **General collected essays in Russian**

Divide like 037

048 **General collected essays in Scandinavian languages**

Divide like 038

049 **General collected essays in other languages**

Divide like 039

050 General periodicals

Including works about periodicals and their use, general indexes to periodicals individual periodicals

Divide by language as below, if preferred, arrange periodicals alphabetically under 050, using A1 for comprehensive works about periodicals and Z9 for general indexes to periodicals

Class indexes to and works about a specific periodical with the periodical

For periodicals on a specific subject, see the subject, e g, scientific periodicals 505, journalism, 070

051 General American periodicals

Periodicals in English language publisht in North America

052 General English periodicals

Periodicals in English language publisht outside North America

053 General German periodicals

Divide like 033

054 General French periodicals

Divide like 034

055 General Italian periodicals

Divide like 035

056 General Spanish periodicals

Divide like 036

057 General Russian periodicals

Divide like 037

058 General Scandinavian periodicals

Divide like 038

059 General periodicals in other languages

Divide like 039

060 General societies

Learned societies, academies, foundations, associations, conferences, congresses whose activity is not limited to a specific field, e g , UNESCO, American Philosophical Society

Including comprehensive works on learned societies whose activities are limited to specific fields

Divide by place as below, if preferred, arrange individual societies alphabetically under 060, using A1 for comprehensive works

For societies which have a specific purpose, field, or subject, see the subject, e g , American Historical Association 973 062, fraternal orders and secret societies, 366

061 General societies in Canada and United States

Including comprehensive works on general societies in North America

For general societies in Mexico, Central America, West Indies, see 068 72

.1 General societies in Canada

.3–9 General societies in United States

Divide like 973-979, e g , Philosophical Society of Texas 061 64

062 General societies in England and Wales

Including comprehensive works on societies in Great Britain and Ireland

For general societies in Scotland, see 068 41, in Ireland, 068 415

063 General societies in Germany

Divide like 943 for societies in countries whose history classes in 943, e g., societies in Poland 063 8

064 General societies in France

065 General societies in Italy

066 General societies in Spain

.9 General societies in Portugal

067 General societies in Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

.1 General societies in Finland

068 Other general societies

Divide like 930-999, except as provided above, e g , societies in Norway 068 481

069 Museums

Including school museums [formerly 1371 65] museums specializing in more than one field

For art galleries and museums see 708 museums in any other specific field, the subject, e g , science museums 507 4

.1 Educational functions of museums

Including museum work with children adult education

13 Circulation of museum objects, collections exhibits

14 Circulation of slides films, projectors

Including written lectures accompanying slides sale and exchange of slides and films

15 Museum instruction

Including information bureaus lectures story hours study clubs field instruction

16 Music in museums

.2 Museum buildings [*formerly* *727 6]

Comprehensive works

Including location site materials protection remodeling service facilities special rooms management

For works on a specific museum building see the museum, e g , London Museum 069 094 21 museum architecture 727 6

3 Museum equipment

Including furnishings supplies

31 Exhibit cases

32 Exhibit apparatus and techniques

Including lighting temperature control

4 Collection and preparation of museum specimens

Including protection and preservation

41 Preparation for removal from field

Including modeling molding casting coloring

42 Construction of models

Including models of caves animals plants

43 Construction of groups

Including composition layout field work

069 44 Expeditions

Including equipment supplies personnel transportation regional information protection and packing of materials

[† 45–† 49] Collection and treatment of special materials

Class with the subject in 500–999 using form division 074 4 e g collection and treatment of geologic materials 550 744

5 Administration of museum collections and exhibits

51 Acquisition and disposal

Including policy manner of selection and disposal terms of gift or bequest purchases sales dealers prices terms of loan exchanges

52 Registration and recording

Including accessioning catalog ng indexing listing

53 Exhibit methods

For exl ibit catalogs of a specific museum see the museum e g of Los Angeles County Museum 069 097 949 4

54 Specific museum material

Including data concerning museum objects themselves whether exhibited or in reserve thefts forgeries

Divide like 000–999 e g antiquities as museum objects 069 549 13

55 Study collections

Including scope arrangement housing

56 Lending collections

Including scope arrangement housing

57 Collections and materials held for preservation

Including photographs negatives slides films maps broadsides

58 Library

For administration of libraries on special subjects see 026

6 Museum administration

Including organization personnel finance office methods

7 Museum publications and publishing

For publications on a specific subject see the subject e g on prel istoric art 571 7 *general publications of a specific museum the museum e g reports of Detroit Institute of Arts* 708 174 34

070 Newspaper journalism

Including periodical journalism, business of managing, editing, writing for periodicals and newspapers

Use 070 01–070 04 for form divisions

For periodicals, see 050, *school journalism,* 371 805, *individual newspapers,* 071–079

.1 The press

Including theory, importance, scope, relation to sociology, political economy, literature, comprehensive works on printed publications

11 Ethics of the press

Including morals [*formerly* †179 1], standards, influence, responsibility

.13 Press law

Including laws governing the press, censorship of the press, civil libel and slander, comprehensive works on libel and slander

Class liberty of the press [*formerly* †070 13] in 323 445, legal control of the press [*formerly* *070 13] in 351 751

For criminal libel, see 364 15, *seditious libel,* 364 13, *law of criminal libel,* 343 5, *of seditious libel,* 343 3, *ethics of slander* 177 3, *censorship of books in libraries,* 025 21, *public control of press in maintenance of order and security* 351 751

.2 Ownership and control

Including names, location, newspaper syndicates, chains

For news syndicates and syndicated news, see 070 431

.3 Business management of newspapers and periodicals

For printing, see 655, *advertising,* 659 1

.32 Publishing policies

Including size, frequency, time of issue

For printing newspapers and periodicals, see 655 314

33 Circulation

Including distribution, sale

34 Cost of production

Including building and equipment, supplies, labor

070.4 *Editorial management of newspapers and periodicals*

41 Journalistic editing

Including editing rules make up style books newspaper diction copyreading headline writing

Class news and news writing in 070.431 radio news writing in 070.46 [*both formerly* *070.41]

For preparation of manuscripts for publication see 029.6 literary authorship 808, editorials and editorial writing 070.432

42 Editorial staff

Including reporters correspondents

43 Editorial departments

431 News and news writing [*formerly* *070.41]

Including sources and channels of news e g telegraph radio news bureaus and syndicates interviewing reporting

For radio and television news writing see 070.46 syndicates of newspapers 070.2

432 Editorials and editorial writing

Interpretative journalism

44 Special subjects, subject departments editors

Including columns pages sections on special subjects

443 Financial

Including stocks business shipping

445 Household home women children

Including cooking fashions care of children clubs and society games puzzles

446 Recreation and sports

447 Art music drama

448 Literary

Including poetry fiction

449 Other departments

Including religion education science humor

46 Radio and television journalism [*formerly* *070.41]

47 Special editions

Including Sunday edition special supplements

070.48 Special kinds of newspapers and periodicals

Comprehensive works on journalism for special kinds of journals

For journals of a specific subject, see the subject, e g , mathematics journals 510 5, individual journals not limited to a specific subject, 051-059, 071-079, school journalism, 371 805

.482 Religious journalism

.484 Foreign language journalism

Newspapers and periodicals in languages foreign to country where publisht

.486 Professional and technical journalism

Including commercial, business journalism, employees' magazines, house organs

.49 *Pictorial journalism*

Periodicals and newspapers which present fact, fiction, opinion by means of pictures and running commentary

Including tabloids

For newsreel photography, see 778 538 07, individual newspapers, 071-079, individual magazines, 051-059

.9 History of newspapers and journalism

071-079 Newspapers

Works about individual newspapers, the newspapers themselves, history of newspapers by place

Divide by place of publication as below, if preferred, arrange individual newspapers alphabetically without classification

071 Newspapers publisht in Canada and United States

Including comprehensive works on newspapers in North America

For newspapers publisht in Mexico, Central America, West Indies, see 079 72

.1 Newspapers publisht in Canada

.3–.9 Newspapers publisht in United States

Divide like 973–979, e g , New York Times 071 471

072 Newspapers publisht in England and Wales

For newspapers publisht in Scotland, see 079 41, in Ireland, 079 415

073 Newspapers publisht in Germany

Divide like 943 for newspapers publisht in countries whose history classes in 943, e g newspapers publisht in Austria 073 6

074 Newspapers publisht in France

075 Newspapers publisht in Italy

076 Newspapers publisht in Spain

9 Newspapers publisht in Portugal

077 Newspapers publisht in Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

1 Newspapers publisht in Finland

078 Newspapers publisht in Scandinavia

Divide like 948 e g newspapers publisht in Sweden 078 5

079 Newspapers publisht in other countries

Divide like 930–999 except as provided above e g newspapers publisht in Cuba 079 729 1

080 Collected works

Collections of works on different subjects brought together in a single work collection set or series

For collections on a specific subject see the subject e g collected works on education 370 8 *collected literary works the* 800 s *general collected essays* 040

081 Collected works of individual authors

Complete or collected works too general to go with a specific subject

082 Collected works of several authors

Collections of works too general to go with a specific subject

2 Miscellanies and extracts

Including gift book" or keepsake type of collections

For literary keepsakes see the 800 s

083

084

085

086

087

088

089

090 Manuscripts and rare books

Class rare books and manuscripts with their respective subjects except when interest or value is more as rare book or manuscript than as contribution to specific subject

For bibliography see 010 printing and publishing 655

091 Manuscripts

For illuminated manuscripts see 096 paleography 417

5 Autographs

6 Printed works with manuscript notes in hand of celebrated writers

For works with manuscript notes by the author see 091 5

092 Block books

093 Incunabula

Books printed before 1501

Including colophons

For invention and history of printing see 655 1

094 Rare printing

Books of great rarity printed after 1500

Including typographic masterpieces e g Elzevirs Caxtons small editions privately printed books unique copies deluxe editions

4 First editions

095 Rare binding

Including noted binders embroidered and jeweled bindings curious bindings fine tooling coats of arms

For bookbinding see 655 7

096 Rare illustrations or materials

Including illuminated books manuscripts printing on vellum silk in gold silver

For book illustration see 741 64 technique of illumination 745 67

097 Bookplates

Including marks of ownership or of origin e g monograms seals coats of arms

098 Various works remarkable for the nature of their content

Including bibliographies and lists

1 Prohibited books

Including condemned censored obscene books

11 Prohibited by religious authorities

Including books considered contrary to church faith tradition or discipline

12 Prohibited by civil authorities

Including books considered contrary to or subversive of morality government social peace seditious satirical libelous books

3 Lost or imaginary books

Including literary forgeries and mystifications hoaxes

5 Books with key

Livres à clef

099 Curiosa and eccentric books

Including microphotographic microscopic miniature editions dwarf books

Philosophy

100 Philosophy

For philosophy of a specific subject see the subject e g, philosophy of science 501

101 Value and use of philosophy

Class esthetics [*formerly* *101] in 111.85

102 Handbooks and outlines

103 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

104 Essays and lectures

For works by individual philosophers see 180–199

105 Periodicals

106 Organizations and societies

107 Study and teaching

108 Collections

For works by individual philosophers see 180–199

109 History

Comprehensive works

For history of ancient medieval Oriental philosophy see 180 of modern philosophy 190 of specific philosophical topics 140

110 Metaphysics

Science of existence cause purpose

For metaphysical theories not provided for here see 120

111 Ontology

Nature of being or reality

For cause and effect see 122 infinite and finite 125

.1 Existentialism

.8 Transcendental properties of being

.82 Unity

.83 Truth

For truth in social ethics see 177 3

111 84 Goodness and evil

For aspects in natural theology see 216 *ethics* 170 *Manicheism* 273.23 *optimism* 149 5 *pessimism* 149 6

85 Beauty

Including comprehensive works on esthetics [*formerly* *101]

For esthetics of a specific subject see the subject e g esthetics of the arts 701 17 *literary esthetics* 801 9

112 Methodology

Philosophic classification of knowledge

For methodology of a specific subject see the subject e g methodology of technology 601 8 *classification of books* 025 4

113 Cosmology

Philosophic theory of nature and the universe

Including cosmogony [*formerly* *523 1]

For physical universe see 523 1 *creation in natural theology* 213 *Genesis* 222 11 *creation in religions other than Christianity and Judaism* 290 *teleology* 124

114 Space

For space time see 115 4 *space perception* 152 752 *space in astronomy* 523 1

115 Time and duration

Relation of time and motion

Including eternity

For motion see 116 *quantity* 119 *chronology* 529 *time perception* 152 753 *eternity in natural theology* 218 *in Christian theology* 237 1 *in other theologies* 290

4 Space time

Philosophic implications of theories of relativity

For relativity theory in physics see 530 11

116 Motion and change

For relation of time and motion see 115 *perception of movement* 152 754 *kinematics* 531 1

117 Matter

For physical theory of matter see 530 1 *chemical structure of matter* 541.2 *nature of living matter* 577

118 Force and energy

For conservation of energy see 531 6

119 Quantity

For mathematics see 510

120 Other metaphysical theories

121 Epistemology

Theory of knowledge

Including origin sources limits validity

5 Doubt and denial

For agnosticism see 149 72 as a Christian heresy, 273 8 in natural theology 211 7

6 Belief and certitude

7 Faith

For faith in Christian theology see 234 2 faith as basis for logic, 163

8 Worth and theory of values

122 Cause and effect

Including chance versus cause

For final cause see 124

123 Freedom and necessity

Including determinism and indeterminism

For freedom of will in psychology see 159 1 freedom in Christian theology 233 7 predestination in Christian theology 234 9 free dom and predestination in other theologies 290, liberty of the individual 323 44

3 Chance

For chance versus cause see 122

124 Teleology

Including theory of purpose final cause

For cause and effect see 122

125 Finite and infinite

The conditioned and the unconditioned

126 Consciousness and personality

For psychology of personality see 137 psychology of consciousness 153 7 Christian doctrine of personality 233 doctrine of personality in other religions 290

127 The unconscious and the subconscious

For psychology of the unconscious and the subconscious see 153 8

128 The soul [*formerly* *233.5]

The unique nature of man philosophically considered

Including the mind, both animal and human

For the soul in natural theology, see 218, *in Christian theology,* 233 5, *future state in Christian theology,* 237, *soul and future state in other theologies,* 290, *general psychology,* 150, *comparative psychology,* 151 3

.3 Nature of man

For anthropology, see 572–573, *man as member of animal kingdom,* 599 9

.5 Nature of life and death

For nature of living matter, see 577

129 Origin and destiny of the soul [formerly *218]

For Christian doctrine of salvation, see 234, *doctrine of salvation in other religions,* 290

.4 Incarnation and reincarnation

For incarnation in Christology, see 232 1, *in other religions,* 290

.6 Immortality

For immortality in natural theology see 218, *in Christian theology,* 237 2 *in other theologies* 290

130 Branches of psychology and pseudopsychology

For general psychology, see 150, *social psychology,* 301 15, *educational psychology,* 370 15

.1 Theories of mind and body

For modern psychological theories see 150 1

131 Physiological psychology

Former heading Psychosomatics

Comprehensive works on relationship of bodily functions to mental processes

For sensation and perception, see 152, *emotions,* 157, *movement and movement response,* 158 3

[†.1] Anatomy of nervous system

Class in 611 8

[†.2] Physiology of nervous system

Class in 612 8

131.3 Mental hygiene

Measures to preserve mental health and prevent mental illness

Class clinical psychology [*formerly* *131 3] in 132 075

For treatment of psychoneuroses, see 616 85, *of psychoses,* 616 89

.32 Factors promoting mental health

Class New Thought [*formerly* *131 32] in 289 9

.322 Therapeutic counseling (Psychotherapy)

Techniques used in improving the mental health of individuals

For psychoanalysis, see 131 34, *specific methods of treating mental illness,* 616 891, *pastoral counseling,* 253 5

[† 324] New Thought

Class in 289 9

.329 Mental health community services

Including administration of national and local programs

Divide like 940–999, e g, mental health programs in New York State 131 329 747

33 Factors adverse to mental health

332 Social factors adverse to mental health

Including effect of war on mental health

For psychological aspects of war neuroses, see 132 15, *treatment of war neuroses,* 616 852 1

333 Planned attacks on mental health

Including brainwashing ' thought control deliberate mental harassment

[† 334] Action of poisons on nervous system

Class in 613 8

335 Effect of disease on mental health

Including effect of disablement on mental health

For vocational rehabilitation see 371 91

336 Effect of fatigue on mental health

337 Effect of anxiety on mental health

For psychological aspects of anxiety neuroses, see 132 15, *treatment of anxiety neuroses,* 616 852 2

131.34 **Psychoanalysis**

Diagnosis and treatment of psychoses and psychoneuroses by bringing into awareness the causes of emotional conflicts, and reorganizing unfavorable behavior patterns

For treatment of a specific mental disease, see the disease, e g , hysteria 616 852, psychoanalytic interpretation of dreams, 135 383

341 Theoretic concepts of psychoanalysis

Including explanation of terms peculiar to psychoanalysis, e g id ego, superego, complexes, conflicts sublimation, transference

342 Psychoanalytic procedures

Methods and techniques of managing psychoanalytic treatment

346 Psychoanalytic schools or systems

346 2 Freudian psychoanalytic system

346 3 Adlerian psychoanalytic system

346 4 Jungian psychoanalytic system

346 7 Neo-Freudian psychoanalytic systems

346 9 Other psychoanalytic systems

348 Applications of psychoanalysis

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of psychoanalysis see the subject e g , psychoanalytic interpretation of Hamlet 822 3

132 Abnormal psychology

For hypnotism, see 134, criminal psychology 364 34 mental factors as causes of crime, 364 24

075 Clinical psychology (Psychodiagnosis) [*formerly* *131 3]

Psychological methods of appraising and correcting adjustment problems of individuals

For personality tests see 137 8, psychological tests, 151 2 psychoanalysis, 131 34

1 Mental illness

Psychological aspects of the mentally ill

For treatment of mental diseases, see 616 85–616 898 3 service to the mentally ill, 362 2

13 Organic psychoses

Comprehensive works

For psychological aspects of a specific organic psychosis, see the subject, e g , senile dementia 132 198 3

132 14 Chronic fatigue and depressions (Asthenic reactions)

Including neurasthenia"

Class functional psychoses [*formerly* †132 14] in 132 19

.15 Psychoneuroses

Psychological aspects of hysteria anxiety neuroses, obsessive-compulsive neuroses, phobias, war neuroses, catalepsy [*formerly* †132 4], ecstasy [*formerly* †132 5]

For asthenic reactions, see 132 14, *melancholia, hypochondriasis,* 132 195, *character neuroses,* 132 6–132 75, *psychopathic personality,* 132 6

151 Chorea

153 Epilepsy

155 Aphasias

[† 161] Alcoholism

Class in 132 72

19 Functional psychoses [*formerly* †132 14]

192 General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

[† 193] Pathologic intoxication, delirium tremens, Korsakow's psychosis, alcoholic hallucinosis

Class in 132 72

195 Manic-depressive psychoses

Including psychological aspects of depressive psychoses, e g, hypochondriasis, melancholia [*both formerly* †132 3]

195 7 Involutional psychoses

197 Paranoia and paranoid conditions

198 Schizophrenia and senile dementias

[† 198 12] Alcoholic dementia

Class in 132 72

.198 2 Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)

198 3 Senile dementias

Including psychological aspects of psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis

.2 Mental deficiency

Comprehensive works on feeblemindedness and arrested mental development

For psychology of mentally retarded children, see 136 766, *education of the mentally retarded,* 371 92, *service to the mentally defective,* 362 3

[†132 22] Psychopathic personality

Class in 132 6

24 Degrees and clinical types of feeblemindedness

242 2 Idiots

For mongolism see 132 243 2 *cretinism* 132 244 2

242 3 Imbeciles

242 4 Morons

242 5 Borderline feeblemindedness

243 2 Mongolism

243 3 Hydrocephalus

244 2 Cretinism (Congenital myxedemism)

[† 3] **Hypochondriasis and melancholia**

Class in 132 195

[† 4] **Catalepsy**

Class in 132 15

[† 5] **Ecstasy**

Class in 132 15

6 **Antisocial compulsions (Character neuroses)**

Persistent abnormality of character and social conduct

Including psychopathic personality [*formerly* †132 22]

62 Kleptomania

63 Psychopathic defrauders

64 Pyromania

65 *Homicidal and suicidal compulsions*

72 Dipsomania (Alcoholism) [*formerly also* †132 161]

Including psychological aspects of pathological intoxication, delirium tremens Korsakow's psychosis alcoholic hallucinosis [*all formerly* †132 193] alcoholic dementia [*formerly* †132 198 12] alcoholic polyneuritis

73 Drug addiction

74 Psychopathic lying

75 Sexual deviations

For sex deviates in society see 301 424

8 **Amnesias**

Psychopathic loss of memory [*formerly also* †154 7]

For normal forgetting see 154 5

133 Occult sciences [*formerly also* †149.3]

07 Parapsychology (Psychical research)

Comprehensive works on investigations of obscure, unexplained mental or spiritual phenomena

For research on a specific phenomenon see the subject e g research on extrasensory perception 133 81

1 Apparitions (Ghosts)

For haunted places see 398.32

2 Hallucinations

For hypnotic hallucinations see 134 52, *errors of perception* 152 73

3 Divination

322 Crystal gazing

323 Divining rods [*formerly also* †622 12]

324 Fortunetelling

Including fortunetelling with cards reading coffee grounds and tea leaves

For crystal gazing see 133 322 *palmistry* 133 6 *divinatory graphology* 137 72 *fortunetelling by dreams* 133 382

333 Geomancy

335 Numerology

For astrology see 133 5

4 Witchcraft

Including sorcery necromancy demonology voodooism

5 Astrology

Including horoscopes zodiacal signs

6 Palmistry

Including chiromancy

7 Charlatanry

8 Telepathy

Including clairvoyance clairaudience mind reading thought transference

81 Research on extrasensory perception

133 9 Spiritualism

For spiritualism as a religious movement see 289 9 as a philosophical topic 141

91 Mediumship

Development and practice of mediumship

Including psychic experiences of individual mediums

For a specific phenomenon of spiritualism see the subject e g levitation 133 92 hypnotic trance phenomena 134 52

92 Physical phenomena of spiritualism

Including table-tipping rapping levitation dematerialization of objects ectoplasm

93 Psychic phenomena of spiritualism

Including ouija board messages automatic writing automatic utterances

[† 94] Faith healing

Class in 615 852

134 Hypnotism [*formerly also* †612 821 71]

2 Induction of hypnosis

Including means and methods of inducing hypnotic state

5 *Hypnotic phenomena*

52 Hypnotic trance phenomena

Including hypnotic delusions hallucinations anesthesia catalepsy heightened recall age regression

53 Posthypnotic phenomena

Including posthypnotic compulsions hypnotic amnesia

6 Autohypnotism

8 Applications of hypnotism

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of hypnotism see the subject e g hypnotism as a factor in crime 364 24

135 Sleep, dreams, somnambulism

2 Sleep

Comprehensive works

Including psychological aspects of sleep sleep patterns

For physiological aspects of sleep see 612 821 7

26 Sleep privation

135.27 Sleep abnormalities

Including psychological aspects of insomnia

For treatment of insomnia see 616.849

.3 Dreams

Comprehensive works

For physiological aspects of dreams see 612.821 7

.32 Classification of dreams

.322 Dreams related to direct stimuli

Including dreams due to physical and mental stimuli

.323 Other types of dreams

Including nightmares, night terrors, prophetic dreams, recurrent dreams

.37 Daydreams

Autistic thinking, reveries

.38 Interpretation of dreams

.382 Popular interpretation of dreams

Including dream books [*formerly also* †398.7], fortunetelling by dreams

.383 Scientific interpretation of dreams

Including psychoanalytic interpretation of dreams

.5 Somnambulism

.6 Sleep talking

136 Differential psychology

Psychology of group and individual differences

Including genetic psychology

.1 Psychology of the sexes

For the sexes in society see 301.424

.11 Sex differences

.15 Psychology of women

For psychology of girls see 136.77

.16 Psychology of men

For psychology of boys see 136.77

.17 Sex and personality

136.2 Environmental psychology

Influence of physical and social factors on behavior of individuals

For social psychology, see 301 15

.3 Evolutional psychology

Influence of heredity on personal characteristics

.4 Ethnopsychology and national psychology

.41 Psychology of primitive man

Including psychology of prehistoric man

.45 Psychology of race differences

Including race differences in behavior, intellect, performance, attitudes, temperaments

.48 Ethnopsychology

Psychology of ethnic groups not confined to specific countries or areas

Divide like 420–499, e g , psychology of Latin races 136 487

.49 National psychology

Divide like 930–999, e g psychology of Italians 136 494 5

.5 Developmental psychology

.52 Psychology of adult maturity

.53 Psychology of the aged

.7 Child psychology

Study of psychology of children from birth to adulthood

Class physical development of child [*formerly* *136 7] in 612.65

For educational psychology, see 370 15, child care and management, 649 1, pediatrics, 618 92

.702 Study methods

Including laboratory methods

.708 Case histories of children

Including observations, records, albums of individual children

[†*.71] Physical development of child, infant psychology

Class physical development of child [*formerly* †136 71] in 612.65, infant psychology [*formerly* *136 71] in 136 735 2

.72 Intellectual development of child

For psychological tests and measurements, see 151.2

136 73 Personality traits of children

Including factors affecting personality of children

For psychology of boys see 136 77, of girls, 136 775

.732 Environmental factors

733 Hereditary factors

734 Racial factors

Including psychological aspects of child as member of a minority group

.735 Developmental factors

Child psychology by age groups

.735 2 Infant psychology [*formerly* *136 71]

Psychology of children from birth to two years of age

735 3 Childhood psychology

.735 32 Psychology of preschool children

Psychology of children from three to five years of age

.735 33 Psychology of grade school children

Psychology of children from six to eleven years of age

735 4 Psychology of adolescence

Psychology of youth from twelve to twenty years of age

74 Attitudes and beliefs of children

Divide like 000–999, e g , attitudes of children about religion 136 742

[† 75] Delineation of children

Class children in art in 704 942 5, in literature in 809 93

76 Psychology of exceptional children

For education of exceptional children, see 371 9

761 Psychology of physically handicapt children

Including psychology of blind children, deaf mutes, blind deaf mutes, crippled and deformed children, chronically ill children

762 Psychology of mentally disturbed children

Including conduct and personality problems of children

763 Psychology of delinquent children

764 Psychology of wildings

136 765 Psychology of gifted children

Including psychology of precocious children

766 Psychology of mentally retarded children

767 Psychology of institutionalized children

Including psychology of orphans foundlings abandoned children

769 Psychology of other exceptional children

Including psychology of adopted children foster children

77 Psychology of boys

Class gangs [*formerly* †136 77] in 301 158

For psychology of men see 136 16

775 Psychology of girls

For psychology of women see 136 15

79 Childhood in various countries and times

791 Childhood in primitive cultures

Comprehensive works

For childhood in a specific country see 136 793–136 799

793–799 Childhood in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g , childhood in Samoa 136 799 613

137 Psychology of personality

For metaphysical aspects of personality see 126

3 Personality determinants

Including personality traits

For personality traits of children see 136 73

31 Biological and physical determinants of personality

32 Acquired determinants of personality

Including moral and religious determinants of personality

For social determinants of personality see 137 33 *mental determinants,* 137 35

33 Social determinants of personality

35 Mental determinants of personality

38 Other determinants of personality

Including special talents and abilities affecting personality

137.4 Types of personality (Psychological typology)

.42 Classical classifications of personality

Including Hippocrates' theory of temperaments

45 Modern classifications of personality

Including personality classification schemes of Jung James, Stern Rorschach Kretschmer, Sheldon

5 Methods of developing personality

.7 Graphology

Handwriting analysis

For handwriting analysis in crime investigation, see 364 122

72 Divinatory graphology

Fortunetelling by means of handwriting analysis

75 Diagnostic graphology

Analysis of handwriting to determine course of mental illness, temperaments, traits

8 Personality appraisals and tests

For psychological tests, see 151 2

82 Inventories and questionnaires

.84 Projective techniques

842 Rorschach personality tests

843 Thematic apperception tests

138 Physiognomy

Determination of character from analysis of features

139 Phrenology

Determination of mental capacity from skull structure

140 Philosophical topics [*formerly* *180–*199]

Including philosophical systems and doctrines

For history of philosophy see 109, *in a specific country* 180–199, *works of a specific philosopher associated with a topic, system, or doctrine,* 180–199

141 Idealism and related topics

Including spiritualism panpsychism, subjectivism voluntarism Platonism Neoplatonism

For spiritualism as an occult science, see 133 9

.3 Transcendentalism

141.4 Individualism

For individual rights and protection see 323.4

.5 Personalism

.6 Romanticism

For romanticism in a specific subject see the subject e.g. romanticism in literature 809.91

142 Critical philosophy

Including criticism neocriticism

.3 Kantianism and Neo-Kantianism

.7 Phenomenalism

Including phenomenology

143 Intuitionism

Including Bergsonism

For mysticism see 149.3 intuition in psychology 156

144 Humanism and related topics

For religious humanism see 211.6 behavioristic psychology 150.194 3

.2 Empiricism

.3 Pragmatism

.5 Instrumentalism

.6 Utilitarianism

145 Sensationalism

146 Naturalism and related topics

Including dynamism energism transformism

For realism see 149.2

.3 Materialism

Including comprehensive works on dialectical materialism

For dialectical materialism as philosophy of communism see 335.411

.4 Positivism

Including Comtism

.5 Atomism

For molecular atomic nuclear physics see 539 chemical structure of matter 541.2

146.6 **Mechanism**

Including neomechanism

.7 **Evolutionism**

For organic evolution, see 575

147 Pantheism and related topics

Including panentheism animism, vitalism, parallelism, occasionalism

For religious pantheism, see 212, gnostic philosophy, 189 1

.3 **Monism**

.4 **Pluralism**

Including dualism

For theories of mind and body in psychology see 130 1

148 Liberalism and related topics

Including eclecticism, syncretism, traditionalism dogmatism

149 Other philosophical topics

.1 **Nominalism**

Including conceptualism

2 **Realism**

Including neorealism, critical realism, scholasticism

3 **Mysticism**

Comprehensive works

Including anthroposophy esoteric philosophy

Class occultism in 133, theosophy in 212 5 [*both formerly* †149 3]

For mysticism as Christian heresy see 273 2, in comparative religion, 291 14, medieval mysticism, 189 5, yoga philosophy, 181 45, intuitionism, 143

.5 **Optimism**

Including meliorism

For ethical theories see 171 good and evil, 111 84 aspects in natural theology 216

6 **Pessimism**

For ethical theories, see 171 good and evil, 111 84, aspects in natural theology 216

149 7 **Rationalism and related topics**

Including intellectualism innatism nativism soph sticism

72 Agnosticism

For agnostic heresy see 273 8 agnosticism in natural theology 211 7

.73 Modern skepticism

For ancient skepticism see 186 atheism 211 8

8 **Nihilism**

Including fatalism

For economic aspects of nihilism see 335 83 fatalism in natural theology 214 existentialism 111 1

9 **Other topics**

94 Semantic philosophy

Including general semantics

For linguistic aspects of semantics see 412

150 General psychology

Study of human behavior

For branches of psychology and pseudopsychology see 130

1 Modern psychological theories

For theories of mind and body see 130 1

13 Applied psychology

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of psychology see the subject e g educational psychology 370 15

18 Psychological methodology

Non laboratory methods of psychological investigation

Including subjective methods [*formerly also* †150 725 2] description of observations field studies

For experimental psychology see 150 72

19 Psychological systems (Psychological schools)

192 Subjective psychologies

For psychoanalytic schools see 131 346 depth psychology 153.8

192 1 Rational psychology

150 192 2 Faculty psychology

Preseventeenth century doctrines of mental faculties or powers

.192 4 Gestalt psychology

For perception and attention, see 152 7

.192 5 Structural psychology (Existential psychology)

.193 Functional psychologies

.193 2 Dynamic psychologies

For motivation, see 159 4, psychoanalysis, 131 34

193 3 Purposive (Hormic) psychologies

.194 Objective psychologies

194 3 Behavioristic psychologies

.194 4 Reflexology (Associationism)

For conditioned reflexes, see 158 423

.7 Study and teaching

72 Experimental psychology

.722 Psychological laboratories

Including equipment, apparatus

725 Psychological laboratory methods

Class subjective methods [*formerly* †150 725 2] in 150 18

For non laboratory methods of psychological investigation, see 150 18

725 3 Statistical methods and experimental design

For interpretation of test results, see 151 26

151 Intelligence [*formerly also* †612.821 3] and aptitudes

For intellectual development of children, see 136 72

1 Genius

Comprehensive works

For psychology of gifted children, see 136 765, education of gifted children, 371 95

2 Psychological tests

For educational tests and measurements, see 371 26, personality tests, 137 8

151.22 Types of psychological tests

.222 General intelligence tests

Including individual and group tests both verbal and nonverbal, e g, *Stanford Binet tests* *Yerkes* point scale, Otis group tests Thurstone tests Army alpha tests, Army beta tests

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works

.223 Aptitude tests

Special ability tests e g, music manual dexterity linguistics, mathematics

Including individual and group tests both verbal and nonverbal

Arrange alphabetically using A1 for comprehensive works

.25 Construction and administration of psychological tests

.26 Interpretation of test results

Including scoring methods establishing norms graphic presentation of results validity and reliability

.28 Use of psychological tests

Comprehensive works

For a specific use of psychological tests, see the subject e g, tests for selecting employees 658.311

.29 Factors affecting intelligence

Environmental and hereditary factors

Including effect of disease on intelligence [*formerly* †612.821 5]

.3 Comparative psychology (Animal psychology) [*formerly also* †612.821 31]

Comprehensive works

For animal ecology see 591.5 *physiological psychology* 131

152 Sensation and perception [*formerly also* *612.8, †612.821 8]

For physiology of the sense organs see 612.84–612.88 *physiological psychology* 131

.1 Visual sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612.843 3–†612.843 7]

Psychological optics

Including binocular phenomena [*formerly also* †612.846 2] color vision, visual acuity visual space perception visual illusions after images

[†152 11] Fibrous tunics of eye

Class in 612 841

[† 12] Uvea

Class in 612.842

[† 13] Optic nerve and retina

Class in 612 843

[† 14] Eyeball

Class in 612.844

[† 15] Functional disorders of vision

Class in 617 755

[† 16] Movements of eye

Class in 612 846

[† 17] Eyelids and tear ducts

Class in 612 847

18 Tests of visual perception [*formerly also* †612 848]

2 Auditory sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612 858 7–†612 858 76]

Including threshold and intelligibility of sounds (musical psychology) binaural audition sound localization auditory acuity

For psychology of music see 781 15

[† 21] External ear

Class in 612 851

[† 24–† 27] Middle ear

Class in 612 854

28 Tests of auditory perception [*formerly also* †612 858 78]

Class internal ear [*formerly* †152 28] in 612 858

3 Olfactory sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612 867]

Including olfactory acuity fusion of odors

For relationship of taste and smell see 152 4

[† 31] Olfactory organs

Class in 612 86

37 Tests of olfactory perception [*formerly also* †612 867 8]

152 4 Gustatory sensation and perception

Including gustatory acuity, fusion of tastes relationship of taste and smell

[† 41] Gustatory organs

Class in 612 87

47 Tests of gustatory perception

5 Cutaneous sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612 882–†612 884]

Including sensation and perception of temperature pressure pain fusion of tactile perceptions tactile acuity

[† 51] Anatomy and physiology of tactile organs

Class anatomy of tactile organs in 611 88 physiology in 612 88

57 Tests of cutaneous perception

6 Proprioceptive sensations and perceptions [*formerly also* †612 885]

Including kinesthetic vestibular orientational [*formerly also* †612 886 1] hunger and thirst sensations and perceptions

[† 61] Anatomy and physiology of proprioceptive organs

Class anatomy of proprioceptive organs in 611 88 physiology in 612 88

67 Tests of proprioceptive perceptions

7 Perception and attention

72 Elements of perception

For perception thru a specific sense see the subject e g, visual perception 152 1

723 Attention [*formerly also* †612 821 2]

724 Apperception

725 Preperception

73 Errors of perception

Normal illusions [*formerly also* †612 821 89]

For a specific sensory illusion see the subject e g visual illusions 152 1

75 Types of perception

752 Space perception

For visual space perception see 152 1 *sound localization* 152.2

152.753 Time and rhythm perception

.754 Perception of movement

.77 Synesthesia

Concomitant sensation and perception

.8 Psychophysics [*formerly also* †612 821 88]

Methods of measuring sensation and perception

For experimental psychology, see 150 72, *psychological tests,* 151 2

.83 Reaction-time studies [*formerly also* †612.821 1]

153 Cognition

.1 Concepts and concept formation

.2 Association of ideas [*formerly also* †612 821 2]

For memory and learning, see 154

.3 Abstraction

.4 Reflection

.5 Judgment

6 Reasoning

For logic, see 160

.65 Symbol use and secondary meaning

Including language and thought, imageless thought

.66 Results of reasoning

Including knowledge of reality, belief, values, meaning

For epistemology, see 121

.7 Consciousness

For metaphysical aspects of consciousness, see 126

.8 Depth psychology

Including psychological aspects of the unconscious, coconscious, subconscious, preconscious

For metaphysical aspects of the unconscious and the subconscious, see 127, *psychoanalysis,* 131 34

154 Memory [*formerly also* †612.821 2] and learning

For association of ideas, see 153 2

.1 Mnemonics

Memory aids

154 3 Memory processes

32 Retention

33 Recall and reproduction

34 Recognition

4 Learning

Including methods types of learning

For motor learning see 158 433 *classroom learning* 370 15

44 Factors in learning

46 Learning curves

47 Transfer of learning

5 Normal forgetting

For amnesias see 132 8

53 Forgetting curves

[† 7] Loss of memory

Class in 132 8

8 Measurements of retention

155 Imagination [*formerly also* †612 821 2]

2 Imagery

3 Creative imagination

156 Intuition

157 Emotions [*formerly also* †612 821 3]

1 Emotional states

Including sentiments moods anxiety

2 Expression of emotions

Including physiological changes and overt behavior accompanying emotions

3 Varieties of emotions

Including primitive or uncontrolled emotions [*formerly* †157 4]

Arrange alphabetically by name of the emotion using A1 for comprehensive works

[† 4] Primitive emotions (Uncontrolled emotions)

Class in 157 3

157.5 **Feeling and feeling tone**

Former heading Properties of sensibility

Including sensibility [*formerly also* †612 821 3]

158 Conation, movement, instinct

.1 **Conation and feeling**

[†.2] **Physiology of movement**

Class in 612 7

.3 **Movement and movement response**

.4 Automatic movements

.42 Innate movements

.422 Tropisms

423 Reflexes [*formerly also* †612 821 6]

Including conditioned reflexes

For reflexology, see 150 194 4

424 Instincts [*formerly also* †612 821 3]

43 Habits [*formerly also* †612 821 34]

432 Laws of habit

433 Motor learning

434 Habit formation

435 Handedness

Including laterality

5 Voluntary movements

.7 **Work and fatigue**

For industrial fatigue, see 331 824, *muscular metabolism,* 612 744

72 Work fatigue curves

73 Factors in work efficiency

74 Elements in fatigue

78 Methods of measuring work and fatigue

.8 **Special motor functions**

Psychological aspects of locomotion expressive movements vocal and graphic expressions

For physiological aspects of motor functions, see 612 7, *handedness,* 158 435

159 **Volition and motivation**

.1 **Freedom of will**

Including choice decision deliberation

For metaphysical aspects of freedom see 123 *Christian doctrine of freedom* 233 7

.2 **Volition (Will [*formerly also* †612 821 34])**

Including voluntary action

For voluntary movements see 158 5

.3 **Adaptability**

.4 **Motivation (Drives [*formerly also* †612 821 34])**

Including biological secondary social drives as motives

160 Logic

Science of reasoning processes

Including problem solving dialectics

For the psychology of reasoning see 153 6 *epistemology* 121 *methodology* 112

161 Induction

For statistical methods see 311 2 *hypothesis* 167 *analogy* 169

162 Deduction

For syllogism see 166

163 Logic based on faith

For faith in Christian theology see 234 2 *faith as a basis for knowledge* 121 7

164 Symbolic and mathematical logic

Including terms concepts

For statistical methods see 311 2 *mathematics* 510

165 Fallacies and sources of error

166 Syllogism

167 Hypothesis

168 Argument and persuasion

For debating see 808 53

169 Analogy

For analogy in natural theology see 219

170 Ethics

Science of moral values of human life

Including moral science, moral philosophy, conduct of life

For ethical education, see 377 2, *social institutions and relationships,* 301 4, *manners and customs,* 390, *moral theology,* 241

[.1] Ethical theories

Class in 171

171 Ethical theories

Theories of the basis of morality, moral systems

For Kantianism, see 142 3

.1 Authoritarian ethical theories

Including comprehensive works on Christian ethics [*formerly* *241]

For rules of Christian conduct, see 241, *conscience,* 171 6

.2 Intuition and moral sense

For intuitionism, see 143, *conscience,* 171 6

.3 Perfectionism

Self-realization or fulfillment of personality

.4 Pleasure theories

Including happiness, hedonism

For egoism, see 171 9, *utilitarianism,* 171 5, *Epicurean philosophy,* 187

.5 Utilitarianism

For success, see 174

.6 Conscience

Including conflict of duties

For intuition and moral sense, see 171 2

.7 Evolutionary ethics

Development of ethical conduct thru evolution and education

.8 Altruism

9 Egoism

172–179 Practical ethics

172 Political ethics [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

.1 Ethics of citizenship

Duties of citizen to community, state, nation with respect to defense, obedience to law, payment of taxes, civic and political activity

Including ethics of revolution, civil war

For patriotism, see 320 158, political aspects of duties and obligations of citizens, 323 65, political struggles, 323 2

.2 Ethics of public officials

Duties of officials with respect to security, material welfare, administration of justice, education, freedom of citizens

Including corruption, graft

.3 State's duty to church

Ethical basis for state's support and protection of church

Including liberty of conscience

For church and civil government, see 261 7, state and church, 322, persecutions, 272

.4 International relations

Including ethical foreign policies, national policies, duties of nation-states, ethics of war and peace, disarmament, espionage

For international law, see 341, world peace, 341 1, foreign relations, 327

173 Family [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including marriage, separation, divorce responsibilities of parents for children and home life

For social problems of the family see 301 42, family customs, 392 3, family law, 301 420 26, home care of the child, 649 1

174 Occupations

Comprehensive works on ethical aspects only

Including morals of working class [*formerly also* †331 84], ethical works on "how to be successful", integrity

Class ethics of a specific profession or business [*formerly* †174 1-†174 4] with the profession or business, e g , medical ethics 610 694

For success in business, see 650 19

174.6 **Gambling**

Ethics of gambling in business, of gambling as a business, of lotteries

For ethics of games of chance, see 175 5, of betting, 175 9, gambling at games of chance, 795, lotteries, 332 68

175 Recreation [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including sportsmanship, fair play

For amusements and recreations, see 790

.1 **Public shows**

Including ethics of radio and television programs, motion pictures, circuses

.2 **Theater and opera**

.3 **Dancing**

.4 **Games of skill**

.5 **Games of chance**

Including card, dice, roulette games

For ethics of gambling business, see 174 6, of betting, 175 9

.6 **Prize fighting and animal fighting**

Including boxing, wrestling, bullfights, cockfights

For cruelty to animals, see 179.3

.7 **Racing**

Including horse racing, boat racing, dog racing

For cruelty to animals, see 179 3

.8 **Recreational reading**

Ethical aspects only

For prohibited books, see 098 1, salacious literature, 176 8

83 Comics

For influence and value, see 741 501 3

.9 **Betting**

For ethics of gambling business, see 174 6, of games of chance, 175 5, gambling at games of chance, 795, at horse racing, 798 48

176 Sex [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including chastity celibacy continence adultery

For celibacy of the clergy see 253 2 *the sexes in society* 301 424

5 Prostitution

For sociological aspects of prostitution see 301 424 3

7 Salacious art

Including pictorial obscenity

8 Salacious literature

For ethics of recreational reading see 175 8 *prohibited books* 098 1

177 Social relations

Ethical aspects only

Class political ethics in 172 family ethics in 173 ethics of recreation in 175 sex ethics in 176 ethics of temperance in 178 [*all formerly* *177]

1 Courtesy

Including politeness hospitality

For etiquette see 395

2 Conversation

Including gossip scandal

For art of conversation see 808 5

3 Slander

Including truth flattery prejudice antipathy lying

4 Personal appearance

Including exposure of person display of dress luxury

For sex ethics see 176

5 Caste and segregation

Including class feeling rank snobbery

For protection of individual rights see 323 4

6 Friendship and courtship

For sociology of courtship see 301 425 *customs of courtship* 392 4

7 Philanthropy

Including benevolence kindness humanity

For charity as Christian love see 179 9

178 Temperance and intemperance [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

1 Use of intoxicating liquors

Including beer drinking, medicinal use, abstinence, social drinking [*formerly* †178.2, †178.3], intoxicated persons [*formerly* †178.6]

For treatment of alcoholism see 616.861, effect of alcohol on health 613.8, psychological aspects of alcoholism 132.72, drinking customs 394.1, institutions for alcoholics 362.196 861

[†2–†3] Abstinence, social drinking

Class in 178.1

[†4] Liquor traffic

Class inspection and control of alcoholic beverages in 614.34, economic aspects of liquor industry in 338.476 63

5 Prohibition

Including discussion of legal aspects of Prohibition Act and its repeal

For liquor laws see 614.34, bootlegging as a crime 364.133

[†6] Intoxicated persons

Class in 178.1

7 Tobacco

8 Narcotics

Including opium, cocaine, marijuana, heroin

For medicinal use of narcotics see 615.782, treatment of drug addiction 616.863

9 Other forms of intemperance

Including gluttony, greediness

For treatment of obesity see 616.398

179 Other ethical topics

Ethical aspects only

For conduct of life see 170

[†1] Morals of the press

Class in 070.11

2 Cruelty

Comprehensive works on cruelty to children and animals

Including humane societies

For welfare services to children see 362.7

179.3 Cruelty to animals

For ethics of animal fighting, see 175.6, of animal racing, 175.7

.4 Vivisection

For vivisection laws, see 614.22

.5 **Oaths**

Profanity, blasphemy, obscenity in speech

.6 **Bravery**

Including heroism, courage, valor, cowardice

.7 **Respect for human life**

Including ethical aspects of suicide, dueling

For euthanasia, see 610.694 4

.8 **Human vices, faults, failings**

Including pride, covetousness, envy, anger, sloth, jealousy, avarice, hate, cheating

For intemperance, see 178

.9 **Human virtues**

Including humility liberality gentleness patience diligence charity, self control, toleration honesty modesty

For altruism see 171.8 benevolence, 177.7

180 Ancient and medieval philosophy

Including criticism and writings of individual philosophers

Class philosophic systems [*formerly* *180] in 140

For comprehensive history of philosophy, see 109 literary works of individual philosophers the 800 s a specific nonphilosophic work of an individual philosopher, the subject e g Plato's Republic 321.07 discussion of philosophic topics, doctrines, systems, 140, modern Western philosophy 190, non Christian religions, 290

181 Oriental philosophy

Including modern Oriental philosophy

.1 Far Eastern philosophy

.11 Chinese philosophy

.12 Japanese philosophy

.16 Indonesian philosophy

.17 Philippine philosophy

.19 Southeast Asian philosophy

Divide like 959, e g , Thai philosophy 181.193

181.2 Egyptian philosophy

3 Jewish philosophy

Class cabala [formerly 181.3] in 296 16

4 Indian philosophy

41 Sankhya philosophy

42 Mimamsa philosophy

43 Nyaya philosophy

44 Vaisheshika philosophy

45 Yoga philosophy

For Yoga as a religious way of life see 294 54

452 Patanjali

48 Vedanta philosophy

482 Sankaracharya

5 Persian philosophy

Including Sufism

6 Chaldean philosophy

7 Sabean philosophy

8 Phoenician philosophy

9 Other Oriental philosophy

Divide like 939 e g Arabic philosophy [formerly 189 3] 181 947

182–188 Ancient Western philosophy

182 Pre Socratic Greek philosophy

Including comprehensive works on Greek philosophy

For later Greek philosophy see 183–186

1 Ionic philosophy

2 Pythagorean philosophy

3 Eleatic philosophy

4 Heraclitean philosophy

5 Empedoclean philosophy

7 Democritean philosophy

8 Anaxagorean philosophy

183 **Sophistic and Socratic philosophy**

1 Sophistic philosophy

2 Socratic philosophy

4 Cynic philosophy

5 Cyrenaic philosophy

6 Megaric philosophy

7 Elian and Eretrian philosophy

184 **Platonic philosophy**

For Platonism as a system see 141

185 **Aristotelian philosophy**

186 **Ancient skepticism and Neoplatonism**

For modern skepticism see 149 73

1 Pyrrhonism

2 New Academy

3 Eclecticism

4 Neoplatonism

Including Alexandrian philosophy

For apologetics against Neoplatonists see 239 4 *Neoplatonism as a system* 141

187 **Epicurean philosophy**

Including comprehensive works on Roman philosophy

For other Roman philosophies see 186 188

188 **Stoic philosophy**

189 **Medieval Western philosophy**

Including early Christian philosophy

1 Gnostic philosophy

For Gnostic heresies see 273 1

2 Patristic philosophy

[†* 3] Arabic philosophy

Class in 181 947

4 Medieval scholasticism

For modern scholasticism see 149.2

189.5 Medieval mysticism

For modern mysticism, see 149.3, mysticism in comparative religion, 291 14, mystic heresy, 273.2

190 Modern Western philosophy

Including criticism and writings of individual philosophers, comprehensive works on Western philosophy

Under each number, arrange individual philosophers alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works

Class philosophic systems [*formerly* *190] in 140

For comprehensive history of philosophy, see 109, literary works of individual philosophers, the 800 s, a specific nonphilosophic work of an individual philosopher, the subject, e g , Bertrand Russell's Essay on the foundations of geometry 513 01, discussion of philosophic topics, doctrines, systems, 140, ancient and medieval Western philosophy, 180

191 United States and Canadian philosophy

192 British philosophy

English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophy

For Canadian philosophy, see 191, philosophy of other parts of British Empire, 199

193 German and Austrian philosophy

194 French philosophy

195 Italian philosophy

196 Spanish philosophy

.9 Portuguese philosophy

197 Russian philosophy

.1 Finnish philosophy

198 Scandinavian philosophy

.1 Norwegian philosophy

.5 Swedish philosophy

9 Danish philosophy

199 Other modern philosophies

Divide like 940–999, except for Western philosophies provided for in 191–198 and for Oriental philosophies in 181, e g , Polish philosophy 199 438, Mexican philosophy 199 72

Religion

200 Religion

Including Christian religion

For other religions see 290

201–209 Form divisions

Use for Christian religion where applicable also for comprehensive works on religions with emphasis on Christianity

201 Philosophy and theories

6 Psychology of religion

For pastoral counseling see 253 5

202 Handbooks and outlines

203 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

204 Essays and lectures

For sermons see 252

205 Periodicals

206 Organizations and societies

Including Bible societies

207 Study and teaching

Including theological seminaries training schools

Divide like 940–999 e g Oberlin Graduate School of Theology 207 771 23

For religious education in Sunday schools Bible schools see 268 religious and moral education 377

208 Collections

209 History of religion

Works limited to or emphasizing Christian religion

For history of Christian church see 270 histories of Christian denominations 280 of other religions 290 history of religions giving equal or minor emphasis to Christianity 290

210 Natural theology

Religious belief attained thru philosophical speculation or reasoning without supernatural revelation

Including evidence of divine purpose in nature

Class theodicy in 214, good and evil in 216, worship in 217 [*all formerly* *210]

For Christian theology, see 230, theology in comparative religion, 291.2, in specific religions other than Christianity, 290

211 Theories concerning knowledge of God

Concepts based on reason

For concepts based on revelation, see the specific theology, e g, Christian 231

.3 Theism

For Christian apologetics, see 239, in other religions, 290

.4 Rationalism

.44 Free thought

.5 Deism

For Christian apologetics against deism, see 239 5

.6 Religious humanism

Including secularism humanitarianism

For philosophical humanism, see 144

.7 Agnosticism

Including skepticism

For philosophical agnosticism, see 149 72, agnostic heresy, 273 8, Christian apologetics against agnosticism, 239 7

.8 Atheism

212 Pantheism

For pantheism as philosophic concept, see 147, Gnostic heresies, 273 1, Rosicrucians, 366 4, anthroposophy, 149 3

.5 Theosophy [*formerly also* †149 3]

Including theosophical societies [*formerly* *294 58]

For mystic heresy, see 273 2, incarnation in philosophy, 129.4

213 Creation of universe and earth

Including religious theories reconciling creation by fiat and creation by evolutionary growth and change

For Genesis, see 222 11, creation in religions other than Christianity and Judaism, 290, philosophical aspects of cosmology and cosmogony, 113, astronomical aspects, 523 1, geology, 550, religion and science, 215

.5 Creation of life

Including religious theories reconciling creation of life and mankind by fiat and development thru evolutionary growth and change

For paleontology, see 560, organic evolution, 575, man in Christian theology, 233, in other theologies, 290

214 Theodicy [*formerly* *210]

Vindication of God's justice in permitting evil

Including providence, fatalism

For divine providence in Christian theology, see 231 5, in other theologies, 290, Christian view of theodicy, 231 8

215 Religion and science

Including antagonism, reconciliation

For creation see 213, Christian apologetics against science, 239 8

216 Good and evil [*formerly* *210]

For goodness and evil as properties of being, see 111 84, theodicy 214, ethics, 170, sin in Christian theology, 233 2, in other theologies, 290, pessimism, 149 6

217 Worship [*formerly* *210]

Including prayer

For Christian family devotions, see 249, Christian public worship, 264, prayer in personal Christianity, 248 3, worship in other religions, 290

218 Immortality

Including conceptions of life after death, eternity

For metaphysical concept of the soul, see 128, future state in Christian doctrine, 237, in other religious doctrines, 290

219 Analogy

Religious principles reached by analogies or correspondences

220–289 Christian religion

220 Bible

Use 220 01–220 02, 220 04–220 09 for form divisions

For Old Testament, see 221–224, New Testament, 225–228, Apocrypha, 229

.1 Bible origins

.12 Canon

Including Bible as Holy Scripture

.13 Inspiration

.14 Authorship

.15 Prophetic message

Word of God spoken by his prophets

.2 Concordances and indexes

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

.4 Original texts and early versions

Codices and translations

Including textual criticism

For translations into modern languages, see 220 5, comprehensive works on Dead Sea Scrolls, 221 4, a specific part of Dead Sea Scrolls, the subject, e g, Isaiah 224 1

42 Chaldean texts

.43 Syriac texts

.44 Hebrew texts

.45 Samaritan texts

.46 Other Semitic texts

Including Ethiopic, Arabic texts

.47 Latin texts

Including Itala, Vulgate

48 Greek texts

Including Septuagint

.49 Other early versions

Including Armenian, Coptic, Gothic texts

220.5 **Modern versions of Bible**

Translations into modern languages, using original and early versions as sources, e g, King James (Authorized) version, Luther translation

Including textual criticism history of modern versions

For translations of specific early versions, see 220 4

51 Polyglot Bibles

52–599 Modern versions by language

Divide like 420–499, e g, Bible in German 220 53

.6 **Hermeneutics (Exegesis)**

Explanation and interpretation of meaning of Scriptures, their symbolism and typology

Including value and use of Bible

For interpretations limited to a specific subject see the subject, e g, salvation 234

.7 **Commentaries**

Including annotated editions

.8 **Special subjects treated in Bible**

Divide like 000–999, e g, natural science in Bible 220 85

88 Bible as literature

.9 **Biblical geography and history**

Including chronology

91 Geography and description of Bible lands in Bible times

For geography of Palestine, see 915 694

92 Biographies of Biblical characters

Collective biography only

For scriptural biography of Old Testament, see 221 92, of New Testament, 225 92, life of Jesus Christ 232 9

93 Biblical archeology

95 History based upon Bible

Including Bible stories retold

For ancient Judea, see 933

221 **Old Testament**

Divide like 220, e g , commentaries on Old Testament 221 7

For Judaic religion, see 296

.4 **Original texts and early versions**

Including comprehensive works on Dead Sea Scrolls

For a specific part of Dead Sea Scrolls, see the subject e g , Isaiah 224 1

.92 **Biography**

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collective biography

---

222-224 Individual parts and books of Old Testament

Where applicable add 0 and divide like 220, e g , Song of Solomon as literature 223 908 8

For subdivisions for Psalms see 223 2-223 6

222 **Historical books**

1 Pentateuch (Torah)

11 Genesis

12 Exodus

For Ten Commandments, see 222 16

13 Leviticus

14 Numbers

15 Deuteronomy

For Ten Commandments, see 222 16

16 Ten Commandments (Decalog)

2 Joshua (Douay version Josue)

3 Judges

35 Ruth

4 Samuel

43 Samuel 1 (Douay version Kings 1)

44 Samuel 2 (Douay version Kings 2)

5 Kings

53 Kings 1 (Douay version Kings 3)

54 Kings 2 (Douay version Kings 4)

222 6 Chronicles (Douay version Paralipomena)

63 Chronicles 1 (Douay version Paralipomenon 1)

64 Chronicles 2 (Douay version Paralipomenon 2)

7 Ezra (Douay version Esdras 1)

8 Nehemiah (Douay version Esdras 2 or Nehemias)

For deuterocanonical book of Tobit (Tobias) see 229 2 of Judith 229 24

9 Esther

For deuterocanonical part of Esther see 229 27

223 Poetic books

1 Job

2 Psalms

Including single Psalms

Class authorship and chronology in 223 3 special groups in 223 4 [*both formerly* *223 2]

3 Authorship and chronology [*formerly* *223 2]

4 Special groups [*formerly* *223 2]

Including Messianic vesper Psalms hallel

5 Liturgical use

Including metrical versions

For Anglican Psalter see 264 03 hymnology 245

6 Commentaries on Psalms

7 Proverbs

8 Ecclesiastes

9 Song of Solomon (Douay version Canticle of Canticles)

For deuterocanonical book of Wisdom of Solomon see 229 3 of Ecclesiasticus 229 4

224 Prophetic books

1 Isaiah (Douay version Isaias)

2 Jeremiah (Douay version Jeremias)

3 Lamentations

For deuterocanonical book of Baruch see 229 5

4 Ezekiel (Douay version Ezechiel)

5 Daniel

224 6 Hosea (Douay version Osee)

7 Joel

8 Amos

9 Other minor prophets

Including comprehensive works on minor prophets

For Hosea see 224 6 Joel 224 7 Amos 224 8

91 Obadiah (Douay version Abdias)

92 Jonah (Douay version Jonas)

93 Micah (Douay version Micheas)

94 Nahum

95 Habakkuk (Douay version Habacuc)

96 Zephaniah (Douay version Sophonias)

97 Haggai (Douay version Aggeus)

98 Zechariah (Douay version Zacharias)

99 Malachi (Douay version Malachias)

For deuterocanonical books of Maccabees 1-2 see 229 7

225 New Testament

Divide like 220 e g New Testament in German 225 53

92 Biography

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee using A1 for collective biography

---

226–228 Individual parts and books of New Testament

Where applicable add 0 and divide like 220 e g commentary on Revelation 228 07

226 Gospels and Acts

1 Harmonies

2 Matthew

For Lord's Prayer see 226 9

3 Mark

4 Luke

5 John

6 Acts of Apostles

7 Miracles

226.8 Parables

9 Lord's Prayer

227 *Epistles*

1 Romans

2 Corinthians 1

3 Corinthians 2

4 Galatians

5 Ephesians

6 Philippians

7 Colossians

8 Other Pauline epistles

81 Thessalonians 1

82 Thessalonians 2

83 Timothy 1

84 Timothy 2

85 Titus

86 Philemon

87 Hebrews

9 Catholic epistles

91 James

92 Peter 1

93 Peter 2

94 John 1

95 John 2

96 John 3

97 Jude

228 Revelation (Douay version: Apocalypse)

229 **Apocrypha and deuterocanonical books**

Including pseudepigrapha

Where applicable, add 0 to individual parts and books and divide like 220, e g , commentary on Judith 229.240 7

.1 Esdras 1 and 2 (Douay version: Esdras 3 and 4)

.2 Tobit (Douay version: Tobias)

.24 Judith

.27 Esther

.3 Wisdom of Solomon (Douay version: Wisdom)

.4 Ecclesiasticus

.5 Baruch, Epistle of Jeremy, Song of the three children

.6 Susanna, Bel and the dragon, Prayer of Manasses

.7 Maccabees 1, 2, 3, 4

.8 Pseudo gospels

For Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels, see 232 98

.9 Other pseudepigrapha

Including pseudepigrapha of Old and New Testaments

91 Old Testament

.911 Historical books

.912 Poetic books

Including Odes of Solomon

913 Prophetic books

Including Jewish apocalypses, Book of Enoch, Assumption of Moses Vision of Isaiah, Apocalypse of Elias, or Elijah

914 Testaments

Including Testament of the twelve patriarchs

915 Other books by or about the prophets

92 Pseudepigrapha of Acts of Apostles

93 Pseudepigrapha of epistles

94 Pseudepigrapha of New Testament apocalypses

95 Other recently discovered pseudepigrapha

951 Sayings of Jesus

For Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels, see 232 98

230 Doctrinal theology (Christian dogma)

Use 230 01–230 09 for form divisions

Divide like 280, e g , Baptist theology 230 6

If preferred, divide further by adding 0 under each denomination and dividing like 231–237, e g , Presbyterian view of salvation 230 504 Denominational libraries may prefer to class doctrines of other denominations here, while classing doctrines of their own denomination in *231–237*

For natural theology, see 210, *heresies,* 273, *doctrinal sermons,* 252.3, *theology of other religions,* 290

231–237 Doctrines on specific subjects

Including doctrines held by a specific denomination, e g , Presbyterian view of salvation 234

231 Doctrines relating to God

Including Trinity, the Godhead

For God in natural theology, see 211

.1 God the Father, Creator [*formerly* *231.3]

.2 God the Son, Redeemer [*formerly* *231.3]

For Christology, see 232

.3 God the Holy Ghost (Holy Spirit), Giver of Life, Sanctifier

Class God the Father in 231 1, God the Son in 231 2 [*both formerly* *231 3]

.4 Divine attributes

Including omniscience, omnipresence omnipotence

.5 Divine providence

For providence in natural theology, see 214

.6 Divine love and wisdom

.7 Divine law

Including Kingdom of God, sovereignty of God

For church law, see 348, *church discipline,* 262 9

73 Miracles

Including miraculous places objects cures, stigmata

For miracles in New Testament, see 226 7

74 Revelation

Vision and appearing of God, disclosure to men of divine purpose, superhuman knowledge

For Book of Revelation, see 228

231.8 **Theodicy**

Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

For theodicy in natural theology, see 214

232 Christology

For God the Son, see 231.2

.1 **Incarnation and Messianic Christology**

Class virgin birth [*formerly* *232 1] in 232 921

For incarnation in philosophy, see 129 4

.12 Messianic prophecies

For eschatology, see 236

.2 **Logos (Word of God)**

.3 **Atonement**

.4 **Sacrifice**

.5 **Resurrection**

Doctrinal aspects

For resurrection and appearances of Jesus Christ, see 232 97

.6 **Second coming**

.7 **Judgment**

For last judgment in eschatology, see 236 9

.8 **Divinity of Jesus Christ**

Including dual nature of Jesus Christ's divinity and humanity

.9 **Life of Jesus Christ**

Including teaching, works, influence

For pseudepigraphal sayings of Jesus Christ, see 229 951, biographies of New Testament characters, 225 92

.91 Annunciation

.92 Infancy

921 Nativity

Including virgin birth [*formerly* *232 1]

For incarnation, see 232 1

.922 Adoration of the shepherds

923 Three wise men (Magi)

.924 Circumcision

232 925 Massacre of innocents
926 Flight into Egypt
927 Childhood in Nazareth
928 Presentation in the temple
929 Jesus Christ among the doctors
93 Holy family
931 Mary, mother of Jesus Christ
Including Mariology
For Annunciation see 232 91
931 2 Immaculate Conception of Mary
931 3 Virginity
931 4 Assumption (Ascent to heaven)
931 5 Sanctity and virtues
931 6 Spiritual powers of Mary
931 7 Sanctuaries and shrines
Including Lourdes Fatima Guadalupe
For miracles see 231 73
931 8 Veneration
Including special prayers hymns acts of devotion e g novenas
931 9 Apocryphal narratives of Mary
Including legends
932 Joseph
Including sanctity virtues veneration shrines
933 Parents of Mary (Joachim and Anne)
Including sanctity virtues veneration shrines
94 John the Baptist, forerunner of Jesus Christ
Doctrinal aspects
For biography of John the Baptist see 225 92
95 Public life of Jesus Christ
Including baptism temptation calling of apostles
For miracles of Jesus Christ see 226 7 parables 226 8
954 Teachings
956 Transfiguration

232 957 Last Supper

For Lord's Supper as a sacrament, see 265 3

.958 Last words

Seven last words on the cross

For Crucifixion, see 232 963

.96 Passion of Jesus Christ

961 Betrayal by Judas

962 Trial and condemnation

963 Crucifixion and death

964 Burial

.966 Relics of Passion

967 Descent into hell

.97 Resurrection, appearances, ascension

For doctrinal aspects see 232 5

.98 Agrapha

Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels

99 Legendary accounts of Jesus Christ

Class poetry drama fiction [*formerly* *232 99, †232 991–†232 993] in the 800 s

233 Man

Including doctrines on moral and spiritual heredity, personality, natural and spiritual body

For religion and science, see 215, theodicy, 231 8

.1 Creation of man

For creation of mankind in natural theology see 213 5

14 Fall of man

Including nature of original sin

.2 Sin

For original sin see 233 14

21 Mortal and venial sin

22 Sins against the Holy Ghost

4 Accountability

233.5 **The soul**

Nature of man's soul

Class metaphysical concept of the soul [*formerly* *233 5] in 128

For origin and destiny of the soul, see 129

.7 **Freedom of man**

Freedom to choose between good and evil

For predestination and free will, see 234 9, *religious liberty,* 261 72

234 Doctrines relating to salvation (Soteriology)

.1 **Grace**

Including actual and sanctifying grace, merit, innate virtues, gifts of the Holy Ghost

.16 Sacraments

To be used only by libraries wishing to class works on sacraments with those on grace

Divide like 265, e g , baptism 234 161

For liturgy of sacraments, see 264

.2 **Faith**

Confidence in reality of that which cannot be proved

For authority of the church, see 262 8

.3 **Redemption**

.4 **Regeneration**

.5 **Repentance**

.6 **Obedience**

.7 **Justification**

.8 **Sanctification**

.9 **Predestination and free will**

For freedom of man, see 233 7, metaphysical theories of freedom and necessity, 123, *will in psychology,* 159

235 Doctrines relating to saints, angels, devils

.2 **Saints**

Including sanctity, virtues, veneration, shrines, relics

For miracles, see 231 73, persecutions, 272, biographies of saints, 922 22

235.24 Canonization

Including beatification

.3 Angels

Including archangels, seraphim, cherubim

.4 Devils

Including demons, evil spirits in Christian theology

For comprehensive works on demons and evil spirits, see 291 216 witchcraft, 133 4

.47 Satan

.48 Antichrist

236 Eschatology

Doctrines on end of present order on earth and establishment of that of eternity

.1 Death

.3 Millennium

.4 Intermediate state

Probation after death

For future state, see 237

.5 Purgatory

.6 Limbo patrum

Abode of souls of the just who died before the coming of Jesus Christ

.7 Limbo infantum

Abode of souls of unbaptized infants

.8 Resurrection of the dead

.9 Last judgment

For judgment in Christology, see 232 7

237 Future state (Life after death)

Eternal reward and punishment

For intermediate state, see 236 4

.1 Eternity

.2 Immortality

For immortality in natural theology, see 218

.3 Annihilationism (Conditional immortality)

237.4 Heaven

.5 Hell

238 Christian creeds and confessions of faith

Including covenants, catechisms

For a specific Christian doctrine see the subject, e.g. Incarnation 232.1

.1 Early Christian creeds

.11 Apostles' Creed

.14 Nicene and post-Nicene creeds of Western Church

.142 Nicene Creed

Including Constantinopolitan Creed

.144 *Athanasian Creed*

.19 Eastern Orthodox creeds

Including Confession of Gennadius II, Answers of Jeremiah II, Confession of Metrophanes, Orthodox Confession of Peter Mogila, Confession of Dositheus

.2 Later Roman Catholic creeds and confessions of faith

Including Creed of Pius IV (Council of Trent)

.3–.9 Other Christian creeds and confessions of faith

Divide like 283–289, e.g. Augsburg Confession 238.41

239 Apologetics

Exposition of Christian doctrines refuting alleged errors in other systems

Including polemics, methods of apologetics

Use 239.001–239.009 for form divisions

For exposition of Christian doctrine see 230; controversies over a specific Christian doctrine, the doctrine, e.g. divinity of Jesus Christ 232.8; polemic writings of adherents of one Christian denomination against another, the denomination attacked, e.g. Protestant polemics against Roman Catholic Church 282

.1 In apostolic times

Class apologetics against Jews in 239.2, against pagans in 239.3, against Neoplatonists in 239.4 [*all formerly* *239.1]

.2 Against Jews [*formerly* *239.1]

For apologetics against Judaism since apostolic times see 296

.3 Against pagans and heathens [*formerly* *239.1]

239.4 Against Neoplatonists [*formerly* *239.1]

.5 **Against deists**

For deism in natural theology, see 211.5

.6 **Against the Encyclopedists**

.7 **Against rationalists and agnostics**

For agnostic heresy, see 273.8, *agnosticism as a philosophy,* 149.72, *agnosticism in natural theology,* 211.7

.8 **Against scientists and materialists**

For religion and science, see 215

.9 **Against other denials**

Including communists

Class apologetics against Moslems in 297, against Buddhists in 294.3 [*both formerly* *239.9]

For Christian apologetics against adherents of another religion, see the religion, e.g., against Hindus 294.5

240 Devotional and practical theology

Practice of Christian religion

241 Moral theology

Christian's duty to do and to avoid

Including Christian virtues, codes of Christian conduct

Class Christian ethics [*formerly* *241] in 171.1

For conscience, see 171.6, *personal religion,* 248, *catechisms,* 238, *application of Christian virtues to personal living,* 248.4, *sin,* 233.2, *Ten Commandments,* 222.16

242–245 Aids to devotional and practical religion

242 Meditations and contemplations

Meditations general in subject matter

Including devotional sermons [*formerly* †252.4, *252], value of contemplation

For pastoral counseling, see 253.5, *personal religion,* 248, *meditations limited to a specific subject, the subject, e.g., meditations on immortality* 237.2

.1 **Imitatio Christi (Thomas à Kempis)**

.2 **Daily devotions**

242 3 Meditations for religious occasions

Class retreats [*formerly* *242 3] in 269 6

For life of Jesus Christ see 232 9 accounts of a specific religious occasion the occasion e g birth of Jesus Christ 232 921

33 Christmas

Including Advent

34 Lent

35 Holy Week

Including Palm Sunday Maundy (Holy) Thursday Good Friday

36 Easter

4 Readings of consolation

Including readings for times of illness troubles death

For parish welfare work see 258 ministry to the sick and dying 265 8

6 Meditations for special classes of persons

Including clergy young people men women students soldiers the sick

243 Evangelistic writings [*formerly* *269]

Works designed to convert readers promote repentance

Including evangelistic sermons

For public revivals see 269 pastoral evangelism 253 7

[†*244] Religious stories, allegories, satires

Class in the 800 s

245 Hymnology

Hymns without music

Divide like 420–499 e g collections of hymns in English 245 2

Class religious poetry [*formerly* †*245] in the 800 s

For hymns with music see 783 9 metrical versions of Psalms 223 5

246–247 Art and artifacts in religious services

246 Christian symbolism

Use and symbolism of art and decoration in religious services and buildings

Including symbolic objects attitude of Christian church toward art

For religion in art see 704 948 *early Christian art* 709 02 *religious architecture* 726 *symbolism of other religions* 290

1 Byzantine and Gothic symbolism

2 Primitive church art

4 Protestantism and religious art

5 Emblematic and cryptographic art

Including catacomb symbols

6 Liturgic symbolism

Including altar colors lights

For ornaments see 247 9

.7 Religious use of music and rhythmic arts

For sacred music see 783

247 Sacred furniture and vestments

Religious aspects and use only

Including ornaments decorative features

1 Church furniture

Including font baptistery lectern pulpit

For fixt and built in ecclesiastical furniture see 729 9

4 Illumination and stained glass

Including mosaics enamels

For stained glass in art see 748 5

5 Fresco and religious painting

For religious paintings see 755

6 Bishops' insignia

Including pallium miter crosier ring

7 Vestments and altar cloths

For textile handicrafts see 746 *manufacture of vestments* 687 15

247 8 **Eucharistic vessels**

Including chalice ciborium monstrance

For design and creation of vessels in precious metals see 739 228 2

9 **Ecclesiastical emblems**

Including banners thuribles incense

For bishops insignia see 247 6

92 Cross and crucifix

248–249 Practice of religion in personal and family life

248 Personal religion

Comprehensive works

Including asceticism religious pilgrimages

For meditation see 242 psychology of religion 201 6 salvation 234 moral theology 241 public worship 264 pilgrimages to a specific place the place e g to Bethlehem 915 694

2 **Mystical experience**

For mysticism in comparative religion see 291 14 in philosophy 149 3

3 **Private prayer**

For family prayer see 249 comprehensive works on prayer 264 1

37 Collections of private prayers

4 **Christian life**

Including Christian characteristics qualities application of Christian virtues to personal living

For ethics see 170 Christian virtues 241

8 **Personal religion for special classes of persons**

Including clergy young people men women students soldiers the sick

249 Family worship

Including religious life of the family grace at table family prayers

250 Pastoral theology

Functions of Christian clergyman as religious leader in the parish

Including participation of laymen in church work

For church services, see 264, missions, 266, religious education, 268, comprehensive works on Christian church and pastoral theology 260

251 Preaching (Homiletics)

Preparation and delivery of effective sermons

For public worship, see 264, sermons, 252

027 Sermon outlines

082 2 Homiletic illustrations

252 *Sermons*

Collections and single sermons not limited to a specific subject

Use 252 001–252 007, 252 009 for form divisions

Divide 252 01–252 09 like 281–289, e g , Episcopalian sermons 252 03

Class devotional sermons [*formerly* *252] in 242

For sermons on a specific subject, see the subject, e g , sermons on family devotions 249, evangelistic sermons, 243

.1 Pastoral sermons

Including sermons for baptisms, weddings, funerals

For memorial, biographical sermons, see 252 9

.2 Controversial and polemic sermons

.3 Doctrinal and dogmatic sermons

.4 Practical sermons

Class devotional sermons [*formerly* †252 4] in 242

.5 Sermons for young people

53 Children's sermons

.55 Academic sermons

Including chapel convocation, commencement sermons

6 Sermons for public occasions

Including church year sermons

61 Christmas

Including Advent

62 Lent

Including Holy Week

252 63 Easter

67 Other religious holidays and fast days

Including Thanksgiving Day

68 Political occasions

Including election sermons

7 *Consecration, ordination, installation sermons*

9 **Historical and biographical sermons**

Including obituary memorial sermons

For funeral sermons not biographical see 252 1

253 Pastor

Including life everyday duties of minister priest elder rector preacher

For clergy in church polity or hierarchy see 262 14

2 **Pastoral life**

Including qualifications family life celibacy

For theological seminaries see 207

5 **Pastoral counseling**

For parish welfare work see 258

7 **Personal evangelism**

Ways and means of converting individuals

Including personal evangelism by laymen

For evangelistic writings see 243 revivals 269 2

254 Church and parish administration

Including program planning and financing membership budget and expenditures records and office methods buildings equipment

For ecclesiastical organization see 262

2 **Urban church work**

24 **Rural church work**

3 **Radio and television in religious work**

4 **Public relations**

Including church publicity

8 **Church finance**

Including methods of raising money tithing gifts bequests clerical salaries pensions church fairs bazaars

[†255] **Brotherhoods and sisterhoods**

Class in 271

[†256] **Societies for parish work**

Class in 267

[†257] **Parish educational work**

Class in 268

258 **Parish welfare work**

Including work by pastor and his church for the sick afflicted of community

For pastoral counseling see 253 5, social welfare, 360

259 **Other parish activities**

Including church entertainments recreational facilities, church work with groups e g children soldiers students young people adults

For religious education, see 268 religion in the family 249

260 **Christian church**

Institutions services observances disciplines work of church

Including comprehensive works on Christian church and pastoral theology

For pastoral theology see 250

261 **Christian social theology**

Christianity s influence on and attitude toward secular matters

For moral theology see 241 social sciences 300 church history 270

5 Christianity and growth of knowledge

6 Christianity and world order

For ethics of international relations see 172 4

63 Christianity and war

Including attitude of church toward peace pacifism conscientious objectors

For peace plans and movements see 341 1

7 Christianity and civil government

Attitude of church toward and effect on national and local political activities

Including attitude toward political ideologies

For political theories on church and state, see 322 ethical duty of state to church 172 3

261 72 Church and religious freedom [*formerly* *261 73]

73 Theocracy (Supremacy of church over civil government)

Class religious freedom [*formerly* *261 73] in 261 72

75 Church and modernism

Attitude of church toward adaptation of religious dogma to conclusions of modern scientific findings

8 Christianity and socioeconomic problems

83 Church and social problems

Including attitude of church toward and effect on race relations family problems

For marriage and family see 301 42 *religious life of the family* 249 *ethics of the family* 173 *pastoral counseling* 253 5

85 Church and the economic order

Including attitude of church toward and effect on labor relations business capitalism

For Christian socialism see 335 7

262 Church government and organization

Including government and organization of specific denominations

For local church and parish administration see 254 *canon law* 348 *church and ministerial authority* 262 8 *comprehensive works on a specific denomination or church the denomination e.g Unitarian Church* 288

.1 Governing leaders

11 Apostolic succession

12 Episcopacy

Including bishops archbishops

13 Papacy

For encyclicals and other papal documents see 262 82

131 Papal infallibility

132 Temporal power of the pope

Including extranationality of pope

135 Election of the pope

Including college of cardinals

136 Curia Romana

Congregations tribunals offices constituting the central government of Roman Catholic Church

262.14 Clergy

Including priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, elders, vicars, curates

.15 Deacons

Including deaconesses

.16 Orders

Grades and ranks of Christian ministry

For religious congregations and orders, see 271, sacrament of holy orders, 265.4, ordination sermons, 252.7

.17 Orders in episcopal system of church government

.18 Orders in presbyterian system of church government

.19 Orders in congregational system of church government

.2 Parish

Including denominational regulations for congregations and parishes

For administration within the local parish, see 254

.3 Church systems governed by episcopacy

Including sees, dioceses, cathedral systems

.4 Church systems governed by election

Including synods, presbyteries, congregations

.5 General or ecumenical councils

For period of ecumenical councils in church history, see 270.2, ecumenical movement, 280.1

.6 Canons and decrees

.8 Church and ministerial authority

For governing leaders of church, see 262.1, canon law, 348

.82 Encyclicals and other papal documents

Including papal bulls, decrees

For papal documents on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., Catholic missions 266.2, acts of the Holy See as sources of canon law, 348.12

.9 Church discipline

Class church law [*formerly* *262.9] in 348

263 Sabbath and Sunday

.1 Biblical Sabbath

.2 Christian observance of seventh day

For Jewish observance of the Sabbath, see 296 41

.3 Christian Sunday

.4 Sunday observance

Including work, amusements, opening libraries and museums [*all formerly* †263 5–†263 7]

[†.5–† 7] Work, amusements, opening libraries and museums

Class in 263 4

.8 Sunday laws

264 Ritual and liturgy of public worship

Code of conduct of divine service and religious ceremonies

Including prayer books

Use 264 001–264 009 for form divisions

Class Sunday school services [*formerly* *264] in 268 7

For liturgical music, see 783 2

.01 Services of primitive and Oriental churches

Divide like 281, e g , Eastern Orthodox services 264 019

Divide specific churches like 264 03, e g , liturgy of creed of Greek Orthodox Church 264 019 7

.02 Roman Catholic services

Including Mass, breviaries, missals

Divide like 264 03, e g , vesper services 264 024

.03 Anglican services

Including Protestant Episcopal services

.031 Calendar, festivals, fasts

032 Lectionary and rubrics

.033 Morning prayer and litany

.034 Evening prayer and vespers

.035 Sacraments, ordinances, services

Ritual and liturgy only

For comprehensive works on sacraments, see 265

.036 Collects, epistles, gospels

264 037 Ordinal, articles creeds

038 Psalter

For Psalms see 223.2 hymnology 245

039 History of successive prayer books

04–09 Services of other specific denominations

Divide like 284–289 e g, Methodist Episcopal services 284 076

Divide specific denominations but not groups of denominations like 264 03 e g Methodist Episcopal Psalter 264 076 8

.1 Public prayer

Including comprehensive works on public and private prayer

For public prayer in specific denominational services see 264 01–264 09 private prayer 248 3 family prayer 249

13 Collections of public prayers

.2 Music in public worship

For sacred music, see 783

3 Scripture readings

.4 Responsive readings

.5 Creeds in public worship

Including confessions of faith

For specific creeds see 238 liturgy of creeds in specific denominations, 264 01–264 09

.6 Sermons, exhortations, instructions

For preaching see 251, sermons 252

.7 Prayer meetings

9 Sacramentals

Consecrated objects other than the Eucharist

For sacraments, see 265

265 Sacraments

Comprehensive works

For alternative provision for sacraments see 234 16 liturgy and ritual of sacraments in a specific denomination the subject, e g, ritual of Episcopal sacraments 264 035

.1 Baptism

.2 Confirmation

265 3 Eucharist

Including Holy Communion Lord s Supper transubstantiation

For Last Supper see 232 957 viaticum 265 7

4 Holy orders

For orders in church government see 262 16 ordination sermons 252 7

5 Matrimony

6 Penance

61 Contrition

Including examination of conscience prayers preparatory to confession

62 Confession

63 Satisfaction

Penitential prayers and acts for the remission of sin

64 Absolution

65 Censures

Including excommunication suspension interdiction withholding absolution

66 Indulgences

7 Extreme unction

Including viaticum

.8 Ministry to the sick and dying

For pastoral counseling see 253 5 extreme unction 265 7

82 Religious ceremonies for the sick

For faith healing see 615 852

.85 Religious ceremonies for the dead

For disposal of the dead see 614 6

.9 Consecration and dedication

For consecration and dedication sermons see 252 7 sacramentals 264 9

266 **Missions**

Including missionary societies

For nondenominational missions and comprehensive works on missions in a specific place see church history of the place e g, missions in China 275 1 missionary schools 377 6

021 Missionary stories

Accounts of missionary work usually in narrative form for children

For stories of missions by a specific church see 266 1–266 9

022 Home missions

Comprehensive works

For home missions by a specific church see 266 1–266 9

023 Foreign missions

Comprehensive works

For foreign missions by a specific church see 266 1–266 9

025 Medical missions

Comprehensive works

For medical missions by a specific church see 266 1–266 9

1–9 Missions of specific denominations

Home foreign medical missions

Including missionary stories

Divide like 281–289 e g Anglican missions 266 3 Congregational missions in China 266 585 1

267 **Christian religious associations**

Organizations with high degree of membership participation

Including societies for parish work [*formerly* 1256]

For Bible and tract societies see 206 missionary societies 266 religious orders 271 church and parish administration 254

1 Religious societies of both men and women

15 Salvation Army

18 Denominational societies

Divide like 280 e g Baptist Adult Union 267 186

2 Religious societies of men

For Young Men s Christian Associations see 267 3

21 17th century and earlier

267 22 18th century

23 19th century and later

Interdenominational and nondenominational only

24 19th century and later denominational societies

Divide like 280 e g Roman Catholic societies 267 242

.3 **Young Men's Christian Associations**

For Young Men s Hebrew Associations see 296 67

31 Program

Including objectives

32 Buildings

Including location plans furniture

For architecture see 726 9

33 Organization

Including financial administration

34 Staff

Including duties qualifications training general secretary physical director assistants

35 Departments

Including religious educational physical boys departments

36 Work among special classes

Including service to travelers foreign and racial groups migrants

39 History and reports

Divide like 940–999 e g history of Young Men s Christian Associations in Mexico 267 397 2

4 **Religious societies of women**

For Young Women s Christian Associations see 267 5

44 Denominational societies

Divide like 280 e g Episcopalian women s societies 267 443

5 **Young Women s Christian Associations**

Divide like 267 3 e g Young Women s Christian Associations officers 267 54

For Young Women s Hebrew Associations see 296 67

267.6 Religious societies of young people

61 Interdenominational and nondenominational societies

613 Young People's Society of Christian Endeavor

62 Denominational societies

Divide like 280, e.g. Methodist Young People's Society 267.627

7 Religious societies of boys

For Young Men's Christian Associations see 267.3

8 Religious societies of girls

For Young Women's Christian Associations see 267.5

268 Religious education

Religious instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools

Including parish religious educational work [*formerly* †257]

For religious and Bible instruction in public and nonsectarian private schools see 377.1

1 Administration

Including establishment, financial administration, publicity

2 Buildings and equipment

3 Personnel

Including superintendents, teachers, committees

4 Organization

43 Teaching departments

Including methods and materials for specific age groups [*formerly* *268.61]

For teaching methods see 268.6

432 Children's division (Ages 1–12)

Including cradle roll, beginners, primary, junior departments

433 Young people's division (Ages 13–24)

Including intermediate, senior departments

434 Adult division

Including men's, women's departments

435 Home departments

Including shut-ins, invalids

268 5 **Records and rules**

Including attendance promotion prizes decorations honor rolls

6 **Materials and methods of instruction**

Including curriculums

61 Lesson systems

Textbooks for Sunday school use

Including International Sunday school lessons

Class methods and materials for a specific age group [*formerly* *268 61] in subdivisions of *268 43*

For methods of using textbooks see 268 62

62 Textbook method

63 Lecture method

635 Visual instruction

Including slides motion pictures charts maps

67 Dramatic interpretation of Biblical events

68 Manual work

Including notebook geography illustrative decorative museum work

7 **Sunday school services [*formerly* *264]**

Including order of service music rallies anniversaries special days and festivals

8 **Sunday schools of various denominations**

Divide like 280 e g Presbyterian Sunday schools 268 85

269 Public spiritual renewal

Including evangelistic work outside the regular work of pastor and his church

Class evangelistic writings [*formerly* *269] in 243

For personal religion see 248 personal evangelism 253 7 evangelistic music 783 7

2 **Revivals and camp meetings**

Including history and methods of conducting revivals

6 **Retreats [*formerly* *242 3]**

For meditations and contemplations see 242

270 Christian church history

Use 270 01–270 08 for form divisions

Class persecutions of Christians in 272, heresies in 273 [*both formerly* *270 1–*270 8]

For history of specific Christian denominations, sects, or groups, see 280, *collected works of early theological writers,* 281 1–281 4

[09] History of Christian church in specific countries

Class in 274–279

.1 Apostolic period to 325

Jesus Christ to Constantine

.2 Period of ecumenical councils, 325–787

Including First, Second Councils of Nice, First, Second, Third Councils of Constantinople, First Council of Ephesus, Council of Chalcedon

.3 Struggle between papacy and empire, 787–1054

Class period of Hildebrand [*formerly* *270 3] in 270 4

38 Great schism, 1054

.4 Period of Hildebrand, 1054–1200 [*formerly* *270 3]

Including religious aspects of crusades

For history of crusades, see 940 18

.5 Late Middle Ages to Renaissance, 1200–1517

Including Innocent III papal schism, Avignon, nominalism versus realism, medieval dissent

.6 Reformation and Counter Reformation, 1517–1648

For Reformation in specific countries, see 274–279, *Protestantism,* 284

.7 Peace of Westphalia to French Revolution, 1648–1789

.8 Modern church, 1789–

271 Religious congregations and orders

Including Catholic and Protestant brotherhoods and sisterhoods [*formerly also* †255], monasticism, monastic foundations, monasteries

For architecture of monastic buildings see 726 7

069 The religious (monastic) life

069 2 Vocation for religious life

271 069 8 Monastic rules

Comprehensive works

Including vows of poverty chastity obedience

For sacrament of holy orders see 265 4 rules of a specific order the order e g, rules of Society of Jesus 271 5

069 9 Costume (Habit)

---

271 1–271 79 Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men

For non Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men see 271 8 congregations and orders of women 271 9

1 Benedictines

Including Celestines Cluniacs

12 Cistercians (Bernardines)

125 Trappists

13 Olivetans

2 Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)

3 Franciscans (Gray Friars)

Including Conventuals Observants Recollects Alcantarines

36 Capuchins

4 Augustinians

Including Augustinian Recollects

5 Jesuits (Society of Jesus)

6 Passionists and Redemptorists [*both formerly* *271 7]

7 Other Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men

Class Passionists and Redemptorists [*both formerly* *271 7] in 271 6

71 Carthusians

73 Carmelites (White Friars)

75 Sulpicians

76 Oblates

77 Lazarists

271 78	Christian Brothers (Brothers of the Christian Schools)
79	Congregations and orders not otherwise provided for Arrange alphabetically by order
.8	Non Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men *For Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men, see 271 1–271 7 non Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women, 271 98*
.9	Congregations and orders of women Including sisterhoods, convents nunneries

271 91–271 979 Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women

91	Sisters of Charity Including Sisters of Charity of Saint Vincent de Paul
92	Sisters of Mercy
93	Sacred Heart orders
94	Sisters of Bon Secours
95	Little Sisters of the Poor
96	Contemplative and cloistered nuns *For a specific contemplative or cloistered order see the order, e g Carmelites 271 971*
.97	Other Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women
971	Carmelites (Order of Saint Theresa)
972	Dominicans
973	Franciscans (Poor Clares)
974	Ursulines
975	Visitation orders
976	Saint Joseph orders
977	Presentation orders
.979	Congregations and orders not otherwise provided for Arrange alphabetically by order

271 98 Non Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women

Including Protestant orders deaconesses [*both formerly* †271 99]

For Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women see 271 91–271 979

[† 99] Other Protestant orders deaconesses

Class in 271 98

272 Persecutions [*formerly* *270 1–*270 8, *274–*279]

For comprehensive works on specific sects see 280

1 Persecutions of Apostolic Church by imperial Rome, 1st–4th century

2 Persecutions by Inquisition

3 Persecutions of Waldenses and Albigenses, 11th–12th century

For Waldenses and Albigenses as Protestant sects see 284 4

4 Persecutions of Huguenots

For Huguenots as Protestant sect see 284 5

5 Persecutions of Molinists and Quietists

For Molinist heresies see 273 7

6 Persecutions of Anglican reformers by Mary I

7 Persecutions by Elizabeth I

Including persecutions of Roman Church by Anglicans

8 Persecutions of Quakers, Baptists, witches

Including persecutions by Puritans

9 Other persecutions

273 Heresies [*formerly* *270 1–*270 8, *274–*279]

For history of specific doctrines see 230

1 Gnostic heresies

For Gnostic philosophy see 189 1

2 Third century heresies

Including mystic heresy

For medieval mysticism see 189 5 *asceticism* 248 *comprehensive works on mysticism* 149 3

23 Manicheism

25 Parsee dualism

273.3 Sabellian heresy

.4 Arian heresy

.5 Pelagian heresy

.6 Antinomian heresy

.7 Molinist, Jansenist, Pietist heresies

For Jansenists as Protestant sect, see 284.84

.8 Agnostic heresy

For agnostic philosophy, see 149.72, agnosticism in natural theology 211.7, Christian apologetics against agnostics, 239.7

.9 Minor heresies

274–279 Christian church history in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, church history of Minnesota 277.76

Class persecutions in 272, heresies in 273 [*both formerly* *274–*279]

For history of specific denominations of churches, see 280

274 History of Christian church in Europe

275 History of Christian church in Asia

276 History of Christian church in Africa

277 History of Christian church in North America

278 History of Christian church in South America

279 History of Christian church in Pacific and Atlantic islands, in Polar Regions

280 Christian churches and sects

Comprehensive works on history, doctrine, homiletics, institutions, missions, services

Including church unity

For doctrines, sermons institutions, missions, services of a specific church or sect, see the subject, e g, doctrines of Baptist churches 230.6

.1 Ecumenical movement

Harmonious relations between Christian churches and denominations

For organization of ecumenical councils, see 262.5, history of early ecumenical councils, 270.2

281 **Primitive and Oriental churches**

For early religious history, see 270 1–270 3

.1 **Apostolic Church to time of great schism, 1054**

Including works of apostolic and church fathers

Class Primitive Apostolic Church [*formerly* *281 1] in 281 2

For persecutions of Apostolic Church, see 272 1

2 Primitive Apostolic Church to end of 1st century [*formerly* *281 1]

3 Ante Nicene church, 100–325

4 Post Nicene church, 325–1054

.5 **Oriental churches**

For Eastern Orthodox churches see 281 9

6 Monophysite churches

Including Eutychian

62 Armenian

63 Jacobite

7 Coptic and Abyssinian Churches

8 Nestorian Church

.9 **Eastern Orthodox churches**

Including Holy Orthodox Church

Divide like 940–999 e g, Greek Orthodox Church in New York City 281 974 71

For history of great schism see 270 38

282 **Roman Catholic Church**

Divide like 940–999, e g, Roman Catholic Church in Germany 282 43

For persecutions of Roman Church by Anglicans, see 272 7

283 **Anglican churches**

Including Church of England, Protestant Episcopal Church

Divide like 940–999, e g, Protestant Episcopal Church in United States 283 73

For persecutions of Anglican reformers see 272 6

284 Protestantism

Including comprehensive works on Protestant sects

For Reformation and subsequent movements see 270 6–270 8 specific Protestant churches 283–289

094–099 Protestantism in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g history of Protestantism in United States 284 097 3

.1 Lutheran churches

Divide like 940–999 e g Lutheran Church in Missouri 284 177 8

For Scandinavian Lutheran churches see 284 7

.2 Calvinistic churches

Comprehensive works

Including Reformed churches in Europe

Divide like 940–999 e g Calvinism in Scotland 284.241

Class Arminians and Remonstrants [*both formerly* *284 2] in 284 9

For Huguenots see 284 5 Presbyterian churches 285 Calvinistic Baptists 286 1 Reformed churches in America 285 7

3 Hussites

Including Anabaptists

For Moravians see 284 6

4 Albigenses and Waldenses

For persecutions of Albigenses and Waldenses see 272 3

5 Huguenots

For persecutions of Huguenots see 272 4

6 Moravians

Divide like 940–999 e g Moravian Church in Germany 284 643

For Hussites see 284 3

7 Scandinavian Lutheran churches

Including churches derived from Scandinavian Lutheran churches

Divide like 940–999 e g Scandinavian Lutheran Church in Iowa 284 777 7

For other Lutheran churches see 284 1

284 8 Modern schisms in Catholic Church

Including Old Catholic Gallican schismatics Constitutional Church Little Church of France

84 Jansenists

For Jansenist heresy see 273 7

9 Arminianism and Remonstrants [*both formerly* ~284 2]

285 Presbyterian churches

1 Presbyterian Church in the United States of America

The denomination of this name wherever located

Including Presbyterian Church in the United States United Presbyterian Church in the United States of America (formed 1958 by merger of Presbyterian Church in the United States of America and United Presbyterian Church of North America)

Divide like 940–999 e g Presbyterian Church in the United States of America in California 285 179 4

2 Presbyterian churches in British Commonwealth

Divide like 940–999 e g Presbyterian Church in Canada 285 271

3 Cumberland Presbyterian Church

Divide like 940–999 e g Cumberland Presbyterian Church in Kentucky 285 376 9

4 United Presbyterian Church

Divide like 940–999 e g United Presbyterian Church in Pennsylvania 285 474 8

5 Reformed Presbyterian Church in North America

Divide like 940–999 e g Reformed Presbyterian Church in Pennsylvania 285 574 8

6 Other Presbyterian sects

.7 Reformed churches in America

Including Christian Reformed Church Reformed Church in America Evangelical and Reformed Church (merged 1957 into United Church of Christ)

Divide like 940–999 e g Reformed churches in Ohio 285 777 1

For United Church of Christ see 285 8 Reformed churches in Europe 284.2

285 8 United Church of Christ

Formed by union 1931 of the Congregational Church and the Christian Church as Congregational Christian Churches joined 1957 by Evangelical and Reformed Church to become United Church of Christ

Including Congregational Church Congregational Christian Churches

Divide like 940–999 e g Congregational Church in Michigan 285 877 4

For Christian Church see 286 6 Evangelical and Reformed Church 285 7

.9 Puritanism

For Congregational Church see 285 8

286 Baptist churches

Including other immersionist sects

For persecutions of Baptists see 272 8

1 Calvinistic Baptists

Including American Baptist Convention Southern Baptist Convention

Divide like 940–999 e g Baptists in England 286 142

2 Freewill Baptists

3 Seventh Day Baptists

For Seventh Day Adventists see 286 7

4 Old School Baptists

Including Primitive Antimission Hard Shell Baptists

5 Other Baptist sects

Including Dunkers Church of the Brethren [*both formerly* *289 92]

6 Disciples of Christ (Campbellite or Christian)

Including Christian Church (merged 1931 with Congregational Church to form Congregational Christian Churches)

Divide like 940–999 e g Disciples of Christ in Indiana 296 677 2

For Congregational Christian Churches see 285 8

7 Adventists

Including Seventh Day Adventists Church of God (Adventist)

Divide like 940–999 e g Adventists in Washington D C 286 775 3

For Seventh Day Baptists see 286 3

287 Methodist churches

.1 Wesleyan Methodist Church

Divide like 940–999, e g , Wesleyan Methodist Church in Illinois 287 177 3

.4 Primitive Methodist Church

Divide like 940–999, e g , Primitive Methodist Church in England 287 442

.6 The Methodist Church

Methodist Church in America

Including Methodist Episcopal Church, Methodist Episcopal Church South, Methodist Protestant Church (since 1939)

Divide like 940–999, e g , Methodist Episcopal Church in Massachusetts 287 674 4

For Methodist Protestant Church, 1830–1939, see 287 7

.7 Methodist Protestant Church, 1830–1939

Merged 1939 with Methodist Episcopal Church and Methodist Episcopal Church South to form The Methodist Church

For The Methodist Church, see 287 6

.8 African Methodist churches

Including African Methodist Episcopal Church Colored Methodist Episcopal Church African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church

Divide like 940–999 e g , African Methodist Episcopal Church in New York City 287 874 71

.9 United Church of Canada

Formed 1925 by union of Methodist Church (Canada), Union of Congregational Churches of Canada, and most of Presbyterian Church in Canada

For Congregational Church in Canada, see 285 871, Presbyterian Church, 285 271

.97 Other Methodist sects

Including Free Methodist Church of North America, Congregational Methodist Church

288 Unitarian Church

Including Socinianism, Anti-Trinitarianism

Divide like 940–999, e g , Unitarian Church in United States 288.73

289 Other Christian sects

.1 Universalist Church

Divide like 940–999, e g , Universalist Church in Connecticut 289 174 6

.2 [Unassigned]

This number will remain permanently unassigned Libraries specializing in literature of a particular sect not otherwise provided for may use this number

.3 Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)

Divide like 940–999, e g , Latter-Day Saints Church in Illinois 289 377 3

.4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)

Divide like 940–999, e g , Church of the New Jerusalem in England 289 442

.5 Church of Christ, Scientist

Divide like 940–999, e g , Christian Science churches in Oregon 389 579 5

.6 Society of Friends (Quakers)

Including Hicksites

Divide like 940–999, e g , Society of Friends in New Jersey 289 674 9

For persecutions of Quakers, see 272.8

.7 Mennonites

Including Amish, Church of God in Christ

Divide like 940–999, e g , Conservative Amish Mennonite Church in Pennsylvania 289 774 8

.8 Shakers

United Society of True Believers in Christ's Second Appearing

.9 Sects not otherwise provided for

Including New Thought [*formerly* †131 324, *131 32]

Arrange alphabetically by denomination or sect

[*.92] Church of the Brethren, Dunkers

Class in 286 5

290 Other religions

Including comprehensive works on non Christian religions and comparative mythology on comparative religion giving an equal or minor emphasis to Christianity

For Christian religion see 200–209 220–289 natural theology 210

[13] Classification of religions

Class in 291 14

291 Comparative religion and mythology

For topics limited to a specific religion see the religion e g, sacred places in Greek mythology 292 35 folklore, 398

SUMMARY

291 1	Relationships and attitudes of religions
.2	Religious doctrines and dogmas
3	Forms of worship
4	Religious life, asceticism, devotion
5	Morals ideals duties
6	Religious organization and leaders
7	*Activities inspired by religious motives*
8	Sources of religion
9	Sects

1 Relationships and attitudes of religions

12 Religious emotions

Including awe veneration submission confidence love

For psychology of emotions see 157

13 Comparative mythology

Including the myth its constituent elements growth changes in form

14 Classification of religions

Including monotheistic polytheistic mystic

17 Religions in relation to science art morals

For antagonism reconciliation of religion and science see 215 authoritarian ethical theories 171 1

18 Superstition in relation to religions

For superstition in folklore see 398 3 occult sciences 133

2 Religious doctrines and dogmas

Including doctrinal theology

For non-Christian religious law see 348 9

291.21 Objects of worship and veneration

.211 Divinities

Gods, goddesses, other deities and their functions

Including animism, spiritism, fetishism, totemism, polydemonism

.212 Nature

Worship of sun, water, fire, trees, other natural phenomena

Including nature myths, phallicism

.213 Human beings

Including ancestor worship, worship of the dead, monarch worship

.214 Pure spirit

Including personified abstractions

.215 Angels and good spirits

Servants and messengers of divinity

.216 Demons and evil spirits

Including comprehensive works on demonology

For demonology in occult sciences, see 133.4

.217 Strife among gods, and between gods and men

.218 Idols

Worship of images of divinities

.22 Doctrines on man and his soul

Including doctrines on sin, salvation, conscience, repentance, atonement

.23 Eschatology

Including doctrines on death, resurrection, immortality, other worlds, heaven, purgatory, rewards, punishments, reincarnation

.3 Forms of worship

Including religious practices, liturgy, prayer

.32 Divination

Including omens, oracles, prophecies

For divination in occult sciences, see 133.3

.33 Evocation of spirits

Including witchcraft

For witchcraft in occult sciences, see 133.4

291.34 Offerings, sacrifices, penances

35 Sacred places

Including holy buildings, altars, temples, shrines, pagodas, grottoes

36 Sacred times

Including liturgic year, religious calendar, religious festivals

37 Religious symbolism

Including emblems

38 Religious rites and ceremonies

Including public fasts, pilgrimages, processions

4 Religious life, asceticism, devotion

5 Morals, ideals, duties

For ethics see 170

6 Religious organization and leaders

For biographies of religious leaders see 922.9

61 Representatives of divinity

Priests, saviors, deliverers, messiahs

Including ministers of worship

For prophets see 291.63; sacred writers, 291.64

62 Men endowed with supernatural power

Including thaumaturgists, sorcerers, magicians, exorcists, charlatans

For occult sciences see 133

63 Divinely inspired men

Including prophets

64 Interpreters of divinity

Including sacred writers, founders of religions, religious reformers

65 Organization and institutions

Including associations, orders, parties, congregations

7 Activities inspired by religious motives

Including religious wars, home and foreign missions, religious education, fanaticism

8 Sources of religion

.82 Sacred books

291 83 Oral traditions

84 Ecclesiastic decisions

For church law see 348

.9 Sects

Including reform movements

292 Greek and Roman religion and mythology

Divide 292 2–292 9 like 291 2–291 9 e g idolatry in classical worship 292.218

293 Teutonic and Norse religion and mythology

Divide 293 2–293 9 like 291 2–291 9 e g Ragnarok 293 23

294 Brahmanism and religions deriving from it

For other Indic religions see 299 11 Sanskrit literature 891.2 ethics of caste 177 5

.1 Vedic religion

Including the Vedas

.2 Pre Buddhist Brahmanism

.3 Buddhism

Including Christian apologetics against Buddhism [*formerly* *239 9]

Divide 294 300 2–294 300 8 like 291 2–291 8 e g austerity in Buddhism 294 300 4

31 Theravada (Southern) Buddhism

Hinayana Buddhism

Followed by Southeast Asians e g of Burma Vietnam Thailand Ceylon

Divide 294 312–294 318 like 291.2–291 8 e g , holy city of Pagan 294 313 5

32 Mahayana (Northern) Buddhism

Followed in China Japan Korea Mongolia Tibet

Including Lamaism

Divide 294 322–294 329 like 291 2–291 9 e g Zen Buddhism 294 329

4 Jainism

Divide 294 42–294 49 like 291 2–291 9 e g World Jain Mission 294 47

294 5 Hinduism

Divide 294 52–294 54 294 56–294 57 like 291 2–291 4, 291 6–291 7, e g , Yoga 294 54

For Yoga philosophy see 181 45

55 Sects and reforms of Hinduism

551 Sivaism

Including Shakti Shaktas of the Left Hand

552 Brahmoism

Including Brahmo-Somaj and Arya Somaj

553 Sikhism

554 Vishnuism

555 Ramakrishna movement

Known outside India as Vedanta Society

[* 58] Theosophy

Class in 212 5

59 Sources of Hinduism

Divide like 291 8 e g sacred books 294 592

For the Vedas see 294 1

598 Morals, ideals duties

295 Zoroastrianism and related religions

Including Mazdaism Mithraism Parseeism

Divide 295 2–295 9 like 291 2–291 9 e g Zoroaster 295 64

For other Iranic religions see 299 15

296 Judaism

Religion of the Jews

[illegible]

history of modern Palestine and Israel 956 94 *comprehensive works on history of Jews since their dispersion,* 956 93

SUMMARY

.1 Sources of Judaism

Including religious texts rabbinical writings

For Hebrew versions of the Bible see 221 44 *Holy Scriptures* 221–224

12 Talmud

Including Mishnah Gemara

14 Midrash

Including Halakah Haggada

16 Cabala [*formerly* †*181 3]

Including Zohar

3 Judaic doctrinal theology

31 Doctrines on God

32 Doctrines on man and his soul

Including doctrines on sin salvation conscience repentance atonement

33 Eschatology

Including doctrines on death resurrection immortality

38 *Moral and social theology*

Codes of conduct concerning religious and secular matters

Class Jewish law [*formerly* *296 38] in 348 96

296.4 **Public services, rites, traditions**

Including liturgy, hymns, prayers, responsive readings, symbolism, ceremonies, comprehensive works on worship and prayer

For dietary laws see 296.73; private prayer and family worship, 296.7

.41 The Sabbath

.42 Sermons

Including homiletics

.43 Festivals and holy days

Including fasts

Class prayers for other specific occasions in 296.44, prayers at daily devotions in 296.72, private prayer in 296.7 [*all formerly* *296.43]

For the Sabbath see 296.41; Jewish calendar, 529.326

.431 Rosh Hashanah (New Year)

.432 Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement)

.433 Sukkoth (Feast of Tabernacles)

.435 Hanukkah (Feast of the Dedication)

.436 Purim (Feast of Lots)

.437 Pesach (Passover)

Including Seder service

.438 Shabuoth (Feast of Weeks, Pentecost)

For confirmation see 296.443

.439 Minor festivals and fasts

Including Tishah b'Ab, Lag b'Omer

.44 Rites and customs for specific occasions

Including prayers for specific occasions [*formerly* *296.43]

.442 Special rites for male Jew

.442 2 Berith milah (Circumcision)

.442 3 Pidyon haben (Redemption of first born male)

.442 4 Bar mitzvah

.443 Confirmation

For Shabuoth see 296.438

296.444 Marriage and divorce rites and traditions

Including huppah (canopy), ketubah (marriage contract), get (bill of divorcement)

.445 Burial and mourning rites

Including taharah (ritual bathing of corpse), tachrichin (shroud), hesped (eulogy), shivah (seven days of mourning), Kaddish (special prayer for dead), matzevah (memorial stone)

.6 Religious institutions and activities

Including polity, individual societies

.61 Rabbi

Including rabbi's life, duties of his office

.65 Synagogue

Including administration of synagogue activities

For public services, rites, traditions, see 296.4

.67 Jewish organizations

Including Young Men's Hebrew Associations, Young Women's Hebrew Associations

.68 Jewish religious education

Including Sunday schools, afternoon weekday schools, religious education in Jewish parochial schools

.7 Devotional theology

Including private prayer [*formerly* *296.43], family worship

For moral theology, see 296.38, public services, rites, traditions, 296.4

.72 Daily devotions

Including morning, afternoon, evening prayers [*all formerly* *296.43], blessings at meals

.73 Observance of dietary laws

Including laws of kashrut

For Jewish cookery, see 641.567

296 8 Sects and movements

81 Ancient sects and movements

Including Karaites Pharisees Sadducees Essenes Samaritans Hellenistic movement

82 Medieval sects and movements

83 Modern sects and movements

832 Orthodox Judaism

833 Mystical Judaism

Including modern Hasidism

834 Reform movements

Including Conservative Judaism Reform Judaism

297 **Islam**

Including Christian apologetics against Islam [*formerly* *239 9]

Divide 297 2–297 7 like 291 2–291 7 e g, propagation of the faith 297 7

1 Sources

Divide like 291 8 e g Koran 297 12

8 Sects

Including Sunnites Shiites Twelvers Seveners Ismailis Ahmadiya

89 **Bahai faith**

Including Babism

298

299 **Religions not otherwise provided for**

Divide like 490 e g Druidism 299 16

51 Religions of Chinese origin

512 Confucianism

Divide 299 512 2–299 512 9 like 291 2–291 9 e g ethics in Confucianism 299 512 5

514 Taoism

Divide 299 514 2–299 514 9 like 291 2–291 9 e g Taoist forms of worship 299 514 3

Social Sciences

300 Social sciences

Comprehensive works on the sciences which deal with human life in relation to society

For history, see 900, geography, 910, psychology, 130, 150, anthropology, 572–573, public health 614

.1 Philosophy and theory of the social sciences [*formerly* †301]

For other form divisions, see 302–309

301 Sociology

Study of human relations and the processes of group life

Use 301 01–301 09 for form divisions

Class philosophy and theory of the social sciences [*formerly* †301] in 300 1

For form divisions of the social sciences, see 300 1 302–309, customs, 390, anthropology, 572–573, social planning, 309 2, political science, 320, economics, 330, social welfare, 360

[*.12] Socialization and personality

Class in 301 15

.15 Social psychology

Mental and emotional behavior of individuals as members of groups

Including socialization and personality [*formerly* *301 12]

For environmental psychology, see 136 2

.151 Collective behavior

Behavior of groups arising from unity of attitudes feelings, motivations

Including comprehensive works on organized and unorganized collective behavior

For a specific form of organized behavior, see the subject, e g, marriage customs 392 5, unorganized forms of collective behavior, 301 158, social organization and institutions, 301.4

301.152 Social control

Means or processes by which society secures conformity from its individuals or groups

Including coercive control, persuasive control group dynamics, social conventions, mores, usages, comprehensive works on informal and formal methods of societal control

Class public opinion [*formerly* *301 152] in 301 154

For a specific formal control, see the subject, e g , regulation of transportation 385, *controls within a specific group, the group, e g , controls in labor groups* 331 88–331 89, *folkways and popular beliefs* 390, *freedom of speech,* 323 443, *law,* 340

152 2 Group morale

Including group loyalty

For political loyalty patriotism, see 320 158

.152 3 Propaganda

Including indoctrination, publicity, insignia, satire used to *enforce conformity rumor and popular delusions* [*formerly* *301 158]

For psychological warfare, see 355 343

153 Social movements

Concerted action to bring about desired change in social order and in existing institutions

Including general social movements, e g , labor movement, youth movement, specific social movements, e g , reform move ments, revolutionary movements, expressive movements, e g , fashion movements, social engineering

For a specific reform movement, see the subject, e g , emancipation movement 326

[† 153 2–†.153 4] Conflict, compromise, assimilation

Class in 301.23

[† 153 5] Social progress, group socialization

Class in 301 245

[† 153 6] Disintegration, maladjustment, reversion, decadence

Class in 301 246

301 154 **Public opinion** [*formerly* *301 152]

Including public opinion polls comprehensive works on public opinion and propaganda

For publicity and public relations in business see 659 111 *market research and analysis* 658 83 *propaganda* 301 152 3

155 **Leadership**

Including traditional bureaucratic charismatic types of leadership relationships between leaders and followers personality and prestige of leaders authority power

For leadership in a specific field see the field e g church leadership 250 *gangs* 301 158 *social groups* 301 4

158 **Elementary collective groupings and their behavior**

Including organization and behavior of the public crowds mobs cliques rioting panic behavior gangs [*formerly also* †136 77]

Class rumor and popular delusions [*formerly* *301 158] in 301 152 3

For gangs of criminals and delinquents see 364 363 364 364 364 374 *revolutions and riots* 323 2 *financial panics* 338 54 *family as an institution* 301 42 *social groups and institutions* 301 4

158 3 **Public meetings and committee work**

Including assemblies audiences associations their organization and function

For social club meetings see 367 *parliamentary law* 328 1 *a specific kind of meeting committee or association the group e g congressional legislative committee work* 328 36 *art associations* 706

[† 158 4] **Youth groups**

Class in 301 431

2 **Culture**

Totality of man s habits traditions techniques values beliefs and all other activities developt in human association

Including cultural traits culture patterns social heritage comprehensive works on material and nonmaterial culture

For history of civilization and culture see 901 9 *cultural anthropology* 572 *ethnopsychology* 136 48 *national characteristics and culture of a country the country e g French culture* 914 4 *customs and folklore* 390

301 23 Cultural processes

The continuous transition of social phenomena from one condition to another

Including conflict interference opposition compromise accommodation assimilation [*all formerly* †301 153 2–†301 153 4] contact competition cooperation differentiation acculturation

24 Social change

Processes by which social structure is modified either constructively or destructively

For social planning see 309 2

243 Means of social change

Including effects of invention discovery technology mass communication on culture comprehensive works on automation

For a specific use of automation see the subject e g in production 658 561 *automatic control engineering* 629 8

245 Social progress [*formerly* †301 153 5]

Including group socialization cyclic change

For individual socialization see 301 15

246 Disintegration [*formerly* †301 153 6 *formerly also* *301 46]

Including maladjustment reversion decadence degeneration social pathology

For a specific kind of social disintegration see the subject e g juvenile delinquency 364 36

3 Human ecology

Detailed analysis of the process and organization of relations involved in adjustment to environment

Including ecological processes of concentration centralization specialization invasion succession decentralization

For demography see 312 *anthropogeography* 572 9 *migration* 325 *social psychology* 301 15

/ 301.32 **Population**

Scientific study of the total people

Including Malthusian theory [*formerly* †312 1], population policies, density, growth, decline, movement, comprehensive works on analyses and studies of populations representing quality and content, on statistics and description of population

Class eugenics in 613 94, sterilization in 613 942 [*both formerly* *301 323]

For vital statistics and census tables, see 312, *birth control,* 613 943, *genetics,* 575 1

.329 **Population by country**

Divide like 930–999, e g , population studies of France 301 329 44

.34 **Community organization**

Including areal distribution, location and expansion of settlements, patterns of growth

For social planning, see 309.2, *city and town planning,* 711 4

.35 **Rural sociology**

Groups and institutions in rural environment

Including comprehensive works on rural society

For rural life, see 630 1, *relations of rural communities to the state,* 323 354, *local government,* 352, *farm management,* 631

.36 **Urban sociology**

Groups and institutions in urban environment

Including metropolitan areas [*formerly* *301 37], urbanized areas, urban-rural areas, megalopolis, city growth, comprehensive works on the sociology of cities

For the planned community, see 309 26, *zoning,* 711 5, *relations of urban communities to the state,* 323 352, *municipal government,* 352

362 **Suburban sociology**

Groups and institutions in suburban environment

Including satellite communities, comprehensive works on the sociology of suburban areas

For relations of suburban communities to the state, see 323 353

301 37 Sociology of regions or areas

Including geographical political economic ecological areas underdevelopt areas

Class metropolitan areas [*formerly* *301 37] in 301 36

For regional planning see 309 24 a specific activity on a regional basis the subject e g slum clearance 711 59

4 **Social organization and institutions**

Including comprehensive works on sociology of political economic religious institutions

For anthropology see 572 educational sociology 370 193 political institutions 320 governmental institutions 350 economic institutions 330 religious institutions 250–290

42 Family [*formerly* †392]

Structure and functions

Including comprehensive works on marriage and family relationships

For family ethics see 173 family customs 392 3 matriarchy and patriarchy 321 1

422 Forms of marriage

Including monogamy polygamy marriage taboos and prohibitions civil marriage mixt marriage miscegenation

For marriage customs see 392 5

423 Family and social change

Including changes in family status man s and woman s role in family effects upon family of urbanization mobility technology war

423 3 Industrialization and the family

Including effects of factory system of employment of women outside the home career women

For woman in the home see 396 6 careers for women 396 5 employment of women 331 4

424 The sexes in society

Including celibacy deviations in sex life e g premarital relations adultery homosexuality

For sexual ethics see 176 woman 396 sex customs 392 6 psychological aspects of sexual perversions 132 75

424 3 Prostitution

Including regulation associated social problems

For white slave traffic see 364 153 venereal disease control 614 547 ethical aspects of prostitution 176 5

301.425 **Courtship**

Including selection of mate, falling in love, engagements

For courting customs, see 392 4, *ethics of courtship,* 177 6, *eugenics,* 613 94

.426 **Husband-wife relationship**

Including preparation for marriage, elements of successful marriage, marriage and family counseling, planned parenthood

For birth control, see 613 943, *family customs,* 392 3, *premarital examination,* 614 17

.427 **Parent-child relationship**

Including social factors in development of the child, parenthood and parental responsibilities, responsibilities of child to parents

For child care in the home, see 649 1, *child psychology,* 136 7, *child welfare,* 362 7, *social gerontology,* 301 435

.428 **Family disorganization and dissolution**

Including family crises and adjustments, e g , bereavement, separation, divorce, remarriage

For family counseling, see 301 426, *family welfare services,* 362 8

43 **Special groups**

Including pressure groups

For lobbying, see 328 368, *trade unions,* 331 88, *associations and institutions in a specific field, the subject, e g , art associations* 706 *patriotic societies,* 369 1–369 2, *fraternal orders,* 366, *elementary groupings,* 301 158

.431 **Adolescent and youth groups** [*formerly* †301 158 4]

For young people's societies, see 369 4, *religious societies,* 267, *psychology of adolescence,* 136 735 4, *aid to children and youth,* 362 7, *youth movement,* 301 153

.435 **Old age groups**

Including social gerontology, social aspects of retirement, *comprehensive works on gerontology*

For geriatrics, see 618 97, *aid to aged,* 362 6, *old age social insurance,* 368 43, *physical gerontology,* 612 67, *age and employment,* 331 113

301.44 Social stratification and social status

Including class and caste systems, socioeconomic groups, class structure

For state and social classes see 323.3, migration and colonization 325, class hatreds as factor in crime 364.256

301.441–301.446 Criteria of class distinction

441 Classes determined by wealth, property, income

442 Classes determined by family or kinship

443 Classes determined by location and duration of residence

444 Classes determined by occupation

445 Classes determined by education

446 Classes determined by religion

45 Social problems of ethnic groups and minorities

Including nomads [*formerly* †*397], prejudice, social discrimination, segregation

For anthropology see 572–573, political problems of minorities 323.1, immigrants and emigrants 325, discrimination in a specific situation, the subject, e.g., racial segregation in schools 371.97, racial conflicts as factor in crime, 364.256

451 Racial groups

Including Negroes, Indians in United States

452 Socio-religious groups

Groups which are distinct from the majority because of social practices or religious beliefs

[*46] Social disorganization

Class in 301.246

302–309 Form divisions of the social sciences

For philosophy and theory of the social sciences, see 300.1, form divisions of sociology 301.01–301.09

302 Handbooks and outlines of the social sciences

303 Dictionaries and encyclopedias of the social sciences

304 Essays and lectures on the social sciences

305 Periodicals of the social sciences

306 Organizations and societies of the social sciences

307 Study and teaching of the social sciences

308 Collections on the social sciences

309 History of the social sciences

309.1 Social surveys

Divide like 940–999, e g , social surveys of Detroit 309 177 434

For social history, see 940–999, social science research, 307.2

.2 Social planning

Effort to direct social change thru a coordinated program of control

Including comprehensive works on social and economic planning

For planning in a specific field, see the subject, e g , economic planning 338 9 *social security* 368 4 *conservation of national resources* 339 49 *planning of physical facilities,* 711

.22 International planning and coordination

Including comprehensive works on technical assistance

Class international planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309 22] in 711 2

For
in I
338
327

.23 National planning

Class national planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309 23] in 711 2

.24 Regional planning

Class regional planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309 24] in 711 3

.25 State planning

Including county planning

Class state planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309 25] in 711 3

.26 City planning

Including urban and town planning the planned community

For city maps, see 912

310 Statistics

For statistics of a specific subject other than population, see the subject, e g , railroad transportation statistics 385 1

.6 Organizations and societies

Class government organizations [*formerly* *310 61] in 311 3, private statistical bureaus [*formerly* *310 62] in 311 4

311 The statistical method (Statistical theory)

Science of analysis and presentation of quantitative or qualitative data *secured thru enumeration or experiment*

For statistical mathematics, see 519 9

.2 Preparation of statistics

Including methods, techniques, procedures

Class statistical mathematics [*formerly* *311 2] in 519 9

.21 Statistical sampling

Including reliability and validity of samples

For mathematical aspects of sampling and quality control, see 519 93

.212 Random sampling

214 Quality control

Including relative sampling

For quality control in production, see 658 562

.22 Collection of data

Including preparation of questionnaires field work, enumeration

.23 Statistical analysis

Including determination and interpretation of statistical constants

.24 Tabulation of data

Including arrangement layout, construction of tables and series

For graphic presentation of data, see 311 26

.25 Statistical coefficients and ratios

Including index numbers [*formerly* †311 26], skewness, correlation

.26 Graphic presentation of statistical data

Including preparation of statistical charts, graphs, nomograms

Class index numbers [*formerly* †311 26] in 311 25

For tabulation of data, see 311.24

311.3 Government statistical organizations [*formerly* *310 61]

Including international organizations

.39 By country

Divide like 930–999 e g United States Bureau of the Census 311 397 3

.4 Private statistical bureaus [*formerly* *310.62]

312 Demography

Statistical study of populations

Including vital statistics [*formerly also* †614 1] censuses

For registration and certification of births deaths morbidity see 614 1, *mortality and survival tables,* 368.3

.1 Birth statistics

Divide like 930–999 e g birth rate in Australia 312 194

Class Malthusian theory [*formerly* †312 1] in 301 32

.2 Death statistics

209 Death statistics in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g death rate in England 312.209 42

22 Statistics on maternal deaths in childbirth

23 Infant mortality statistics

Divide like 930–999 e g infant mortality rate in France 312 234 4

24 Statistics on stillbirths

26 Statistics on causes of death by disease

Divide like 616, e g pulmonary tuberculosis death rate 312 262 46

27 Statistics on accidental deaths

Including deaths by accidental electrocution drowning burns, falls poisoning

272 Deaths by home accidents

273 Deaths by industrial accidents

274 Deaths by traffic accidents

Including statistics on deaths in automobile airplane train streetcar accidents

275 Deaths by recreational accidents

321 02 Mixt state

State consisting of two or more authorities, each with governmental jurisdiction of its own

Class centralization and decentralization of power [*formerly* *321 02] in 320 157

.021 Federal state

Organization of state where individual commonwealths yield their sovereignty in certain matters such as foreign relations

Including federation, admission of new commonwealths, doctrine of states' rights, comprehensive works on unitary versus federal states

For unitary state, see 321 01, *states' rights in United States constitutional history*, 342 73

022 Confederation of states

Alliance of states forming a loose federation, possessing a limited international authority

Including imperial federation, regional, world-wide political organization of sovereign states

For international organizations and international cooperation, see 341, *internationalism*, 321 041, *imperialism*, 321 03

025 Semisovereign and dependent states

026 Mediatized states

027 Protected states and territories

Including spheres of influence [*formerly* *325 3], mandates, trusteeships as forms of state [*both formerly* *325 31], protectorates

For colonial government, see 325 31

028 Vassal states

03 Empire and imperialism

For colonization, see 325 3

04 World state (World government)

Including cosmopolitism

041 Internationalism

Including internationalism as an attitude

For peace plans, see 341 1, *nationalism*, 320 158, *international organization and administration*, 341 11

321.07 Ideal state

Including utopias

For utopian socialism, see 335 1

.09 Change of form of state

Including change by revolution, coup d'état [*both formerly* *323 2]

For political struggles, see 323 2

.1 Patriarchy, matriarchy, family

For anthropological studies of primitive organizations, see 572, the family as a social institution, 301 42

.2 Tribal state

Including clans, hordes, primitive village communities

.3 Feudalism

.4 Democracy

Absolute or pure democracy

For representative government, see 321 8

.5 Aristocracy

Including oligarchy

.6 Absolutism

.61 Absolute monarchy

.62 Dictatorship

Including despotism, Caesarism

For modern dictatorship, see 321 64

.64 Modern dictatorship

Including comprehensive works on totalitarianism (totalitarian dictatorship)

For collectivistic economic systems, see 335

642 Communist type dictatorship [*formerly* *321.84]

Including communist state, dictatorship of the proletariat, of the 'Left"

644 Fascist-type dictatorship [*formerly* *321 85]

Including fascist state, corporative state, National Socialist state (Nazi state), Falangist state, dictatorship of the "Right'

.646 Syndicalism

Dictatorship by labor organizations

321.7 **Constitutional or limited monarchy**

Including democratic state under constitutional monarchy

.8 **Republic**

Including comprehensive works on representative government [*formerly* *321 01], on delegated powers, on modern democracy

Class nationalism [*formerly* *321 8] in 320 158

For representative government under constitutional monarchy, see 321 7

[*.84] **Communist state**

Class in 321 642

[*.85] **Fascist state**

Class in 321 644

.9 **Anarchism as political system**

For anarchism as economic system, see 335 83

322 State and church

Comprehensive works

Including relative functions of church and state, political theories of their relationship, control and influence of one upon the other, union and separation, conflict, anticlericalism

For state's ethical duty to church, see 172 3, Christianity and the political order, 261 7

323 Relations of state to individuals or groups

For political parties, see 329, crimes against state, 364 13

.1 **Civil government in relation to ethnic groups and minorities**

Political problems based on social and cultural interests of minorities, national and racial groups

Divide like *930–999*, e g, problems of race relationships in Australia 323 194

For international migration and colonization, see 325, public policy toward aliens, 325 1 sociological aspects of ethnic and minority groups, 301 45, nationalism, 320 158, racial conflicts as factor in crime, 364 256

323 2 **Political struggles**

Including revolutions revolts riots subversive activities

Class revolution coup d etat as change of form of state [*both formerly* *323 2] in 321 09

For international law of civil war, see 341 39 *crimes against state* 364 13 *martial law* 344

3 **State and social classes**

Including orders estates problems involving recognition of rights of classes within the state

For social stratification and social status see 301 44

31 Nobility and aristocracy

32 Middle class

Including bourgeoisie

33 Laboring classes

Including proletariat peasantry

34 *Serfs*

Including serfdom [*formerly also* †326 3 *formerly* *326]

For slavery see 326

35 **Communities and the state**

For sociology of community organization see 301 34 *local government of communities* 352

352 Urban communities

For urban sociology see 301 36

353 Suburban communities

For suburban sociology see 301 362

354 Rural communities

For rural sociology see 301 35 *rural life* 630 1

4 **Individual rights and protection**

Including natural rights legal immunities of individuals constitutional guarantees comprehensive works on civil liberties on censorship

For ethics of caste and segregation see 177 5 *a specific liberty the subject e g freedom of teaching* 378 121 *a specific type of censorship the subject e g censorship of books in libraries* 025 21 *individualism* 141 4

41 Equality of individuals and races

323 42 Equality before the law

Including justice for individuals

44 Liberty

Including freedom of movement action, information, religion, conscience drama, art

Class academic freedom [*formerly* *323 44] in 378 121

443 Freedom of speech

Including freedom of speech in radio, television motion pictures

[† 444] Academic freedom

Class in 378 121

445 Freedom of the press [*formerly also* †070 13]

For law of libel and slander see 070 13

46 Right of property ownership

47 Right of assembly and association

48 Right of petition

49 Limitation and suspension of individual rights and guarantees

Including limitation in times of martial law and state of siege

6 Citizenship

Including citizenship in federal, other mixt states

For civics and studies of government in specific countries, see 342

61 Citizenship and naturalization laws

Including international laws [*formerly* *341 51]

Divide like 930–999, e g citizenship laws of Brazil 323 618 1

62 Naturalization

Including procedures for becoming a citizen requirements, declaration of intention oath of renunciation and allegiance

63 Aliens and citizenship

Including dual citizenship

64 Loss and restoration of citizenship

Including expatriation repatriation statelessness

For repatriation of displaced persons see 325 21
repatriation of prisoners of war 341 33

323 65 Duties and obligations of citizens

Comprehensive works

For ethics of citizenship, see 172 1, a specific duty or obligation, the subject, e g , military service 355 223

.67 Rights and privileges of citizenship

Including rights and protection extended to aliens

For civil rights of citizens, see 323 4, regulation and control of aliens, 325 1

673 Passports and visas

In times of peace emergency, war

For diplomatic privileges and immunities, see 341 7, consular service, 341 8

324 Suffrage and elections

For public opinion polls, see 301 154 initiative and referendum, 328 26

093 Suffrage and elections in ancient countries

Divide like 930 e g , suffrage in ancient Greece 324 093 8

For suffrage and elections in modern countries, see 324 4–324 9

.1 *Suffrage*

Including qualifications for voting e g , age, sex, citizenship, residence property, mental and moral competency, education poll tax voting rights of special classes, e g , soldiers, students

For woman suffrage, see 324 3, absentee voting 324 24

.2 Elections

21 Electoral systems

*Including short ballot [formerly *324 25], universal suffrage,* limited suffrage, plural vote, compulsory voting

22 Basis of representation

Including functional minority proportional representation

For legislative bodies and basis of representation, see 328 334

23 Nomination of candidates

Including party conferences caucus, direct primary, platform, selection of delegates to national political conventions

324 24 Voting procedure

Including registration hours polls judges clerks secret ballot certification of votes voting place absentee voting voting procedure for electoral college

25 Ballot

Including party ballot Australian system voting machines

Class short ballot [*formerly* *324 25] in 324 21

For manufacture of voting machines see 681 147

26 Count of ballot

Including results announcement of vote

27 Corruption and electoral frauds

Including bribery false registration fraud in voting and counting errors in counting contested elections

For party politics see 329 contested seats in legislative bodies 328 335 crimes against state 364 13

273 Election contributions and expenditures

Including limitations on expenditures restrictions on contributions political assessments

3 Woman suffrage

4–9 Suffrage and elections in modern countries

Divide like 940–999 e g suffrage and elections in India 324 54–

For suffrage and elections in ancient countries see 324 093

325 Migration and colonization

For demography see 312, population policies 301 32

1 Immigration

Including administration of immigration service policies of restriction exclusion selection of immigrants migration within a country causes effects of migration immigration emigration

For immigration to specific countries see 325 4–325 9 rights of aliens 323 67 relations between state and minority groups within a country 323 1 migratory workers 331 67 immigration as factor in crime 364 256

2 Emigration

Including emigrants emigration policy relating to country of origin

For immigrants in specific countries see 325 4–325 9 emigrants from specific countries 325 23–325 29

325 21 **Promotion and assistance**

Including displaced persons, political refugees, repatriation

For World War I refugees, see 940 315 9, World War II refugees, 940 531 59, welfare aid to refugees, 361.53

.23–.29 **Emigration from specific countries**

Including emigration policies

Divide by country of origin like 930–999, e g, Chinese emigrants 325 251, divide further after 09 by country of settlement, e g, Negroes in United States 325 267 097 3

For immigrants in specific countries irrespective of origin, see 325 4–325 9, sociological aspects of minority groups, 301 45, relation of state to minority groups, 323 1

.3 **Colonization**

Including occupation and permanent settlement, relations between mother country and colonies

Class spheres of influence [*formerly* *325 3] in 321 027

For dependent states, see 321 025–321.028, political history of empires and of specific colonies, 930–999

.31 **Colonial government and international controls**

Including colonial policies and administration, military government of colonies, mandates, trusteeship control of nonself-governing territories

Class mandates, trusteeships as forms of state [*both formerly* *325 31] in 321 027

For government of a specific colony, see the colony, e g, government of Goa 354 547 99

.33–39 **Colonization by specific countries**

Divide like 930–999 by nation controlling colonies, e g, British colonies 325 342

.4–.9 **Colonization in and immigration to a specific country**

Divide like 940–999, e g, colonization of Alaska 325 798

For source of immigration, see 325 2, of colonization, 325 3

326 Slavery

Including emancipation

Class serfdom [*formerly* *326] in 323 34

For slavery as a cause of United States Civil War see 973 711 1 socioeconomic problems of Negro 301 451 education of freedmen, 371 974

1 **Slave trade**

2 **Coolies and contract slaves**

For immigrant workers see 331 62 contract labor, 331 54

[† 3] **Serfs and serfdom**

Class in 323 34

4 **Antislavery documents**

Including periodicals societies [*both formerly* †326 5–†326 6]

[† 5–† 6] **Antislavery periodicals and societies**

Class in 326 4

7 **Proslavery documents**

9 **History of slavery**

Divide like 930–999 e g slavery in the United States 326 973

92 **Lives of slaves**

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee using A1 for collections

If preferred class in 920–928 e g biography of Booker T Washington 923 773

327 Foreign relations

Comprehensive works on international law and foreign relations

Including diplomatic history [*formerly* *930–*999] foreign policy, boundary disputes, diplomatic missions

For international law see 341 diplomatic history of a specific war the war e g diplomatic history of World War I 940 32 foreign relations concerning a specific subject the subject e g, passports 323 673 conduct of diplomacy 341 7

1 **Cold war activities**

Comprehensive works

Including diplomatic spies and espionage

For psychological warfare see 355 343 espionage as a crime 364 13 cold war activities between two countries or groups of countries 327 3–327 9

327.3–.9 International relations of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., British foreign policy 327.42

For international relations between two countries add 0 and divide further like 930–999, e.g., foreign relations between England and France *327.420.44*

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries give priority to the local country, e.g., relations between United States and Great Britain 327.730.42 in a United States library, 327.420.73 in a British library; for international relations between two foreign countries follow the numerical sequence of 930–999, e.g., international relations between France and England 327.420.44, between Japan and France 327.440.52

For geopolitics, see 320.12; *exterritoriality,* 341.7

328 Legislation

For law, see 340

.1 Parliamentary law

Including rules of order for business meetings

.2 Legislative function

Including uniform laws, codification process

.25 Legislative powers

Including juridic, executive, implied powers; restrictions and checks on legislation

.26 Direct legislation

Including initiative and referendum

.3 Legislative bodies

Legislative branch of government

Including upper and lower house

For session laws, see 345, 346, 349; *legislative bodies of specific countries,* 328.4–328.9

.33 Membership

Including eligibility, election of members, ex officio members

.333 Compensation

Including salaries, per diem payment, mileage, traveling expenses, pensions

.334 Representation

Including representation of states, territories, colonies, dependencies, of classes, e.g., landowners, Irish and Scottish peers; election districts, apportionment, gerrymandering

328.335 Methods of appointment

Including election, appointment by government or crown, hereditary right, direct vote, vacancies, resignations, contested seats

For contested elections, see 324.27

.34 Prerogatives and powers

For legislative control over public administration, see 351.96

.341 Power over revenue and appropriation

.343 Power to investigate or punish members

.344 Power of expulsion

.345 Power over nonmembers of legislature

Including power to imprison citizens, comprehensive works on power of investigation

For power of investigation of public officials, see 351.98, of impeachment, 351.99

.346 Treaty-making power

.347 Privileges of legislators

Including franking privilege, postage and stationery, railroad passes, free distribution of books and pamphlets

.348 Immunities of legislators

Including immunity from arrest

For diplomatic immunity, see 341.7

.349 Restrictions on legislators

Including instructions by electors, direct mandate by the people

.35 Sessions

Including method, frequency, length, adjournment, executive session, special sessions, extra sessions

328.36 Internal organization and discipline

Including suspension, investigation, impeachment of members, appointment and election of officers, organization of committees, subcommittees, commissions, party officers and committees, party discipline

For parliamentary law, see 328.1; investigations of public officials, 351.98; impeachment of public officials, 351.99; of president, 353.03

.367 Bribery and illegal practices

.368 Lobbying

.37 Legislative procedure

Including legislative manuals, legislative reference service, inquiries and investigations, recommendations from executive

.373 *Bills*

Including drafting, introduction of bills

.374 Action by legislature before passage

Including readings, committee work on bills, party caucuses, logrolling

.375 Final passage

Including work of rules committee, steering committee, vote by voice, roll call or ballot, required majority, passing over veto, pocket veto

.376 Special bills

Including financial bills, omnibus riders

.377 Resolutions

Including joint resolutions

.378 Local and private legislation

.379 Procedure in special cases

Including impeachment procedures

For impeachment of legislators, see 328.36; of president, 353.03; of public officials, 351.99

.39 Forms of legislative bodies

Including unicameral and bicameral legislature

328.4–.9 **Legislative bodies of specific countries**

Divide like 940–999, e g, British Parliament 328 42, German Bundesrat [*formerly* †354 430 32] 328 43

Divide further by 01 journals, 02 debates, 03 abstracts, 04 documents, 05 rules, 08 legislative manuals, 09 history (for United States and states thereof omit 0), e g, history of British Parliament 328 420 9, history of United States Congress 328 739, documents of Ohio State Legislature 328 771 4

329 United States political parties

Including organization, campaign methods, functions, party politics, practical politics

For elections, see 324, *nomination of candidates,* 324 23, *political history* 900 *political parties of countries other than United States,* 329 9

.01 Presidential campaign literature of all parties

Arrange by campaign year

.02 Political machines

Including party bosses leaders

.1 **Federalist Party**

.2 **Anti-Federalist Party**

.3 **Democratic Party**

Including Republican-Democratic or Jeffersonian Republican Party

.4 **Whig Party**

.5 **American (Know-Nothing) Party**

.6 **Republican Party**

Including liberal Republican movements, e g, Progressive Party of 1912

.8 **Other United States parties**

Including Prohibition, Greenback, Woman Suffrage, People's (Populist) Socialist, Labor, Communist Parties

Class political societies [*formerly* *329 8] in 363

.9 Political parties of other countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, Progressive Conservative Party in Canada 329 971

330 Economics

Science of production evaluation distribution consumption of wealth

1 Economic theory

For business cycles see 338 54

109 History of economic thought

Divide like 930–999 e g development of economic doctrines in England 330 109 42

15 Schools of capitalist theory

For socialism and collectivism see 335 cooperation 334

151 Mercantilism

Including cameralism

152 Physiocracy

153 Classicism

Including laissez faire free private enterprise individualism, utilitarianism neoclassicism (Cambridge school)

For a specific theory of classicists see the subject e g Malthus on population 301 32 mathematical school 330 182

154 Historical school

155 Universalism

Including romantic and institutional schools

156 Keynesian economics (The New Economics school)

16 Theories of value

162 *Marginal utility theory (Austrian school)*

17 Theory of property

Comprehensive works

For socialist and collectivist economic systems see 335

18 Economic methods

Including econometrics

182 Mathematical economics

For neoclassicism see 330 153

19 Relations to other subjects

Divide like 000–999 e g economic effects of war 330 193 55

330 9 **Economic history and conditions**

Including economic geography [*formerly* *911 3] commercial geography [*formerly also* †380 9 *formerly* *911 3]

Divide like 930–999 e g economic conditions in Italy 330 945

331 Labor economics

For management, see 658 public administration, 350

SUMMARY

331 01	Philosophical aspects of labor
026	Labor laws and regulations
1	Industrial relations (Labor management relations)
2	Wages and earnings
3	Labor by critical age groups
4	Employed women
5	Compulsory labor
59	Work by physically handicapt
6	Labor of minority and other special groups
7	Economic aspects of specific occupations and professions
8	Industrial sociology
9	Other labor problems

01 Philosophical aspects of labor

Including right to work [*formerly* †331 9] freedom and dignity of work satisfactions and nonwage rewards

026 Labor laws and regulations

Divide like 930–999 e g labor legislation in United States 331 026 73

For laws and regulations on a specific aspect of labor economics see the subject e g wage laws and regulations 331 26

026 1 International regulations of labor [*formerly* †331 9]

1 **Industrial relations (Labor management relations)**

11 Employment

Including labor force comprehensive works on employment and unemployment

For unemployment see 331 13 employment in specific occupations 331 7

112 Labor market

Including labor demand [*formerly* *331 115] labor supply

For employment agencies see 331 115

331 113 Discrimination in employment

Consideration of workers on basis other than job qualifications

Including discrimination on basis of sex, race, national origin religion, age

For special classes of workers, see 331 3–331 6, employment practices, 658.31

.114 Qualifications of workers

Including physical mental, educational experience qualifications

For testing prospective employees, see 658 311

.115 Employment services

Including employment agencies [*formerly* *658 311], labor exchanges

Class selection of personnel [*formerly* †331 115] in 658 311, labor demand [*formerly* *331 115] in 331 112

For placement services of educational institutions, see 371 427, employment agencies for teachers, 371 145

.116 Collective bargaining [*formerly* *331 891]

Negotiation and settlement of terms of employment between employers and organized workers

For a specific aspect of collective bargaining, see the subject, e g , wages 331 2

12 Labor stability

[† 123–† 125] In-service management of personnel

Class in 658 312

126 Labor turnover

Including causes costs, statistical studies

127 Labor mobility

Transfer of workers to other regions

13 Unemployment

Causes, economic effects, distribution incidence of cyclical, seasonal partial technological unemployment

For business cycles see 338 54, termination of service, 658 313, unemployment as factor in crime, 364 26

331 137 Unemployment prevention and relief

Including work relief [*formerly* †331 61] union benefit plans dismissal wages unemployment benefits

For unemployment insurance see 368 44 *guaranteed wage plans* 331 23

137 8 Unemployment in specific occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 331 137 81–331 137 898 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g unemployment of miners 331 137 8 M5

137 81 In professions service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 137 82–331 137 898

Divide like 000–999 e g unemployment of commercial artists 331 137 817 416

137 82–137 898 In major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g unemployment of miners 331 137 822

For unemployment in other industries see 331 137 81

137 9 Unemployment by country

Divide like 940–999 e g unemployment in Mexico 331 137 972

138 Re employment

[† 14] Personnel management and administration

Class in 658 3

15 Labor management conciliation practices [*formerly* *331 899]

Settlement of labor management differences thru discussions deliberations recommendations of third party

For labor disputes see 331 89 *employer employee relationships* 658 315 *collective bargaining* 331 116 *labor courts* 331 16

152 Labor management committees

Including industrial democracy

Class employee representation in management [*formerly* †331 152] in 658 315 2

154 Mediation [*formerly* *331 899]

Effecting settlement of labor management differences thru a third party whose recommendations are not compulsory

331.155 Arbitration [*formerly* *331 899]

Effecting settlement of labor management differences thru a third party whose recommendations are compulsory

Including voluntary arbitration, compulsory arbitration

.16 Labor courts

.18 Industrial relations by industry

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331 181–331 189 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e g , labor-management relations in transportation industries 331 18 T7

.181 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 182–331 189 8

Divide like 000–999, e g , labor management relations in railroad transportation services 331 181 385

.182–.189 8 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e g , labor-management relations in mining industries 331 182 2

For industrial relations in other industries, see 331.181

.19 Industrial relations by country

Divide like 940–999, e g , industrial relations in Mexico 331 197 2

.2 Wages and earnings

Including salaries, fees, gratuities, comprehensive works on wages and hours

For wage and salary administration, see 658 32, tipping customs, 395 2, hours and work periods, 331 81, wages of workers in critical age groups, 331 3, of employed women, 331 42

[.209] *Wages and earnings in specific countries*

Class in 331 29

21 Wage theories

Including fixing wage rates

For compensation plans, see 658 322

215 Adequacy of wages

Standard of living in relation to wages and earnings

.22 Wage scales

Including sliding wage scales, progressive wages

Class guaranteed-wage plans [*formerly* *331 22] in 331 23

331 23 Guaranteed wage plans [*formerly* *331 22]

[† 24] Profit sharing

Class in 658 324

25 Other forms of compensation

For aid to aged see 362 6

252 Industrial pension systems

For administration of retirement and disablement compensation see 658 325 insurance, 368

[† 253] Group insurance

Class in 368

[† 254] Life insurance

Class in 368 3

[† 254 4] Social insurance

Class in 368 4

255 Fringe benefits

[† 256] Institutions for aged

Class in 362 61

26 Wage laws and regulations

261 Wage laws and regulations by country

Divide like 940–999 e g Canadian wage laws 331 261 71

[†.27] Professional remuneration

Class in 331 281

.28 Wages in specific occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 331 281–331 289 8 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g wages for photographers 331 28 P5

281 In professions [*formerly* †331 27], service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 282–331 289 8

Divide like 000–999 e g wages for photographers 331 281 77

For salaries of librarians see 023 8 of teachers 371 16

282–289 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g wages for domestic workers [*formerly also* †647 6] 331 284 7

For wages in other industries see 331.281

331.29 Wages in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., wages in Mexico 331.297 2

For wage laws and regulations in specific countries, see 331.261

331.3–331.6 Special classes of workers

For discrimination in employment, see 331.113

.3 Labor by critical age groups

Including wages

.31 Child labor

.34 Youth labor

Including cooperative school and work programs

.38 Child and youth labor in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.381–331.389 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g. child labor in textile mills 331.38 T2

.381 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.382–331.389 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., child actors 331.381 792

.382–.389 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., child labor in textile mills 331.387 7

For child and youth labor in other industries, see 331.381

.39 Employed middle aged and aged

.4 Employed women

Including self-employed women; comprehensive works on working women and children

For child labor, see 331.31; *youth labor,* 331.34

.42 Wages

Including equal wage rates for men and women

.43 Employed married women

331 48 Women employed in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331 481–331 489 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g, women social workers 331 48 S6

.481 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 482–331 489 8

Divide like 000–999, e g, women social workers 331 481 361

482–489 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g, women in aircraft factories 331 482 913 3

For women employed in other industries, see 331 481

.5 **Compulsory labor**

Forst labor and its economic effects

51 Convict labor

Economic aspects of labor in prisons and reformatories [*formerly* †331 52]

Including regulation of competition between free and prison labor

For administration of prison labor, see 365 65

[† 52] Reformatories

Class in 331 51

54 Contract labor

[† 55] Apprentice labor

Class in 331 86

57 Drafted labor

Including emergency labor [*formerly* †331 64], compulsory labor in wartime

58 Slave labor

Including slave labor camps

For drafted labor, see 331 57

.59 **Work by physically handicapt**

.6 **Labor of minority and other special groups**

For work by physically handicapt see 331 59

[† 61] Work relief

Class in 331 137

331 62 Immigrant workers

Divide by place of origin like 930–999 e g Asian immigrant workers 331 625

63 American Negro workers [*formerly* †331 98]

[† 64] Emergency labor

Class in 331 57

66 Sharecroppers

For American Negro workers see 331 63

67 Casual migratory workers [*formerly* †331 796]

68 Jewish workers [*formerly* †331 98]

69 Indigenous groups

Native and half-caste workers under nonindigenous domination

Divide like 940–999 e g colored workers in Union of South Africa 331 696 8

7 Economic aspects of specific occupations and professions

Comprehensive works on employment hours wages and earnings economic advantages in specific professions and industries

For unemployment in specific occupations see 331 137 8 wages and earnings in specific occupations 331.28 hours in specific occupations 331 818

71 Professional workers

Comprehensive works

For workers in a specific profession see 331 761

76 Workers in specific occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 331 761–331 769 8 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g electrical engineers 331 76 E5

761 In professions service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 762–331 769 8

Divide like 000–999 e g photographers 331 761 77

762–769 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g electrical engineers 331 762 13

For workers in other industries see 331 761

331 79 Special occupational groups

Including unskilled workers

For sharecroppers see 331 66 casual migratory workers, 331 67, professional workers, 331 71

794 Craftsmen

Comprehensive works

For craftsmen in a specific occupation, see 331 761–331 769 8

795 Public employees

Comprehensive works

For public employees in a specific profession, service, or industry see 331 761–331 769 8

[† 796] Casual migratory workers

Class in 331 67

.8 Industrial sociology

For counseling services, see 658 382

81 Hours and work periods

Including length of working day and week, rest periods, shift systems night work overtime, leaves of absence

For work schedules, see 658 381

818 Hours and work periods by occupations

[illegible]

818 1 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331 818 2–331 818 98

Divide like 000–999 e g work hours in nursing 331 818 161 073

818 2–818 98 By major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g work hours in automobile manufacturing industry 331 818 292

For hours and work periods in other industries, see 331 818 1

819 Hours and work periods in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g hours and work periods in United States 331 819 73

331.82 Industrial hygiene [*formerly also* †613 61–†613 66, •614 85]

Including working conditions, plant conveniences, medical supervision, factory inspection

.822 Industrial diseases

Causes incidence, prevention

For treatment of a specific disease, see 616–617

823 Industrial accidents

Causes, incidence, safety measures [*formerly* †•614 85]

Including accidents and safety measures in specific industries

For mine accidents, see 622.8

.824 Industrial fatigue

For fatigue studies in relation to production, see 658 544

825 Employers' liability (Workmen's compensation)

For industrial accident and health insurance, see 368 41

827 Industrial sanitation

83 Health, welfare, recreation facilities

Employee facilities provided by employees, employers, unions

Including employees' welfare and recreational associations

For health and safety programs, see 658 382, *standard of living in relation to wages,* 331 215

[† 831] Cost of living

Class cost and standard of living in 339 42

[† 832] Consumer cooperatives

Class in 334 5

833 Housing

Comprehensive works

Including low cost housing

For housing and health, see 613 5, *planning residential areas,* 711 58, *slum clearance,* 711 59 *domestic architecture,* 728, *cooperative housing,* 334 1, *rent control,* 333 63

[† 834] Food

Class in 641

[†331 835] Restaurants and cafeterias

Class in 647 95

[† 836] Clothing

Class in 646

[† 84] Morals and amusements

Class morals in 174, amusements in 790 19

85 Workers' supplementary education

Educational programs provided by unions, employers' and employees organizations

Class social settlement work in 361 43, adult education in 374 [*both formerly* †331 85]

86 Training and apprenticeship

Including apprentice labor [*formerly also* †331 55], apprenticeship and journeymen programs of specific trades

For vocational education, see 371 426 *technical education,* 607, *training foremen,* 658 386, *education in a specific field, the subject, e g, electrical engineering* 621 307, *workers' supplementary education,* 331 85

868 Industrial rehabilitation [*formerly* *371 91]

For education of physically handicapt, see 371 91, *labor of physically handicapt,* 331 59

87 Division of labor

Specialization in work, interrelationship of specialized enterprises

88 Labor organizations (Labor unions)

For industrial relations see 331 1 *collective bargaining,* 331 116, *employees' welfare and recreational associations,* 331 83 *guild systems,* 338 64

880 49 Collections

Divide like form division 08 e g, collected writings of a single author on unions 331 880 491

880 8 Union racketeering and gangsterism

.880 9 History of labor movement

Divide like 940–999, e g, labor unions in England 331 880 942

880 91 International unions

331 881 Labor unions by occupations

.881 1 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industrial and craft unions not provided for in 331 881 2–331 881 98

Divide like 000–999, e g, teachers' unions 331 881 137

For a professional organization, see the specific subject, e g, American Medical Association 610 627 3

.881 2–881 98 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e g, garmentworkers' unions 331 881 87

For other industrial and craft unions, see 331 881 1

.883 Company unions

886 Subversive labor organizations

Including Industrial Workers of the World (IWW), communist infiltration in labor organizations

For communism, see 335 43, *syndicalism,* 335 82, *labor racketeering and gangsterism,* 331 880 8

.889 Union shops

Including open- versus closed-shop policies

.89 Labor disputes

Including retaliatory measures by employers and employees in attempting to settle labor-management differences

For collective bargaining, see 331 116, *labor-management conciliation practices,* 331 15, *labor disputes as factor in crime,* 364 26

[†*.891] Picketing and collective bargaining

Class picketing [*formerly* †331 891] in 331 892, collective bargaining [*formerly* *331 891] in 331 116

.892 Strikes

Including picketing [*formerly* †331 891], organized, sympathetic, outlaw strikes, strike benefits for strikers

For sit down strikes, see 331 893

331 892 8 Strikes by occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 331 892 81–331 892 898 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e g, strikes in mining industries 331 892 8 M6

892 81 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industrial strikes not provided for in 331 892 82–331 892 898

Divide like 000–999, e g, actors' strikes 331 892 817 92

892 82–892 898 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e g, strikes in mining industries 331 892 822

For strikes in other industries, see 331 892 81

892 9 Strikes in specific countries

Divide like *930–999*, e g, strikes in Canada *331 892 971*

893 Other retaliatory measures by employees

Including sabotage, boycotting, sit down strikes, injunctions, political action

For labor courts, see 331 16

894 Retaliatory measures by employers

Lockouts [*formerly* †331 895], strikebreaking [*formerly* †331 896], blacklisting whitelisting, injunctions political action

Including employers strike benefits [*formerly* †331 897]

[† 895–† 897] Lockouts, strikebreaking, benefits

Class in 331 894

898 Government intervention in strikes

[* 899] Mediation, arbitration, conciliation

Class conciliation in 331 15, mediation in 331 154, arbitration in 331 155

9 Other labor problems

Class right to work in 331 01 international regulations of labor in 331 026 1 [*both formerly* †331 9]

[† 98] Special types of workers

Class American Negro workers in 331 63 Jewish workers in 331 68

332 Financial economics

Comprehensive works

Including private finance

For public finance, see 336, insurance finance, 368 015, household finance, 647 1

SUMMARY

.1 Banks and banking

Class commercial credit [*formerly* *332 1] in *332 742*

For cooperative banking, see 334 2

.11 Central banks

Government and private central banks

Including Federal Reserve banks, banks of issue national banks *in countries other than the United States*

For federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States, see 332 12

.12 Commercial banks

Including federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States joint-stock banks, checking accounts

For savings banks see 332 2, commercial credit, 332 742

13 Private banks (Partnership banks)

14 Trust functions

Including settlement of estates, administration of trusts and guardianships, performance of personal and corporate agencies

Class investment banking [*formerly* †332 14] in 332 66

15 International banking

Including Bank for International Settlements, Export Import Bank of Washington International Bank for Reconstruction and Development

For International Monetary Fund, see 322 43

331 892 8 Strikes by occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 331 892 81–331 892 898 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g strikes in mining industries 331 892 8 M6

892 81 By professions service and minor industries

Including industrial strikes not provided for in 331 892 82–331 892 898

Divide like 000–999 e g, actors strikes 331 892 817 92

892 82–892 898 By major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g strikes in mining industri 331 892 822

For strikes in other industries see 331 892 81

892 9 Strikes in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g strikes in Canada 331.892 9

893 Other retaliatory measures by employees

Including sabotage boycotting sit down strikes injunctio political action

For labor courts see 331 16

894 Retaliatory measures by employers

Lockouts [*formerly* †331 895] strikebreaking [*formerly* †331 896] blacklisting whitelisting injunctions political action

Including employers strike benefits [*formerly* †331 897]

[† 895–† 897] Lockouts strikebreaking benefits

Class in 331 894

898 Government intervention in strikes

[* 899] Mediation arbitration conciliation

Class conciliation in 331 15 mediation in 331 154 arbitration in 331 155

9 Other labor problems

Class right to work in 331 01 international regulations of labor 331 026 1 [*both formerly* †331 9]

[† 98] Special types of workers

Class American Negro workers in 331 63 Jewish workers 331 68

332 Financial economics

Comprehensive works

Including private finance

For public finance, see 336, insurance finance, 368 015, household finance, 647 1

SUMMARY

.1 Banks and banking

Class commercial credit [*formerly* *332 1] in 332 742

For cooperative banking, see 334 2

.11 Central banks

Government and private central banks

Including Federal Reserve banks, banks of issue, national banks in countries other than the United States

For federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States, see 332 12

.12 Commercial banks

Including federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States, joint stock banks, checking accounts

For savings banks, see 332.2 commercial credit, 332 742

.13 Private banks (Partnership banks)

.14 Trust functions

Including settlement of estates administration of trusts and guardianships, performance of personal and corporate agencies

Class investment banking [*formerly* †332 14] in 332 66

.15 International banking

Including Bank for International Settlements, Export Import Bank of Washington, International Bank for Reconstruction and Development

For International Monetary Fund, see 322 43

332 16 Multiple banking

Including branch banking, banking syndicates, bank mergers

.17 Banking practices

Organization, administration, operation, functions

Including interbank lending [*formerly* *332 36], reserves

Class deposit insurance [*formerly* †332 17] in 368 85

For trust functions, see 332 14, *international banking,* 332 15, *savings departments of commercial banks,* 332 24, *safe deposit services,* 332 27, *loans,* 332 7, *dis counts,* 332 84

.2 Savings banks

Including mutual and stock savings banks

For deposit insurance, see 368 85 *savings and loan associations,* 332 32

21 Government savings banks

.22 Postal savings banks

23 School savings banks

24 Savings departments of commercial banks

Including special savings departments, e g, Christmas clubs

.27 Safe-deposit companies

Including bank safe-deposit services

.3 Credit and loan institutions

Including mortgage banks

Class cooperative credit institutions [*formerly* *332 3] in 334 2

For investment finance, see 332 6, *comprehensive works on credit and credit institutions,* 332 7, *credit bureaus,* 658 88

.31 Agricultural credit and loan institutions

Including land banks

Class agricultural credit [*formerly* *332 31] in 332 71

For agricultural cooperative banks, see 334 2, *mortgages,* 332 77

[† 313–† 316] Personal loan institutions

Class in 332 35

332.32 **Building and loan associations**

Including private and government sponsored savings and loan associations

Class real-estate credit [*formerly* *332.32] in 332.72

[†.33] **Government pawnshops**

Class in 332.34

.34 **Pawnshops**

Including government pawnshops [*formerly* †332.33]

.35 **Personal loan institutions** [*formerly* †332.313–†332.316]

Including sales finance companies, Morris Plan banks, personal finance companies

Class personal loans in 332.743, credit unions in 334.2 [*both formerly* *332.35]

For consumer credit, see 658.883

[*.36] **Interbank lending**

Class in 332.17

.4 **Money**

For counterfeiting, see 332.9

.401 **Monetary theories**

Including quantity theory, circulation and velocity theory, equation of exchange theory

[†*.409] **Monetary history**

Class in 332.49

.41 **Legal tender**

Including characteristics and properties of lawful exchange mediums

For a specific type of legal tender, see the subject, e.g., *paper money* 332.53

.413 **Value fluctuations**

Relationship of monetary values and prices

Including appreciation, depreciation of money values

For price determination, see 338.52

.414 **Volume fluctuations**

Including deflation, inflation

For financial depressions and booms, see 338.54

[†.418–†.419] **Coinage metals, specie**

Class in 332.46

332.42 Monetary standards

Comprehensive works

Including metallic standards

For nonmetallic standards, see 332.56, monetary system of a specific country, 332.49

.422 Monometallism (Single standard)

Including gold coin, bullion, exchange standards

.423 Bimetallism (Double standard)

Including symmetallic standard

.43 International agreements

Including international monetary congresses [*formerly* †332.44], international monetary standards, International Monetary Fund

For rates of exchange, see 332.45

[†.44] Monetary congresses

Class in 332.43

.45 Foreign exchange

Including rates of exchange, arbitrage, pegging, exchange control, exchange equalization accounts

For international banking, see 332.15, international securities operations, 332.65, international commerce, 382

.46 Mints and mint practices

Including coinage metals [*formerly* †332.418], specie [*formerly also* †332.419], commodity money

For design of coins, see 737.4

[†.47] Coinage laws

Class in 332.49

.49 Monetary history [*formerly* †*332.409]

Including coinage laws [*formerly* †332.47], policies, systems of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., monetary history of the United States 332.4973

.5 Nonmetallic money

Including representative money, credit (fiduciary) money

.52 Fiat money

Including occupation money, emergency money

For money substitutes, see 332.54

332 53 Paper money

Bank and government currency notes for general circulation as money

For other negotiable instruments see 332 77

54 Money substitutes

Including token money

55 Barter instruments

Commodities used as basis of exchange

56 Nonmetallic monetary standards

Including compensated monetary standards managed currency, social credit money index number standards

6 Investment finance

61 Securities exchanges

Organization and administration of stock exchanges commodity exchanges stock exchange clearing houses

For operation and regulation of exchanges see 332 64

62 Stockbrokers

For other kinds of brokers see the specific subject e g, real estate brokers 333 33

63 Securities

Including stock certificates bonds

For government securities see 336 31 securities as credit instruments 332 77

64 Procedures in exchange of securities

Including regulation

Class financial panics [*formerly* †332 64] in 338 54

For organization and administration of exchanges see 332 61

645 Speculation

65 International exchange operations

66 *Investment banking [formerly †332 14]*

Including public issue underwriting purchase and resale of new issues of transferable securities

67 Investment practices and techniques

Including manuals investment services forecasting formula plans

For securities see 332 63

332 68 Private lotteries

Including lottery tables, lists of drawings, lotteries as savings institutions

For government lotteries, see 336 1 lotteries as games of chance 795 ethics of gambling, 174 6

.7 Credit (Private credit)

Including theory and forms of credit, comprehensive works on credit and credit institutions

For credit institutions see 332 3, securities, 332 63, credit bureaus, 658 88 public credit and borrowing, 336 3

71 Agricultural credit [*formerly* *332 31]

Loans for promoting agricultural operations

For agricultural credit institutions, see 332 31, real estate credit, 332 72 mortgages as credit instruments, 332 77

72 Real-estate credit [*formerly* *332 32]

Including mortgage loans

For mortgages as credit instruments, see 332 77, building and loan associations, 332 32

74 Other types of credit

742 Commercial [*formerly* *332 1] and industrial credit

For investment banking see 332 66, mercantile credit, 658 882, commercial banks, 332 12

743 Personal loans [*formerly* *332 35]

Including chattel mortgages

For personal loan institutions, see 332 35 consumer credit, 658 883

75 Credit collapse and restrictions

Including bankruptcy

76 Deposit transfer instruments

Including checks, money orders [*both formerly* *332 77], postal money orders [*formerly* †383 3]

77 Other negotiable instruments (Credit instruments)

Including commercial paper, promissory notes drafts letters of credit, comprehensive works on negotiable instruments

Class checks money orders [*both formerly* *332 77] in 332 76

For mortgage loans, see 332 72

78 Clearing houses

For stock exchange clearing houses, see 332 61

332.8 **Interest and discount**

.82 Legal interest

Including interest rates Interest as income

For revenue from interest on public loans, see 336 1, *interest tables,* 511 808 3

.83 Usury

.84 Discount

Including rediscount

For discounts as amount deducted from a bill for prompt payment or quantity purchase, see the specific subject, e g , in retail credit and collections 658 88

.9 **Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration**

Including currency securities credit instrument forgeries

For criminal aspects of counterfeiting, see 364 133, *of forgery and alteration,* 364 163

333 Land economics

History, laws, policies, acquisition, disposal utilization of land and land resources

For economic geology, see 553, *agriculture,* 630

SUMMARY

333 1	Public land (Public domain)
2	Common land
3	Private land
4	Absentee ownership of land
5–6	Economic rent
7–.8	Economics of specific types of land
9	Economics of other natural resources

.1 **Public land (Public domain)**

Land over which government exercises sole right of control

For sale of public lands, see 336 12, *utilization policies of specific types of public lands,* 333 7, *government owned and controlled farms,* 338 12

.13 Expropriation [*formerly also* †336 18]

Including eminent domain

.14 Nationalization (Agrarian socialism)

333 16 Free disposal and land grants [*formerly* †336 13]

Including land grants for exploitation, homesteading

For land grants for a specific purpose, see the subject, e g, for education 379 12

.2 **Common land**

Land over which each member of an association exercises equal rights of control

For cooperative housing see 334 1, agrarian socialism, 333 14

.3 **Private land**

Land over which owner (individual or corporation) exercises right of control

For utilization policies of specific types of private lands, see 333 7

32 Types of private ownership (Land tenure)

For absentee ownership, see 333 4

322 Feudal tenure

323 Individual ownership (Alodium)

Including occupying ownership

.324 Corporation ownership

For cooperation, see 334

33 Real-estate business

Financial management of real property

For mortgage loans, see 332 72

332 Valuation of real estate

Including appraisal of land and buildings price determination

For assessment for tax purposes, see 336 222

333 Sale and transfer of real estate

Including repossession, commissions

For deeds and titles, see 333 34

334 Renting real estate (Rental properties)

Including leases

For economic rent, see 333 5

333.335–333.339 Types of real estate

Including appraisal, sale, transfer, rental

333.335 Agricultural real estate

Including farm lands

.336 Industrial real estate

.337 Urban real estate

For land subdivision and development, see 333.38

.339 Other types of real estate

Including undevelopt lands

.34 Deeds and titles

Including registration

.35 Inheritance of real estate

For inheritance tax, see 336.276, *inheritance laws,* 347.65

.38 Land subdivision and development

For urban real estate, see 333.337

.4 Absentee ownership of land

.5 Economic rent

Theoretic payment for use of land in terms of relative productivity of the land

Including Ricardian theory of rent

Class urban rent [*formerly* *333.5] in 333.6

For renting real estate as a function of real-estate business, see 333.334

.53 Tenancy

For relations between landlord and tenant, see 333.54

.54 Landlordism

Relations between landlord and tenant

.55 Agricultural rent

.6 Urban rent [*formerly* *333.5]

.62 Ground rent

Rent of land for building and industrial development

.63 Building rent

Rent of offices, dwellings

Including rent control

333.7 **Economics of specific types of land**

Ownership, rights, economic importance, policies of utilization, settlement, control

Including public and private lands, marginal and submarginal lands

72 Conservation of land resources

Conservation policies

Class conservation of national resources [*formerly* *333 72] in 339 49

For conservation policies about a specific type of land, see the subject e g mineral lands 333 8 conservation practices, the specific subject, e g, flood control engineering 627 4

73 Wasteland economics

Including arid and semiarid lands

.74 Pasture and grazing land economics

For common lands, see 333 2

[† 75] Forest economics

Class in 634 92

76 Agricultural land economics

For agriculture see 630 pasture lands 333 74, forest economics, 634 92

77 Urban land economics

For housing, see 331 833 city planning, 711 4

78 Recreational land economics

Including parks, playgrounds wildlife refuges

For game and fishing laws and regulations see 799 026, planning for preservation of public parks and natural monuments 719 32 of wildlife reserves, 719 36

8 Mineral land economics

Including conservation of specific mineral resources

For mining, see 622, mineral deposits, 553

333.9 **Economics of other natural resources**

Ownership, rights, economic importance, policies of utilization, conservation, control

.91 Water economics

For planning for preservation of water supply reserves, see 719 33

.912 Industrial and domestic water supply

Water for consumption

Including urban water supply, potable water

.913 Irrigation waters

.914 Water for power

.915 Navigable waters

.917 Shorelands

Including littoral rights, riparian rights

.918 Submerged lands

Including tidelands

.92 Air economics

334 Cooperation and cooperatives

Nonprofit business organizations jointly owned and operated by voluntary groups for their own benefit

.1 **Cooperative building associations**

Including cooperative housing

For building and loan associations, see 332 32, real estate business, 333 33

.2 **Cooperative banking**

Including cooperative credit institutions [*formerly* *332.3], credit unions [*formerly* *332 35]

[†.3] **Cooperative insurance**

Class in 368

[†.4] **Cooperative housekeeping**

Class in 647 9

.5 ***Consumers' cooperatives [formerly also †331.832]***

Distributive cooperation

Including Rochdale principles

334 6 **Producers' cooperatives**

Including marketing cooperatives [*formerly also* †380 125] cooperative factories cooperatives for securing supplies and machinery for production

68 Producers cooperatives in specific industries [*formerly* *338 1–*338 4]

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 334 681–334 689 8 arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation e g agricultural producers cooperatives 334 68 A4

681 In professions service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 334 682–334 689 8

Divide like 000–999 e g producers cooperatives for photographic equipment 334 681 771

682–689 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g agricultural producers cooperatives [*formerly* †630 62] 334 683

For producers cooperatives in other industries see 334 681 *government owned and controlled farms* 338 12

7 **Benefit societies**

Including friendly mutual aid benevolent provident organizations

For fraternal orders see 366 *fraternal insurance* 368 363

[† 8] **Burial societies**

Class in 368 362

335 Economic ideologies

Integrated assertions theories aims of socioeconomic reform movements

Including socialist and collectivist economic systems

For schools of capitalist theory see 330 15 *forms of capitalist economic organization* 338 6–338 8 *cooperation* 334 *totalitarian political systems* 321 64 *political parties* 329 *history of a specific socialist or communist country the country e g Union of Soviet Socialist Republics* 947

1 **Utopian and humanitarian socialism**

Voluntary associations for reformation and improvement of society

Including pre-Marxian socialism

For socialist communities see 335 9

12 English utopian socialism

Including Owenism

335 14 **Fabian socialism (Fabianism)**

Establishment of socialist state thru evolution without class struggle

Including Fabian Society

For state socialism and social democracy, see 335 5

.15 **Guild socialism**

State ownership of industries, and monopolistic control and management of each industry by a union or guild

For syndicalism, see 335 82

.2 **French utopian socialism**

Including Babouvism, Icarianism, Saint-Simonism

For Fourierism, see 335 3, *syndicalism,* 335 82

.3 **Fourierism and American utopianism**

Including Phalansterianism

.4 **Marxian socialism and communism**

Government or community ownership and control of all wealth

.41 **Basic concepts of Marxian socialism and communism**

For Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels, see 335 42, *of Third International,* 335 44

.411 **Philosophic foundations**

Including dialectical materialism, historical materialism, Marx's materialism and theory of knowledge, theory of class struggle, labor theory of value

For comprehensive works on dialectical materialism, see 146 3

.413 **Basic aims**

Including dictatorship of the proletariat, world revolution, internationalism, classless society

.42 **Marxian socialism (Scientific socialism)**

Including Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels, international workers' associations, e g , First International, Second International, Vienna International

For Communist manifesto of Third International, see 335 44

335 43 Communism (Revolutionary socialism)

Comprehensive works

Including Leninism Stalinism

For communist international associations see 335 44, *basic concepts* 335 41

432 Propagation methods

Including infiltration techniques

For communist infiltration in labor organizations see 331 886

437 Comparative studies

Comparison of communism with capitalism, cooperation other forms of socialism

438 Communism in relation to other subjects

Divide like 000–999 e g , communism and religion 335 438 2

44 Communist international organizations

Including Communist manifesto of Third International Comintern Cominform

For Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels see 335 42

5 State socialism [*formerly* †335 63, *335 6] and social democracy

Moderate degree of socialism thru nationalization of key industries or government regulation of industry to curb monopolies

Including socialism of the chair [*formerly* †335 62 *335 6] gradualism revisionism evolutionary socialism

For Fabian socialism see 335 14 *agrarian socialism* 333 14

6 Nationalist socialism

Government control of labor and production but retention of private property

Including fascism Nazism Falangism

Class state socialism socialism of the chair [*both formerly* *335 6] in 335 5

[† 62–† 63] State socialism socialism of the chair

Class in 335 5

7 Christian socialism

Cooperative welfare movement based on religious convictions

Including Catholic socialism

For Christian church and the economic order see 261 85

335 8 Other economic movements

82 Syndicalism

Ownership and control of production by organizations of workers

For guild socialism, see 335 15

83 Anarchism

Collective ownership by cooperating groups

Including abolition of coercive government and private property nihilism

For anarchism as political system see 321 9

.9 Socialist communities

Divide like 930–999 e g Brook Farm community 335 974 46

For common land, see 333 2 Owenism 335 12 Fourierism, 335 3

336 Public finance

Comprehensive works on financial transactions of national and state governments and government units

Class local government finance in 352 1 financial activities of governments in 351 71 [*both formerly* *336]

[illegible]

SUMMARY

336 09	History of public finance
1	Nontax revenues (Commercial and voluntary revenues)
2	Taxation (Compulsory revenues)
3	Public credit and borrowing
39	Public expenditure
4–.9	Public finance of specific countries

09 History of public finance

Class public finance of international organizations [*formerly* *336 09] in 341 11

For history of public finance in a specific modern country, see 336 4–336 9

093 Public finance of ancient countries

Divide like 930, e g public finance of ancient Rome 336 093 7

336 1–336 294 Public revenues

336 1 **Nontax revenues (Commercial and voluntary revenues)**

Including income from state domain and properties gifts fines lotteries investments disposal of surpluses

For fees see 336 273 *licenses* 336 274

11 Income from rents and franchises

12 Sale of government property

Including sale of land buildings equipment supplies surplus and enemy property for revenue purposes

For public land policies see 333 1

[† 13] Land grants

Class in 333 16

[† 14] Grants for specific purposes

Class with the subject e g land grants for railroads 385 133

18 Inter and intragovernmental revenues

Class expropriation of land [*formerly* †336 18] in 333 13

182 Revenue from reparations

Including interest on war loans

For reparations for a specific war see the war e g World War I 940 314 22

185 Grants received from other government units

Including moneys received from higher units e g money received by a state from the federal government technical assistance funds

For grants in aid as public expenditures see 336 39

188 International grants

For international economic planning see 338 91

19 Revenue from government services industries monopolies

For revenue stamps see 336 272 *fees* 336 273 *licenses* 336 274 *organization of government corporations* 338 74 *monopolies in economic organization* 338 82

336.2 Taxation (Compulsory revenues)

For taxation as a business expense, see 658.171, exemption from taxation, the specific subject, e.g., as aid to public education 379.12

.21 Direct taxes

Comprehensive works

For a specific direct tax, see the tax, e.g., inheritance tax 336.276

.22 Real property tax

Taxes on real estate, land, buildings, fixt improvements

Including urban, suburban, rural real property

.222 Administration

Including surveys, assessments, valuation

For valuation for price determination, see 333.332

.226 *Single tax*

Including unearned increment tax

.23 Personal property tax

.24 Income tax ✓

Comprehensive works on taxes on income from wages, salaries, rents domestic and foreign investments, inheritance, estate, gifts

Including collection methods, income tax of residents and nonresidents

For inheritance, estate, gift taxes, see 336.276

.242 Personal income tax

.243 Corporation taxes [*formerly also* •336.274]

Including income tax, surplus and excess profits taxes

.249 Income tax evasion

For criminal aspects of income tax evasion, see 364.133

.25 Other direct taxes

Including poll tax, capital levy

For poll tax as qualification for voting, see 324.1

336.26 Customs duties

Including export, import, transit taxes

For tariff policy see 337, international trade, 382

.262 Administration

Including regulations, collection

265 Schedules

266 Duties on specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e g , duties on paintings 336 266 75

268 Smuggling, fraud, evasion

For criminal aspects, see 364 133

27 Other taxes

For local taxes, see 352 13

271 Indirect taxes

Including evasion by fraud, bootlegging

For customs duties, see 336 26, *criminal aspects of evasion,* 364 133

271 1 Excise taxes

Including sumptuary taxes, luxury taxes [*both formerly* †336 271 3]

.271 3 General sales taxes

Including use taxes, turnover and transaction taxes

Class sumptuary taxes, luxury taxes [*both formerly* †336 271 3] in 336 271 1

For taxes on specific commodities and services, see 336 278

.272 Stamp taxes

Including revenue stamps

For taxes on specific commodities, see 336 278

273 Revenue from fees

Class licenses [*formerly* *336 273] in 336 274

For performance of a specific service for which fees are collected, see the subject, e g notaries 347 96

.274 Revenue from licenses [*formerly* *336 273]

Class comprehensive works on corporation taxes [*formerly* *336.274] in 336.243

336.276 Estate, inheritance, and gift taxes

For taxation of income from inheritance and gifts see 336.24

.278 Taxes on specific commodities and services

Divide like 000–999, e g, taxes on theater tickets 336 278 792

For customs duties on specific commodities, see 336.266, revenue from fees for services, 336 273

[†.279] Taxes for specific purposes

Class with the purpose, e g, for libraries 021 9

[†*.28] Local taxes

Class in 352 13

29 Tax theory and principles

Including comprehensive works on rates, effects on the economy

For a specific tax rate, see the tax, e g, real property tax 336 22, a specific effect, the subject, e g, redistribution of personal income 339 41

292 Tax administration

Including surveys, assessments valuation, collection

For administration of a specific tax, see the tax, e g, income tax 336 24

.294 Incidence of taxation

Including distribution of taxes, double taxation, exemptions, evasions, intergovernmental problems

For incidence of a specific tax, see the tax, e g, income tax 336 24

.3 Public credit and borrowing

For private credit, see 332 7

31 Funded debts

Interest-bearing long term government securities and bonds

Including credit bonds

For flotation of loans see 336 344, public issue as investments, 332 66

32 Unfunded debts (Floating debts)

Short-term securities usually held in treasury bills

For fiat money, see 332 52

[† 33] Sinking fund, amortization

Class in 336 363

336 34 **Public debt**

Theory, character, bases, burden and economic effect of public borrowing

.343 Public debt by sources and borrowing units

.343 2 State debt

For local debts, see 352 14

.343 3 National debt

343 5 International debt

Comprehensive works

Including indemnities, financial assistance, government loans floated in a foreign market

For interest on reparations, see 336 182, foreign loans as investments, 332 66, reparations for a specific war the war, e g, World War I 940 314 22, international financial assistance for a specific purpose, the subject, e g, for public health 614

344 Flotation of loans

Including compulsory and voluntary loans, subscriptions, allotments, marketability

.346 Control and limitation of public indebtedness

36 Liquidation of public debts

363 Repayment and redemption

Including sinking funds, amortization [*both formerly* †336 33]

368 Repudiation and abrogation

Including public insolvency

.39 **Public expenditure**

Including character, principles, classification, justification, economic aspects, grants in-aid

Class government accounting [*formerly* *336 39] in 351 72

For administrative aspects, see 351 71

[*.395] **Budget and appropriations**

Class in 351 72, in a specific country in 336 4–336 9, works on appropriations where financial interest is secondary, with the subject, e g appropriations hearings for United States Department of the Interior 353 3

336.4–.9 Public finance of specific countries

Comprehensive works

Including budget, appropriations [*both formerly* *336 395]

Divide like 940–999, e g , public finance of Portugal 336 469

For public finance of ancient countries, see 336 093, a specific aspect of public finance, the subject, e g , public securities 336 31

337 Tariff policy

Governmental control of international trade for economic, political, strategic, social welfare purposes

For customs administration and schedules, see 336 26, conduct of international trade, 382, economic policy, 338 9

.1 Free trade (No tariff)

For tariff exemptions, see 337 8

.2 Tariff for revenue (Fiscal tariff)

.3 Protective and prohibitive tariff

Control of foreign trade thru export and import duties, licenses, restrictions, embargoes

Including tariff systems, customs reprisals

For protection of specific commodities, see 337 5 of raw materials, 337 6, of literary and art works, 337 7

.4 Subsidies and drawbacks

Including export bounties, import rebates

.5 Protection of specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e g , protection of agricultural products 337 563

For protection of raw materials, see 337 6, of literary and art works, 337 7, customs duties on specific commodities, 336 266

.6 Protection of raw materials

Comprehensive works

For protection of specific commodities, see 337 5

.7 Protection of literary and art works

For copyright, see 655 6

337.8 Tariff exemptions of dutiable commodities

For free trade, see 337 1

82 Personal and institutional exemptions

Duty exemptions on goods imported for educational purposes, customs privileges for foreign service personnel and tourists

[† 87] Free ports and zones

Class in *387 13*

88 Exemptions on relief supplies

.9 Other aspects of tariff policy

Including reciprocal trade agreements, most-favored-nation clause, customs unions, multination agreements, preferential tariff, open-door policy

91 Trade agreements by specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g, trade treaties of United States *337 917 3*

For trade treaties between two countries, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, e g, trade treaties between England and France 337.914 204 4

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries, give priority to the local country, e g, treaties between United States and Great Britain 337 917 304 2 in a United States library, 337 914 207 3 in a British library, for treaties between two foreign countries, follow the numerical sequence of 930–999, e g, trade treaties between France and England 337 914 204 4, between Japan and France 337 914 405 2

.92 Colonial trade policies

Divide like 930–999, e g, British colonial trade policies *337 924 2*

For trade policies between a mother country and one of its colonies, protectorates, or trusts, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, giving priority in notation to the mother country, e g, trade agreements between England and Kenya *337 924 206 762*

338 Industrial economics and production economics

Utilization of land labor capital and management to create goods and services

For labor economics see 331 land economics 333 income and wealth 339 management 658 engineering and manufacturing processes 620–698

SUMMARY

01 Theories of production economics

016 Laws of production economics

Including laws of diminishing returns marginal utility comparative advantage

018 Methodology in production economics

018 2 Diversification versus specialization

For division of labor see 331 87

018 3 Economics of change

Conversion of agricultural to industrial economy of production of one commodity or group of commodities to another

018 5 Cooperation versus competition

For producers cooperatives see 334 6

018 6 Control of production

Including control by government by laws of supply and demand

For comprehensive works on supply and demand see 380 11 control of consumption 339 47, government control of specific industries 338 1–338 4 of prices 338 526

019 History of production theory

Divide like 940–999 e g German theories of production 338 019 43

338 1–338 4 Industrial economics

Production valuation [formerly also †338 527] marketing of goods and services

Including production statistics government control of production comprehensive reports of and about specific firms and enterprises

Class producers cooperatives in specific industries [formerly *338 1–*338 4] in 334 68

For comprehensive works on prices see 338 5 on marketing 658 8 on statistics 310 on government control 338 9 producers cooperatives 334 6 credit 332 7 organization of specific industries 338 76 technical and process reports of a specific firm or enterprise the subject e g of a firm manufacturing cameras 681 130 65 public utilities and services 380

338 1 Agricultural industries

For farm management see 631 economics of process food industry 338 476 64 economics of machinery in agricultural industries 338 456 3

12 Government owned and controlled farms

Including collectivist socialist state farms

Divide like 940–999 e g Soviet farms 338 124 7

For agricultural producers cooperatives see 334 683

13 Agricultural prices

Comprehensive works

Including government price supports and subsidies

For prices of a specific agricultural product see 338 17

14 Agricultural markets and marketing programs

Comprehensive works

For marketing a specific agricultural product see 338 17 local marketing of farm products 631 18

15 Maladjustments in agricultural production

Including surpluses and shortages of agricultural products

For food supply in a specific country see 338 194–338 199 9 business cycles 338 54

338 17 Specific agricultural products

Including production, prices, marketing

Divide like 633–638, e g , economics of rice production 338 173 18

For food supply in a specific country, see 338 194–338 199 9, economics of fishing and hunting industries, 338 3

.19 Food supply

For economics of a specific agricultural product, see 338 17

194–199 9 Food supply in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g , food supply in India 338 195 4

.2 Mineral industries

For economics of machinery in mineral industries see 338 456

27 Specific mineral products

Divide like 553, e g , economics of petroleum extraction *338 272 82*

Class economics of glass manufacture [*formerly* *338 27] in 338 476 661

.3 Other primary industries

Including hunting, fishing industries

For economics of machinery in these industries, see 338 456

.37 Other specific primary products

372 Hunting and fishing products

Divide like 593–599, e g , economics of whaling industry 338 372 95

[† 377] Water power

Class in 338 476 212

[* 39] Engineering industries

Class engineering industries in 338 4, public utilities in 380

.4 Secondary industries

Industries which obtain their raw materials from primary industries or other secondary industries

Including engineering [*formerly* *338 39], manufacturing professional and service industries

For maladjustments in secondary industries, see 338 542

338 45 Machinery in industry

Machines and automation in relation to production, prices, marketing

Including machinery in primary industries

For socioeconomic effects of automation, see 301 243, *automation as a production method,* 658 561, *use of machinery in engineering and manufacturing,* 620–698

456 Machinery in specific industries

[illegible]

mining 338 45 M4

456 1 Machinery in professions service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338 456 2–338 456 98

Divide like 000–999 e g machinery in translation services 338 456 141

456 2–456 98 Machinery in major industries

Divide like 620–698 e g , machinery in mining 338 456 22

For machinery in other industries see 338 456 1

47 Specific secondary products

Divide like 000–999 e g economics of liquor industry [*formerly* †178 4] 338 476 63 of glass manufacture [*formerly* *338 27] 338 476 661 of water power [*formerly* †338 377] 338 476 212, of motor vehicles [*formerly* †629 213 8] 338 476 292

If preferred arrange specific secondary products alphabetically by product e g economics of motor vehicle industry 338 47 M7

.5 Prices and production

Including price trends history of prices

For prices of specific goods and services, see 338 1–338 4

52 Price determination

Price theories and systems

Including price spread and stabilization, interrelationship of prices

522 In competitive free markets

Prices based on cost of production supply and demand, and overhead costs

338 523 In monopolistic markets

Prices based on intraindustry agreements

Including price leadership

526 By governmental control

Including price control legislation

For rationing see 339 47, rent control 333 63

[†.527] Prices of specific goods and services

Class in 338 1–338 4

.528 Price levels

Including price statistics, index numbers, Fisher's ideal index, price movements

[†.53] Business cycles

Class in 338 54

.54 Business cycles [*formerly also* †338 53, †380 124]

Irregular alternations of business activity from prosperity to depression

Including business crises [*formerly* †338 55], panics [*formerly* †338 56] financial panics [*formerly* †332 64], depressions, recessions [*both formerly* †338 57], booms [*formerly* †338 58], periods of prosperity

.542 Causes of business cycles

Including economic maladjustments in production in secondary industries

For maladjustments in agricultural production, see 338 15

544 Business forecasting [*formerly* †380 123]

For theories of production, see 338 01

[† 55–† 58] Crises, panics, depressions, recessions, booms

Class in 338 54

338 6–338 8 Production economics

For theories of production, see 338 01, producers cooperatives, 334 6, collectivism, 335 production management, 658 5, engineering and manufacturing processes 620–698

.6 Systems of production

For production methods, see 658 561 organization of production, 338 7

338.63 Cottage industries

Detailing major steps of manufacture for performance at home by family unit on piecework basis

Including specific cottage industries

.64 Small industries

Comprehensive works

Including handicraft industries trades modern guilds

For production economics of a specific industry see 338.76 of cottage industries 338.63

[†.646.2–†.646.99] Specific small industries

Class in 338.76

.65 Large industries (Factory systems)

Comprehensive works

Including house systems sweatshop systems

For organization and structure of large scale production see 338.8 production economics of a specific industry 338.76

.7 Organization of production

Structure of industrial organizations

For production management see 658.5 forms of ownership 658.114

.72 Entrepreneurships

Comprehensive works

For entrepreneurship in a specific industry see 338.76

.73 Unincorporated companies and partnerships

Comprehensive works

For companies and partnerships in a specific industry see 338.76

.74 Corporations

Comprehensive works

Including government corporations [*formerly* †380.16]

For city as a corporation see 352.003 corporations in a specific industry 338.76 structure of large scale production 338.8

338.76 Organization of specific industries

Including small industries [*formerly* †338.646 4–†338.646 99], entrepreneurships, partnerships, companies, corporations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 338.761–338.769 8 arrange organization of specific industries alphabetically by industry, e.g., organization of rubber manufacturing corporations 338.76 R8

For monopolies in specific industries, see 338.826

.761 Of professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338.762–338.769 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., organization of law corporations 338.761 34

.762–.769 8 Of major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., organization of rubber manufacturing corporations 338.767 8

For organization of other specific industries, see 338.761

.8 Large-scale production and combination

Structure of organization for large-scale production and methods of combining individual organizations for effective production

Including advantages, disadvantages, government regulation

For forms of ownership, see 658.114; intercorporate relationships to control management, 658.16

.82 Monopolies

For price determination in monopolistic markets, see 338.523

.826 Monopolies in specific industries

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 338.826 1–338.826 98 arrange monopolies in specific industries alphabetically by industry, e.g., monopolies in telephone communication service 338.826 T2

.826 1 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338.826 2–338.826 98

Divide like 000–999, e.g., monopolies in telephone communication service 338.826 138 46

.826 2–.826 98 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., monopolies in diamond mining 338.826 223 82

For monopolies in other specific industries, see 338.826 1

338 83 Mergers

Class cartels [*formerly* †338 83] in 338 88

.85 Trusts

86 Holding companies

.88 International combinations

Including cartels [*formerly* †338 83]

.9 Economic planning

Efforts to direct economic improvement thru coordinated programs of control

Including control and regulation of industry by government [*formerly* †380 16], subsidies, grants

For social planning, see 309 2, *relations of state to individuals or groups,* 323, *government control of production of specific commodities,* 338 1–338 4, *of monopolies,* 338 82, *public utilities,* 380 16, *planning of physical facilities,* 711

91 International economic planning

Including economic assistance, foreign aid

Divide like 940–999, e g , foreign aid policies of United States 338 917 3

For economic assistance of one country to another, add 0 and divide further like 940–999, giving priority in notation to the donor country, e g , American economic assistance to Japan 338 917 305 2

For international technical assistance, see 309 22

93–.99 Local economic planning

Divide like 930–999, e g , nationalization of British industries 338 942

339 Income and wealth

Distribution and consumption of capital goods and consumer goods

Including comprehensive works on national resources

For land resources, see 333, a specific resource, the subject, e g, petroleum 553 282, production and distribution of goods and services, 338

[†*.1] Underconsumption

Class in 339 46

.2 Distribution and accounting of wealth *[formerly *339.3]*

Including social accounting, national accounting, economic budget

Class distribution of personal income *[formerly* †339.2] in 339 41

For wages and salaries, see 331 2, economic rent, 333 5, interest, 332 8

.23 Input-output accounts (Interindustry accounts)

Accounts and analysis of goods and services provided by each industry for all other industries and consuming units

.26 Flow-of funds accounting

.3 National income accounting

Including gross national product or expenditure accounting, income and capital valuation, statistics of national wealth

Divide like 930–999, e g, national wealth of Peru 339 385

Class distribution of national income and wealth *[formerly* *339 3] in 339 2

For consumption, see 339 4, public finance, 336

339.4 **Consumption and conservation of wealth**

Comprehensive works on use of national resources

For industrial uses of goods and services see 338.1–338.4 *marketing* 658.8

.41 Personal income

Including principles of measurement and distribution [*formerly* †339.2] of income by occupation, age, amount

.42 Cost of living [*formerly also* †331.831]

Expenditures at various income levels

Including budget studies by income level, occupation, degree of urbanization

For standards of living in relation to wages see 331.215 *household accounts* 647.1

.420 7 Consumer education

For consumer education in a specific field see the subject, e.g. buying for the home 647.1

.43 Deferred consumption (Savings)

Including principles of measurement and estimates of savings for various income levels

For saving and investment see 332.67

.46 Underconsumption [*formerly also* †*339.1]

Economic aspects of poverty, hoarding

For deferred consumption see 339.43 *welfare work with the poor* 362.5 *social security* 368.4 *poverty as factor in crime* 364.26

.47 Control of consumption

Personal, social, government restrictions

Including rationing

For food and drug control see 614.3

.48 Consumption of specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e.g. agricultural consumption 339.486 3

.49 Conservation of national resources [*formerly* *333.72]

Divide like 930–999, e.g. conservation of American national resources 339.497 3

For conservation of land resources see 333.72 *planned economy* 338.91

340 Law

Use 340 03–340 06 for form divisions

For law of a specific subject not provided for in 340–349, see the subject e g marriage law 301 420 26

09 History [*formerly* •340 9] and local treatment

.1 Philosophy and theory

Including law of nature (natural law)

.3 Legal antiquities

Including torture trial by ordeal trial by duel, benefit of clergy

.4 Trial by jury

.5 Comparative legislation

6 Medical jurisprudence (Forensic medicine)

Including expert medical testimony [formerly †614 23] forensic psychiatry coroner s inquest

Class medical privilege [*formerly* •340 6] in 614 2

For state control of medicine, see 614 2, criminal investigation 364 12 *autopsies* 616 075 9

.9 Legal anecdotes

Class history [*formerly* •340 9] in 340 09

341 International law (Law of nations)

Comprehensive works on international laws which govern public relations between independent states private relations between their citizens in peace and war

Including jurisdiction on land sea and air international cooperation of states

For international law relating to a specific subject see the subject e g sovereignty of nations 320 157 *ethics of international relations* 172 4 *foreign relations* 327

.1 Peace plans and movements

Comprehensive works on world peace

For pacific settlement of disputes see 341 6 *foreign policy of specific countries* 327 3–327 9 *ethics of peace* 172 4

341.11 International associations of sovereign states

Organizations general in character or dedicated to establishment and maintenance of peace

Including public financing of international organizations [*formerly* *336.09], comprehensive works on organization and administration of public and private international associations, conferences, congresses, conventions

For international organizations devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., International Bank for Reconstruction and Development 332.15

.12 League of Nations

Divide like 341.13, e.g., League of Nations charter 341.122

.13 United Nations

Including comprehensive works on United Nations agencies

For an agency devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., International Civil Aviation Organization 387.706 11, UNESCO 060

.132 Charter

.133 General Assembly

Including general committees

.135 Security Council and its committees

.137 Secretariat

Including executive office, departments, personnel

.139 Relationships of governments and regions to United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Canada and the United Nations 341.139 71

.18 Regional international organizations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Organization of American States 341.187

For Pan Americanism, see 327.7

341.2 **Treaties**

Including treaty making texts of treaties

Divide like 930–999, e g, treaties of Great Britain 341 242

For treaties between two countries add 0 and divide further like 930–999 e g treaties between Great Britain and Portugal 341 242 046 9

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries, give priority to the local country e g treaties between United States and Great Britain 341.273 042 in a United States library, 341 242 073 in a British library for treaties between two foreign countries follow the numerical sequence of 930–999 e g, treaties between France and Great Britain 341 242 044, between Japan and France 341 244 052

For treaties relating to a specific subject see the subject, e g, postal convention 383 4 treaties signed at termination of a war, history of the war e g Treaty of Ghent 973 521 diplomacy and diplomatic service 341 7, international relations 327

.3 **Law of war**

For war crimes see 341 4 martial law, 344 military science, 355

31 Belligerency and belligerents

Including commencement conduct termination of war reprisals spies atrocities amnesty blockade invasion right of asylum for belligerents rights of civilians noncombatants sick and wounded combatants

For pacific blockade, see 341 65 naval blockade tactics, 359 4 protection of civilians, 355 232 2

32 Belligerent occupation

Including administration of occupied territories military government military trials by occupying forces exploitation of enemy resources and property booty

For disposal of enemy property see 336 12

33 Prisoners of war

Including repatriation and exchange of prisoners internment of belligerents by neutral nations

For work of Red Cross with prisoners see 361 53, political prisoners 365 4, military prisoners 355 12

35 Neutrality and neutrals

Including commerce of neutral nations contraband of war right of visit and search armed neutrality, nonintervention

341 36 Law of maritime warfare

Including privateering prizes of war prize courts submarine warfare letters of marque

For rights of search see 341 35 science of naval warfare 359 privateering in United States Revolution 973 35

37 Law of air warfare

Including aerial attack on cultural objects open cities

For science of air warfare see 358 4

39 Civil war and international law

Relation of other nations to nation undergoing civil war

4 Crimes against law of nations

Including genocide extraterritorial crime punishment of criminals war crimes

For piracy see 364 13

41 Trials of war criminals

Including Nuremberg trials

For military trials by occupying forces see 341 32

49 International criminal law

Including jurisdiction procedure extradition immunity

For criminal trials see 343 1 exterritoriality 341 7

5 Special topics of international law

For a specific subject of international law not provided for here see the subject e g genocide 341 4

[* 51] Nationality and citizenship

Class in 323 61

57 International commercial and maritime law

Including freedom of the seas open seas collisions at sea shipwreck

For commercial and maritime law of a specific subject see the subject e g international air rights 387 7 commerce of neutral nations 341 35 domestic commercial and maritime law 347 7 law of maritime warfare 341 36

59 Private international law

Comprehensive works on conflicts of laws of different countries affecting private interests applicable to persons

Including regulation of jurisdictions

For a specific subject of private international law see the subject e g bankruptcy 332 75

341.6 **Pacific settlement of disputes**

Including negotiation, good offices, conciliation and commissions of inquiry, outlawry of war

For world peace, see 341 1, settlement of a specific dispute, the subject, e.g., of Oregon boundary dispute 973 61

.63 International arbitration and mediation

Including judicial settlement, courts of international arbitration, e g, Hague Permanent Court of Arbitration

For prize courts, see 341 36

.65 Compulsive measures short of war

Including sanctions, pacific blockade, embargo, economic boycott, intervention, international police

For embargo in international trade, see 337 3

.67 Reduction and limitation of armaments

Including disarmament, demilitarization

For demobilization, see 355 2

672 International control of nuclear weapons

.674 Limitation of chemical warfare weapons

675 Limitation of biological warfare weapons

.7 *Diplomacy and diplomatic service*

Conduct of official relations between governments as controlled by international law and custom

Including capitulations, exterritoriality, diplomatic privileges and immunities, foreign service protocol

For world politics, see 909, accounts of international relations of a particular country, 327 3–327 9, diplomatic history of a specific war or other event, the war or event, e g, United States diplomatic relations in Civil War 973 72, treaties, 341 2

.8 Consular service [*formerly also* †382.2]

342 Constitutional law and history

Comprehensive works on fundamental law of states

Including civics, comparative government [*both formerly* *320 9]

Divide like 930–999, e g , Constitution of France 342 44

Divide further by 01 texts, 02 constitutional conventions, 03 systems and commentaries, 04 essays and lectures, 08 collections, 09 history (for United States omit 0), e g , history of British Constitution 342 420 9, United States Constitutional Convention 342 732

For theory of form of state, see 321, organization and management of executive branch, 350, of legislative branch, 328, of judicial branch, 347 9, a specific subject in constitutional law, the subject, e g , electoral systems 324 21

343 Criminal law

For comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law, see 364, penology, 365, martial law, 344 international criminal law, 341 49

.09 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e g , criminal law of Great Britain 343 094 2

Divide further by 01 penal codes, 02 reports, 03 criminal procedure, trials, evidence, 04 handbooks and outlines (for United States omit 0), e g , criminal procedure in Great Britain 342 094 203, criminal code in United States 343 097 31

.1 Criminal procedure, trials, evidence

Comprehensive works

Including cross examination, trial practice, instructions to juries, bail

For trials of a specific kind of crime, see the kind, e g , of murder 343 52, expert medical testimony, 340 6, criminal investigation, 364 12, trial by jury, 340 4, criminal courts, 347 9, correctional courts, 364 5

.2 Punishments

Comprehensive works

For military discipline, see 355 133 imprisonment, 365, school discipline, 371 54 punishment of a specific crime, the crime, e g , of arson 343 6

23 Capital punishment

.25 Corporal punishment

343.3–.7 **Law of specific crimes and offenses**

Including procedure, trials, evidence, punishments

Divide like 364 13–364 17, e g, laws on homicide 343 52

For comprehensive works on crimes and offenses, see 364 1

344 Martial law [*formerly* *355.9]

Military authority to carry on government functions in times of war or emergency

Including military courts

Class administrative law [*formerly* *344] in 350

For military discipline and law, see 355 133

[*.1–*.2] **Administrative tribunals and procedure**

Class in 351 95

345–346 United States and British statutes and cases

If preferred, class United States and British statutes and cases with those of other countries in 349, e g, United States Code 349 730 2, revised statutes of Canada 349 710 2, British reports 349 420 4

345 United States statutes and cases

For treatises on a specific subject, see the subject, e g, law of contract 347 4, school law 379 14

.1 Session laws and statutes at large

.11 Statutes of United States federal government

.12 Statutes of states

Arrange alphabetically by state, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, statutes of Kansas 345 12 K1

.2 Codes and revised statutes

Divide like 345 1

.3 Law digests

Divide like 345 1

345.4 Reports

Including Supreme Court reports, Attorney General's opinions

.41 Circuit and district court reports

415 Reporter services for regions and groups of states

42 Reports of states

Arrange alphabetically by state, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , reports of California 345 42 C1

.5 Digests of cases

Divide like 345 1

346 British statutes and cases

Including United Kingdom all parts of Commonwealth of Nations

Divide like 345, e g , revised statutes of Canada 346 2

For treatises on a specific subject, see the subject, e g , law of contract 347 4, school law 379 14

347 Law treatises

Treatises on law of United States Commonwealth of Nations, other countries [*formerly* subdivision †07 under †349 41–†349.99], Roman law [*formerly* †349 377]

Including comprehensive works on common law

For statutes and cases of United States, see 345, of Commonwealth of Nations, 346, of other countries, 349, a specific kind of common law, the subject, e g , criminal law 343

347.1–347.8 Law treatises by topic

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by topic

For law of a specific subject not provided for here, see the subject, e g , wage laws 331.26

.1 Law of persons

Including natural and artificial persons, e g , corporations as juristic person, minors, legal capacity

For law of organization of business corporations, see 658 1, individual rights and protection, 323 4

347.2 Law of real property

Land and what is erected or growing upon or affixt to it

Including comprehensive works on law of real and personal property

For inheritance and succession, see 347 65, mortgages, 332 72, real-estate business, 333 33, law of personal property, 347 3

.3 Law of personal property

Including personal and real chattels movables

For chattel mortgages, see 332 743

.4 Law of contract and quasi contract

.42 Law of sale

Including comprehensive works on sales contracts, e g, cash sales sales on approval

For a specific kind of sale, see the subject, e g, bankruptcy sale 332 75

.5 Law of tort, negligence, damage

Comprehensive works on private or civil wrong or injury independent of a contract

For a specific action in tort, see the subject, e g, libel and slander 070 13, criminal law, 343

.6 Domestic relations law

Including family law, community property, illegitimacy

For marriage and divorce law, see 301 420 26 adoption law, 362 73 family ethics, 173

65 Probate law and practice

Including inheritance and succession, wills and testaments, estate planning guardianship, orphans' courts

For trust functions of banks, see 332 14

.7 Commercial (Business) law

Comprehensive works

Including agency law

For commercial law of a specific subject, see the subject, e g, law of organization of corporations 658 1

75 Maritime law

Comprehensive works

For maritime law of a specific subject, see the subject, e g, maritime transport laws 387 51, international law of the sea, 341 57

347.8 **Equity (Chancery)**

Including courts of equity and chancery

.9 **Judicial system**

Organization and management

Including legal advertising, procedure, trials, court rules, compre hensive works on civil, criminal, and administrative courts, pro cedure, trials

For criminal procedure and trials, see 343 1, correctional court 364 5, administrative courts, tribunals, procedure, 351 95, or ganization and administrative management of United State Department of Justice, 353 5, of departments of justice of state of United States 353 9, of departments of justice of othe countries, 354, trial by jury, 340 4, individual rights and pro tection, 323 4

.91 Civil trials

Including cross-examination, trial practice, instructions to juries bail

92 Pleading

Including briefs, arguments, declarations

93 Legal forms

For legal advertising, see 347 9

94 Evidence (Proof)

Including testimony [*formerly also* †519 3] circumstantial evidence, affidavits, depositions, documentary evidence

For criminal evidence, see 343 1, expert medical testimony 340 6

.95 Legal remedies

Including civil and judicial remedies, appellate procedure

96 Local and auxiliary legal officers

Including justices of the peace, sheriffs, notaries public

For administration of local police departments, see 352

97 Organization of courts

Comprehensive works

Class jurisdiction of central government courts in 347 98, his tory of central government courts in 347 99 [*both formerl* *347 97]

For courts of international arbitration, see 341 63, organiza tion of a specific kind of court, the court, e g, juvenile cou 364 52, court systems of specific countries, 347 993–347 9

347.972 Organization of court systems of central governments

Including supreme courts

.973 Organization of state and provincial court systems [*formerly* *347 98]

.974 Organization of local court systems [*formerly* *347.99]

.98 Jurisdiction of courts

Comprehensive works

Including jurisdiction of central government courts [*formerly* *347 97], of local courts [*formerly* *347 99], of state courts

Class organization of state and provincial courts in 347 973, history of state and provincial courts in 347 99 [*both formerly* *347 98]

For jurisdiction of a specific kind of court, see the court, e g, juvenile court jurisdiction 364 52, *court systems of specific countries,* 347 993–347 999

.99 History of courts

Comprehensive works

Including history of central government courts [*formerly* *947 97], of state and provincial courts [*formerly* *947 98], of local courts

Class organization of local courts in 347 974 jurisdiction of local courts in 347 98 [*both formerly* *347 99]

For history of a specific kind of court, see the court, e g, of administrative courts 351 95

.993–.999 History of courts and court systems in specific countries

Including organization and jurisdiction, specific courts

Divide like 930–999, e g, courts of France 347 994 4, Supreme Court of United States 347 997 3

348 Canon law (Ecclesiastical law) [*formerly* *262.9]

For church government and organization, see 262, *church discipline,* 262 9

348.1–348.2 Roman Catholic canon law

.1 Sources of canon law

Including all acts of councils, synods, popes

.12 Acts of the Holy See

Including pontifical decrees, apostolic letters, briefs and bulls, encyclicals

348 15 Miscellaneous collections of canons and decretals

Including Corpus juris canonici

19 Other sources

.2 Codex juris canonici (1917)

.8 Canon law of other Christian churches

Divide like 280, e g, Anglican ecclesiastical law 348 83

.9 Canon law of other religions

Divide like 290, e g, Jewish law [*formerly* *296 38] 348 96

349 Foreign law

.3 Ancient law

Divide like 930, e g, law of ancient Egypt 349 32

37 Ancient Roman law

371 Pre-Justinian law

Including the Twelve Tables

372 Justinian Code (Corpus juris civilis)

For Institutes and Code, see 349 374, *Digest,* 349 375, *Novels,* 349 376

374 Institutes and Code

374 2 Code (Codex)

374 4 Institutes (Institutiones)

375 Digest (Digesta, Pandectae)

376 Novels (Novellae constitutiones)

[† 377] Special topics

Class in 347

.4–.99 Statutes and cases of countries other than United States and Commonwealth of Nations

Including if preferred, statutes and cases of United States and Commonwealth of Nations

Divide like 940–999, e g, French statutes and cases 349 44

Add 0 and divide each country further like 345, e g, French code 349 440 2

Class treatises on law of these countries [*formerly* subdivision †07 under †347 41–†347 99] in 347

350 Public administration

Organization and administrative management of executive branch of governments

Including relationship among executive, legislative, judicial branches [*formerly* *321 01] administrative law [*formerly* *344]

For legislative branch, see 328, judicial branch 347 9, political science, 320 constitutional law, 342, business administration, 658, ethics of public officials 172.2, a specific subject of public administrative action, the subject, e g, foreign relations 327

351 Administration of central governments

Comprehensive works

Including administration of governments of commonwealths under federal state

For administration of United States federal government, see 353, of United States state governments, 353 9, of foreign central governments 354, of local governments, 352, military science, 355–359

SUMMARY

351 1	Public service organization
.2	Lists of officials and employees
3	Civil service examinations
4	Tenure of office
5	Government pensions
6	Civil service reform
7–8	Organization of specific administrative activities of governments
9	Control over public administration

.1 Public service organization

Including civil service employees bureaucracy

12 Job classification [*formerly* *351 2]

Including job analysis [*formerly* *351 2], salaries [*formerly* *351 5], classified pay plans wage incentives deductions

13 Selection of personnel [*formerly* *351 3]

Including requirements and qualifications, recruitment, veterans' preference

For civil service examinations, see 351 3

14 Placement of personnel [*formerly* *351 3]

Including promotion and transfer [*both formerly* *351 5], service standards and evaluation performance rating

.15 Training of personnel [*formerly* *351 3]

Including in service training internship, apprenticeship

351 16 Conditions of employment [*formerly* *351 5]

Including days and hours of work holidays vacations leav of absence sick leave employee rights duties restrictio political activities

17 Employee relations

Including employee representation suggestion systems e ployee organizations employee morale right of appeal hearin

18 Separation from public service [*formerly* *351 5]

Including layoff abolition of position resignation reinstatement discharge

For pensions see 351 5 *tenure of office* 351 4

2 Lists of officials and employees

Including registers

Class job analysis and classification for public service [*forme* *351 2] in 351 12

3 Civil service examinations

Including examinations for national federal state local servic on all subjects

Divide like 000–999 e g examinations for accountants 351 36

Class selection placement training of personnel for public serv [*all formerly* *351 3] in 351 13–351 15

4 Tenure of office

Including discipline loyalty investigations of employees

For separation from public service see 351 18 *impeachment public officials* 351 99

5 Government pensions

Class promotion transfer in 351 14 salaries in 351 12 conditio of employment in 351 16 separation in 351 18 [*all formerly* *351

52 Civil service pensions

Including national federal state local employees pensions

54 Military pensions

Including veterans pensions soldiers bonuses

For war risk life insurance see 368 364 *other veterans benefits* 355 115

351.6 Civil service reform

Including spoils system, patronage

.7 Organization of specific administrative activities of governments

For a specific subject of administrative activity see the subject, e g, education 370

.71 Financial activities of governments [*formerly* •336]

For public finance see 336

711 Government contracts

Including letting and renegotiation of contracts war contracts

For industrial mobilization, see 355 24

712 Government purchasing

For eminent domain see 333 13 military purchasing, 355 8

713 Government property

Including management of public buildings

For income from state domain and properties see 336 1

72 Government budgeting [*formerly* •336 395] and accounting [*formerly* •336 39]

For budgets and appropriations of a specific department, bureau or office, see the subject, e g, United States Department of the Interior budget 353 3, public accounting, 657 6

74 Organization and administrative management of police services [*formerly* •364]

Including comprehensive works on national, state, local private police services

Class criminal investigation [*formerly* †351 74] in 364 12

.742 National police

Including secret service

743 State police

Including state highway patrols

351 744 Private police

Including private detectives industrial police

75 Public order and security

Including comprehensive works on maintenance of and infringements upon public order and security

For a specific infringement see the subject e g subversive activities 364 13

751 Press [*formerly* *070 13]

Legal control of the press enforcement of censorship of press

For freedom of the press see 323 445

753 Weapons

Including regulations regarding possession and use of firearms

76 Vice control

Including comprehensive works on regulation of liquor traffic drug traffic games of chance betting prostitution immoral practices vagrancy begging

For regulation of a specific vice see the subject e g administration of drug control 614 35

77 Sanitary control

Including comprehensive works on regulation of public health and sanitation

For local public health boards see 352 4 *public health* 614 *sanitary engineering* 628 *a specific field of sanitation the subject e.g, sanitation of school buildings* 371 626

78 Accidents

Including comprehensive works on building regulations and inspection protection from fire and other accidents

For regulation of a specific subject see the subject e g fire regulations 614 84

79 Organization and administrative management of other police services

791 Policing waterways

Including port river police

351.792 United States Coast Guard

Comprehensive works

Including Coast Guard in time of peace [*formerly* *359 97]

For Coast Guard in time of war see 359 97

8 Organization and administrative management of public welfare activities

Including comprehensive works on government administration and regulation of public works means of communication trade and industry labor charity education worship

For local public works see 352 5 management of public buildings 351 713 promotion of a special kind of welfare, the subject e g disaster relief 361 5

9 Control over public administration

Including administrative supervision and disciplinary power

94 Judicial control

95 Administrative tribunals [*formerly* *344 1] and courts

Comprehensive works

Including administrative procedure [*formerly* *344 2]

For administrative tribunals having jurisdiction over a specific subject see the subject e g public transportation commissions 385

96 Legislative control

98 Investigations

Comprehensive works on investigations of public officials

For a specific investigation see the subject e g loyalty of government employees 351 4

99 Impeachments

Comprehensive works on impeachment of public officials

For impeachment of legislators see 328 36 of United States president 353 03

352 Administration of local governments

Including counties cities boroughs villages metropolitan areas

Use 352 000 1–352 000 8 for form divisions

352 001–352 008 General questions of local administration

For government of a specific local jurisdiction or of local jurisdictions in a specific area see 352 03–352 09

352 001 Growth and importance of cities

002 Local governments and state control

003 City as juristic person as corporation

For law of corporations see 347 1

004 Local elections

005 Local civil service

For civil service examinations see 351 3

008 Forms of administration

Including commission manager council manager systems

03–09 General administration of local governments by place

Including specific governments

Divide like 930–999 e g municipal government in United States 352 073 government of Boston 352 074 46

If preferred, arrange cities alphabetically under countries or states using A1 for comprehensive works e g government of Boston 352 074 4 B7

1 Local government finance [*formerly* *336]

Including financial administration finance department

For public ownership of land see 333 1 government ownership of public utilities 380 166 2

12 Budgets

13 Revenue and taxation [*formerly* †*336 28]

For a specific tax see the tax e g poll tax 336.25

132 Revenues from other sources

Including service charges fees fines gifts

14 Borrowing and debts

Including bonds short term borrowing debt limitation sinking funds default war loans

15 Expenditures

Including cost of government subsidies bounties

352 16 Purchasing

Including centralized purchasing

.17 Accounting and auditing

---

352 2–352 9 Departments of local government

Organization and administrative management

For a specific substantive function of a local government department, see the subject, e g crime investigation 364 12, finance department 352 1

.2 **Local police department**

23 Police officers

Including policemen, policewomen, sheriffs, constables

.3 **Local fire department**

.4 **Local public health department**

Including boards of health sanitary commissions

.5 **Local public works**

Including government ownership of public works and buildings

6 Water and sewage works

Including water districts

7 Streets, highways, bridges, parks

Including park districts, community centers

.8 **Local license bureaus**

Including licensing practices franchises

For licensing of a specific item see the subject, e g , automobile licenses 629 213 4

.9 **Other departments**

Including coroners

353 United States federal government

Organization and administrative management of executive branch

Including comprehensive works on federal and state governments

Use 353 001–353 009 for form divisions

For state governments, see 353 9, legislative branch 328 73, judicial branch, 347 9, constitutional law and history 342 73, governments of other countries 354, a specific substantive function of the federal government, the subject e g , postal service 383 497 3

01 Administrative centralization

02 Separation of powers [*formerly* *321 01]

353 03 Presidency

Including vice-presidency

032 Powers and duties

Including legislative, treaty making military supervisory, veto power

034 Term of office

Including third term

035 Presidential messages

Including collected writings of presidents relating to official duties

Class collections of unofficial writings of official and un official writings of a president in the narrowest number which will include their whole scope, e g papers covering the social sciences 308 1

For official or unofficial writings on a specific subject see the subject e g United States educational system 370 973

04 Departments

Comprehensive works

For specific departments see 353 1–353 8

05 Cabinet

09 Independent agencies

Comprehensive works on agencies responsible directly to the President rather than to a cabinet member

For a specific agency see the subject e.g Civil Service Commission 351 106 173

---

353 1–353 8 Executive departments

For a specific bureau or office see the subject of its functional activities e g Children's Bureau 362 706 173

1 Department of State

2 Department of the Treasury

3 Department of the Interior

4 Post Office Department

5 Department of Justice

For courts see 347 9

353.6 **Department of Defense**

Including Department of the Army, comprehensive works on Departments of the Army, Navy, and Air Force

Class Department of the Navy in 353.7, Department of the Air Force in 358.4 [*both formerly* *353.6]

.7 Department of the Navy [*formerly* *353.6]

.8 **Other departments**

.81 Department of Agriculture

.82 Department of Commerce

.83 Department of Labor

.84 Department of Health, Education and Welfare

.9 United States state governments

Organization and administrative management of executive branches

Divide 353.974–353.979 like 974–979, e.g., government of New York State 353.974.7, further subdivide for each state like 353.01–353.8, e.g., Judiciary Department of New York State 353.974.75

For regimental histories, see 355–359

.92 **Interstate relations**

Including interstate agreements, cooperation, disputes

For interstate relations on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., parole 364.62

354 Central governments in countries other than United States

Organization and administrative management of executive branches

Including commonwealth governments under federal states, e.g., government of state of South Australia

Divide like 930–999, e.g., executive branch of government of France 354.44

Under each country, divide further like 353.01–353.09, e.g., president of France 354.440.3. Under each country divide 06 like 353.1–353.8, e.g., Ministère des Finances of France 354.440.62. Exceptions for England and Germany are given below

.42 Central government of United Kingdom

.420.4 Privy Council

354 43 Central government of Germany

[†.430 32] Bundesrat

Class in 328 43

[† 430 34] Ministry

Class in 354 430 5

430 5 Ministry [*formerly* †354 430 34]

355–359 Military science

Including histories of military units covering more than one war

For history of units limited to a specific war, see the war, e g, regimental histories of the United States in World War I 940 412 73 history of a specific war, campaign, or battle, the subject e g, campaigns of World War I 940 42–940 43

355 Elements of warfare

Including military organization and administration, military policy, services which supply and maintain combat units, mutual defense assistance, comprehensive works on land forces, on land, sea, and air forces

For a specific branch of the armed forces, see the branch e g, infantry 356 naval forces 359, organization and administrative management of United States Department of Defense, 353 6, of Department of the Navy 353 7 of ministries or departments of war, defense, navy of other countries, 354, of air force ministries or departments of United States and other countries, 358 4 law of war 341 3 martial law 344 war customs, 399, ethics of war and peace, 172 4, military engineering, 623

SUMMARY

355.1 Military life

Class enlisted personnel in 355 338, officers in 355 33 [*both formerly* *355 1]

.11 Service periods and their termination

Including length of service

.112 Promotion

For military rewards, see 355 134

.113 Inactive periods

Including leaves furloughs, reserve status, sick leaves, status during captivity or internment

.114 Termination of military service

Including retirement, resignation, discharge, reinstatement, desertion

.115 Veterans

Including rights and benefits of veterans and their dependents, opportunities and special provisions for military personnel returning to civilian life

For military pensions, see 351 54, *old soldiers' and sailors' homes,* 362 61

.115 2 Veterans' education and training benefits

.115 4 Veterans' employment

Including rehiring, re-employment

For veterans' preference in civil service, see 351 13

.115 6 Disabled veterans

Including rehabilitation for civilian life

For veterans' hospitals, see 362.11

.12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war

Including prisoners of war

.123 Servicemen's morale

.125 Servicemen's recreation

Including entertainment

For organization and administration of recreational services, see 355 346

355.13 Military discipline, honor, remuneration

Including military ethics, etiquette, duels

For etiquette of uniforms, see 355.14

.133 Military discipline and law [*formerly* *355.9]

Including military authority and obedience, military police, enforcement of military law, justice, punishments

For martial law and military courts, see 344, judge advocate general's department, 355.6

.133 2 Courts martial and courts of inquiry

Including general, special, summary courts-martial, military tribunals, trials for military offenses

.133 4 Military offenses

Including insubordination, pillage, mutiny

For desertion, see 355.114

.134 Military rewards and privileges

Including salutes, honorary insignia, decorations, medals, badges, orders, gifts, special privileges, special bonuses

For promotions, see 355.112, etiquette of uniforms, 355.14

.135 Remuneration

Including allowances

For military pensions, see 351.54, methods and records of pay, 355.64

.14 Uniforms

Comprehensive works on military uniforms

Including etiquette of uniforms, regulations, uniforms as costumes

For procurement, issue, use of uniforms, see 355.81, administration of clothing department, 355.66, honorary insignia, 355.134

.15 Colors and standards

Including flags, color guards in military use

For flags in heraldry, see 929.9

.16 Military celebrations

Including commemorations, anniversaries, jubilees

For celebrations relating to a specific war, see the war, e.g., celebrations of American Revolution 973.36

.17 Military ceremonials

Including funerals

355.2 **Military resources, recruitment, mobilization**

Value, availability, mobilization of peacetime resources for use in war or national defense

Including demobilization

For administration after being taken over by military authorities, see 355 6

.21 *Economic preparedness*

Readiness of resources for mobilization

Including sabotage of military resources

Class conscription of wealth and property, military tax [*both formerly* 1355 21] in 355.26

.22 Military manpower

.223 Recruitment and enlistment

Including conscription, drafting commissioning, examinations for acceptance, foreign enlistments

.224 Conscientious objectors

.225 Compulsory military service

Including universal military training and service

.23 *Mobilization of civilian manpower*

Including allocation of workers to essential industry, civilian morale, duties of civilians, internment of civilians and enemy aliens

For military prisons, see 355 71

232 Civil defense

Protection of civilian life and property from enemy attack

Including organization, administration of civil defense agencies, civil defense volunteers and employees

For engineering aspects, see 623 3, *national defense by military,* 355 45, *disaster preparedness and relief,* 361 5

.232 1 Civil defense training

Including programs and courses in civil defense operations

For maneuvers involving civilian population, see 355 58

355 232 2 Protection of civilian population

Including protection from air raids, bombing, fire, from atomic, biological, chemical warfare, from subversive activities, blackouts, evacuation

For survival instructions, see 613 69, preventive measures against radioactive fallout, 614 715, detection of aircraft, 355 232 6

.232 3 Protection of property

Including compensation for damages

For war risk insurance, see 368 14

.232 6 Detection of aircraft

Including warning systems, volunteer organizations, e g, United States Ground Observer Corps

For protection of civilian population from air raids, see 355 232 2, description and identification of military aircraft, 623 74, of civil aircraft, 629 133 34

.24 Mobilization of raw materials

.26 Mobilization of industrial resources

Including conscription of wealth and property, military tax [*both formerly* †355 21], defense industries, priorities, allocation of materials, commercial mobilization

27 Mobilization of transportation and communication facilities

For military transportation engineering, see 623 6 military communication engineering, 623 73

.28 Military requisitions

Including application of emergency powers, calls to arms, commandeering of property, establishment of military zones

For requisition of a specific resource, see the subject, e g, raw materials 355 24

.3 Organization of military forces

Including personnel

For central military administration and maintenance, see 355 6

355 31 **Military units and organization**

Organization for administrative purposes

Including armies corps, divisions, regiments, smaller units, special units and formations, e g, foreign legion, parade and inspection units

For grouping of units according to field of service, see 355 35 a specific branch of the armed forces, the branch, e g, infantry 356

33 **Military hierarchy**

Including officers [formerly *355 1], *line and staff functions,* comprehensive works on classification and rank or grade of personnel

For personnel performing a specific function, see the function, e g, personnel in special services 355 34

.331 **General command**

Comprehensive works on command of large or small units

Including leadership and command of troops

For psychology of leadership see 301 155

.338 **Enlisted personnel** [*formerly* *355 1]

.34 **Special services**

Work in the armed forces not strictly military

Including administrative services, supply services [*both formerly* *355 36], public information services [*formerly* *355 9]

Class signal and communications services [*formerly* †355 34] in 358 24

.343 **Intelligence services**

Including psychological warfare services [*formerly* *355 42], counterintelligence, military mapping and cryptanalysis functions, espionage, counterespionage

For comprehensive works on cryptanalysis, see 652 8, military cryptography, 358 24, diplomatic espionage, 327 1

.345 **Medical services** [*formerly* *356 92]

Including dental, veterinary nursing services

For military hygiene, see 613 67 military hospitals, 355 72, military medicine 616 980 23

.346 **Recreational services**

Including bands libraries

For recreational life of servicemen, see 355 125, military post and warship libraries, 027 65

355 347 Religious services

Including chaplains

348 Women's services

35 Major combat units

Armies groupt according to field of service

Including home guards frontier troops colonial armies expeditionary forces

Class reserves [*formerly* †355 351] in 355 37

356 Allied forces

United forces of coalitions or alliances

357 International forces

Troops from several countries under unified command acting by supernational authorization

[* 36] Service elements

Class administrative supply troops in 355 34 technical troops in 358 3

37 Reserves [*formerly* †355 351]

4 **Tactics and strategy**

Plans for attack and defense plans of battle

For practice maneuvers see 355 5

41 Logistics and field service

Movement and supply of troops

411 March tactics

Tactics of troops on the move

Including night marches forst marches mechanized movement

412 Encampment tactics

Including making and moving of camp guard duty outposts

413 Military reconnaissance

Including scouting patrols

For aerial reconnaissance see 358 45

415 General tactical services

Other tactics in support of battle tactics

Including establishment and maintenance of lines of communication maintenance of supply service

For military engineering aspects see 623 6–623 7

355.42 Tactics

Offensive and defensive tactics in battle

Including tactical deception and camouflage

Class psychological warfare in 355 343, strategic deception and *camouflage in 355 43 [all formerly *355 42]*

.422 Battle tactics

Including debarkation and landing maneuvers, skirmishing, *counterattacks, retreats*

For training maneuvers, see 355 5

.423 Influence of terrain on operations

Including tactics in forests, mountains, jungles, deserts, along rivers

.424 Use of various auxiliary means

Including military use of dogs, pigeons, balloons in communication

For barrage balloons, see 623 744

.425 Guerrilla warfare

Including Indian fighting

For guerrillas, see 356 15

.426 Street fighting

Including riot duty, house-to-house fighting

.43 Strategy

General plan of war or campaign, deployment of forces

Including strategic deception and camouflage [*both formerly* *355 42], strategic intelligence, combined strategy of offensive and defensive operations evaluation of forces and influence of morale

For tactical deception and camouflage, see 355 42

44 Siege warfare

.45 National defense

Including fortified defensive positions and zones, defense of industrial areas, frontiers, coasts military occupation by troops

For military engineering aspects, see 623 1–623 3, *civil defense,* 355 232, *military government,* 341 32, *coast defense by navy,* 359 4

355 47 Military geography

Geographic works written from military point of view, works on strategic conditions in particular theaters of operation

Divide like 930–999, e g, military geography of United States 355 477 3

For military topography see 623 71

.48 Technical analyses of military events

Including analyses of specific wars, campaigns, battles, imaginary wars and battles

For history of a specific war, campaign, or battle, see the subject, e g, campaigns of World War I 940 42–940 43

.5 Training maneuvers and exercises

Including drills, military practice and games

For training maneuvers and exercises of a specific branch of the service, see the branch, e g, infantry maneuvers 356 18

52 Grand maneuvers

Including war games with two armies

54 Basic training of units

Including tactical exercises for recruits bayonet practice, target practice, self-defense for military purposes, maneuvers not limited to any one branch of the service

For combat sports, see 796 8

[† 541] Foot maneuvers

Class in 356 18

[† 542] Mounted and motorized maneuvers

Class mounted and motorized infantry maneuvers in 356 18, cavalry maneuvers in 357 18

[† 543] Artillery maneuvers

Class in 358 1

544 Camp and fortification operations

Including camp making temporary fortifications, batteries, obstacles, demolition and repair field kitchens

For military engineers, see 358.2, special technical services, 358 3

.55 Officers' maneuvers and exercises

Including theoretical problems map and chart maneuvers

355 58 Maneuvers involving civil population

Including warning and intelligence service rescue maneuvers

For civil defense training, see 355 232 1, combat sports, 796 8 United States Ground Observer Corps 355.232 6

.6 **Central military administration and maintenance**

Including caring for animals, judge advocate general s department

For organization of forces, see 355 3, military procurement, 355 8, military law, 355 133

61 General administration

Including adjutant's department, civilian employees, record keeping filing systems, general correspondence, issuance of orders

.62 Execution of administrative measures

Including execution of contracts, accounting finance

63 Control and supervision

Including inspection service

.64 Paymaster's department

Including administration of pay, allowances, pensions

For government administration of military pensions, see 351 54, military pay systems 355 135

.65 Subsistence department

Including administration of food supply service

For food supplies see 355 81

66 Clothing and equipment department

For description of clothing, see 355 81, comprehensive works on uniforms 355 14

67 Lodging administration

Including provision and maintenance of quarters

For quarters for personnel, see 355 71

69 Other administrative services

Including graves registration service

355.7 Military installations

Organization and administration of permanent and quasi-permanent establishments

For military construction services, see 358 3, *military transportation engineering,* 623 6, *architecture of military buildings,* 725 18

.71 Quarters for personnel

Including barracks, camps, post exchanges, canteens, military prisons

For living conditions, see 355 12, *prisons and camps for prisoners of war,* 365 45

.72 Medical installations

Including hospitals, sanitariums

For veterans' hospitals, see 362 11, *medical services,* 355 345

.73 Artillery installations

Including arsenals [*formerly* †623 47], ordnance factories and depots, target ranges, artillery schools

For engineering aspects of ordnance, see 623 4, *artillery units,* 358 1

.74 Engineering installations

Including depots and testing grounds for engineering materials

For army engineers, see 358 2, *military engineering,* 623

.75 Supply depots and installations

Including provisions, forage, clothing, equipment

.8 Military equipment, supplies, matériel

Including military stores, procurement, issue, maintenance, quartermaster corps

For logistics, see 355 41, *central military administration and maintenance,* 355 6

.81 Clothing and camp equipment

Including food [*formerly* *355 88], cooking utensils

Class side arms [*formerly* *355 81] in 355 82

.82 Ordnance

Including ammunition [*formerly* *355 88], side arms [*formerly* *355 81]

Class trucks [*formerly* *355 82] in 355 83

For design, construction, repair of ordnance, see 623 4, *arsenals,* 355 73

355.83 Transportation equipment

Including trucks [*formerly* *355 82], gasoline [*formerly* *355 88], troop trains, wagon trains, sled and pack trains, troop ships, transport planes, military vehicles, packing and shipment of goods

For military transportation engineering, see 623 6

[*.88] Supplies

Class food in 355 81, ammunition in 355 82, gasoline in 355 83

.9 Other elements and services

Class military law in 355 133, martial law in 344, public relations in 355 34 [*all formerly* *355 9]

For international law of war, see 341 3, *military prisons,* 355 71, *military government of colonies,* 325 31

356 Infantry

Including personnel

For marine corps, see 359 96

.1 Infantry units

.11 Motorized and mounted infantry

Including motorcycle, mechanized infantry

For mechanized cavalry, see 357 5

.15 Irregular troops

Including self-organized infantry, guerrillas, brigand troops

For guerrilla warfare, see 355 425

.16 Special formations of infantry units

Including light infantry, sharpshooters, machine gunners, grenadiers

.164 Ski troops

Including mountain troops

.166 Airborne infantry [*formerly* *356 6]

Including paratroops

.18 *Infantry maneuvers [formerly also* †355.541–†355.542], tactics, equipment

182 Drill regulations and guides

Including infantry manual of arms, marching guides

356 184 Small arms practice

Including firing musketry

For ordnance see 623 4 gunnery 623 5 gunsmithing 683 4

186 Infantry equipment

Including clothing arms

2 Infantry staff officers and specialized personnel

For special technical services see 358 3

3 Administrative staff and auxiliary services

[*.4] Artillery

Class in 358 1

[*.5] Armored force

Class in 358 18

[*.6] Airborne force

Class in 356 166

[*.7] Communications

Class in 358 24

[*.92] Medical services

Class medical services in 355 345 military hygiene in 613 67 military medicine in 616 980 23

[*.93] Chemical warfare

Class chemical warfare services in 358 34 biological warfare services in 358 38

[* 94] Engineers

Class in 358 2

[*.95] Transportation

Class in 358.25

357 Cavalry and mounted services

Including personnel

For mounted infantry see 356 11

357.1 **Cavalry units**

Including heavy, reserve, light cavalry, colonial, volunteer, irregular cavalry

For mechanized cavalry see 357.5; *remount and training services* 357.2

.18 **Maneuvers [*formerly also* †355.542], tactics, equipment**

Including cavalry manual of arms

.2 **Remount and training services**

Including remount manual, training cavalry mounts, remount depots, breeding and care of cavalry mounts, horsemanship

For horsemanship as a sport see 798.2

.5 **Mechanized cavalry**

Including bicycle, motorcycle, automobile cavalry

For motorized infantry see 356.11; *tanks, armored cars* 358.18

358 Other arms and services

Including personnel, organization, equipment, tactics

[*.01–*.09] **Air force functions and organization**

Class in 358.41

.1 **Artillery [*formerly* *356.4]**

Comprehensive works on all types of artillery units

Including maneuvers [*formerly also* †355.543]

For antitank artillery see 358.18

.12 **Field artillery**

.13 **Antiaircraft artillery**

.14 **Motorized artillery**

.16 **Coast artillery**

.18 **Armored force [*formerly* *356.5]**

Including tanks, antitank artillery

For mechanized cavalry see 357.5

358 2 **Military engineers** [*formerly* *356 94]

Including sappers pioneers bridge railroad mining torpedo troops

For depots and testing grounds see 355 74 *military engineering* 623 *naval engineers* 359 982

24 **Communications services** [*formerly also* †355 34, *formerly* *356 7]

Including military telegraph codes military cryptography, signals and signaling

For military communication engineering see 623 73 *military cryptanalysis* 355 343

25 **Transportation services** [*formerly* *356 95]

For air transportation services see 358 44

3 **Special technical services**

Services connected with construction of military buildings manufacture of war matériel munitions powder with camouflage

Including technical troops [*formerly* *355 36]

For military engineering see 623 *military installations* 355 7 *tactical camouflage* 355 42 *strategic camouflage* 355 43

34 **Chemical warfare services** [*formerly* *356 93]

Including flame throwing

Class biological warfare services [*formerly* †358 345] in 358 38

38 **Biological warfare services** [*formerly* †358 345, *356 93]

39 **Nuclear warfare services**

Including use of atomic weapons other than explosives

For atomic bombing see 358 42 *artillery* 358 1

4 **Air forces and services**

Including organization and administrative management of air force ministries or departments of United States [*formerly* *353 6] and other countries air staffs and major commands air combat and service forces air warfare by army navy [*formerly* *359 93] or air forces air bases

For air navigation see 629 132 51 *piloting of airplanes* 629 132 52 *design and construction of aircraft* 629 133

358 41 **Air force functions and organization** [*formerly* •358 01–•358 09]

Divide like 355 where applicable

For functions and organization of a specific command see the command e g, strategy of bomber command 358 42

418 **Air force equipment, supplies, matériel**

Including matériel commands air service commands [*both formerly* •358 9]

42 **Air force bombing**

Including functions of bombers e g, attack bomber dive bomber, method of bombing e g, mass bombing precision bombing kind of bombing e g incendiary bombing atomic bombing bomber commands

For ordnance see 623 4

43 **Air force fighting**

Aerial battles between or among opposing aircraft

Including pursuit aviation fighter commands

44 **Air force transportation**

Air transportation for all military agencies and services

45 **Aerial reconnaissance**

Including air weather commands [*formerly* •358 9] strategic and tactical reconnaissance weather reconnaissance

46 **Communications services**

Including communication commands [*formerly* •358 9]

[•9] **Technical air services**

Class weather commands in 358 45 air service commands matériel commands in 358 418 communication commands in 358 46

359 **Naval forces**

Including naval science

Divide like 355 where applicable Representative subdivisions are given below

For organization and administrative management of United States Department of the Navy see 353 7 of navy ministries or departments of other countries 354 naval engineering 623 8 naval history of a specific war campaign or battle the subject e g, naval history of World War I 940 45

.1 Naval life

133 Naval law [*formerly* *359 6]

For naval judge advocate general see 359 6

2 Recruitment and requisition for naval forces

3 Organization of naval forces

31 Naval units

Including fleets squadrons flotillas crews divisions gun crews

32 Special types of ships

Including submarines destroyers warships aircraft carriers

For building of military ships see 623 825

34 Special services

Including medical dental and nursing services [*all formerly* *359 98] administrative and supply services [*both formerly* *359 36]

35 Navies

[* 36] Service elements

Class administrative supply units in 359 34 technical units in 359 98

4 Naval tactics and strategy

Including naval warfare fleet action submarine warfare mine warfare raiding and blockading coast defense [*all formerly* *359 9] landing operations

For naval air warfare see 358 4 seamanship 623 88

5 Training maneuvers and exercises

Including naval target practice [*formerly* †623 554]

359.6 Naval administration

Class naval law [*formerly* *359 6] in 359 133

.7 *Naval installations*

.8 **Naval equipment, supplies, matériel**

.9 **Other services**

Class naval warfare [*formerly* *359 9] in 359 4

[*.93] Naval air warfare

Class in 358 4

.96 Marine corps

Including amphibious warfare

.97 Coast guards

Class United States Coast Guard in peacetime [*formerly* *359 97] in 351 792

For coast defense, see 359 4

.98 Technical services

Including technical units [*formerly* *359 36], military underwater demolition teams, communication services

Class medical, dental, nursing services in 359 34, naval hygiene in 613 68 [*all formerly* *359 98]

For naval air services, see 358 4

.981 Naval artillery

For naval ordnance, see 623 4

.982 Naval engineers

Including naval construction battalions

For naval engineering, see 623 8

360 **Social welfare**

Including private and public services

For sociology see 301, *social pathology,* 301.246

.9 History of social welfare [*formerly* *362.9]

361 **Social work and social agencies**

Comprehensive works

Including charities philanthropy

For social work and social agencies dealing with specific classes of persons see 362 *social ethics,* 177, *ethics of philanthropy* 177 7

[09] History of social work and social agencies

Class in 361 9

[†.1] Medical aid

Class in 362 1

.2 Social welfare planning

Class aid according to place where given [*formerly* †361 2] in 362

.3 Social casework

Method of helping people thru social service and personal counseling to make adjustments to life problems

Class aid according to person receiving [*formerly* †361 3] in 362

.4 Social group work

Social adjustment of individuals promoted by participation in voluntary groups and with assistance of group leader

Class aid according to kind [*formerly* †361 4] in 362

43 Work of settlement houses [*formerly* †331 85]

Including neighborhood centers

.5 Disaster relief

Including preparedness rescue work

506 Red Cross services

Comprehensive works

For a specific kind of Red Cross service, see the subject, e g., flood relief 361 52, *nurses aides* 610 73

51 Earthquake relief

52 Flood relief

361.53 War relief

Including relief of displaced persons refugees prisoners of war

For refugees of a specific war, see the war, e g, World War II refugees 940 531 59, civil defense against enemy attack 355 232

.54 Relief from epidemics and pandemics

.55 Famine relief

56 Relief from fires

Including relief from explosions

.57 Storm relief

Including snowstorms rainstorms windstorms

.6 Public welfare work by government agencies

Including administrative and statistical reports

For a specific welfare service, see the service, e g, old age pensions 362 6

.7 Private welfare work

Including administrative and statistical reports of individual welfare agencies e g, Travelers' Aid Society

For cooperative agencies, see 361 8, parish welfare work, 258

73 Welfare fund raising

Including charitable bazaars, drives, donations, subscriptions

For church bazaars see 254 8

.8 Cooperative welfare agencies

Agencies which collect funds thru drives and distribute them to private welfare organizations

Including social service exchanges community chests, united charities

.9 History and development of social work and social agencies

For history and development of welfare services, see 362 9

362 **Welfare services to special groups of persons [*formerly also* †361.3]**

Including aid according to place where given [*formerly* †361 2], ai according to kind [*formerly* †361 4]

For welfare services to industrial workers, see 331 83, architectur of health and welfare buildings, 725 5, household managemen 647 965

[.09] History of welfare services

Class in 362 9

.1 Welfare services to physically ill

Including medical aid [*formerly* †361 1] and welfare work, medical records librarians

For sickness insurance, see 368 42, medical sciences, 610

.11 Services of general hospitals and allied institutions

Comprehensive works

Including infirmaries, contagious wards, veterans' hospitals

For military hospitals, see 355 72, naval hospitals, 359 7, children's hospitals 362 78, nurses and nursing, 610 7, public health nursing, 610 734, ambulance service, 362 1, hospitals for specific diseases, 362 19, maternity hospital 362 15

.110 9 General hospitals in specific places

Including specific hospitals

Divide like 930–999, e g, hospitals in San Francisco 362 110 979 461

.12 Services of dispensaries and clinics

Including outpatient care, medical centers

.13 Services of bath establishments and sanitariums for incurables

For health resorts, see 613 12, soldiers' and sailors' home 362 61, services of sanitariums for specific diseases, 362 19

.14 Services to medical cases treated at home

For home nursing, see 649 8, public health nursing, 610 734

.15 Services of maternity hospitals

Including maternity and infant welfare, homes for unmarrie mothers, prenatal and postnatal care

For obstetrics, see 618 2, pediatrics, 618 92, children's hospitals, 362 78, maternal and child welfare, 362 7

362.16 Services of convalescent, nursing, rest homes

For institutions for aged, see 362 61

.18 Ambulance service [*formerly also* †614 881–†614 883]

For military ambulance service see 355 345

.19 Services of hospitals and allied institutions for specific diseases

Including sanitariums, veterans hospitals

Except as provided otherwise in 362 1–362 43, divide 362 196–362 198 like 616–618 e g, sanitariums for patients suffering from cancer 362 196 994, orthopedic hospitals [*formerly* *362 43] 362 197 3

.2 Welfare services to mentally ill

Including psychiatric social work, hospitals and allied institutions

For treatment of mentally ill, see 616 8, mental hygiene, 131 3

.209 Welfare services to mentally ill in specific places

Including specific hospitals

Divide like 930–999, e g, mental hospitals in Washington, D C 362 209 753

.3 Welfare services to mentally retarded

Including hospitals and allied institutions

For education of mentally retarded, see 371 92

.4 Welfare services to physically handicapt and disabled

Including service to spastics

For education and vocational rehabilitation of physically handicapt, see 371 91, employment of physically handicapt, 331 59, disabled veterans, 355 115 6, hospitals and allied institutions for specific diseases and disablements, 362 19

41 Services to blind

Including partially sighted

For education of blind, see 371 911

42 Services to deaf

Including deaf mutes, hard of hearing

For education of deaf and hard of hearing, see 371 912

43 Services to crippled

Including treatment of paralytics paraplegics, amputees

Class orthopedic hospitals [*formerly* *362 43] in 362 197 3

For services to crippled children, see 362 78

362.5 **Welfare services to needy**

Aid in form of money, food and other necessities

Including aid to tramps, beggars, paupers, transients, unemployables

For economic aspects of poverty, see 339 46, *unemployment relief,* 331 137 *unemployment insurance,* 368 44, *public employment services,* 331 115, *services to needy children,* 362 7, *to needy aged* 362 6

.58 Legal aid

.6 **Welfare services to aged**

Including widows' pensions, aid to survivors, dependents, infirm, old age assistance

Class mothers' pensions in 362 71 orphans' pensions in 362 73 [*both formerly* †362 625]

For old-age and survivors' insurance, see 368 43, *industrial pension plans,* 331 252, *geriatrics,* 618 97, *age discrimination in employment* 331 113, *social gerontology* 301 435

61 Institutions for aged [*formerly also* †331 256], survivors, dependents

Including soldiers and sailors homes

For home care of aged and infirm, see 649 8, *nursing homes,* 362 16

.7 **Welfare services to children and youth**

Including services to infants, child welfare

For family welfare, see 362 8 *child labor,* 331 31, *young people's societies,* 369 4 *child care in the home,* 649 1, *prevention of cruelty to children,* 179 2, *sociology of youth groups,* 301 431

.71 Services to mothers

Including mothers pensions [*formerly* †362 625], day nurseries

.72 Services to illegitimate children

Including foundlings

For law of illegitimacy see 347 6

73 Services to orphans and abandoned children

Including orphans' pensions [*formerly* †362 625], placement service, foster care, adoption

For law of guardianship, orphans' courts, see 347 65

362 74 Services of child guidance clinics

Comprehensive works

Including treatment and study of neglected and maladjusted children social adjustment of children

For child psychology, see 136 7, *child care in the home,* 649 1, *vocational guidance,* 371 425

.745 Junior republics [*formerly* †364 722]

Including Boys' Town

For school city, school republic, see 371 59, *correctional institutions for juveniles,* 364 72

.78 Services of children's hospitals and institutions

Including services to sick and crippled children, summer camps for needy children

For maternity and infant welfare, see 362 15, *hospitals for specific diseases,* 362 19

.8 Family welfare services

Including family casework

For child welfare, see 362 7

.9 History and development of welfare services

Divide like 930–999 e g , welfare services of New Zealand 362 993 1

Class history of social welfare [*formerly* *362 9] in 360 9

363 Political societies [*formerly* *329.8]

For political parties, see 329

.9 Political societies in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e g , Ku-Klux Klan [*formerly* *366 6] 363 973, Tammany 363 974 71

364 Criminology and correctional institutions

Including comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law

Class organization and management of police services [*formerly* *364] in 351 74

For criminal law see 343 criminal courts 347 9 police administration 351 74 local police departments 352 2 administration of vice control 351 76 penology 365

SUMMARY

364 1	Crime
2	Causes of crime and delinquency
3	Criminal classes
4	Crime prevention
5	Correctional courts
6	Corrective and reformative methods
7	Correctional institutions and reformatories
8	Discharged convicts and delinquents
9	History of criminology

[09] History of criminology

Class in 364 9

1 Crime [*formerly* †364 2]

Comprehensive works

Including studies investigations popular accounts of crimes and criminals

Class adult criminals [*formerly* *364 1] in 364 37

For causes of crime see 364 2 criminal classes 364 3 crime prevention 364 4 social maladjustment 301 246 detective and crime fiction the 800 s

12 Criminal investigation and identification [*formerly* †351 74]

Including collection and interpretation of criminal evidence crime detection methods e g chemical analysis forensic ballistics photography and microphotography wire tapping

For medical jurisprudence see 340 6 law of evidence 347 94 law of criminal evidence 343 1 law enforcement 364 44

122 Criminal identification by handwriting analysis

123 Lie detection

Including lie detectors

For ethics of lying see 177 3 psychopathic lying 132 74

364 125 Fingerprint identification of criminals

Including criminal anthropometry [*formerly* †364 334]

For comprehensive works on fingerprinting and civilian identification, see 573 6, fingerprinting of prisoners, 365 642

---

364 13–364 172 Types of crimes and offenses

Comprehensive works on each type

Including criminals and offenders by type of crime [*both formerly* †364 38]

For military offenses, see 355 133 4, law of specific crimes and offenses 343 3–343 72 crimes against law of nations, 341 4 criminal classes, 364 3

.13 Crimes and offenses against the state

[illegible]

tion, against postal laws

For corrupt election practices, see 324 27, political revolutions 323 2, international criminal law, 341 49, law of maritime warfare, 341 36, corruption of legislators, 328 367, military intelligence services, 355 343, loyalty investigations of public employees, 351 4

.133 Offenses against revenue

Including counterfeiting, smuggling bootlegging, tax evasion

.134 Offenses against justice

Including lynching [*formerly* *364 14], contempt of court

.14 Crimes and offenses against public order

Including rioting, unlawful assemblies, disorderly conduct, outlaws, brigands, illegal organizations, e g, Mafia

Class lynching [*formerly* *364 14] in 364 134

For racketeering, see 364 163

.15 Crimes and offenses against the person

Including robbery [*formerly* *364 16], suicide, assault and battery, criminal abortion criminal libel

152 Homicide

Including murder, manslaughter, infanticide, assassination

364 153 Sex crimes and offenses

Including rape, seduction, prostitution, adultery, fornication

For crimes and offenses against public morals, see 364 17

.154 Kidnaping

Including abduction

.16 Crimes and offenses against property

Including arson

Class robbery [*formerly* *364 16] in 364 15

162 Theft

Including burglary, larceny, stealing

For robbery, see 364 15

.163 Frauds

Including forgery, embezzlement, extortion, blackmail, racketeering, swindling

For detection of frauds in accounts, see 657 64, art frauds, 708 054, frauds of museum materials, 069 54

17 Crimes and offenses against public morals

Including obscenity, pornography

For ethics of salacious art and literature, see 176 7–176 8, sex crimes, 364 153, freedom of the press, 323 445, prohibited books, 098 1

.172 Gambling

Including gambling at races, lotteries, games of chance

For lotteries as investments, see 332 68, systems of gambling, betting, 795 01, ethics of gambling, 174 6

.2 Causes of crime and delinquency

Including physical environment and heredity as factors in crime

Class comprehensive works on crime [*formerly* †364.2] in 364 1, adult offenders [*formerly* *364 2] in 364 37

.24 Physical and mental factors in crime

Qualities and characteristics of individual as causes of crime

Including physical abnormalities, factors of age, sex, health, mental superiority and inferiority, mental deficiency, emotional instability

Class criminal anthropology in 364 33, criminal psychology in 364 34 [*both formerly* *364.24]

For antisocial compulsions, see 132 6, sex crimes, 364 153

364.25 Social factors and crime

Including social progress and social environment as causes of crime

For law enforcement, see 364.44, social work and social agencies, 361, social disorganization, 301.246

.254 Cultural factors and crime

Including influence of theater, motion pictures, art, literature, comic books, radio television

For problems caused by illiteracy see 379.2

.255 Leisure and recreation factors in crime

Including influence of amusement and public parks public dance halls, poolrooms, bars cabarets automobiles

.256 Social conflicts as factors in crime

Including individual social maladjustments immigration, class hatreds, racial conflicts, feuds vendettas

.26 Economic factors and crime

Including industry labor capital employment unemployment, strikes, standards and cost of living poverty as causes of crime

.3 Criminal classes

Persons who have committed crimes and been apprehended

For criminals and offenders by type of crime, see 364.13–364.172

.32 The criminal type

Including recidivists repeaters, habitual and professional criminals occasional criminals single offenders

.33 Criminal anthropology [*formerly* *364.24]

[†.334] Criminal anthropometry

Class in 364.125

.34 Criminal psychology [*formerly* *364.24]

Comprehensive works

For abnormal mental factors as causes of crime, see 364.24, antisocial compulsions 132.6 psychology of a specific type of criminal the type e.g., of arsonists 364.16

.35 Predelinquents and predelinquency

Including potential near or quasi delinquents

364 36 Juvenile delinquents and delinquency

Including incorrigibility of juveniles

For juvenile courts, see 364 52, parole, 364 62, probation, 364 63, correctional institutions for juveniles, 364 72, truants and truancy, 371 52, education of juvenile delinquents, 371 93, influence of art, literature, entertainment mediums on crime, 364 254

360 9 Juvenile delinquency in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g , juvenile delinquency in New York City *364 360 974 71*

363 Boys

Including gangs of boys

364 Girls

Including gangs of girls

.37 Adult offenders [*formerly* *364 1–*364 2]

Including men, women

.374 Groups of offenders

For offenses of illegal organizations, e g , Mafia, see 364 14

[† 38] Offenders by type of crime committed

Class in 364 13–364 172

.4 Crime prevention

Including special measures to control or influence economic and social institutions and conditions rational treatment of offenders, cooperation of public

For services of child guidance clinics, see 362 74

42 Control of population

Including use of eugenic practices, e g , birth control, sterilization control of immigration and emigration, segregation

44 Law enforcement

Including use of government, legislation, community, home, church, school to aid in crime prevention

For criminal law, see 343, criminal investigation, 364 12

46 Preventive police work

364.5 **Correctional courts**

Including functions, powers, jurisdiction administration, practice and procedure, records, results, reforms

For criminal courts, see 347 9, criminal trials, 343 1, corrective and reformative methods, 364 6

.52 **Juvenile courts**

For juvenile delinquents, see 364 36

.53 **Domestic relations courts**

Including family courts

.6 **Corrective and reformative methods**

Including clemency, commutation of sentence methods for adult and juvenile offenders

For correctional courts, see 364 5, correctional institutions and reformatories, 364 7, penology 365

.62 **Parole**

Including indeterminate sentence

63 **Probation**

Including suspended sentence, reprieve

64 **Pardon**

Including amnesty

.7 **Correctional institutions and reformatories**

Including institutions for adults, houses of correction

For penal institutions, see 365

72 **Institutions for juveniles**

Including industrial and training schools, colonies, truant schools

Class junior republics [*formerly* †364 722] in 362 745

For truants and truancy, see 371 52, juvenile delinquents, 364 36, education of juvenile delinquents, 371 93, school city, 371 59

.75 ***Reformatory plant***

Including grounds buildings equipment

For reformatory architecture, see 725 6, reformatory housekeeping, 647 966

76 **Reformatory administration**

Including organization and management, treatment of inmates, reformatory labor, welfare and educational work with inmates

364.8 **Discharged convicts and delinquents**

Including postprison care

For release from prison, see 365 647

.9 **History of criminology**

Divide like 930–999, e g , criminology in France 364 944

365 Penology

Including prison reform

For criminology, see 364, punishments for crime, 343 2, correctional institutions, 364 7

[.09] History of penology

Class in 365 9

.2 **Prison systems**

Including congregate system, solitary or separate confinement (Pennsylvania) system, silent (Auburn) system, progressive or intermediate stage (Irish or Crofton) system

For prison buildings, see 365 5, treatment of prisoners, 365 64

.3 **Kinds of penal institutions**

Including prisons, penitentiaries jails, detention homes, workhouses, penal farms and colonies, road camps, concentration camps

For prison labor, see 365 65

.4 **Prisons for special classes of offenders**

Including prisons for juveniles women, mentally ill, political prisoners, debtors

For military prisons, see 355 71

.45 For prisoners of war

Including combatants noncombatants civilians

.5 **Prison plant**

Including grounds, buildings, equipment

For prison architecture, see 725 6, prison housekeeping, 647 966

.6 **Prison administration**

63 Prison organization

Including personnel, management, finance

For prison housekeeping see 647 966

365 64 Prisoners and their treatment

642 Reception and classification

Including registration photographing fingerprinting assignment

For prisons for special classes of offenders see 365 4 criminal anthropometry 364 125

643 Discipline

Including rules and regulations prison routine rights of convicts permissible articles restrictions privileges merit systems

644 Punishments of refractory prisoners

Including deprivations loss of privileges confinement corporal punishments

647 Release and discharge

For discharged convicts and postprison care see 364 8

65 Prison labor (Convict labor)

Including employment of inmates systems e g lease system use of chain gangs contract system

For economic aspects of prison labor see 331 51

66 Prison welfare work

Including educational work schools religious and character training health recreation

For prison libraries see 027 665

9 History and local treatment

Including specific prisons

Divide like 930–999 e g prisons in England 365 942

366 Associations

Social groups specifically organized with common purpose or interest

Including secret societies, fraternal orders

For societies in a specific subject, see the subject, e g , art associations 706, general learned societies, 060, student secret societies, 371 85, orders of knighthood, e g , Knights of Malta, 929 71, religious orders, 271, cooperative societies, 334, hereditary, military, patriotic societies, 369, young people's societies, 369 4, social clubs, 367

.1 Masons

.109 History and local treatment

Divide like 940–999, e g , Freemasonry in Ohio 366 097 71

.17 Order of DeMolay

.18 Women in Masonry

Including Order of the Eastern Star

.2 **Knights of Pythias**

.3 **Independent Order of Odd Fellows**

Including Daughters of the Rebekah

.4 **Rosicrucians**

.5 **Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks**

[*.6] **Ku-Klux Klan**

Class in 363 973

.9 **Associations in specific countries**

Divide like 930–999, e g , fraternal orders in Canada 366 971

367 Social clubs

For parliamentary law, see 328 1

.9 **Social clubs in specific countries**

Divide like 930–999 e g The Philadelphia Club 367 974 811

368 Insurance

Including cooperative insurance [*formerly* †334 3], group insurance [*formerly also* †331.253], compulsory insurance

For benefit societies, see 334 7

SUMMARY

368 01	Theory of insurance
1	Fire insurance
.2	Transportation insurance
.3	Life insurance
.38	Voluntary accident and health insurance
4	Social insurance
5	Casualty insurance
6	*Glass insurance*
7	Boiler and machinery insurance
.8	Insurance against financial losses
9	History and local treatment

01 Theory of insurance

Including actuarial science, theory of probabilities, law of large numbers risks hazards

For statistical method see 311, *mathematical probability* 519

011 Rates and rate making

Including classification of risks cooperative rate making organizations

012 Underwriting

Including reinsurance [*formerly* †368 86] drafting of policies and forms, contracts, estimation and selection of risks

013 Marketing

Including sales techniques buyers' interest

014 Claims and benefits

Adjustment of claims, settlement of losses

014 5 Fraudulent claims

Including insurance frauds

368 015 Finance

Including reserve funds and investments of insurance companies

For investment finance, see 332 6, insurance accounting, 657 836

[026] Laws and regulations

Class in 368 91

[09] History and local treatment

Class in 368 9

368.1–368 8 Specific kinds of insurance

Including government control and regulation

Add 0 and divide each kind like 368 01–368 015, e g, fire insurance hazards 368 101, settlement of inland marine insurance losses 368 230 14

.1 Fire insurance

Including consequential losses e g, business interruption (use and occupancy) extra expense, rents and rental values

For fire prevention laws and regulations, see 614 84, fireproof construction, 693 82

12 Allied fire insurance lines

Including riot and civil commotion insurance, extended coverage

122 Disaster insurance

Including hail, wind rain lightning earthquake insurance

For casualty insurance, see 368 5, crop insurance, 368 123

123 Crop insurance [*formerly* †368 5]

Comprehensive works

For insurance of crops against natural disasters, see 368 122

14 War risk insurance

Comprehensive works

Including war damage compensation

For war risk life insurance, see 368 364

368.2 Transportation insurance

For insured mail, see 383 182

.22 Ocean marine insurance

Including hull and cargo insurance

For maritime transport, see 387 5, maritime law, 347 75, salvage operations, 627 7

.23 Inland marine insurance

Insurance of domestic shipments by land and water

Including insurance on instrumentalities of transportation, e g, bridges, tunnels, airports, piers, personal property floater risks

.3 Life insurance [*formerly also* †331.254]

Including mortality and survival tables

Divide 368 301 like 368 01, e g, life insurance rates [*formerly* †368 31] 368 301 1

.301 6 *Lapsation, persistence, termination*

For adjustment of claims, see 368 301 4

[†.31] Rates

Class in 368 301 1

.36 Special fields of life insurance

Including child insurance [*formerly* †368 46], *marriage* endowment insurance [*formerly* †368 47], business, savings bank, group, nonmedical life insurance, substandard risks

For business interruption insurance, see 368 8

.362 Industrial life insurance

Insurance issued in small amounts with premiums usually collected weekly or monthly

Including burial insurance [*formerly* †368 45], burial societies [*formerly* †334 8]

.363 Fraternal insurance

Including mutual benefit and assessment insurance

For benefit societies, see 334 7, fraternal orders, 366

.364 War risk life and accident insurance

Including National Service Life Insurance

For war damage compensation, see 368 14

368.37 Annuities

Including group annuities, pension trust funds

For old age and survivors' insurance, see 368.43, mothers' pensions, 362.71, industrial pension plans, 331.252, government pensions, 351.5

.38 Voluntary accident and health insurance

For cost of medical care, see 614.253, social insurance, 368.4

.382 Prepaid medical care

Including group hospitalization

.4 Social insurance [*formerly also* †331.254 4]

Insurance for prevention and alleviation of poverty, sponsored by government

Including social security programs

For welfare services to the needy, see 362.5

.409 Social insurance in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., social insurance in New Zealand 368.409 931

.41 Industrial accident and disease insurance

Including employers' liability insurance, workmen's compensation insurance

For comprehensive works on workmen's compensation and employers' liability, see 331.825, unemployment insurance, 368.44, voluntary accident and health insurance, 368.38, sickness insurance, 368.42

.42 Sickness insurance

For cost of medical care, see 614.253, industrial accident and disease insurance, 368.41, voluntary accident and health insurance, 368.38

.424 Maternity insurance

.43 Old-age and survivors' insurance

For welfare services to aged, see 362.6, geriatrics, 618.97, annuities, 368.37, mothers' pensions, 362.71, industrial pension plans, 331.252 government pensions, 351.5

368.44 Unemployment insurance

[†.45] Burial insurance

Class in 368.362

[†.46] Child insurance

Class in 368.36

[†.47] Marriage endowment insurance

Class in 368.36

.5 Casualty insurance

Class crop insurance [*formerly* †368.5] in 368.123

.56 Miscellaneous casualty lines

Including owners', landlords', tenants' liability, contractual liability, elevator insurance, personal liability, e.g., bicycle or dog liability, livestock loss or damage

Class glass insurance in 368.6, boiler and machinery insurance, power plant insurance in 368.7 [*all formerly* *368.56]

.57 Liability insurance

Comprehensive works on insurance against loss due to liability for personal injury or property damage imposed by law

For a specific kind of liability insurance, see the subject, e.g., employers' liability 368.41, glass insurance 368.6

.572 Automobile liability insurance [*formerly also* †629.213 63]

Including financial responsibility laws, comprehensive works on automobile insurance

For motor vehicle laws and regulations, see 629.213, a specific kind of automobile insurance, the subject, e.g., fire insurance 368.1

.576 Aviation insurance

Including aircraft hulls, aircraft liability, aircraft personal accident insurance

For air cargo insurance, see 368.2

368.6 Glass insurance [*formerly* *368.56]

Including neon signs, fluorescent signs and lamps

.7 Boiler and machinery insurance [*formerly* *368.56]

Including power plant, power interruption insurance

.8 **Insurance against financial losses**

Including business, business interruption, strike insurance

For business life insurance, see 368.36, insurance against business interruption due to fire, 368.1

[†.81] Specific losses

Class fidelity bonds in 368.83, surety bonds in 368.84, mortgage insurance in 368.85, credit insurance in 368.87, title insurance in 368.88

.82 Burglary insurance

Including insurance against robbery, theft

.83 Fidelity bonds [*formerly* †368.81]

Guarantee against loss to employers because of dishonesty of employees

.84 Surety bonds [*formerly* †368.81]

Guarantee against loss due to failure to perform an obligation, or fulfill a contract

.85 Other guarantees

Including mortgage insurance [*formerly* †368.81], bank deposit insurance [*formerly* †332.17], investment guarantees

For credit insurance, see 368.87, title insurance, 368.88

[†.86] Reinsurance

Class in 368.012

.87 Credit insurance [*formerly* †368.81]

Insurance of creditor against loss due to debtor's insolvency

.88 Title insurance [*formerly* †368.81]

368.9 History and local treatment

.91 Government control and regulation

Including legislation [*formerly* *368 93]

For control and regulation in specific countries, see 368 94–368 99, of a specific insurance, the kind, e g , of fire insurance 368 1, government-sponsored insurance, 368 4

[*.93] Legislation

Class in 368 91, 368 94–368 99

.94–99 Insurance in specific countries

Including legislation [*formerly* *368 93], control, regulation

Divide like 940–999, e g , insurance in New York State 368 974 7

369 Other associations

For fraternal orders, see 366 orders of knighthood, 929 71

.1 **Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States**

.11 General societies

Including military and naval orders Medal of Honor Legion, Military Order of Foreign Wars of the United States

12 Colonial societies

Including Society of Colonial Wars, Colonial Dames, Mayflower Descendants

13 Revolutionary societies

Including Society of the Cincinnati, Sons of the American Revolution

135 Daughters of the American Revolution

14 Societies commemorating events of 1789–1861

15 Union Civil War societies

Including Grand Army of the Republic, Society of the Army of the Cumberland

16 Auxiliary Union societies of Civil War

17 Confederate Civil War societies

Including United Confederate Veterans, United Daughters of the Confederacy

369.18 Spanish-American War societies

.186 World War I and II societies

.186 1 American Legion

.2 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of other countries

.21 International hereditary, military, patriotic societies

.23–.29 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., military orders of France 369.244

.4 Young people's societies

For young people's religious societies, see 267.6; 4-H Clubs, 630.627 3

.42 Boys' societies

.43 Boy Scouts

.46 Girls' societies

.463 Girl Scouts

.47 Camp Fire Girls of America

370 Education

.1 **Theory of education**

Including philosophy of education, of liberal education

.109 History of educational theory

Divide like 930–999, e g, theory of education in France 370 109 44

.15 Educational psychology

.19 Special aspects

.193 Educational sociology

Sociology applied to the solution of fundamental educational problems

Including community and school relations

For teacher and the community, see 371 104

.194 *Fundamental education*

Educational improvement of people in the economically less advanst regions of the world, and of underprivileged groups in industrialized countries

For illiteracy, see 379 2

.196 Intercultural education

Education for international understanding

For exchange of students, see 371 39, educational exchanges in higher education, 378 35

.58 Annuals, directories, catalogs

For annuals on a specific subject, see the subject, e g, kindergarten annuals 372 210 58, annuals of a specific school, the school, e g, Harvard alumni directory 378 744 4

.7 **Study of education**

Including training of teachers, administrators, supervisors, superintendents

For teachers colleges, see 370 73

71 Teachers' meetings

.72 Teachers' conferences, institutes, workshops

For research in education, see 370 78

370 73 Teachers colleges

Institutions primarily for teacher education

Divide like 940–999 e g Teachers College Columbia University 370 737 471

732 Courses and programs

732 6 Education for teaching in special grades of schools

732 62 Elementary schools

732 63 Secondary schools

732 64 Colleges and universities

733 Practice teaching

Including practice model demonstration schools

75 Training classes

Courses attacht to schools not conducted primarily for education of teachers

Including courses in high schools and liberal arts colleges

76 Education of school administrators

78 Educational research

371 Teaching, school organization, administration

Comprehensive works on teaching organization administration in elementary secondary higher education

For teaching and administration in a specific kind or level of school see the subject e g in elementary schools 372

SUMMARY

371 1	Teaching and administrative personnel
.2	School organization and administration
3	Methods of instruction and study
4	Systems of education
5	School discipline and classroom control
6	School plant and equipment
7	School health
.8	Student life
9	Education of special classes

1 Teaching and administrative personnel

Including duties responsibilities morale loyalty oath social status

For freedom of teaching in higher education see 378 121

103 Relations to parents

Including parent teacher associations

371 104 Relations to community

Including teachers in politics public status teacher and civil liberties

11 Qualifications

12 Need of training

Including in service training kind and amount of education

For organization and methods in education of teachers see 370 7

13 Certification

Including examinations rating

14 Appointment and organization of teaching staff

Including supply and demand placement dismissal turnover resignation mobility

142 Appointment

Including contracts tenure transfer exchange

145 Employment agencies for teachers

147 Organization of teaching staff

For supervisors as governmental officers state and county superintendents see 379 15 college and university faculty 378 12 school organization and administration 371 2

147 2 Principals and superintendents

Including supervisors headmasters

147 3 Teachers

Including instructors professors masters

16 Salary and compensation

Including wage scales bonuses merit increments promotions vacations sabbatical leaves

17 Retirement

Including pensions annuities retirement funds

For pensions annuities as part of life insurance business see 368 37

371 2 School organization and administration

Administration by school officers and staff

Including statistics publicity

For supervision and control of school system by national state or local government see 379 15 organization of teaching staff, 371 147

21 Admission

Including enrollment standards requirements for admission

211 Primary school and kindergarten standards

212 Intermediate school admission standards

213 Secondary school admission standards

Including junior high school standards

214 College admission standards

22 Tuition

Including student aid scholarships fees

For student aid and scholarships in higher education see 378 3 nonresident tuition in public supported schools 379 13

23 School year

Including school terms vacations holidays summer and vacation schools

Class part time sessions [*formerly* *371 23] in 371 24

24 School schedules

Including part time sessions [*formerly* *371 23] full time sessions double shift hours recesses

.25 School organization by classes and grades

Including size of groups methods of grouping students ungraded classes provision for individual differences by special classes or groups

For individual instruction see 371 394 child psychology 136 7 teaching of exceptional students 371 9

26 Educational tests and measurements

Including marking and credit systems

For specific psychological tests see 151 22

.27 Examinations

For examination questions on a specific subject see the subject e g astronomy 520 76

371 28 Promotion

Including demotion retardation

For student failures see 371 291 3

29 Other topics

291 Ending student connection leaving school, transfers

For probation expulsion see 371 56

291 2 *Graduation and commencement*

.291 3 Student failures

Including droppi g o it of students

.3 Methods of instruction and study

Comprehensive works on methods and techniques at all levels

For comprehensive works on methods of teaching at a specific level see the level e g methods in secondary schools 373 methods of teaching a specific subject at elementary level 372 3–372 8 methods of teaching at higher levels the subject e g mathematics 510 7

32 Textbooks

Including recitations assignments homework based on text books discussion of use of textbooks and desirable qualities of textbooks in general

For selection of textbooks for public schools see 379 156 textbooks on a specific subject at elementary school level 372 3–372 8 textbooks on a specific subject at higher levels the subject e g algebra 512

33 Audio visual teaching aids and methods

Including lectures

332 Assemblies and opening exercises

Including home room activities dramatization as method of teaching

For school plays see 371 895 student assemblies 371 89

333 Auditory aids

Including use of radio phonograph sound recorder

For use of radio in adult education see 374 26

371 335 Visual aids

Including use of motion pictures television maps charts blackboards

335 2 Pictures in education

335 23 Motion pictures in education

Including sound motion pictures

For motion pictures in adult education see 374 27

335 8 Television in education

For television in adult education see 374 27

36 Project method of teaching

Including progressive or creative teaching

Class supervised study [*formerly* *371 36] in 371 394

365 Special day programs in schools

For celebration of holidays see 394 26

37 Seminar method

38 Laboratory method

39 Other procedures and methods

Including international schools exchange of students

For exchange of teachers see 371 142 exchange of college and university professors 378 12

393 Educational trips excursions, visits

Including school camping

394 Individual development

Including instruction by regular teacher or tutor at home or at school Batavia system Dalton Winnetka Pueblo plans supervised study [*formerly* *371 36] remedial teaching acceleration in education

For private instruction see 373 1

4 Systems of education

Including monitorial system

42 Vocational education and guidance

Comprehensive works on educational and vocational guidance

For placement services see 371 427

422 Personnel guidance

Including student personnel work and counseling

For student behavior see 371 81

371.425 Vocational guidance

Including works on "how to get a job," choice of vocation even tho not under school direction

.426 *Vocational education and manual training*

Education and training in various occupations

Including organization, administration, teaching techniques of vocational education, manual training

For industrial rehabilitation, see 331 868, vocational rehabilitation of physically handicapt, 371 91

.426 8 Special subjects

Comprehensive works on vocational training at elementary and higher levels

Class training in a specific subject at the elementary level *in 372 3–372 8, e g, elementary manual training* 372 5, training in a specific subject at secondary and higher levels with the subject, e.g., high school training in printing 655 071 2

If preferred, class here training in specific subjects, di-

work 371 426 810 2

.426 9 History of vocational education

Divide like 930–999, e g, vocational training in the United States 371 426 973

.427 Placement services of educational institutions

Including service for alumni

For student aid in colleges, see 378 36, placement of teachers, 371 14

.5 School discipline and classroom control

For military discipline, see 355 133

.52 Attendance

Including truancy, tardiness, absences

Class compulsory education *[formerly *371 52]* in *379.23*

For truant schools, see 364 72

.53 Rewards

Including competitions, prizes, literary contests

For debates, see 374 24, interscholastic athletics, 371 75

371 54 Punishments

55 Physical punishment

56 Other punishments

Including expulsion probation

59 Student government

Including student self government participation in school management school city

For junior republics see 362 745 *honor systems* 371 81

6 School plant and equipment

Including surveys of needs planning building programs for schools of all levels use of school as community center

61 School grounds and sites

Including playgrounds athletic fields

62 Buildings and equipment

Including standards regulations operation maintenance

Class laboratory equipment and supplies [*formerly* *371 62] in 371 66

For school architecture see 727

621 Study lecture assembly rooms

622 Libraries and museums in schools

For library buildings see 022 *museums* 069 *school libraries* 027 82

623 School laboratories observatories machine shops

For laboratory equipment and supplies see 371 66

624 Gymnasiums and swimming pools

For apparatus equipment supplies see 371 67

625 Other special rooms or buildings

Including dormitories clubs infirmaries cafeterias

For school meals see 371 716

626 Sanitation

Including lavatories

For sanitary inspection see 371 71

371 627 Lighting and use of color

[† 627 8] Fireproofing

Class in 693 82

628 Heating and ventilation

629 Accessories

Including elevators, telephone

63 School furniture and decoration

[† 64] School libraries character and functions

Class in 027 82

[† 643] School reading lists

Class in 028 52

[† 65] School museums character and functions

Class in 069

*66 Laboratory equipment and supplies [formerly *371 62]*

Including scientific apparatus

67 Other apparatus, equipment, supplies

.7 School health

Including comprehensive works on physical and health education

For safety measures in public health, see 614 8

71 Health service and safety of students

Including sanitary conditions and inspection, epidemics and immunization programs, mental hygiene, fire drills

712 Medical inspection

Including clinics, school nurses, physical examinations

716 School meals

Including supervision of lunchroom and planned meals

For management of lunchrooms, see 642 58 *school cafeterias,* 371 625

[† 718] Open-air schools

Class in 371 917

72 Care of students' eyes

Including eye examinations sight saving classes *[formerly* *371 911]

For education of the blind, see 371 911

371.73 Physical education in schools

Including physical fitness testing, military drill

.732 Physical education in specific levels of schools

.732 2 Elementary schools

.732 3 Secondary schools

.732 4 Colleges

.74 Intramural athletics and games

For athletics and sports not connected with school activities, see 796; coaching athletics and sports, 796.077

.75 Interscholastic athletics and games

.76 Health education in schools

Comprehensive works on instruction in personal and community health, first aid, home nursing, sex education

For personal hygiene, see 613; a specific subject included in health education programs, the subject, e.g., sex instruction 612.600 7

.8 Student life

Activities outside the classroom in schools of all types and levels

Including student etiquette

.805 School journalism

Including organization and production of school papers, yearbooks, student handbooks

For student publications of a specific school, see the school, e.g., Princeton University yearbook 378.749 67; teaching of journalism, 070.7

.81 Student attitudes and behavior

Including student ethics, honor systems

.83 Student organizations

.84 Student organizations in specific fields

Divide like 000–999, e.g., literary societies 371.848

.85 Secret and Greek letter societies

.852 Honorary societies

.854 Secret societies in specific fields

Divide like 000–999, e.g., secret medical societies 371.854 61

.855 Men's societies and fraternities

For secret societies in specific fields, see 371.854

371 856 Women's societies and sororities

For secret societies in specific fields, see 371 854

857 High school secret and Greek letter societies

.86 Student society houses, premises, rooms

Including fraternity houses

87 Student housing

Including management of dormitories

.89 Other student activities

Including student assemblies, banquets, dances, pep meetings, class days, cheer leading

.895 School plays and pageants

Divide by language like 400, e g, German plays 371 895 3

For drama and creative drama as a teaching aid, see 371 332, pageants, 791 62

898 School colors and cheers

.9 Education of special classes

For institutions and services for special classes see 362, 364, psychology of exceptional children, 136 76

91 Physically handicapt

Including home, hospital, special school instruction, vocational rehabilitation

Class industrial rehabilitation [*formerly* *371 91] in 331 868

For employment of physically handicapt, see 331 59 rehabilitation of disabled veterans, 355 115 6

.911 Blind and partially sighted

Including instruction in Braille and other systems of reading

Class sight saving classes [*formerly* *371 911] in 371 72

For Braille printing see 655 38 talking books, 789 912

.912 Deaf and hard of hearing

Including training in speech and lip reading for deaf, finger alphabet

[* 914] Speech defectives

Class in 371 927

916 Crippled

371 917 Delicate or debilitated

Including education of persons with handicaps due to physical diseases open air schools [*formerly* †371 718]

92 Mentally handicapt

Including education for the mentally retarded

927 Speech defectives [*formerly* *371 914]

Correction of speech defects e g stuttering

For treatment of speech disorders, see 616 855

93 Delinquents

Including "problem children"

For educational work in prisons, see 365 66

95 Gifted children

96 Students exceptional because of class distinction

Including education of princes nobility working class

97 Students exceptional because of race

Including racial minorities who require special educational facilities or create special problems segregation integration

For education of a specific group see the group e g, education of Negroes in schools 371 974

974 American Negroes

For Negro colleges see 378

975 American Indians

976 Orientals

98 Students exceptional because of national origin or socioreligious affiliation

Including education of bilingual students

983–989 Students of specific national origin

Divide like 930–999 e g education of Mexicans in California 371 987 2

372 Elementary education

Including principles, administration, curriculum, methods in public and private elementary schools

.2 Elementary school organization

.21 Kindergartens and nursery schools

.214 Storytelling

For storytelling in libraries, see 027 625 1

.215 Songs and games

.216 Nursery schools [*formerly* †372.241 2]

For day nurseries, see 362 7, child study, 136 7

.218 Kindergartens

Including influence of kindergartens [*formerly* †372 22]

[†.22] Influence of kindergartens

Class in 372 218

.24 Elementary grades

Including education from preschool thru intermediate grades

.241 Primary grades

Grades 1, 2, 3

[†.241 2] Nursery schools

Class in 372 216

242 Intermediate grades

Grades 4, 5, 6, upper grades 7, 8 where these do not constitute junior high schools

For junior high schools, see 373 23

372.3–372.8 Elementary school subjects

.3 Science and nature study

.4 Reading and spelling

Including methods of teaching oral and silent reading of native languages

.41 Reading

.412 Primers and first readers

For third- and fourth-grade readers, see the language, e g, fourth grade English reader 428 6, readers for upper levels, the 800's

372.413 Diagnostic and remedial reading

For diagnostic and remedial reading for other than elementary school students, see 428.4

.415 Phonetics and speech

.42 Spelling

.5 Creative arts

Including drama for elementary grades

.51 Handwriting and lettering

Including penmanship

.52 Drawing and design

Including finger painting

.53 Modeling

Including modeling with clay, soap

.54 Sewing

.55 Elementary basketry, weaving, braiding

Including paper work

.6 Language arts

Oral and written expression

Including vocabulary building, art of conversation, dramatics, public speaking, conduct of meetings, letter writing, creative composition, formal aspects of grammar, punctuation, capitalization

.7 Elementary arithmetic

For short cuts and rapid calculations, see 511.201 8

.74 Diagnostic and remedial arithmetic

.8 Other studies

Studies not provided for in 372.3–372.7

Divide like 000–999, e.g., social studies 372.83

.9 History of elementary education

Including history, catalogs of specific public and private elementary schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., elementary education in England 372.942

373 Secondary education

Including principles, administration, curriculum, methods in high, junior high, preparatory schools, private instruction

.1 Private education

Instruction by tutor, governess, coach, usually given in the home

For individual instruction in schools, see 371 394

.2 Types of secondary schools

For a specific school, see 373 3–373 9

.22 Day schools and boarding schools

.23 Types as to organization

Including 4-, 6-year high schools, junior and senior high schools

.24 Types as to curriculum

Including academic, classical, vocational high schools

For a specific subject in the curriculum, see the subject, e g, secondary education in mathematics 510 712

.3–.9 History of secondary education

Including history, catalogs of specific public and private secondary schools

Divide like 930–999, e g, Boston Latin School 373 744 6

374 Adult education

Including adult education for foreign-born and native adults, adult education for workers [*formerly also* †331 85]

For a specific kind of adult education, see the kind, e g, vocational education 371 426, *agricultural extension,* 630 717, *college and university extension,* 378 13

[09] History

Class in 374 9

.1 Self-education for adults

Including directed and undirected home reading, private study

For reading and reading guidance, see 028, *remedial reading,* 428 4

.2 Group study and education

22 Reading and discussion groups

Including Great Books study programs [*formerly* *028 3]

For courses of reading, see 028 3

374 24 Group discussion

Including panels symposiums round tables forums debates training for leadership of discussion groups

For debating technique see 808 53

26 Use of radio in adult education

Including educational programs of local state college university stations

For use of radio as an aid in teaching see 371 333

27 Use of motion pictures and television in adult education

Including use of documentary films informational films of business advertising firms public relations films film forums

For use of motion pictures as an aid in teaching see 371 335 23 *television as an aid* 371 335 8

28 Community centers as educational centers

For community centers as recreational centers see 790 68 *use of school as community center* 371 6

4 Correspondence instruction and schools

Divide like 940–999 e g International Correspondence Schools Scranton Pennsylvania 374 474 837

8 Continuation schools [*formerly* *374 91]

Including institutes workshops

Divide like 930–999 e g continuation schools in England 374 842

For veterans education and training benefits see 355 115 2

9 History of adult education

Divide like 940–999 e g adult education in Wisconsin 374 977 5

[*91] Schools centers institutes workshops

Class in 374 8

375 Curriculum

Principles and methods of curriculum construction

For curriculum of a specific level of school see the level e g curriculum for elementary grades 372.24

009 Courses of institutions in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g curriculum in New Jersey schools 375 009 749

375 01–.9 **Curriculums and courses of study in specific subjects**

Comprehensive works on curriculums and courses in a specific subject for all levels of schools

Divide like 010–999, e g , place of science in the curriculum 375 5

For curriculums and courses in a specific subject at elementary school level, see 372 3–372 8, courses at higher levels, the subject, e g , physics 530 7

376 Education of women [*formerly also* †396.4]

Including private and public elementary and secondary education for girls, coeducation

.5 **Convent education**

.8 **Colleges for women**

Divide like 930–999, e g , Bryn Mawr College 376 874 812

.9 **History of education of women**

Divide like 930–999, e g , education of women in France 376 944

377 Religious and moral education

Comprehensive works

Including interrelation of church, state, education, problems and activities peculiar to sectarian schools

For place of religion in the curriculum, see 375 2, a specific denominational school, the level of school, e g , Select Friends School, Philadelphia 373 748 11, theological seminaries, 207, educational activities of Christian church, 268, of other religious groups, 290

.1 **Religious and Bible instruction in public and nonsectarian private schools**

For religious instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, see 268

.2 **Ethical education**

Ethical training without religious teaching

Including moral and character education

For place of ethics in curriculum, see 375 17, study of ethics, 170 7

.3 **Monastic schools**

Including abbey schools

For convent education of girls, see 376 5, religious orders, 271

.4 **Diocesan schools**

Including cathedral schools

377.5 **Parochial schools**

.6 **Missionary schools**

Establishment and conduct of schools as part of mission work

For missions, see 266

8 **Christian church and education**

Problems, programs, evaluation of church schools

Divide like 280, e g, Association of Catholic Colleges of the United States 377 827 3

For a specific denominational school, see the level of school, e g, Saint John's University Shanghai 378 511 3

.9 **Other religions and education**

Divide like 290, e g, relation of Islam to education 377 97

378 Higher education

Comprehensive works

Including junior colleges

For student life see 371 8 higher education for women, 376 8, college entrance requirements, 371 214

.1 **Organization and administration**

Including public relations, finance, management

11 Administrative officers

Functions and duties of president, dean registrar, controller, board of trustees

113 Officers in charge of personnel and student affairs

For personnel guidance see 371 422

12 Faculty

Including exchange of professors

For problems of teaching personnel, e g, pension salary, tenure, teaching load, see 371 1

121 Freedom of teaching

Including academic freedom [*formerly also* †323 444, *323 44]

For loyalty oath, see 371 1

.13 University extension

Including academic and professional programs and courses offered on or off campus, lecture series, services of lecture groups, alumni education

378.14 College year

Including summer vacation instruction, all year sessions, four-quarter system

.15 Types or levels of higher education

Comprehensive works on types of schools by size, location, or grade, e.g. large or small, city or country

For a specific institution of higher learning, see the institution, e.g. Vermont Junior College 378.7434

.154 Senior colleges and junior colleges

.155 Undergraduate and graduate departments

.2 Academic degrees, costumes, insignia

Including requirements for degrees, e.g. subjects, residence, examinations, dissertations, honors

.24 Degrees

.242 Thesis requirements

Including preparation of theses

.3 Aid to students and endowment of research

.32 Research endowments

Including organizations and institutions responsible for endowments or prizes, e.g. Carnegie Corporation, Nobel Foundation

For a specific award or prize, see the subject, e.g. Nobel peace prize 341.1

.33 *Fellowships*

.34 Scholarships

Including traveling scholarships, Rhodes scholarships

378 35 Educational exchanges

Including Fulbright scholarships and awards

For exchange of students see 371 39

.36 Student aid

Including loan funds student aid associations college employment bureaus

For placement service for alumni see 371 427 federal aid to veterans 355 115 2

4–98 Higher education in specific countries or institutions

Divide like 940–998 e g English universities 378 42

If preferred arrange colleges and universities of each continent and of United States alphabetically using A1 for general works e g European universities 378 4 A1 McGill University Montreal 378 7 M2 United States universities 378 73 A1 Princeton University 378 73 P9

A special table for arrangement of school and college publications may be found at end of volume 2

For women s colleges see 376 8

99 Professional and technical education in institutions of higher learning

Comprehensive works only

For a special subject see the subject e g medical schools 610 711

379 Education and the state

1 *Public school system*

11 Financial administration of public education

12 Federal and state aid to public education

Including exemption from taxation allocation of funds subsidies land grants

13 Local support of public education

Including taxation endowments nonresident tuition bond issues

379.14 School laws and regulations

Including laws relating to both public and private schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., school laws of Ohio 379.147 71

.15 Supervision and control of public education

Including setting of standards, accrediting, centralization and decentralization, school surveys

For school organization and administration, see 371.2

.151 National supervision and control

.152 State supervision and control

Including activities of state boards of education, state superintendents

.153 Local supervision and control

Including elected or appointed county, city, district boards of education, trustees, supplies, free textbooks

For duties and responsibilities of administrative personnel, see 371.1

.156 Control of textbooks used in public education

State or local regulations of selection, publication, provision, price of textbooks

For use of textbooks in instruction, see 371.32, free textbooks, 379.153

.16 Public institutions of higher learning

Discussion of tax supported colleges and universities

For a specific institution, see the institution, e.g., University of Michigan 378.774 35

379 17 Public secondary and elementary education

Including discussions of theory, functions of tax supported secondary and elementary education

For a specific institution, see the level of school, e g, Wilmington, Delaware, High School 373 751 2

173 Public education in rural areas

175 Centralization of public education facilities

Including consolidated schools, transportation of students

.2 Illiteracy

Including problems caused by illiteracy, surveys statistics, control of illiteracy

For fundamental education, see 370 194

23 Compulsory education [*formerly* *371 52]

For truancy see 371 52

.3 Public and private schools

Tax supported education as contrasted with private and parochial education

For private instruction see 373 1, parochial schools, 377 5

.4–9 History of public education

Including reports of commissions, boards

Divide like 940–999 e g public education in Wyoming 379 787

For history of education see 370 9, history of a specific type or level of education the type or level, e g, history of adult education movement 374 9 history of elementary education in United States, 372 973

380 Public services; public utilities [*formerly* *338.39]

Administration, regulation, finance, facilities, services

For economics of a specific public commodity, see the subject, e g, water supply 338 476 281, its management, the subject, e g, management of a water-supply corporation 658 926 281, social welfare services 360

.1 Theoretic and legal aspects

.11 Supply and demand of public services and utilities

For supply and demand as a factor in production, see 338 018 6, in price determination, 338 522

12 Commercial arbitration

Class marketing channels [*formerly* †380 12] in 658 84

[†.122] Market research and analysis

Class in 658 83

[†.123] Business forecasting

Class in 338 544

[†.124] *Business cycles*

Class in 338 54

[† 125] Cooperative marketing

Class in 334 6

16 Administration and regulation of public utilities

Class control and regulation of industry by government in 338 9, comprehensive works on government corporations in 338 74 [*both formerly* †380 16]

For administration and regulation of a specific public utility, see the subject, e g, railroad transportation 385 1

166 Ownership of public utilities [*formerly also* †380 167]

166 2 *By government*

For government corporations, see 338 74

166 3 By private enterprise

166 4 *Jointly by government and private enterprise*

[† 167] Ownership of public utilities

Class in 380 166

168 Legal privileges of public utilities

Including right of eminent domain, franchise grants, licenses, other concessions

380 169 Obligations of public utilities

Including equal services, facilities, rates, protective measures

.9 History of public services and utilities

Divide like 930–999, e g , history of public utilities in United States 380 973

Class commercial history [*formerly* †*380 9] in 382.09, commercial geography [*formerly* †380 9] in 330 9

381–382 Commerce

Exchange of goods and services

For transportation, see 385–388, marketing, 658 8, production economics, 338 6–338 8

381 Internal commerce (Domestic trade)

Domestic trade practices, interstate commerce

Including trade regulations, barriers, records, statistics

For United States Interstate Commerce Commission, see 385, income and wealth, 339, import trade, 382 5

382 International commerce (World trade)

Conduct of trade between countries, between mother countries and their colonies, protectorates, trusts

Including foreign-trade practices, commercial policy, trade records and statistics, balance of trade, comprehensive works on commerce

For trade agreements, see 337 91, internal commerce, 381

.09 History of commerce [*formerly* †*380 9]

[†.2] Consular service

Class in 341 8

.3 Maladjustments in world trade

Including trade during wartime

.5 Import trade

For domestic trade, see 381

.6 Export trade

383–384 Communication services

For cybernetics see 006 l guistics 400 nonverbal communi cation 419 cryptograpl y 652 8 tl e press 070 1

383 Postal communication

Comprel ensive works

For administration of United States Post Office Department see 353 4 post office departments of other governments 354 offenses against postal laws 364 13

1 Postal services

12 Postal rates and classification

Includ ng franking privileges

122 First class mail

123 Second class mail

124 Third-class mail

125 Fourth class mail (Parcel post)

14 Mail transportation services

142 Ocean mail service

143 Railway mail service

144 Air mail service

145 Local transportation

Collection and deli ery of ma l

Includ ng pneumatic d spatch [*formerly* 1654 8] rural deli ery

146 Star routes

18 Other services

For money o ders see 332 76 postal savings 332.22

182 Insured and registered mail services

183 Special delivery services

184 Collect on delivery services

383.2 **Postage stamps**

Including postal cards, stampt envelopes

.22 **Philately**

Study, collecting, collections of stamps

.222 Counterfeit stamps

Including identification

.223 Commemorative stamps

Including stamps commemorating historic events, coronations, royal marriages

.224 Stamps on specific subjects

Stamps with designs of flowers, animals, portraits, ships, airplanes, maps

For commemorative stamps, see 383 223

.229 Stamps of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, collections of United States stamps 383 229 73

[†.3] **Money orders**

Class in 332 76

.4 **Postal systems and conventions**

Including international mail systems and conventions

.49 National postal systems and conventions

Divide like 930–999, e g, postal system of England 383 494 2

384 Telecommunication [*formerly also* †654]

Administration, regulation, finance, facilities, services of electric and electronic communication organizations

Including comprehensive works on communication, on mass communication

For social impact of mass communication, see 301 243, electric and electronic communication engineering, 621 38, postal communication, 383

.1 **Wire telegraphy [*formerly also* †654.1–†654.4]**

Including comprehensive works on telegraphic communication

For submarine cable telegraphy, see 384 4, radiotelegraphy, 384 52

[† 101 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 384 12

384 12 Administration and regulation

Including government control and ownership [*formerly* †384 101 6], laws and regulations, statistics

Divide like 940–999, e g , laws and regulations on telegraphic communication in United States 384 127 3

For history of telegraphic communication, see 384 109

.13 Financial regulations

Rates, subsidies, taxation

.14 Services

Including telegrams, day letters, night letters

For rates, see 384 13

.15 Facilities

Including communication centers and stations, teleprinters, teletypewriters, facsimile apparatus, stock tickers

.4 **Submarine cable telegraphy [*formerly also* †654.5]**

Administration, regulation, finance, services, facilities

.5 **Wireless communication**

[†.501 6] Government control and ownership

Class government control and ownership of radiotelegraphy in 384 522, of radiotelephony in 384 532, of radiobroadcasting in 384 542

.52 Radiotelegraphy

Divide like 384 1, e g , government control and ownership [*formerly* †384 501 6] 384 522, radiograms 384 524

.53 Radiotelephony

Divide like 384 1, e g , government control and ownership [*formerly* †384 501 6] 384 532, radio telephone rates 384 533

54 Radiobroadcasting

Divide like 384 1, e g , radio-frequency allocation [*formerly* †384 501 6] 384 542

.55 Television communication

•

384.6 **Wire telephony** [*formerly also* †654.6]

Including comprehensive works on telephonic communication, telephonic and telegraphic communication

Divide like 384.1, e.g., government control and ownership [*formerly* †384.601 6] 384.62, long-distance service 384.64

For radiotelephony, see 384.53, *wire telegraphy,* 384.1, *radiotelegraphy,* 384.52

[†.601 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 384.62

.7 **Alarms and warnings** [*formerly* †654.7]

Including fire-alarm systems, air raid, hurricane, flood warning systems

.9 **Other signaling devices** [*formerly* †654.9]

Including codes of visual signaling

For cryptography, see 652.8

385–388 Transportation services [*formerly also* †656]

Conveyance of persons and goods

For transportation insurance, see 368.2, *architecture of transportation terminals,* 725.3, *transportation systems in city planning,* 711.7, *engineering and construction aspects,* 624–629

385 Railroad transportation

Including transportation on standard railroads comprehensive works on transportation, reports of United States Interstate Commerce Commission and public service commissions

For mail transportation services, see 383.14 *a specific system of transportation, the subject, e.g., marine transportation* 387

.012 Comparative studies of transportation systems

Including relation of one system to other means of transportation [*formerly* †385.12, †386.12, †386.212, †386.312, †386.412, †386.512, †387.512] competition between transportation systems

[†.016] Government control and ownership of railroads

Class in 385.1

385.1 *Administration and regulation of railroads*

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †385 016], laws and regulations, statistics

Divide like 940–999, e g, nationalization of British railroads 385 142

Class services [*formerly* *385 1] in 385 2

For history of railroad transportation, see 385 09

[† 12] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

.13 Financial regulations

.132 Rates

For services, see 385.2

.132 2 Passenger and baggage rates

Including rates for Pullman accommodations

.132 3 Express rates

132 4 Freight rates

.132 6 Warehousing and storage rates

133 *Subsidies*

Including land grants to railroads

135 Taxation

.2 Services [*formerly* *385.1]

Time schedules routes

22 Passenger services

Including baggage, Pullman, dining car services

23 Express services

.24 *Freight services*

26 Warehousing and storage services

.3 Facilities

Stations, terminals, railroad yards

Including platforms, sidings

For services, see 385.2

.5 Light railway transportation

Including monorailway transportation [*formerly* †385 65], narrow-gauge industrial, light standard gauge railway transportation

385 6 **Inclined and mountain railway transportation**

Including funicular, rack, cable railway systems

[†.63] **Elevated railways**

Class in 388 44

[†.64] **Subways**

Class in 388 42

[† 65] **Monorailways**

Class in 385 5

.7 **Railway combined with other transportation systems**

72 Unitized cargo systems

Comprehensive works

Including trailers on flatcars piggyback transportation, palletized cargo systems

For container-ship operations, see 387 544

77 Ship railway transportation

Railways transporting vessels overland between bodies of water

.9 **Pipeline transportation**

For pipeline transportation operations of a specific commodity, see the subject, e g , pipeline transportation of petroleum 665 54

386 **Inland waterway transportation**

For comprehensive works on water transportation see 387

[† 12] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

.2 Management and carriers

[† 201 6] Government ownership and control

Class in 386.21

.21 Administration and regulation

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †386 201 6], laws and regulations, statistics

[† 212] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

386.213 Financial regulations

Including rates, tolls, subsidies, taxation

22 Ships for inland waterways

Description, history, rating tonnage, classification

Including ships for transportation on lakes, rivers, canals

Divide like 623 82, e g, tugboat transportation on lakes 386 223 2

For comprehensive works on ships, see 387.2, ferry transportation, 386 6

.24 Services

Including time schedules, routes for passengers and cargo

For inland ports, see 386 8

.3 River transportation

Administration, regulation, finance, services

Including transportation on canalized rivers

For ships, see 386 22, ferry transportation, 386 6, inland ports, 386 8

[† 312] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

.4 Canal transportation

Administration, regulation, finance, services

For ships for inland waterways, see 386 22, ocean going ships, 387.2, inland ports, 386 8, seaports, 387 1

[† 412] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

42 Interoceanic ship canals

Class specific interoceanic ship canals [*formerly* †386 42] other than Suez Canal and American interoceanic ship canals in 386 45

For intracoastal canal systems, see 386 46–386 48

43 Suez Canal

44 American interoceanic ship canals

.444 Panama Canal

445 Nicaragua Canal

447 Tehuantepec Canal

386 45 Other interoceanic ship canals [*formerly* †386 42]

Including canals connecting major bays or other parts of one ocean

Divide like 930–999 e g , transportation on Kiel Canal 386 454 351

46 Noninteroceanic canals

Including transportation on inland canals, intracoastal canal systems canals connecting parts of a given ocean

For canals connecting major bays or other parts of one ocean, see 386 45

47 Noninteroceanic ship canals

Including Cape Cod Canal, Welland Canal, Houston Ship Canal

48 Barge canals

Including New York State Barge Canal, Albert Canal, Dismal Swamp Canal

.5 **Lake transportation**

Administration, regulation finance, services

For ships, see 386 22 ferry transportation, 386 6, inland ports, 386 8

[†.512] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

.6 **Ferry transportation**

Including passenger, vehicular, freight, train ferries

.8 **Inland ports**

For comprehensive works on ports, see 387 1

387 **Marine transportation (Ocean transportation)**

Including comprehensive works on water transportation

For inland waterway transportation, see 386

.1 **Seaports**

Including comprehensive works on ports

For inland ports, see 386 8

[† 101 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387 11

387.11 Port administration and regulations

Government control and ownership [*formerly* †387 101 6], financial regulations, statistics

For specific seaports, see 387 129

.12 Types of seaports

Including bay, estuary, combination, roadstead ports

.129 Specific seaports

Divide like 930–999, e g, Port of New York 387 129 747 1

13 Free ports and harbors [*formerly also* †337 87]

.2 Ocean going ships

Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification

Including lists of vessels, comprehensive works on ships

Divide like 623 82, e g, cargo ships 387.245

For ships for inland waterways, see 386 22, *maritime transport,* 387 5

.5 Merchant marine (Maritime transport)

For maritime law, see 347 75

[† 501 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387 51

51 Administration and regulation

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †387 501 6], maritime laws and regulations, shipping policies, statistics

Class shipping [*formerly* *387 51] in 387 54

[† 512] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385 012

513 Financial regulations

Including rates, tolls, subsidies, taxation

52 Seaways (Trade lanes)

Including international trade routes

522 Intercoastal routes

Including transoceanic routes, main trade lines used in international commerce

For international commerce, see 382

.523 Auxiliary routes

Including irregular routes, tramp routes

387 524 Coastwise routes

Routes used for coastal domestic commerce

For transportation on intracoastal canals see 386 46–386 48

54 Services

Including shipping [*formerly* *387 51] time schedules loading and unloading operations cargo handling

542 Passenger services

Including baggage passenger accommodations

544 Freight services

Including container ship operations

For comprehensive works on unitized cargo systems see 385 72

55 Marine salvage business

Comprehensive works

Class salvage operations [*formerly* *387 55] in 627 7

.7 Air transportation

[† 701 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387 71

71 Administration and regulation

Including government control and ownership [*formerly* †387 701 6] laws and regulations statistics

Divide like 940–999 e g air transport laws and regulations in United States 387 717 3

For history of air transportation see 387 709

72 Airways [*formerly also* †629 132 53]

Commercial air routes

Including route accessories e g beacons markers

73 Facilities

733 Airplanes

Divide like 629 133 3 e g helicopter transportation 387 733 5

736 Airports and landing fields

Including runways terminal buildings hangars control towers warehouses

387.74 Services

Including time schedules

.742 Passenger services

Including baggage, services of air line hostesses

744 Freight services

388 Highway and urban transportation

Including interurban transportation

.1 Roads and highways

Including international highways, superhighways, toll roads, vehicular bridges and tunnels

For highway traffic control, see 388 312

.3 Vehicular transportation

Including automobile transportation

31 Administration and regulation

Including laws and regulations, government control and ownership, statistics

312 Traffic regulations [*formerly also* †629 213 43]

Including highway traffic control [*formerly* *625 79], elimination of traffic congestion, traffic control devices

For prevention of highway accidents, see 614 862

313 Financial regulations

Including rates, subsidies, taxation

For taxation and registration of individual automobiles, see 629 213 4

32 Services

Including time schedules routes

322 Passenger transportation

Including taxicab and motorbus services

324 Freight transportation

Including trucking services

33 Facilities

Including terminals, parking areas

388.4 **Local transit**

Including rapid transit systems

For taxicab and motorbus services, see 388 322

42 Underground railways (Subways) [*formerly* †385 64]

44 Elevated railways [*formerly* †385 63]

.46 Street railways

Including streetcars trolley buses

389 Metrology and standardization

.1 **Weights and measures (Mass and dimension)**

102 6 Laws and regulations

Including specifications and tolerances for weighing and weighing devices

15 Systems of weights and measures

Including conversion tables

152 Metric system

Meter, kilogram, liter system

153 Imperial system (British system)

Yard pound gallon system

159 Other systems

Including proposals for new systems

16 Standards of weights and measures

Including measurement measuring instruments

For theory of physical measurement, see 530 8

.6 **Standardization**

Comprehensive works

Including standards for interchangeability

For tests of materials, see 620 112 standardization in production management, 658 516 of a specific product, the product, e g, gasolines 665 538 2, of weights and measures 389 16

390 Customs and folklore

Including habits, conventions that have become traditional

For social mores, see 301 152, cultural anthropology, 572, ethics, 170, social history of a specific country, 940–999, e g , of Portgual 946 9, comprehensive works on history of civilization and culture, 901 9, civilization and culture of a specific country, 914–919, e g , of Portugal 914 69

.9 History of customs and folklore

Comprehensive works

Class customs of a specific area [*formerly* *390 9] in 914–919 .

For a specific custom in a specific area, see the custom, e g , marriage in Japan 392 5

391 Costume

Social and historic aspects

Including care of person, hairdressing, wigs, beards, tattooing

For management of clothing and personal appearance, see 646, stage costuming, 792 026, ethics of personal appearance, 177 4

.09 History of costume

Including fashion movements, dress reform

Divide like 930–999, e g , costume in Europe 391 094

.1 Costumes of men

.2 Costumes of women

.3 Costumes of children

.4 Costume accessories

Including hats, shoes, underwear, gloves, fans

.45 Buttons and button collecting

392 Customs of life cycle

Class burial customs [*formerly* *392] in 393, sociology of the family [*formerly* †392] in 301 42

For rites of a specific religion, see the religion, e g , Christian rites 265, Moslem marriage rites 297 38, family ethics, 173, war customs, 399

.1 Birth customs

Including christening customs, circumcision

.2 Sacrifice and exposure

392 3 **Family and home customs**

Including kinship customs totems and totemism

For family ethics see 173 structure and functions of family 301 42

4 **Courting customs**

Including engagement customs bundling kissing customs

For sociological aspects of courtship see 301 425 ethics of courtship 177 6

5 **Marriage customs**

Including bridal wedding honeymoon customs

For marriage and divorce laws see 301 420 26 marriage counseling 301 426 premarital examination 614 17 wedding etiquette 395 22

6 **Sex customs**

Including concubinage

For psychology of the sexes see 136 1 sexual ethics 176 sex instruction 612 600 7

393 Treatment of the dead [*formerly* *392]

Comprehensive works

For public health aspects see 614 6

1 **Earth burial customs**

For cemeteries see 718 mortuary buildings 726 8

2 **Cremation customs**

For cremating techniques see 614 62

3 **Embalming customs**

Including mummies

For embalming techniques see 614 64

4 **Exposure of the dead**

9 **Mourning customs**

Including wakes suttees

For mourning etiquette see 395 23

394 Public and social customs

1 **Eating and drinking customs**

Including feasting toasting customs use of tobacco

394.2 **Public festivals**

Including origin of celebration, anniversaries

For public entertainment, see 791, *processions,* 394 5

.25 Carnivals

Including Mardi gras celebrations

For technique of Mardi gras celebrations, see 791 6

.26 Holidays

Including types of holidays, e g , patriotic, seasonal, religious

.268 Special days

Plans and programs for celebration of specific holidays, e g , Memorial Day [*formerly also* †973 768], Christmas, New Year, Queen's Birthday

Arrange alphabetically by name of holiday

Including days which are not legal holidays, but are similarly observed

For special day programs in schools, see 371 365, *folklore of festival days,* 398 33, *celebrations, anniversaries, commemorations of a specific historical event, the event, e.g , Independence Day* 973 313

269 National holiday customs

Divide like 930–999, e g , Mexican holidays 394.269 72

.3 **Public games and dances**

Origin and history of specific games and dances, e g , Maypole dance

For folk dances, see 793 31, *recreation,* 790

.4 **Ceremonial customs and official ceremonies**

Including coronations, inaugurations, jubilees, state visits

.5 **Pageantry customs**

Including processions, parades

For technique and texts of pageants and Mardi gras celebrations, see 791 6, *carnivals,* 394 25

.6 **Fairs**

Including country and county fairs

For industrial fairs, see 606 4, *church bazaars,* 254 8, *public fêtes,* 791 6, *agricultural fairs,* 630 74

.7 **Chivalry**

Including jousts [*formerly also* †791 7], tournaments

For age of chivalry, see 940 17

394.8 **Dueling customs**

Including suicide customs

For trial by duel, see 340.3, *military duels,* 355.13, *ethics of dueling,* 179.7

395 Etiquette

Codes of social and formal conduct

For social ethics, see 177, *military etiquette,* 355.13, *diplomatic etiquette,* 341.7, *business etiquette,* 650.69

.1 **Special groups**

Including etiquette for children, young adults

.2 **Special occasions**

Including etiquette of tipping

.22 Wedding etiquette

Including engagements, showers

.23 Mourning etiquette

.3 **Hospitality**

Including duties of host and hostess, table manners

For entertaining, see 642.4, *hotel management,* 647.94, *eating customs,* 394.1

.4 **Social letter writing etiquette**

For business correspondence, see 651.75, *art of letter writing,* 808.6

396 Woman

Comprehensive works

Including feminism

For woman's relation to or participation in a specific activity, see the subject, e.g., woman suffrage 324.3

.1 **Emancipation of women**

.2 **Legal status of women**

Including property rights of women

.5 **Careers for women**

Comprehensive works only

For employment of women, see 331.4, *careers in a specific field, the subject, e.g., women as teachers* 371.1

.6 **Woman in the home**

396.9 **Woman in history, politics, war**

Including Amazons

For Women's Army Corps, see 355 348, *woman suffrage,* 324.3

397 Gypsies

Class Romany language in 491 49, Romany literature in 891 49 [*both formerly* †397], nomads [*formerly* †*397] in 301.45

398 Folklore

For comparative mythology, see 291 13, *cultural anthropology,* 572, *folk songs,* 784 4

.2 **Legends**

Including tales of animals, birds, tall tales, e g , Paul Bunyan

For animal lore, see 591 508, *plant lore,* 581 508

21 **Folk tales and fables**

Including traditional fairy tales, if desired for juvenile collections, include also modern fairy tales with personal authors

If preferred for juvenile collections, class both traditional and modern fairy tales with fiction, or arrange under a letter classification, e g , jF

For modern fairy tales by personal authors, see the 800's

22 **Legendary heroes**

Narratives based on tradition with or without factual foundation

Including Arthur, Charlemagne, Cid, Faust, Robin Hood, Jesse James, Captain Kidd

For modern literary works based on lives of legendary heroes, see the 800's

23 **Legendary places**

Including legends of imaginary places, geographical myths

Class haunted places [*formerly* *398 23] in 398 32

.3 **Traditional beliefs, customs, superstitions**

Including popular beliefs and practices relating to fire, magic, curses, charms, dreams, predictions, numbers, signs, emblems, local customs

For occultism, see 133

32 **Haunted places [*formerly* *398 23]**

Including tales of cemeteries, caves, ancient ruins, haunted houses

398 33 Folklore of festival days and seasons of the year

For celebration of holidays, see 394 26

.4 Supernatural beings

Including fairies, elves, ogres, monsters, mythical animals

For fairy tales, see 398 21

.5 Chapbooks [*formerly* *655.4]

For book illustration, see 741 64, woodcuts, 761 2

.6 Riddles

Comprehensive works

Including history, folklore

For riddles and conundrums as recreation, see 793 735

[†.7] Dream books

Class in 135 382

.8 Folklore in rhymes and games

Including collections of popular ballads, nursery rhymes, game verses (counting out rhymes), street cries and songs

For music of folk songs, see 784 4, of children's songs, 784 624, anthologies of nonsense verse, 808 81

.9 Proverbs

399 Customs of war

Including arms, armor

For gunsmithing, see 683 4, ornamentation of armor, 739 7

Language

400 Language

Divide specific languages (but not groups of languages) like 420, e g, Portuguese grammar 469 5 See exception under 427 01

For literature, see 800, *comparative works on Indo European languages*, 410

401 Philosophy and theory

Including origin of language, sociology of language

402 Handbooks and outlines

403 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

Limited to philology and linguistics

For polyglot dictionaries, see 413

404 Essays and lectures

405 Periodicals

406 Organizations and societies

407 Study and teaching

Comprehensive works on the teaching of languages

For teaching a specific language, see the language, e g, teaching Spanish 460 7

408 *Collections*

.7 Dialectology

.9 Universal and artificial languages

For simplified forms of a language, see the language, e g, Basic English 428 25

.91 Volapuk

.92 Esperanto

93 Interlingua

409 History and local treatment

Including linguistic atlases

Divide like 930–999 e g languages of Asia 409 5

For distribution of peoples by language see 572 8 *history of a specific language or group of languages the subject e g of English language* 420 9

410 Comparative linguistics

Including translating

For comparative works on a specific language group or subgroup see the group e g Semitic languages 492 *Romance languages* 479 1

411 Written language

Including alphabets transliteration phonetic transcription of languages alphabets used in more than one language e g Roman alphabet

Class pronunciation (orthoepy [*formerly* †411 5 *411]) in 414

For the alphabet used in a specific language see the language e g French alphabet 441 1 *writing* 652 *hieroglyphics* 419 25

412 Etymology (Derivation)

Including semantics in its linguistic aspect

For general semantics see 149 94

413 Lexicography

Including polyglot dictionaries

414 Sounds of language

Including phonology phonetics phonemics pronunciation (orthoepy [*formerly* †411 5 *411])

For phonetic transcription of languages see 411 *physiology of speech* 612 78

415 Grammar

Including morphology syntax

416 Prosody [*formerly* *808 1]

For art of poetry see 808 1

417 Inscriptions and paleography

Including diplomatics

418 Texts

Including linguistic sources e g specimen verses polyglot phrase books

419 Nonverbal communication

Communication otherwise than by words or letters of an alphabet

Including gestures, facial expressions, smoke signals, drumbeats, whistles, flags, use of colored and positioned lights

For a specific use of nonverbal communication, see the use, e g, alarms and warnings 384 7, codes of visual signaling, 384 9

.1 **Sign language**

For communication for deaf-mutes, see 371 912

.2 **Picture language**

Including warning and information signs

.25 **Hieroglyphics**

For Egyptian hieroglyphics, see 493 111

420 English Ly-Firm Class,

76 Problems and questions

Including examination papers [*formerly* †428 9]

421 Written and spoken elements

.1 **Alphabet**

Including vowels, diphthongs, aspirates [*all formerly* †421 2], consonants [*formerly* †421 3]

[† 2–† 3] Vowels, diphthongs, aspirates, consonants

Class in 421 1

.4 **Orthography**

For spellers, see 428 1, *spelling in elementary education,* 372 42

42 Spelling reform

Including phonetic spelling

.5 **Sounds**

Including pronunciation, phonetics, phonology, orthoepy

Class accent [*formerly* *421 5] in 421 6

.6 Accent [*formerly* *421 5]

.7 **Inscriptions and paleography**

.8 **Abbreviations**

.9 **Punctuation**

Including capitalization

422 **Etymology (Derivation)**

Including semantics in its linguistic aspect

For general semantics see 149 94

.2 Prefixes and suffixes

.4 *Foreign elements*

.5 Derivation of noun forms

.6 Derivation of adjectival forms

.7 Derivation of pronominal forms

.8 Derivation of verbal forms

.9 Derivation of particles

423 **Dictionaries and lexicography**

Class bilingual dictionaries
to users of the individual
for the better known la
443 2 French Russian dict

.1 Idioms

For lists of terms and phrases used in learning the language see 428 3

424 *Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms*

425 **Grammar**

Descriptive and historical grammar

For textbooks for learning English see 428 *grammar in elementary education* 372 6

.1 Morphology and inflection

.2 Syntax

Class order of words in 425 3 parts of speech in 425 5–425 9 [*both formerly* *425 2]

.3 Order of words and clauses [*formerly* *425 2]

.4 Specific kinds of sentences

.5 Nouns [*formerly* *425 2]

.6 Adjectives and articles [*both formerly* *425 2]

.7 Pronouns [*formerly* *425 2]

425.8 Verbs [*formerly* *425.2]

9 Particles [*formerly* *425.2]

Including adverbs, conjunctions, interjections

426 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

427 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

For history of English language, see 420.9

[† 01] Old English (Anglo Saxon) to 1100

Class in 429 This is an exception to general rule stated under 400 use —701 for earliest form of other languages

02 Middle English, 1100–1500

09 Modern slang

Words and phrases used by particular classes of society, coined expressions of an ephemeral character and of picturesque or exaggerated meaning

.1–.8 **Dialects in England**

Local, usually nonliterary, forms of the language

Divide like 942.1–942.8, e g , Cockney dialect 427.1

.9 **Other dialects**

Divide like 940–999, e g , Australian English 427.994

428 Textbooks for learning the language

Works other than those intended for use in elementary schools

.1 **Spellers**

For elementary school spellers, see 372.42, *orthography,* 421.4

.2 **Elementary composition**

Works on formation of sentences, paragraphs verses, as distinguisht from literary composition

For elementary school composition, see 372.6 *literary composition (rhetoric),* 808

24 Language textbooks for those whose native language is not English

Divide by language of those for whom intended like 430–499, e g , English textbooks for Spaniards 428.246

.25 Modifications of the language

Including Basic English

428.3 Use of words

Including errors of speech, vulgarisms, vocabulary building, lists of words and phrases for learning the language

For slang, see 427 09

.4 Remedial reading other than elementary

Including comprehensive works on remedial reading

For elementary remedial reading, see 372 413

[†.5] Adult education readers

Class in 428 6

.6 Elementary readers

Readers for use in third and fourth grades too elementary to be literature

Including adult education readers [*formerly* †428 5], readers made up of selections [*formerly* †428 7]

For [illegible]
or fi [illegible]
the [illegible]
German scientific readers 508

64 Readers for those whose native language is not English

[†.7] Selections

Class in 428 6

[†.9] Examination papers

Class in 420 76

429 Old English (Anglo-Saxon) [*formerly also* †427.01]

430 German

431 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

432 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

433 *Dictionaries and lexicography*

Divide like 423

434 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

435 Grammar

Divide like 425

436 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

437 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

.01 Old High German to 1100

.02 Middle High German, 1100–1500

.1–.6 Dialects in Germany and Austria

Divide like 943.1–943 6, e g , Bavarian dialect 437 3

For Low German dialects, see 439 4

.9 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999, e g , Swiss German 437 949 4

Class Yiddish [*formerly* *437 9] in 492 49

438 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

439 Other Germanic languages

Including comprehensive works on Germanic languages

.1 Western Germanic languages

.2 Frisian

Class Old Saxon [*formerly* †439 2] in 439 4

.3 Netherlands languages

31 Dutch

.32 Flemish

36 Afrikaans

.4 Low German (Plattdeutsch)

Including Old Saxon [*formerly* †439.2], Middle and Modern Low German, and their dialects

.5 Scandinavian languages

.6 Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

.69 Modern Icelandic

.699 Faroese

.7 Swedish

439.8 Danish and Norwegian languages

.81 Danish

.82 Norwegian (Rigsmaal)

Class Landsmaal [*formerly* †*439 82] in 439 83

.83 Landsmaal [*formerly* †*439 82]

.9 Gothic

440 French

441 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

442 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

443 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

444 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

445 Grammar

Divide like 425

446 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

447 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

01 Old French to 1400

02 Middle French, 1400–1600

.1–.8 Dialects in France

Divide like 944 1–944 8, e g , Languedoc 447 8

For Franco-Provençal dialects see 449

.9 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999 e g Canadian French 447 971 4

448 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

449 Provençal

Including Franco-Provençal dialects

.9 Catalan

450 Italian

451 Written and spoken elements
Divide like 421

452 Etymology (Derivation)
Divide like 422

453 Dictionaries and lexicography
Divide like 423

454 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

455 Grammar
Divide like 425

456 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

457 Early and nonliterary forms of the language
01 Old Italian to 1300
02 Middle Italian, 1300–1600

.1–.9 Dialects in Italy
Divide like 945 1–945 9, e g , Neapolitan dialect 457 7

.99 Other dialects
Divide like 940–999, e g , Swiss Italian 457 994 94

458 Textbooks for learning the language
Divide like 428

459 Rumanian

.9 Rhaeto-Romance languages
Including Romansh, Friulian, Ladin

460 Spanish

461 Written and spoken elements
Divide like 421

462 **Etymology (Derivation)**

Divide like 422

463 **Dictionaries and lexicography**

Divide like 423

464 **Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

465 **Grammar**

Divide like 425

466 **Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]**

467 **Early and nonliterary forms of the language**

.01 Old Spanish to 1100

.02 Middle Spanish, 1100–1600

.1–.8 **Dialects in Spain**

Divide like 946 1–946 8, e g , Andalusian dialect 467 8

For Basque language, see 499 92

.9 **Other dialects**

Divide like 940–999, e g , Argentine Spanish 467 982

468 **Textbooks for learning the language**

Divide like 428

469 **Portuguese**

.7 **Early and nonliterary forms of the language**

.71–.79 **Dialects in Portugal**

Divide like 946 91–946 99, e g , Madeiran dialect 469 78

.798 **Brazilian Portuguese**

Divide like 420

.799 **Other Portuguese dialects**

Divide like 940–999, e g , Portuguese dialect in Angola 469 799 673

.9 **Galician (Gallegan)**

470 **Latin**

For comprehensive works on Latin and Greek, see 489 1, *other Italic languages,* 479 9

471 **Written and spoken elements**

Divide like 421

472 **Etymology (Derivation)**
Divide like 422

473 **Dictionaries and lexicography**
Divide like 423

474 **Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

475 **Grammar**
Divide like 425

476 **Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]**

477 **Historic and nonliterary forms of the language**

.01 Old Latin to 80 B.C.

.03 Postclassical Latin
Including language of church fathers
For medieval and modern Latin, see 479.3

[*.05] Vulgar Latin
Class in 477.1

.1 Vulgar Latin [*formerly* *477.05]

478 **Textbooks for learning the language**
Divide like 428

479 **Languages derived from Latin**

.1 **Romance languages**
Comprehensive works
For a specific Romance language, see the language, e.g., French language 440

.3 **Medieval and modern Latin**
Divide like 420

.9 **Other Italic languages**
Including Oscan, Umbrian
For Etruscan language, see 499.94

480 **Greek**
For comprehensive works on Latin and Greek, see 489.1

481 **Written and spoken elements**
Divide like 421

482 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

483 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

484 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

485 Grammar

Divide like 425

486 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

487 Historic and nonliterary forms of the language

For Modern Greek, see 489 3

02 Hellenistic Greek, 300 B C–600 A D

[*03–*04] Biblical Greek

Class in 487 3

05 Byzantine Greek, 600–1500

.2–.9 Greek dialects

Divide like 932–939, e g, Macedonian Greek 487 81, Biblical (New Testament, Septuagint) Greek [*formerly* *487 03–*487 04] 487 3

488 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

489 Classical languages; Modern Greek

Including comprehensive works on Hellenic group

.1 Classical languages

Comprehensive works on Latin and Greek languages

For Latin, see 470, Greek, 480

.3 Modern Greek

490 Other languages

Including comprehensive works on Oriental languages

491 Other Indo European languages

Including comprehensive works on Indo-European languages

For a specific group or language see the subject e g, Germanic languages 439

SUMMARY

491 1–.4	Indic languages
.5	Iranian and Armenian languages
6	Celtic languages
7	Russian
79	Ukrainian (Ruthenian)
799	Belorussian (White Russian)
8	Other Slavic languages
9	Baltic languages
99	Other Indo-European languages

1 Indic languages

Including Indo-Iranian languages

2 Sanskrit

27 Sanskrit dialect (Primary Prakrits)

29 Other Old Indic languages

Including Vedic

3 Middle Indic languages

Including comprehensive works on Prakrit languages

For primary Prakrits see 491 27 *tertiary Prakrits* 491 4

.370 1 Pali

4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

41 Sindhi

42 Panjabi

43 Hindustani

Including literary forms Hindi Urdu

491.44 Bengali

.45 Oriya

.46 Marathi

.47 Gujarati

.48 Singhalese

.49 Other modern Indic languages

Including Romany (Gypsy [*formerly* †397]), Assamese

Arrange alphabetically by language

.5 Iranian and Armenian languages

Including Old Persian, Avestan, Pahlavi, Parsi, Ossetic, Kurdish, Pashto (Pushtu)

.54 Armenian

.55 Modern Persian

.59 Other Iranian languages

Including Baluchi, Pamir languages

.6 Celtic languages

Including Scottish Gaelic, Cornish, Breton

.62 Irish

.66 Welsh

[†.69] Basque

Class in 499 92

.7 Russian

Class comprehensive works on Slavic languages [*formerly* *491 7] in 491 8

.770 1 Old Russian, 1100–1550

.770 2 Middle Russian, 1550–1750

.79 Ukrainian (Ruthenian)

.799 Belorussian (White Russian)

491 8 **Other Slavic languages**

Including comprehensive works on Slavic languages [*formerly* *491 7], Balto-Slavic languages, Modern (Russian) Church Slavic

81 Bulgarian

817 01 Old Church Slavic

819 Macedonian

For Macedonian Greek, see 487 81

82 Serbo Croatian

Including works on Serbian

83 Croatian

.84 Slovenian

85 Polish

86 Czech (Bohemian)

87 Slovak

Including Moravian

88 Sorbian (Wendish)

89 Polabian

.9 **Baltic languages**

For Balto Slavic languages, see 491 8

91 Old Prussian

92 Lithuanian

93 Latvian (Lettish)

.99 **Other Indo European languages**

Including Hittite, Tokharian, Thraco Phrygian languages, Illyrian languages

991 Albanian

492 Semitic languages

Including Hamito-Semitic languages

.1 Aramaic languages

19 Akkadian (Assyro Babylonian)

2 West Aramaic languages

For Samaritan, see 492 5

29 Biblical Aramaic (Chaldean)

492 3 East Aramaic languages

39 Syriac

4 Hebrew

49 Yiddish [formerly *437 9]

Including comprehensive works on Jewish languages other than Hebrew

499 Other Jewish languages

Divide like 420–499 e g Ladino (Judeo Spanish) 492 499 6

5 Samaritan

6 Phoenician (Punic, Carthaginian)

69 Ugaritic

7 Arabic

8 Ethiopic languages

Including Geez Amharic

For Hamitic Ethiopian languages see 493 5

9 South Arabic and other languages related to Arabic

Including Himyaritic Minean Sabean Mahri Sokotri

493 Hamitic languages

For Hamito-Semitic languages see 492

1 Old Egyptian

2 Coptic

3 Libyan Berber languages

Including Kabyle Tamashek (Tuareg)

5 Cushitic (Hamitic Ethiopian) languages

Including Somali Galla

494 Finno Ugric, Turkic, other linguistic groups

1 Tungusic languages

Including Manchu

2 Mongolic languages

Including Kalmuk Khalkha Buryat

3 Turkic languages

Including Yakut Uigur Kirghiz

35 Turkish proper

494.4 **Samoyed languages**

Including Yurak (Nenets), Ostyak-Samoyed (Selkup)

For Ugro-Ostyak, see 494 5

.5 **Finno-Ugric languages**

Including Cheremiss (Mari), Mordvin, Permian, Ziryen (Komi), Votyak (Udmurt), Ugro-Ostyak

.511 Hungarian (Magyar)

.54 Western Finnish languages

.541 Finnish

.545 Estonian

.55 Lappish

.6 **Paleo-Siberian and Ainu languages**

Including Chukchi, Koryak, Gilyak

[†.7] **Caucasian languages**

Class in 499 96 [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series, No 26, Oct. 1948) †494 7]

.8 **Dravidian languages**

Class Caucasian languages [*formerly* *494 8] in 499 96

811 Tamil

812 Malayalam

813 Telugu

814 Kanarese (Kannada)

815 Tulu

816 Kodagu

821 Kota

822 Toda

823 Gondi

824 Khond (Kandh)

826 Kurukh (Orâon)

495 **Languages of East and Southeast Asia**

Including Andaman, Burushaski, Karen, Lolo, Miao

.1 **Chinese**

.4 **Tibetan**

495.5 Himalayan and Assamese dialects

For Assamese language see 491.49

6 Japanese

7 Korean

8 Burmese

91 Siamese

Including comprehensive works on Thai languages

92 Annamese languages

Including Annamese, Muong

93 Mon Khmer languages

Including Mon, Khmer (Cambodian)

95 Munda languages

Including Mundari, Santali

496 African languages

Including Hausa

For Semitic languages see 492, Hamitic languages 493

.1 Hottentot languages

Class Bushman languages [*formerly* *496.1] in 496.2

.2 Bushman languages [*formerly* *496.1]

.3 Bantu languages

Including Swahili, Zulu

.4 Negro dialects

Including Ewe, Kanuri, Mende

.5 Dialects of Sudan

Including Negro-Hamito Semitic dialects, e.g. Fulah

497 North American Indian languages

Based on Trager, G. L. "A Bibliographic Classification for Linguistics and Languages." *Studies in Linguistics* v. 3 (1945)

.1 Eskimo

Including Aleutian

.2 Na Dene

Including Tlingit, Athabascan (Chipewyan, Apachean, Navaho)

497 3 **Algonkian Mosan**

Including Delaware Oj b ay Cree Nootka

4 **Macro-Penutian**

Includ ng Coos Tsimsl ian Mixe Hopi Ute Aztec Maya Qu che Cl nook

5 **Hokan-Siouan**

Includ ng Y kin Huron Cherokee Choctaw Creek

6 **Macro-Otomanguean**

Including Poploca Mangi ean Mixtec Zapotec

7 **Tarascan**

8 **Miskito-Matagalpan**

Including unclas ified languages of Mexico and Central America, e g Cu tlatec Olmec

498 South American Indian languages

Includ ng Kechua Tupi Guarani

499 Austronesian

1 **Papuan languages**

2 **Malayan (Indonesian) languages**

211 Tagalog

221 Malay proper

2?2 Javanese

4 **Polynesian languages**

Including Hawa an

5 **Melanesian and Micronesian languages**

6 **Australian aboriginal languages**

9 Other languages

92 **Basque [*formerly* †491 69]**

93 **Elamite**

94 **Etruscan**

95 **Sumerian**

96 **Caucasian languages [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series No 26 Oct 1948) †494 7 *494 8]**

Includ ng Chechen C rcassian Kartvelian Georg an Svanetian M ngrel an Laz

Pure Science

500 Pure science

Class manufacture of scientific measuring instruments [*formerly* *500–*599] in 681 2

For applied science, see 600

83 Formulas, tables, statistics

84 Audio-visual aids

.86 Models and modelmaking

For a specific scientific model, see the subject, e g , models of organic compounds 547 086

501 Philosophy and theory

Including foundations of science

502 Handbooks and outlines

503 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

504 Essays and lectures

505 Periodicals

506 Organizations and societies

507 Study and teaching

508 Collections

.3 General scientific travels and surveys

For expeditions limited to a specific scientific field, see the subject, e g , general geological expeditions 550 72, *geological expeditions to Japan* 555 2

.4–.9 General scientific travels in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g , scientific expeditions to Antarctica 508 99

509 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e g , history of science in Germany 509 43

510 Mathematics

For mathematical recreations, see 793 74, *business mathematics,* 511.8

.2 Handbooks and outlines

Class collections [*formerly* †510 2] in 510 8

.7 Study and teaching

78 Computation instruments and machines

Comprehensive works on mechanical, electromechanical, and electronic calculating devices

Class manufacture of computation instruments and machines [*formerly* *510 78] in 681 141–681 144

For a specific use of computation instruments and machines, see the subject, e g , calculating machines in offices 651.264

782 Analogue machines

782 3 Slide rules and planimeters

782 4 Differential analyzers

Electromechanical and electronic machines used only in the solution of systems of differential equations

783 Digital machines

For abacus, see 511 207 8

783 2 Adding and calculating machines

Manually-operated mechanical and electromechanical machines

783 4 Automatic (Electronic) digital computers

Including UNIVAC, RAYDAC, BINAC punched card computing machines

.8 *Collections [formerly †510.2]*

83 Mathematical tables

Including logarithm tables tables of roots and powers

For tables applying to a specific branch of mathematics, see the subject, e g , geometry tables 513 083, *algebra tables* 512 9

511 Arithmetic

[076] Arithmetic problems

Class in 511 9

[083] Arithmetic tables

Class in 511 9

1 Numeration systems

Including decimal duodecimal dyadic systems of arithmetic

2 Fundamental arithmetic operations

Class theory of numbers [*formerly* *511 2] in 512 81

201 8 Short cuts and rapid calculations

207 6 Algorisms (Algorithms)

For algorisms for a specific process see the subject e g extraction of square roots 511 7

207 8 Abacus

22 Addition and subtraction

23 Multiplication and division

3 Prime numbers and factoring

Including greatest common divisor lowest common multiple

For theory of primes see 512 814

4 Fractions and decimal fractions

For continued fractions repeated decimals see 517.21

[† 5] Permutations and combinations

Class in 512 5

6 Proportion [*formerly also* †512 6] and ratio

Class progressions [*formerly* †511 6] in 512 6

61 Magic squares [*formerly also* †793 74]

For permutations and combinations see 512 5

7 Involution and evolution

Determination of squares and cubes extraction of square roots and cube roots

For exponents and logarithms see 512 7 *tables of roots and powers* 510 83

511.8 **Business mathematics**

Including mensuration, mercantile rules, calculation of interest

For accounting, see 657

.808 3 Tables

Including interest tables

.9 **Arithmetic problems and tables**

For tables of roots and powers, see 510.83

512 Algebra

For algebraic geometry, see 516 5, *algebraic functions,* 517 83

[076] Algebra problems

Class in 512 9

[083] Algebra tables

Class in 512 9

.1 **Algebraic postulates**

Former heading Systems of algebra

.2 **Algebraic equations and imaginary quantities**

21 Algebraic equations *[formerly also* †512 3*]*

Including solutions of linear and quadratic simultaneous equations, binomial and polynomial equations

For indeterminate equations, see 512 23, *reciprocal equations,* 512.26, *determinants,* 512 83

22 Approximate computations

Former heading Higher numeric equations

23 Indeterminate equations (Diophantine equations)

Including diophantine analysis

24 Imaginary quantities

Including theory of imaginary roots

26 Reciprocal equations

Equations which are unchanged if the unknown is replaced by its reciprocal

[† 3] **Algebraic equations, maxima and minima**

Class algebraic equations in 512 21, maxima and minima in 517 27

[† 4] **Series, continued fractions, binomial theorem, Taylor's theorem**

Class in 517 21

512 5 Combinatory analysis

Including permutations and combinations [*formerly* †511 5] distribution

For magic squares see 511 61 *probabilities* 519 1

6 Progressions [*formerly also* †511 6]

Including simple arithmetic and geometric progressions

Class proportion [*formerly* †512 6] in 511 6

For series see 517 21

7 Exponents and logarithms

Former heading Involution and evolution

Including theorems of exponents and logarithms zero negative and fractional exponents calculations of values of powers and roots by means of logarithms

For logarithm tables see 510 83

8 Abstract algebra

81 Theory of numbers [*formerly* *511 2]

Including development of number systems [*formerly* *517 1]

812 Divisibility

Including theory of measure [*formerly* *517 1] factorization linear congruences

For diophantine analysis see 512 23

813 Fermat s theorem

Including higher congruences forms residues partitions

.814 Theory of primes

815 Algebraic fields

Including rings ring ideals [*both formerly* *512 89]

For theory of groups see 512 86

816 Complex multiplication

817 Transfinite numbers [*formerly* *517 1]

Including aggregates assemblages Cantor s theory

82 Theory of equations

Class complex variables [*formerly* †512 82] in 517 8

.83 Determinants

Including ordinary symmetrical numerical infinite polydimensional determinants

84 Symmetrical functions of roots

512.85 Elimination discriminants

Class quaternion algebra in 512.893, vector algebra in 512.895 [*both formerly* *512.85]

.86 Theory of groups

Including abstract, substitution, linear, continuous, Abelian groups, transformations, substitutions

For geometric transformations, see 516.55, *algebraic fields,* 512.815, *calculus of operations,* 517.7

.865 Lattice theory [*formerly* *512.89]

.87 Theory of forms (Quantics)

Including algebraic forms, modular theory

.88 Invariant theory

Including binary, ternary, n-ary, orthogonal invariants

.89 Universal algebra

Class lattice theory in 512.865, rings, ring ideals in 512.815 [*all formerly* *512.89]

For kinematic geometry, see 516.8

.893 Quaternion algebra [*formerly* *512.85]

.894 Space analysis (Ausdehnungslehre)

.895 Vector algebra [*formerly* *512.85]

.896 Matrices and tensor algebra

.897 Linear algebras

For linear and dynamic programming, see 519.92

.9 Algebra problems and tables

For logarithm tables, see 510.83

513–516 Geometry

513 Elementary Euclidean geometry

[.076] Geometry problems

Class in 513.9

.083 Geometry tables

.1 Elementary plane geometry

Including curves [*formerly* †513.2]

[†.2] Curves

Class in 513.1

513.3 Elementary solid geometry

Including curved surfaces [*formerly* †513 4]

[†.4] Curved surfaces

Class in 513.3

.5 Modern geometry (Post-Euclidean geometry)

Including advanst plane and solid geometry

For Cartesian geometry, see 516

.6 Denumerative geometry

Determination of the number of specific configurations fulfilling a sufficient number of conditions

[†.7] Infinitesimal and kinematic geometry

Class infinitesimal geometry in 516 7, kinematic geometry in 516 8

.8 Non-Euclidean geometries

.81 Absolute geometry of one, two, and three dimensions

.82 n Dimensional geometries

Including fourth dimension geometry, hyperspace geometry, Hilbert space [*formerly* *517 1]

.83 Geometric topology (Analysis situs)

.84 Lobachevskian geometry

Including geometries of Bolyai, Gauss

.85 Riemannian geometry

.9 Geometry problems

.92 Famous problems

Including circle squaring, trisection of angles, duplication of cubes

.94 Porisms

514 Trigonometry

[076] Trigonometry problems

Class in 514 9

083 Trigonometry tables

.5 Plane trigonometry

514.6 **Spherical trigonometry**

Including solution of spherical triangles [*formerly* †514 7]

[† 7] Solution of spherical triangles

Class in 514 6

.9 **Trigonometry problems**

515 Descriptive geometry

For mechanical drawing, see 744 422

.1 **Orthogonal projection on two planes**

.2 **Isometric and other one plane projections**

.3 **Oblique projections**

.4 **Conical projections**

.5 **Spherical projections**

For map projections, see 526 8

.6 **Perspective**

For perspective in drawing, see 742

.7 **Shades and shadows**

For shades and shadows in mechanical drawing, see 744 43, *in freehand drawing,* 741 4

.8 **Stereotomy**

Class stereotomy in masonry in 693 1, in sculpture in 731 463, in carpentry in 694, in stairbuilding in 694 8 [*all formerly* †515 81–†515 83]

516 Analytic geometry (Cartesian geometry, Coordinate geometry)

[076] Analytic geometry problems

Class in 516 9

083 Analytic geometry tables

.1 **Straight lines and coordinate axes**

.2 **Curves in Cartesian form**

Including conics (circles, ellipses, hyperbolas, parabolas), higher plane curves

.3 **Planes and lines in space with Cartesian forms**

.4 **Surfaces in Cartesian form**

Including spheres, quadrics, ellipsoids, hyperboloids, paraboloids, higher surfaces

516.5 **Modern algebraic geometry**

Including systems of coordinates, abridged and symbolic notations, conics, quadrics, higher planes and surfaces, space curves

For conics in Cartesian form, see 516 2, *quadrics in Cartesian form,* 516 4

.55 Geometric transformations

Former heading Poles and polars

Including quadratic, Cremona, birational, isogonal transformations, reciprocation, inversions, correlation methods

For theory of groups, see 512 86

.56 Harmonic and anharmonic properties

.57 Projective geometry

Spatial relations, ideas, and properties unaltered by projective transformations

.6 **Line geometry**

Including systems of curves, surfaces, rays

66 Modular geometry

.7 **Differential geometry (Infinitesimal geometry [*formerly* †513.7])**

.74 Projective differential geometry

.8 **Kinematic geometry [*formerly also* †513.7]**

Calculus of direction and position

.82 Quaternions

For quaternion algebra, see 512 893

83 Vector and tensor analysis

For vector algebra, see 512 895, *tensor algebra,* 512 896

.9 **Analytic geometry problems**

517 Calculus

For analytical mechanics, see 531 017

[076] Calculus problems

Class in 517 9, differential calculus problems in 517 29, integral calculus problems in 517.39

.083 Calculus tables

For integral calculus tables, see 517.39

517.1 **Infinitesimal calculus**

Comprehensive works on differential and integral calculus

Class theory of functions of real variables in 517 52, development of number systems in 512 81, theory of point sets in 517 521, functional analysis in 517 5, Hilbert space in 513 82, transfinite numbers in 512 817, theory of measure in 512 812 [*all formerly* *517 1]

For differential calculus, see 517 2, *integral calculus,* 517 3

.2 **Differential calculus** [*formerly* *517.3]

Class summability methods in 517 31, orthogonal expansions in 517 35, Fourier series in 517 355 [*all formerly* *517.2]

21 Series [*formerly also* †512 4]

Indicated sum of the terms of a sequence

Including continued fractions, binomial theorem, Taylor's theorem (Maclaurin's series) [*all formerly* †512 4], finite, infinite, binomial, reciprocal, factorial, divergent series, repeated decimals

For simple arithmetic and geometric progressions, see 512 6

22 Indeterminate forms

27 Variation of function values

Including maxima and minima [*formerly also* †512 3]

28 Differential forms and invariants

Including Jacobian, Hessian, Pfaffian forms

29 Differential calculus problems

.3 **Integral calculus**

Class differential calculus [*formerly* *517 3] in 517 2

.31 Methods of integration

Including summability methods [*formerly* *517 2]

32 Definite integrals

Including gamma functions [*formerly* *518 1], Euler functions

33 Rectifications

34 Multiple integrals

Including theorems of Green and Stoke

35 Orthogonal expansions [*formerly* *517 2]

352 Spherical harmonics

Including Legendre's functions [*formerly* *518 2], Laplace's functions

517.353 Cylindrical harmonics

Including Bessel s functions [*formerly* *518 3]

.354 Ellipsoidal harmonics

Including Lamé's functions

355 Fourier series [*formerly* *517 2]

36 Elliptic [*formerly* *518 4] and hyperelliptic functions

Including Abelian, theta, modular, multiply periodic functions

37 Integral equations

Including integral differential equations

.38 Differential equations

For differential forms and invariants, see 517 28

382 Ordinary differential equations

Including linear and nonlinear differential equations

383 Partial differential equations

Including partial differential equations of the first and higher orders

39 Integral calculus problems and tables

517.4–517.8 Branches and applications of calculus

For calculus of direction and position, see 516 8

.4 **Calculus of variations**

.5 **Calculus of functions (Functional analysis [*formerly* *517.1])**

Including functional equations, special functions [*formerly* *518]

For a specific function, see the subject, e g gamma functions 517 32

52 Functions of real variables [*formerly* *517 1]

For functions of complex variables see 517 8

521 Theory of point sets [*formerly* *517 1]

Including Moore's general analysis

.6 **Calculus of finite differences**

Including interpolations, extrapolations numerical analysis

517.7 **Calculus of operations**

Including transformations

For geometric transformations, see 516 55, *theory of groups,* 512 86, *algebraic fields,* 512 815

.8 **Functions of complex variables** *[formerly also* †512.82]

For functions of real variables, see 517 52, *elliptic and hyperelliptic functions,* 517 36

81 Riemann surfaces

Including Riemann-zeta functions *[formerly* *518 5]

83 Algebraic functions

85 Automorphic and polyhedral functions

88 Hypergeometric functions

.9 **Calculus problems**

[*518] Special functions

Class in 517 5

[*.1] **Gamma functions**

Class in 517 32

[*.2] **Legendre's functions**

Class in 517 352

[*.3] **Bessel's functions**

Class in 517 353

[*.4] **Elliptic functions**

Class in 517 36

[*.5] **Riemann zeta functions**

Class in 517 81

519 Probabilities and statistical mathematics

For gambling and betting systems, chances of winning, see 795 01

.1 Probabilities

Including mathematical expectation [*formerly also* †519 2], prediction [*formerly also* †519 4]

[†.2] *Mathematical expectation*

Class in 519 1

[†.3] Testimony

Class in 347 94

[†.4] Mathematical predictions

Class in 519 1

.6 Theory of errors

.7 Information theory

Mathematical treatment of information transmission

.8 Treatment of data

Including application of methods of least squares, theory of closest approximation

Class programming [*formerly* *519 8] in 519 92

.9 Statistical mathematics [*formerly also* *311.2]

For statistics, see 310

92 Programming [*formerly also* *519 8]

Including linear and dynamic programming, mathematical treatment of design of experiments

93 Mathematical theory of sampling

Including theory of quality control

520 Astronomy and allied sciences

520 1–525 7 Astronomy

.1 **Ancient and medieval astronomy**

Including natural astrology

For modern astrology see 133 5

.7 **Study and teaching of astronomy**

[72] Observatories

Class in 522 1

78 Astronomical instruments

Comprehensive works

For specific astronomical instruments, see 522 2–522 6

9 **History of astronomical knowledge**

521 Theoretical astronomy

Including celestial motions

For motions of an individual celestial body see the body e g, motion of Mars 523 43

1 **Celestial mechanics**

Including celestial dynamics

11 Laws of planetary equilibrium and motion

12 Law of universal gravitation and motion [*formerly also* †531 51]

For gravity see 531 5

13 Problems of three and *n* bodies

2 **Astronomical coordinates**

Comprehensive works

Including horizon equator galactic systems of coordinates

For ecliptic (celestial) coordinates see 522 71 *geographic coordinates* 526 6

3 **Orbits**

Including Kepler s problem

For orbit of an individual celestial body see the body e g, orbit of Mars 523 43

4 **Perturbations**

5 **Theory of planets**

521.6 **Satellites**

Including theory of satellites

For moon, see 523 3, artificial satellites 629 138 82

63 Satellites of Mars

65 Satellites of Jupiter

66 Satellites of Saturn

67 Satellites of Uranus

68 Satellites of Neptune

.7 **Theory of comets**

8 **Theory of eclipses, transits, occultations**

.9 **Precession and nutation**

For corrections in precession see 522 95 in nutation, 522 96

522 Practical and spherical astronomy

SUMMARY

522 1	Observatories
2	Telescopes
3	Meridional instruments
4	Extrameridional instruments
5	Auxiliary instruments
6	Observational techniques
7	Spherical astronomy
9	Corrections

522 1–522 67 Practical astronomy

For spherical astronomy see 522 7

.1 **Observatories**

19 History, reports, serial publications of observatories

Divide like 930–999 e g history of United States Naval Observatory in Washington, D C 522 197 53

2 **Telescopes**

For zenith telescopes see 522 43 equatorial telescopes, 522 46

21 Reflecting telescopes

.22 Refracting telescopes

.23 Eyepiece and accessories

.24 Object glass

Including lens mirror

522 25 Mountings

252 Altazimuth mountings

.26 Equatorial mountings

27 Transit mountings

29 Famous telescopes

Divide like 930–999 e g Hale 200 inch telescope at Palomar Observatory California 522 297 949 8

3 Meridional instruments

For transit mountings see 522.27 zenith telescopes 522 43

4 Extrameridional instruments

41 Sextants quadrants reflecting circles, astrolabes

43 Zenith telescopes

46 Equatorial telescopes

5 Auxiliary instruments

51 Sidereal clocks and chronometers

52 Chronographs

53 Micrometers

54 Personal equation machines

For correction of personal equation see 522 97

56 Instruments for solar observation

562 Spectroheliographs and photoheliographs

563 Coronagraphs

58 Heliostats

6 Observational techniques

62 Astronomical photometry

622 Photographic photometry

623 Photoelectric photometry

63 Astronomical photography

For photographic photometry see 522 622

65 Astronomical polarimetry

67 Astronomical spectroscopy

For spectroscopy of a specific celestial body see the body e g lunar spectroscopy 523 37

522.7 Spherical astronomy

For application of spherical astronomy to geodesy see 526.6

.71 Celestial sphere and coordinates

Including correction and reduction of observations

For galactic system of coordinates see 521.2

.75 Interpolation

.76 Meridian lines and variations of compass

.78 Use of globes, planispheres, astronomical models

.9 Corrections

.91 Correction of parallax

.92 Correction of astronomical refraction

.94 Correction of aberration

.95 Correction of precession

For theory of precession see 521.9

.96 Correction of nutation

For theory of nutation see 521.9

.97 Correction of personal equation

.98 Correction of instrumental errors

523 Descriptive astronomy and astrophysics

Including popular astronomy

SUMMARY

523.01	Astrophysics
.1	Physical universe
.2	Solar system
.3	Moon
.4	Planets
.5	Meteors
.6	Comets
.7	Sun
.8	Stars
.9	Transits and occultations

.01 Astrophysics

.016 Radio astronomy

523.1 **Physical universe**

Including astronomical aspects of cosmology and cosmogony

Class metaphysical aspects of cosmogony [formerly 523 1*] in* 113

.11 Structure of universe

112 Extragalactic systems

113 Galactic system (Milky Way)

113 5 Interstellar material and galactic nebulas

.12 Nebular hypothesis

13 Plurality of worlds

14 Glacial cosmogony

Former heading Space and its temperature

18 Expanding universe

Including theories of Einstein, de Sitter, Eddington, Lemaître

19 Destruction of universe

.2 Solar system

24 Motion of solar system in space

28 Planetariums (Orreries)

29 Zodiac

.3 Moon

For occultations, see 523 99

31 Constants and dimensions of moon

Including size, mass, distance, parallax

32 Phases of moon

Including sources of lunar heat, light, radiation

33 Orbit and motions of moon

Including sidereal month, perigee and apogee, librations

For lunar tables, see 523 39

34 Selenography

Science of physical features of moon

35 Theories of lunar atmosphere

36 Lunar climatology

Including lunar temperature

For sources of lunar heat and light, see 523 32, *theories of lunar atmosphere* 523 35

523 37 Lunar spectroscopy

38 Lunar eclipses

39 Charts and photographs of moon

Including lunar observations tables

.4 *Planets*

Including distance motions orbits physical condition planetary spectroscopy

For satellites see 521 6 earth 525 theory of planets 521 5

41 Mercury and intramercurial planets

42 Venus

43 Mars

44 Minor planets (Asteroids planetoids)

45 Jupiter

46 Saturn

47 Uranus

48 Neptune

482 Pluto

49 Charts and photographs of planets

Including planetary observations tables

5 Meteors

Class aurora [*formerly* *523 5] in 538 768

51 Meteorites [*formerly also* †552 6]

53 Meteoric showers and radiant points

57 Spectroscopy of meteors

59 Zodiacal light and counterglow

Class aurora [*formerly* †523 59] in 538 768

For astronomical twilight see 525 7

6 Comets

63 Orbits of comets

64 Famous comets

66 Physical constitution of comets

67 Spectroscopy of comets

523.69 Charts and photographs of comets

Including observations, tables of comets

.7 Sun

.71 Solar constants and dimensions

Including size, mass, diameter

For rotation, see 523.73

.72 Solar heat, light, radiation

For atmospheric temperature, see 551.525

.73 Apparent motion and rotation of sun

For tables of the sun, see 528.2

.74 Sunspots and faculae

For climatology and weather, see 551.5

.75 Solar prominences, chromosphere, corona

.76 Internal constitution of sun

.77 Spectroscopy of sun and of solar eclipses

.78 Solar eclipses

.79 Charts and photographs of sun

Including solar observations

Class tables of the sun [formerly †523.79] in 528.2

.8 Stars

For Milky Way, see 523.113; celestial navigation, 527; sun, 523.7

.81 Stellar parallax and distance

.82 Stellar temperature, luminosity, color

.822 Magnitudes

.83 Proper motion and radial velocity of stars

.84 Double, multiple, variable stars

.841 Visual binaries

.842 Spectroscopic binaries

.843 Astrometric binaries

.844 Variable stars

.8442 Intrinsic variables

.84425 Cepheids

Including cluster-type variables

523.844 26 Long period variables

.844 4 Eclipsing variables

.844 6 Novae and supernovae

.85 Clusters

.852 Open clusters

Including moving clusters

.855 Globular clusters

.86 Physical constitution of stars

.87 Stellar spectroscopy

.89 Constellation and star names

Including maps

.890 8 Star catalogs

.9 ***Transits and occultations***

For theory of transits and occultations, see 521.8

.91 Transits of Mercury

.92 Transits of Venus

Including methods of observation (Delisle's, Halley's methods) and methods of recording (photographic method) [*formerly* †523.93–†523.95]

[†.93–†.95] Methods of observation and recording

Class in 523.92

.96 Transits of Venus to 1874

Including transits of 1761, 1769, 1874

.97 Transit of 1882

.99 Occultations

524

525 Earth (Astronomical geography)

For geodesy see 526.1

.1 Terrestrial constants and dimensions

Including size, mass, diameter, density, figure, position, parallax

.2 Terrestrial heat, light, radiation

Comprehensive works

For atmospheric thermal conditions see 551.52, atmospheric optics 551.565, internal heat of earth, 551.12

525.3 Orbit and motions of earth

.35 Rotation of earth

Including apparent rising and setting of sun

.36 Foucault's pendulum

.38 Tables of the sun [*formerly also* †523 79]

[†.4] Geographic coordinates

Class in 526 6

.5 Seasons

For climatology and weather, see 551.59

.6 Tides

.69 Tide tables

For tide tables as aids to navigation, see 623 894

.7 Astronomical twilight

Including twilight tables

For comprehensive works on twilight, see 551 565

526 Mathematical geography

.1 Geodesy

Determination of size, shape, figure of earth

For isostasy, see 551 12, *geodetic surveying,* 526 3, *geodetic and positional astronomy,* 526 6, *gravity determinations,* 526 7

[†.2] Base measurement

Class in 526.33

.3 Geodetic surveying

Surveys of large areas in which curvature of the earth is considered in measurement and computation

For plane surveying, see 526 91, *hydrographic surveying,* 526 99

.31 Reconnaissance

Preliminary geodetic surveys

32 Bench marks

Divide like 940–999, e g , bench marks in Alaska 526 327 98

526 33 **Triangulation**

Including base [*formerly* †526 2] and precise traverse measurements angle measurements triangulation computation and adjustment [*formerly* †526 4–†526 5]

36 **Leveling**

Class barometric leveling [*formerly* *526 36] in 526 37

For bench marks see 526 32

362 **Spirit leveling**

Including differential and precise spirit leveling

37 **Barometric leveling**

Including general questions of mean sea level [*formerly* *526 36]

38 **Trigonometric leveling (Geodetic refraction)**

Including observations calculations adjustments of zenith distances

[† 4–† 5] **Triangulation computation and adjustment**

Class in 526 33

6 **Geodetic and positional astronomy**

Application of spherical astronomy to geodesy

Including determination of geographic coordinates [*formerly also* †525 4] geographic position

For chronology see 529 *celestial navigation* 527

61 **Geodetic (Geographic topographic) latitude determinations**

For astronomic latitude see 527 1

62 **Geodetic (Geographic, topographic) longitude determinations**

For astronomic longitude see 527 2

63 **Geodetic azimuth determinations**

64 **Variations in measurement of geographic position**

7 **Gravity determinations (Physical geodesy)**

526 8 **Cartography**

Map projection [*formerly also* †744 428], map making

For maps, see 912, *military topography,* 623 71, *topographic surveying,* 526 98

88 Map reading

Including scales, symbols

89 Map reproduction

.9 **Surveying**

Determination of shape and area of any part of the earth's surface by measurement, triangulation, plotting, leveling, computation

For geodetic surveying, see 526 3, *triangulation,* 526 33, *leveling,* 526 36

91 *Plane surveying*

Surveys of relatively small areas in which curvature of the earth is disregarded in measurement and computation

Including instruments, methods

92 Boundary surveying (Land surveys)

[† 94] Measurement of altitudes

Class in 526 98

98 Topographic surveying

Measurement of altitudes [*formerly* †526 94, †551 53] and depressions within a region

982 Aerial surveying (Photogrammetry [*formerly* *†778 38*])

Including methods instruments

For military photogrammetry, see 623 72

99 Hydrographic surveying

Class surveying for a specific purpose [*formerly* †526 99] with the subject, e g , railroad surveying 625 11

For snow surveys, see 551 573 5

527 Celestial navigation [*formerly also* *629.125]

Determination of geographic position and direction from observation of celestial bodies

Including nautical astronomy

For sea navigation, see 623 89, *air navigation,* 629 132 51, *sextants,* 522 41

.1 Astronomical latitude

527.2 Astronomical longitude

[† 3] Finding time

Class in 529 7

.4 Lines of position

Including Sumner lines determination of fix

5 Determination of course

53 Rhumb line course

55 Great circle course

528 Ephemerides and nautical almanacs

For tables of a specific celestial body see the body e g lunar tables 523 39

1 American ephemerides and nautical almanacs

2 English ephemerides and nautical almanacs

3 German ephemerides and nautical almanacs

4 French ephemerides and nautical almanacs

5 Italian ephemerides and nautical almanacs

6 Spanish ephemerides and nautical almanacs

7 Slavic ephemerides and nautical almanacs

8 Other ephemerides and nautical almanacs

9 Ephemeris making

529 Chronology

1 Sidereal and solar day

Including apparent and mean time equation of time causes of inequality

For divisions of the day see 529 75

2 Intervals of time

Including kinds of years months weeks days

529.3 Calendars

.32 Ancient and non-Christian calendars

326 Jewish calendar

327 Moslem calendar

4 Christian calendars

42 Julian calendar

43 Gregorian calendar

44 Church chronology

Determination of religious feast and fast days

5 Calendar reform

.7 Astronomical horology

Methods of finding time [*formerly also* 1527 3]

For construction and repair of time measuring instruments, see 681 11

.75 Time systems and standards

Including divisions of day

78 Instruments for measuring time

Including dials, hourglasses, clocks, watches

For zenith telescopes, see 522 43, *sextants,* 522 41, *sidereal clocks and chronometers,* 522 51

530 Physics

.1 **Principles and theories of physics**

Class gravity [*formerly* *530 1] in 531 5

For principles of conservation, see 531 6, theory of wave motion, 531 33

101 Philosophy and logic of physics

.11 Relativity

.12 Quantum and wave mechanics

Including matrix mechanics and quantum theory

For quantum theory of light, see 535 15

.13 Kinetic theory and statistical mechanics [*formerly also* *536 1]

For kinetic theory of liquids, see 532 51, of gases, 533 7, of heat, 536 1

.15 Mathematical physics

For dimensional analysis, see 530 8, mathematical mechanics, 531 01

785 Precision instruments used in physics

.8 **Physical units and dimensions**

Including theory of physical measurements, dimensional analysis

---

531–533 Mechanics

For mechanical engineering, see 621

531 Mechanics of solids (Mechanics of rigid bodies)

Including comprehensive works on mechanics

For mechanics of liquids see 532 1, of gases, 533

01 Mathematical mechanics

017 Analytical mechanics

Comprehensive works

For a specific aspect of analytical mechanics, see the subject, e g , dynamics of a particle 531 36

[076] Problems and questions on mechanics

Class in 531 9

[083] Tables on mechanics

Class in 531 9

531.1 **Kinematics** [*formerly* *531.2]

Geometry of motion motions considered apart from causes

Including linear and relative motion, centripetal acceleration, vector quantities, radial and transverse acceleration in a plane

.2 **Statics of rigid bodies**

Static, translational and rotational equilibrium

Including resolution of forces, stable and unstable equilibrium

Class dynamics of rigid bodies in 531 3, kinematics in 531 1 [*both formerly* *531 2]

.23 *Moments of inertia*

.25 Graphic statics

Representation of magnitude, direction, position of forces by straight lines and determination of unknown quantities by mechanical measurement

26 Statics of a particle

.3 **Dynamics of rigid bodies** [*formerly* *531.2]

Former heading Dynamics, kinetics

Forces and their effect on the motion of rigid bodies

Including Newton's laws of motion, translational and rotational motion

For force of friction, see 531 4, *gravity,* 531 5

31 Trajectories

Former heading Rectilinear motion

32 Simple harmonic motions

Free and forst harmonic vibrations, dampt oscillations

Including simple pendulum motion

For pendulum in gravity studies, see 531 5

33 Wave motions

Including theory of wave motion

For wave motions in liquids, see 532 59, *cavitation in air,* 533 62

34 Motion of symmetrical rigid bodies

Rotation of symmetrical bodies, e g, gyroscope, spinning top

For a specific use of gyroscope, see the subject, e g, directional gyros 629 135 2

35 Centrifugal and centripetal forces

531 36 Dynamics of a particle

Including Brownian movements

38 Dynamics of elastic bodies

Strain and stress relationships Hooke s law elasticity [formerly †539 3]

Including stretching bending compression torsion

381 Elastic moduli

Including Young s modulus Poisson s ratio bulk modulus shear modulus or modulus of rigidity methods of measuring moduli

382 Impact and deformation

Including coefficient of restitution elastic limit yield point

383 Vibratory movements

4 Force of friction

Static sliding and rolling friction

Including laws of friction

5 Gravity [formerly *530 1]

Including laws of falling bodies and their illustrations e g pendulum projectiles freely falling objects

For simple pendulum motion see 531 32

[† 51] Law of universal gravitation

Class in 521 12

54 Specific gravity of solids

Including density mass specific gravity measurements specific gravity of specific solids

6 Principles of conservation

Including law of conservation of energy

7 Other properties of solids [formerly †*539 2, †541 31]

Including adhesion cohesion porosity

For elasticity see 531 38 expansion and contraction of solids 536 414 propagation of sound waves in solids 534 22 heat transmission in solids 536 2 specific heat of solids 536 63 electrical conductivity 537 62

8 Simple machines

Former heading Machines transmission of force

Including lever wheel and axle cord and pulley tootht wheel inclined plane wedge screw

9 Tables, problems, questions

532 Mechanics of fluids

Former heading Liquids hydrostatics, hydraulics

Comprehensive works on mechanics of gases and liquids

For mechanics of gases, see 533, hydraulic engineering, 627, hydraulic power engineering, 621 2

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 532 9

[083] Tables

Class in 532 9

.1 Mechanics of liquids (Hydromechanics)

Including properties of liquids [*formerly also* †541 32]

Class pressure [*formerly* †532 1] in 532.2

For hydrostatics, see 532 2, hydrodynamics, 532 5

.2 Hydrostatics

Equilibrium and transmission of pressure [*formerly* †532 1] in liquids

Class buoyancy [*formerly* *532 2] in 532 3

3 Buoyancy [*formerly* *532 2]

Including Archimedes' and Pascal's principles, stability of floating bodies

4 Density measurements of liquids

Including specific gravity measurements, e g , hydrometry

5 Hydrodynamics

Liquids in motion

51 Theories of liquid flow

Including kinetic theory of liquids

---

532 52–532 6 Liquid flow variations

52 Flow thru orifices and nozzles

Including rate of discharge pressure velocity relationships

53 Flow over weirs and spillways

Including gravitational problems, gravity model tests

54 Flow thru pipes and tubes

55 Flow thru bends and irregular enclosures

532.56 Variable pressure

Including turbulent flow

.57 Velocity of liquid flow

Including "hydrometry" in the sense of flow measurement

.58 Viscosity of liquids

Former heading Impulse and resistance

.59 Waves and wave motion

.595 Vortex rings [*formerly* †539 1] and vortex motion

Including cavitation in liquids

.6 Capillarity of liquids

Including surface tension, absorption [*formerly* †532 7]

For surface tension of solutions, see 541 341, *Brownian movements,* 531 36

.7 Diffusion and permeability of liquids

Osmosis of liquids

Class absorption [*formerly* †532 7] in 532 6

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of mechanics of fluids, see the subject, e.g., hydraulic pressing machinery 621 98

.9 Tables, problems, questions

533 Mechanics of gases

Former heading Gases, pneumatics

For natural and manufactured gas technology, see 665 7, *industrial gases,* 665 8, *gas analysis,* 545 7

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 533 9

[.083] Tables

Class in 533 9

.1 Properties of gases [*formerly also* †541.33]

For propagation of sound waves in gases, see 534 24

.12 Equilibrium properties of gases

Class compressibility in 533 2, vapor pressure in 536 44 [*both formerly* *533 12]

For pressure, volume, and temperature relationships, see 536 41

533.13 Viscosity and diffusion of gases

.14 Absorption and adsorption of gases

.2 Elasticity and compressibility [*formerly* *533.12] of gases

For liquefaction of gases, see 536.56

[†.3] Atmosphere

Class in 551.51

[†.4] Barometry

Class in 551.54

.5 Vacuum and vacuum production

Including use of air pumps in the production of vacuum, rarefaction of gases [*formerly* †542.77], production of high vacuum

For comprehensive works on applications of vacuum technique, see 621.55, *a specific application, the subject, e.g., high vacuum tubes* 621.381.51

.6 Aeromechanics

Equilibrium and motion of air

For aeronautics, see 629.13

.61 Aerostatics

Equilibrium of gaseous fluids and of solid materials suspended in them

.62 Aerodynamics

Motion of air and forces acting on bodies in motion thru air or on fixt bodies in a current of air

Including cavitation in air

.7 Kinetic theory of gases

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of mechanics of gases, see the subject, e.g., pumps 621.64

.9 Tables, problems, questions

534 Sound

Including acoustics

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 534.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 534.9

534.1 **Generation of sound waves**

Vibrations of rods, plates, tuning forks [*formerly* †534.3], wires, membranes

Including theories of sound generation

For generation of ultrasonic waves, see 534.5, *superposition of vibrations,* 534.59

.14 Vibrations in air columns

Including resonance

.16 Subsonic vibrations

Frequencies lower than 15 cycles per second

.2 *Propagation of sound waves*

Including velocity reflection refraction, directionality, diffraction, interference, absorption of sound waves

.22 Propagation of sound waves in solids

.23 Propagation of sound waves in liquids

Including underwater acoustics

.24 Propagation of sound waves in gases

For resonance, see 534.14

.3 **Sound characteristics**

Pitch intensity and quality of sound waves

Including Doppler effect physical characteristics of musical sound

Class tuning forks [*formerly* †534.3] in 534.1

For musical acoustics see 781.22

.35 Dissonance

Including noise characteristics

.4 **Analysis of sound waves**

Including sound frequency analysis measurement of frequency and intensity of sound waves use of resonators

534.5 **Ultrasonic vibrations**

Including generation of sound waves above the audible range, their use in determining properties of matter

For engineering properties of materials, see 620 11

.59 **Superposition principles**

Including superposition of vibrations, addition of traveling waves to form standing waves

.6 **Graphic and optical representations of sound waves**

[†.7] **Physiology of ear and larynx**

Class physiology of the ear in 612 85, of the larynx in 612 78

.8 **Applications**

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of acoustics, see the subject, e g, aids to navigation 623 894

.9 **Tables, problems, questions**

535 Optics

Including visible and invisible light radiation

For atmospheric optics, see 551 565, *photographic optics,* 770 15, *physiological optics,* 612 84, *psychological optics,* 152 1

072 Experimental optical techniques [*formerly* *535 89]

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 535 9

[083] Tables

Class in 535 9

.1 **Theories of light**

12 Corpuscular theory of light

13 Wave theory of light

14 Electromagnetic theory of light

15 Quantum theory of light

2 **Physical optics**

Optical phenomena based on the wave theory of light

For dispersion, interference and diffraction see 535 4 *polarized light,* 535 5

22 Photometry

Measurement of intensity of light

535 24 Velocity of light

Including methods of measurement

.3 **Geometrical optics and luminescence**

32 Reflection and refraction

Including light absorption, refractive and reflective mediums, image formation

For selective absorption and reflection, see 535 6, double refraction, 535 5, dispersion, 535 4

.33 Principles of optical instruments

Including design of optical instruments

For a specific optical instrument, see the subject, e g , telescopes 522 2

.35 Luminescence [*formerly* *535 65]

Including fluorescence and phosphorescence

For fluorescent lighting, see 621 327 3, incandescence, 536 45

.4 **Dispersion, interference and diffraction of light**

For physics of color, see 535 6

.5 **Polarized light**

Including double refraction optical rotation, use of polariscope [*formerly* *535 8] for study of light

.6 **Physics of color**

Including selective absorption and reflection of light

Class physiological optics [*formerly* *535 6] in 612 84

For pigments see 751 2, color symbolism, 752 color perception, 152 1, dispersion, 535 4, visual spectroscopy, 535 843

[*.65] **Luminescence**

Class in 535 35

[*.66] **X rays**

Class in 537 535

[†.7] **Physiological optics**

Class in 612 84

535.8 **Applications**

Comprehensive works

Class polariscope in 535 5, manufacture of optical instruments in 681 4 [*both formerly* *535 8]

For a specific application of optics, see the subject, e g , lighthouses 627 9

.84 *Spectroscopy*

Techniques for studying light emitted by physical objects by means of the spectroscope and methods of measuring intensity and frequency of spectrum lines

Including emission and absorption spectroscopy

For a specific application of spectroscopy, see the subject, e g , in chemical analysis 544 6, X-ray and gamma ray spectroscopy 537 535 2, mass spectroscopy, 539 744

842 Infrared spectroscopy

843 *Visual (Chromatic) spectroscopy*

844 Ultraviolet spectroscopy

845 Vacuum ultraviolet spectroscopy

846 Raman spectroscopy

Spectroscopic examination of scattered monochromatic radiation

Including Tyndall and Raleigh scattering Raman effect

[*.89] **Experimental optical techniques**

Class in 535 072

.9 **Tables, problems, questions**

536 Heat

For heating systems see 697, thermochemistry 541 36

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 536 9

[083] Tables

Class in 536 9

.1 **Theories of heat**

Including kinetic theory of heat

Class laws of thermodynamics in 536 71, statistical mechanics in 530 13 [*both formerly* *536 1]

536.2 **Heat transmission**

Including transmission in solids, liquids and gases, thermal diffusivity, heat transfer, diathermancy [*formerly* †536 35]

Class heat radiation [*formerly* *536 2] in 536 33

For heat refraction, see 536 32

.23 Heat conduction

.25 Heat convection

.3 **Effect of matter on heat and heat radiation**

.31 Heat reflection

32 Heat refraction

.33 Heat radiation [*formerly* *536 2]

For heat conduction, see 536 23, *heat convection,* 536 25, *incandescence,* 536 45

34 Heat absorption

[† 35] Diathermancy

Class in 536 2

.4 **Effects of heat on matter**

Including change of state

Class thermodynamic properties of matter [*formerly* *536 4] in 536 7

For phase rule and equilibrium, see 541 363, *liquefaction of gases by means of pressure and low temperature,* 536 56

.41 Thermal expansion and contraction

Including such equilibrium properties as pressure, volume and temperature relationships

.412 Expansion and contraction of gases

Including explosion [*formerly* *536 57]

For liquefaction of gases, see 536 56, *explosives,* 662 2

413 Expansion and contraction of liquids

414 Expansion and contraction of solids

.42 Fusion and solidification [*formerly* †*536 43]

Former heading Liquefaction

Including freezing or melting points, latent heat of fusion

[†*.43] Solidification

Class in 536 42

536 44 **Vaporization and condensation**

Including vapor pressure [*formerly* *533 12], evaporation of liquids, boiling and boiling points, heat of vaporization, saturated vapors

445 **Sublimation**

Evaporation of solids condensation of gases to solids without liquefaction

45 **Incandescence**

For luminescence, see 535 35

[† 46] **Combustion**

Class in 541 36

.5 **Temperature**

Including temperature measurement

51 **Thermometry**

Measurement of temperature with mercury and other liquid thermometers

52 **Pyrometry**

Measurement of temperatures over 500° C [*formerly* *536 57] with optical pyrometers radiation pyrometers, thermocouples

53 **Electrical resistance thermometry**

56 **Cryogenics**

Production of temperatures below −182° C

Including liquefaction of gases [*formerly* †542 79], absolute temperature, properties of matter at extremely low temperatures

For superconductivity, see 537 623 *low temperature chemistry,* 541 368

[* 57] **High temperatures**

Class measurement of temperatures over 500° C in 536 52, combustion in 541 36 explosion in 536 412

6 **Calorimetry [*formerly also* *541 36]**

Measurement of heat quantities

Including thermal capacity

For heat of fusion see 536 42 *heat of vaporization* 536 44, *thermochemistry,* 541 36

63 **Specific heats of solids and liquids**

Including specific heat of specific solids and liquids

536 65 Specific heats of gases and vapors

Including specific heat of specific gases and vapors

.7 Thermodynamics

Mathematical and physical relations between mechanical work and heat energy transformation of heat into mechanical energy, and mechanical energy into heat

Including thermodynamic properties of matter [*formerly* †536 4]

For chemical thermodynamics, see 541 369, *engineering thermodynamics* 621 01 *calorimetry*, 536 6

71 Laws of thermodynamics [*formerly* *536 1]

Including the three laws of thermodynamics Joule's law, Maxwell's four thermodynamic formulas, Carnot cycle

73 Entropy

Measurement of unavailable energy in a thermodynamic system

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of heat see the subject, e g, steam power engineering 621 1

.9 Tables, problems, questions

537 Electricity and electronics

Class magnetism [*formerly* *537] in 538

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 537 9

[083] Tables

Class in 537 9

.1 Theories of electricity and magnetism [*formerly* †538 1]

Including electromagnetic theory

Class electron optics [*formerly* *537 1] in 537 56

For electromagnetic theory of light see 535 14

12 Electromagnetic fields and waves

Including theories of microwaves wave guides

537.2 **Electricity**

For electrodynamics see 537.6 *electrical engineering* 621.3

.21 Electrostatics

Including triboelectricity

.212 Electric charge and distribution [*formerly* †537.22]

Including potentials

[†* 22] Conductivity, dielectrics

Class conductivity [*formerly* †*537.22] in 537.62 dielectrics [*formerly* *537.22] in 537.24 distribution [*formerly* †537.22] in 537.212

.23 Electrostatic generators

.24 Dielectrics [*formerly* †537.5, *537.22]

For dielectric phenomena in chemistry see 541.377

.242 Capacitors (Condensers)

.243 Electric dipole moments

.244 Pyroelectricity and piezoelectricity [*formerly* *537.55]

For pyroelectric and piezoelectric properties of crystals see 548.85

.245 Electrocapillarity

.246 Electrostriction

[†.25] Electrometers

Class in 621.374.3

[*.3] **Magnetic properties of matter**

Class in 538

[†.4] **Atmospheric electricity**

Class in 551.56

.5 **Electronics**

Emission behavior and effects of electrons in gas and vacuum tubes photoelectric cells and similar mediums

Class dielectrics [*formerly* †537.5] in 537.24

For electronic engineering see 621.381 *electrons* 539.721.1 *semiconductors* 537.622

[†.51] Coils

Class in 537.64

537 52 Disruptive discharge

Luminous discharge (electric spark) produced by the disruptive passage of high voltage electricity thru gases [*formerly* *537 53] or vapors at atmospheric pressure

Including electric arc

For ionization of gases see 537.532 a specific application of electric arc the subject e g electric arc lighting 621.325

53 Electric discharge thru rarefied gases

Including electric discharge thru high vacuum tubes

Class disruptive passage of high voltage electricity thru gases [*formerly* *537 53] in 537 52

532 Ionization of gases

Including electron ballistics

533 Thermionic emission

535 X rays [*formerly* *535 66]

For particle detection see 539 77 electrons 539 721 1

535 2 X ray spectroscopy

Including X ray diffraction gamma ray spectroscopy

For a specific application of X ray spectroscopy see the subject e g in chemical analysis 545 83 Raman spectroscopy 535 846 gamma particles 539 752 4

54 Photoelectric effects

Including photoelectric and selenium cells

[* 55] Piezoelectric effects

Class piezoelectricity in 537.244 piezoelectric properties of crystals in 548 85

56 Electron [*formerly* *537 1] and ion optics

Focusing and deflecting streams of charged particles by means of electrostatic and magnetic lenses and fields

6 Electrodynamics

Electric currents

For electrostatics see 537.21 electrical engineering 621.3

61 Theory of direct currents

For direct current engineering see 621 319 12

537 62 Conductivity [*formerly* †* 537 22] and resistance

For dielectrics see 537.24

622 Semiconductivity

Including semiconductors

623 Superconductivity

624 Thermal effects of currents

For thermoelectricity see 537 65

63 Theory of alternating currents

For alternating current engineering see 621 319 13

64 Electric induction and induction coils [*formerly* †537 51]

Including mutual and self induction

For magnetic induction see 538 2 transformers 621 314

65 Thermoelectricity

Electricity produced by direct action of heat

For thermal effects of currents see 537 624

[† 7] Electric measurements

Class in 621 37

8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of electricity electronics see the subject e g telephony 621 385

9 Tables, problems, questions

538 Magnetism [*formerly* *537]

Including magnets magnetic properties of matter [*formerly* *537 3]

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 538 9

[083] Tables

Class in 538 9

[† 1] Theories of magnetism

Class in 537 1

2 Magnetic induction

For electric induction see 537 64

538 3 Electromagnetic phenomena

For electromagnetic theory see 537 1 electromagnetic fields and waves 537 12

4 Diamagnetism

7 Geomagnetism [*formerly* *551 16] and allied phenomena

For atmospheric electricity see 551 56

72 Permanent magnetic field of earth

Magnetism of earth s crust and interior

Including its secular change

74 Transient magnetism of earth

Including diurnal variations magnetic storms and pulsations sunspot effects other magnetic disturbances

748 Earth currents

Electricity of earth s crust

Including conductivity of earth generation of currents in the ground and in bodies of water

76 Allied phenomena of overhead activation

767 Ionosphere

Including Kennelly Heaviside (E) layer and Appleton (F) layer

For comprehensive works on upper atmosphere see 551 514

768 Luminous manifestations

Including aurora polaris nonpolar aurora [*both formerly* †523 59 *523 5]

For twilights see 551 565 zodiacal light and counterglow 523 59

78 Magnetic surveys

Divide like 940–999 e g magnetic surveys in Europe 538 784

79 Magnetic observations at fixt stations

Including magnetic observatory findings

Divide like 940–999 e g magnetic observations at University of Alaska station 538 797 98

538.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of magnetism, see the subject, e g, magnetic separation of ores 622 77

.9 Tables, problems, questions

539 Modern physics

Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics

For electronics, see 537 5

[076] Problems and questions

Class in 539 9

[083] Tables

Class in 539 9

.1 **Physical structure of matter**

Including interpretation of structure thru spectroscopy

Class vortex rings [*formerly* †539 1] in 532 595

For chemical structure of matter, see 541 2, *nuclear structure,* 539 74

12 Molecular structure

For relationship of crystal structure and molecular structure, see 541 22

14 Atomic structure [*formerly* *539 8]

For Dalton's atomic theory, see 541 24

[†* 2] **Properties of solids**

Class in 531 7

[† 3] **Elasticity**

Class in 531 38

[†.4] **Strength of materials**

Class in 620 11

[† 5] **Engineering properties of materials**

Class malleability, ductility in 620 112 9, hardness in 620 112 6

539 7 Nuclear physics

For nuclear power engineering, see 621 48

72 Fundamental radiations

Class alpha particles in 539 752 2, beta particles in 539 752 3 gamma particles in 539 752 4 [*all formerly* *539 72]

721 Fundamental particles (Subatomic phenomena)

721 1 Electrons

721 2 Protons

721 3 Neutrons

721 4 Positrons

721 5 Neutrinos

721 6 Mesons

721 7 Photons

722 Penetrating radiation

Including comprehensive works on X rays gamma and cosmic rays

For X rays see 537 535 *radioactivity* 539 752

722 3 Cosmic rays

Including comprehensive works on cosmic rays and mesons

For mesons see 539 721 6

73 Particle acceleration

732 Acceleration in high voltage accelerators

Including voltage multipliers, Van de Graaff electrostatic generators

733 Acceleration in resonance accelerators

Including linear accelerators cyclotrons

734 Acceleration in induction accelerators

Including betatrons

735 Acceleration in synchronous accelerators

Including synchrocyclotrons synchrotrons

539 74 Nuclear structure

Including interpretation of structure by means of spectroscopy, structure of isotopes

For comprehensive works on isotopes see 541 38

744 Mass spectroscopy

For mass spectrographic methods in chemical analysis see 545 33

75 Nuclear reactions (Transmutations)

For radiochemistry see 541 38

752 Radioactivity (Natural transmutations)

For penetrating radiation see 539 722

752 2 Alpha particles [*formerly* *539 72]

752 3 Beta particles [*formerly* *539 72]

752 4 Gamma particles [*formerly* *539 72]

For gamma ray spectroscopy see 537 535 2

753 Artificial transmutations

Transmutations thru bombardment of elements with high speed particles

76 Nuclear fission (Atomic energy)

For a specific application of nuclear fission see the subject e g nuclear power engineering 621 48

764 Thermonuclear fusion

For a specific application of thermonuclear fusion see the subject e g H bombs 623 451 19

77 Particle detection

772 Detection in ionization chambers

773 Detection in proportional counters

774 Detection in Geiger Muller counters

775 Detection in scintillation counters

776 Detection in crystal conduction counters

777 Detection in Wilson cloud chambers

778 Photographic detection

[* 8] Atomic structure

Class in 539 14

9 Tables, problems, questions

540 Chemistry

For a specific application of chemistry, see the subject, e g, chemical technology 660

.1 Early theories

Including alchemy, phlogiston theory, philosopher's stone

[.72] Chemical laboratories

Class in 542

[.78] Chemical apparatus and equipment

Class in 542

541 Physical and theoretical chemistry

Comprehensive works on systematic application of physical concepts and methods to chemical systems

Including physical inorganic chemistry

For physical organic chemistry, see 547 1, physics, 530

.2 Chemical structure of matter

Including relationship of structure to chemical properties of matter, laws of chemical combinations

For physical structure of matter see 539 1 chemical reactions, 541 3, stereochemistry 541 6, isomers, chelates, polymers, 541 7

22 Molecules

Chemical combination of two or more like or unlike atoms

Including relationship of molecular and crystal structure

For chemical crystallography, see 548 3

[*.23] Radiation chemistry, isotopes, tracer chemistry

Class in 541 38

.24 Atoms

Dalton's atomic theory the chemical atom, i e, the smallest part of an element remaining unchanged during chemical reaction

Including indestructibility and indivisibility of atom by chemical means

For nuclear fission, see 539 76, chemical bonds, 541 396

541 25 Molecular and atomic weights

Including atomic numbers

For periodic law, see 541 901, *quantum chemistry,* 541 383, *cryoscopic and ebullioscopic methods for determining molecular weights,* 541 341 5

.3 Chemical reactions

Physical interpretation of chemical reactions

[† 31] Solids

Class in 531 7

[† 32] Liquids

Class in 532 1

[† 33] Gases

Class in 533 1

34 Theory of solutions [*formerly* *541 37]

Including principles of solubility, solvents, solutes, ideal solutions

For electrolytic solutions, see 541 372

341 Properties of solutions [*formerly* *541 374]

Including viscosity, surface tension diffusion, conductivity, density optical properties, e g, refractivity and optical rotation (polarimetry)

For conductivity of electrolytes, see 541 372

341 5 Colligative properties of solutions [*formerly* *541 373]

Freezing point depression, boiling point elevation, vapor pressure lowering, osmotic pressure

Including cryoscopic and ebullioscopic methods for determining molecular weights

541 343–541 347 Types of solutions

For electrolytic solutions, see 541 372

541 343 Saturated and supersaturated solutions

.345 Colloidal solutions (Colloid chemistry) [*formerly* *541 375]

Emulsions, gels, aerosols, smokes

Including adsorption and adhesion of colloidal particles

345 3 Surface phenomena (Surface chemistry) [*formerly* *541 375]

Including capillarity, interfacial tensions, films, electric double layers

For surface tension, see 541 341

347 Nonelectrolytic solutions [*formerly* *541 373]

35 Photochemistry

Chemical actions due to light

Including artificial photosynthesis

For materials used in photography see 771 5, *photosynthesis in plants,* 581 133 42

36 Thermochemistry and chemical thermodynamics

Relations of heat and chemical action

Including combustion [*formerly* †536 46, †541 39, *536 57]

*Class calorimetry [formerly *541 36] in 536 6*

362 Exothermic and endothermic reactions

Enthalpies of reactions, e g , heats of neutralization, formation dilution, combustion, solution, heat capacities, latent heat

Including thermic reactions of specific inorganic substances

363 Phase changes

Including phase rule and equilibrium, phase diagrams, triple point, eutectic mixtures

364 Thermal dissociation

For electrolytic dissociation, see 541 372

368 Low temperature chemistry

For cryogenics, see 536 56

369 Chemical thermodynamics

For kinetics and mechanism of chemical reactions, see 541 39

541 37 Electrochemistry

Class theory of solutions [*formerly* *541 37] in 541 34

.372 Electrolytic solutions

Including ionic equilibriums [*formerly* *541 373], electrolytic dissociation, ionization, electrode phenomena, conductivity

For thermal dissociation, see 541.364

[*.373] Colligative properties of solutions and nonelectrolytic solutions

Class colligative properties of solutions in 541 341 5, ionic equilibriums in 541 372, nonelectrolytic solutions in 541 347

[*.374] Properties of solutions

Class in 541 341

[* 375] Colloid chemistry and surface phenomena

Class colloid chemistry in 541 345, surface phenomena in 541.345 3

376 Electrical polarization

For electrode phenomena, see 541 372

377 Dielectric phenomena

Including dielectric constants, dipole moments [*both formerly* *541 8]

378 Magnetochemistry

38 Radiochemistry (Radiation chemistry) [*formerly* *541 23]

Nuclear constitution and its relation to properties of matter

Including radioactive and stable isotopes, isobars, artificial elements

For chemistry of radioactive elements, see 546 42, *nuclear reactions* 539 75

383 Quantum chemistry

Application of quantum, wave, and statistical mechanics to chemical systems

Including quantum numbers and energy levels

388 Applications of radiochemistry

Comprehensive works on use of isotopes

Including radiocarbon dating tracer techniques

For a specific application, see the subject, e g, in medicine 615 842 4

541 39 Kinetics and mechanism of chemical reactions

Class combustion [*formerly* †541 39] in 541 36

392 Chemical equilibriums

Including law of mass action kinetic theories of equilibriums

393 Order of reaction

Including chain reactions reversible and irreversible reactions homogeneous and heterogeneous reactions dissociations

For thermal dissociation see 541 364 *electrolytic dissociation* 541 372

394 Reaction kinetics

Velocity of chemical reactions

395 Catalysis

Acceleration and retardation of chemical reactions by means of catalysts

396 Chemical bonds

Including affinity valence bond energies interatomic forces

For bond distances and angles see 541 6

[† 4] **Various types of compounds**

Class chemistry of salts in 546 34 of bases in 546 32 of acids in 546 24 of alloys in 546 3

[† 5] **Molecular compounds**

Class in 546 343

6 **Stereochemistry**

Space or configurative chemistry

Including stereoisomerism bond distances and angles steric hindrance

7 **Isomers, chelates, polymers**

Former heading Allotropy

Including tautomerism racemization mutarotation

[* 8] **Dipole moments and dielectric constants**

Class in 541.377

541.9 Other topics in physical chemistry

901 Periodic law

Including periodic system and tables

901.5 *Stoichiometry*

542 Chemical laboratories, apparatus, equipment

Including general operation and manipulation of equipment

1 Chemical laboratories

Description design installation

For architecture of chemical laboratories see 727.554

2 Laboratory receptacles and accessory equipment

Including beakers flasks retorts test tubes funnels crucibles supports stoppers tubing

For calibrated vessels see 542.3 *distilling apparatus* 542.4 *gas apparatus* 542.7

3 Measuring apparatus

Including weights and balances calibrated vessels graduated pipettes burettes cylinders

4 Heating and distilling apparatus

Including burners laboratory furnaces indirect heating apparatus e.g. baths

5 Blowpipes

For blowpipe analysis see 544.3

6 Filters and filtration

Including dializers manipulation of residues

7 Gas apparatus

Including apparatus for producing collecting washing dissolving storing measuring rarefying compressing liquefying solidifying gases

[† 77] Rarefaction of gases

Class in 533.5

[† 79] Gas liquefaction and solidification

Class in 536.56

8 Electrical apparatus

9 Other apparatus

543–545 Chemical analysis

Including inorganic chemical analysis

For organic chemical analysis, see 547 3, identification of a specific element, the element, e.g., identification of boron 546 671

543 Analytic chemistry

Comprehensive works on qualitative and quantitative analysis of organic and inorganic substances

For qualitative analysis, see 544, quantitative analysis, 545, organic analysis, 547 3, industrial testing and analysis, the subject, e g, coal 662 622

.01 Reagent chemicals [*formerly* †544.11]

Including lists, specifications, tests, standards, and preparation of reagent chemicals, selective reagents, indicators, and test papers

.1 Chemical analysis of food and drink

For food inspection, see 614 31, inspection of beverages, 614 34

.2 Chemical analysis of dairy products

Including chemical analysis of milk, butter, cheese, other milk products

For inspection of dairy products, see 614 32, testing a specific dairy product, the product, e g, testing milk 637 127

.3 Chemical analysis of water constituents

Including determination of decaying vegetable and animal matter in water, and its inorganic constituents, e g, oxides and salts

For water purification, see 628 16, water pollution, 628 168

.4 Chemical analysis of cosmetics and perfumes

Class chemical analysis of drugs and medicinals [*formerly* †*543 4] in 615 190 15

.5 Chemical analysis of poisons

Including chemical analysis of pesticides, insecticides, fungicides

543 6 **Chemical analysis of rocks and ores**

Comprehensive works

Including blowpipe analysis of rocks and ores

For chemical analysis of mineral ores, see 549 13, *of metallic ores,* 669 92, *of soils,* 631 42

544 **Qualitative analysis**

Systematic macro and semiquantitative methods and procedures by which the constituents of a substance are detected and identified

For determination of the amount of a constituent in a substance, see 545, *qualitative organic chemistry* 547 34

1 Wet analysis

Systematic detection of substances by means of reagents in solution

[† 11] Reagent chemicals

Class in 543 01

12 Detection of cations

Detection of metallic ions or basic radicals

Including detection of ammonium radical

13 Detection of anions

Detection of acidic components

2 Dry methods

Analysis using heat

For spectrochemical analysis, see 544 6 *blowpipe analysis,* 544 3

3 Systematic blowpipe analysis [*formerly also* †545 4]

Comprehensive works on the detection and identification of metallic elements and acid radicals in minerals, alloys, and inorganic materials by flame test, bead test, and reactions on charcoal and plaster of Paris with the aid of the blowpipe

For blowpipe tests of rocks and ores, see 543 6, *of mineral ores,* 549 13, *of metallic ores,* 669 92

4 Qualitative gas analysis

5 Diffusion analysis

Including ultrafiltration methods (dialysis)

544 6 Spectrochemical analysis (Spectroscopic analysis) [*formerly* *545 4]

Analysis by comparison of the spectrum of unknown substances with spectra of known substances

Including qualitative and quantitative methods

For blowpipe analysis see 544 3 *measurement of the intensity and frequency of spectrum lines* 535 84

[† 7] Polariscopic analysis

Class in 545 816

8 Micro and semimicro methods of analysis

Including qualitative and quantitative methods

82 Microscopical analysis

Methods using compound electron and ultramicroscopes for analytical purposes

83 Microchemical analysis

Qualitative and quantitative analysis of small amounts of substances

Including small scale adaptations of existing macro methods of analysis (semimicro analysis)

84 Spot tests

Including paper chromatography

9 Other methods of qualitative analysis

Class electroanalysis [*formerly* †544 9] in 545 3

92 Chromatographic analysis [*formerly* *545 8]

Including capillary analysis

For paper chromatography see 544 84

545 Quantitative analysis

Determination of the amount of a constituent in a substance thru chemical means

For detection and identification of constituents in a substance see 544 *quantitative organic chemistry* 547 35 *quantitative methods in spectrochemical analysis* 544 6 *in micro and semi micro methods of analysis* 544 8

1 Gravimetric analysis

Determination of the composition of a substance by weighing its constituents directly or indirectly

545 2 Volumetric analysis [*formerly also* †545 6]

Former heading Wet method

Determination of elements and compounds in a substance by titration with standard solutions

.22 Neutralization methods (Alkalimetry and acidimetry)

Titration with acids or bases using an indicator

23 Oxidation reduction methods (Oxidimetry and iodometry)

Titration with oxidizing or reducing agents, and determining the end point by change of color

24 Precipitation methods

Titration with reagents that cause precipitation

3 Electroanalysis [*formerly also* †544 9]

Including electrometric titration

311 Conductometric methods

Former heading Constant current analysis

Including conductometric titration

312 Potentiometric methods

Former heading Constant voltage analysis

Including potentiometric titration

32 Polarographic methods

Analysis based on current voltage curves obtained in electrolysis with a slowly dropping mercury cathode (polarimetric titration)

33 Mass spectrographic methods [*formerly* *545 8]

4 Thermogravimetric analysis

Former heading Dry methods

Class blowpipe analysis in 544 3 cupellation in 669 92 [*both formerly* †545 4], spectroscopic analysis in 544 6 [*formerly* *545 4]

5 General titrimetric methods

For volumetric analysis see 545 2 *electrometric titration* 545 3

[† 6] Volumetric analysis

Class in 545 2

545 7 Gas analysis

Comprehensive works

For qualitative gas analysis, see 544 4, natural and manufactured gas technology, 665 7

.8 Other methods of quantitative analysis

Class chromatographic analysis in 544 92, mass spectrographic methods in 545 33 [*both formerly* *545 8]

.81 Optical methods

For spectroscopic analysis, see 544 6

.812 Photometric analysis

Including colorimetric, nephelometric, turbidimetric, fluorophotometric methods

.813 Refractometric and interferometric analysis

.816 Polarimetric analysis (Polariscopic analysis) [*formerly also* †544 7]

.82 Radioactive tracer techniques

.83 Diffraction methods

Including electron, X-ray diffraction methods

[†.9] Synthesis

Class inorganic synthesis in 546 15, organic synthesis in 547 2

546–547 Inorganic and organic chemistry

These schedules are completely new, prepared with little reference to earlier editions and assigning new meanings to many numbers Such numbers are italicized Relocations of topics from subdivisions of 546–547 in earlier editions are not indicated, altho relocations from other numbers are shown in the usual way

An obsolescent schedule for 546–547, based on earlier editions, and accompanied by a table of concordance for 546 showing provision for the chemical elements in editions 14, 15, 16, is provided at end of volume 2

546 Inorganic chemistry

Preparations, properties, structure of elements and their inorganic compounds

For inorganic chemical analysis, see 543–545, inorganic physical chemistry, 541

SUMMARY

546 1 Inorganic reactions

Including oxidation reduction catalysis hydrolysis

15 Inorganic synthesis [*formerly* †545 9]

Preparation of inorganic compounds

2 Hydrogen

Including nascent hydrogen deuterium (heavy hydrogen) tritium

22 Water

Including deuterium oxide (heavy water), tritium oxide

24 Acids [*formerly* †541 4]

Comprehensive works

For a specific acid see the negative element e g hydrochloric acid 546 732

546 3 Metals

Comprehensive works on metals and their compounds

Including alloys [*formerly* †541 4]

For a specific metal, see the metal, e g , iron 546 621

32 Alkalis

Comprehensive works on bases [*formerly* †541 4]

For a specific base, see the metallic (positive) element, e g , sodium hydroxide 546.382

.34 Salts [*formerly* †541 4]

Comprehensive works

For a specific salt, see the metallic (positive) element, e g , sodium chloride 546 382, *organic salts*, 547 45

342 Simple salts

Including neutral acidulous, alkaline, amphoteric, binary salts

343 Double salts (Molecular compounds) [*formerly* †541 5]

Salts formed by union of two simple salts e g , alums

345 Complex salts

Double salts which do not form their component simple salts on solution, e g , potassium ferrocyanide

---

546 38–546 756 Group 1A–Group 0 of periodic table

Including specific elements and their compounds

For hydrogen, see 546 2, *periods of periodic table*, 546 8

38 Alkali metals (Group 1A)

.381 Lithium

382 Sodium (Natrium)

.383 Potassium (Kalium)

384 Rubidium

385 Cesium

386 Francium

.39 Alkaline earth metals (Group 2A)

391 Beryllium (Glucinum)

392 Magnesium

546 393 Calcium

394 Strontium

395 Barium

396 Radium

4 Rare earth elements (Group 3A)

401 Scandium

403 Yttrium

41 Lanthanide series

411 Lanthanum

412 Cerium

413 Praseodymium

Including didymium

413 5 Neodymium

414 Promethium (Illinium)

415 Samarium

415 5 Europium

416 Gadolinium

416 5 Terbium

417 Dysprosium

417 5 Holmium

418 Erbium

418 5 Thulium

419 Ytterbium

419 5 Lutetium (Cassiopeium Lutecium)

42 Actinide series

Including comprehensive works on radioactive elements

For radium see 546 396 *radon* 546 756 *polonium* 546 728 *isotopes* 541 38

421 Actinium

422 Thorium

424 Protactinium (Protoactinium)

43 Uranium

432 Neptunium

546 434 Plutonium
44 Americium
442 Curium
444 Berkelium
448 Californium
449 Nobelium
51 Titanium group (Group 4A)
512 Titanium
513 Zirconium
514 Hafnium (Celtium)
52 Vanadium group (Group 5A)
522 Vanadium
524 Columbium (Niobium)
526 Tantalum
53 Chromium group (Group 6A)
532 Chromium
534 Molybdenum
536 Tungsten (Wolfram)
54 Manganese group (Group 7A)
541 Manganese
543 Technetium
545 Rhenium
6 Transitional elements (Group 8)
62 Iron series
621 Iron (Ferrum)
623 Cobalt
625 Nickel
63 Ruthenium series
632 Ruthenium
634 Rhodium
636 Palladium
64 Osmium series
641 Osmium

546 643 Indium

645 Platinum

65 Copper group (Group 1B)

652 Copper

654 Silver (Argentum)

656 Gold (Aurum)

66 Zinc group (Group 2B)

661 Zinc

662 Cadmium

663 Mercury (Hydrargyrum)

67 Boron group (Group 3B)

671 Boron

673 Aluminum

675 Gallium

677 Indium

678 Thallium

68 Carbon group (Group 4B)

681 Carbon

For organic chemistry see 547

683 Silicon

For aliphatic silicon compounds see 547 48 *aromatic silicon compounds* 547 68

684 Germanium

686 Tin (Stannum)

688 Lead (Plumbum)

7 Nonmetals

Comprehensive works

For a specific nonmetal see the subject e g carbon 546 681

71 Nitrogen group (Group 5B)

711 Nitrogen

For aliphatic nitrogen compounds see 547 44 *aromatic nitrogen compounds* 547 64

546 712 Phosphorus

For aliphatic phosphorus compounds see 547 47 aromatic phosphorus compounds 547 67

715 Arsenic

716 Antimony (Stibium)

718 Bismuth

72 Oxygen group (Group 6B)

721 Oxygen

Including ozone heavy oxygen

723 Sulfur

For aliphatic sulfur compounds see 547 46 aromatic sulfur compounds 547 66

724 Selenium

726 Tellurium

728 Polonium

73 Halogens (Group 7B)

731 Fluorine

732 Chlorine

733 Bromine

734 Iodine

735 Astatine

75 Rare gases (Group 0)

751 Helium

752 Neon

753 Argon

754 Krypton

755 Xenon

756 Radon (Niton)

546.8 **Periods of periodic table**

Bohr's arrangement of elements according to atomic number

For Group 1A–Group 0 of periodic table, see 546 38–546 756

.81 Period 1

Comprehensive works on hydrogen and helium

For hydrogen, see 546 2, helium, 546 751

.82 Period 2

Comprehensive works on lithium, beryllium, boron, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, fluorine, neon

For a specific element, see the element, e g, fluorine 546 731

.83 Period 3

Comprehensive works on sodium, magnesium, aluminum, silicon, phosphorus, sulfur, chlorine, argon

For a specific element, see the element, e g, silicon 546 683

.84 Period 4

Comprehensive works on potassium, calcium, scandium, titanium, vanadium, chromium, manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, gallium, germanium, arsenic, selenium, bromine, krypton

For a specific element, see the element, e g, cobalt 546 623

.85 Period 5

Comprehensive works on rubidium, strontium, yttrium, zirconium, niobium, molybdenum, technetium, ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, silver, cadmium, indium, tin, antimony, tellurium, iodine, xenon

For a specific element, see the element, e g, zirconium 546 513

.86 Period 6

Comprehensive works on cesium, barium, lanthanide series, hafnium, tantalum, tungsten, rhenium osmium, iridium, platinum, gold, mercury, thallium, lead, bismuth, polonium, astatine, radon

For a specific element, see the element, e g, cerium 546 412

.87 Period 7

Comprehensive works on francium, radium, actinide series

For a specific element, see the element, e g, uranium 546 43

547 Organic chemistry

Chemistry of carbon compounds

Including preparation reaction analysis properties of organic compounds

For inorganic compounds of carbon see 546 681 *biochemistry* 574 192

SUMMARY

547 1	Physical organic chemistry
2	Organic synthesis and reactions
3	Organic analysis
4	Aliphatic compounds
5	Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds
6	Aromatic compounds
7	Chemistry of natural products
8	Other organic substances

1 Physical organic chemistry

Application of physical methods and concepts to organic systems

Divide like 541 e g electrochemistry of organic compounds 547 137

.2 Organic synthesis [*formerly* †545 9] and reactions

Including named reactions reactions with specific reagents unit processes

21 Alkylation and arylation

Including aromatization Friedel Craft Wurtz Fittig Wittig reactions

.22 Halogenation

225 Hydrolysis and hydration

Including saponification

23 Oxidation and reduction

Including hydrogenation dehydrogenation peroxidation quinonization

.24 Esterification

25 Amination

Including diazotization and coupling of diazo compounds

.26 Nitration and nitrosation

.27 Sulfonation

547 28 Polymerization and condensation

29 Other processes

Including fermentation processes

.3 Organic analysis

.301 Organic reagents

Including lists, specifications, tests and standards of reagent chemicals used in organic chemistry

34 Qualitative organic analysis

Including macroanalysis and semiquantitative analysis

Divide like 544, e g, microscopic analysis of organic compounds 547 348 2

.35 Quantitative organic analysis

Including gravimetric and volumetric organic analysis

Divide like 545, e g, electrochemical analysis of organic compounds 547 353

.4 Aliphatic compounds

Open-chain hydrocarbons and their derivatives

For terpenes, see 547 71, *aromatic compounds,* 547 6

41 Aliphatic hydrocarbons

411 Paraffin hydrocarbons

Saturated hydrocarbons, alkanes

For derivatives of paraffin hydrocarbons, see 547 42–547 48

412 Olefin hydrocarbons

Unsaturated hydrocarbons containing double bonded carbon atoms alkenes

Including diolefins

For derivatives of olefin hydrocarbons, see 547 42–547 48

413 Acetylene hydrocarbons

Unsaturated hydrocarbons containing triple bonded carbon atoms, alkynes

For derivatives of acetylene hydrocarbons, see 547 42–547 48

547 42–547 48 Aliphatic hydrocarbon derivatives

547 42 Aliphatic halogen derivatives

Alkyl halides polyhalogenated aliphatic hydrocarbons

For halogenated aldehydes halogenated ketones see 547 436 acid halides halogen acids 547 437

43 Aliphatic oxygen derivatives

431 Aliphatic alcohols

Monohydric dihydric trihydric polyhydric alcohols

For sugar chemistry see 547 781

435 Aliphatic ethers

436 Aliphatic aldehydes and ketones

Including hydroxy aldehydes and ketones halogenated aldehydes and ketones

For sugar chemistry see 547 781

437 Aliphatic acids

Carboxylic acids acid halides acid anhydrides halogen acids amino acids hydroxy acids acid amides

Including comprehensive works on acyl compounds e g acids and esters

For amino acids related to proteins see 547 75 aliphatic esters 547 438

438 Aliphatic esters

Including amides imides fats oils waxes lactones lactams ester plasticizers

For organic salts see 547 45

44 Aliphatic nitrogen compounds

441 Aliphatic nitro and nitroso compounds

For nitro and nitroso dyes see 547 862

442 Aliphatic amines

Primary secondary tertiary aliphatic amines

Including hydrazines azines imines aliphatic diazo and diazonium salts alkylammonium salts

443 Aliphatic azo compounds

For azo dyes see 547 863

444 Aliphatic nitriles and isonitriles

Cyanides isocyanides cyanogens

547.45 Aliphatic metallic compounds

Organic salts, chelates, arsenicals, Grignards

.46 Aliphatic sulfur compounds

For inorganic compounds of sulfur, see 546 723, *compounds containing hetero sulfur atoms* 547 594

461 Aliphatic sulfides

Including polysulfides, thioethers, sulfonium bases

463 Aliphatic thioalcohols (Mercaptans)

464 Aliphatic thioacids

465 Aliphatic sulfones

Including sulfoxides alkyl sulfites thioaldehydes thioketones

466 Aliphatic sulfinic acids

467 Aliphatic sulfonic acids

Including sulfonyl chlorides sulfonamides sulfamic acids alkyl sulfates

.47 Aliphatic phosphorus compounds

Divide like 547 46, e g , phosphinic acid 547 476

For inorganic compounds of phosphorus, see 546 712

.48 Aliphatic silicon compounds

Divide like 547 46, e g , silicones 547 485

For inorganic compounds of silicon, see 546 683

.5 Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds

.51–.58 Alicyclic compounds

Nonaromatic compounds with ring structure

Divide like 547 41–547 48 e g , cycloparaffins 547 511

.59 Heterocyclic compounds

Cyclic compounds containing other than carbon atoms in the ring

592 Compounds containing hetero oxygen atoms

Including furans pyrans oxazoles

593 Compounds containing hetero nitrogen atoms

Including pyrroles porphyrins, chlorophylls pyridines, pyrazoles, imidazoles diazines

547 594 Compounds containing hetero sulfur atoms

Including thiophenes, thiazoles

595 Mixt heterocyclic compounds

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more hetero atoms

596 Compounds with condenst hetero rings

Including quinolines purines, nucleic acids, adenosine triphosphate

.6 Aromatic compounds

Divide like 547 42–547 48 e g, benzoic acid 547 637

For aliphatic compounds, see 547 4

61 Aromatic hydrocarbons

611 Benzene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl derivatives of benzene

.613 Noncondenst polyphenyl hydrocarbons

Including diphenyl hydrocarbons

615 Naphthalene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl and aryl derivatives of naphthalene

616 Anthracene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl and aryl derivatives of anthracene, phenanthrene

632 Phenols

Including monohydric hydroxy aromatics

633 Polyhydroxy aromatics

Including dihydroxy and trihydroxy aromatics, catechols, resorcinols, hydroquinones

.7 Chemistry of natural products

Including chemistry of substances derived from natural products

For pharmacology see 615 1–615 39 *biochemistry,* 574 192, *rubber chemistry* 547 842

71 Terpenes and essential oils

Including chemistry of monoterpenes, polyterpenes, aliphatic, aromatic heterocyclic terpenes and their derivatives, camphors

For aliphatic compounds other than terpenes, see 547 4, *aromatic compounds,* 547 6, *heterocyclic compounds,* 547 59

547.72 Alkaloids

Chemistry of basic, nitrogenous plant products having strong physiological activity

Including nicotine, quinine, strychnine, cocaine, caffeine, atropine

.73 Steroids

Including chemistry of sterols (cholesterol, ergosterol), bile acids (cholic acid, desoxycholic acid), sex hormones (estrone, progesterone, testosterone, androsterone), auxins

.74 Vitamins

Including chemistry of vitamin A, B complex (thiamin, riboflavin, pantothenic acid, nicotinic acid, pyridoxin, inositol, p aminobenzoic acid), C (ascorbic acid), D, E, H (biotin), K, M (folic acid)

For vitamins in the body, see 612.399

.75 Proteins

Including chemistry of polypeptides, amino acids

For amino acids not related to proteins, see 547 437

.752 Simple proteins

Proteins yielding only alpha amino acids on hydrolysis

Including albumins, globulins, histones

754 Conjugated proteins

Including nucleoproteins, phosphoproteins, hemoglobins, chromoproteins

756 Derived proteins

Including peptones, peptides

758 *Enzymes*

Chemistry of proteins which have strong catalytic properties

Including trypsin, pepsin, coenzyme A, dehydrogenases, hexokinase, phosphorylases, amylases

.76 Antibiotics

Including chemistry of penicillins, aureomycin, chloromycin, streptomycin, bacitracin, tyrothricin

547 78 Carbohydrates

.781 Sugar chemistry

Including glycosides

For manufacture of sugar, see 664 1

.781 3 Monosaccharides

Including glucose, fructose, levulose, dextrose, gallactose

.781 5 Oligosaccharides

Including disaccharides (sucrose, maltose, lactose, cellobiose), trisaccharides (raffinose)

.782 Polysaccharides

Including starches, inulin, glycogen, cellulose, cotton derivatives, pentosans, dextrans, pectin

.783 Tannins

.8 Other organic substances

Including synthetics of economic importance

For chemistry of natural products, see 547 7

.82 Coal-tar chemistry

Comprehensive works

For chemistry of a specific compound derived from coal tar, see the subject, e g, benzene 547 611

.83 Petroleum chemistry

Comprehensive works

For chemistry of a specific compound derived from petroleum, see the subject, e g, paraffin hydrocarbons 547 411

.84 High polymers

.842 Rubber

Chemistry of high polymers with strong elastic quality

Including natural and synthetic rubber

For manufacture of rubber and rubber goods, see 678

547.843 Plastics

Chemistry of high polymers of great tensile strength and flexibility, but lacking elasticity of rubber

For manufacture of plastics, see 668.4

.843 4 Resins

Chemistry of substances similar to plastics but of lower molecular weight

.85 Synthetic fibers

Chemistry of fibers produced from homogeneous solutions or melts

For manufacture of synthetic textiles, see 677.46–677.47

.86 Dyes and related colored compounds

For commercial dyes and dyeing, see 667.2

.862 Nitro and nitroso dyes

Including naphthol green B

For aliphatic nitro and nitroso compounds, see 547.441, aromatic nitro and nitroso compounds, 547.641

.863 Azo dyes

Including Congo red, fast scarlet G, Bismarck brown R, direct black W

For aliphatic azo compounds, see 547.443, aromatic azo compounds, 547.643

.864 Triphenylmethane dyes

Including malachite green series, rosaniline series

.865 Phthalein dyes

Including phenolphthaleins, sulfonaphalines, fluorescein

.866 Quinoidal dyes

Including quinone dyes, naphthoquinones, anthraquinones, alizarines

.867 Indigoid dyes

Including indigo, thioindigo

.868 Miscellaneous heterocyclic dyes

Including acridines, azines, thiazines, oxazines

548 Crystallography

For physical chemistry, see 541, mineralogy, 549, metallography, 669 95, relationship of crystal structure to molecular structure, 541 22, crystal structure of a specific element, compound, or mineral, the subject, e g, crystal structure of sulfur 546 723

.1 Geometrical crystallography

Study of the external structure of crystals and the shape and arrangement of the faces

Including fundamental systems of crystallography, e g, isometric, tetragonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic, triclinic, hexagonal, and trigonal systems

For internal structure of crystals, see 548 81

.3 Chemical crystallography

Study of relationship between crystal structure and chemical composition

Including isomorphism and polymorphism

Class cleavage [*formerly* †548 3] in 548 84

For relationship of molecular and chemical structure, see 541 22

.5 Crystallization

Formation and growth of crystals and crystalline bodies

.7 Mathematical crystallography

Goniometric measurements and calculations

.8 Physical crystallography

.81 Structural crystallography

Study of the internal crystal structure and space lattice patterns within crystals

For external structure of crystals see 548 1

.83 X-ray crystallography

Study of crystal structure by X-ray diffraction

Including Bragg Laue, Hull crystallograms

.84 Mechanical properties of crystals

Including elasticity, tensile strength cohesion, cleavage [*formerly* †548 3], hardness, fracture, specific gravity, fusibility

.85 Electrical, thermal, and magnetic properties of crystals

Including dielectric, pyroelectric, piezoelectric properties [*formerly* *537 55] conductivity

548.9 **Optical crystallography**

Optical properties of crystals

Including isotropic and anisotropic crystals, crystal refractivity and reflectivity

549 Mineralogy

Occurrence, description, and classification of naturally occurring elements and compounds formed by inorganic reactions

Including fossilized organic substances

For crystallography, see 548, *ore deposits,* 553 1, *petrology,* 552

.1 Determinative mineralogy

For tests of specific minerals, see 549 2–549 8

.12 **Physical mineralogy**

Including mechanical properties of minerals, e g , cleavage, parting, fractures, hardness, tenacity, specific gravity, optical properties, e g , luster, color, streak, iridescence, luminescence, fluorescence, refractivity, electrical and magnetic properties, e g , pyroelectric and piezoelectric phenomena

.13 **Chemical mineralogy**

Chemical composition, properties, tests, and analysis of minerals and mineral ores

Including blowpipe analysis, microchemical reactions, etch tests

For assaying and analysis of metallic ores, see 669 92

549.2–549.8 Descriptive mineralogy

Occurrence, distribution, description of individual mineral species

Including chemical, physical, and crystallographic properties and tests

.2 Native elements

Metals, e g , gold, silver, platinum, semimetals, e g , arsenic, antimony, bismuth, nonmetals, e g , diamonds, graphite, sulfur, selenium, tellurium

549.3 Sulfides and sulfo salts

.32 Sulfides

Sulfides, selenides, tellurides, and antimonides

Including galena, stannite, cinnabar, stibnite, bismuthinite, pyrite, calaverite, smaltite

.35 Sulfo salts

Minerals containing metals and semimetals combined with sulfur

Including enargite, polybasite, stephanite, proustite, pyrargyrite, tetrahedrite, jamesonite

.4 Halides

Minerals in which metals are combined with halogens, e g, fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine

Including halite, cryolite, fluorite, sylvite, cerargyrite, atacamite, carnallite

.5 Oxides

For silica, see 549 6

.52 Anhydrous oxides

Including cuprite, zincite, corundum, hematite, ilmenite, spinel, chromite, chrysoberyl, cassiterite, rutile, pyrolusite, columbite

.53 Hydrous oxides

Including diaspore, goethite, manganite, limonite, bauxite, brucite, psilomelane

.6 Silica and silicates

Including quartz, opal, feldspar, leucite, zeolite, talc, serpentine, mica, amphibole, pyroxene, spodumene, zircon, topaz, garnet, sillimanite, beryl, olivine

549.7 Minerals containing other oxygen compounds

.72 Phosphates, vanadates, arsenates

Including monazite, triphylite, apatite, vanadinite, lazulite, scorodite, turquoise, vivianite, erythrite

Class nitrates [*formerly* †549 72] in 549 73

.73 Nitrates [*formerly* †549.72] and borates

Including soda niter, saltpeter, boracite, borax, kernite, ulexite, colemanite

.74 Tungstates, molybdates, uranates

Including wolframite, scheelite, wulfenite, uraninite (pitchblende)

Class chromates [*formerly* †549.74] in 549 75

.75 Chromates [*formerly* †549.74] and sulfates

Including anhydrous sulfates and chromates, e g , glauberite, barite, celestite, anglesite, anhydrite, crocoite, hydrous sulfates [*formerly* †549 76] and chromates, e g , antlerite, polyhalite, gypsum, epsomite, chalcanthite, alunite

[†.76] Hydrous sulfates

Class in 549 75

.78 Carbonates

Including calcite, dolomite, magnesite, siderite, rhodochrosite, smithsonite, aragonite, witherite, strontianite, cerussite, malachite, azurite

.8 Organic minerals

Including amber, asphaltum, lignite, coal

For diamonds and graphite, see 549 2

.9 Geographic distribution of minerals

Divide like 940–999, e g , mineral deposits of Canada 549 971

For regional geology, see 554–559, *geographic distribution of geologic materials of economic importance,* 553 09

550 Earth sciences

Study of all earth materials, forces, processes

Including geology

For astronomical geography, see 525, geography, 910, mineralogy, 549, paleontology, 560

.1 Philosophy and theories of geology

Including geologic time

551 Geophysics

SUMMARY

551 1	Gross structure of earth
2	Plutonic phenomena
3	Geologic agents and work
.4	[illegible] eography
5	[illegible]
7	[illegible]
8	[illegible]
9	Geochemistry

.1 Gross structure of earth

11 Structure of interior of the earth

12 Conditions within the earth [*formerly* *551 15]

Including internal heat, isostasy

13 Structure of the earth's crust

14 Physical properties of the earth's crust

Including thermal conductivity of surface components

For earth currents, see 538 748

[* 15] Conditions within the earth

Class in 551 12

[* 16] Geomagnetism

Class in 538 7

.2 Plutonic phenomena

.21 Volcanology

Study of volcanic phenomena, vulcanism

Including craters, cones, eruptions

For volcanic earthquakes, see 551.22

551.22 Seismology

Study of earthquake phenomena

Including plutonic and volcanic earthquakes

.23 Hot springs and geysers

.3 Geologic agents [*formerly* †551 9] and work

Including degradation (erosion), aggradation (deposition, sedimentation), weathering (rock decay [*formerly* †552 7])

.31 Glaciology

Ice accumulation and ice action in the earth's surface

For frost action, see 551 38

312 Glaciers

Including nourishment, advance, recession, oscillation of glaciers

For icebergs, see 551 342

313 Glaciation and glacial action

Erosion and scouring of the surface of the earth, and deposition of debris by the movement of glaciers and ice masses

Including ice fields, ice streams, cirques, drumlins, kettles, kames, roches moutonnées

For Glacial epoch, see 551 792

32 Moraines

33 Other glacier transported materials

Including till, glacial drift, outwashes

34 Ice in the sea

342 Icebergs

Including shelf ice growlers

343 Sea ice (Frozen sea water)

551.35 Geologic work of water [*formerly also* †551 92]

Gradation by running subterranean and rain waters

Including segregation and concretion [*both formerly also* †551 98] landslides mudflows

For hot springs and geysers see 551 23 *caves* 551 44

36 Geologic work of waves

Including coastal changes

37 Geologic work of wind [*formerly also* †551 93]

Including wind erosion and transport dune formation and migration

38 Frost action [*formerly* †551 91]

Rock fragmentation thru freezing of water in crevices

Including nivation frost action in soils

384 Permafrost phenomena

Including stone polygons patterned soil hummocks

4 Geomorphology and physical geography

Description origin development of topographic features

41 Continents

Including continental shelves

42 Islands

Including atolls coral reefs [*both formerly* †551 96]

43 Orology

Study of mountains

Including mountain ranges plateaus valleys

44 Speleology

Study of caves caverns grottoes karst holes

45 Plains

Including deserts and prairies [*both formerly* †551 58] steppes tundra pampas

For desert mountain ranges plateaus valleys see 551 43

551 46–551 49 Hydrography

551 46 Oceanography

Including comprehensive works on tides

For marine biology, see 574 92, ocean currents, 551 47, astronomical aspects of tides, 525 6, ice in the sea, 551 34

460 1 Composition and properties of sea water

Including salinity, density, temperature distribution, color, transparency

460 8 *Submarine topography*

Geology of the ocean floor

461 Atlantic Ocean

Including North Sea, Baltic Sea English Channel, Bay of Biscay

462 Mediterranean Sea

Including Black Sea

463 Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea

464 Southern Atlantic Ocean

Including Gulf of Guinea

465 Pacific Ocean

Including South China Sea, East China Sea, Yellow Sea Sea of Japan Bering Sea

466 Eastern Pacific Ocean

Including American western coastal waters

.467 Indian Ocean

Including Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal, Persian Gulf, Red Sea

468 Arctic Ocean

Including Baffin Bay, Davis Strait Hudson Bay, Hudson Strait

469 Antarctic Ocean

Southern waters of Atlantic, Pacific Indian Oceans

47 Ocean currents

Divide like 551 46 e g, Gulf Stream 551 471

551 48 Inland waters (Limnology)

For marine biology see 574 92

482 Lakes

Including ponds lagoons

483 Rivers and streams

484 Waterfalls

49 Hydrology

Ground and superficial surface waters

Including springs wells flood waters runoff

For hot springs and geysers see 551 23 water supply engineering 628 1 precipitation 551 573

5 Meteorology and climatology

For meteorology in aeronautics see 629 132 4 medical climatology and meteorology 616 988

51 Structure and mechanics of atmosphere [*formerly* †533 3]

513 Troposphere

Layer of air next to the earth

514 Upper atmosphere

Comprehensive works

For ionosphere see 538 767

518 Atmospheric circulation

Including planetary and terrestrial winds e g doldrums horse latitudes trade winds prevailing westerlies polar easterlies continental winds e g monsoons land sea mountain valley breezes e g foehns chinooks local winds e g sirocco bora

For storms see 551 55

52 Atmospheric thermal conditions

522 Atmospheric thermodynamics

525 Atmospheric temperature

Including isotherms temperature measurement seasonal temperature changes frost lines

551 527 Insolation and radiation

Atmospheric absorption of heat atmospheric cooling radiation heat transmission of atmosphere

[† 53] Hypsometry

Class in 526 98

54 Atmospheric pressure

Including barometry [*formerly* †533 4] isobars pressure gradients

55 Storms

For winds see 551 518 *magnetic storms* 538 74

552 Hurricanes and typhoons

553 Tornadoes (Twisters)

554 Thunderstorms

For lightning see 551 56

559 Other storms

Including dust storms waterspouts

56 Atmospheric electricity [*formerly* †537 4]

Including lightning St Elmo s fire electrical conductivity of atmosphere

For geomagnetism see 538 7

565 Atmospheric optics

Including halos mirages rainbows twilights night skies

For astronomical twilight see 525 7

57 Atmospheric moisture

Including hygrometry psychrometry

572 Condensation and evaporation

Including hoarfrost dew [*both formerly* *551 573] atmospheric nucleation

572 4 Clouds

Including fogs mists

For artificial precipitation see 551 573 8

572 8 Droughts

551 573 Precipitation

Class hoarfrost, dew [*both formerly* *551 573] in 551 572

For condensation and evaporation, see 551 572

.573 3 Rain and rainfall

Including cloudbursts

For flood waters and runoff, see 551 49

.573 5 Snow and snowfall

Including hail, graupel, sleet, snow cover, snow surveys

.573 8 Artificial precipitation

Including cloud seeding

For weather control, see 551 593

[†.58] Prairies, forests, deserts

Class prairies and deserts in 551 45, forests in 634 94

.59 Climatology and weather

For seasons, see 525 5, paleoclimatology, 551 509 01

.591 Weather forecasting

.592 *Microclimatology*

Climatology of small areas

.593 Weather control

Artificial methods of modifying weather

For artificial precipitation, see 551 573 8

.594 Weather belts

.594 2 Tropical belts

No cool season, mean temperature of coldest month above 64 4°F

594 3 Subtropical belts

Arid or semiarid climate, mean temperature above 68°F for 4–11 months, 50°–68°F *for 1–8 months*

594 4 Temperate belts

Rainy climates with mild, short winters, mean temperature of coldest month 26 6°–64 4°F

594 5 Cold belts

Rainy climates with long, severe winters, much snow precipitation, frozen ground for several months, mean temperature of coldest month below *26 6°F*

551 594 6 Polar belts

No warm season mean temperature of warmest month below 50°F

[†.6] Metamorphism

Class in 552 4

.7 Historical geology (Stratigraphy)

Study of chronological arrangement and succession of rock strata

For stratigraphic paleontology, see 560 17

.71 Archeozoic (Lower Precambrian) era

Keewatin and Timiskaming periods

.715 Proterozoic (Upper Precambrian) era

Huronian and Keeweenawan periods

.72 Paleozoic era

724 Cambrian period

Beginning of the age of invertebrates

726 Ordovician period

73 Silurian period

Including Lower, Middle, and Upper Silurian epochs

74 Devonian period

Age of fishes

75 Carboniferous period

Age of amphibians

751 Mississippian (Lower Carboniferous) period

752 Pennsylvanian (Upper Carboniferous) period

756 Permian period

.76 Mesozoic era

Age of reptiles

763 Triassic period

766 Jurassic period

77 Cretaceous period

551 78 *Cenozoic era*

Age of mammals

Class Quaternary period [*formerly* *551 78] in 551 79

781 Tertiary period

Including Paleocene Eocene Oligocene epochs Miocene and Pliocene epochs [*formerly* †551 782–†551 783]

[† 782–† 783] Miocene and Pliocene epochs

Class in 551 781

79 Quaternary period [*formerly* *551 78]

[† 791] Recent (Postglacial) epoch

Class in 551 793

792 Pleistocene (Glacial) epoch

Ice age

For glaciology see 551 31

793 Recent (Postglacial) epoch [*formerly* †551 791]

.8 **Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**

Form and position of rocks

For petrology see 552

81 **Stratifications**

[† 82] **Curvatures and contortions**

Class in 551 87

84 **Joints and cleavages**

85 Dips and outcrops

Including strikes

.86 Synclines and antisynclines

87 **Faults and folds**

Including curvatures contortions [*both formerly* †551 82]

For synclines and antisynclines see 551 86

88 **Veins and dikes**

Including necks bosses laccoliths sills

551.9 Geochemistry

Comprehensive works

Class geologic agents [*formerly* †551 9] in 551.3

For a specific aspect of geochemistry, see the subject, e g, vulcanism 551.21

[†.91] Frost action

Class in 551 38

[†.92] *Geologic work of water*

Class in 551 35

[†.93] Geologic work of wind

Class in 551 37

[†.96] Coral reefs

Class in 551 42

[†.98] Segregation and concretion

Class in 551 35

552 Petrology

Origin, occurrence, constitution, classification of rocks

For mineralogy, see 549

.1 Igneous rocks

Rocks formed by cooling and solidification of magma

2 Volcanic rocks

Fine-grained igneous rocks

Including lavas, pumice, felsites, basalt, obsidian, rhyolite, andesite, tuff, volcanic ashes and tufa

3 Plutonic rocks

Coarse-grained igneous rocks

Including granites, syenites [*both formerly also* †552 41], porphyries, gabbros, dolerites, diorites, norites, peridotites

552.4 **Metamorphic rocks**

Igneous and sedimentary rocks changed thru temperature, pressure, and chemical action without disintegration (metamorphism [*formerly* †551 6])

Including gneisses, schists slates, quartzites, serpentines, chrysolitic rocks crystalline limestones (marble)

For weathering (sometimes called metamorphism), see 551 3

[† 41] Granites and syenites

Class in 552 3

.5 **Sedimentary rocks**

Rocks formed thru mechanical accumulation and chemical deposition of rock fragments

Including sandstones shales gypsum, limestones, dolomites, oolites greensands and their components, e g, sand, clay, silt, glauconite, diatomaceous earth, salt

[†.6] **Meteorites**

Class in 523 51

[†.7] **Decay of rocks**

Class in 551 3

.8 **Microscopic petrography**

Study of rocks in thin sections

Including examination of fragmental rocks

553 Economic geology

Occurrence, origin distribution of geologic materials of economic importance

Including mining prospectuses

Class prospecting [*formerly* *553] in 622 1

For mining engineering see 622

SUMMARY

553 1	Ore deposits
.2	Coal deposits
.27	Mineral pitch deposits
28	Oil and gas geology
.29	Fossil gums and resins
.3–4	Metallic ore deposits
.5	Building stone deposits
6	Earthy material deposits
7	Mineral water deposits
.8	Gem deposits

553.1 **Ore deposits**

Formation, structure, classification of ores

Including placer deposits, mineral veins, pegmatite dikes

.2 **Coal deposits**

21 Peat deposits

Including peat coal

22 Lignite deposits

Including brown coal, jet deposits

23 Cannel coal deposits

Including bituminous shale deposits

24 Bituminous coal deposits

Including semibituminous coal deposits

25 Anthracite coal deposits

Including graphitic anthracite coal deposits

.26 Graphite deposits

Plumbago and black lead deposits

.27 **Mineral pitch deposits**

Including asphalt, bitumen, ozocerite, ceresin, natural paraffin deposits

.28 **Oil and gas geology**

Origin, migration, accumulation, and underground distribution

For oil and gas prospecting, see 622 182 8, *their extraction,* 622 338

282 Petroleum geology

For petroleum technology, see 665 5

285 Natural gas geology

Including helium in natural gases

For gas technology see 665 7

.29 **Fossil gums and resins**

553 3 Metallic ore deposits

35 Ferrous ore deposits

Including hematite magnetite goethite siderite

For soft hematite deposits see 553 66

4 Nonferrous ore deposits

41 Deposits of precious metal ores

413 Gold ores

42 Silver ores

422 Platinum ores [*formerly* †553 49]

43 Copper ores

44 Lead ores

45 Zinc, tin mercury ores

452 Zinc ores

453 Tin ores

454 Mercury ores

46 Ores of ferro alloy metals

Including molybdenum tungsten titanium vanadium tantalum niobium ores [*all formerly* †553 49] chromium manganese ores

For nickel and cobalt ores see 553 48

47 Antimony arsenic bismuth [*formerly* †553 49] ores

48 Nickel and cobalt ores

49 Other metallic ores

Class platinum ores in 553 422 molybdenum tungsten titanium niobium ores in 553 46 bismuth ores in 553 47 [*all formerly* †553 49]

492 Aluminum ores

For emery and corundum deposits see 553 65

493 Fissionable ores

Including uranium radium thorium ores

499 Minor metallic ores

Including hafnium germanium zirconium gallium indium selenium tellurium beryllium ores

553 5 Building stone deposits

Including sculptors' stones, ornamental stones

For gem deposits, see 553 8

.51 Marble and limestone deposits

For alabaster deposits, see 553 635, *mineral lime deposits,* 553 68 *verd antique marble deposits,* 553 55

52 Granite and syenite deposits

For feldspar deposits, see 553.69

.53 Sandstone deposits

Clastic rocks composed essentially of quartz

Including bluestones, flagstones

For sand and gravel deposits, see 553 62

.54 Slate deposits

55 Serpentine and soapstone deposits

Including onyx, verd antique marble, travertine

For talc and chrysolite serpentine deposits, see 553 67

.6 Earthy material deposits

61 Industrial clay deposits

Including kaolin, bentonite, fuller's earth, diaspore clay

62 Sand and gravel deposits

Including sand and gravel for building and paving materials, sands for chemical uses

63 Industrial salts deposits

For mineral water deposits, see 553 7

632 Rock salt deposits (Sodium chloride deposits)

553 633 Deposits of borax and other borates

Including boric acid deposits

635 Gypsum deposits

Including alabaster

64 Deposits of mineral fertilizers

Including nitrates potash phosphates apatite

Class guano [*formerly* †553 64] in 631 86

For sulfur deposits see 553 668 *gypsum deposits* 553 635 *lime deposits* 553 68

65 Deposits of abrasive materials

Including emery corundum pumice garnet flint carbonado industrial diamonds tripoli

For gem deposits see 553 8 *sand deposits* 553 62

66 Deposits of pigment materials

Including barite (heavy spar) ochers umber sienna soft hematite limonite rutile

For hematite deposits see 553 35

668 Sulfur deposits

67 Deposits of refractory materials

Including asbestos (chrysolite serpentine anthophyllite crocidolite) mica vermiculite talc

For soapstone deposits see 553 55

68 Deposits of cementing materials

Including mineral cements and limes chalks calcites marl

For gypsum deposits see 553 635

69 Other earthy economic mineral deposits

Including feldspar diatomaceous earth (kieselguhr)

553.7 **Mineral water deposits**

Including deposits of sodium carbonate (soda ash), sodium bicarbonate, trona, sodium sulfate, other brine-occurring minerals

.8 **Gem deposits**

Including precious and semiprecious minerals used for ornaments

82 Diamond deposits

For deposits of industrial diamonds, see 553 65

84 Ruby and sapphire deposits

86 Emerald deposits

554–559 Regional geology

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e g, geology of United States 557.3

For a specific geological aspect of a region, see the subject, e g, economic geology of Great Britain 553 094 2

554 **Geology of Europe**

555 **Geology of Asia**

556 **Geology of Africa**

557 **Geology of North America**

558 **Geology of South America**

559 **Geology of Pacific and Atlantic islands, of Polar Regions**

560 Paleontology

Including comprehensive works on paleozoology, paleontological anatomy [*formerly* †611 016]

For a specific animal fossil or group of animal fossils, see 562–569, *paleobotany,* 561, *paleoclimatology,* 551.509 01

.17 Stratigraphic paleontology

Including stratigraphic paleobotany and paleozoology

For a specific fossil or group of fossils, see 561–569, *stratigraphic paleontology in a specific country,* 560 94–560 99, *e g , Mesozoic fossils in Great Britain* 560 942, *historical geology,* 551 7

.171 Archeozoic and Proterozoic paleontology

.172 Paleozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian, Carboniferous, Permian periods

176 Mesozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Triassic, Jurassic, Cretaceous periods

.178 Cenozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Tertiary and Quaternary periods

.9 *Geographic paleontology*

Including geographic paleozoology

For geographic paleobotany, see 561 19

.92 Marine paleontology

For a specific marine fossil or group of fossils, see the subject, e g , Algae 561 93 *bivalves* 564 1

94–99 Geographic paleontology by country

Divide like 940–999, e g , fossils of Great Britain 560 942

561 Paleobotany

For stratigraphic paleobotany, see 560 17

[09] Geographic paleobotany

Class in 561 19

.1 Paleobotanical elements

.13 Fossil pollen and spores

561.14 Fossil fruit and seeds

.19 Geographic paleobotany

Divide like 940–999, e g , fossil plants of Greenland 561 199 82

561.2–561.9 Taxonomic paleobotany

.2 Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)

Including comprehensive works on Angiospermae [*formerly* *561 3]

For Dicotyledones see 561.3, *Monocotyledones,* 561 4, *Gymnospermae,* 561 5

.21 Trees

Including petrified wood

For trees of a specific group, see the group, e g , ginkgo trees 561 57

3 Dicotyledones

Class Angiospermae [*formerly* *561 3] in 561 2

4 Monocotyledones

45 Palmaceae (Palms)

49 Gramineae (Grasses)

5 Gymnospermae (Naked seed plants)

51 Gnetales

52 Coniferales (Conifers)

Including Taxaceae Podocarpaceae, Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae, Pinaceae, Taxodiaceae, Cupressaceae

55 Cordaitales

Including Pityeae (Callixylon), Cordaiteae, Poroxyleae

57 Ginkgoales (Ginkgo trees)

59 Cycadophyta

591 *Cycadales (True cycads)*

561 592 Cycadeoidales

Former heading Bennettitales

Including Williamsoniaceae Cycadeoidaceae

595 Pteridospermae (Seed ferns)

Including Medullosaceae Lyginodendraceae [*both formerly* †561 596 6–†561 596 7] Calamopityaceae

[† 596 6–† 596 7] Medullosaceae and Lyginodendraceae

Class in 561 595

597 Fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position

Including Archaeopteris [*formerly* †561 598 1] Megalopteris Glossopteris Mariopteris Alliopteris Taeniopteris Neuropteris Odontopteris Cyclopteris Linopteris Callipteris Alethopteris Pecopteris Sphenopteris Rhacopteris

[† 598 1] Archaeopteris

Class in 561 597

6 Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)

For Pteridophyta see 561 7 *Bryophyta* 561 8 *Thallophyta* 561 9

7 Pteridophyta

71 Isoetales

72 Sphenopsida (Scouring rushes)

Including Equisetales Calamitales Sphenophyllales Pseudoborniales Hyeniales

73 Filicineae (Ferns)

Including Filicales Marattiales Ophioglossales Coenopteridales

74 Psilopsida

Including Psilotales Psilophytales

79 Lycopsida (Lycopods)

Comprehensive works

Including Pleuromeiales Lepidodendrales Selaginellales Lycopodiales

For Isoetales see 561 71

8 Bryophyta (Moss plants)

[† 84] Characeae

Class in 561 93

561 9 Thallophyta

.92 Mycophyta (Fungi)

.93 Algae

Including Characeae [*formerly* †561 84], other kinds of Algae [*formerly* †561 94–†561 98]

[†.94–† 98] Other kinds of Algae

Class in 561 93

562–569 Paleozoology

For taxonomic zoology, see 592–599

562 Invertebrate paleozoology

563 Protozoa

1 Plasmodroma

Including Foraminifera, Radiolaria

[†.3] Coelenterata

Class in 563 5

.4 Porifera (Sponges)

Including Calcispongiae, Hyalospongiae, Desmospongiae

.47 Archaeocyatha

Cambrian fossils with characteristics of sponges and corals

.5 Metazoa

Including Coelenterata (Cnidaria) [*formerly also* †563 3], Enterozoa, Radiata

Class Anthozoa [*formerly* *563 5] in 563 6, Graptolitoidea [*formerly* *563 5] in 563 7

6 Anthozoa (Corals) [*formerly* *563 5]

7 Hydrozoa

Including Graptolitoidea [*formerly* *563 5], Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora

73 Scyphozoa

Including Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaeostomea, Rhizastomea

563 78	Stromatoporoidea
.9	Echinodermata Including Cystoidea, Blastoidea
.91	Crinoidea Including Camerata, Adunata, Flexibilia, Inadunata, Articulata, Comatulida
.92	Asterozoa Class starfish [*formerly* †563 92] in 563 93
.93	Asteroidea (Starfish) [*formerly* †563 92] Including Phanerozonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata
94	Ophiuroidea Including Aegophiurida, Lysophiurida, Ophiocystida, *Aganasterida, Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida* Chilophiurida
95	Echinozoa Including Bothriocidaroida, Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida Perischoechinoida, Echinocystoida, Perichoechinoida
564	Mollusca and molluscoidea
.1	Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks) Including Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea, Pantodonta
.19	Crepipoda (Chitons) Polyplacopoda (Amphineura) [*formerly* †564 31] Including Eoplacophora Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora Teleoplacophora
.2	Scaphopoda (Toothshells)
3	Gastropoda Snails slugs whelks Divide like 594 3 e g fossil sea slugs (Pteropoda) [*formerly* †564 4] 564 35
[† 31]	Amphineura Class in 564 19
[† 4]	Pteropoda Class in 564 35

564.5 Cephalopoda

.51 Tetrabranchia

.52 Nautiloidea (Nautilus)

.53 Ammonitoidea

.55 Dibranchia

Including Vampyromorpha

.56 Octopoda

Including Belemnoidea

.58 Decapoda

.6 Molluscoidea

.7 Bryozoa

.8 Brachiopoda

Including Paleotremata

[†.9] Tunica

Class in 566

565 Other fossil invertebrates

.1 Wormlike fossil animals

Including Tardigrada [*formerly* †565.412, *565.4], Platyhelminthes, Nemertea, *Nematoidea*, Nematomorpha, Acanthocephala, Eucoelomata, Annelida, *Phoronidea*, Myzostoma, Aschelminthes

.2 Arthropoda

.3 Crustacea

Class Pycnogonida [*formerly* †565.315] in 565.394

Divide like 595.32–595.35, e.g., fossil barnacles 565.35

.36 Malacostraca

Including Nebaliacea Rhinocarina, Ceratiocarina, Hymenocarina, Nahecarida

.37 Eumalacostraca

Including Amphipoda, Isopoda, Thermosbaenacea, Tanaidacea

565 38 Other Eumalacostraca

Including Cumacea Stomatopoda Mysidacea Decapoda Euphausiacea

39 Chelicerata

391 Merostomata

Including Eurypterida, Synxiphosura

.392 Xiphosura

393 Trilobita

394 Pycnogonida [*formerly* †565 315]

4 Arachnida

Class Tardigrada [*formerly* *565 4] in 565 1

[† 412] Tardigrada (Water bears)

Class in 565 1

49 Architarbi

6 Progoneata

Former heading Myriopoda

Divide like 595 6 e g fossil centipedes 565 62

7 Insecta (Insects)

71 Synaptera

Including Collembola Protura Entotrophi Thysanura

72 Orthoptera and related orders

Including Dermaptera Blattariae Phasmotodea Mantodea

73 Other related orders

Including Thysanoptera Corrodentia Odonata Ephemeroptera Plecoptera Isoptera Embioptera Zoraptera

74 Neuroptera and related orders

Including Megaloptera Mecoptera Trichoptera Strepsiptera

75 Hemiptera and related orders

Including Anoplura Mallophaga Homoptera Heteroptera

.76 Coleoptera

Including Adephaga Polyphaga Elateroidea Mordelloidea Curculionoidea Colydioidea

.77 Diptera

Including Orthorrhapha Cyclorrhapha Siphonaptera

565.78 Lepidoptera

Including Jugatae, Frenatae, Rhopalocera

.79 Hymenoptera

566 Vertebrate paleozoology (Fossil Chordata)

Including Tunicata [*formerly* †564 9], Acrania [*formerly* †567 1], Craniata

567 Anamnia (Fossil cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians)

[†.1] Acrania

Class in 566

.2 Agnatha

Including Cyclostomata (lampreys)

3 Chondrichthyes (Sharks, rays, skates)

Including Elasmobranchii, Cladoselachii, Selachii, Hybodontoidea, Batoidea, Pleuracanthodii, Holocephali, Bradyodonti

.4 Actinopterygii (Ganoids)

Including Palaeoniscoidea, Subholostei, Semionotoidea, Pycnodontoidea, Aspidorhynchoidea, Pholidophoroidea

Class Teleostei [*formerly* *567.4] in 567 5

.5 Teleostei [*formerly* *567 4]

Including Isospondyli, Ostariophysi, Apodes, Heteromi, Mesichthyes, Acanthopterygii

6 Amphibia

Including Labyrinthodontia, Lepospondyli

.7 Apoda

8 Salientia

Including Eoanura, Proanura, Anura

.9 Urodela

Including Cryptobranchoidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandroidea, Proteidea

568 Sauropsida (Reptiles and birds)

1 Reptilia

11 Lepidosauria

Including Eosuchia Rhynchocephalia Squamata Lacertilia (lizards)

12 Serpentes (Snakes)

13 Anapsida

Including Cotylosauria Chelonia

14 Crocodilia

Including Protosuchia Sebecosuchia Mesosuchia Eusuchia

15 Ichthyopterygia

16 Synaptosauria

Including Protorosauria Sauropterygia

17 Synapsida

Former heading Anomodontia

Including Pelycosauria Therapsida Ictidosauria

18 Pterosauri

Including Rhamphorhynchoidea Pterodactyloidea

19 Archosauria

Former heading Dinosauria

Including Thecodontia Saurischia Ornithischia

For Crocodilia see 568 14 *Pterosauri* 568 18

2 Aves (Birds)

.22 Archaeornithes

23 Neornithes

Including Hesperornithiformes Ichthyornithiformes

Class other orders of Neornithes [*formerly* *568 2] in 568 3–568 9

---

568 3–568 9 Other orders of Neornithes [*formerly* *568 2]

3 Gruiformes and related orders

Including Charadriiformes [*formerly* †568 4] Phororhaci Diatrymiformes Ciconiiformes

568 4 Anseriformes and related orders

Including Procellariiformes, Pelecaniformes, Sphenisciformes, Gaviiformes, Colymbiformes

Class Charadriiformes [*formerly* †568 4] in 568 3

.5 Palaeognathae

Including Caenagnathiformes, Struthioniformes, Rheiformes, Casuariiformes, Dinornithiformes, Aepyornithiformes, Apterygiformes, Tinamiformes

.6 Galliformes and Columbiformes

.7 Psittaciformes and related orders

Including Piciformes, Trogoniformes, Cuculiformes

.8 Passeriformes and related orders

Including Coraciiformes, Apodiformes

.9 Falconiformes and related orders

Including Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes

569 Mammalia (Mammals)

.1 Prototheria

Including Monotremata

.17 Allotheria

Including Multituberculata, Triconodonta

18 Theria

Including Pantotheria, Symmetrodonta

2 Metatheria

Including Marsupialia

3 Eutheria

Including Unguiculata

31 Edentata

Including Palaeanodonta, Xenarthra, Pholidota

32 Glires

Including Lagomorpha, Rodentia

33 Insectivora

34 Dermoptera

35 Tillodontia

569 36 Taeniodontia

4 Chiroptera

Including Megachiroptera Microchiroptera

5 Cetacea

Including Archaeoceti Odontoceti Mysticeti

55 Sirenia

Including Trichechiformes Desmostyliformes

6 Paenungulata

Including Pantodonta Dinocerata Pyrotheria Proboscidea Embrithopoda Hyracoidea

For Sirenia see 569 55

7 Mesaxonia and Paraxonia

72 Perissodactyla

Including Hippomorpha Ceratomorpha

73 Artiodactyla

Including Suiformes Tylopoda Ruminantia

74 Carnivora

Including Creodonta Fissipeda Pinnipedia

75 Protungulata

Including Condylarthra Litopterna Notoungulata Astrapotheria Tubulidentata

8 Primates

Including Prosimii Anthropoidea

Class man [*formerly* *569 8] in 569 9

9 Hominidae (Man) [*formerly* *569 8]

570 Anthropological and biological sciences

For anthropology, see 572, biology, 574

571 Prehistoric archeology

Comprehensive works

Including relics of material, cultural, social life

For ancient history, see 930, antiquities, prehistoric and historic archeology of a specific country, 913, American Indian archeological remains, 970 1–970 6, 980 1–980 6, comprehensive works on prehistoric and historic archeology, 913

.1 Paleolithic or old stone age

Including chipt stone artifacts

For cave dwellings, see 571 8

.2 Neolithic or new stone age

Including polisht stone artifacts

.3 Copper and bronze age

.4 Iron age

.5 Other remains

Including basketry, textiles, pottery, glass, implements of wood and bone

.6 Prehistoric industries

.7 Prehistoric art

Including prehistoric art objects, ornaments, drawings

72 Painting

Including rock paintings

73 Sculpture

Including rock carvings, petroglyphs

.8 Prehistoric shelter

Including cave dwellings, pit dwellings, lake dwellings, tree dwellings

For pueblos, cliff dwellings of American Indians, see 970 657 18, 980 657 18

.9 Other prehistoric structures

Including mounds, kitchen middens megaliths, monoliths dolmens, cromlechs

For American Indian mounds in a specific place, see the place, e g, mounds in Wisconsin 913 775

572 **Anthropology**

Including cultural anthropology, comprehensive works on cultural and physical anthropology

For culture and society, see 301 2, *ethnopsychology and national psychology*, 136 4, *physical anthropology*, 573, *history of civilization*, 901 9, *customs and folklore*, 390, *criminal anthropology*, 364 33

.4 **Original home of man**

Including Eden, Atlantis

.8 **Linguistic anthropology**

Division of peoples by language

Including Aryan, Slavic, other similar groups

Prefer 572 9 when geographic division is possible

Divide like 420–499, e g , Semitic races 572 892

For philology, see 400, *anthropogeography*, 572 9

.9 **Anthropogeography**

Geographic distribution of races

Divide like 930–999, e g , distribution of races in Asia 572 95

For physical anthropology, see 573, *linguistic anthropology*, 572 8, *sociological aspects of ethnic and minority groups*, 301 45, *migration*, 325, *human ecology*, 301 3

573 **Physical anthropology**

Including natural history of man, his origin, physical measurements, personal characteristics, anthropological anatomy [*formerly* †611 014]

.2 Origin of man [*formerly* *573 3]

For original home of man, see 572 4

.3 Antiquity of man

Including evolution of man

Class origin of man [*formerly* *573 3] in 573 2

.4 Influence of climate and surroundings

.6 Anthropometry

Including comprehensive works on fingerprints

Class craniology [*formerly* *573 6] in 573 7

For use of anthropometry in crime investigation, see 364 125, *fingerprinting of prisoners*, 365 642

.7 Craniology [*formerly* *573 6]

For phrenology, see 139

573 8 Abnormal dimensions

Including dwarfs giants

For teratology, see 611 012

[† 9] Monstrosities

Class in 611 012

574 Biology

Science of life and living organisms

For anthropology, see 572, *botanical sciences,* 580, *zoological sciences,* 590, *conservation of wildlife,* 799, *wildlife refuges,* 338 78

SUMMARY

574 1	Biophysiology
2	Pathology
3	Embryology
4	Biomorphology
5	Bioecology
6	Economic biology
8	Microscopic biology
9	Natural history and biogeography

01 Biological theories

Class philosophy of biology [*formerly* *574 01] in 577

028 Biological techniques [*formerly* *578]

Comprehensive works

For biomicroscopy, see 578 4, *slide preparation,* 578 6–578 9

074 Natural history museums

Comprehensive works

For botanical exhibits, see 580 74, *zoological exhibits,* 590 74, *aquariums,* 574 920 74, *arrangement and preservation of specimens in museums,* 579 7–579 8

.1 Biophysiology [*formerly also* †612.014]

Vital processes and functions of all living organisms

For plant physiology, see 581 1, *animal physiology,* 591 1, *human physiology,* 612

11 Circulation

12 Respiration

13 Nutrition and metabolism

Including postembryonic growth and development

For products of metabolism, see 574 192

574 14 Secretion and excretion

16 Reproduction

For histogenesis see 574 17, genetics 575 1

---

574 162–574 165 Asexual reproduction

162 Parthenogenesis

163 Alternation of generations (Metagenesis)

165 Vegetative generation

166 Sexual reproduction

For alternation of generations, see 574 163

166 2 Conjugation

167 Hermaphroditism

17 Histogenesis

Microscopic study of germ cells

For microscopic biology see 574 8 reproduction, 574 16

18 Response to stimuli

Including irritability [*formerly also* †576 4], tropisms, motion, locomotion

19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes [*formerly also* †577 1]

191 Biophysics

Comprehensive works on physics of vital processes

For physics of a specific function, see the function, e g, circulation 574 11 plant biophysics, 581 191, animal biophysics, 591 191, human biophysics, 612 017

192 Biochemistry

Including chemical constitution of living matter products of metabolism

For metabolism, see 574 13, plant biochemistry, 581 192, animal biochemistry 591 192, human biochemistry, 612 015

193 Enzymes and antienzymes in vivo

194 Hormones and vitamins in vivo

196 Biosynthesis

574.2 Pathology

Including anomalies, malformations (teratology), deformations, diseased conditions of organisms

For plant pathology, see 581 2, *animal pathology,* 591.2, *human pathology,* 616 07

.3 Embryology

Formation and development of organisms

Including gametogenesis

For postembryonic development, see 574 13 *plant embryology,* 581 33, *animal embryology,* 591 33, *human embryology,* 612 64

.4 Biomorphology

Morphological comparison of plants with animals

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †574 7] of organisms

For plant morphology, see 581 4, *animal morphology,* 591 4, *human anatomy,* 611

.5 Bioecology [*formerly* †575 3]

Interrelation of organisms to environment and to each other

For plant ecology, see 581 5, *animal ecology,* 591 5, *human ecology,* 301 3

52 Adaptation to environment [*formerly* †575 4]

Including biological autecology, synecology, biogeochemistry

For biogeography, see 574 9

53 Nutritive adaptations

Including food chains and cycles

54 Biometeorology and bioclimatology

55 Biological communities

Including consocies, associations, clans, colonies, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

56 Reproductive adaptations

Adaptive breeding habits

57 Protective adaptations

Including means of protection, attraction, self preservation

.6 Economic biology

For economic botany, see 581 6, *economic zoology,* 591 6

[† 7] Descriptive anatomy

Class in 574 4

574.8 **Microscopic biology**

Study of structural parts of organisms with a microscope

For microbiology see 576, biomicroscopy, 578 4, microscopic botany, 581 8, microscopic zoology, 591 8, slide preparation, 578 6

82 **Histology**

Study of minute structure of tissues

For human histology, see 611 018

.87 **Cytology** [*formerly also* †576 3 and its subdivisions, †612 014 1–†612 014 3]

Study of cells

For germ cells, see 574 17, human cytology, 611 018 1

872 *Cell morphology*

873 Protoplasm [*formerly also* †*576 2]

873 2 Nucleus

Including chromosomes nucleolus, chromatin, linin network, nuclear membrane

873 3 Plastids

Including chromoplasts, leucoplasts

873 4 Cytoplasm

Including centrosomes, blepharoplasts, metaplasmic bodies

874 *Non protoplasmic structure of cells*

Including pigmentation vacuoles, aleurone grains

875 Cell membrane

876 Cell physiology

876 1 Cell nutrition and metabolism

876 2 Cell division

.876 22 Direct cell division (Amitosis)

876 23 Indirect cell division (Mitosis)

Including prophase metaphase, anaphase, telophase stages of cell division

876 4 Other cell functions

Including cell respiration, excretion

574 876 5 Cell degeneration

876 6 Cell colonies [*formerly* †576 5]

878 Comparative cytology

Comparison of plant cells with animal cells

9 Natural history and biogeography

For phytogeography see 581 9 *zoogeography* 591 9 *anthropogeography* 572 9

909 Zonal and physiographic biology

For flora and fauna of Polar Regions see 574 998

909 2 Temperate-Zone biology

909 3 Tropical biology

909 4 Mountain area biology

909 5 Desert biology

91 Insular biology

Divide like 940–999 e g flora and fauna of Madagascar 574 916 91

92 Marine biology

Divide like 551 46 e g Caribbean Sea life 574 923

920 74 Aquariums [*formerly* †*590 74]

928 Polar marine biology

For flora and fauna of Polar Regions see 574 998

929 Fresh water biology (Limnetic biology)

Divide like 940–999 e g flora and fauna of the Great Lakes 574 929 77

93–99 Natural history and biogeography by country

Divide like 930–999 e g plants and animals in Arizona 574 979 1

575 Organic evolution (Phylogeny)

Origin of species thru historic descent with modification

For evolution of man see 573 3 *of plants* 581 38 *of animals* 591 38 *of a specific plant or animal the taxonomic group e g evolution of bony fish* 597 5 *paleontology* 560

016 Modern theories of evolution

016 2 Darwinian and neo Darwinian theories

Including natural selection survival of the fittest [*both formerly also* †575 423]

575 016 3 Orthogenesis

Evolution along seemingly predetermined lines

[† 016 4] Weismann's theory

Class in 575 11

016 5 Mutation theories

Theories on abrupt hereditary changes

Including theory of de Vries

For mutations, see 575 292, *artificial mutations,* 575 131

016 6 Lamarckian and neo Lamarckian theories

Including inheritance of acquired characteristics [*formerly also* †575 123], hereditary effects of use and disuse of organs

.1 Genetics

Study of heredity and variation

Class eugenics [*formerly* †575 1] in 613 94, variation [*formerly* *575 1] in 575 2

For plant genetics see 581 15, *animal genetics,* 591 15

11 Laws of heredity

Including laws of Weismann (chromosome theory) [*formerly* †575 016 4], Mendel, Galton

12 Hereditary characteristics

Inheritance of similar and divergent characteristics

Including characteristics of genes genotypes, phenotypes

[† 123] Inheritance of acquired characteristics

Class in 575 016 6

13 Factors affecting heredity

For mutations, see 575 292

131 Artificial mutations

Including inheritable effects of radiation on chromosomes and genes

For mutation theories, see 575 016 5

132 Outbreeding

Effects of breeding unrelated members of a species

133 Inbreeding

Effects of breeding closely related members of a species

575 134 Species interfertility

Including infertile hybrid offspring

[† 135] Xenia

Class in 581 151

[† 136] Telegony

Class in 591 15

137 Atavism

Recurrence of characteristics of remote ancestors

[† 138] Cytological aspects

Class in 575 21

2 Variation [*formerly* *575 1]

21 Physiological aspects of variation

Including cytological [*formerly* †575 138] and embryological aspects

22 Environmental aspects of variation

For effects of radiation see 575 131

28 Hybrids

29 Abrupt deviations

292 Mutations

Inheritable abrupt deviations

For mutation theories see 575 016 5 *artificial mutations* 575 131

293 Sports

Noninheritable abrupt deviations

[† 3] Ecology

Class in 574 5

[† 4] Adaptation

Class in 574 52

[† 423] Natural selection and survival of the fittest

Class in 575 016 2

[† 5] Sexual selection

Class in 577 8

575.7 **Evolutionary cycles**

Including degeneration, extinction, regeneration of species

.9 **Origin and evolution of sexes**

576 Microbiology

Study of microscopic organisms

Class origin and beginnings of life [*formerly* †*576] in 577

For bacteriology see [illegible]
a specific applicatic [illegible]
616 01, *microscopic* [illegible]

[†.1] Abiogenesis

Class in 577 01

[†*.2] Protoplasm

Class in 574 873

[†.3] Cytology

Class in 574 87

[†.4] Irritability

Class in 574 18

[†.5] Cell colonies

Class in 574 876 6

.6 Rickettsiae [*formerly* *589 9] and viruses

For pathogenic viruses and rickettsiae, see 616 019, *viral and rickettsial diseases, the subject, e g , in man* 616 92

577 Philosophy of biology [formerly *574.01]

Including origin and beginnings of life [*formerly* †*576], nature of living substances vitalism

For organic evolution, see 575

01 Abiogenesis (Spontaneous generation) [*formerly* *576, †576 1, †581 161, †591 161]

[†.1] Physics and chemistry of vital processes

Class in 574 19

.2 Comparison of living and nonliving substances

577.3 Comparison of vital and physical processes

.4 Conditions necessary for life

.5 Comparison of plants and animals

For morphological comparison of plants with animals, see 574 4

.6 Vital force

.7 Degeneration and death

.8 Sex in nature

Including sexual selection [*formerly* †575 5]

For origin and evolution of sexes, see 575 9

578 Microscopes and microscopy

Comprehensive works

Class biological techniques [*formerly* *578] in 574 028

For a specific application of microscopy, see the subject, e g, microscopic analysis in chemistry 544 82

.1 Types of microscopes

12 Simple microscope

13 Compound microscope

14 Ultramicroscope

15 Electron microscope

.4 Biomicroscopy

Use of microscope in biology

46 Biological photomicrography

6 Slide preparation

For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578 8, *of animal tissues,* 578 9, *biopsies,* 616 075 83

62 Fixation techniques

Including freezing drying technique

578.63 Microtomes and microtomy

Including frozen section technique, section cutting

64 Stain techniques

65 Mounting techniques

.8 **Slide preparation of plant tissues**

Divide like 578.6, e.g., staining root hairs 578.84

.9 **Slide preparation of animal tissues**

Divide like 578.6, e.g., fixation of heart tissues 578.92

579 Collection and preservation of biological specimens

.1 **Preparation and preservation of skeletons**

.2 **Preservation of biological specimens**

Preservation in alcohol, formaldehyde and other preservatives

Including injections of preservatives [*formerly* †579.3], embalming, mummification

For taxidermy, see 579.4, *preservation in museums,* 579.8, *preservation of skeletons,* 579.1

[†3] Injections

Class in 579.2

.4 **Taxidermy**

Art of preparing stuffing mounting [*formerly* †579.5] skins of animals

[†5] Mounting

Class in 579.4

579 6 **Methods of collecting biological specimens**

Including collecting equipment transportation techniques

7 **Arrangement of specimens in museums**

Including arrangement of habitat groups

For botanical exhibits see 580 74 *zoological exhibits* 590 74

8 **Preservation of specimens in museums**

Including air conditioning control of moths other destructive animals

580 Botanical sciences

For paleobotany see 561 *production of crops* 633–635 *organic evolution* 575

74 Botanical exhibits

For arrangement of specimens in museums see 579 7

742 Herbariums

744 Botanical gardens

581 Botany

For a specific aspect of an individual plant or group of plants see the plant or group e g formation of sunflower seeds 583 55 *taxonomic botany* 582 589

SUMMARY

581 1	Plant physiology (Phytophysiology)
2	Plant pathology (Phytopathology)
3	Plant maturation
4	Plant morphology
5	Plant ecology
6	Economic botany
8	Microscopic botany
9	Phytogeography

581.1 Plant physiology (Phytophysiology)

SUMMARY

.11 Circulation in plants

Absorption and translocation of water in the xylem and solutes in the phloem

Including cytoplasmic and protoplasmic movements [*formerly* †581.186], capillarity, osmosis

.12 Respiration in plants

Exchange and translocation of gases in plants

Including catabolic processes of metabolism

.121 Aerobic respiration

.124 Intercellular respiration

.128 Anaerobic respiration

.129 Transpiration in plants

.13 Nutrition and metabolism in plants

For absorption and translocation of solutes in plants see 581.11; *catabolic processes of metabolism* 581.12; *deficiency diseases in plants* 581.21

.132 Digestion in plants

.133 Food manufacture and storage in plants

Including assimilation and anabolic processes

[†.133 2] Assimilation by autotrophic plants

Class in 581.133 42

[†.133 3] Assimilation by heterotrophic plants

Class in 581.133 43

581 133 4 Methods of food manufacture in plants

133 42 Photosynthesis

Including starch synthesis

133 43 Chemosynthesis

Manufacture of organic foods by heterotrophic plants [*formerly* †581 133 3] with energy derived from chemical reactions

For nitrifying bacteria see 589 95

[† 133 44] Nitrification

Class in 589 95

133 45 Protein synthesis

Manufacture of amino acids proteins and other nitrogenous substances by plants from nitrogen [*formerly* †581 133 53]

133 46 Lipid synthesis

Manufacture of fats oils and waxes by plants from sugars

133 5 Mineral metabolism in plants

[† 133 52] Carbon

Class in 581 133 42

[† 133 53] Nitrogen

Class in 581 133 45

133 54 Macronutrient elements

Including metabolism of sulfur phosphorus iron calcium potassium magnesium sodium salts

133 56 Micronutrient elements (Trace elements)

Including metabolism of manganese copper zinc boron molybdenum aluminum silicon selenium compounds

133 8 Food storage in plants

581 134–581 139 Results of nutrition

581 134 Growth processes in plants

For growth movements see 581 183

134 1 Growth factors

134 15 Environmental factors

Including temperature moisture electricity mechanical forces

134 152 Meteorological factors

134 153 Light

134 2 Primary growth

Growth initiated at apical meristems

Including cell enlargement and division

134 3 Secondary growth

Growth initiated at lateral meristems

Including lateral growth of stems roots leaves

135 Development of plants

Postembryonic development of plants

For embryonic development of plants see 581 33

135 3 Periods of plant development

135 35 Abscission

Shedding of leaves and other organs

139 Longevity in plants

14 Secretion and excretion in plants

For transpiration in plants see 581 129 *plant biochemistry* 581 192

15 Plant genetics

Including heredity and variation in plants

151 Physiological aspects of variation in plants

Including xenia [*formerly* 1575 135] embryological and cytological aspects

152 Environmental aspects of variation in plants

Including effects of radiation

For artificial mutations in plants see 581 159 2

158 Plant hybrids

581.159 Abrupt deviations in plants

.159 2 Plant mutations

Inheritable abrupt deviations

Including artificial mutations

159 3 Plant sports

Noninheritable abrupt deviations

.16 Plant propagation

Divide like 574 16, e g , vegetative generation in plants 581 165

[† 161] Abiogenesis

Class in 577 01

17 Plant histogenesis

Microscopic study of plant germ cells

For microscopic botany, see 581 8, *plant propagation, 581 16, plant gametogenesis, 581 32*

179 Regenerative functions in plants

18 Response of plants to stimuli

Including plant behavior [*formerly also* †581 51]

For adaptation of plants to environment, see 581 52

182 Hydration movements

Movements in nonliving plant tissues or organs resulting from hydration or dehydration of cell walls, e g, splitting of pods, opening of capsules

183 Growth movements

For mutations, see 581 185

183 2 Tropisms

Including geotropism [*formerly* †612 014 477] thigmotropism [*formerly* †612 014 478], hydrotropism, chemotropism, aerotropism, heliotropism, thermotropism, stereotropism, traumatropism

183 3 Nastic movements

Movements showing no definite directional relation to stimuli

Including epinastic [*formerly* †581 185 4], hyponastic [*formerly* †581 185 5], nyctinastic photonastic, thermonastic movements

184 Turgor movements

Movements caused by reversible changes in cell volume, e g , wilting, opening and closing of stomates

581 185 Nutation and circumnutation

Movements caused by unequal rates of growth e g twining

[† 185 4–† 185 5] Epinastic and hyponastic movements

Class in 581 183 3

[† 186] Cytoplasmic and protoplasmic movements

Class in 581 11

19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes in plants

Divide like 574 19 e g biosynthesis in plants 581 196

For manufacture of food in plants see 581 133

2 Plant pathology (Phytopathology)

Plant diseases and their control

For diseases of agricultural crops see 632 of specific crops 633–635

21 Deficiency diseases of plants

22 Plant teratology

Including anomalies deformations atrophies hypertrophies

.23 Parasitic diseases of plants

For galls see 581 27

232 Plant diseases due to parasitic plants

.232 2 Bacterial diseases of plants

[† 232 4] Smuts and bunts

Class in 581 232 6

[† 232 5] Rusts

Class in 581 232 6

.232 6 Fungus diseases of plants

Including plant diseases caused by smuts bunts rusts [*all formerly* †581.232 4–†581 232 5]

.233 Plant diseases due to parasitic animals

Including plant diseases caused by protozoans worms insects other parasitic animals

.234 Viral and rickettsial diseases of plants

24 Plant injuries

Including injuries due to frost excessive heat drought other meteorological agents

581.27 Galls

.28 Methods of controlling plant disease

.3 Plant maturation

.32 Plant gametogenesis

Formation and maturation of sex cells in plants

For plant histogenesis, see 581.17

.33 Plant embryology

Embryonic development of plants

For postembryonic development of plants, see 581.135; seeds, 581.467

.332 Anatomy of embryonic parts of plants

Including anatomy of embryonic tissues and stems, cotyledons, plumules, radicles, endosperms, suspensors

.333 Germination processes

.334 Seedling stages

Including development of primary roots, stems, leaves

.36 Production and differentiation of sexes in plants

For gametogenesis in plants, see 581.32

.38 Evolution of plants

.4 Plant morphology

Comparative anatomy of plants

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †581.7]

For plant histology, see 581.82; plant cytology, 581.87; anatomy of embryonic parts of plants, 581.332; ecological anatomy of plants, 581.522 5

.41 Circulatory organs

Including structure of fibrovascular bundles, xylem, phloem, cambium layer, veins

.42 Respiratory organs

Including structure of stomates, lenticels, guard cells, intercellular spaces

.43 Digestive organs

For leaves, see 581.497

.44 Secretory and excretory organs

For stomates and lenticels, see 581.42

581.46 Reproductory organs

462 Reproductory organs of nonflowering plants

Structure of reproductory organs of bryophytes and pteridophytes

---

581.463–581.467 Reproductory organs of flowering plants

463 Flowers

Including structure of calyx corolla corona stamens pistils ovary style stigma modified flower parts

464 Fruit

467 Seeds

For plant embryology see 581.33

47 Motor and integumentary organs

Including structure of epidermis surface protuberances e g thorns tentacles

49 Topographic anatomy

For flowers see 581.463

495 Stems

497 Leaves and fronds

498 Roots

.5 Plant ecology

Vegetative interrelation

For phytogeography see 581.9 *plant behavior* 581.18 *forest ecology* 634.94

508 Plant lore

For plants in folklore see 398

[† 51] Plant behavior

Class in 581.18

581.52 Adaptation of plants to environment

Comprehensive works

For a specific adaptive feature, see the subject, e g, nutritive adaptations 581 53

.522 Autecology of plants

.522 2 Environmental effects on plants

Including effects of soil, light, gases, liquids on plants

For effects of climate on plants, see 581 54, *formational ecology,* 581 526

.522 3 Effects of plants on environment

Including modification of soil and air, prevention of erosion

For soil fertility, see 631.45

.522 5 Ecological anatomy of plants

Adaptation of structure of plants to environment

.522 6 Dissemination of plants

Including dissemination by man, animals, physical factors, e g, wind

.524 Synecology of plants

Associational ecology, mutual relationship of plants

Including invasion, succession, alternation of plants

.524 4 Zonation of plants

Including horizontal and vertical zonation

For adaptation of plants to fresh and salt water, see 581 526 3, *to prairie regions,* 581 526 4, *to arid and semiarid regions,* 581 526 5

.524 44 *Climatic zonation of plants*

.526 Formational ecology (Physiographic ecology)

Influence of physical factors of environment on plant distribution and species

For geographic distribution of plants, see 581 9, *of specific family or subfamily,* 582–589

.526 3 Hydric formations

Adaptation of hydrophytes in fresh and salt water, swamps, heaths, bogs, moors

For adaptation of plants in salt marshes, see 581 526 5; *marine botany,* 581 92

581 526 4 Mesic formations

Adaptation of mesophytes in regions of medium conditions of moisture e g, prairie regions

Including epiphytes vines lianas

[† 526 42] Forest formations

Class in 634 94

526 5 Xeric formations

Adaptation of halophytes and xerophytes in salt marshes alkaline soils arid and semiarid regions dunes rocks

[† 527] Floral regions

Class in 581 9

53 Nutritive adaptations of plants

533 Nutritive specialization of plants

533 3 Carnivorous and insectivorous plants

533 4 Saprophytic plants

54 Adaptation of plants to climatic conditions

Including seasonal adaptations

55 Botanical communities

Including socies consocies clans colonies mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

56 Reproductive adaptations of plants

For dissemination of plants see 581 522 6

57 Protective adaptations of plants

Including means of protection attraction self preservation

For formational ecology see 581 526

6 Economic botany

Plants beneficial and deleterious to man s needs

For cultivation of specific plants see 633–635

61 Beneficial plants

63 Edible and medicinal plants

632 Edible plants

581 634 Medical botany

For drugs of vegetable origin, see 615.3, allergenic plants, 581 67

64 Industrial botany

Comprehensive works

For cultivation of a specific industrial plant, see the subject, e g, fiber crops 633 5

.65 Deleterious plants

Class weeds [*formerly* †581 65] in 632 58

67 Allergenic plants

Including poison ivy

69 Poisonous plants

For poisons of vegetable origin, see 615 93

[†.7] Descriptive anatomy of plants

Class in 581 4

.8 Microscopic botany

Divide like 574 8, e g, plant cytology 581 87

For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578 8

.9 Phytogeography

Geographic distribution of plants

Including floral regions [*formerly* †581 527]

909 Zonal and physiographic botany

Divide like 574 909 e g, tropical plants 581 909 3

91 Insular botany

Divide like 930–999, e g, plants of Madagascar 581 916 91

92 Marine botany

Divide like 551 46, e g, plants of Caribbean Sea 581 923

929 Fresh-water botany

Divide like 930–999, e g, plants of Lake Pontchartrain 581 929 763 34

93–99 Plants in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g, plants in Arizona 581 979 1

Class geographic distribution of trees [*formerly* *581 93–*581 99] in 582 160 9, of wild flowering plants [*formerly* †*581 93–†*581 99] in 582 130 9, if preferred, class geographic distribution of wild flowering plants here

582-589 Taxonomic botany

Concepts in the classification of botany are constantly changing, with a result that coordination and subordination of groups, which in earlier editions were shown more or less accurately by length of number, are completely upset In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indention, length of number is of little significance

For outline of alternative scheme for taxonomic botany, see 582 2–582 9, classification of plants, 580 12, paleobotany, 561, origin of species, 575

582 **Spermatophyta (Seed-bearing plants)**

Comprehensive works

For Dicotyledones, see 583, Monocotyledones, 584, Gymnospermae, 585

.1 Nontaxonomic groups of seed bearing plants

.12 Herbaceous plants

Seed plants without persistent woody tissue

For a specific class, order, or family of herbaceous plants, see 583–585, growing condimental and sweet herbs, 635 7, herbaceous plants in landscape design, 716

13 Flowering plants

Comprehensive works

Including garden and wild flowers

For a specific class, order, or family of flowering plants, see 583–584, flowering woody plants, 582 15, flower gardening, 635 9

130 9 Geographic distribution of wild-flowering plants [*formerly* †*581 93–†*581 99]

Divide like 930–999, e g, wild flowers of Canada 582 130 971

If preferred, class in 581 9

14 Other herbaceous plants

Including succulent, carpet, mat cushion, bush herbals

582.15 Woody plants [*formerly* *582.16]

Including flowering woody plants

For comprehensive works on flowering plants, see 582.13, a specific class, order, or family of woody plants, 583–585

.16 Trees

Class woody plants [*formerly* *582.16] in 582.15

For forestry, see 634.9; trees in landscape design, 715.2

.160 9 Geographic distribution of trees [*formerly* *581.93–*581.99]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., trees of the United States 582.160 973

.17 Shrubs

For shrubs in landscape design, see 715.3

.18 Woody vines

For woody vines in landscape design, see 715.4

582.2–582.9 Alternative scheme for taxonomic botany

An alternative arrangement based on the Universal Decimal Classification which follows other authorities was printed in edition 14, p. 1893–1906. In the skeleton outline which follows, the corresponding numbers assigned in the present (edition 16) schedule are shown in the right hand column

.21	Cryptogamia	586
.22	Thallophyta	589
.32	Bryophyta	588
.35	Pteridophyta	587
.4	Spermatophyta	582
.42	Gymnospermae	585
.5	Angiospermae	583–584
.52–.59	Monocotyledones	584
.61–.99	Dicotyledones	583

583–584 Angiospermae (Flowering plants)

Families listed under orders are based on Hutchinson, John *The Families of Flowering Plants* 1926–34

For comprehensive works on flowering plants, see 582.13

583 Dicotyledones (Dicotyledons)

If preferred, arrange Dicotyledones alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., water lilies (Nymphaeaceae) 583.N9

.1 Archichlamydeae

Including comprehensive works on Polypetalae

For Apetalae, see 583.9

.11 Ranales

Including Ranunculaceae (crowfoot family), Cabombaceae, Ceratophyllaceae (hornwort family), Nymphaeaceae (water lily family)

Class Lauraceae, Myristicaceae in 583.93 [*both formerly* *583.11]

.112 Dilleniales

Including Crossosomataceae [*formerly* †583.36], Dilleniaceae

[†.113] Calycanthaceae

Class in 583.3

.114 Magnoliales

Including Trochodendraceae, Cercidiphyllaceae [*both formerly* †583.119], Magnoliaceae (magnolia family), Winteraceae, Schizandraceae, Himantandraceae, Lactoridaceae

[†.114 6–†.114 8] Myristicaceae, Monimiaceae, Gomortegaceae

Class in 583.93

.115 Anonales

Including Anonaceae (custard apple family), Eupomatiaceae

[†.116] Menispermaceae

Class in 583.117

583 117	Berberidales
	Including Menispermaceae [*formerly* †583 116], Berberidaceae (barberry family), Circaeasteraceae, Lardizabalaceae, Sargentadoxaceae
[† 119]	Trochodendraceae and Cercidiphyllaceae
	Class in 583 114
12	Rhoeadales
	Including Papaveraceae (poppy family), Fumariaceae
	Class Capparidaceae [*formerly* *583 12] in 583 13
121	Sarraceniales
	Including Droseraceae [*formerly* †583 393] Sarraceniaceae (pitcher plant family)
[† 122 2]	Moringaceae
	Class in 583 13
123	Cruciales
	Including Cruciferae (mustard family)
13	Capparidales
	Including Capparidaceae [*formerly* *583 12] Moringaceae [*formerly* †583 122 2] Tovariaceae
	Class Passiflorales in 583 45, Loasales in 583 453 [*both formerly* *583 13]
[† 133]	Resedaceae
	Class in 583 135
[† 134]	Cistaceae
	Class in 583 138
135	Violales
	Including Resedaceae (mignonette family) [*formerly* †583 133] Violaceae (violet family)
[† 136–† 137]	Cochlospermaceae and Canellaceae
	Class in 583 138

583 138 Bixales

Including Cochlospermaceae [*formerly* †583 136], Canella- [illegible] 137], Samyda- [illegible] *rly* †583 134], [illegible] (arnotto family)

[† 139] Flacourtiaceae

Class in 583 138

[† 139 2] Stachyuraceae

Class in 583 394

14 Polygalales

Including Trigoniaceae [*formerly* †583 215], Polygalaceae, Vochysiaceae (San Juan family)

141 Pittosporales

Including Byblidaceae [*formerly* †583 392], Tremandraceae [*formerly* †583 142], Pittosporaceae (hedge laurel family)

[† 142] Tremandraceae

Class in 583 141

15 Caryophyllales

Including Elatinaceae (waterwort family) [*formerly* †583 161], Molluginaceae [*formerly* †583 476], Ficoidaceae [*formerly* †583 475], Portulacaceae (purslane family), Caryophyllaceae (pink family)

[† 151] Frankeniaceae

Class in 583 158

[† 156 2] Basellaceae

Class in 583 91

158 Tamaricales

Including Frankeniaceae [*formerly* †583 151], Fouquieraceae [*formerly* †583 762], Tamaricaceae (tamarisk family)

16 Theales

Including Ochnaceae (red ironwood family) [*formerly* †583 245], Ancistrocladaceae [*formerly* †583 454], Dipterocarpaceae, Chlaenaceae, Theaceae (tea, camellia family), Medusagynaceae Marcgraviaceae, Caryocaraceae, Actinidiaceae, Saurauiaceae

[† 161] Elatinaceae

Class in 583 15

[†583 162] Hypericaceae

Class in 583 163

.163 Guttiferales

Including Hypericaceae (St-John's wort family) [*formerly* †583 162], Eucryphiaceae [*formerly* †583 164], Quiinaceae [*formerly* †583 165], Guttiferae (balsam fig family)

[† 164–†.165] Eucryphiaceae and Quiinaceae

Class in 583 163

17 Malvales

Including Malvaceae (mallow, cotton family)

[† 173–†.18] Bombacaceae and Sterculiaceae

Class in 583 19

19 Tiliales

Including Sterculiaceae (coco family) [*formerly* †583 18], Bombacaceae (silk-cotton tree family) [*formerly* †583 173], Scytopetalaceae, Tiliaceae (linden family), Gonystylaceae

.21 Geraniales

[illegible] [*formerly* [illegible] (lignum [illegible] alidaceae [illegible] family), Balsaminaceae (jewelweed family) [*all formerly* †583 221–†583 226]

[† 212–† 213] Erythroxylaceae and Humiriaceae

Class in 583 214

214 Malpighiales

Including Humiriaceae [*formerly* †583 213], Erythroxylaceae [*formerly* †583 212], Malpighiaceae

[† 215] Trigoniaceae

Class in 583 14

[† 221–† 226] Zygophyllaceae, Geraniaceae, Oxalidaceae, Tropaeolaceae, Balsaminaceae

Class in 583 21

[† 23] Rutales

Class in 583 24

583 24 Rutales [*formerly* †583 23]

Including Rutaceae (rue family), Simarubaceae (ailanthus family), Burseraceae (torchwood family)

[† 242] Cneoraceae

Class in 583 27

[† 245] Ochnaceae

Class in 583 16

25 Meliales

Including Meliaceae (mahogany family)

[† 252] Akaniaceae

Class in 583 28

[† 253] Callitrichiaceae

Class in 583 44

[† 255] Chailletiaceae

Class in 583 3

26 Olacales

Including Opiliaceae [*formerly* †583 945], Olacaceae

27 Celastrales

Including Empetraceae (crowberry family) [*formerly* †583 984] Cneoraceae [*formerly* †583 242], Pandaceae [*formerly* †583 985] Icacinaceae [*formerly* †583 289], Salvadoraceae [*formerly* †583 716], Stackhousiaceae Celastraceae (staff tree family), Corynocarpaceae Cyrillaceae, Aquifoliaceae (holly family) Hippocrateaceae

[† 277] Staphyleaceae

Class in 583 28

279 Rhamnales

Including Elaeagnaceae [*formerly* †583 935] Heteropyxidaceae [*formerly* †583 442], Ampelidaceae (grape family), Rhamnaceae (buckthorn family)

583.28 Sapindales

Including Akaniaceae [*formerly* †583.252], Sabiaceae [*formerly* †583.291], Staphyleaceae [*formerly* †583.277], Anacardiaceae (cashew, sumac family) [*formerly* †583.292], Connaraceae [*formerly* †583.311], Didiereaceae, Melianthaceae (honey plant family), Aceraceae (maple family), Sapindaceae (soapberry family)

[†.287 2] Greyianceae

Class in 583.397

[†.289] Icacinaceae

Class in 583.27

.29 Coriariales

Including Coriariaceae

[†.291–†.292] Sabiaceae and Anacardiaceae

Class in 583.28

[†.293] Buxaceae

Class in 583.394

[†.294] Limnanthaceae

Class in 583.21

.3 Rosales

Including Chailletiaceae [*formerly* †583.255] Calycanthaceae [*formerly* †583.113], Rosaceae (rose family)

[†.311] Connaraceae

Class in 583.28

.32 Leguminosae

Including Caesalpiniaceae (senna family), Mimosaceae (mimosa family), Papilionaceae (pea family)

[†.36] Crossosomataceae

Class in 583.112

583.38 Saxifragales

Including Crassulaceae [*formerly* †583 39], Cephalotaceae (Australian pitcher-plant family) [*formerly* †583 391], Saxifragaceae (saxifrage family)

[†.381] Escalloniaceae, Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae

Class in 583 397

[†.39–†.391] Crassulaceae and Cephalotaceae

Class in 583 38

[†.392] Byblidaceae

Class in 583 141

[†.393] Droseraceae

Class in 583 121

.394 Hamamelidales

Including Bruniaceae [*formerly* †583 396], Stachyuraceae [*formerly* †583 139 2], Buxaceae [*formerly* †583 293], Platanaceae [*formerly* †583 971], Hamamelidaceae (witch-hazel family), Eucommiaceae, Myrothamnaceae

[†.395] Brunelliaceae

Class in 583 397

[†.396] Bruniaceae

Class in 583 394

.397 Cunoniales

Including Escalloniaceae, Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae [*all formerly* †583 381], Brunelliaceae [*formerly* †583 395], Greyiaceae [*formerly* †583 287 2], Cunoniaceae

4 Myrtales

Including Myrtaceae (myrtle family), Lecythidaceae (Brazil-nut family), Melastomaceae (meadow-beauty family), Combretaceae (myrobalan family), Rhizophoraceae (mangrove family)

[† 412–† 413] Punicaceae and Hydrocaryaceae

Class in 583 44

[† 415–† 416] Nyssaceae and Alangiaceae

Class in 583 48

[†.417] Halorrhagaceae

Class in 583 44

583 44 Lythrales

Including Punicaceae
†583 412], Oliniaceae
[*formerly* †583 413],
Callitrichiaceae [*form*
ceae (loosestrife family), Crypteroniaceae, Sonneratiaceae

[† 442] Heteropyxidaceae

Class in 583 279

[† 447] Cynomorium

Class in 583 94

45 Passiflores [*formerly* *583 13]

Including Malesherbiaceae, Passifloraceae (passionflower family), Achariaceae

[† 451] Samydaceae

Class in 583 138

453 Loasales [*formerly* *583 13]

Including Turneraceae [*formerly* †583 455] Loasaceae

[† 454] Ancistrocladaceae

Class in 583 16

[† 455] Turneraceae

Class in 583 453

46 Cucurbitales

Including Cucurbitaceae (gourd family) [*formerly* *583 57] Begoniaceae (begonia family) Datiscaceae (false hemp family), Caricaceae (papaya family)

47 Cactales

Including Cactaceae (cactus family)

[† 475–† 476] Ficoidaceae and Molluginaceae

Class in 583 15

48 Umbelliflorae

Including Cornaceae (dogwood family) [*formerly* †583 497], Alangiaceae [*formerly* †583 416], Nyssaceae (tupelo family) [*formerly* †583 415], Araliaceae (ginseng family) [*formerly* †583 491], Umbelliferae (carrot family)

[† 491–† 497] Araliaceae and Cornaceae

Class in 583 48

583.5 Metachlamydeae (Sympetalae)

[†*.51] Rubiales

Class in 583.52

[†.511] Caprifoliaceae

Class in 583.52

[†.513] Adoxaceae

Class in 583.53

.52 Rubiales [*formerly* †*583.51]

Including Caprifoliaceae (honeysuckle family) [*formerly* †583.511, *583.51], Rubiaceae (madder family) [*formerly* *583.51]

.53 Asterales

Including Adoxaceae [*formerly* †583.513], Dipsacaceae (teasel family) [*formerly* †583.541], Calyceraceae [*formerly* †583.546], Valerianaceae (valerian family)

[†.541] Dipsacaceae

Class in 583.53

[†.546] Calyceraceae

Class in 583.53

.55 Compositae (Composites)

Including chicory, lettuce, thistles, calendulas, groundsels, camomiles, everlasting flowers, asters, sneezeweed, ironweed, ragweed, sunflowers

.57 Campanales

Including Campanulaceae (bluebell, bellflower family) [*formerly* †583.59], Lobeliaceae (lobelia family) [*formerly* †583.591], Goodeniaceae [*formerly* †583.58], Stylidiaceae

Class Cucurbitaceae [*formerly* *583.57] in 583.46

[†.58] Goodeniaceae

Class in 583.57

[†.59–†.591] Campanulaceae and Lobeliaceae

Class in 583.57

583.6 Ericales

Including Clethraceae (white alder family), Ericaceae (heath family), Vacciniaceae (huckleberry, wintergreen family), Epacridaceae, Monotropaceae (Indian pipe family), Diapensiaceae (flowering moss family), Lennoaceae

67 Primulales

Including Primulaceae (primrose family), Plumbaginaceae (plumbago family)

677 Myrsinales

Including Theophrastaceae [*formerly* †583.678], Myrsinaceae (marlberry family)

[†.678] Theophrastaceae

Class in 583.677

68 Ebenales

Including Ebenaceae (ebony family), Sapotaceae (sapodilla family)

686 Styracales

Including Styracaceae (storax family) Symplocaceae (sweetleaf family), Dichdintheraceae, Lissocarpaceae

7 Gentianales

Including Gentianaceae (gentian buck bean family)

[†.71] Oleaceae

Class in 583.74

[†.716] Salvadoraceae

Class in 583.27

72 Apocynales

Former heading Gentianineae

Including Asclepiadaceae (milkweed family) [*formerly* †583.73], Apocynaceae (dogbane family)

[†.73] Asclepiadaceae

Class in 583.72

74 Loganiales

Including Oleaceae (olive family) [*formerly* †583.71], Loganiaceae (Desfontaineaceae)

583.76 Polemoniales

Former heading Tubiflorae

Including Polemoniaceae (phlox family), Hydrophyllaceae (waterleaf family)

[†.762] Fouquieraceae

Class in 583.158

.77 Boraginales

Including Boraginaceae (borage, forget-me-not family)

[†.78] Convolvulaceae

Class in 583.79

.79 Solanales

Including Convolvulaceae (morning glory family) [*formerly* †583.78], Solanaceae (nightshade family)

.8 Personales

Including Scrophulariaceae (snapdragon family), Orobanchaceae, Lentibulariaceae (bladderwort family), Columelliaceae, Gesneriaceae (gloxinia, African violet, flame violet), Bignoniaceae (catalpa family), Pedaliaceae (pedalium, unicorn plant family), Acanthaceae (acanthus family)

[†.823] Globulariaceae

Class in 583.87

.87 Lamiales

Including Globulariaceae (globe daisy family) [*formerly* †583.823], Myoporaceae, Selaginaceae, Phrymaceae (lopseed family)

.88 Verbenaceae (Vervain family)

.89 Labiatae (Mint family)

.899 Plantaginales

Including Plantaginaceae (plantain family)

583.9 Monochlamydeae (Apetalae)

.91 Chenopodiales

Former heading Centrospermae

Including Basellaceae [*formerly* †583.156 2], Phytolaccaceae (pokeweed family), Cynocrambaceae (dog cabbage family), Chenopodiaceae (goosefoot family), Batidaceae, Amarantaceae (*amaranth family*)

[†.912] Illecebraceae

Class in 583.917

[†.915 3] Nyctaginaceae

Class in 583.933

.917 Polygonales

Including Illecebraceae [*formerly* †583.912], Polygonaceae (buckwheat family)

.92 Podostemonales

Including Podostemonaceae (riverweed family), Hydrostachyaceae

.922 Aristolochiales

Including Aristolochiaceae [*formerly* †583.924], Cytinaceae [*formerly* †583.923], Hydnoraceae, Nepenthaceae (Indian pitcher plant family)

[†.923–†.924] Cytinaceae and Aristolochiaceae

Class in 583.922

.925 Piperales

Including Lacistemaceae [*formerly* †583.983], Piperaceae (pepper family), Saururaceae (lizard's tail family), Chloranthaceae

.93 Laurales

Former heading Daphnales

Including Monimiaceae [*formerly* †583.114 7], Lauraceae (laurel family) [*formerly* *583.11], Gomortegaceae [*formerly* †583.114 8], Myristicaceae [*formerly* †583.114 6, *583.11], Hernandiaceae

.932 Proteales

Including Proteaceae (honeyflower)

583 933 Thymelaeales

Including Geissolomataceae [*formerly* †583 936], Penaeaceae [*formerly* †583 934], Nyctaginaceae (four o'clock family) [*formerly* †583 915 3], Thymelaeaceae

[† 934] Penaeaceae

Class in 583 933

[† 935] Elaeagnaceae

Class in 583 279

[† 936] Geissolomataceae

Class in 583 933

[† 937] Oliniaceae

Class in 583 44

94 Santalales

Including Balanophoraceae (Cynomorium [*formerly* †583 447]) Octoknemataceae, Loranthaceae (mistletoe family), Santalaceae (sandalwood family), Grubbiaceae, Myzodendraceae

[† 945] Opiliaceae

Class in 583 26

95 Euphorbiales

Including Euphorbiaceae (spurge family)

96 Balanopsidales

Including Balanopsidaceae

962 Urticales

Including Ulmaceae (elm family), Barbeyaceae, Moraceae (mulberry family) Scyphostegiaceae, Urticaceae (nettle family) Cannabinaceae

97 Fagales

Including Betulaceae (birch family), Corylaceae Fagaceae (beech oak family)

[† 971] Platanaceae

Class in 583 394

972 Leitneriales

Including Leitneriaceae (corkwood family)

973 Juglandales

Including Juglandaceae (walnut family), Julianiaceae

583 974 Myricales

Including Myricaceae (bayberry family)

975 Casuarinales

Including Casuarinaceae (beefwood family)

98 Salicales

Including Salicaceae (willow family)

982 Garryales

Including Garryaceae (feverbush)

[† 983] Lacistemaceae

Class in 583 925

[† 984–† 985] Empetraceae and Pandaceae

Class in 583 27

584 Monocotyledones (Monocotyledons)

If preferred arrange Monocotyledones alphabetically by families using A1 for comprehensive works e g orchids (Orchidaceae) 584 O7

[† 11] Hydrocharitaceae

Class in 584 73

[† 12] Orchidales

Class in 584 15

13 Burmanniales

Including Burmanniaceae Thismiaceae Corsiaceae

15 Orchidales [*formerly also* †584 12]

Including Orchidaceae (orchid family)

2 Haemodorales

Former heading Epigynae

Including Philydraceae [*formerly* †584 35] Haemodoraceae (bloodwort family) Hypoxidaceae Velloziaceae (tree lily family) Apostasiaceae Taccaceae

21 Zingiberales

Former heading Scitamineales

Including Musaceae (banana family) Strelitziaceae, Lowiaceae Zingiberaceae (ginger family) Cannaceae (canna family) Marantaceae (arrowroot family)

584 22 Bromeliales

Including Bromeliaceae (pineapple family) [*formerly* *584 3]

[†* 23] Liliales

Class in 584 32 Juncaceae in 584 45

24 Iridales

Including Iridaceae (iris family)

25 Amaryllidales

Including Amaryllidaceae (amaryllis family)

27 Dioscoreales

Including Roxburghiaceae [*formerly* †584 31] Dioscoreaceae (yam family) Stenomeridaceae Trichopodaceae

3 Xyridales

Including Xyridaceae (yellow-eyed grass family), Rapateaceae

Class Bromeliaceae [*formerly* *584 3] in 584 22

[† 31] Roxburghiaceae

Class in 584 27

32 Liliales [*formerly also* †*584 23]

Including Pontederiaceae Cyanastraceae [*both formerly* †584 33–†584 34] Smilacaceae (cat briers) Ruscaceae Liliaceae (lily family) Tecophilaeaceae Trilliaceae (trillium family)

[† 33–† 34] Pontederiaceae and Cyanastraceae

Class in 584 32

[† 35] Philydraceae

Class in 584 2

37 Mayacaceae (Mayaca family)

38 Commelinales

Comprehensive works

Including Flagellariaceae [*formerly* †584 41], Commelinaceae (spiderwort family)

For Mayacaceae see 584 37

[† 391] Thurniaceae

Class in 584 45

[† 41] Flagellariaceae

Class in 584.38

584 42 Alstroemeriales

Including Alstroemeriaceae Petermanniaceae, Philesiaceae

43 Agavales

Including Xanthorrhoeaceae, Agavaceae

45 Juncales

Including Juncaceae (rush family) [*formerly* *584 23], Thurniaceae [*formerly* †584 391] Centrolepidaceae [*formerly* †584 82], Restionaceae [*formerly* †584 83]

5 Palmales

Including Palmae (palm family)

61 Pandanales

Including Pandanaceae (hala family)

612 Sparganiaceae (Bur reed family)

613 Typhales

Comprehensive works

Including Typhaceae (cattail family)

For Sparganiaceae, see 584 612

62 Cyclanthales

Including Cyclanthaceae

64 Arales

Including Araceae (arum family) [*formerly* †584 65], Lemnaceae (duckweed family) [*formerly* †584 68]

[† 65–† 68] Araceae (Arum family) and Lemnaceae (Duckweed family)

Class in 584 64

71 Triuridales

Including Triuridaceae

72 Najadales

Including Najadaceae (najas family) [*formerly* †584 741], Zannichelliaceae

721 Alismatales

Including Scheuchzeriaceae [*formerly* †584 744] Alismataceae (water plantain family), Petrosaviaceae

73 Butomales

Including Hydrocharitaceae (frogbit family) [*formerly* †584 11], Butomaceae (water poppy family)

584.74 Potamogetonales

Including Potamogetonaceae (pondweed family), Ruppiaceae

[†.741] Najadaceae (Najas family)

Class in 584.72

.743 Aponogetonales

Including Aponogetonaceae (lattice-plant family), Zosteraceae

.744 Juncaginales

Including Juncaginaceae (arrow grass family), Lilaeaceae, Posidoniaceae

Class Scheuchzeriaceae [*formerly* †584.744] in 584.721

[†*.8] Graminales

Class in 584.9

.81 Eriocaulales

Including Eriocaulaceae (pipewort family)

[†.82–†.83] Centrolepidaceae and Restionaceae

Class in 584.45

.84 Cyperales

Including Cyperaceae (sedge family)

.9 Graminales [*formerly also* †*584.8]

Including Gramineae (grass family)

.92 Panicoideae

Including Paniceae (millet grasses), Andropogoneae (sugar cane, kaffir corn grasses), Maydeae (Indian corn grasses)

[†.923] Zoysieae

Class in 584.93

[†.927] Oryzeae

Class in 584.93

.93 Pooideae

Including Zoysieae [*formerly* †584.923], Oryzeae (rice grasses) [*formerly* †584.927], Bambuseae (bamboo family), Festuceae (fescue grasses), Phalarideae (canary grasses), Agrosteae (fodder grasses), Aveneae (oat grasses), Hordeeae (wheat, barley, rye grasses), Chlorideae (gamma grasses)

585 **Gymnospermae (Naked seed plants)**

If preferred, arrange Gymnospermae alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , spruce (Pinaceae) 585 P6

.1 Gnetales

Including Gnetaceae (gnetum family), Welwitschiaceae (welwitschia family), Ephedraceae (ephedra, Mormon tea family)

2 Coniferales (Conifers)

Including Podocarpaceae (podocarp family), Phyllocladaceae (phyllocladus family), Taxaceae (yew family), Araucariaceae (araucaria family), Pinaceae (pine family), Taxodiaceae (bald cypress family), Cupressaceae (cypress family)

7 Ginkgoales

Including Ginkgoaceae (maidenhair trees, ginkgo trees)

9 Cycadales (Cycads)

Including Cycadaceae, Zamiaceae (sage palm family)

586 **Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)**

Comprehensive works

For Pteridophyta, see 587, *Bryophyta* 588, *Thallophyta,* 589

587 **Pteridophyta (Vascular cryptogams)**

1 Isoetales (Quillworts)

Including Isoetes

For comprehensive works on Lycopsida see 587 9

2 Sphenopsida

Including Equisetaceae (horsetail family)

3 Filicineae

31 Filicales (Ferns)

Including Osmundaceae (flowering fern family), Schizaeaceae (curly grass family), Gleicheniaceae (gleichenia family), Hymenophyllaceae (filmy fern family), Dicksoniaceae (*Dicksonia family*), *Cyatheaceae (cyathea family)*, *Polypodiaceae* (polypody family), Marsiliaceae (water clover family) Salviniaceae (salvinia family)

33 Eusporangiated ferns

Including Ophioglossales (adder s tongue, grape rattlesnake ferns), Marattiales

4 Psilopsida

Including Psilotales

587 9 Lycopsida (Club mosses)

Comprehensive works

Including Lycopodiales Selaginellales

For Isoetales, see 587 1

588 Bryophyta

1 Sphagnales

Including Sphagnaceae (peat and bog mosses)

.2 Musci (True mosses)

Comprehensive works

Including Bryales (common mosses), Andreaeales (black mosses)

For Sphagnales see 588 1

3 Hepaticae (Liverworts)

Including Ricciaceae Marchantiaceae (great liverworts), Jungermanniaceae (scale mosses)

32 Anthocerotales (Hornworts)

[† 4] Charales

Class in 589 47

589 Thallophyta

1 Lichenes (Lichens)

Symbiotic associations of fungi and algae

For a specific fungus or alga see the subject e g, Ascomycetes 589 23

2 Eumycophyta (True fungi)

Former heading Mycophyta

Including comprehensive works on mycology

For Lichenes, see 589 1

[† 21] Basidiomycetes

Class in 589 22

589.22 Basidiomycetes (Basidium fungi) [*formerly* †589.21]

.221 Lycoperdales (Puffballs and related fungi)

Former heading Autobasidiomycetes

Including Hymenogastrales (false tubers), Nidulariales (bird's nest fungi), Phallales (stinkhorn fungi)

.222 Agaricales (Mushrooms and related fungi)

Including Agaricaceae (gill fungi), Polyporaceae (pore fungi)

.225 Uredinales (Rust fungi)

.227 Ustilaginales (Smut fungi)

.23 Ascomycetes (Sac fungi)

Including Plectomycetes, Discomycetes, Pyrenomycetes

Common names yeasts, Penicillium, mildews, cup fungi, black rot, ergot

For downy mildews, see 589.25

.24 Deuteromycetes (Imperfect fungi)

Including Moniliales (Hypomycetales), Sphaeropsidales, Melanconiales

.25 Phycomycetes (Algaelike fungi)

Comprehensive works on molds

Including Peronosporales (downy mildews)

For Saprolegniales, see 589.26, *Mucorales and other Phycomycetes*, 589.28

.26 Saprolegniales (Water molds)

.28 Mucorales and other Phycomycetes

Including Mucorineae (black mold), Entomorphthorales (fly fungi), Chytridiales (chytrids)

.29 Myxomycophyta (Slime molds)

Including Stemonitaceae, Arcyriaceae

.3 Algae (Phycology)

For Cyanophyta, see 589.8

.41 Rhodophyta (Red algae)

Including Bangioideae [*formerly* †589.42], Florideae (red seaweeds, sea mosses)

[†.42] Bangioideae

Class in 589.41

589.43 Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates) [*formerly* †589.973]

Including Desmomonadales, Prorocentrales, Gymnodiniales, Amphilothales, Kolkwitziellales, Dinophysiales, Peridiniales, Rhizodiniales, Dinococcales, Dinotrichales

.44 Euglenophyta [*formerly* †589 974, *589 97]

Euglenoids

Including Euglenaceae, Colaciaceae, Astasiaceae, Peranemaceae

.45 Phaeophyta (Brown algae)

Including Ectocarpales (kelps), Sphacelariales, Cutleriales, Tilopteridales, Chordariales, Sporochnales, Desmarestiales, Dictyosiphonales, Laminariales, Fucales (seaweeds, rockweeds)

.47 Chlorophyta (Green algae)

Including Conjugales [*formerly* †589 61], Charales [*formerly* †588 4], Volvocales, Chlorococcales, Ulotrichales, Siphonales, Cladophorales, Chaetophorales, Oedogoniales

.48 Chrysophyta (Golden algae)

Comprehensive works

Including Xanthophyceae (yellow-green algae), Chrysophyceae

For Bacillariophyceae, see 589 62

[†61] Conjugales

Class in 589 47

.62 Bacillariophyceae (Diatoms)

Including Centrales, Pennales, comprehensive works on phytoplankton

For a specific phytoplankton, see the subject, e g, Dinoflagellates 589 43

.7 Schizophyta (Fission plants)

Including comprehensive works on *bacteria, yeasts, molds*

For bacteria, see 589 9, *yeasts,* 589 23, *molds,* 589 25, *Cyanophyta,* 589 8

.8 Cyanophyta (Blue-green algae)

Including Chroococcaceae, Chamaesiphonaceae, Clastidiaceae, Stigonemataceae, Nostocaceae, Rivulariaceae, Scytonemataceae, Oscillatoriaceae

Common names Myxophyceae, Schizophyceae, Cyanophyceae

589.9 Schizomycetes (Bacteriology)

Class Rickettsiae [*formerly* *589.9] in 576.6

For microbiology see 576; a specific application of bacteriology, the subject, e.g., medical bacteriology 616.014

92 Actinomycetales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Mycobacteriaceae, Actinomycetaceae

93 Chlamydobacteriales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Chlamydobacteriaceae

94 Caulobacteriales

Including Nevskiaceae, Gallionellaceae, Caulobacteriaceae, Pasteuriaceae

95 Eubacteriales

Including Nitrobacteriaceae [*formerly also* †581.133 44], Rhizobiaceae, Pseudomonadaceae, Acetobacteriaceae, Azotobacteriaceae, Micrococcaceae, Neisseriaceae, Parvobacteriaceae, Lactobacteriaceae, Enterobacteriaceae, Bacteriaceae, Bacillaceae

[†952] Thiobacteriales

Class in 589.96

[†953] Eubacteriales

Class Actinomycetales in 589.92, Chlamydobacteriales in 589.93, Myxobacteriales in 589.98

96 Thiobacteriales [*formerly* †589.952]

Including Rhodobacteriaceae, Beggiatoaceae, Achromatiaceae

[*97] Euglenophyta

Class in 589.44

[†973] Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates)

Class in 589.43

[†974] Euglenophyta

Class in 589.44

98 Myxobacteriales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Archangiaceae, Sorangiaceae, Polyangiaceae, Myxococcaceae

99 Spirochaetales

Including Spirochaetaceae

590 Zoological sciences

For paleozoology see 560 562–569 animal husbandry 636–638 animal psychology 151 3 organic evolution 575

74 Zoological exhibits

Class aquariums [*formerly* †*590 74] in 574 920 74

For arrangement of specimens in museums see 579 7

742 Zoological museums

744 Zoological gardens

591 Zoology

For a specific aspect of an individual animal or group of animals see the animal or group e g hibernation of bears 599 744 4 taxonomic zoology 592–599

SUMMARY

591 1 Animal physiology (Zoophysiology)
2 Animal pathology
3 Animal maturation
4 Animal morphology
5 Animal ecology
6 Economic zoology
8 Microscopic zoology
9 Zoogeography

1 Animal physiology (Zoophysiology)

Comparative physiology of animals

Divide like 574 1 e g reproduction in animals 591 16

Class veterinary physiology [*formerly* *591 1] in 636 089 2

For human physiology see 612

15 Animal genetics

Study of heredity and variation in animals

Including telegony [*formerly* †575 136]

Divide like 581 15 e g mutations in animals 591 159 2

For stock breeding see 636 082

[† 161] Abiogenesis

Class in 577 01

591 17 Animal histogenesis [*formerly* •591 8]

Microscopic study of germ cells in animals

Class animal gametogenesis [*formerly* •591 17] in 591 32

For microscopic zoology see 591 8 *animal reproduction* 591 16

2 Animal pathology

For veterinary medicine see 636 089

3 Animal maturation

32 Animal gametogenesis [*formerly* •591 17]

Formation and maturation of sex cells in animals

For animal histogenesis see 591 17

33 Animal embryology

Comparative studies on early developmental stages

Including cleavage formation of primary germ layers and cavities establishment of embryonic axes and symmetry development of coelomic cavities and organ systems final development into functionally integrated organism

For postembryonic growth and development of animals see 591 13

34 Metamorphoses

Including complete and incomplete metamorphoses

36 Production and differentiation of sexes in animals

For gametogenesis see 591 32

38 Evolution of animals

4 Animal morphology

Comparative anatomy of animals

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †591 7]

For microscopic zoology see 591 8

41 Circulatory organs

42 Respiratory organs

43 Digestive organs

591 44 Secretory and excretory organs

Including exocrine and endocrine glands of animals

46 Reproductory organs

47 Muscular, skeletal, integumentary organs

48 Organs of nervous system

49 Topographical anatomy

.5 Animal ecology

Interrelation of animals to environment and to each other

Including adaptation to environment group behavior of animals

508 Animal stories [*formerly the* *800's] and animal lore

For animals in folklore, see 398, *stories of a specific domesticated animal* 636–638 *e g dogs in literature* 636 78 *stories of a specific wild animal, the animal e g, squirrels* 599 323 2

51 Behavior patterns of animals in nature

Comprehensive works

For a specific behavior pattern, see the subject e g, hibernation 591 543 *comparative psychology* 151 3

52 Animal migrations

Including daily seasonal and secular migrations homings

53 Nutritive adaptations of animals

Including food chains and cycles

54 Adaptations of animals to meteorological factors

542 Adaptations of animals to climatic conditions

Including adaptations of animals to storms rain drought

543 Adaptations of animals to seasonal changes

Including hibernation [*formerly also* †612 58] estivation

55 Zoological communities

Including animal aggregations mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

591 56 Reproductive adaptations of animals

Adaptive breeding habits of animals

57 Protective adaptations of animals

Including means of protection, attraction, self preservation

.59 Animal communication

.6 Economic zoology

Animals beneficial and deleterious to man's needs

For animal husbandry, see 636–638, animals as injurious factors in crop production, 632 6–632 7

69 Poisonous animals

[†.7] Descriptive anatomy of animals

Class in 591 4

.8 Microscopic zoology

Including animal histology and cytology

Class histogenesis [*formerly* *591 8] in 591 17

For slide preparation of animal tissues, see 578 9

.9 Zoogeography

Geographic distribution of animals

For distribution of specific animals or groups of animals, see 592–599

909 Zonal and physiographic zoology

Divide like 574 909, e g, tropical animals 574 909 3

91 Insular zoology

Divide like 930–999, e g, animals of Madagascar 591 916 91

92 Marine zoology

Divide like 551 46, e g, Arctic Ocean animals 591 928

929 Fresh-water zoology

Divide like 930–999, e g, animal life in Great Lakes 591 929 77

93–99 Zoogeography in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g, animals of Alaska 591 979 8

592–599 Taxonomic zoology

Concepts in the classification of zoology are constantly changing with a result that coordination and subordination of groups which in earlier editions were shown more or less accurately by length of number are completely upset In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indention length of number is of little significance

For classification of animals see 590 12 *paleozoology* 562–569 *origin of species* 575

SUMMARY

592	Invertebrates
593	Protozoa
.2	Mesozoa
4	Parazoa
5–9	Metazoa
594	Mollusca and molluscoidea
595	Other invertebrates
1	Wormlike animals
2–4	Arthropoda
.5	Onychophora
6	Progoneata
62	Opisthogoneata
63	Symphyla
64	Pauropoda
7	Insecta
596	Chordata (Vertebrates)
2	Tunicata
597	Anamnia
598	Reptiles and birds
1	Reptilia
2–9	Aves
599	Mammalia

592 Invertebrates

Comprehensive works

For a specific group of invertebrates see 593–595

593 Protozoa

For microbiology see 576

1 Plasmodroma

Including Mastigophora Chysomonadina Cryptomonadina Phytomonadina Euglenoidina Chloromonadina Dinoflagellata Rhizomastigina Protomonadina Polymastigina Hypermastigina

11 Sarcodina

Including Rhizopoda

593 113 Proteomyxa

.115 Mycetozoa

Including Eumycetozoa Sorophora

117 Amoebina

118 Testacea

.12 *Foraminifera*

.13 Actinopoda

Including Heliozoa

.14 Radiolaria

[†.15] Ciliata

Former heading Infusoria

Class in 593 172

17 Ciliophora

.172 Ciliata [*formerly also* †593 15]

Including Protociliata, Euciliata, Holotricha, Spirotricha, Chonotricha, Peritricha

175 Suctoria

19 Sporozoa

Including Telosporidia Acnidosporidia, Cnidosporidia

.2 Mesozoa

Former heading Radiates

[†.3] Coelenterata

Class in 593 5

.4 Parazoa

Including Porifera (sponges)

42 Calcispongiae

Including Asconosa, Syconosa

44 Hyalospongiae

Including Hexasterophora Amphidiscophora

46 Desmospongiae

Including Carnosa, Choristida, Epipolasida, Hadromerina, Poecilosclerina, Haplosclerina, Keratosa

593.5 **Metazoa**

Including Coelenterata (Cnidaria) [*formerly also* †593 3], Enterozoa, Radiata

For Mollusca, see 594, *Articulates*, 595, *Chordata*, 596–599

.6 **Anthozoa**

Including Alcyonaria, Cerantharia, Antipitharia, Dodecacorallia

Common names sea anemones, corals, sea fans, sea pens

.7 **Hydrozoa**

Including Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora

Common names jellyfish [*formerly also* †593 8], hydras, medusas, hydroid polyps

.73 **Scyphozoa**

Former heading Acalepha

Including Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaeostomeae, Rhizostomeae

.8 **Ctenophorae**

Including Tentaculata, Nuda

Common names sea walnuts, comb jellies

Class jellyfish [*formerly* †593 8] in 593 7

.9 **Echinodermata**

.91 **Pelmatozoa**

Including Crinoidea (sea lilies)

.92 **Asterozoa**

Class starfish [*formerly* †593 92] in 593 93

.93 **Asteroidea (Starfish)** [*formerly* †593 92]

Former heading Stelleridea

Including Phanerozonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata

.94 **Ophiuroidea**

Including Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Chilophiurida

Common names brittle stars, basket stars

593.95 Echinozoa

Including Echinoidea, Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida, Perischoechinoida, Echinocystoida, Perischoechinoida

Common names: sea urchins, sand dollars

.96 Holothurioidea (Sea cucumbers)

Including Dendrochirota [*formerly* †593.97], Apoda [*formerly* †593.98], Elasipoda, Aspidochirota, Molpadonia

[†.97] Dendrochirota

Former heading: Pedata

Class in 593.96

[†.98] Apoda

Class in 593.96

.99 Enteropneusta [*formerly* *596]

Including Balanoglossida

.992 Linguatula

594 Mollusca and molluscoidea

Mollusks and mollusklike animals

.1 Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks)

Former heading: Lamellibranchia

Including Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea

Common names: clams, mussels, oysters, shipworms

.19 Crepipoda (Chitons)

Polyplacophora (Amphineura) [*formerly* †594.31]

Including Eoplacophora, Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora, Teleoplacophora

.2 Scaphopoda (Toothshells)

.3 Gastropoda

Snails, slugs, whelks

[†.31] Amphineura

Class in 594.19

.32 Prosobranchia

Including Archaeogastropoda, Mesogastropoda, Neogastropoda

595.178 Myzostoma

.18 Aschelminthes

Including Tardigrada (water bears) [*formerly* †595 412, *595 4], Rotatoria (wheel animalcules), Gastrotricha, Echinodera

For Nematomorpha, see 595 131, *Nematoidea*, 595.13

2 Arthropoda

Including Mandibulata

For Chelicerata, see 595 39, *Progoneata*, 595 6, *Insecta*, 595 7

.3 Crustacea

[†.315] Pycnogonida

Class in 595 394

.32 Branchiopoda

Including Anostraca, Notostraca, Conchostraca, Cladocera

.33 Ostracoda

Including Myodocopa, Cladocopa, Podocopa, Platycopa

34 Copepoda

Including Eucopepoda, Branchiura

Common names cyclops, fish lice

35 Cirripedia (Barnacles)

Including Thoracica, Ascothoracica, Apoda, Rhizocephala

.36 Malacostraca

Including Leptostraca

37 Eumalacostraca

Former heading Arthrostraca

371 Amphipoda

Including Gammaridea, Hyperiidea, Caprellidea, Ingolfiellidea

Common names sand fleas, scuds

372 Isopoda

Including Flabellifera, Valvifera, Asellota, Phreatoicidea, Epicaridea, Oniscoidea

Common names sow bugs, wood lice

.373 Thermosbaenacea

374 Tanaidacea

381 Cumacea

595.382 Stomatopoda

Common names: sea mantles, glass crabs, mantis shrimps, squillas, sea onions

.383 Mysidacea (Opossum shrimps)

Former heading: Schizopoda

.384 Decapoda

.384 1 Macrura (Lobsters, crayfish)

.384 2 Brachyura (Crabs)

.384 3 Natantia (Shrimps)

.384 4 Anomura (Hermit crabs, king crabs)

.385 Euphausiacea

.39 Chelicerata

Former heading: Gigantostraca

.391 Merostomata

.392 Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)

.394 Pycnogonida [*formerly* †595.315, *595.4]

Including Colossendeomorpha, Nymphonomorpha, *Ascorhynchomorpha, Pycnogonomorpha*

Common name: sea spiders

.4 Arachnida

Class Tardigrada (water bears) [*formerly* †595.412, *595.4] in 595.18, Pycnogonida [*formerly* *595.4] in 595.394

.42 Acari (Mites, ticks)

Including Notostigmata, Holothyroidea, Parasitiformes, Trombidiformes, Sarcoptiformes, Tetrapodili

.43 Phalangida (Harvestmen, daddy longlegs)

.44 Araneida (True spiders)

.45 Palpigradi (Whip scorpions)

Former heading: Pedipalpi

.46 Scorpiones (Scorpions)

.47 Pseudoscorpiones (Fake scorpions)

.48 Solifugae (Weasel spiders)

.5 Onychophora

595 6 Progoneata

Former heading Myriopoda

61 Diplopoda (Millipedes)

Including Pselaphognatha Chilognatha

62 Opisthogoneata

Including Chilopoda (centipedes)

For Insecta, see 595 7

63 Symphyla

64 Pauropoda

7 Insecta (Insects)

71 Synaptera

Including Collembola (springtails), Protura Entotrophi, Thysanura (bristletails)

---

595 72–595 79 Pterygota

72 Orthoptera (Grasshoppers, crickets)

Including locusts, katydids

721 Dermaptera (Earwigs)

722 Blattariae (Cockroaches)

Former heading Cursoria

724 Phasmatodea (Walking sticks)

725 Mantodea (Mantises)

731 Thysanoptera (Thrips)

732 Corrodentia (Book lice, bark lice)

733 Odonata (Dragonflies damselflies)

734 Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)

735 Plecoptera (Stoneflies)

Former heading Perlidae

736 Isoptera (Termites)

737 Embioptera

738 Zoraptera

595 74 Neuroptera (Lacewings)

Including snake flies dobson flies

Class Anoplura in 595 751 2 Mallophaga in 595 751 4 [*both formerly* *595 74]

742 Megaloptera (Ant lions)

744 Mecoptera (Scorpion flies)

Former heading Panorpidae

745 Trichoptera (Caddis flies)

746 Strepsiptera

75 Hemiptera and related orders (Bugs)

751 2 Anoplura (True lice) [*formerly* *595 74]

Former heading Pediculidae

Siphunculata

751 4 Mallophaga (Bird lice) [*formerly* *595 74]

752 Homoptera

Aphids cicadas leaf hoppers other Homoptera [*all formerly* †595 753]

[† 753] Cicadas leaf hoppers other Homoptera

Class in 595 752

754 Heteroptera (True bugs)

76 Coleoptera (Beetles)

762 Adephaga

Including Caraboidea Gyrinoidea Cupoidea Rhysodoidea

Common names whirligigs tiger beetles water beetles

[† 763] Clavicornia

Class burying beetles larder beetles in 595 764

764 Polyphaga

Including Hydrophiloidea Staphylinoidea Cucujoidea Cantharoidea Dryopoidea Dascylloidea Histeroidea Tenebrionoidea Cerambycoidea Scarabaeoidea

Common names burying beetles larder beetles [*both formerly* †595 763] leaf beetles [*formerly* †595 768] dung beetles June beetles rose chafers

For Adephaga see 595 762

595 765 Elateroidea

Common names wireworms click beetles

[† 766] Ship timber beetles powder post beetles

Class ship timber beetles in 595 767 powder post beetles in 595 769

767 Mordelloidea

Common names ship timber beetles [*formerly* †595 766] blister beetles

768 *Curculionoidea (Weevils)*

Class leaf beetles [*formerly* †595 768] in 595 764

769 Colydioidea

Common names powder post beetles [*formerly* †595 766] ladybird beetles

77 Diptera (Flies)

771 Orthorrhapha

Former heading Nematocera

Including midges gnats mosquitoes crane moth horse bee robber flies

774 Cyclorrhapha

Former heading Pupipara

Including fruit vinegar house blow tachina louse flies

775 Siphonaptera (Fleas)

Former heading Aphaniptera

78 Lepidoptera

Including Jugatae Frenatae (moths)

789 Rhopalocera (Butterflies)

79 Hymenoptera

796 Formicidae (Ants)

798 Vespidae (True wasps)

799 Apidae (Bees)

596 Chordata (Vertebrates)

Including Acrania [*formerly* †597 1] Craniata

Class Enteropneusta in 593 99 Pterobranchia in 594 73 [*both formerly* *596]

596 2 Tunicata [*formerly* †594.9]

Including Ascidiacea, Larvacea, Thaliacea

Common names sea squirts, sea grapes

597 Anamnia (Cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians)

Former heading Pisces

09 Geographic distribution of fish

For marine biology, see 574 92

092 Geographic distribution of salt water fish

Divide like 551 46, e g , fish in the Gulf of Mexico 597 923

093–099 Geographic distribution of fresh water fish

Divide like 930–999, e g , fish in the Saint Lawrence River 597 971 4

[† 1] Acrania

Class in 596

2 Agnatha

Former heading Marsipobranchii

Including Cyclostomata (lampreys)

3 Chondrichthyes

Including Elasmobranchii

31 Selachii (Sharks)

Including Heterodontoidea, Notidanoidea, Galeoidea, Squaloidea

35 Batoidea

Common names skates, rays, torpedoes, guitarfishes, sawfishes

38 Holocephali

Including Chimaerae

Common names chimeras, elephant fishes, rat fishes

---

597 4–597 5 Osteichthyes

4 Chondrostei (Ganoids)

Including Polypterini

41 Holostei

Including Amioidea

Common names bowfins, river dogfishes

597 44 Acipenseroidei

Common names sturgeons paddlefishes spoonbills

46 Crossopterygii (Lobe-finned fishes)

Including Coelacanthini

47 Lepisosteidae (Gars)

Former heading Euganoides

48 Dipnoi (Lung fishes)

.5 Teleostei

Arrange alphabetically by orders, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , Acanthopterygii 597 5 A3

6 Amphibia

7 Apoda (Caecilians)

Former heading Ophiomorpha

8 Salientia

Including Anura (frogs, toads)

9 Urodela

Including Cryptobranchoidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandroidea, Proteidea

Common names salamanders, newts, mud puppies

598–599 Amniota

598 Reptiles and birds

1 Reptilia (Reptiles)

Including comprehensive works on herpetology

For Amphibia, see 597 6–597 9

---

598 11–598 12 Squamata

11 Lacertilia (Lizards)

12 Serpentes (Snakes)

13 Chelonia (Turtles, tortoises)

Including Pleurodira, Cryptodira

139 Rhynchocephalia (Tuataras)

.14 Crocodilia (Crocodiles, alligators)

598.2 Aves (Birds)

Divide like 591 1–591 8, e g , bird migrations 598 252

Class specific groups of birds [*formerly* *598 2] in 598 3–598 99

.201 3 Bird protection

Comprehensive works

For protection of a specific species of birds, see the group, e g , whooping cranes 598 3

.201 8 Collection and preservation of birds

.207 2 Ornithological research

Including birdbanding, census taking

.207 4 Aviaries

.29 Geographic distribution of birds

.291 Zonal and physiographic distribution of birds

Divide like 574 909, e g , birds in tropical regions 598 291 3

.293–.299 Distribution of birds by country

Divide like 930–999, e g , birds in United States 598 297 3

---

598 3–598 99 Specific groups of birds [*formerly* *598 2]

.3 Gruiformes

Former heading Grallatores

Including Mesoenatides, Turnices, Grues, Heliornithes, Rhynocheti, Eurypygae, Cariamae, Otides

Common names cranes, limpkins, rails, gallinules, coots

.33 Charadriiformes

Former heading Limicolae

Including Charadrii, Lari, Alcae

Common names gulls, skimmers, terns [*all formerly* †598 42], puffins, auks, murres [*all formerly* †598 44], jacanas, oyster catchers, plovers, turnstones, woodcock, snipe, sandpipers, curlews, avocets, stilts, phalaropes

.34 Ciconiiformes

Former heading Herodiones

Including Ardeae, Balaenicipites, Ciconiae, Phoenicopteri

Common names herons, bitterns, egrets, storks, ibises, spoonbills, flamingos

598.4 Anseriformes

Including Anhimae Anseres

Common names: swans, geese, ducks, mergansers, screamers

42 Procellariiformes

Former heading: Longipennes

Common names: albatrosses, shearwaters, fulmars, petrels

Class gulls, skimmers, terns [*all formerly* †598.42] in 598.33

43 Pelecaniformes

Former heading: Steganopodes

Including Phaethontes, Pelecani, Fregatae, Odontopteryges

Common names: tropic birds, pelicans, gannets, boobies, cormorants, darters, snakebirds, man-of-war birds

44 Sphenisciformes (Penguins)

Former heading: Pygopodes

Class auks, puffins, murres [*all formerly* †598.44] in 598.33

.442 Gaviiformes (Loons)

.443 Colymbiformes (Grebes)

5 Palaeognathae

Former heading: Cursores

51 Struthioniformes (Ostriches)

52 Rheiformes (Rheas)

53 Casuariiformes (Cassowaries, emus)

54 Apterygiformes (Kiwis)

55 Tinamiformes (Tinamous)

6 Galliformes

Former heading: Rasores

Including Galli, Opisthocomi

Common names: curassows, guans, grouse, quails, pheasants, turkeys, domestic chickens

For sand grouse see 598.65

65 Columbiformes

Including Pterocletes, Columbae

Common names: sand grouse, pigeons, doves

For grouse see 598.6

598 7 Psittaciformes

Former heading Scansores

Common names parrots, parakeets, macaws, lories

.72 Piciformes

Including Galbulae, Pici

Common names jacamars, puffbirds, barbets, honey guides, toucans, woodpeckers, flickers, piculets

73 Trogoniformes (Trogons)

.74 Cuculiformes

Including Musophagi, Cuculi

Common names plantain eaters, cuckoos, roadrunners, anis

.8 Passeriformes (Passerine, perching birds)

Arrange alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, robins (belonging to Turdidae family) 598 8 T8

89 Coraciiformes

Former heading Picariae

Including Alcedines, Meropes, Coracii, Bucerotes

Common names kingfishers, rollers, todies motmots, bee eaters, hoopoes, hornbills

899 Apodiformes

Including Apodi, Trochili

Common names swifts, hummingbirds

9 Falconiformes (Birds of prey)

Former heading Raptores

Including Cathartae Falcones

Common names hawks, falcons, buzzards vultures, ospreys, eagles

97 Strigiformes (Owls)

99 Caprimulgiformes

Including Steatornithes, Caprimulgi

Common names oilbirds, frogmouths, potoos, goatsuckers

599 Mammalia (Mammals)

.1 Prototheria

Including Monotremata

Common names spiny anteaters [*formerly* *599 3], platypuses

For anteaters, see 599 31

.2 Metatheria

Including Marsupialia (poucht mammals)

Common names opossums, opossum rats kangaroos, marsupial mice, wallabies, bandicoots, phalangers, koalas, wombats

.3 Eutheria (Placentals)

Class spiny anteaters [*formerly* *599 3] in 599 1

.31 Edentata

Including Xenarthra, Pholidota

Common names armadillos, anteaters, sloths, pangolins (scaly anteaters)

For spiny anteaters see 599 1

32 Glires

322 Lagomorpha

Common names pikas hares, rabbits

323 Rodentia (Rodents)

323 2 Sciuromorpha

Common names sewellels, squirrels, beavers

323 3 Myomorpha

Common names rats, mice

.323 4 Hystricomorpha

Common names porcupines, guinea pigs, cavies, agoutis, chinchillas

.33 Insectivora

Common names solenodons, moles, shrews, desmans, tenrecs

34 Dermoptera (Flying lemurs)

4 Chiroptera (Bats)

Including Megachiroptera, Microchiroptera

599 5 Cetacea (Whales)

.51 Mysticeti

Common names baleen whales, whalebone whales, finbacks, humpback whales

.53 Odontoceti (Tootht whales)

Common names sperm whales, beakt whales, cowfish, narwhals, white whales, dolphins, porpoises

.55 Sirenia (Sea cows)

Including Trichechiformes

Common names manatees, dugongs

6 Paenungulata

Former heading Subungulata

For Sirenia, see 599 55

61 Proboscidea

Including Elephantoidea (elephants)

62 Hyracoidea

Common names conies, dassies, rock hyraxes, tree hyraxes

7 Mesaxonia and Paraxonia (Hooft mammals)

Former heading Ungulata

.72 Perissodactyla (Odd toed hooft mammals)

725 Equidae (Horses asses, zebras)

727 Tapiridae (Tapirs)

728 Rhinocerotidae (Rhinoceroses)

73 Artiodactyla (Even toed hooft mammals)

734 Suiformes

Common names pigs, boars, wart hogs, babirussas, peccaries, hippopotamuses

.735 Ruminantia (Ruminants)

Including Tragulida, Pecora, Cervoidea, Bovoidea

Common names chevrotains, mouse deer, giraffes, okapis deer, moose reindeer, caribou, elk, antelopes, cattle, oxen buffaloes, bison, elands, bongos, kudus, gazelles, sheep goats musk oxen

[† 735 4] Tylopoda

Class in 599 736

599.736	Tylopoda [*formerly* ‡599.735 4]
	Common names camels, dromedaries, llamas, alpacas, vicunas guanacos
74	Carnivora
744	Fissipeda (Land carnivores)
744 2	Feloidea
	Former heading Aeleuroidea, Herpestoidea
	Including Viverridae, Proteles, Hyaenidae, Felidae
	Common names civets, mongooses, fossa, aardwolves, hyenas cats
.744 4	Canoidea
	Former heading Arctoidea
	Including Canidae, Procyonidae, Ursidae, Mustelidae
	Common names wolves, jackals, foxes dogs, coyotes, raccoons, coatis kinkajous, pandas bears, weasels, minks grisons, wolverines, badgers, skunks, otters
.745	Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)
	Class Otariidae in 599 746, Odobenidae in 599 747, Phocidae in 599 748 [*all formerly* *599 745]
.746	Otariidae [*formerly* *599 745]
	Eared seals
	Including fur seals sea lions sea bears
.747	Odobenidae [*formerly* *599 745]
	Walruses
.748	Phocidae [*formerly* *599 745]
	True seals
	Including earless seals elephant seals
8	Primates
	Class man [*formerly* *599 8] in 599 9
81	Prosimii
	Including Lemuriformes Lorisiformes, Tarsiiformes

599 82 Anthropoidea

Includ ng Ceb dae Callithricidae Cercopithecidae

Common names monkeys marmosets tamarins

Class gorillas cl impanzees orangutans baboons [*all formerly* ‡599 82] in 599 884

599 88–599 9 Homino dea

.88 Pongidae (Apes)

Former head ng Antl ropomorpha

.882 Hylobatinae

Common names gibbons siamangs

.884 Ponginae

Common names gorillas chimpanzees orangutans baboons [*all formerly* ‡599 82]

9 Hominidae (Man) [*formerly* *599 8]

For antl ropology see 572–573

Technology (Applied science)

600 Technology (Applied science)

For pure science see 500 prehistoric industries 571 6

74 Technical museums

Including permanent exhibits

For fairs expositions temporary exhibits see 606 4

78 Technical apparatus and instrumentation

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Handbooks and outlines

603 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

604 Essays and lectures

605 Periodicals

606 Organizations and societies

4 Fairs and expositions

Including temporary exhibits competitions

For permanent exhibits see 600 74

607 Technical education and research

2 Industrial research

Including products research technical laboratories

Divide like 940–999 e g industrial research in United States 607 273

.4–9 Technical education in specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g technical education in Germany 607 43

608 Collections

7 Patents and inventions

Divide like 940–999 e g United States patents 608 773

609 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999 e g history of technology in Germany 609 43

610 Medical sciences

For forensic medicine, see 340 6, medical welfare work, 362.1

.69 Medical professions

For nursing profession, see 610 73, medical records librarians, 362 1, medical missionaries, 266 025, medical secretaries, 651 024

.694 Medical ethics

.694 2 Codes of medical ethics

Including Hippocratic oath

.694 4 Euthanasia

.694 8 Other related codes

Including codes on medical advertising, fee splitting

For medical economics, see 614 25

.695 Professional personnel

For nurses, aides, attendants, see 610 73

.695 2 Physicians and surgeons

Including women as physicians and surgeons

For licensure and registration, see 614 24, personnel in a specialized medical practice, the specialty, e g, dentists 617 606 9

.695 3 Medical technicians

For dental technicians, see 617 606 95

.696 Physician patient relationships

.7 Study and teaching of medicine

[†*.72] Experimental medicine

Class in 619

610.73 Nursing profession

Including professional and practical nurses, aides, attendants

Divide by form divisions 01–09, e.g., history of nursing 610.730 9

For home nursing, see 649.8; Army Nurse Corps, 355.345; Navy Nurse Corps, 359.34

.732 *Private duty nursing*

.733 Institutional nursing

Including ward management

.734 Public health and community nursing

Including occupational health nursing (industrial nursing), visiting nurses

If preferred, class in 614.073

.736 Specialized nursing

If preferred, class with the specialty, e.g., pediatric nursing 618.920 73

.736 2 Pediatric nursing

.736 5 Geriatric nursing

.736 7 Surgical and gynecological nursing

.736 78 Obstetrical nursing

.736 8 Psychiatric nursing

.736 9 Communicable disease nursing

.74 Medical museums and exhibits

.76 Examinations for physicians and surgeons

Including state board examinations

.78 Medical appliances

Including instruments, apparatus, equipment

For special medical appliances, see the specialty, e.g., orthopedic appliances 617.307 8

.8 Collections on medicine

.9 History of medicine

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of medicine in Sweden 610.948 5

611 Human anatomy

For human physiology see 612 *comparative anatomy* 591 4 *anatomy for artists,* 743 4

SUMMARY

01 Theoretic considerations

Including value, definitions, classification terminology

012 Human teratology

Congenital anomalies [*formerly also* †617 31] deformities [*formerly also* †613 91] monstrosities [*formerly* †573 9]

Including coalescence of parts, extension of commissures, Siamese twins [*all formerly* †617 33–†617 35]

For pathology see 616 07, *correction of deformities of skeletal system,* 617 3 *treatment of anomalies of a specific organ, the organ, e g , heart anomalies* 616 12

013 Anatomy of human embryo

Class human embryology [*formerly* †*611 013] in 612 64

[† 014] Anthropological anatomy

Class in 573

[† 016] Paleontological anatomy

Class in 560

018 Human cytology and histology

Study of microscopic structure of human cells and tissues

018 1 Human cytology [*formerly also* †612 014 1–†612 014 3]

Study of human cells and their components, e g , protoplasm [*formerly also* †612 71]

611 018 2–611 018 8 Human histology

611 018 2 Connective tissues

Microscopic study of areolar collagenous elastic reticular adipose pigmented cells fibers ground substances

018 3 Cartilaginous tissues

Microscopic study of hyaline elastic, fibrous cartilage

018 4 Osseous tissues

Microscopic study of spongy and compact bone cells and tissues red yellow bone marrow (medulla) periosteum endosteum

018 5 Blood and lymph elements

Microscopic study of blood plasma red corpuscles (erythrocytes) white corpuscles (leucocytes) platelets (thrombocytes) lymph plasma lymphocytes

018 6 Muscular tissues

Microscopic study of smooth (nonstriated involuntary), skeletal (striated voluntary) cardiac (striated involuntary) muscle tissues

018 7 Epithelial tissues

Microscopic study of simple squamous columnar stratified squamous epithelia serous and mucous membranes

018 8 Nerve tissues

Microscopic study of neurons interstitial nerve tissues (neuroglia neurilemma satellite cells) meninges sheaths

611 1–611 88 Gross anatomy by systems

.1 Cardiovascular organs

11 Pericardium

12 Heart

Including ventricles auricles endocardium myocardium

For pericardium see 611 11

611 13–611 15 Blood vessels

13 Arteries

14 Veins

15 Capillaries

611.2 Respiratory organs

.21 Nose and nasal accessory sinuses

.22 Larynx

Including laryngeal cartilages glottis muscles of larynx

.23 Trachea and bronchi

.24 Lungs

.25 Pleura

.26 Diaphragm

.27 Mediastinum

.3 Alimentary tract (Digestive organs)

.31 Mouth

Including tongue palates salivary glands lips cheeks

.314 Teeth (Dental anatomy)

.32 Pharynx and esophagus

Including tonsils

.33 Stomach

Including pylorus

.34 Intestines

Including small intestines duodenum jejunum ileum cecum vermiform appendix large intestines colon sigmoid flexure

.35 Rectum and anus

Including rectal valves perineum

.36 Liver and biliary tract

Including gall bladder

.37 Pancreas

Including islands of Langerhans

.38 Peritoneum

Including mesentery omentum coelum

.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs

.41 Spleen

.42 Lymphatic ducts

Including comprehensive works on lymphatic system

For lymphatic glands see 611.46

611.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands

.46 Lymphatic glands

For lymphatic ducts, see 611.42

.49 Breasts [*formerly* †611.69]

Including mammary glands

.6 Urogenital organs

.61 Kidneys

Including ureter

.62 Bladder

Including urethra

For female urethra, see 611.67

.63 Male genital organs

Including testicles, vas deferens, seminal vesicles, prostate, scrotum, spermatic cord

.64 Penis

.65 Female genital organs

Including ovaries, Graafian follicles, corpus luteum, Fallopian tubes

.66 Uterus

Including cervix

.67 Vagina

Including hymen, vulva, female urethra, clitoris, vulvo-vaginal glands

[†.69] Breasts

Class in 611.49

.7 Motor and integumentary organs

.71 Osteology

.711 Vertebral column

611 712 Thoracic bones

Including ribs

For scapula, clavicle, see 611 717

.713 Sternum

.714 Skull

.715 Cranium

.716 Bones of face

.717 Bones of the upper extremity

Including scapula, clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, phalanges of the hands, carpal, metacarpal bones

.718 Bones of the lower extremity

Including femur, patella, tibia, fibula, phalanges of the feet, tarsal, metatarsal bones

.718 1 Hipbone (Innominate bone)

.72 Articulations

Including ligaments, joints

For connective tissue, see 611 74

.73 Myology

Anatomy of muscles

.731 Dorsal muscles

.732 Muscles of the head

.733 Muscles of the neck

.734 Hyoid muscles

.735 Thoracic muscles

.736 Abdominal and coccygeal muscles

.737 Muscles of the upper extremity

Including muscles of the shoulders, arms, forearms, hands

.738 Muscles of the lower extremity

Including muscles of the hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet

.74 Connective tissue [*formerly* †611 76]

Including tendons, fasciae

611 75 Bursae

Including sheaths of tendons

[† 76] Connective tissue

Class in 611 74

77 Integument

Including skin glands of the skin, skin pigmentation

For bursae, see 611 75

78 Hair and nails

.8 Neuroanatomy [*formerly also* †131.1]

81 Brain

82 Spinal cord

83 Peripheral nerves

Including ganglions [*formerly* †611 89], cranial, spinal, cervical, thoracic, lumbar sacral, and coccygeal nerves

839 Autonomic nerves

Including sympathetic and parasympathetic systems

---

611 84–611 88 Anatomy of sense organs

84 Eye

85 Ear

86 Olfactory organs

87 Gustatory organs

88 Tactile organs [*formerly also* †152 51]

Including comprehensive works on proprioceptive organs [*formerly also* †152 61] sense organs

For anatomy of the eye see 611 84 *of the ear,* 611 85, *of olfactory organs,* 611 86 *of gustatory organs* 611 87

[† 89] Ganglions

Class in 611 83

.9 Regional anatomy

Including surgical and topographical anatomy

91 Head

92 Face

93 Neck

611.94 Thorax

.95 Abdomen

.96 Pelvic and perineal region

For anatomy of hipbone, see 611 718 1

97 Upper extremities

.98 Lower extremities

612 Human physiology

Functions of human body and its organs

[illegible] *plant*

SUMMARY

612 01	Theoretic considerations
1	Circulatory systems
2	Respiratory system
3	Nutrition
4	Lymphatic and glandular systems
5	Body temperature
6	Reproductive system and developmental periods
7	Motor and integumentary systems
8	Nervous system

01 Theoretic considerations

Including value, definitions, classification, terminology

[† 014] General physiology

Class in 574 1

[† 014 1–† 014 3] Cytology

Class cytology in 574 87, human cytology in 611 018 1

014 4 Physiological effects of physical agents [*formerly* *612 017]

For physics of bodily functions, see 612 017, *physiological effects of heat and cold* 612 59

014 41 Physiological effects of barometric pressure [*formerly also* †612 27]

Including physiological aspects of caisson disease, altitude sickness

612 014 42 Electrophysiology

For electrotherapy, see 615 845, *electrophysiology of nerves,* 612 813

[† 014 43] Physiological effects of heat and cold

Class in 612 59

014 44 Physiological effects of light

For phototherapy, see 615 831

014 45 Physiological effects of sound vibration

[† 014 47] Geotropism and thigmotaxis

Class in 581 183 2

014 48 Physiological effects of penetrating radiation

Including effects of X rays, cosmic rays gamma rays

For radiotherapy, see 615 84

015 Human biochemistry

Comprehensive works on composition of and chemical transformations occurring within human body

Divide by form divisions 01–09, e g , experimental biochemistry 612 015 072

For biochemistry of a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e g , chemical composition of blood 612 11, *biological products,* 615 328–615 39, *their chemistry,* 547 73–547 76, *pharmacodynamics,* 615 7, *metabolism,* 612 39, *animal biochemistry,* 591 192, *plant biochemistry,* 581 192

015 1 Enzymes (Ferments) in human body

Comprehensive works

For action of enzymes in a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e g , pepsin in the stomach 612 32

015 2 Chemical composition of human body

[† 015 3] Metabolism

Class metabolism in 612 39, effect of temperature on metabolism in 612 59

015 4 Pigments and pigmentation

Including melanin, bilirubin, porphyrin, carotenoids and similar substances in human body

612 017 **Human biophysics**

Comprehensive works on physics of bodily functions and physiological effects of physical agents

Class physiological effects of physical agents [*formerly* *612 017] in 612 014 4

For biophysics of a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e g, principles of circulation 612 13, *physical medicine,* 615 8, *physiological effects of heat and cold,* 612 59

018 **Tissue and organ culture**

For study of microscopic structure of tissues and cells, see 611 018

07 **Study and teaching of human physiology**

.072 **Experimental physiology**

Including vivisection

For anatomy and vivisection laws, see 614 22

---

612 1–612 89 Physiology of specific systems and organs

Class pathology of specific systems and organs [*formerly* subdivisions of †612 1–†612 89] in 616–618

.1 **Circulatory systems**

Functions of cardiovascular and hemic systems

For lymphatic system, see 612 42 *circulation in a specific part of human body, the physiology of the part, e g, pulmonary circulation* 612 215

.11 **Blood**

For spleen, see 612 41, *bone marrow,* 612 491, *microscopic study of blood elements,* 611 018 5, *blood analysis in diagnosis,* 616 075 61

111 **Red corpuscles**

Biochemistry, biophysics of red corpuscles (erythrocytes)

Including counting red corpuscles

112 **White corpuscles**

Biochemistry, biophysics of white corpuscles (leucocytes)

Including comprehensive works on counting techniques

For counting red corpuscles, see 612 111

612 115 Coagulation of blood

Including composition and properties of coagulation products, e g, blood plasma platelets, fibrin, fibrinoplastin, thrombin

118 Properties of whole blood

118 1 Physical properties

Including osmotic pressure viscosity, cryoscopic methods of studying blood

118 2 Biological properties

Including physiological aspects of immunity, antibodies

12 Chemical properties

Including chemical components of blood e g, carbohydrates, lipoids cholesterin, mineral salts, enzymes

13 Principles of blood circulation

Including arterial venous, and capillary circulation, rapidity of circulation [*formerly* †612 15]

14 Blood pressure

Including systolic and diastolic pressure, pulse [*formerly* †612 16] and pulse rate sphygmomanometry

For pulse and blood pressure in diagnosis, see 616 075

[† 15] Rapidity of circulation

Class in 612 13

[† 16] Pulse

Class in 612 14

17 Heart

Including cardiac muscles

171 Cardiac contractions

Including rhythmic contraction (systole) and dilation (diastole) of heart cavities action of cardiac valves methods of graphically recording cardiac movements

For blood pressure see 612 14 *electrocardiography in diagnosing heart disease* 616 120 75

173 Cardiac metabolism

[† 174] Drugs affecting cardiovascular system

Class in 615 71

612 178 Innervation of heart

Nerve distribution and stimulation of heart

For vasomotors, see 612 18

[†.179] Prenatal circulation

Class in 612 64

.18 Vasomotors

Nerves causing dilation and constriction of blood vessels

Including vasoconstrictors, vasodilators

For innervation of heart, see 612 178

2 Respiratory system

21 Respiratory biophysics

Including respiratory movements rhythm, sounds and similar phenomena

215 Physiology of specific respiratory organs

Physiology of nose and pharynx bronchi trachea, pleura, lungs, pulmonary muscles

Including pulmonary circulation

22 Respiratory biochemistry

Including gaseous exchange in the blood [*formerly* †612 23]

For tissue respiration see 612 26

23 Physiology of asphyxiation

Class gaseous exchange in the blood [*formerly* †612 23] in 612 22

For treatment of asphyxiation see 617 18

26 Tissue respiration

Including catabolic processes

[† 27] Physiological effects of barometric pressure

Class in 612 014 41

28 Innervation of respiratory system

Nerve distribution and stimulation of respiratory apparatus

612 3 **Nutrition**

Sum total of processes of ingestion digestion assimilation of food to build and maintain tissue and to release energy

For food values see 641 1 *food in relation to health* 613 2 *dietotherapy* 615 854 *chemical analysis of food and drink* 543 1 *food inspection* 614 31

---

612 31–612 36 Physiology of digestive system

Biophysics biochemistry innervation of digestive tract

31 Oral physiology

Including physiology of mouth tonsils tongue esophagus

311 Dental physiology

Including mastication

For dentistry see 617 6

313 Salivary digestion

[† 314] Venoms

Class in 615 942

32 Gastric digestion

Physiology of stomach

33 Intestinal digestion

Including physiology of small intestines intestinal secretions

For digestion in large intestines see 612 36 *absorption* 612 38

34 Pancreatic digestion

Physiology of pancreas and pancreatic secretions

35 Biliary digestion

Physiology of liver gall bladder bile ducts biliary secretions

36 Physiology of large intestines

Including physiology of vermiform appendix digestion in large intestines defecation

38 Absorption

Transfer of digested food from alimentary canal into blood stream

612.39 Metabolism [*formerly also* †612 015 3]

Assimilation of digested food into tissue (anabolism) and conversion into energy (catabolism)

For energy metabolism, see 612 57, *catabolic processes,* 612.26

.391 Physiology of hunger and thirst

For sensation and perception of hunger and thirst, see 152 6

.392 Mineral metabolism

[† 392 1] Carbonaceous foods

Class in 612 396

[† 392 2] Nitrogenous foods

Class in 612 398

392 3 Water metabolism

392 4 Metabolism of sulfur, phosphorus, iron

Including metabolism of trace elements

392 6 Metabolism of other minerals

Including metabolism of sodium, potassium, calcium salts

[†.394] Food requirements for children

Class in 649.3

[† 395] Food requirements for adults

Class in 641 1

396 Carbohydrate metabolism

Metabolism of carbonacous foods [*formerly also* †612 392 1]

397 Fat and lipoid metabolism

398 Protein metabolism

Metabolism of nitrogenous foods [*formerly also* †612 392 2]

399 Vitamins in the body

For pharmacology of vitamins, see 615 328, *chemistry of vitamins in vitro,* 547 74, *vitamin therapy,* 615 854

612.4 Lymphatic and glandular systems

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of lymphatic, endocrine, and exocrine systems

Use 612 400 1–612 400 9 for form divisions

For glands of a specific system, see the system, e g , mammary glands 612 664

.405 Hormones in the body

For endocrinotherapy, see 615 36, *chemistry of hormones in vitro,* 547 73

41 Spleen

For red corpuscles, see 612 111, *bone marrow,* 612 491

42 Lymphatic system

Including physiology of lymph, lymph glands

43 Thymus gland

44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

45 Adrenal glands

46 Urinary system

461 Chemical properties of urine

Including chemical composition, reactivity, analysis

For urinalysis in diagnosis, see 616 075 6

463 Physiology of kidneys

Including formation and secretion of urine renal circulation

For micturition see 612 467

467 Physiology of bladder, ureters, urethra

Including micturition

467 3 Innervation of urinary system

49 Other endocrine glands

491 Bone marrow

For spleen see 612 41 *red corpuscles,* 612 111

492 Pituitary and pineal glands

612.5 **Body temperature**

Including heat production, radiation, regulation in the body

55 Disturbances in heat regulation

Including physiological aspects of fevers

For treatment of fevers, see 616 9

.57 Energy metabolism

Including measurement of basal metabolism rate

For diagnosis, see 616 075

[†.58] Hibernating animals

Class in 591 543

.59 Physiological effects of heat and cold [*formerly also* †612 014 43]

Including physiological effects of temperature on metabolism [*formerly also* †612 015 35]

591 Physiological effects of high temperatures

For thermotherapy, see 615 832, *tropical hygiene,* 613 113

592 Physiological effects of low temperatures

For cryotherapy, see 615 832 9, *arctic hygiene,* 613 111

.6 **Reproductive system and developmental periods**

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of reproductive system and developmental periods

Use 612 600 1–612 600 9 for form divisions

61 Male reproductive system

62 Female reproductive system

63 Pregnancy [*formerly also* †618 21, *618]

Including conception parturition [*formerly also* †618 4]

Class birth control [*formerly* *612 63] in 613.943

For management of pregnancy, see 618 24, *embryology* 612 64

64 Human embryology [*formerly also* †*611 013]

Prenatal development

Including prenatal circulation [*formerly* †612 179]

646 Development of embryo

Intra uterine development from conception thru three months

612 647 Development of fetus

Intra-uterine development from end of embryonic period to birth

648 Development of newborn (neonate)

First month of postfetal development

.65 Child development [*formerly also* †136 71, *136 7]

Development from infancy to puberty

For child psychology see 136 7, *child care and management,* 649 1, *pediatrics,* 618 92

66 Adult development

661 Adolescent development

Including puberty

662 Menstruation

663 Period of mature development

Including period of fertility

664 Lactation

Including physiology of mammary glands

665 Climacteric development

Male and female climacteric changes

Including menopause

67 Physical gerontology [*formerly* *618 97]

Physiology of aging

For social gerontology see 301 435, *geriatrics,* 618 97

68 Longevity factors

.7 Motor and integumentary systems

Biochemistry biophysics, innervation of motor and integumentary systems, physiology of movement [*formerly also* †158 2]

For muscle reactivity to electrical stimulation see 612 813

[† 71] Protoplasm

Class in 611 018 1

[† 72–† 73] Vibratile cilia, smooth muscles

Class in 612 74

612.74 Muscle physiology

Smooth [*formerly also* †612 73] and striated muscles

Including cilia [*formerly* †612 72]

For cardiac muscles, see 612 17

741 Muscular contractions [*formerly also* †612 745]

Including muscular elasticity, tonus, irritability

743 Innervation of muscles

.744 Chemistry of muscles

Including muscular metabolism, chemical composition of muscles

[† 745] Muscular contractions

Class in 612 741

75 Physiology of bones, joints, connective tissues

76 Human locomotion

Including physiology of exercise and rest

For rest and exercise in relation to health, see 613 7

78 Voice and speech

Including physiology of larynx [*formerly also* †534 7], glottis, epiglottis

79 Physiology of skin

792 Secretion of skin glands

Including perspiration

798 Innervation of skin

799 Physiology of nails and hair

8 Nervous system [*formerly also* †131 2]

Biochemistry and biophysics of nervous system

Including innervation principles

Class sensation [*formerly* *612 8] in 152 and its subdivisions

For physiological psychology, see 131

81 Peripheral nervous system

Including comprehensive works on physiology of nerve fibers

For a specific peripheral nerve see the part innervated, e.g., auditory nerve 612 85

811 Types of peripheral nerves

811 5 Motor nerves

612 811 6 Sensory nerves

.813 Electrophysiology of nerves [*formerly also* †612 816 1]

Including muscle reactivity

.816 Reactivity of nerves to stimulation

For electrophysiology of nerves, see 612 813

[† 816 1] Action of electricity

Class in 612 813

819 Cranial nerves

.819 9 Spinal nerves

Including comprehensive works on cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral nerves

82 Central nervous system

For peripheral nervous system, see 612 81, *spinal cord*, 612 83

821 Brain

For physiological psychology, see 131, *a specific part of brain, the part, e g , cerebellum* 612 827

[† 821 1] Reaction time studies

Class in 152 83

[† 821 2] Attention, memory, association, imagination

Class attention in 152 723, memory in 154, association in 153.2, imagination in 155

[†.821 3] Instincts, intelligence, emotions, sensibility

Class instincts in 158 424, intelligence in 151, emotions in 157, sensibility in 157 5

[† 821 31] Comparative psychology

Class in 151 3

[† 821 34] Will, habits, drives

Class will in 159.2, habits in 158 43, drives in 159 4

[† 821 4] Action of poisons

Class in 613 8

[† 821 5] Effect of disease on intelligence

Class in 151.29

[†.821 6] Psychic reflexes

Class in 158 423

612 821 7 Sleep and dreams

Physiological aspects only

Including cerebral circulation chemical changes during sleep phenomena

For psychological aspects of sleep and dreams, see 135

[† 821 71] Hypnotism

Class in 134

[† 821 8] Sensation and perception

Class in 152

[† 821 88] Psychophysics

Class in 152 8

[† 821 89] Sensory illusions

Class in 152 73

822 Biochemistry and biophysics of nerve tissue

824 Cerebral circulation

825 Cerebrum

Including cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, cortex

For cerebral circulation, see 612 824 *cerebral commissures and peduncles,* 612 826

.825 2 Cerebral localization of motor functions

825 5 Cerebral localization of sensory functions

826 Brain stem

Including thalamus, cerebral commissures geniculate bodies, corpora quadrigemina cerebral peduncles, pons Varolii

For medulla oblongata see 612 828

827 Cerebellum

828 Medulla oblongata

83 Spinal cord

For spinal nerves see 612 819 9

---

612 84–612 88 Physiology of sense organs

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of sense organs

84 Physiological optics [*formerly also* †535 7, *535 6]

For psychological optics, see 152.1

612.841 Fibrous tunics of eye [*formerly also* †152.11]

Including physiology of cornea, conjunctiva, anterior chamber, sclera

842 Uvea [*formerly also* †152.12]

Pigmentary layer of eye

Including physiology of iris, choroid, ciliary body

843 Optic nerve and retina [*formerly also* †152.13]

[†843.3–†843.7] Visual sensation and perception (Psychological optics)

Class in 152.1

844 Eyeball [*formerly also* †152.14]

Including physiology of crystalline lens, aqueous humor, vitreous humor

846 Movements of eye [*formerly also* †152.16]

Ocular muscular mechanism

[†846.2] Binocular phenomena

Class in 152.1

847 Eyelids and tear ducts [*formerly also* †152.17]

Palpebral and lacrimal mechanism

[†848] Tests of visual perception

Class in 152.18

85 Physiological audition [*formerly also* †534.7]

851 External ear (Pinna) [*formerly also* †152.21]

854 Middle ear [*formerly also* †152.24–†152.27]

Including physiology of tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, ossicles [*all formerly* †612.855–†612.857], mastoid processes

[†855–†857] Parts of middle ear

Class in 612.854

858 Internal ear (Labyrinth) [*formerly also* †152.28]

Including physiology of semicircular canals, cochlea, basilar membrane, organ of Corti, acoustic nerve, endolymph

[†858.7–†858.76] Auditory sensation and perception

Class in 152.2

[†858.78] Tests of auditory perception

Class in 152.28

612 86 Olfactory organs [*formerly also* †152 31]

[† 867] Olfactory sensation and perception

Class in 152.3

[† 867 8] Tests of olfactory sensation

Class in 152 37

87 Gustatory organs [*formerly also* †152 41]

For gustatory sensation and perception, see 152 4

88 Tactile and proprioceptive organs [*formerly also* †152 51, †152 61]

[† 882–† 884] Cutaneous sensation and perception

Class in 152 5

[† 885] Proprioceptive sensation and perception

Class in 152 6

[† 886 1] Orientational sensation and perception

Class in 152 6

89 Autonomic nervous system

Including sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

613 Hygiene [*formerly also* subdivisions of *616]

Health and its preservation

Including personal hygiene

For public health, see 614 *health education in schools,* 371 76

SUMMARY

613 1	Environment and health
.2	Food and health
3	Beverages and health
4	Cleanliness and health
48	Clothing and health
5	Housing and health
6	Hygiene under unusual conditions
7	Rest and exercise
8	Stimulants and narcotics in relation to health
9	Hereditary factors and health

613 1 Environment and health

For housing and health see 613 5

11 Climate and health

For seasonal changes and health see 613 13 temperature and health 613 18

111 Arctic hygiene

113 Tropical hygiene

119 Acclimation

12 Health resorts

Including spas seashore and mountain resorts

13 Seasonal changes and health

For temperature and health see 613 18 climate and health 613 11

14 Humidity and health

18 Temperature and health

Including effects of indoor temperatures and air conditioning on health

For humidity and health see 613 14 climate and health 613 11

19 Air and light

192 Fresh air and breathing

193 Sun bathing

194 Nudism

2 Food and health

For food analysis see 543 1 digestion and metabolism of food 612 3 food inspection 614 31 food values 641 1 cookery 641 5–641 8 beverages and health 613 3

[† 22] Food for infants

Class in 649 3

[† 23] Dietotherapy

Class in 615 854

.24 Underweight and health

Including effects of fasting famine starvation

.25 Overweight and health

613 26 Vegetarianism and health

Including health aspects of fruits [*formerly* †613 27] nuts vegetables low protein diets

[† 27] Fruits

Class in 613 26

28 High protein diets and health

Including health aspects of fish and shellfish [*both formerly* †613 29] meat milk egg diets

[† 29] Fish and shellfish

Class in 613 28

3 Beverages and health

For analysis of beverages see 543 1 *inspection of beverages* 614 34 *alcoholic beverages and health* 613 8

31 Water and health

[† 33–† 34] Biological analysis of water

Class in 628 16

[† 35] Purification of water

Class in 628 16

36 Iced beverages and health

37 Hot beverages and health

Including hot tea coffee cocoa

38 Carbonated beverages and health

Including mineralized waters

4 Cleanliness and health

Including bathing

For hydrotherapy see 615 853 *swimming pools and bathing beaches* 614 796

48 Clothing and health

5 Housing and health

6 Hygiene under unusual conditions

[† 61–† 66] Industrial hygiene

Class in 331 82

67 Military hygiene [*formerly* *356 92]

For military medical services see 355 345

613.68 Naval hygiene [*formerly* *359.98]

Including nonmilitary shipboard hygiene

For naval medical services, see 359.345

.69 Survival instructions

Survival after airplane accidents, shipwrecks, and similar disasters

Including survival in arctic, tropical, desert regions

For protection of civilians in time of war, see 355.232 2

.7 Rest and exercise

.71 Exercise and health

Class gymnastics [*formerly* †613.71] in 796.41

For physical education, athletics, sports in school, see 371.73–371.75, medical gymnastics, 615.824

.78 Correct posture

.79 Relaxation and health

Including rest and sleep as factors in maintaining health

.8 Stimulants and narcotics in relation to health [*formerly* *616.86]

Including effects of poisons on nervous system [*formerly* †131.334, †612.821 4], effects of alcohol

For treatment of alcoholism, see 616.861, of drug addiction, 616.863, ethical aspects, 178

.9 Hereditary factors and health

For biological and physical determinants of personality, see 137.31, influence of heredity on personal characteristics, 136.3

[†.91] Congenital deformities

Class in 611.012

.92 Inherited mental disorders

For treatment of a specific mental disorder, see the subject, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses 616.895, psychological aspects of a specific mental disorder, the subject, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses 132.195

.93 Inherited diseases

For treatment of a specific disease, see the subject, e.g., strabismus 617.762 inherited mental disorders, 613.92

613 94 Eugenics [*formerly* *301 323, *formerly also* †575 1]

Safeguarding and improving human heritage thru judicious choice of mate and eugenic practices, e g , sterilization, birth control

For use of eugenic practices to prevent crime, see 364 42

.942 Sterilization [*formerly* *301 323]

943 Birth control [*formerly* *612 63]

Including natural (rhythm), chemical and mechanical methods of contraception

For planned parenthood, see 301 426, *physiology of reproductive system,* 612 6

614 Public health and other public aspects of medicine

For forensic medicine, see 340 6, *medical welfare work,* 362 1, *toxicology* 615 9 *sanitary engineering,* 628, *local boards of health,* 352 4, *offenses against public health and safety,* 364 13

SUMMARY

614 1	Registration and certification
2	State control of medicine
3	Food and drug control
4	Control of disease
5	Control of specific diseases
59	Control of noncommunicable diseases
6	Disposal of the dead
7	Sanitation and sanitary control
8	Safety measures

09 History of public health movement

Including public health legislation, reports, surveys

Divide like 940–999, e g , public health in England 614 094 2

.1 Registration and certification

Class vital statistics [*formerly* †614 1] in 312

11 Birth certification

12 Death certification

14 Reports on causes of death

For statistics on causes of death see 312 26

15 Morbidity reports

17 Premarital examinations and certification

614.2 **State control of medicine**

Including medical laws, regulations, economic aspects, medical privilege [*formerly* *340.6]

Class control of patent medicines [*formerly* *614.2] in 614.35

For local boards of health, see 352.4

22 Anatomy and vivisection laws

[†.23] Expert testimony

Class in 340.6

.24 Licensure and registration

Including licensing and registration of physicians, surgeons, dentists, pharmacists, nurses, and other medical specialists

For directories of physicians and surgeons, see 610.58, state board examinations, 610.76

25 Medical economics

For prepaid medical care, see 368.382

253 Economics of medical care

Cost of medical services to patient

255 Economics of medical practice

Including fee schedules, collecting of accounts, physicians' income

For medical ethics, see 610.694

26 Laws against quackery and malpractice

[†.27] Control of nostrums and patent medicines

Class in 614.35

28 Control of sale of poisons and narcotics

Including regulations of manufacture, sale, use

For inspection of drugs, see 614.35

.3 **Food and drug control**

Control of adulterations and health hazards in commodities by means of legislation, inspection, standardization, certification

31 Food and food products [*formerly also* †614.33]

Inspection of fresh and processed fruits, vegetables, meats, poultry, fish and shellfish

614 32 Milk and milk products

Inspection and certification of milk, cream, milk by products, cheese and cheese foods, butter, oleomargarine

For chemical analysis of milk and milk products, see 543 2, *testing milk,* 637 127, *butter,* 637 22, *cheese,* 637 32

[†.33] Other articles of food

Class in 614 31

.34 Beverages

Inspection of alcoholic and nonalcoholic beverages

Including wines, beer, liquors [*formerly also* †178 4] fruit and vegetable juices, carbonated beverages tea coffee, chocolate, cocoa

35 Drugs and cosmetics

Including control [*formerly* †614 27, *614 2] and inspection of patent medicines

.36 Tobacco and tobacco products

37 Other commodities

Including inspection of pigments, paper, fabrics, toys

.4 **Control of disease**

For control of specific diseases, see 614 5

42 Geographic distribution of disease (Medical geography)

Class medical climatology [*formerly* †614 42] in 616 988

422 Distribution by zones and physical regions

Divide like 631 091, e g , diseases in the tropics 614 422 3

423–429 Distribution by country

Divide like 930–999, e g , diseases in India 614 425 4

43 Disease carriers

Transmission of disease by animal carriers (vectors) and their control

For treatment of a specific disease transmitted by carriers, see the disease, e g , malaria 616 936 2, *control of diseases transmitted by animals,* 614 56

432 Insects as disease carriers

432 2 Flies

432 3 Mosquitoes

614 432 4 Lice and fleas

432 9 Other insects

433 Ticks and other arachnids as disease carriers

434 Birds as disease carriers

438 Rodents as disease carriers

439 Other disease carriers

Including human carriers

44 Preventive medicine

Public measures for preventing disease

For control of specific diseases see 614 5

45 Isolation

Prevention of spread of disease in homes hospitals schools public places thru isolation

46 Quarantine

Maritime land and air quarantine regulations

47 Immunization

Public measures for preventing disease thru protective inoculation

[† 471–† 478] Immunization against specific diseases

Class in 614 5 and its subdivisions

48 Disinfection

Including fumigation sterilization

For disinfectants see 615 77

49 Epidemiology

History and control of epidemics

Divide like 930–999 e g epidemics in France 614 494 4

5 **Control of specific diseases [*formerly* *616 and its subdivisions]**

Control of specific diseases thru immunization [*formerly* †614 471–†614 478] isolation and other public health measures

---

614 511–614 566 Control of specific infectious diseases

For control of noncommunicable diseases see 614 59

511 Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)

512 Diphtheria

614 514 Cholera

Asian Indian epidemic malignant pestilential cholera

[†515] Cholera infantum (Epidemic diarrhea)

Class in 614 517

516 Dysentery

Amoebic and bacillary dysentery

517 Epidemic diarrhea [*formerly also* †614 515]

518 *Influenzas*

Including Spanish influenza Asian "flu" other acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form

52 Exanthematous diseases

Diseases characterized by skin eruptions

521 Smallpox (Variola)

Including alastrim

522 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

523 Measles (Rubeola [*formerly also* †614 524])

524 German measles (Rubella, roetheln)

Class rubeola [*formerly* †614 524] in 614 523

525 Chicken pox (Varicella)

526 Typhus

53 Malarial fevers

Including acute (intermittent and remittent) pernicious chronic malarias

For control of mosquitoes see 614 432 3

54 Other communicable diseases

541 Yellow fever

For control of mosquitoes see 614 432 3

542 Pulmonary tuberculosis

543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

544 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

545 Puerperal fever (Puerperal septicemia)

546 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

614.547 Venereal diseases

.547 2 Syphilis

.548 Gonorrhea

.549 Poliomyelitis

.55 Parasitic diseases

Divide like 616 96, e g, control of shistosomiasis 614 553

For malarial fevers, see 614 53, trichinosis, 614 562, amoebic dysentery, 614.516

.56 Diseases transmitted by animals

For disease carriers, see 614 43, malarial fevers, 614 53, yellow fever, 614 541

.561 Anthrax (Charbon)

Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever, malignant and contagious anthrax

.562 Trichinosis

.563 Hydrophobia (Rabies)

.564 Glanders (Equinia)

Including farcy

.565 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

.566 Psittacosis

.59 Control of noncommunicable diseases

Including public health aspects of degenerative diseases, cancer, diabetes mellitus

For mental hygiene, see 131 3

.6 Disposal of the dead

For manners and customs in treatment of the dead, see 393

.61 Interment and cemeteries

For mortuary architecture, see 726 8, design and care of cemeteries, 718

.62 Cremation and crematories

For mortuary architecture, see 726 8

.63 Transportation of the dead

Including importation

614 64 Embalming and undertaking

Including post mortem plastic surgery

.68 Morgues

.7 Sanitation and sanitary control

For sanitary engineering, see 628

71 Dangerous air pollution

Regulations for control of air pollution and contamination by fumes, smoke gases [*formerly* †614 72], other industrial processes

Including smog

For nuisances, see 614 76

715 *Air contamination by radioactive substances*

Including preventive measures against radioactive fallout

[† 72] Air pollution by noxious gases

Class in 614 71

[† 73–† 75] Air pollution by vegetable, animal trades, storage and handling of noxious and offensive materials

Class in 614 76

76 Nuisances

Regulations for control of offensive odors from animal and vegetable trades [*both formerly* †614 73–†614 74], stables, sties, offal, cesspools, dead animals, garbage

Including storage and handling of noxious and offensive materials [*formerly* †614 75]

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628 3, *municipal garbage treatment and disposal,* 628 445, *rural sewage and refuse disposal,* 628 74

77 Water and soil pollution

[† 771] Soil analysis

Class in 631 42

772 Water and water supply

Including public health aspects of fluoridation

For techniques and methods of water purification, see 628 166 3

614 776 Soil pollution and drainage

For agricultural drainage see 631 6

78 Noise control

[† 781] City planning

Class in 711 4

[† 782] Subways and elevated ways

Class in 711 75

[† 783] Parks

Class in 711 558

[† 784] Building laws and codes

Class in 692 9

79 Public buildings and assembly places

Including premises equipment operations operating personnel sanitary laws and regulations

791 Eating places

Including restaurants lunchrooms milk bars ice cream parlors

792 Hotels

Including inns motels tourist houses boarding houses

For hotel administration see 647 94

794 Public comfort stations

For engineering aspects of comfort stations see 628 45

796 Swimming pools and bathing beaches

For water safety see 614 81

797 Barber shops and beauty shops

For administration of beauty shops see 646 72 of barber shops 646 74

799 Public carriers

For traffic safety see 614 86

8 Safety measures

Prevention of accidents and casualties

81 Water safety

Safety measures at beaches public pools

Including rescue resuscitation of drowning victims

82 Prevention of gas suffocation

614 83 Prevention of explosions

Laws and regulations on and inspection of manufacture, storage transportation of explosives and combustible materials

84 Fire prevention and protection

For fire departments, see 352 3, engineering aspects of fire engines 621 68

841 Fire prevention

843 Fire extinction

844 Extinction thru automatic sprinkling devices

845 Extinction with chemical extinguishers

846 Extinction with water

847 Safety measures

Including laws and regulations on exits from public buildings [*formerly* †614 848] fire escapes fire-resistant construction

For fire prevention, see 614 841

[† 848] Exits from public buildings

Class in 614 847

[†* 85] Industrial safety and hygiene

Class industrial hygiene in 331 82 industrial safety in 331 823 building laws and inspection in 692 9

86 Traffic safety

862 Highway safety

863 Railway safety

Including safety regulations on streetcars

864 Water travel safety

Including regulations concerning lifeboats life preservers, communication equipment harbor safety [*all formerly also* †614 865–†614 867]

[† 865–† 867] Harbor safety, lifeboats

Class in 614 864

868 Rescue operations after shipwrecks

869 Air travel safety

87 Accidents and safety measures under other conditions

Comprehensive works only

Class accidents and safety measures under a specific set of conditions with the subject e g, ski safety 796 93

614 38 First aid

Nonprofessional emergency treatment to accident victims before regular medical or surgical care can be given

For rescue and resuscitation of victims of drowning see 614 81

[† 881–† 883] Ambulance service

Class in 362 18

[† 9] Veterinary sanitation

Class in 636 089 4

615 Therapeutics and pharmacology

For a therapy applied to a specific disease, see the disease, e g, fever therapy in syphilis 616 951 3

SUMMARY

615 1	Pharamcology
2	Mineral drugs
3	Organic drugs
4	Practical pharmacy
5	Therapeutics
6	Methods of medication
7	Pharmacodynamics
8	Physical medicine
85	Other therapies
856	Quacks and quackery
88	Patent medicine
89	Folk medicine
9	Toxicology

615 1–615 39 Pharmacology and pharmacy

For practical pharmacy see 615 4 toxicology 615 9 patent medicines 615 88

.1 Pharmacology

Including materia medica

11 Pharmacopoeias

Divide like 940–999 e g Farmacopea Chilena 615 118 3

12 Dispensatories

Divide like 940–999 e g British pharmaceutical codex 615 124 2

13 Formularies (Collected prescriptions)

Divide like 930–999 e g National Formulary (United States) 615 137 3

615 14 Posology

Including prescription writing, therapeutic and physiological incompatibilities

.19 Pharmaceutical chemistry

Manufacture and analysis of drugs

For manufacture, identification, assaying of specific drugs and biological products, see 615 2–615 39, *physiological and therapeutic action of drugs,* 615 7

.190 15 Chemical analysis of drugs [*formerly* †*543 4]

Including chemical analysis of medicinals

190 18 Drug assay methods

.2 Mineral drugs

Manufacture, identification, assaying of synthetic inorganic drugs

Including naturally occurring mineral drugs, comprehensive works on synthetic drugs

Arrange specific mineral (inorganic) drugs alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, calomel 615 2 C1

For synthetic organic drugs, see 615 31

.3 Organic drugs

Manufacture, identification, assaying

32 Pharmacognosy

Drugs of vegetable [*formerly also* †615 33] and animal origin

Including crude drugs alkaloids, herbals

Arrange specific drugs of vegetable and animal origin alphabetically except as provided for in 615 328–615 39, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, digitalis 615 32 D5

---

615 328–615 39 Biological products

Including synthetic biological products

328 Vitamins

For fish and shark liver oils, see 615 34

329 Antibiotics

[† 33] Other vegetable drugs

Class in 615 32

34 Fish and shark liver oils

35 Ferments (Enzymes)

Including pepsin diastase trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain

615 36 Organotherapy (Endocrinotherapy) [*formerly* *616 4]

Including endocrine drugs, hormones

.362 Thyroid and parathyroid extracts

Including synthetic thyroxin

.363 Anterior pituitary hormones

.364 Adrenal hormones

Including ACTH, cortisone, adrenalin

365 Insulin

.366 Sex hormones

.367 Liver extracts

369 Extracts and secretions of other organs

.37 Serum therapy (Immunotherapy) [*formerly* *616 97]

Treatment or prevention of diseases by injection of vaccines, toxins, antitoxins, specific serums

For allergies, anaphylaxis, see 616 97, *immunization as a public health measure,* 614 47, *in control of a specific disease, the disease e g, diphtheria* 614 512

372 Vaccines

Including bacterins, sero-bacterins

373 Toxins

Including toxoids

375 Antitoxins

Including toxin-antitoxins, convalescent serums

39 Human blood products

.4 **Practical pharmacy**

Preparation, e g, filling prescriptions, and dispensing of drugs

401 5 *Pharmaceutical mathematics*

406 5 Economics of pharmacy

42 Solutions and extracts

Including preparation of decoctions, infusions, tinctures, elixirs, syrups, glycerites, collodions

43 Pills and powders

Including capsules, tablets, troches

615.45 Ointments and emulsions

.49 Other preparations

Including plasters, resins

---

615 5–615 895 Methods of treating diseases

For surgery see 617, *organotherapy,* 615 36, *serum therapy,* 615 37

.5 Therapeutics

53 Systems of medicine

.531 Allopathy

532 Homeopathy

.533 Osteopathy [*formerly* †*615 82]

534 Chiropractic [*formerly* †*615 82]

Including spondylotherapy

535 Naturopathy [*formerly* *615 85]

537 Eclectic medicine

Including botanic and Thomsonian medicine [*both formerly* †615 855, *615 85]

54 Age and therapeutics

542 Pediatric therapeutics

For pediatrics, see 618 92

547 Geriatric therapeutics

For geriatrics, see 618 97

6 Methods of medication

61 Oral medication

62 Rectal medication

Including enemas

63 Parenteral medication

Including subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular intravenous [*formerly* †615 65], *intra arterial injections*

For blood and blood plasma transfusions, see 615 65

64 Inhalatory medication

For anesthetics, see 615 781

615 65 Blood and blood plasma transfusions [*formerly* *616 151]

Class intravenous injections [*formerly* †615 65] in 615 63

650 74 Blood and blood plasma banks [*formerly* *616 151]

66 Medication thru serous and mucous membranes

67 External medication

For hydrotherapy see 615 853

7 Pharmacodynamics

Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs

71 Drugs affecting cardiovascular system [*formerly also* †612 174]

711 Heart stimulants

716 Heart depressants

718 Drugs affecting blood and blood forming organs

Including blood coagulants and anticoagulants

72 Drugs affecting respiratory system

Including expectorants errhines cough remedies

73 Drugs affecting digestive system

731 Emetics

732 Cathartics

Including laxatives purgatives

733 Anthelmintics

734 Digestants

735 Demulcents

74 Drugs affecting secretion

For diuretics and antidiuretics see 615 761

75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)

.76 Drugs affecting urogenital system

761 Drugs affecting urinary system

Including diuretics antidiuretics

766 Drugs affecting reproductive system

77 Drugs affecting the skin

Including astringents counterirritants emollients deodorants antiseptics disinfectants

615 78 Drugs affecting nervous system

For antipyretics, see 615 75

781 Anesthetics

For methods and techniques of administering surgical anesthetics see 617 96

782 Hypnotics

Including depressants [*formerly also* †615 786] narcotics sedatives

783 Analgesics

Including anodynes

784 Antispasmodics

Including mydriatics

785 Stimulants

[† 786] Depressants

Class in 615 782

788 Tranquilizers

8 Physical medicine

[† 811] Bloodletting venesection cupping

Class in 615 89

[† 812] Setons and issues

Class in 617 917 8

[† 813] Bandages and ligatures

Class bandages in 617 93 ligatures in 617 917 8

[† 814] Acupuncture

Class in 615 89

[† 815] Oxygen therapy

Class in 615 836

82 Mechanotherapy

Including massage vibration exercise rest

Class osteopathy in 615 533 chiropractic in 615 534 [both formerly †*615 82]

824 Medical gymnastics

For exercise as a factor in maintaining health, see 613 71

615 83 Physical therapies

For hydrotherapy see 615 853

831 Phototherapy

831 4 Heliotherapy

831 5 Ultraviolet rays as therapy

For infrared rays as therapy see 615 832 2

831 9 Other phototherapies

Including therapeutic use of colored lights

832 Thermotherapy

For diathermy see 615 845 3

832 2 Infrared rays as therapy

832 5 Fever therapy

Including malarial fever therapy

832 9 Cryotherapy (Hypothermia)

Therapeutic application of low temperatures

834 Climatotherapy

836 Aerotherapy

Including oxygen therapy [*formerly* †615 815] pneumatotherapy

837 Music therapy

84 Electrotherapy and radiotherapy

842 Actinotherapy

For phototherapy see 615 831

842 2 X ray therapy

842 3 Radium therapy

842 4 Radioactive isotope therapy

845 Electrotherapy

845 3 Diathermy (Thermopenetration)

85 **Other therapies**

Class naturopathy in 615 535 botanic and Thomsonian medicine in 615 537 [*all formerly* *615 85]

851 Mental therapies

For psychiatric therapies see 616 891

851 2 Suggestion therapy (Hypnotherapy)

615 851 5 Occupational therapy

Includ ng recreational tl erapy

For vocational rehabil tation of physically handicapt see 371 91

.852 Faith healing (Hierotherapy) [*formerly also* †133 94]

853 Hydrotherapy

Includ ng balneotherapy

.854 Dietotherapy [*formerly also* †613 23]

Includ ng vitam n therapy [*formerly* *616 46]

[† 855] Botanic and Thomsonian medicine

Class in 615 537

.856 Quacks and quackery

Including Perkinism

88 Patent medicines

For inspection of patent medicines see 614.35

89 Folk medicine

Including bloodletting venesection cupping [*all formerly* †615 811] acupuncture [*formerly* †615 814] leeching and other primitive ancient, and med eval practices

895 Medical superstitions

9 Toxicology

Source chemical compos tion physiological effects tests antidotes of poisons

For pharmacology see 615 1 *control of sale of poisons* 614 28

902 4 Industrial toxicology

907 5 Detection of poisons and po soning

91 Gaseous poisons

Includ ng asphyx ating gases lethal gases used in war

For chemical warfare serv ces see 358 34 *a r pollution* 614 71

92 Mineral (Inorganic) poisons

For gaseous poisons see 615 91

921 Acidic poisons

615 922 Alkaline poisons

923 Nonmetallic poisons

For acidic poisons see 615 921

924 Phosphorus

925 Saline poisons

926 Arsenical poisons

927 Mercurial poisons

928 Lead poisons

929 Copper poisons

93 Vegetable poisons

Comprehensive works

Class specific vegetable poisons [*formerly* †615 93] in 615 95

94 Animal and food poisons

Composite naturally occurring animal and food poisons

For a specific organic poison e g, formic acid, see 615 95

942 Venoms [*formerly* †612 314]

Including snake scorpion spider bee venoms

944 Food poisons

Including botulism ptomaines

945 Naturally poisonous foods

Including mussels toadstools poisonous fish

95 Organic poisons

Comprehensive works

Including neurotic poisons cerebral spinal, cerebrospinal, cerebrocardiac poisons [*all formerly* †615 96–†615 99]

Arrange alphabetically using A1 for comprehensive works e g, aconite 615 95 A2

For vegetable poisons see 615 93, *animal and food poisons,* 615 94

[† 96–† 99] Cerebral, spinal, cerebrospinal, cerebrocardiac poisons

Class in 615 95

616 Medicine

Comprehensive works on pathology medical and surgical treatment of disease

Including clinical and internal medicine

Class hygiene in 613, control of specific diseases in 614 5 [*both formerly* *616 and its subdivisions]

For surgery see 617, *gynecology and obstetrics* 618 *other medical specialties*, 618 9

SUMMARY

616 01	Medical microbiology
02	Medical manuals
07	Pathology (Pathological physiology and anatomy)
08	Psychosomatic medicine
1	Diseases of cardiovascular system
2	Diseases of respiratory system
3	Diseases of digestive tract
4	Diseases of blood forming lymphatic and endocrine systems
5	Dermatology (Diseases of skin)
6	Diseases of urogenital system
7	Diseases of musculoskeletal system
8	Diseases of nervous system
9	Communicable and other diseases

01 Medical microbiology

Pathogenic microorganisms

For bacteriological examination, see 616 075 81

012 Nosology

Classification of disease

014 Pathogenic bacteria

015 Pathogenic fungi

016 Pathogenic protozoa

019 Other pathogenic microorganisms

Including pathogenic viruses rickettsiae

02 Medical manuals

024 Domestic medicine

Treatment of minor ailments without direction of physician

For first aid, see 614 88

616 07 Pathology (Pathological physiology and anatomy)

Study of structural and functional changes caused by disease

For pathology of a specific part of human body, see treatment of the part, e g, pathological changes in lungs 616 240 7, *surgical pathology,* 617 075 8, *physiological effects of physical agents,* 612 014 4, *teratology,* 611 012, *study and teaching of medicine,* 610 7

072 Symptomatology

Manifestation of diseases

Including headaches, fevers, infections, necrosis (gangrene), atrophies, hypertrophies, edemas

For interpretation of symptoms, see 616 075, *symptoms of a specific disease and of diseases of a specific system or organ, the disease, e g, coronary thrombosis* 616 123, *symptoms of neurological diseases,* 616 84

075 Diagnoses

Interpretation of symptoms

Including prognosis, physical, clinical, differential diagnoses

---

616 075 6–616 075 9 Laboratory diagnosis

075 6 Chemical diagnosis

075 61 Blood analysis

For blood counts, see 612 112

075 66 Urinalysis

075 7 X ray diagnosis (Roentgen diagnosis)

Including fluoroscopic examinations

Class microscopy in diagnosis [*formerly* †616 075 7] in 616 075 8

075 8 Microscopy in diagnosis [*formerly* †616 075 7]

075 81 Bacteriological examinations

075 83 Biopsies

Microscopic study of lesions and tissue changes

Including pathological histology

For autopsies, see 616 075 9

075 9 Autopsies (Post mortem examinations)

616 08 Psychosomatic medicine

Comprehensive works

092 Case histories

---

616 1–616 998 Specific diseases

Including pathology [*formerly* subdivisions of †612 1–†612 89] treatment of diseases of specific systems and organs

Divide each number where applicable like 616 07–616 092 e g case histories on diabetes mellitus 616 460 92

1 Diseases of cardiovascular system

11 Diseases of cardiac membranes

Including pericarditis endocarditis

12 Diseases of heart

122 Angina pectoris

123 Coronary occlusion

Including coronary sclerosis thrombosis infarction

For arterial embolisms and thromboses see 616 135 *venous embolisms and thromboses* 616 145

124 Myocarditis

125 Valvular diseases

Including diseases of the mitral tricuspid pulmonary valves

126 Degenerative heart diseases

Including arteriosclerotic heart disease

For arteriosclerosis see 616 132 *coronary occlusion* 616 123

13 Diseases of arteries

132 Arteriosclerosis

Including essential hypertension

For arteriosclerotic heart disease see 616 126

133 Arterial aneurysms [*formerly* †616 247]

For cerebral aneurysms see 616 81

616 135 Arterial embolisms [*formerly* †616 247] and thromboses

For coronary occlusion, see 616 123, *venous embolisms and thromboses,* 616 145, *cerebral embolisms and thromboses,* 616 81

.14 Diseases of veins and capillaries

.142 Phlebitis

Including thrombophlebitis

.143 Varicose veins (Varix)

145 Venous embolisms and thromboses

For coronary occlusion, see 616 123, *arterial embolisms and thromboses,* 616 135 *cerebral embolisms and thromboses,* 616 81

148 Diseases of capillaries

Including telangiectasis hyperpermeability

15 Diseases of blood

Including anemias hemophilia, agranulocytosis, mononucleosis

Arrange alphabetically by disease, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , pernicious anemia 616 15 P3

Class diseases of lymphatic system in 616 42, of spleen in 616 41 [*both formerly* *616 15]

If preferred, class leukemia in 616 994 018 5

[* 151] Blood transfusions

Class blood transfusions in 615 65, blood banks in 615 650 74

.2 Diseases of respiratory system

Use 616 200 1–616 200 9 for form divisions

Class scrofula [*formerly* *616 2] in 616 995 42

201 Croup

For diphtheria, see 616 931 3

202 Hay fever [*formerly* *616 97]

203 Influenza

Including endemic and epidemic influenza grippe

.204 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

616 205 Common cold (Coryza, rhinitis)

[† 206] Asphyxiation

Class in 617 18

.21 Otorhinolaryngology [*formerly* *617 8]

Including comprehensive works on diseases of eye, ear, nose, larynx

For otology see 617 8, *ophthalmology* 617 7

.212 Rhinology

Diseases of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses

For common cold, see 616 205, *surgery of nose,* 617 523

22 Laryngology

Diseases of larynx, glottis, vocal cords epiglottis

For surgery of throat, see 617 53, *diseases of mouth and throat,* 616 31

23 Diseases of trachea and bronchi

Including trachitis, bronchitis, bronchiectasis

For bronchopneumonia, see 616 241

24 Diseases of lungs

241 Pneumonias

Including lobar, broncho-, pleural, lipoid, virus pneumonias

For necropneumonia, see 616 245

244 Pneumoconiosis

Including silicosis, chalicosis, pulmonary abscesses

245 Necropneumonia

246 Pulmonary tuberculosis

If preferred, class in 616 995 24

[† 247] Embolisms and aneurysms

Class arterial embolisms in 616 135, arterial aneurysms in 616 133

248 Pulmonary emphysema

25 Diseases of pleura

Including pleurisy

For pleural pneumonia, see 616 241

27 Diseases of mediastinum

616 3 Diseases of digestive tract

31 Diseases of mouth and throat

For laryngology see 616 22 *dentistry* 617 6 *diseases of pharynx* 616 32

312 Trench mouth (Vincent s angina)

.313 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

314 Diseases of tonsils

Including quinsy tonsillitis abscest tonsils

32 Diseases of pharynx and esophagus

33 Diseases of stomach

332 Functional disorders of stomach

Including dyspepsia [*formerly* †616 39] disorders of secretion gastric indigestion

333 Gastritis

334 Gastric ulcers

339 Other diseases of stomach

Including merycism gastroenteritis gastroptosis

34 Diseases of intestines

Including diseases of duodenum jejunum appendix ileum colon cecum

Class abdominal hernias [*formerly* †616 34] in 617 559

342 Functional disorders of intestines

Including diarrhea constipation obstructions of intestines

343 Ulcers

Comprehensive works

For gastric ulcers see 616 334

343 2 Peptic ulcers

.343 3 Duodenal ulcers

.343 4 Gastrojejunal ulcers

344 Enteritis

Including ileitis colitis Crohn s disease duodenitis jejunitis

35 Proctology

Diseases of rectum and anus

For surgery of rectum and anus see 617 555

616 36 Diseases of biliary tract

.362 Diseases of liver

.362 3 Hepatitis

.362 4 Cirrhosis

.362 5 Hepatitic jaundice

.365 Diseases of gall bladder and bile ducts

Including gallstones

.37 Diseases of pancreas

For diabetes mellitus, see 616 46

38 Diseases of peritoneum

Including diseases of omentum and mesentery

39 Nutritional and metabolic diseases [*formerly* *616 46]

Including deficiency diseases (avitaminoses)

Class dyspepsia [*formerly* †616 39] in 616 332

For diseases of endocrine system, see 616 4

392 Beriberi

393 Pellagra

394 Scurvy

395 Rickets [*formerly* †616 996]

396 Other deficiency diseases and states

Including emaciation, fatty degeneration

For multiple deficiency states, see 616 399

398 Obesity

Including obesity of endocrine origin

399 Other nutritional and metabolic diseases

Including gout [*formerly* †616 991] multiple deficiency states

.4 Diseases of blood forming, lymphatic, endocrine systems

Class endocrinotherapy [*formerly* *616 4] in 615 36

41 Diseases of blood-forming system

Including diseases of spleen [*formerly* *616 15], bone marrow

For anemias, see 616 15

1642 Diseases of lymphatic system [*formerly* *616 15]

Including Hodgkin's disease

If preferred, class Hodgkin's disease in 616 994 46

616.43–616 48 Endocrinology

For ovarian dysfunctions, see 618.11, *testicular dysfunctions,* 616 68, *obesity,* 616 398

.43 Diseases of thymus gland

.44 Diseases of thyroid and parathyroid glands

.442 Goiter

Including simple, nontoxic and toxic nodular goiter

443 Hyperthyroidism

.444 Hypothyroidism

Including myxedema, cretinism [*both formerly* †616 997]

445 Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism

Including parathyroid tetany

45 Diseases of adrenal glands

Including hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism, Addison's disease

46 Diseases of pancreatic internal secretion

Diseases of islands of Langerhans

Including diabetes mellitus [*formerly* †616 63], hypoglycemia

Class metabolic and nutritional diseases in 616 39 and its subdivisions vitamin therapy in 615 854 [*all formerly* *616 46]

47 Diseases of pituitary glands

Including acromegaly, gigantism, dwarfism, Simmonds' disease

48 Other glandular diseases

Including hyperpinealism, polyglandular disorders

49 Diseases of breast

Including diseases of male mammary glands

For diseases of female breast, see 618 19

616.5 Dermatology (Diseases of skin)

Diseases of integumentary system

Including diseases of nails, hair

For skin surgery, see 617 477

.51 Dermatitis

Class hives [*formerly* 1616 51] in 616 97

.512 Rashes (Urticaria)

Including contact and chemical dermatitis, e g, nettle rash

For allergies, see 616 97, *eruptive fevers,* 616 91

52 Eczema (Herpes)

.522 Shingles (Herpes zoster)

523 Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)

524 Impetigo

.526 Psoriasis

53 Diseases of sebaceous glands

Including acne, blackheads, wens, seborrhea

For diseases of sweat glands, see 616 56

54 Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders

544 Skin hypertrophies

Including corns, callosities, warts (verrucae), kerotosis, ichthyosis scleroderma, xeroderma

.545 Skin ulcerations

Including bedsores (decubitus)

546 Diseases of scalp, hair and hair follicles

Including baldness (alopecia), hair whiteness (leuco trichia), excessive hairiness (hypertrichosis)

547 Diseases of the nails

55 Pigmentary changes

Including albinism, nevi, moles

56 Diseases of sweat glands

Including heat rash, prickly heat, anhidrosis

For diseases of sebaceous glands, see 616 53

616.57 Parasitic skin diseases

Including ringworm, athlete's foot

.58 Skin diseases due to physical agents

Including chilblains, frostbite, chapping

For burns and scalds, see 617.11; heat rash, 616.56

.6 Diseases of urogenital system

Including comprehensive works on diseases of male and female reproductive systems

For gynecology, see 618.1

.61 Diseases of kidneys and ureters

.612 Bright's disease (Nephritis)

.613 Pyelitis

Including pyelocystitis, pyelonephritis

.62 Diseases of bladder and urethra

For diseases of male urethra, see 616.64

.622 Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)

Including renal and vesical calculi

.623 Cystitis

.624 Urethritis

.63 Urinary manifestations

Including enuresis

Class diabetes mellitus [*formerly* †616.63] in 616.46

For enuresis as symptom of neurological disorder, see 616.849

.633 Pyuria

.635 Uremia

616.64–616.699 Diseases of male genital organs

.64 Diseases of male urethra

.65 Diseases of prostate

.66 Diseases of penis

Including phimosis

.67 Diseases of scrotum

.68 Diseases of testicles and accessory organs

616 69 Functional disorders of male genital organs

692 Impotence and sterility

For sterility in women see 618 178

693 Male climacteric disorders

For menopausal disorders see 618 175

699 Other functional disorders of male genital organs

Including spermatorrhea

7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system

71 Diseases of bones

For diseases of spine see 616 73 *of bone marrow* 616 41 *fractures* 617 15 *rickets* 616 395 *orthopedic surgery* 617 3 *dentistry* 617 6

712 Osteitis

Including osteitis deformans osteochronditis periostitis

715 Osteomyelitis

For surgical treatment of osteomyelitis see 617 471

72 Diseases of joints

Including hypertropic and rheumatoid arthritis

For gout see 616 399 *muscular rheumatism* 616 742

73 Diseases of spine

74 Diseases of muscles

742 Muscular rheumatism [*formerly* †616 991]

For arthritis see 616 72 *rheumatic fever* 616 991 *gout* 616 399

743 Myositis

744 Myasthenia gravis

748 Progressive muscular dystrophy

749 Other muscular atrophies

75 Diseases of tendons and fasciae

76 Diseases of bursae and sheaths of tendons

Including bursitis synovitis

77 Diseases of connective tissue (Collagen diseases)

616.8 **Diseases of nervous system**

Including organic and functional diseases

SUMMARY

616 81	Cerebral vascular diseases
82	Meningeal diseases
83	Other organic diseases of central nervous system
84	Symptoms of neurological diseases
85–86	Psychoneuroses
.87	Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves
88	Diseases of autonomic system
89	Psychiatry

616 81–616 838 Organic diseases of central nervous system

For diseases of cranial and spinal nerves, see 616 87, of autonomic nervous system, 616 88, symptoms of neurological diseases, 616 84

81 Cerebral vascular diseases

Cerebral hemorrhages aneurysms embolisms, thromboses

Including apoplexy

For psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis, see 616 898 3, arterial embolisms and thromboses, 616 135, venous embolisms and thromboses, 616 145

82 Meningeal diseases

.83 Other organic diseases of central nervous system

For cerebral vascular diseases see 616 81, meningeal diseases, 616 82 chorea 616 851, epilepsy, 616 853, senile dementia, 616 898 3, alcoholism, 616 861, drug addiction, 616 863

832 Encephalitis

833 Parkinson's disease (Paralysis agitans)

834 Multiple sclerosis

835 Poliomyelitis

836 Cerebral palsy

837 Paraplegia

.838 Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)

616 84 **Symptoms of neurological diseases**

Including symptoms of functional diseases

For cutaneous sensory disorders, see 616 856, *diagnosis of diseases of nervous system,* 616 807 5

.841 Dizziness (Vertigo)

Including essential vertigo, blurred vision

.842 Paralysis

Including Landry's paralysis

For Parkinson's disease, see 616 833, *paresthesia,* 616 856

.843 Chronic fatigue and depression (Asthenic reactions)

Including "neurasthenia"

.844 Spinal irritation

.845 Convulsions

.849 Other symptoms of neurological diseases

Including enuresis, pain, coma, reflex and sleep disturbances

For headaches, see 616 072

.85 **Psychoneuroses**

For psychoses, see 616 89

.851 Chorea

852 Hysteria

Loss or lowering of function

For speech disorders, see 616 855

.852 1 War neuroses

Including shell shock, combat fatigue

.852 2 Obsessive compulsive neuroses

Including phobias, anxiety neuroses

.852 3 Dissociative reactions

Including amnesias, fugues, multiple personalities

.853 Epilepsy

[†.854] Tetanus

Class in 616 931 8

616.855 Speech and language disorders

For education of speech defectives, see 371.927

855.2 Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)

Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its forms due to cerebral lesions

Including agraphia agnosia apraxia

855.4 Psychoneurotic speech disorders

Including stammering stuttering

856 Cutaneous sensory disorders

Including anesthesia paresthesia hypesthesia hyperesthesia

857 Migraine

858 Psychopathic and immature personalities

86 Psychoneuroses due to noxious agents

Class stimulants and narcotics in relation to health [*formerly* *616.86] in 613.8

861 Dipsomania (Alcoholism) [*formerly* †616.893, †616.898.1]

Including pathological intoxication delirium tremens Korsakow's psychosis alcoholic hallucinosis alcoholic polyneuritis

For psychological aspects of alcoholism see 132.72

862 Metallic intoxication

Including neuritis encephalopathy myelopathy due to poisoning from lead manganese arsenic thallium barium and other metallic preparations

863 Drug addictions

Including addictions to opiates cocaine marijuana barbiturates similar habit forming drugs

For psychological aspects of drug addiction see 132.73

87 Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves

Neuritis and neuralgias

Including polyneuritis sciatica neuritis of peripheral nerves trigeminal and glossopharyngeal neuralgias

For herpes zoster see 616.522

88 Diseases of autonomic system

Including diseases of sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

616.89 Psychiatry

Functional diseases (psychoses) of nervous system

For psychoneuroses, see 616.85–616.86; psychological aspects of psychoses, 132.19; puerperal psychoses, 618.76

.891 Psychiatric therapies

Methods of treating mental illness

For psychosurgery, see 617.481; mental therapies, 615.851; psychoanalysis, 131.34; therapeutic counseling, 131.322; music therapy, 615.837; hypnotism, 134

.891 2 Shock therapy

Use of metrazol, electricity, insulin and similar agents in treating psychoses

.891 3 Physical therapy

Treatment of psychoses by physical means, e.g., hydrotherapy

For use of electricity in shock therapy, see 616.891 2

.891 5 Group therapy

Including psychodrama

.891 6 Bibliotherapy

Including educational therapy

.891 8 Chemotherapy

Use of rauwolfia, paraldehyde, chlorpromazine and similar medication in treating psychoses

For use of metrazol and insulin in shock therapy, see 616.891 2

.892 General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

[†.893] Alcoholism

Class in 616.861

.895 Manic-depressive psychoses

Including neurotic-depressive reactions, manic and circular types

.895 7 Involutional psychoses

.897 Paranoia and paranoid conditions

.898 Schizophrenia and senile dementias

[†.898 1] Alcoholism

Class in 616.861

616 898 2 Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)

898 3 Senile dementias

Including psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis

For cerebral vascular diseases, see 616 81

.9 **Communicable and other diseases**

Including fevers, infectious diseases

For communicable diseases affecting a specific part of the body, see diseases of the part, e g , mumps 616 313

SUMMARY

616 91	Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)
92	Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases
93	Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections
94	Symptoms of toxemia
.942	*Erysipelas*
95	Venereal and zoogenous diseases
96	Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)
97	Allergies and anaphylaxis
98	Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions
99	Other diseases

91 Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)

For dengue fever, see 616 921, *typhus,* 616 922 2, *typhoid fever,* 616 927 2, *cerebrospinal meningitis,* 616 82, *glanders,* 616 954, *erysipelas,* 616 942, *diseases of skin,* 616 5

912 Smallpox (Variola major)

913 Attenuated forms of smallpox

Including human vaccinia ("cowpox"), parasmallpox (*alastrim amaas*) Cuban itch, Kaffir milkpox

914 Chickenpox (Varicella)

915 Measles (Rubeola)

916 German measles (Rubella)

917 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

92 Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases

.921 Dengue fever

616 922 Rickettsial infections

922 2 Typhus group

Including classic epidemic (louse borne) typhus, murine (flea borne) typhus, Brill s disease

922 3 Spotted fever group

Including Rocky Mountain spotted fever boutonneuse fever, tick bite fevers of South Africa, India, Russia rickettsialpox

For tick borne viral infections see 616 924

922 4 Scrub typhus (Tsutsugamushi disease)

Japanese river fever

922 5 Q fever

922 6 Other rickettsial infections

Including trench fever, Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus

923 Pasteurella infections

923 2 Plague

Including bubonic plague

923 9 Tularemia

924 Tick borne viral infections

For rickettsial infections see 616 922 *tularemia,* 616 923 9, *lymphocytic choriomeningitis,* 616 925

924 2 Tick fever (Colorado tick fever)

American mountain fever, nonexanthematous tick fever

924 4 Relapsing fevers

Including bacterial and spirochetal relapsing fevers

925 Lymphocytic choriomeningitis

927 Eberthella and salmonella infections

927 2 Typhoid fever

927 4 Paratyphoid fever

927 9 Other salmonella infections

Including salmonella fever salmonella gastroenteritis

928 Yellow fever

616 93 Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections

931 Bacillary intoxications

931 3 Diphtheria

931 5 Botulism

931 8 Lockjaw (Tetanus) [*formerly* †616 854 †617 27]

932 Enteric infections

For typhoid fever see 616 927 2

932 2 Asian cholera

Pestilential cholera

933 European cholera

Sporadic cholera

Including cholera morbus

[† 934] Cholera infantum

Class in 618 929 34

935 Dysenteries

935 3 Amoebic dysentery (Amoebiasis)

935 5 Bacillary dysentery (Shigella infections)

936 Protozoan infections

For amoebic dysentery, see 616 935 3

936 2 Malarial fevers

Including blackwater fever

936 3 Trypanosomiasis

Including Gambian and Rhodesian trypanosomiasis Chagas disease, African sleeping sickness

936 4 Leishmaniasis

Including visceral leishmaniasis (kala azar) cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores) mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (forest yaws)

94 Symptoms of toxemia

Including septicemia pyemia phagedena

942 Erysipelas

95 Venereal and zoogenous diseases

For tetanus see 616 931 8 tularemia 616 923 9 parasitic diseases 616 96

616 951 Venereal diseases

951 3 Syphilis

For neurosyphilis see 616 892

952 Gonorrhea

952 3 Other venereal diseases

Including chancroid lymphadenoma inguinale lymphogranuloma venereum

953 Rabies

954 Glanders (Equinia)

956 Anthrax (Charbon)

Woolsorters disease splenic fever

957 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

Malta fever continued fever Cyprus fever Bruce s septicemia

958 Psittacosis

Parrot fever

96 Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)

For parasitic skin diseases see 616 57

961 Diseases due to animal parasites

For disease carriers see 614 43 *protozoan infections* 616 936 *amoebic dysentery* 616 935 3 *zoogenous dis eases* 616 95

962 Diseases due to endoparasites

Including human helminthology

963 Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)

Including schistosomiasis bilharziasis distomatosis

964 Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)

Including tapeworm infestations hyatid diseases (echinococcosis)

965 Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)

965 2 Diseases due to filariae

Including filariasis elephantiasis wuchereriasis onchocerciasis

965 4 Diseases due to other nematodes

Includ ng trichinosis enterobiasis ascariasis hookworm infestations

616 968 Diseases due to ectoparasites (Medical entomology)

Comprehensive works

For a specific entomological disease, see the disease, e g , Colorado tick fever 616 924 2

969 Diseases due to fungi (Medical mycology)

For ringworm, athlete's foot, see 616 57

97 Allergies and anaphylaxis

Including hives [*formerly* †616 51], urticaria, congestion of nasopharyngeal areas

Class immunology in 615 37, hay fever in 616 202 [*both formerly* *616 97]

973 Contact allergies

975 Food and drug allergies

977 Physical allergies

Supersensitivity to physical agents, e g , heat, sunlight, cold, humidity

98 Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions

For accidental wounds and injuries, see 617 1

980 2 Medical aspects of specialized services

980 21 Aviation medicine [*formerly* †629 132 56]

For motion sickness, see 616 989 2, *altitude sickness,* 616 989 3, *otitis media,* 617 84

980 22 Submarine medicine

For caisson disease see 616 989 4, *drowning* 617 18

980 23 Military medicine [*formerly* *356 92]

For treatment of a specific disease see the disease, e g , war neuroses 616 852 1, *military medical services,* 355 345

980 24 Naval medicine

For treatment of a specific disease, see the disease, e g , seasickness 616 989 2

988 Medical climatology [*formerly* †614 42] and meteorology

Divide like 631 091, e g , tropical medicine 616 988 3

For medical geography, see 614 42

616 989 Diseases due to physical conditions

.989 2 Motion sickness

Including airsickness, seasickness, car sickness

.989 3 Altitude sickness

Including anoxemia, mountain sickness, alpine sickness

989 4 Caisson disease

Including diver's palsy, decompression disease

.99 Other diseases

991 Rheumatic fever

Class muscular rheumatism in 616.742, gout in 616 399 [*both formerly* †616 991]

For arthritis, see 616 72

992 Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases

993 Benign neoplasms

For benign neoplasms of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e g, warts 616 544, surgical treatment, surgery of the system or organ, e g, surgical removal of skin tumors 617 477

994 Malignant neoplasms

Cancers, carcinomas, sarcomas

Including surgery

Divide like 611, e g, cancer of the stomach 616 994 33

For leukemia, see 616 15, *Hodgkin's disease,* 616 42

.995 Tuberculosis

Divide like 611, e g, tuberculosis of the bones 616 995 71, scrofula [*formerly* †616 996, *616 2] 616 995 42

For pulmonary tuberculosis, see 616 246

[† 996] Scrofula, rickets

Class scrofula in 616 995 42, rickets in 616 395

[† 997] Myxedema, cretinism

Class in 616 444

998 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

617 Surgery

Treatment of disease by manual and instrumental operations

For surgical gynecology see 618 1, obstetrical surgery 618 8, cancer surgery, 616 994

SUMMARY

617 1	Accidental wounds and injuries
2	Results of injuries
3	Orthopedic surgery
4	Surgical operations by systems
5	Regional surgery
6	Dentistry
7	Ophthalmology
.8	Otology
9	Techniques and other surgical specialties

075 Surgical diagnosis

Including physical examination of surgical patients

075 8 Surgical pathology

Description of disorders requiring surgery

1 Accidental wounds and injuries

For first aid treatment of wounds and injuries see 614 88, military surgery 617 99

11 Burns and scalds

For electrical burns see 617 12, radiation burns 617 124

12 Injuries from electricity

Including electrical shock and burns lightning stroke

124 Injuries from radioactive substances

Including radiation burns

13 Abrasions

Including bruises contusions crushing

14 Lacerations and incisions

Including stabbing cutting puncture and infected wounds

145 Gunshot wounds

146 Removal of foreign bodies from wounds

15 Fractures

Divide like 611 71 e g fracture of the femur 617 158

16 Dislocations

617.17 Sprains and strains

.18 Asphyxiation [*formerly also* †616 206]

Choking, hanging, strangulation, suffocation, drowning

Including artificial respiration

.19 Blast injuries

.2 Results of injuries

Including infections, necrosis, fevers resulting from injuries

.21 Shock

Including traumatic and surgical shock

For first aid in shock treatment, see 614 88

[†.27] Tetanus

Class in 616 931 8

.3 Orthopedic surgery

Correction of deformities, surgical treatment of chronic diseases of skeletal system

For fractures, see 617 15, *surgery of motor and integumentory systems* 617 47

307 8 Orthopedic appliances [*formerly* †617 92]

[† 31] Congenital anomalies

Class in 611 012

[† 32] Harelip

Class in 617 953 1

[† 33–† 35] Coalescence of parts, extension of commissures, Siamese twins

Class in 611 012

[† 36] Supernumerary organs

Class supernumerary fingers in 617 397, supernumerary toes in 617 398

37 Deformities

Surgical treatment of acquired and congenital deformities

For deformities caused by osteomyelitis, see 617 471

371 Head and neck

374 Chest

375 Spine

617.376 Hip and pelvis

.39 Extremities

For amputations, see 617 57

.397 Upper extremities

Including surgical removal of supernumerary fingers [*formerly* †617 36]

.398 Lower extremities

Including surgical removal of supernumerary toes [*formerly* †617 36], orthopedic treatment of clubfeet, hallux valgus and varus, hammer toes

For chiropody, see 617.585

.4 Surgical operations by systems

41 Cardiovascular system

.412 Heart

.413 Arteries

.414 Veins

[†.42] Respiratory system

Class in 617 54

43 Digestive system

Comprehensive works only

For surgical treatment of a specific organ of the digestive tract, see the organ, e.g , surgery of stomach 617 553

44 Endocrine glands

Comprehensive works only

For surgical treatment of a specific gland, see region in which gland is located, e g , thyroid gland 617 539 5

.46 Urogenital system

Including comprehensive works on male and female systems

For surgical treatment of female genital tract, see 618 1

461 Kidneys

Including suprarenal glands, ureters

462 Bladder

Including urethra

.463 Male genital organs

617.47 Motor and integumentary systems

For amputations, see 617 57

.471 Bones

Including surgical treatment of deformities caused by osteomyelitis

.472 Joints

Including surgical treatment of shoulder joint, elbow, wrist, hip joint, knee, ankle

For surgical treatment of jaws, see 617 522

.473 Muscles

Including surgical treatment of deformities caused by poliomyelitis, cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophy

.474 Tendons

475 Bursae

477 Skin

Including surgical removal of skin tumors

For plastic surgery, see 617 95

48 Nervous system (Neurosurgery)

481 Brain

Including psychosurgery, topectomy

482 Spinal cord

483 Nerves

.5 Regional surgery

51 Head and neck

Comprehensive works only

For surgery of neck, see 617 539

514 Skull

Including trephining

For brain surgery see 617 481, *skull fractures,* 617 154

52 Face

For surgical treatment of eyes see 617 7, *of ears,* 617 8, *plastic surgery,* 617 95

.522 Oral surgery [*formerly* *617 6]

Including surgical treatment of lips, palate, jaws

For dental surgery, see 617 64

617 523 Nose

53 Throat

Including surgery of nose and throat

For surgery of nose, see 617 523

532 Pharynx and tonsils

Including adenoidectomies

533 Larynx vocal cords epiglottis trachea

539 Neck

539 5 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

54 Thorax

Including surgery of respiratory system [*formerly* †617 42] thoracic cavity

For surgery of heart see 617 412 of nose 617 523 of throat 617 53

542 Lungs

543 Pleura

544 Bronchi

545 Mediastinum

546 Thymus gland

548 Esophagus

549 Thoracic surface

Including surgery of male breast comprehensive works on surgery of breast

For diseases of female breast see 618 19 cancer of breast 616 994 49

55 Abdominal and pelvic [*formerly* †617 56] cavities

For surgical treatment of bladder see 617 462 of male genital organs, 617 463 of female genital organs 618 1

551 Spleen

553 Stomach

554 Intestines

554 1 Small intestines

Including duodenum jejunum ileum

554 5 Cecum and vermiform appendix

617 554 7 Large intestines

554 8 Colon

555 Rectum and anus

556 Biliary system

Including surgery of liver gall bladder (gallstones) bile ducts

557 Pancreas

558 Peritoneum

Including mesentery omentum pleuroperitoneal cavity

559 Abdominal hernias [*formerly* †616 34]

[† 56] Pelvic cavity

Class in 617 55

57 Extremities

Including amputation [*formerly* †617 94] excisions artificial limbs

For correction of deformities of extremities see 617 39 *fractures* 617 15

577 Upper extremities

58 Lower extremities

585 Podiatry

Including care of feet fitting corrective shoes

6 Dentistry

Including general dental practice

Class oral surgery [*formerly* *617 6] in 617 522

601 Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry

Including theories

601 8 Dental asepsis and antisepsis

606 95 Dental technicians

[† 61–† 62] Diseases of dental pulp dentine cementum

Class in 617 634

617.63 Dental diseases

Diseases of teeth and supporting structure and their medicinal treatment

For dental surgery, see 617.64

.632 Periodontics

Diseases of gums, tooth sockets

Including alveolar abscesses, pyorrhea, gingivitis, periodontitis

.634 Diseases of tooth tissues

Diseases of dental pulp [*formerly* †617.61], dentine, cementum [*both formerly* †617.62], enamel

Including dental caries

For preparation and treatment of cavities, see 617.67

.64 Dental surgery

.643 Orthodontics

Disorders of occlusion, dentition, and their treatment

.645 Pedodontics

Comprehensive works on dental surgery for children

For orthodontics, see 617.643

.66 Exodontics

Extraction of teeth

.67 Cavities

Preparation and treatment

.675 Fillings and inlays

Including amalgam, metallic, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays

.69 Prosthetic dentistry

Artificial teeth

Including full and partial dentures, crowns, fixt and removable bridges

.695 Dental materials

Including dental metallurgy and ceramics, impressions, casts

For materials used in fillings and inlays, see 617.675

617.7 Ophthalmology

Diseases of eyes refractive errors, and their treatment

Class manufacture of spectacles in 681 411, of spectacle frames in 681 43 [*both formerly* *617 7]

701 Preventive ophthalmology

Hygiene of eyes and theories of sight preservation

For orthoptics, see 617 762 2

71 Ophthalmic pathology [*formerly also* †612 845] and surgery

Class diseases of conjunctiva [*formerly* †617 71] in 617 77

For pathology and surgery of a specific region of the eye, see the region, e g, crystalline lens 617 742

712 Blindness

Including amaurosis, amblyopia, partial blindness

713 Ophthalmic wounds and injuries

719 Diseases of cornea and sclera

Including corneal transplantation

719 074 Eye banks

72 Diseases of uvea

Including diseases of iris choroid, ciliary body

73 Diseases of retina and optic nerve

Including detachment of retina, retinitis, choked disc papillitis

74 Diseases of eyeball

Including glaucoma, enucleation

For diseases of a specific part of the eyeball see the part, e g, cornea 617 719

742 Diseases of crystalline lens

Including cataracts

746 Diseases of vitreous body

617 75 Optometry

Including setting and adjusting spectacles [*formerly* †681 44] and mechanical work of opticians

755 Disorders of refraction and accommodation

Correction of functional disorders [*formerly also* †152 15] e g myopia hypermetropia astigmatism presbyopia

758 Aniseikonia

759 Color blindness

76 Diseases of ocular muscular and lacrimal mechanisms

762 Diseases of ocular neuromuscular mechanism

Including strabismus binocular imbalance, diplopia

762 2 Orthoptics

764 Diseases of lacrimal glands and ducts

Including obstructions of lacrimonasal duct dacryocystitis

77 Diseases of conjunctiva [*formerly* †617 71] and eyelids

772 Trachoma

773 Conjunctivitis other than trachoma

78 Diseases of orbit

79 Prosthetic ophthalmology

8 Otology

Diseases of ears and their treatment

Including wounds injuries

Class otorhinolaryngology [*formerly* *617 8] in 616 21

81 Diseases of external ear

For diseases of tympanic membrane see 617 85

82 Auricle

For plastic surgery of ears see 617 958 5

83 Auditory canal

Including treatment of impacted earwax

.84 Diseases of middle ear

Including otitis media

.85 Tympanic membrane

617 86 Eustachian tubes

87 Mastoid processes

88 Diseases of internal ear

Diseases of cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule

Including otosclerosis fenestration operations

89 Deafness

Including pathology [*formerly also* †612 858 77], deaf mutism hard of hearing

For training of deaf, see 371 912, *service to deaf,* 362 42

890 78 Hearing aids

.9 Techniques and other surgical specialties

91 Operative surgery

Including techniques of making incisions, tying knots suturing

For anesthesiology, see 617 96 *surgical dressings* 617 93

910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis in surgery

917 Operating room equipment

Including preparation of operating room

917 8 Surgical instruments and apparatus

Including setons, issues, sutures [*all formerly* †615 812], ligatures [*formerly* †615 813], needles, retractors forceps, clamps

919 Preoperative and postoperative care

[† 92] Orthopedic appliances

Class in 617 307 8

93 Surgical dressings

Including bandages [*formerly* †615 813], adhesive plasters and their application

[† 94] Amputation

Class in 617 57

617 95 **Plastic surgery (Restorative surgery)**

Including cosmetic surgery, tissue grafting

Divide like 611 e g, otoplasty 617 958 5 harelip [*formerly* †617 32] 617 953 1

950 74 Tissue banks

Including bone and organ banks

For eye banks see 617 719 074

96 **Anesthesiology**

Methods and techniques of administering surgical anesthetics management of anesthesia

Including preoperative sedation operative risks of anesthesia equipment and apparatus

For anesthetics see 615 781

962 General anesthesia

Including inhalation rectal intravenous anesthesia

964 Regional anesthesia

Including spinal and caudal anesthesia

966 Local anesthesia

97 **Geriatric surgery**

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area see the area e g removal of cataracts 617 742

98 **Pediatric surgery**

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area see the area, e.g, removal of tonsils 617 532

99 **Military surgery**

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area see the area e g brain surgery 617 481

618 Gynecology, obstetrics, other medical specialties

Class physiology of pregnancy [*formerly* *618] in 612 63

1 **Gynecology**

Including surgical gynecology

For cancer of genital tract see 616 994 65

11 Diseases of ovaries

618 12 Diseases of Fallopian tubes

13 Periuterine diseases

14 Diseases of uterus and cervix

For leucorrhea see 618 173

142 Infections

Including cervicitis endometritis pyometra

143 Erosions

144 Malformations

Including atrophies hypertrophies prolapse of uterus

145 Surgical therapeutics

For Caesarean section see 618 86

145 3 Hysterectomies

145 8 Dilation and curettage

15 Diseases of vagina

16 Diseases of vulva

Including diseases of Bartholin s glands clitoris hymen labia majora and minora

17 Functional and systemic disorders

172 Menstruation disorders

Including amenorrhea menorrhagia dysmenorrhea oligomenorrhea

173 Leucorrhea

175 Menopause disorders

178 Female sterility

Including comprehensive works on sterility

For male sterility see 616 692

19 Diseases of female breast

For cancer of breast see 616 994 49 *diseases of lactation* 618 71

2 Obstetrics

[† 21] Physiology of pregnancy

Class in 612 63

22 Examination and diagnosis

Including signs and symptoms of pregnancy diagnostic tests

618 24 Prenatal care

Including hygiene and management of pregnancy

.25 Multiple pregnancy

.3 Diseases of pregnancy

Including toxemias

.31 Extrauterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)

Including tubal, ovarian, cervical, abdominal pregnancies

.32 Fetal abnormalities

Including molar pregnancy (degeneration of fetus) [*formerly* †618.39], lithopedion (calcified fetus)

33 Fetal deaths and stillbirths [*formerly* †618 39]

Including retention of fetus

For spontaneous abortion, see 618 39

.39 Miscarriage (Spontaneous abortion)

Class molar pregnancy in 618 32, stillbirths in 618 33 [*both formerly* †618 39]

For therapeutic abortion, see 618 88

.4 Normal labor (Parturition)

Mechanism and management of normal labor and childbirth

Including natural childbirth

Class physiology of parturition [*formerly* †618 4] in *612 63*

42 Presentations

Position of fetal body during labor

Including longitudinal and transverse presentations

.45 Anesthesia and analgesia in obstetrics

Including induced amnesia, twilight sleep

For anesthesia and analgesia in obstetrical surgery, see 618 895

.5 Complicated labor (Dystocia)

51 Maternal dystocia

Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces, mechanical obstructions [*formerly* †618 52], e g , narrow pelvis rigid cervix

[† 52] Mechanical obstructions

Class in 618 51

618 53 Fetal dystocia

Difficult labor due to size of fetus

For placental dystocia see 618 56

54 Uterine hemorrhage

For postpartum hemorrhage, see 618 77

56 Placental dystocia

Including placenta previa

58 Complications from umbilical cord

Including prolapse of cord

6 Normal puerperium

Postpartum management and care

For care of newborn infants see 618 920 1

7 Puerperal diseases

71 Diseases of lactation

Including pathology [*formerly also* †612 664 6] stagnation mastitis galactedema

72 Puerperal infections

.73 Puerperal metritis and peritonitis

.74 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia

75 Puerperal eclampsia

76 Puerperal psychoses

77 Hemic disorders

Including postpartum hemorrhage phlebitis thrombosis

For hemorrhage during labor see 618 54

78 Other puerperal disorders

79 Maternal death

8 Obstetrical operations (Obstetrical surgery)

81 Applications of lever and forceps

For use of instruments in a specific operation see the subject e g use of obstetrical forceps in extraction 618 82

620 Engineering

01 Statistics

02 Quantities costs estimates

03 Contracts and specifications

04 Designs and drawings

For mechanical drawing see 744 422

07 Laws and regulations

08 Engineering patents

09 Reports and surveys

For engineering establishments see 620 65

1 Engineering mechanics and materials

Including applied mechanics

Use 620 100 1–620 100 9 for form divisions

For mechanical engineering see 621 structural engineering 624 1

SUMMARY

620 101	Vibration in engineering
102	Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)
11	Strength of materials
112 9	Other engineering properties
12	Wood
13	Masonry materials
14	Ceramic and allied materials
15	Masonry adhesives
16	Metals and their alloys
17	Iron steel and their alloys
18	Nonferrous metals and their alloys
19	Other engineering materials

---

620 101–620 112 9 Fields of applied mechanics

For science of flight see 629 132 automatic control engineering, 629 8 air-conditioning engineering 697 9

101 Vibration in engineering

Calculation measurement effects suppression of mechanical vibration

620 102 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)

Including comprehensive works on acoustical designing, noise control thru acoustical countermeasures, applied ultrasonics

For theoretical acoustics, see 534, *electronic and electric communication engineering,* 621 38, *soundproofing a specific structure, the subject, e g , airplanes* 629 134 42, *a specific application of ultrasonics, the subject, e g , in dentistry* 617 6

.11 Strength of materials [*formerly also* †539 4]

Stresses, deformations resulting from forces acting on materials

For strength of specific materials, see 620 12–620 199, *structural analysis,* 624 171

.112 Specific tests of strength of materials

Comprehensive works

Including testing methods

For tests of strength of a specific material, see the subject, e g , deformation of iron and steel 620 173

112 1 Effect of temperature on strength

112 2 Deterioration and deterioration tests

Including deterioration rates resistance to and protective measures against corrosion, weathering, deterioration of materials

112 3 Elastic limit and elastic limit tests

Including tests of elasticity, proportional limit, plasticity, mechanical deformation, fatigue, yield point, photoelasticity

112 4 Other stress measurements

Including tests for tensile, compressive, shearing, torsional stresses

112 5 Impact and impact tests

Including tests of rigidity and repeated shock

112 6 Hardness and hardness tests [*formerly also* †539 53]

620 112 8 Tests of strength on specific shapes and forms

Including tests of structural forms

112 82 Plates and beams

Including bars, rods, angles

112 83 Columns and tubes

Including cylinders, pipes

112 84 Rollers and ball bearings

Including roller bearings, hollow and solid spheres

112 85 Springs

112 86 Hooks, chains, rings

112 87 Fasteners

Including rivets, bolts, screws, nails

112 88 Wires, cables hawsers

.112 9 Other engineering properties of materials

Including ductility malleability [*formerly* †539 51–†539 52], thermal, optical acoustical, electrical, magnetic properties

---

620 12–620 199 Specific engineering materials

Including engineering properties and tests

For selection, deterioration preservation of building construction materials, see 691, *design in kinds of material* 624 18

.12 Wood

13 Masonry materials

Including artificial masonry materials

For masonry adhesives see 620 15, *brick, tile, terra cotta,* 620 14

.132 Stone

135 Cement

.136 Concrete

137 Reinforst concrete

14 Ceramic and allied materials

For ceramic and allied industries, see 666, *ceramic arts,* 738

142 Brick, tile, terra cotta

620 144 Glass

.15 Masonry adhesives

.16 Metals [*formerly* †*620 18] and their alloys

Comprehensive works

Divide like 620 112, e g, mechanical deformation of metals 620 163

For properties and tests of iron, steel and their alloys, see 620 17, *of nonferrous metals and their alloys,* 620 18

17 Iron, steel and their alloys

Including chrome steel stainless steel

Divide like 620 112, e g, mechanical deformation of steel alloys 620 173

18 Nonferrous metals and their alloys

Class comprehensive works on metals [*formerly* †*620 18] in 620 16

182 Copper and its alloys

Including brass, bronze, Muntz metal, phosphor bronze, gun metal, copper aluminum alloys, copper beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze

For aluminum copper alloys, see 620 186, *Babbitt metal,* 620 185, *Monel metal, German silver,* 620 188

183 Lead and its alloys

Including antimonial lead

184 Zinc and its alloys

Including spelter, die-casting alloys

For German silver, see 620 188

185 Tin and its alloys

Including Babbitt metal

For bronze, see 620 182

.186 Aluminum and its alloys

Including Duralumin®, aluminum-copper alloys

For copper aluminum alloys, see 620 182, *magnesium-aluminum alloys,* 620 187

187 Magnesium and its alloys

Including magnesium aluminum alloys magnesium aluminum manganese alloys (Dow metal®)

620.188 Nickel and its alloys

Including Monel metal®, Inconel®, German silver

189 Other nonferrous metals and their alloys

Including ferroalloying metals and their alloys

For nickel and its alloys, see 620.188

19 Other engineering materials

For soil mechanics, see 624.151

.192 Plastics

Including engineering laminates

194 Natural and synthetic rubber

195 Insulating materials

Including rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth

196 Bituminous materials

Including asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar

199 Adhesives

Including glues, cementing agents

For engineering laminates, see 620.192, *masonry adhesives,* 620.15

.2 Handbooks and outlines

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

.4 Essays and lectures

.5 Periodicals

6 Organizations and societies

.7 Study and teaching

8 Collections

83 Tables and formulas

For statistics, see 620.01

84 Audio-visual aids

For designs and drawings, see 620.04

9 History and local treatment

621 Mechanical engineering

Class manufacture of industrial measuring instruments [*formerly* *621] in 681 12

For a specific branch of mechanical engineering see the subject, e g motor vehicle engineering 629 2

SUMMARY

621 01	Engineering thermodynamics
1	Steam power engineering
.2	Hydraulic-power engineering
3	Electrical engineering
4	Prime movers
47	Solar engineering
48	Nuclear engineering
5	Pneumatic machinery and mechanical refrigeration
6	Fans blowers, pumps
7	Factory engineering
8	Mechanical power transmission machinery and related equipment
9	Tools

01 Engineering thermodynamics

For a specific application of thermodynamics see the subject, e g heat engines 621 4 *thermodynamics of steam* 621 101

1 Steam power engineering

101 Thermodynamic properties of steam

11 Steam engines

For portable steam engines see 621 15 *stationary steam engines* 621 16 *steam pumps* 621 197 3 *a specific application, the subject e g steam locomotive engines* 621 134

[† 12] Marine steam engines

Class in 623 872 2

13 *Steam locomotive engineering [formerly *625 26]*

132 Types of steam locomotives

Including Whyte nomenclature for wheel arrangement

133 Locomotive boilers [*formerly* †621 184 23, *621 184]

Including auxiliary parts fuel and fuel consumption feed water treatment

621 134 Steam locomotive engines

Including steam mechanical steam-electric locomotives

134 3 Reciprocating steam engines for locomotives

134 6 Steam turbines for locomotives

135 Running gear

136 Tenders

.139 Other parts of steam locomotives

14 Steam tractors and rollers

Including boilers [*formerly* †621 184 23 *621 184]

15 Portable steam engines

Including boilers [*formerly* †621 184 23 *621 184]

For a specific application of portable steam engines see the subject e g fire engines 621 68

16 Stationary steam engines

Including boilers [*formerly* †621 184 24 *621 184]

For a specific application of stationary steam engines, see the subject e g steam elevators 621 877

164 Reciprocating steam engines

Including simple compound triple-expansion quadruple expansion steam engines

165 Steam turbines

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of steam turbines see the subject e g locomotives 621 134 6

165 1 Theoretic and mathematical aspects

Including efficiency calculations steam rate calorimetric and thermodynamic factors

165 2 Specific types of steam turbines

Including impulse single stage impulse velocity compounded, pressure-compounded reaction turbines

165 3 Design and construction of steam turbines

Including design and construction of component parts

166 Other steam engines

Including rotary eolipile aerosteam cycloidal steam engines

621.18 Steam generation and transmission

For steam heating see 697 5

.182 Fuels and fuel consumption

Fuels for boiler furnaces

Including fuel efficiency

For fuel technology, see 662 6

183 Boiler furnaces

Comprehensive works

For boilers in a specific heating system, see the system, e g, hot water heating 697 4

.183 6 Mechanical stokers

.183 8 Draft appliances

Natural draft appliances, forst-draft appliances

Including stacks, chimneys, flues, dampers

.184 Boilers (Steam generators)

Class firing boilers in 621 194, locomotive boilers in 621 133, boilers for steam tractors in 621 14, for portable steam engines in 621 15, for stationary steam engines in 621 16 [*all formerly* *621 184]

184 1 Theoretic and mathematical aspects

Including boiler economy, calorimetric and thermodynamic factors

184 2 Specific types of boilers

Including internally and externally fired fire-tube boilers water tube boilers, natural and forst circulation boilers, horizontal, semivertical, vertical boilers

[† 184 22] Marine boilers

Class in 623 873

[† 184 23] Locomotive, traction portable boilers

Class locomotive boilers in 621 133, boilers for steam tractors and rollers in 621 14, portable boilers in 621 15

[† 184 24] Stationary boilers

Class in 621 16

184 5 *Design and construction of boilers*

Including maintenance, repairs inspection

For operation of boilers, see 621 194

621 184 7 Boiler accessories

Including gauges valves steam collectors

185 Steam circulation

Including steam pipes safety valves pressure regulators insulation of steam systems

19 Central steam power plants

194 Operation of boilers

Including firing [*formerly* *621 184] feeding of boilers

194 3 Feed water treatment

Including scale prevention [*formerly* †621 194 4] purification and softening of feed water

For feed water appliances see 621 197 2

[† 194 4] Scale prevention

Class in 621 194 3

197 Steam plant accessories

197 2 Feed water appliances

Including feed water heaters economizers steam accumulators

For feed-water treatment, see 621 194 3

197 3 Steam traps

Including pumping traps lift traps, boiler feed return traps steam pumps

197 4 Steam separators

197 5 Steam superheaters

197 6 Steam condensers and cooling towers

197 7 Steam plant instruments

Including steam calorimeters indicators and gauges for pressure and temperature

2 Hydraulic-power engineering

For steam power engineering see 621 1 *hydraulic engineering* 627 *water supply engineering* 628 1 *mechanics of liquids* 532 1

.21 Water wheels

22 Overshot wheels

.23 Undershot wheels

621 24 Hydraulic turbines

For steam turbines see 621 165

25 Hydraulic engines

For steam engines see 621 11

252 Hydraulic pumps

254 Hydraulic accumulators

26 Hydraulic machinery and appliances

Comprehensive works

For a specific hydraulic machine or appliance see the subject e g Hydraulic elevators 621 877

27 Hydraulic rams

Including lifting pumping compressing rams

3 Electrical engineering

SUMMARY

621 31	Generation of electricity
32	Electric lighting
33	Electric traction
35	Electric batteries
37	Electrical measurements
38	Electronic and electric communication engineering
39	Other branches of electrical engineering

300 1 Statistics on electric-power production

300 2 Estimates and costs of electric power production

300 23 Rates for electric power

300 3 Contracts and specifications for electric power production

300 4 Designs and drawings of electrical circuits

Including wiring diagrams

300 7 Laws and regulations on electric installations

Including underwriter requirements [*formerly* †621 328 1 *621 328]

300 8 Electrical engineering patents

300 9 Electrical engineering reports

621 31 Generation of electricity

SUMMARY

.312 Plants for electric-power generation

312 13 Central stations for electric power

Comprehensive works

For nuclear power plants for electricity, see 621 481, central stations for electric lighting only, 621.312 2, for electric traction only, 621 312 3

312 132 Steam-driven central stations

For steam turbines, see 621 165

312 133 Internal combustion-engine driven central stations

Including central stations driven by diesel engines, gas turbines

For internal combustion engines, see 621 43

312 134 Hydroelectric central stations

Including stations using tidal power

For dam engineering, see 627 8, hydraulic turbines, 621 24

.312 136 Wind driven electric plants

.312 2 Central stations for electric lighting

Divide like 621 312 13, e g, hydroelectric central stations for lighting 621 312 24

For electric lighting, see 621 32

.312 3 Central stations for electric traction

For electric traction, see 621 33

.312 6 Electric substations

621.313 Dynamoelectric machinery

For transmission systems, see 621 319 1

313 1 Construction and installation

Including maintenance, testing of electric generating machinery

.313 2 Direct-current machinery

Including dynamos, dynamotors, direct current motors, converters, compensators, boosters

.313 3 Alternating-current machinery

313 32 Polyphase machinery

For polyphase induction motors, see 621 313 6

.313 4 Synchronous machinery

Including synchronous generators and motors, alternating current generators

For synchronous converters, see 621 313 5

.313 5 Alternating current converters

Conversion of alternating current to direct current

Including synchronous converters, phase converters, frequency converters motor converters

For rectifiers, see 621 313 7

.313 6 Asynchronous and commutator machinery

Including alternating-current series, repulsion, induction, polyphase induction motors, asynchronous phase and frequency converters

For rectifiers, see 621 313 7

313 7 Rectifiers

Converters equipt with commutators

Including mechanical electronic, electrolytic rectifiers

314 Voltage transformation machinery

Including voltage regulators, reactors induction coils

.314 3 Electric transformers

314 31 Power transformers

Including step up, step-down interconnection transformers

621 314 38 Instrument transformers

Including current and potential transformers

315 Electric condensers

316 Details of electrical machinery

Including armatures and armature winding contactors electromagnets (field cores) brushes

For induction coils and reactors see 621 314

317 Control devices at electric power stations

Including servomechanisms for power stations

For automatic control engineering see 629 8

317 2 Switchboards

Including panels switchboard meters

317 3 Electrical switches

317 36 Electric circuit breakers

For electric fuses see 621 317 8

317 4 Rheostats

317 5 Signal devices

317 8 Protective devices for electric power stations

Including fuses lightning arresters protective relays grounding

For electric circuit breakers see 621 317 36 protective devices for electric transmission lines 621 319 8 protective devices at service end of line 621 328

319 Power transmission engineering

For dynamoelectric machinery see 621 313

319 1 Electric-power transmission systems

319 12 Direct-current systems

319 13 Alternating current systems

Including single phase two-phase polyphase current systems

319 15 Composite electric current systems

Direct and alternating currents combined

.319 16 Polycyclic electric current systems

621 319 2 Electric transmission lines

For interior wiring, see 621.328 2

319 21 Characteristics of electric circuits

Including heat losses in electric lines, transient currents, induction capacity of parallel lines

For telephone network analysis, see 621 385 1

.319 22 Overhead electric transmission lines

Including overhead power, telephone, telegraph lines

319 223 Poles for electric transmission lines

Including construction, installation, maintenance of poles for electric transmission lines

.319 224 Cross arms for electric transmission lines

Including accessories for cross arm installations

319 225 Towers for electric transmission lines

319 23 Underground electric transmission lines

Including electric conduits, conduit materials, man holes for underground electric transmission lines

319 3 Electric wires and cables

319 32 Uninsulated electric wires

319 33 Insulated electric wires

For electric cables, see 621 319 34

319 34 Electric cables

Including submarine cables cable laying

For telephone cables, see 621 387 84, *submarine cable telegraphy* 621 382 8

319 37 Electric insulators [*formerly* †621 319 4] and insulation

Insulating materials used for electric lines and cables

[† 319 4] Electric insulators

Class in 621 319 37

319 8 Protective devices for electric transmission lines

Including line lightning arresters, grounding devices

For protective devices in central electric power stations see 621 317 8, *at service end of line,* 621 328 *in central telephone stations,* 621 387 94

621 32 Electric lighting

Including systems and lamps, comprehensive works on illumination engineering

Class electric lighting for streets in 628 95, domestic lighting in 644 3 [*both formerly* *621 32]

.325 Arc lighting

Including carbon arc lighting, high-intensity arc lighting, arc searchlights

326 Incandescent lighting

Including carbon filament, tungsten, Nernst lamps

327 Gas-discharge electric lighting

Comprehensive works on luminous tube lighting

For arc lighting, see 621 325

327 3 Fluorescent electric lighting

327 4 Mercury-vapor electric lighting

Including Cooper Hewitt, high-pressure mercury-vapor lamps

327 5 Neon electric lighting

Including Moore lamps (carbon dioxide and nitrogen lamps) neon tubes

For neon signs in advertising, see 659 136

327 6 Sodium-vapor electric lighting

Including sodium-vapor lamps

For municipal lighting, see 628 9

328 Apparatus at service end of line

Including panels, fuses, insulators, switches

Class underwriter requirements [*formerly* *621 328] in 621 300 7

[† 328 1] Underwriter requirements

Class in 621 300 7

328 2 Interior wiring

Including house wiring

621 328 8 Protective devices at service end of line

Including grounding devices

For protective devices for electric transmission lines see 621 319 8 in central telephone stations 621 387 94

33 Electric traction [*formerly* *625 1]

Electric-power transmission for railways

Including apparatus appliances for transmission

For comprehensive works on electric railways see 625 6 central stations for electric traction 621 312 3

331 Mechanics of electric traction

Including trolley and third rail systems

[† 334] Rolling stock

Class in 625 2

[† 334 2] Locomotives

Class in 625 263

335 Electrification of street railways

336 Electrification of railroads

Including steam railroad electrification

[* 34] Electronic engineering

Class in 621 381

[* 342] Electron tubes

Class in 621 381 51

[* 343] Electronic circuit functions

Class in 621 381 5

[* 345] Electroacoustics

Class electroacoustics in 621 381 8 manufacture of sound recorders and reproducers in 681 843

35 Electric batteries

353 Primary batteries

Including dry cells

354 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)

355 Lead acid storage batteries

356 Alkaline storage batteries

Including nickel iron alkaline cells nickel cadmium alkaline cells

621 37 Electrical measurements [*formerly also* †537 7]

Determination of instantaneous effective electrical values (instruments) measurement of total quantities of electricity over a period of time (meters)

372 Electrical units and standards

Including primary (absolute) and secondary standards of resistance voltage inductance capacitance frequency calibration of electrical instruments *instrument errors*

373 Electric recording meters

Electric meters driven by clockwork and equipt with charts for recording electrical variations

For specific electric meters and instruments see 621 374

374 Electric meters and instruments

Measurement of electric quantities

For electrical measurement of nonelectric quantities see 621 379 electric recording meters, 621 373

374 2 Electric resistance measurements

Including Wheatstone bridges ohmmeters resistance boxes shunts

374 3 Electric potential measurements

Including electrometers [*formerly also* †537 25] voltmeters potentiometers voltage detectors

374 4 *Electric current measurements*

Including voltameters ammeters milliammeters coulometers ampere-hour meters galvanometers

374 5 Electric energy measurements

Including watt hour meters demand meters electric supply meters

374 6 Electric power measurements

Including wattmeters electrodynamometers voltammeters

For power factor meters see 621 374 91

374 7 Electric frequency meters

Including magnetic oscillographs cathode ray oscillographs

For electric phasemeters see 621 374 91

374 9 Other electric meters and instruments

374 91 Electric phasemeters

Including synchroscopes power factor meters

621 379 Electric measurements of nonelectric quantities

For a specific measuring instrument see the subject e.g telephone meters 621 387 96

379 5 Electric telemeter systems

Electrical instruments measuring transmitting and recording electrical or nonelectrical quantities

38 Electronic and electric communication engineering

For comprehensive works on telecommunication, see 384

SUMMARY

621 381	Electronic engineering
382	Wire telegraphy
383	Telegraph instruments
384	Radio communication engineering
385	Wire telephony
386	Telephone instruments
387	Central telephone station equipment
.388	Television engineering
389	Other electrical and electronic communication devices

381 Electronic engineering [*formerly* *621 34]

Applied electronics

Class radar [*formerly* *621 381] in 621 384 8

For electronics see 537 5 *electronic navigation* 623 893 *gas-discharge electric lighting* 621 327

381 5 Electronic circuits

Electrical circuits depending on vacuum tubes for their operation

Including electronic circuit functions e g detection amplification control modulation frequency generation [*formerly* *621 343] semiconductors

For a specific application of electronic circuits see the subject e g radio circuits 621 384 12 *printed circuits* 621 381 7

381 51 Electronic circuit components

Including high vacuum and electron tubes [*formerly* †621 384 132 *621 342] gas tubes

For a specific application of electron tubes see the subject e g radio tubes 621 384 132

621.381 7 Printed circuits

Printed replacements for conventional wiring

Including electrical and electronic printed circuits

381 71 Printed circuit components

Including modules, printed resistors and inductors, transistors, electron tube replacements

.381 8 Electroacoustics [*formerly* *621 345]

Electronic aspects of electroacoustical devices, sound recording and reproducing systems

For communication engineering, see 621 382–621 389, manufacture of a specific electroacoustical device, the subject, e g, sound reproducers 681 843, use of a specific electroacoustical device, the subject, e g, electronic musical instruments 789 9

.381 9 Applications of electronic engineering

Comprehensive works

Including electronic metal locators

For a specific application of electronic engineering, see the subject, e.g, radar 621 384 8

---

621 382–621 389 Communication engineering

Including manufacture of apparatus [*formerly also* †681 63]

.382 Wire telegraphy

Class telegraph instruments [*formerly* *621 382] in 621 383

For radiotelegraphy see 621 384 2, military telegraphy, 623 732

382 1 Telegraphic codes

Including Morse, Phillips Continental codes

.382 3 Acoustic systems of telegraphy

Including hand-operated systems e g, simplex, duplex, quadruplex, multiplex systems

382 4 Automatic systems of telegraphy

Including telegraphic systems of Bain, Morse, Wheatstone, Delany

.382 5 Printing telegraphy

Including stockticker, teleprinter, teletype

382 6 Writing telegraphy (Telautography)

621 382 7 Facsimile telegraphy

For radiofacsimile see 621 384 2

382 8 Submarine cable telegraphy

For cables cable laying see 621 319 34

383 Telegraph instruments [*formerly* *621 382]

Including telegraph keys transmitters receivers calling apparatus relays repeaters switches recorders

384 Radio communication engineering

384 1 Radio principles

384 11 Radio wave propagation

Radio-wave radiation spreading absorption reflection diffraction refraction transmission

Including ionospheric reflection phenomena, e g fading skip distance effects of atmospheric electricity on radio wave transmission

For elimination of interference in radio reception see 621 384 154

384 12 Radio circuits

Including radio circuit functions e g detection amplification control modulation frequency generation

For radio tubes see 621 384 132 *other radio circuit instrumentation* 621 384 133

384 13 Radio instruments and apparatus [*formerly* *621 384 3]

384 131 Radio transmitters

Transmitting instruments

Including carrier current generators modulators power amplifiers alternators

For transmitting antennas see 621 384 135

384 132 Radio tubes

Comprehensive works

Class comprehensive works on high vacuum and electron tubes [*formerly* †621 384 132] in 621 381 51

For radio transmitting instruments see 621 384 131 *radio receiving instruments* *621 384 136*

621 384 133 — Other radio circuit instrumentation

Including condensers microphones, inductors, resistors filters oscillographs, grounding devices

384 135 — Radio antennas

Including transmitting and receiving antennas wave guides

384 135 5 — Directional radio antennas

Including direction finders, directive radio beam Adcock antennas

For radar, see 621 384 8, *direction finders in aeronautics,* 629 135 1, *positioning ships with respect to radio beams* 623 893

384 136 — Radio receivers

Receiving instruments

Including radio frequency amplifiers, modulators rectifiers detectors loud speakers

384 136 6 — Radio receiving sets

Including crystal radio tube regenerative tuned radio frequency superheterodyne receiving sets

For manufacture of radio receiving sets, see 621 384 18

384 15 — Radio communication systems [*formerly* *621 384 5]

384 151 — Short wave radio systems

For frequency modulation systems see 621 384 152, *elimination of radio interference,* 621 384 154

384 152 — Frequency modulation (FM) systems

[1 384 152 2] — Radio telephone systems

Class in 621 384 5

384 153 — Long wave radio systems

Including amplitude modulation (AM) systems

.384 154 — Elimination of radio interference

For effects of atmospheric electricity on radio-wave transmission, see 621 384 11

621.384 16 Radio broadcasting stations

Technical operations of clear channel, regional, local radio stations

Including control room operations

For planning, organization, management of radio stations, see 384.5

.384 166 Amateur broadcasting stations

.384 17 Radio measurements and standardization

Including measurements and standardization of radio impedance, frequency, wave length, modulation, signal intensity

.384 18 Manufacture of radio receiving sets

Including repairs

.384 19 Applications of radio [*formerly* *621.384 9]

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of radio transmission, see the subject, e.g., as an aid in sea navigation 623.893, *as a landing aid in aeronautics* 629.135 1, *in advertising* 659.142, *as entertainment* 791.44

.384 2 Radiotelegraphy

Including systems for radiotelegraphic transmission, radiofacsimile

For wire telegraphy, see 621.382; *military radiotelegraphy,* 623.732

.384 3 Radiotelegraph instruments and apparatus

Class radio instruments and apparatus [*formerly* *621.384 3] in 621.384 13

.384 5 Radiotelephony

Including radiotelephone systems [*formerly also* †621.384 152 2]

Class radio communication systems [*formerly* *621.384 5] in 621.384 15

For wire telephony, see 621.385; *military radiotelephony,* 623.733

.384 6 Radiotelephone instruments and apparatus

621.384 8 Radar [*formerly* *621 381]

Including racon

For a specific application of radar, see the subject, e g, as landing aid in aeronautics 629 135 1, *directional antennas,* 621 384 135 5

[*.384 9] Applications of radio

Class in 621 384 19

385 Wire telephony

Class telephone instruments in 621 386, central telephone station equipment in 621 387 [*both formerly* *621 385]

For radiotelephony, see 621 384 5, *military telephony,* 623 733

385 1 Telephone network analysis

.385 3 Intercommunication systems

Interphone systems

385 4 Central telephone stations

Telephone exchanges

For central telephone station equipment, see 621 387

385 41 Telephone substations

.385 47 Manual switchboard systems

For automatic switchboard systems, see 621 385 7, *manual telephone switchboards,* 621 387 2

385 5 Multiple switchboard systems

385 6 Trunking systems

Including transfer systems

385 7 Automatic switchboard systems

Including semiautomatic and Strowger systems

For manual switchboard systems, see 621 385 47, *automatic telephone switchboards,* 621 387 7

385 8 Private telephone exchanges

Including private automatic exchange (PAX), private board exchange (PBX)

386 Telephone instruments [*formerly* *621 385]

Including dial telephones automatic telephones

For telephone meters see 621 387 96

.386 2 Telephone transmitters

Including handsets containing transmitters and receivers in one housing

621.386 3 Telephone receivers

.386 7 Recording telephones (Mechanical telephones)

Telephonographs, telegraphones

.386 9 Telephone pay stations

387 *Central telephone station equipment [formerly* *621 385]

.387 2 Manual telephone switchboards

For manual switchboard systems, see 621.385 47, *automatic telephone switchboards* 621.387 7

.387 3 Multiple telephone switchboards

.387 4 Transfer telephone switchboards

Switchboards for transferring lines from one central station to another

.387 5 Telephone switchboard components

Including parts and accessories of manual and automatic telephone switchboards

.387 6 Telephone central station power equipment

Including auxiliary generators, batteries

.387 7 Automatic telephone switchboards

Including semiautomatic and Strowger switchboards

For automatic switchboard systems see 621.385 7, *manual telephone switchboards* 621.387 2

.387 8 Telephone transmission

Including local and long-distance telephone transmission

For electric transmission lines, see 621.319 2

.387 84 Telephone cable construction

387 9 Other central telephone station equipment

.387 94 Protective devices in central telephone stations

Including grounding devices, lightning arresters

.387 96 Telephone meters and counters

388 Television engineering

Including monochrome and color television engineering

388 1 Television principles

Including television circuits and optics

621 825 Couplings and clutches

Including universal joints

83 Gears [*formerly* †621 84] and gearing

For gear cutting machinery see 621 944

838 Cams

84 Valves and pistons

Class gears [*formerly* †621 84] in 621 83

85 Power transmission by flexible connections

For materials handling equipment see 621 86

852 Belt transmission

For belt conveyers see 621 867 5

853 Rope transmission

854 Wire transmission

859 Chain transmission

For chain hoists see 621 863

86 Materials handling equipment

For excavating machinery see 624 152 *materials handling in production* 658 512

862 Hoisting machinery

For cranes derricks elevators see 621 87

863 Mechanical tackles

Including hydraulic tackles chain hoists

864 Windlasses

Including winches capstans

865 Power shovels

867 Conveying machinery

.867 2 Pipes and pipelines

Comprehensive works

For gas pipelines see 665 74 *petroleum pipelines* 665 54 *water mains* 628 15 *pipe fitting* 696

.867 5 Belt conveyers

621 867 6 Escalators

For elevators see 621 877

868 Telpherage

Including ski tows chair lifts

For cable railways see 625 5

87 Cranes, derricks elevators

872 Derricks

873 Cranes

Including mobile [*formerly* †621 874–†621.875] and stationary cranes

[† 874–† 875] Mobile cranes

Class in 621 873

877 Elevators

Including hand powered belt-driven steam hydraulic electric elevators elevator parts and accessories

877 7 Dumb waiters

88 Fastenings

882 Screws nuts, bolts

For screw cutting machinery see 621 944 tapping machinery 621 955

883 Cotters and cotter pins

884 Rivets and nails

For riveting machinery see 621 978

89 Lubrication

Elimination of friction in machinery by lubricants

For manufacture and properties of lubricants see 6[illegible] bearings 621 822

9 Tools

Design maintenance repair operation

Including pneumatic tools [*formerly* †621 542] power-driven metalworking machinery toolmaking

For machine shop practice see 621 75 woodworking tools 674 42–674 43 hand forged tools 682 4

908 Hand tools

Comprehensive works

For a specific hand tool see the subject e g hand hammers 621 973

621.91 Milling machinery

912 Planers and shapers

Including slotting and grooving machines

92 Abrading machinery

922 Grinding machinery

Including cylinder and surface grinders, lapping machines, crushers

923 Emery wheels and grindstones

924 Filing machinery

Including rasps

93 Cutting and sawing machinery

Including power shears, contour band saws

For sawmills see 674.2

94 Turning machinery

942 Lathes

943 Chucks

944 Screw cutting machinery

Including gear-cutting and pipe threading machinery

For tapping machines see 621.955, *screws, nuts, bolts* 621.882, *gears* 621.83

945 Boring machinery

95 Perforating machinery

For boring machines see 621.945, *punching machines* 621.96

952 Drilling machinery

954 Reaming machinery

Including broaching machinery

955 Tapping machinery

For screw-cutting machinery see 621.944

96 Punching machinery

For die pressing machinery see 621.984

97 Hammers

973 Hand hammers

974 Power hammers

Including pneumatic hammers

621.978 Riveting machinery

For rivets, see 621 884

.98 Pressing machinery

982 Bending machinery

.983 Straightening jigs

.984 Die-pressing machinery

Including punch and die machines

For punching machinery, see 621 96

99 Jigs, fixtures, gauges

For straightening jigs, see 621 983

622 Mining and mining engineering

For economic geology, see 553, metallurgy, 669, economics of production in mineral industries, 338.2, conservation of mineral resources, 333 8

SUMMARY

622 1	Prospecting and exploratory operations
.2	Underground mining
3	Types of mining
4–5	Mine plant and equipment
6	Transportation and hoisting in mines
7	Ore dressing
8	Mine hazards and accidents

001 Mining statistics

[† 002] Quantities, costs, estimates

Class in 622 13

.007 Mining laws and regulations

009 Reports on mines and mining

For mining companies, see 622 065

065 Mining companies [*formerly* *622 17]

For reports on mines and mining, see 622 009

078 Mining machinery

Comprehensive works

For machinery used in a specific type of mining, see the subject, e g , placer mining 622 320 78, ore dressing machinery 622 707 8

622.1 Prospecting [*formerly* *553] and exploratory operations

Class development workings [*formerly* *622 1] in 622 2

For mining prospectuses, see 553

.12 Practical prospecting methods

Including surface examination, biogeochemical and geobotanical prospecting

Class divining rods [*formerly* †622.12] in 133 323

For geophysical exploration, see 622.15, *prospecting for a specific mineral,* 622 18

.13 Mineral surveys and valuation

Quantities, costs, estimates [*all formerly also* †622 002]

Including mine examination, sampling, quantitative measurements of mineral content, tonnage calculations [*all formerly* *622 17]

.14 Mine surveying

Determination of size, shape of mines

Including preparation of mine maps and models

.15 Geophysical exploration

Comprehensive works on gravitational methods, magnetic methods, seismic methods, electrical (resistivity, potential, electromagnetic) methods, acoustic methods, radioactivity methods

For exploration for specific minerals, see 622 18

[*.17] Mining economics

Class examination, sampling, measurement, tonnage calculation in 622 13, mining companies in 622 065

18 Prospecting and exploration for specific minerals [*formerly* *622 33–*622 38]

Divide like 553.2–553 86, e g , seismic prospecting for petroleum 622 182 82

For mining specific minerals, see 622.33–622 39

622 2 **Underground mining**

Including development workings [*formerly* *622 1]

For underground mining of specific ores, see 622 33–622 39

.21 Excavation of mines

Including stoping [*formerly* †622.27]

For quarrying, see 622 35, *mine shafts*, 622 25, *mine tunnels*, 622 26

[† 22] Quarrying

Class in 622 35

23 Blasting operations

Including drilling of blast holes

24 Boring operations

25 Mine shafts

Including inclines, winzes, raises

26 Mine tunnels

Including drifts, crosscuts, levels, adits, gangways

[† 27] Stoping

Class in 622.21

28 Supporting structures in mines

Including structures of timber, masonry, steel

.3 Types of mining

Comprehensive works on underground mining, open pit mining, alluvial mining

For underground mining, see 622 2

.31 Open pit mining

Including strip mining

For open-pit mining of specific ores, see 622 33–622 39

32 Alluvial mining

Placer mining, hydraulic mining, dredging, drift mining

For alluvial mining of specific ores, see 622 33–622 39

---

622 33–622 39 Mining specific minerals

Class prospecting and exploration for specific minerals [*formerly* *622 33–*622 38] in 622 18

.33 Mining carbonaceous ores

Divide like 553 2, e g, mining anthracite coal 622.335

622 34 Mining metalliferous ores

341 Mining ferrous ores

342 Mining gold silver, platinum ores

343–349 9 Mining other metalliferous ores

Divide like 553 43–553 499, e g , mining uranium ores *622 349 3*

35 Quarrying [*formerly also* 622 22]

Extraction of building stone deposits

Divide like 553 5 e g quarrying granite 622 352

36 Mining earthy material deposits

Divide like 553 6 e g mining salt 622 363

37 Extracting minerals from mineralized water

Including extraction of minerals and metals from sea water and oil brines

38 Mining gem deposits

Divide like 553 8 e g mining diamonds 622 382

39 Mining other economic minerals

4 Mine plant and equipment

For mining machinery see 622 078 transportation and hoisting 622 6

41 Mine gases

Including methods of detecting mine gases

42 Ventilation and air conditioning in mines

43 Temperature control in mines

Including heating systems cooling systems temperature control devices in mines

47 Illumination in mines

473 Portable lamps

Including safety lamps miners lamps

474 Electric lighting systems in mines

48 Electricity in mines

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of electricity in mines see the subject e g illumination 622 474

622.49 Mine sanitation

.5 Mine drainage

Including drainage ditches, drainage channels, pumping systems

.6 Transportation and hoisting in mines

Including haulage systems

[†.63–†.64] Cars and gravity planes

Class in 622.66

.65 Nonmechanical haulage

Including use of chutes, wheelbarrows, hand tramming, horse and mule haulage

.66 Mechanical haulage

Including gravity planes [*formerly* †622.64], shuttle cars [*formerly* †622.63], conveyers, electric mine locomotives, scrapers

.67 Hoisting systems

Direct- and gear-driven hoists

Including single- and double-drum hoists

.68 Mine elevators

Including cages, skips, buckets

.69 Surface transportation

Including loading, unloading, transshipment

.7 Ore dressing

Comprehensive works

For preparation and treatment of a specific ore, see technology of the ore, e.g., reduction of iron ore 669.14

.73 Crushing and grinding operations

.74 Sizing operations

Including use of screens and mechanical classifiers

.75 Ore concentration

Separation of crusht ores and removal of wastes

.751 Gravity concentration

Ore concentration utilizing differences in specific gravity between minerals

Including sink float concentration, jigging

622.752 Flotation

Ore concentration utilizing differences in chemical composition of minerals to bring about attachment of mineral grains to air bubbles in water

.77 Electrical separation

Ore concentration depending upon differences in magnetic permeability or surface electrical conductivity between different mineral varieties

Including magnetic and electrostatic separation

[†.78] Coal washing

Class in 662.623

.79 Milling plants

Including design and equipment

For a specific operation in milling plants, see the subject, e.g., ore concentration 622.75

.8 Mine hazards and accidents

Causes, occurrence, prevention of mine accidents

.81 Mine explosions

.82 Mine fires

.83 *Earth movements in mines*

Including cave-ins, fall of rocks, subsidences

.84 Mine floods

.86 Rescue and relief operations for miners

623 Military and naval engineering

SUMMARY

623.1 Fortifications
.2 Offensive engineering operations (Demolition operations)
.3 Defensive engineering operations
.4 Ordnance
.5 Gunnery
.6 Military transportation engineering
.7 Other military engineering operations
.8 Naval engineering

623.1–623.77 Military engineering

For military science, see 355–359

623.1 **Fortifications**

.12 Permanent fortifications

Design, construction, maintenance of permanent land, harbor, coastal defenses

.15 Temporary fortifications

Field fortifications built by combat forces with material available to field armies

.19 Specific forts and fortresses

Divide like 930–999, e g, fortress of Gibraltar 623.194 689

.2 **Offensive engineering operations (Demolition operations)**

Including demolition of transportation facilities [*formerly also* *623 6], railroad tracks [*formerly* †623 632], fortifications, wire entanglements

Class countermining operations [*formerly* *623 2] in 623 36

For demolition of military communication facilities, see 623 32

.26 Mine laying [*formerly* *623 3]

For countermining operations, see 623 36

262 Land mines

Including booby traps, underground torpedoes

263 Marine mines

.3 **Defensive engineering operations**

Class mine laying [*formerly* *623 3] in 623 26

For camouflage engineering, see 623 77

32 Demolition of enemy communication facilities

34 Trench defenses

36 Countermining operations [*formerly* *623 2]

Detection of land mines, demolition of mine fields, mine sweeping

37 Defenses against chemical and biological warfare

.372 Defenses against gas warfare

Including military use of gas masks

623 373 **Decontamination operations**
Including decontamination from gases microorganisms, radiation

38 **Defenses against air warfare**
Including engineering aspects of civilian protection against bombings atomic warfare
For barrage balloons see 623 744

382 **Air raid warning systems**
Operation maintenance of air raid warning systems
Including radar detection of enemy approach distant early warning systems
For radar engineering see 621 384 8

383 **Blackouts in war**
Engineering aspects of blackouts dimouts brownouts
Including blackout flashlights lanterns flares

388 **Air raid shelters**
Design construction maintenance of air raid shelters

4 **Ordnance**
Design construction repair of war weapons
Including naval ordnance [*formerly* 1623 9]

41 **Artillery**
Comprehensive works on mounted artillery pieces
For types of artillery see 623 42 *mounts* 623 43 *ammunition* 623 45

42 **Types of artillery**
For chemical artillery see 623 445

421 2 **Guns**
Including guns on mobile and fixt mounts

421 3 **Howitzers**

421 4 **Mortars**

421 7 **Guided missile launchers**

[† 422] **Machine guns and submachine guns**
Class in 623 442

[† 425] **Sighting apparatus**
Class in 623 46

623 43 Gun mounts and armored vehicles

431 Towed mounts

433 Fixt mounts

Including turret mounts

434 Naval mounts

438 Armored vehicles

Including tanks armored cars armored trains

44 Small arms

Portable arms of not more than 60 caliber

For manufacture and repair of small nonmilitary firearms, see 683 4

441 Primitive firearms

442 Machine guns [*formerly* †623 422] and shoulder weapons

Including submachine guns [*formerly* †623 422], bazookas, rifles muskets carbines

443 Pistols

Including revolvers automatic pistols, semiautomatic pistols

444 Side arms

Including swords bayonets daggers lances trench knives

445 Chemical artillery

Including flame throwers [*formerly* †623 454 31] mortars for smoke and gas projectiles

45 Ammunition

451 Artillery missiles

Including fixt [*formerly* †623 453] semifixt, separate-loading ammunition

Class rockets in 623 454 3 pyrotechnical signal devices in 623 454 4 [*both formerly* *623 451]

451 1 Bombs

Low velocity projectiles

Including fragmentation demolition depth bombs comprehensive works on aircraft bombs

For chemical projectiles see 623 451 6 *rockets* 623 454 3

451 14 Grenades

Including rifle and hand grenades

623 451 15 Mines

Including land, naval, aerial mines

For mine laying, see 623 26, countermining operations, 623 36

451 19 Nuclear projectiles

Including atom and hydrogen bombs

.451 3 Projectiles

Comprehensive works

Including high-velocity projectiles

For bombs, see 623 451 1, nuclear projectiles, 623 451 19

.451 4 Shrapnel projectiles

.451 6 Chemical projectiles

Including incendiary [*formerly also* †623 454 31], gas, smoke bombs

For pyrotechnical signal devices, see 623 454 4

.451 7 High explosives (HE) projectiles

Including torpedoes [*formerly also* †623 95], block-busters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles

For bangalore torpedoes, see 623 454 5

451 8 Armor-piercing (AP, APC) projectiles

Including high velocity armor-piercing (HVAP), canister projectiles

451 9 Guided missiles (Strategic rockets) [*formerly* †623 74]

Including intercontinental ballistic missiles (ICBM)

For pilotless aircraft, see 623 746 9, tactical rockets, 623 454 3

451 94 Antimissile rockets

452 Explosives

Chemical compounds used for propelling, bursting, demolition charges

For manufacture of explosives, see 662.2

[† 453] Fixt ammunition

Class in 623 451

623 454 Other types of ordnance material

For artillery missiles, see 623 451, *small arms ammunition,* 623 455

[†.454 1] Fuses

Class in *623 454 2*

.454 2 Detonators

Including fuses [*formerly* †623 454 1], primers, firing mechanisms, boosters, percussion caps

454 3 Rockets (Tactical rockets) [*formerly* *623 451]

Jet propelled bombs, "buzz" bombs

For guided missiles, see 623 451 9, *signal rockets,* 623 454 4

[† 454 31] Incendiary devices

Class incendiary bombs in 623 451 6 flame throwers in 623 445

454 4 Pyrotechnical signal devices [*formerly* *623 451]

Including signal rockets, illuminating projectiles, star shells, drifting lights, float lights, aircraft-wing flares parachute-borne flares used for illumination, signaling, recognition

454 5 Demolition charges

Including bangalore torpedoes, shaped charges, destructors, demolition blocks

For mines, see 623 451 15, *demolition of mine fields,* 623 36

455 Small-arms ammunition

Bullets, cartridges

46 Artillery accessories

Including sighting apparatus [*formerly* †623 425], range finders range keepers, range directors

For sighting, range finding see 623 5

[† 47] Arsenals

Class in 355 73

623 5 **Gunnery**

Application of ballistics in laying aiming firing various types of guns

Including sighting range finding fire control

For sighting apparatus range finders see 623 46 target practice, 355 54

51 Ballistics [*formerly* *623 53]

Former heading Theory and strength of guns

Motion of projectiles conditions affecting that motion

Including bomb rocket ballistics

For forensic ballistics see 364 12

53 Interior ballistics

Motion of projectiles within the bore conditions governing that motion

Class comprehensive works on ballistics [*formerly* *623 53] in 623 51

For reaction of mounts see 623 57

54 Exterior ballistics

Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube resistance encountered due to motion thru air

[† 554] Naval target practice

Class in 359 5

56 Terminal ballistics

Effect of projectiles on targets

57 Reaction of mounts

Including controlled recoil mounts, nonrecoil mounts

.6 Military transportation engineering

Temporary and rapid construction maintenance and repair of transportation facilities

Including use of pierst steel planking (PSP)

Class demolition of transportation facilities in 623 2 military water supply engineering in 623 75 military power and light systems in 623.76 [*all formerly* *623 6]

For military aircraft see 623 74 military transports 623 826 4

62 Military roads

623 63 Military railways

[† 632] Demolition of railroad tracks

Class in 623.2

64 Military docks

Including construction maintenance repair of breakwaters artificial harbors

65 Military bridges

Including materials [*formerly* †623 66] construction maintenance repair of pontoon bridges rope ferries other temporary bridges

[† 66] Bridge material

Class in 623 65

7 **Other military engineering operations**

71 Military topography

Military sketching map making map reading

Class military photogrammetry [*formerly* *623 71] in 623 72

72 Military photography

Including photogrammetry [*formerly* *623 71] photomaps

73 Military communication engineering

Including installation operation of equipment

731 Visual signal communication

Including semaphore systems heliographs light emitters smoke generators panel systems

For pyrotechnical signal devices see 623 454 4

732 Military telegraphy

Including teletype radiotelegraphy radioteletype

733 Military telephony

Including radiotelephony walkie-talkies radiocommunication

74 Military aircraft [*formerly* *629 1]

Design construction identification

Class guided missiles [*formerly* †623 74] in 623 451 9

741 Military lighter than air aircraft

742 Military free balloons

623 743 Military airships

Including nonrigid semirigid, rigid dirigibles

744 Barrage balloons

746 Military heavier than air aircraft

Including military airplanes

746 2 Trainers

746 3 Bombers

746 4 Fighters

746 5 Carriers

Including transport and cargo aircraft

746 6 Rescue aircraft

Including amphibian planes helicopters

746 9 Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)

75 Military sanitary engineering

Military water supply engineering [*formerly* *623 6], military sewage disposal engineering

For *military hygiene see* 613 67

76 Military power and light systems [*formerly* *623 6]

77 Camouflage engineering

8 Naval engineering

Including nonmilitary naval engineering

SUMMARY

623 81	Naval architecture
82	Shipbuilding
83	Shipyards
84	Hull construction
85	Electrical mechanical chemical accessory systems
86	Equipment and outfit
87	Marine engineering
.88	Seamanship
.89	Sea navigation

.81 Naval architecture

Structural engineering for ships

Including design of ships calculations and considerations of moments stability displacement resistance and speed rolling pitching structural strength tonnage steering maneuvering

For graphic statics see 531 25 *strength of materials,* 620 11 *fluid mechanics* 532

623 82 Shipbuilding

Comprehensive works on construction, maintenance, repair of ships

For hull construction, see 623 84, comprehensive works on ships 387 2

821 Ancient and medieval ships

Including caravels [*formerly* †623 822 5], galleys sailing men-of war, biremes, triremes comprehensive works on primitive crafts

Class clipper ships [*formerly* *623 821] in 623 822

For hand propelled and towed craft, see 623 829

822 Modern sailing ships

Including clipper ships [*formerly* *623 821], racing yachts, rotor ships

Class caravels [*formerly* †623 822 5] in 623 821

For ancient and medieval ships, see 623 821, power yachts, 623 824 3, yachting, 797 14

823 Power driven ships

.823 1 Small power craft

Including motorboats, motor launches

For racing yachts, see 623 822, power yachts, 623 824 3

823 2 Tugboats and towboats

823 4 Ferryboats

Including passenger freight train ferryboats

824 Merchant ships

824 3 Passenger ships

Including lake river ocean liners power yachts

For military transports and hospital ships, see 623 826 4

824 5 Cargo ships

Including freighters bulk carriers tankers

For military supply ships see 623 826 5

824 8 Factory ships

Including modern whaleboats ship canneries

623 825 Warships

Design construction identification

Including armor protection of warships [*formerly* †623 9]

Class patrol craft [*formerly* *623.825] in 623 826 3

For sailing men-of war, see 623 821

825 2 Battleships

825 3 Cruisers

Including antiaircraft cruisers

825 4 Destroyers

Including destroyer escorts motor torpedo boats gunboats submarine chasers

For patrol craft see 623 826 3

825 5 Aircraft carriers

.825 6 Landing craft

Including amphibious landing craft

825 7 Submarines

Including nuclear powered submarines

826 Other government vessels

826 2 Mine craft

Including mine layers mine sweepers

826 3 Patrol craft [*formerly* *623 825]

Including police boats revenue cutters

For submarine chasers motor torpedo boats see 625 825 4

.826 4 Military transports and hospital ships

826 5 Military supply ships

828 Other power-driven ships

Including icebreakers trawlers dredgers

For underwater dredging operations see 627 73

829 Hand propelled and towed craft

Including canoes lifeboats, barges scows rowboats towed canalboats coracles

For lifeboats as equipment on ships see 623.865

623.83 Shipyards

Appliances and facilities used in construction, maintenance and repair of ships

Including slips, launching ways, drydocks, moldlofts, shipbuilding berths

.831 Experimental model tanks for ships

.84 Hull construction

Construction of body of ships

Including joinery, riveting, welding sheet metal work for shipbuilders (loftsmen, ship fitters, shipwrights)

.85 Electrical, mechanical, chemical accessory systems

Class gear [*formerly* †623.85] in 623.862

.852 Electricity on ships

Electric power equipment and its installation on ships

Including electric lighting on ships

For communication systems on ships, see 623.864

.853 Heat, ventilation, refrigeration on ships

Including air conditioning on ships

.854 Water supply and sanitation on ships

Including water distillation fire detection and prevention systems, plumbing systems

.86 Equipment and outfit

.862 Gear [*formerly* †623.85] and rigging

Including rope, masts spars, rudder sails, cordage, anchors

.863 Nautical instruments

.864 Communication systems on ships

Including wireless equipment, telephones, signal lights

.865 Lifesaving equipment

Including lifeboats, life preservers

For construction of lifeboats, see 623.829

.866 Ship furniture

623 87 Marine engineering

Marine propulsion machinery and its auxiliaries

For naval design involving calculation of resistance and speed, see 623 81, *hydrodynamics,* 532 5

872 Marine engines

872 2 Marine steam engines [*formerly* †621 12]

Including steam turbines, reciprocating steam engines

872 3 Marine internal combustion engines

Divide like 621 43–621 437, e g, marine diesel engines 623 872 36

873 Marine engine auxiliaries

Including marine boilers [*formerly* †621 184 22], piping, condensers, blowers, pumps, propellers, propulsion shafting

874 Marine fuels

88 Seamanship [*formerly* †656]

Art and science of handling ships

Including splicing marling, knotting ropes, rescue at sea, Inland Rules of the Road, International Rules of the Road

.89 Sea navigation [*formerly* †656]

Selection and steering of a course on water

Including problems of position direction, distance

For celestial navigation, see 527

892 Geonavigation (Surface piloting)

Positioning ships by visual observation of prominent objects of known position on the earth

Including dead reckoning

892 9 Pilot guides

Divide like 940–999 e g, pilot guides for harbor of New York 623 892 974 71

893 Electronic navigation

Positioning ships with respect to radio stations and beams thru visual or audio presentation

Including use of radar, loran, decca, pulse doppler

623 894 Aids to navigation

Including lighthouses, lightships, buoys, sailing directions, light lists, navigational tables, tide and current tables

For comprehensive works on tide tables, see 525 69

[†.9] Naval ordnance

Class naval ordnance in 623 4, armor protection of warships in 623 825

[† 95] Torpedoes

Class in 623 451 7

624 Civil engineering

Comprehensive works on design construction, maintenance of public works

For a specific branch of civil engineering, see the subject, e.g., sanitary engineering 628

.1 Structural engineering

Comprehensive works on planning, analysis, design, construction of bridges, buildings, dams, other structures

Class bridge engineering and construction [*formerly* †624 1] in 624 2

For architectural design, see 729, a specific branch of structural engineering, the subject, e.g., dam engineering 627 8, engineering materials, 620 1

15 Foundation engineering

For design and construction of foundations for a specific structure, see the structure, e g, foundations for buildings 721 1

151 Foundation soils

Physics and mechanics of soils supporting structures

Including soil surveys, physical tests and analysis engineering properties, e g, strength, deformation, compressibility, stability, moisture content

For comprehensive works on soil physics, see 631 43, soil surveys for a specific structure, the subject, e g, for highways 625 732

152 Excavation engineering

Including earthwork, shoring rock excavation, use of excavating machinery

Class tunnel engineering [*formerly* *624 152] in 624 19

For excavation of mines, see 622 21

624 154 Pile foundations

Including pile driving [*formerly* †624 155]

[† 155] Pile driving

Class in 624 154

156 Floating foundations (Platform foundations)

Including cantilever foundations

157 Underwater foundations (Subaqueous foundations)

For bridge engineering see 624 2 *dock engineering* 627 3

157 1 Cofferdam method

157 2 Crib and open caisson method

157 3 Pneumatic caisson method

157 4 Freezing methods

157 5 Pneumatic forcing method

157 6 Dredging method

158 Pier foundations

Including skyscraper" foundations

16 Other supporting structures

Including piers abutments embankments retaining walls

For dock engineering see 627 3

17 Structural theory

171 Structural analysis

Determination of forces on all types of structures by mathematical means and use of models

Including calculation of pressure shears impact bending moments

Class loads in 624 172 wind pressure in 624 175 stresses in 624 176 [*all formerly* *624 171]

For graphic statics see 531 25

172 Loads [*formerly also* †624 173–†624 174 *formerly* *624 171]

Determination of dead and live loads on structures

Including weight of snow and ice

[† 173–† 174] Loads

Class in 624 172

175 Wind pressure [*formerly* *624 171]

624 176 Stresses [*formerly* *624 171]

Including stresses produced by earthquakes

.177 Structural design

Determination of materials for structure and proportions of the structural elements

Including girders [*formerly* †624.21, †624 23], beams [*formerly* †624 22], trusses [*formerly* †624 24, †624 3], columns arches, slabs frames and fastenings for all types of structures

For design and construction of elementary forms for buildings, see 721

18 Design in specific materials

For systems of building construction, see 693–694

182 Design in structural metal

Including iron, steel

183 Design in masonry

Including design in brick, cement, concrete, reinforst concrete

184 Design in wood

.19 Tunnel engineering and construction [*formerly* †*625 13, *624 152]

Design, construction, maintenance of tunnels

Including railroad and vehicular tunnels

192 Mountain tunnels

193 Underground tunnels

194 Underwater tunnels

199 Other tunnels

Including siphon and canal tunnels

.2 Bridge engineering and construction [*formerly also* †624.1]

Comprehensive works on railroad [*formerly* *625 13] and highway bridges

[† 21–† 24] Girders, beams, trusses

Class in 624 177

25 Floor systems for bridges

624.27 Girder bridges

Including plate girder and lattice girder bridges

For plate girder suspension bridges see 624 7 box girder bridges 624 4

275 Covered bridges

3 Trussed bridges

Class trusses [*formerly* 1624 3] in 624 177

For trussed arch bridges see 624 7

32 Trestle bridges

33 Continuous bridges

Bridges consisting of beams girders or trusses extending uninterruptedly over more than two supports

35 Cantilever bridges

4 Tubular bridges

Including box girder bridges

5 Suspension bridges

For plate girder suspension bridges see 624 7

52 Primitive suspension bridges

Rope bridges of hammock and basket types

55 Modern suspension bridges

Including wire-cable self anchored eyebar-chain rope-strand cable suspension bridges

6 Arch bridges

Including hinged and hingeless arch bridges

63 Masonry arch bridges

Including arch bridges of stone brick concrete reinforst concrete

67 Arch bridges of structural metal

Including iron and steel arch bridges

7 Compound bridges

Including plate girder suspension bridges and trussed arch bridges

.8 Movable bridges

.82 Bascule bridges

.83 Swing bridges

624 84 Vertical lift bridges

86 Transporter bridges

87 Permanent pontoon bridges

For military pontoon bridges see 623 65

.9 Roof engineering and construction

Comprehensive works

For design and construction of roofs see 721 5 roof design 729 35 covering and repairing roofs 695

625 Railroad and road engineering

SUMMARY

625 1	Railroad engineering and construction
2	Rolling stock
.3	Inclined and mountain railways
39	Ship railways
4	Rapid transit systems
5	Cable railways
6	Electric railways
7	Road and highway engineering
8	Pavements and other road surfaces

1 Railroad engineering and construction

Including monorailroads standard and narrow gauge railroads

Class cable railways in 625 5 underground railways in 625 42 elevated railways in 625 44 street railways in 625 66 electric traction in 621 33 ship railways in 625 39 [*all formerly* *625 1]

For rolling stock see 625 2 railroad transportation 385 1 railroad construction over ice covers 625 892

11 Railroad surveying

Reconnaissance preliminary surveys final location surveys

Including roadway design determination of grades curves switchbacks right of way

For soil surveys see 625 122

12 *Earthwork operations for permanent way*

122 Soil surveys

Including soil profiles physical tests and analysis of subgrade soils for railroad purposes

123 Preparation of roadbed

Including clearing and grubbing compaction excavation rock cutting earth and rock haulage grading formation of embankments cuts fills

625 125 Roadbed stabilization

Including drainage structures e g culverts [*formerly also* †625 13] grouting slide piling sand piling of railroad roadbeds

13 Protective structures

Including snow fences permanent snowsheds retaining walls

Class culverts in 625 125 [*formerly* †*625 13] tunnel engineering in 624 19 [*formerly* †625 13] railroad tunnels in 624 19 railroad bridges in 624 2 [*both formerly* *625 13]

14 Superstructure of permanent way

Including tracks

Class maintenance of tracks [*formerly* *625 14] in 625 17

141 Ballast

Including ballast materials raising tracks tamping

143 Ties and sleepers

Including tie plates

15 Rails and rail fastenings

Including rail joints tie pads spikes rail anchors

16 Track accessories

163 Track turnouts and crossings

Including design construction installation of railroad switches frogs sidings

165 Railroad signals

Design construction installation

For codes of visual signaling see 384 9

17 Railroad maintenance and repairs

Including maintenance of tracks [*formerly* *625 14] and roadbed snow removal operations

For work trains see 625 222 *protective structures* 625 13

18 Railroad yards

Engineering aspects of terminal layouts

Including receiving separating departure storage repair yards

For design and construction of railroad transportation buildings see 725 31 725 33 *comprehensive works on stations terminals railroad yards* 385.3

19 Model railroads and trains

625.2 **Rolling stock**

Design, construction, maintenance

Including rolling stock for electric traction [*formerly* †621.334]

.21 Running gear

Including wheels, axles, bearings and lubrication, springs

For accessory equipment, see 625.25

22 Specific types of cars

Including car building [*formerly* †699]

Class passenger cars in 625 23, freight cars in 625 24 [*both formerly* *625 22]

.222 Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)

Design, construction, maintenance of locomotive cranes and shovels, handcars, railroad snowplows, ditchers, flangers, derrick cars, cabooses, wrecking cars

For railroad maintenance, see 625 17

.23 Passenger cars [*formerly* *625 22]

Design, construction, maintenance of coaches, chair cars, diners, club cars, lounge cars, sleeping cars, baggage cars, mail cars

Including interior furnishing, heating, lighting, ventilation, air conditioning, sanitation

For streetcars and trolley buses, see 625 662

24 Freight cars [*formerly* *625.22]

Design, construction, maintenance of refrigerator cars, automobile cars, boxcars, cattle cars, tank cars, hoppers, gondola cars, flatcars

25 Accessory equipment

Including design, construction, maintenance, installation of brakes and couplings

For running gear, see 625.21

.26 Railroad locomotive engineering

Design, construction, maintenance

Class steam locomotive engineering [*formerly* *625 26] in 621 13

262 Gas turbine locomotives

263 Electric locomotives [*formerly* †621 334 2]

.265 Compress-air locomotives

625.266 Diesel locomotives

Including diesel mechanical, diesel electric locomotives

27 Mechanical operation of railroads (Railroading) [*formerly* †656]

Including trainmen's manuals

.3 Inclined and mountain railways

32 Funicular railways

33 Rack railways

.39 Ship railways [*formerly* †625.9, *625.1]

.4 Rapid transit systems

For street railways see 625 66

42 *Underground railways (Subways)* [*formerly* *625.1]

44 Elevated railways [*formerly* *625 1]

.5 Cable railways [*formerly* *625.1]

Comprehensive works

Including aerial railways

For funicular railways, see 625 32, *ski lifts and chair lifts,* 621 868

.6 Electric railways

Including light interurban electric railways

For electric traction, see 621 33 *electric locomotives,* 625 263

66 Street railways [*formerly* *625 1]

662 Streetcars and trolley buses

.7 Road and highway engineering

Including streets

Class pavements [*formerly* *625 7] in 625 8

.71 Road systems

Including rural and urban systems

72 Highway surveying

Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys

Including determination of grades curves, bankings, design of highways

625.73 Earthwork operations for highways

.732 Soil surveys

Including physical tests, analysis of subgrade soils for highway purposes, soil profiles

.733 Preparation of foundations

Including clearing and grubbing, excavation, earth haulage, compaction, formation of embankments finishing operations e.g., trimming slopes, grading roadbed

.734 Drainage and drainage structures

Drainage dikes, gutters, ditches culverts pipes, conduits

For soil stabilization processes see 625.74 sidewalk gutters, 625.88, installation of utility lines under highways, 625.78

.735 Highway materials

Road aggregates, bituminous materials, nonbituminous materials

Including tests of highway materials

For paving materials, see 625.8

.74 Stabilized soil roads

Granular stabilized roads granular subbases bituminous soil stabilized roads gravel roads soil cement roads

Including binders [*formerly* †625.75], soil stabilization processes

.75 Dirt road surfacing

Class binders [*formerly* †625.75] in 625.74

.76 Highway maintenance

.761 Highway damage and repairs

Including frost damage patching, blading dragging, scarifying, resurfacing, resealing, shoulder maintenance

.763 Snow and ice control on highways

Comprehensive works

Including use of snowplows, power graders, bank shears, sanders, stock piled abrasives, snow guides, snow fences

For municipal snow removal, see 628.466

625 77 Roadside improvement

Including construction and maintenance of highway rest areas parking turnouts highway picnic areas

For landscape design for public thorofares see 713

78 Subsurface structures

Including installation of utility lines under highways

For drainage structures see 625 734

[*79] Highway traffic control

Class in 388 312

8 Pavements [*formerly* *625 7] and other road surfaces

Design construction materials

Including base subbase subgrade treatment

For dirt road surfacing see 625 75 highway maintenance 625 76 paved runways and aprons 629 136 3

81 Flagstone pavements

82 Brick and stone pavements

83 Wooden surfacings

Including corduroy roads boardwalks

84 Rigid pavements

Including portland cement concrete and reinforst concrete pavements

85 Flexible pavements

Including rock asphalt, sheet asphalt sand asphalt bituminous concrete road mix surfaces

86 Macadam pavements

Traffic-bound water bound bituminous cement bound macadams

Including telford surfaces

88 Sidewalks

Comprehensive works

Including curbs

For sidewalks of a specific material see the subject e g flagstone pavements 625 81

889 Auxiliary pavements

Including driveways parking aprons

625 89 Other road surfaces

.892 Ice crossings

Including ice and snow-compacted roads, natural ice bridges over open water, reinforst crossings, railroad construction over ice covers

[†.9] Ship railways

Class in 625 39

[†626] Canal engineering

Class in 627 13

[†.8] Irrigation canals

Class in 627 52

[†.9] Ship canals

Class in 627 137

627 Hydraulic engineering (Water control engineering)

For water supply engineering, see 628 1, *mechanics of fluids,* 532, *hydroelectric engineering,* 621 312, *water economics,* 333 91

.1 Inland waterway engineering

Improvement of inland waterways

For inland waterway transportation, see 386, *underwater dredging operations,* 627 73

12 River and lake engineering

Including construction of barrages

For flood control engineering see 627 4, *dam engineering,* 627 8

125 Stream measurement

Including measurement of volume pressure, velocity, height

For limnology see 551 48

13 Canal engineering [*formerly* †626]

Design and construction of navigation canals

Including canal locks, lifts, inclines, lock chambers, accessory canal structures

For canal transportation, see 386 4 *irrigation canals,* 627 52

137 Ship canals [*formerly* *626 9]

Interoceanic and noninteroceanic ship canals

138 Barge canals

627.2 Harbor engineering

For lighthouse engineering, see 627 92, aids to navigation, 623 894

.24 Breakwaters

For jetties, see 627 6

.3 Dock engineering

Design, construction, maintenance of docks, piers, wharves, quays

For drydocks, see 623 83

.4 Flood control engineering

Preventive and protective control of floods

.42 Protective measures

Including construction of dikes, sea walls, levees

.44 Preventive measures

Including water storage in ponds, lakes, artificial reservoirs

For dam engineering, see 627 8

.5 Reclamation engineering

.52 Irrigation engineering

Reclamation of arid land by construction of irrigation canals [*formerly* †626 8], flumes, conduits, flooding wastelands

For agricultural irrigation, see 631 7, dam engineering, 627 8

.54 Drainage engineering

Reclamation of bogs swamps, marshes by means of drainage systems

For agricultural drainage, see 631 6

.58 Shore reclamation and protection

Including prevention of beach erosion

.6 Jetties

For breakwaters, see 627 24

.7 Underwater operations

Including salvage operations [*formerly* *387 55]

For marine salvage business, see 387 55

.72 Diving operations

For recreational diving, see 797.2

627.73 Underwater dredging operations

For excavation engineering, see 624 152

74 Underwater blasting operations

.8 Dam engineering

Design and construction

Including sluices, penstocks, spillways, weirs

For hydroelectric engineering, see 621 312 134, barrages, 627 12, flood control engineering, 627 4, water supply engineering, 628 1

82 Masonry dams

Including gravity, arch arch-gravity, buttress dams

83 Earth and rock fill dams

Including rock fill dams with concrete facing, embankment dams

84 Movable dams and gates

Including bear trap, bridge, shutter and wicket, roller, frame, curtain dams

85 Steel dams

.9 Other hydraulic structures

92 Lighthouse engineering

Design and construction of lighthouses, lightships, beacons, buoys, daymarks

For lighthouse services, see 623 894

98 Artificial islands

628 Sanitary and municipal engineering

Design, construction, operation of works contributing to public health

Class house drainage [*formerly* *628] in 696 13

For public health aspects of sanitation and sanitary control, see 614 7, military sanitary engineering, 623 75

SUMMARY

628 1	Water-supply engineering
.2	Sewerage
3	Sewage treatment and disposal
4	Municipal sanitation
5	Industrial sanitation
7	Rural sanitary engineering
9	Municipal lighting

628.1 Water-supply engineering

Comprehensive works

Including waterworks, municipal water-supply plants

For rural water supply engineering, see 628.72

.11 Water supply sources

Including lakes, rivers, springs, wells

.13 Water storage

Including reservoirs, storage tanks, water towers

For dam engineering, see 627.8

.14 Water distribution

Including pumping stations, conduits, aqueducts

.15 Water mains and service pipes

Including thawing frozen water mains

For plumbing and pipe fitting, see 696

.16 Water purification [*formerly also* *613.35] and treatment

Including biological analysis of water [*formerly* †613.33–†613.34]

.162 Sedimentation

Including coagulation

.164 Filtration

.165 Aeration and deaeration

.166 Chemical treatment

.166 2 Disinfection

Including chlorination, superchlorination, dechlorination, ozone treatment, copper sulfate treatment, ultraviolet radiation

.166 3 Fluorination

For preventive dentistry, see 617.601

.166 6 Softening processes (Demineralization processes)

.167 Conversion of sea water into potable water

.168 Water pollution

Comprehensive works on stream pollution

For water pollution from sewage, see 628.39; water pollution from industrial wastes, 628.54

.17 Water consumption

.177 Water meters

628.2 Sewerage [*formerly* *628.3]

Comprehensive works on design, construction, maintenance of sewerage systems and sewage treatment plants

Including pumping stations

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628 3

.21 Sewerage systems

Including combined and separate systems

.23 Ventilation of sewers

Elimination of sewer gas

Including flues, drains, pipes, chemical methods for eliminating and deodorizing sewer gases

For ventilators and traps, see 628 25

.24 Sewers

Including design, construction, maintenance of sewers

.25 Sewer appurtenances

Including manholes, house connections, flushing apparatus, inlets, catch basins, regulators, valves, penstocks, ventilators, traps

.28 Septic tanks

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

Class sewerage [*formerly* *628 3] in 628 2

For rural sewage disposal, see 628 74

32 Disinfection of sewage

[† 33] Subsidence

Class in *628 34*

34 Primary treatment of sewage

Including subsidence [*formerly* †628 33], precipitation, use of screens, grit chambers, skimming tanks, sedimentation tanks

[† 348] Sludge disposal

Class in *628 36*

.35 Secondary treatment of sewage

Including use of secondary sedimentation tanks

352 Filtration

Including trickling filter process

628 354 Activated sludge process

Including use of aeration chambers, sludge digestion tanks, anaerobic digestion

.36 Sewage disposal on land

Including sludge disposal [*formerly* †628 34], sewage irrigation

.39 Sewage disposal into water

Disposal into streams, sea, other bodies of water

Including water pollution from sewage

.4 Municipal sanitation

For water supply engineering, see 628 1, *sewerage,* 628 2, *sewage treatment and disposal,* 628 3, *rural sanitary engineering,* 628 7, *municipal lighting,* 628 9

41 Middens, privies, cesspools

42 Pail systems

43 Earth closet systems

.44 Municipal garbage and refuse

For rural refuse disposal, see 628 74

442 Municipal refuse collection

Including collection of ashes, garbage, street sweepings, dead animals

445 Municipal garbage treatment and disposal

Disposal of garbage and refuse by burial, incineration, reduction

For production of fertilizers from municipal wastes, see 628 49

.45 Public comfort stations

46 Street cleaning

Including street sprinkling

466 Snow and ice removal

Including salting and sanding streets and pavements

49 Production of fertilizers from municipal wastes

For municipal garbage treatment, see 628 445

.5 Industrial sanitation

51 Industrial plant sanitation

.52 Effluvium control

Including prevention of noxious odors

628 53 Smoke control

Including prevention of smoke and smog

.54 Industrial wastes

Including disposal of industrial wastes, water pollution from industrial wastes

For waste recovery and utilization in a specific manufacture, see the manufacture, e g, in pulp and paper manufacture 676

[†.6] House drainage

Class in 696 13

.7 Rural sanitary engineering

Including sanitary engineering in isolated areas

.72 Rural water-supply engineering

For wells, see 628 11

.74 Rural sewage and refuse disposal

For middens, privies, cesspools, see 628 41, pail systems, 628 42, earth closet systems, 628 43, septic tanks, 628 28

[†.8] Ventilation, heating, air conditioning

Class in 697

.9 Municipal lighting

93 Gas lighting for streets

95 Electric lighting for streets [*formerly* *621 32]

Including electric lighting systems for parks, flood lighting for sports and exhibitions

629 Other branches of engineering

.1 Automotive engineering

Comprehensive works on all types of automotive vehicles

Class military aircraft in 623 74, aeronautics in 629 13 [*both formerly* *629 1]

Relocations from specific subdivisions of *629 1 to subdivisions of 629 13 are indicated below only in those cases where the digits following * 1 and 13 vary, e g, electrical installations relocated from *629 143 to 629 135 4

For a specific type of automotive vehicle, see the subject, e g, land vehicles 629 2

629 13 Aeronautics [*formerly* *629 1]

Relocations from specific subdivisions of *629 1 to subdivisions of 629 13 are indicated below only in those cases where the digits following * 1 and 13 vary, e g, electrical installations relocated from *629 143 to 629 135 4

For air transportation see 387 7, *military aircraft,* 623 74

SUMMARY

629 130 9	History and local treatment of aeronautics
132	Science of flight
133	Aircraft
134	Airplane design construction performance
135	Aircraft equipment and instruments
136	Airports
138	Uses of aircraft
138 8	Space flight (Inertial navigation)

130 9 History and local treatment of aeronautics

Accounts of flights flight records

For voyages and travels, see 910 4

130 91 Transoceanic flights

Divide like 551 461–551 469, e g, transpacific flights 629 130 915

130 94–130 99 Flights in specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g transcontinental flights in the United States 629 130 973

132 Science of flight

132 2 Aerostatics of flight

Equilibrium static lift stability characteristics of lighter than air aircraft

For lighter than-air aircraft see 629 133 2

132 3 Aerodynamics of flight

Forces acting on heavier than air aircraft in motion thru air

Including subsonic transonic supersonic aerodynamics

For heavier than-air aircraft see 629 133 3

132 31 Forces in gliding soaring [*both formerly* *629 133 3] diving

Including bird and insect flight as basis of aerodynamic studies

For gliders see 629 133 33

629 132 32 — Air flow patterns

Including incompressible, compressible (subsonic, transonic, supersonic), laminar and turbulent flows, shock waves, downwash Mach number

For boundary layers, see 629 132 37

132 33 — Dynamic lift and thrust

Including unsteady lift in high-speed flight

For zero lift drag, see 629 132 34

.132 34 — Drag (Air resistance)

Including zero-lift drag, parasite drag

.132 35 — Pressure distribution over wing surfaces

Including chordwise and spanwise pressure distribution, wing load

For drag see 629 132 34

132 36 — Moment equilibrium and stability

Longitudinal, lateral, and vertical stability

Including roll, pitch, yaw, autorotation (spinning)

132 362 — Control aerodynamics

Including flutter and vibration

132 37 — Boundary layers

Region of retarded air flow near surface of moving aircraft due to viscosity of air

Including laminar and turbulent boundary layers, transition regions, skin friction (shearing stress), Reynolds number

For air flow patterns, see 629 132 32

132 4 — Meteorology in aeronautics

Study of weather conditions for aeronautical purposes and methods of combating adverse effects

Divide like 551 5–551 57, e g, ice formation and prevention [*formerly* *629 18] 629 132 472

629 132 5 Flight engineering

Class celestial navigation [*formerly* *629 125] in 527

.132 51 Air navigation

Dead reckoning and electronic navigation

Including navigational radar (Gee H, micro-H, racon, and shoran systems), navigational radio (Gee and loran systems)

For navigation instruments, see 629 135, *radio and radar as landing aids,* 629 136 6, *celestial navigation* 527

132 52 Piloting of airplanes [*formerly* *629 126]

Operation of airplanes

Including flight training instrument flying, take-off and landing, operational problems e g, cruise control weight and balance problems [*both formerly* *629 18]

For fighter pilot training, see 358 43, *operation of lighter than air aircraft,* 629 133 2, *of heavier than air aircraft other than airplanes,* 629 133 3

[† 132 53] Airways

Class *in 387 72*

132 54 Navigational aids

Including aerial maps charts logbooks, pilot guides

For navigation instruments, see 629 135, *landing aids* 629 136 6

132 55 Wreckage studies

Determination of causes of aircraft accidents thru examination of broken remains

For air travel safety, see 614 869

[† 132 56] Aviation medicine

Class in 616 980 21

132 6 Command systems

Including geomagnetic celestial, and electronic systems of controlling guided aircraft

629 133 Aircraft

Comprehensive works

For military aircraft see 623 74

133 1 Aircraft models and modelmaking

Divide like 629 133 2–629 133 39 e g, models of helicopters 629 133 135

For use of models in aeronautical research see 629 130 72

133 2 Lighter than air aircraft

Description design construction operation maintenance performance of lighter than air aircraft and their parts

For military lighter than-air aircraft see 623 741

133 22 Balloons

Including free and captive balloons balloon sondes

For toy balloons see 796 15

133 24 Airships (Dirigible balloons)

133 25 Rigid dirigibles

133 26 Semirigid dirigibles

133 27 Nonrigid dirigibles

133 3 Heavier than air aircraft

Description design construction operation maintenance performance of heavier than air aircraft other than airplanes

Including parts of heavier than air aircraft other than airplanes

Class gl d ng soaring [*both formerly* *629 133 3] in 629 132 31

133 32 Kites

For flying kites as a sport see 796 15

133 33 Gliders

133 34 Airplanes

Description and identification

For design construction performance of airplanes see 629 134 of airplane parts 629 134 3 operation of airplanes 629 132 52 military airplanes 623 746

133 343 Monoplanes

For jet propelled airplanes see 629 133 349

629 133 347 Seaplanes (Hydroplanes)

133 348 Amphibian planes

133 349 Jet propelled airplanes

For jet engines see 629 134 353

133 35 Rotary wing aircraft

Including helicopters Autogiros®

133 36 Orthopters (Ornithopters)

133 38 Rocket propelled aircraft

Including rocket propelled high speed high altitude test missiles (rockets [*formerly* *629 143 53])

For guided missiles see 623 451 9 rocket engines 629 134 354

133 39 Other heavier than air aircraft

133 4 Unidentified flying objects (UFO)

Including flying saucers

134 Airplane design construction performance

Including comprehensive works on design construction performance of aircraft

For design construction performance of heavier than air aircraft other than airplanes see 629 133 3 of lighter than-air aircraft 629 133 2

134 1 Structural analysis and design

Former heading Stress analysis and structures

Including calculations of strains stresses shears impact determination of materials and proportion of various members monocoque design

134 2 Airplane manufacturing techniques

Including materials template production forging sheet metal work riveting welding finishing

134 3 Parts and details of airplanes

Including design construction performance maintenance repair

134 31 Airframes

For fuselages see 629 134 34

134 32 Airfoils

Including wings wing accessories

For control surfaces see 629 134 33 fuselages, 629 134 34

629 134 33 Control surfaces

Including fins, flaps, ailerons, elevators, rudders, stabilizers

For wings, see 629 134 32

134 34 Fuselages

Including cockpits, instrument panels

For airframes, see 629 134 31, power plants, 629 134 35

134 35 Power plants

Including engine fuels

For propellers, see 629 134 36

134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines

134 353 Gas turbine and jet engines

Including turbojet, turboprop, turbo-ram jet, pulse jet engines, jet propulsion

134 354 Rocket engines

Including rocket propulsion, comprehensive works on rocket engineering

For a specific application of rocket engineering, see the subject, e g, interplanetary travel 629 138 85

134 36 Propellers (Air screws)

134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment

.134 38 Take off and landing gear

Including wheel, float, ski, caterpillar truck gears

134 386 Ejectors

Including pilot-seat ejectors, capsule cockpits, parachutes

134 4 Airplane accommodations

Including interior design

134 42 Airplane comfortization

Including soundproofing [*formerly* *629 18], heating, ventilating, air conditioning, pressurization

134 43 Airplane safety devices

Including safety belts [*formerly* †629 135 7], life rafts, fire prevention, first aid equipment

For ice formation and prevention, see 629 132 47, parachutes, 629 134 386

629 134 5 Testing of airplanes

.134 52 Mechanical testing of airplanes

Factory inspection

.134 53 Flight testing of airplanes

Including performance, performance calculations

134 6 Airplane maintenance and repair

Including fueling, refueling [*formerly* *629 18], lubrication

For maintenance and repair of airplane parts, see 629 134 3

.135 Aircraft equipment and instruments

Including hydraulic [*formerly* *629 143] and pneumatic equipment

.135 1 Navigation instruments

Including radio compasses (direction finders), automatic pilots, altimeters, air speed indicators, air-mileage indicators, air-position indicators, vertical-speed indicators (rate-of-climb indicators), landing and navigation lights

.135 2 Operational instruments

Including turn-and-bank indicators, accelerometers, Machmeters, gyro horizons, directional gyros

For automatic pilots, altimeters, air speed indicators, vertical-speed indicators, see 629 135 1

.135 3 Power-plant instruments

Including manifold pressure, oil-pressure, fuel-pressure, fuel quantity gauges, engine tachometers, oil and cylinder head thermometers, propeller-pitch indicators

.135 4 Electrical installations

Including maintenance and servicing of electrical equipment [*formerly* *629 143]

.135 5 Communication equipment [*formerly* *629 16]

For communication equipment at airports, see 629 136 6

135 7 Equipment for personnel

Including protective eyeglasses, oxygen masks, pressure suits

Class safety belts [*formerly* †629 135 7] in 629 134 43

For parachutes, see 629 134 386

[†.135 8] Accessory equipment

Class in 629 135 9

629 135 9 Other equipment and instruments

Including accessory equipment [*formerly* †629 135 8]

.136 Airports

Design, construction, maintenance of airdromes and seadromes

For airport administration, see 387 736

[† 136 2] Airport planning

Class in 711 78

.136 3 Runways

Including paving runways and aprons, installation o surface and subsurface drainage systems, snow remova and compaction

136 4 Airport buildings

Including terminal buildings, hangars, control towers, cargo warehouses

For architecture of airport buildings, see 725 39

136 5 Airport lighting systems

Including control-tower lighting, boundary lighting systems

136 6 Air traffic control systems

Landing aids, communication and signaling systems

Including radio and radar control devices

For airport lighting systems, see 629 136 5

136 8 Airport fire prevention and protection

Including fire fighting equipment

138 Uses of aircraft

Comprehensive works

For a specific use of aircraft, see the subject, e g, t *crop dusting* 632 94

138 8 Space flight (Inertial navigation) [*formerly* *629 143 53]

For rocket-propelled aircraft, see 629 133 38, *rocket engineering,* 629 134 354

138 82 Artificial earth satellites

629 138 85 Interplanetary flight

Including proposed flights to moon

[* 143] Hydraulic and electrical equipment

Class hydraulic equipment in 629 135 electrical equipment in 629 135 4

[* 143 53] Rockets and space flight

Class rockets in 629 133 38 space flight in 629 138 8

[* 16] Communication equipment in aircrafts

Class in 629 135 5

[* 18] Operational problems

Class refueling in 629 134 6 soundproofing in 629 134 42 ice formation and prevention in 629 132 47 cruise control weight and balance problems in 629 132 52

2 Motor vehicle engineering (Land vehicles)

SUMMARY

629 21	Financial and legal aspects
22	Types of motor vehicles
.23	Motor vehicle design and construction
.24	Chassis
25	Motor vehicle engines
.26	Motor vehicle bodywork
.27	Motor vehicle accessories
.28	Operation of motor vehicles

21 Financial and legal aspects

213 Laws and regulations

For financial responsibility laws see 368 572

.213 4 Taxation and registration

Including motor vehicle titles and transfers drivers licenses revenues motor vehicle tags

[†.213 43] Traffic regulations

Class in 388 312

629.213 6 Accidents and accident prevention

Including compulsory motor vehicle inspection, wreckage studies

For highway safety, see 614 862, factory inspection, 629 234

[†.213 63] Insurance

Class in 368 572

[†.213 7] Accounting

Class in 657 867

[†.213 8] Sales and prices

Class sales in 658 896 292, prices in 338 476 292

.22 Types of motor vehicles

For motor vehicles for operation on railroads see 625 26, steam locomotives, 621 13, steam tractors and rollers, 621 14

---

629 222–629 228 Gasoline and oil powered motor vehicles

For other types of motor vehicles, see 629 229

.222 Passenger automobiles

Including manufacturers' manuals

.222 2 Private automobiles

Including sport cars, three wheel cars

Arrange alphabetically by name of car, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, Lincoln cars 629 222 2 L7

For racing cars, see 629 228

.222 3 Motor vehicles for public transportation

.222 32 Taxicabs

.222 33 Motor buses

Including urban, interurban, school, sight-seeing buses

.223 Light motor trucks

Including light delivery trucks

629.224 Heavy motor trucks

Including moving vans, dump trucks, comprehensive works on motor trucks

For light motor trucks see 629.223

.225 Motor tractors

Including bulldozers Caterpillars®

For steam tractors, see 621.14, use of tractors on farms, 631.372

.226 Trailers

.227 Cycles

Design construction maintenance, repair

Including velocipedes, tricycles, tandems

.227 2 Bicycles

Including motor bicycles

.227 5 Motorcycles

.228 Racing cars

Including "hot rods"

.229 Other types of motor vehicles

Motor vehicles by motive power

For gasoline and oil powered motor vehicles, see 629.222–629.228

.229 2 Steam automobiles

.229 3 Electric automobiles

.229 4 Compress air automobiles

.23 Motor vehicle design and construction

Class plant layout [*formerly* *629.23] in 658.23

For design and construction of motor vehicle parts, see 629.24–629.27

.232 Materials for motor vehicles

For materials used in a specific part of motor vehicles, see the part, e g rubber for tires 629.248 6

.233 Tests of materials for motor vehicles

Including testing methods and equipment

629 234 **Motor vehicle manufacturing techniques**

Including assembly methods and equipment, template production, forging, sheet metal work, riveting, welding, finishing, factory inspection

For performance tests of motor vehicles, see 629 282, compulsory motor vehicle inspection, 629 213 6

[† 234 2] Plant layout

Class in 658 23

[† 234 3] Personnel management

Class in 658 3

[† 234 8] Storage

Class in 658 78

---

629 24–629 27 Motor vehicle parts

Including design, construction, maintenance, repair of motor vehicle parts

.24 Chassis

242 Supporting frames

Including engine mountings

243 Springs

Including shock absorbers

244 Transmission devices

Including clutches, conventional and automatic transmission devices

245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts

Including drive shafts with universal joints, torque elements

246 Brakes

Including brake fluids

247 Front axles and steering gear

248 Wheels

Including rims, hubs, bearings

248 6 Tires

Comprehensive works on natural and synthetic rubber tires

For manufacture of rubber tires, see 678 32

629 83 Closed loop control systems

Feed back control systems, control mechanisms which maintain establisht relationships between the controlled variable and the command

Including servomechanisms [*formerly* 1621 8]

For a specific application of servomechanisms see the subject, e g, in electric power stations 621 317

89 Applications of automation

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of automation, see the subject, e g, automatic pilots 629 135 1

630 Agriculture

.1 **Rural life**

Including living conditions and interests of individuals and families

For rural sociology, see 301 35, *rural communities,* 323 354

.2 **Manuals**

Including compendiums, outlines

Divide like 500 where applicable Representative subdivisions are given below

23 Agricultural physics

For soil physics see 631 43

24 Agricultural chemistry

For soil chemistry, see 631 41

251 5 Agricultural climatology [*formerly also* †631 9]

289 9 Agricultural bacteriology

62 **Nongovernment organizations**

Class cooperative agriculture [*formerly* †630 62] in 334 683

.7 **Study and teaching**

71 Instruction in schools

711 Agricultural colleges

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , Clemson Agricultural College 630 711 C6 If preferred, divide like 940–999, e g , Clemson Agricultural College 630 711 757 21

712 Secondary and other agricultural schools

Arrange like 630 711

713 Short courses

714 Correspondence courses

715 Institutes

716 Courses in nonagricultural institutions

717 Extension work

Including work of county agent, boys' and girls' clubs

For 4 H Clubs, see 630 627 3 *home economics demonstration agents,* 640 714

631 The farm and farmstead

Including farm management

SUMMARY

631.09	Geographic distribution of cultivation
.1	Business management of farms
.2	Farm buildings
.28	Farm roads and bridges
.3	Farm machinery and equipment
.4	Land and soil
.5	Crop production
.6	Drainage of farm land
.7	Irrigation of farm land
.8	Fertilizers and improvement of soil

.09 Geographic distribution of cultivation

.091 Crop zones and physical regions

.091 1 Frigid Zones

.091 2 Temperate Zones

.091 3 Torrid Zone (Tropics)

.091 4 Mountainous regions

.091 5 Desert regions

.1 Business management of farms

For agricultural economics see 338.1

.11 Selection and acquisition of farms

Including location, means of communication and transportation

.112 Purchase

Including cost, valuation, taxes

For valuation in real estate business see 333.332, *valuation for tax purposes* 336.222

.113 Rent

From renter's point of view

.114 Share systems

.115 Systems of management

From owner's point of view

Including working by owner, manager, share system, renting

.116 Size of farm

631 12 Planning of farm

Including layout of buildings fields roads

14 Types of farms

Comprehensive works on types of farms e g field crop vegetable fruit woodland stock fish farms

For a specific type see the type e g fruit farms 634

16 Financial management of farms

Including finances and accounts bookkeeping records

For accounting principles see 657

17 Expenses

For agricultural wages see 331.286 3

18 Marketing of farm products direct from the farm

For marketing a specific product see the product e g melons 635 61 prices of agricultural products 338 13 agricultural markets and marketing programs 338 14

2 Farm buildings

Including fences walls comprehensive works on maintenance and use of farm buildings

For architecture of farm buildings see 728 construction 690 housing of animals 636 083 1

28 Farm roads [*formerly also* †631 9] and bridges

3 Farm machinery and equipment

Description maintenance

For manufacture see 681 763 use in a specific operation the operation e g mowing 631 552

31 Soil working tools and machines

Including digging tools

312 Plows

313 Harrows

314 Rollers

Including disk rollers clod crushers, plankers

315 Hand gardening tools

Including hoes scrapers weeders garden rakes

316 Cultivators

631 33 Planting and sowing equipment

Including drills planters fertilizer distributers fertilizer and seed spreaders transplanters

34 Equipment for care and shelter of plants

Including grafting pruning protection and shelter equipment supports receptacles

35 Harvesting equipment

Including hand tools e g sickle scythe cradle mowers reapers combines corn harvesters harvesting tools for special crops

36 Equipment used in preparing for storage or transport

Including threshers cleaning tools silo machinery balers packers

37 Power and power machinery transport on the farm

371 Sources of power

Including human animal water wind steam internal combustion engine electric power

For engineering aspects see 621

372 Tractors

For manufacture see 629 225

373 Farm transportation equipment

Including packs sleds handcarts wagons motor trucks

For manufacture of motor vehicles see 629 2

[† 374] Harness and saddles

Class in 636 083 7

[† 38] Implements for care of farm animals

Class in 636 083

4 Land and soil

For engineering properties of soil see 624 151 reclamation and drainage 631 6 irrigation 631 7 fertilizers 631 8

[407 2] Soil research

Class in 631 42

[409] History

Class in 631 49

631 41 **Soil chemistry**

For soil classification see 631 44

411 **Soil mineralogy**

42 **Soil testing and research**

Methods of investigation and analysis

Including analysis for soil pollution [*formerly* †614 771]

43 **Soil physics**

Including organic matter moisture temperature color texture structure

For conservation of soil moisture see 631.45

44 **Soil classification**

Including adaptability for growing special crops e g tobacco alkali lands

For soil surveys see 631 47 economic aspects of land classification, 333 7 improvement of soil 631 8

45 **Soil conservation**

Including maintenance of soil fertility

For economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land see 333 76 irrigation 631 7 fertilizers 631 8 drainage 631 6 crop production methods for maintenance of soil fertility 631 58

455 **Erosion control**

Including contour planting terracing

46 **Microbiology of soils**

Class nitrification and soil inoculation [*both formerly* *631 46] in 631 847

47 **Soil surveys**

Surveys showing the kinds composition characteristics of soils within a given area and the uses to which they are or can be put

Including methods and reports

For soil classification see 631 44

473–479 **Soil surveys by country**

Divide like 930–999 e g soil survey of France 631 474 4

49 **History and local treatment**

Divide like 930–999 e g soils of Mexico 631 497 2

631.6 **Drainage of farm land**

Including ditching, draining of waste lands, marshes, swamps, comprehensive works on reclamation of land

For economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land, see 333 76, drainage engineering methods, 627 54

.7 **Irrigation of farm land**

For irrigation engineering methods, see 627 52, economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land, 333 76, water rights for irrigation, 333 913, farming methods using irrigation, 631 587

.71 Source of water

Including wells, reservoirs

72 Irrigation canals

74 Measure and distribution of water

75 Cost of water

78 Machinery

79 Methods of conserving moisture

Including mulching

For dry farming, see 631 586

.8 **Fertilizers and improvement of soil**

Class manufacture of commercial fertilizers [*formerly* *631 8] in 668 62

[807 2] Experiments and research

Class in 631 88

81 History, nature, uses

Including analysis methods of application

.819 History in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e g use of fertilizers in Japan 631 819 52

.82 Mineral additions

Including calcium (lime), gypsum, plaster of Paris, marl, sulfate of iron

631.83 Potash fertilizers

Including wood ashes, potassium chloride, sulfate of potash

Class seaweed [*formerly* *631 83] in 631 87

.84 Nitrogenous fertilizers

Class muck [*formerly* *631 84] in 631.87

.842 Nitrates

.843 Animal industry residues

Including fish, blood, tankage [*formerly* †631 844–†631 846]

For bone meal, see 631 85

[†.844–†.846] Fish, blood, tankage

Class in 631 843

.847 Nitrifying crops

Including nitrification and soil inoculation [*both formerly* *631 46], bacteria

.85 Phosphoric fertilizers

Including rock phosphates, bone meal, basic slag, superphosphate or acid phosphate

Class guano [*formerly* †631 854] in 631 86

.86 Animal manure

Including guano [*formerly* †553 64, †631 854]

.87 Vegetable manures

Including muck [*formerly* *631 84], leaves, seaweed [*formerly* *631.83], residue from vegetable industries

.874 Green manures

Crops plowed under while still green, e g, rye, clover, vetch, cowpeas

.875 Compost

.88 Fertilizer experiments and research

[†.9] Climate and roads

Class agricultural climatology in 630.251 5, roads in 631.28

632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests in crop production

Including blights comprehensive works on destruction of and diseases and pests injurious to both plants and animals on effect and control on plant diseases injuries pests

For injuries diseases and pests of a specific crop or plant see the crop e g diseases and pests of potatoes 633 491 *plant pathology* 581.2 *crop insurance* 368 123 *pest control,* 632 9 *diseases of animals* 636 089 6

.1 Elemental destruction and damage

Including methods of protection

11 Low temperature

12 Excessive heat and drought

14 Hail

15 Lightning

16 Wind and rain

17 Floods

18 Fires

2 Galls

Including cecidiology

For gall insects see 632 7

3 Bacterial diseases

Including bacterial blights e g fire blight wilt

For virus diseases see 632 8

.4 Fungus diseases

Including rusts smuts bunts mildews molds rots

Divide like 589 2 e g smuts 632 427

For fungi see 589.2 *fungicides* 632 952

.5 Injurious plants

Including parasitic plants

58 Weeds [*formerly also* †581 65]

For deleterious plants see 581 65

632 6 **Animal pests**

Including birds, rodents

Divide like 590, except for insects, e g , snails 632 643

For injurious insects, see 632 7

7 **Insect pests**

Divide like 595 7, e g., locusts 632 72

For pesticides, see 632 95, household pest control, 648 7

.8 **Other injurious factors**

Including virus diseases

.9 **Agricultural pest control**

Comprehensive works

Including inspection and regulation by government

For protection from elements, see 632 1, control of a specific pest, the pest, e g , control of flies 632 77, protection of a specific crop, the crop, e g , protection of apple crops 634 11

.93 Plant quarantine

.94 Methods and apparatus of pest control

Including spraying, dusting, fumigating, use of airplanes

For biological control, see 632 96

95 Pesticides

For manufacture of pesticides, see 668 65

951 Insecticides and rodenticides

Including fumigants, contact and stomach poisons, vermicides

952 Fungicides and algicides

953 Disinfection and disinfectants

Including bactericides

954 Herbicides

Chemical weed killers

.96 Biological control

Including natural enemies of pests, e g , praying mantis

633-635 Production of specific crops

Including harvesting [*formerly* †631 556], varieties, yield, storage

For comprehensive works on crop production, see 631 5, agricultural economics, 338 1, scientific classification and description of plants, 582-589

633 Field crops

For plants raised for fruits, see 634, for garden crops, 635, ornamental plants and plants raised for flowers, 635 9, forestry, 634 9

SUMMARY

633 1	Cereals and grains
.2	Pasture grasses
3	Pasture legumes
.39	Other forage crops
4	Root crops
.5	Fiber crops
.6	Sugar and starch plants
.7	Alkaloidal crops
.8	Other plants grown for industrial processing

.1 Cereals and grains

11 Wheat (Triticum aestivum)

12 Buckwheat (Fagopyrum esculentum)

13 Oats (Avena)

.14 Rye (Secale cereale)

.15 Corn (Zea mays)

Including corn harvesting [*formerly* †631 555]

16 Barley (Hordeum)

17 Millet (Panicum miliaceum), sorghum (Andropogon sorghum), and related crops

Including panic grass, prosos broom corn shallu, Kaffir corn, milo maize, durra, Jerusalem corn

For sweet sorghum, see 633 62

18 Rice (Oryza sativa)

.2 Pasture grasses

Including comprehensive works on forage crops, hay

For a specific forage crop, see the subject, e g, clover 633 32

.21 Bluegrass (Poa)

633.22 Orchard grass (Dactylis)

23 Bent grass (Agrostis)

Including redtop

24 Timothy (Phleum)

25 Cereal grasses

Divide like 633 1 e g corn as fodder 633 255

3 Pasture legumes

.31 Alfalfa (Medicago)

32 Clovers (Trifolium)

33 Cowpeas (Vigna)

34 Soybean (Glycine)

For edible seeds of the soybean see 635 655

35 Vetches (Vicia)

36 Peanut (Arachis hypogaea)

For edible seeds of the peanut see 635 659

364 Japan clover (Lespedeza)

366 Sweet clover (Melilotus)

367 Lupine (Lupinus)

.39 Other forage crops

Including cactus sunflower

4 Root crops

For root crops as garden vegetables see 635 1–635 2

41 Beet (Beta vulgaris)

Including mangel wurzel

For sugar beet see 633 63

42 Turnip (Brassica rapa)

43 Carrot (Daucus carota)

44 Parsnip (Pastinaca sativa)

49 Tubers and bulbs

Including Jerusalem artichoke

491 Potato (Solanum tuberosum)

492 Sweet potato (Ipomaea batatas)

633 5 Fiber crops

Plants grown primarily for use in textiles or other industrial uses

51 Cotton (Gossypium)

52 Flax (Linum)

53 Hemp (Cannabis)

54 Jute (Corchorus)

55 Ramie (Boehmeria)

58 Fibers for plaiting basket and wickerwork weaving

Including coir (coconut fiber) raffia esparto hat fibers rushes sedges reeds bamboo osier willow

59 Fibers for other industrial uses

Including filling or stuffing fibers bast fibers

6 Sugar and starch plants

Comprehensive works

61 Sugar cane (Saccharum)

62 Sorghum (Andropogon sorghum)

For sorghum as a cereal crop see 633 17

63 Sugar beet (Beta)

For beet as root crop see 633 41 *as garden vegetable* 635 11

64 Sugar maple

68 Plants raised for starch

Including arrowroot sago palm

7 Alkaloidal crops

For medicinal plants see 633 88

71 Tobacco (Nicotiana)

72 Tea (Camellia thea Link Thea Linn)

73 Coffee (Coffea)

74 Cacao cocoa chocolate (Theobroma)

75 Poppy (Papaver)

76 Cola (Cola acuminata)

77 Maté (Ilex)

78 Chicory (Cichorium)

For chicory as a salad green see 635 54

633 8 Other plants grown for industrial processing

.81 Plants yielding perfume

Including floral and herbal plants, woods, roots, balms and gums grown for perfume

82 Flavorings

Including vanilla, mint, wintergreen, sassafras ginger, hop

For condimental and sweet herbs as garden crops, see 635 7

83 Spices

Including allspice clove, cinnamon, nutmeg

84 Condiments

Including pepper, paprika chili mustard caper horseradish

For condimental and sweet herbs as garden crops, see 635 7

85 Plants yielding oil

Comprehensive works

For plants yielding perfume producing oils see 633.81

86 Plants yielding dyes

.87 Plants yielding tannin

Including sumac

88 Medicinal plants

Including cinchona digitalis, ginseng

89 Resin producing plants

For resin-producing insects, see 638 3 naval stores 634 986 2

895 Rubber producing plants

Including guayule gutta percha

For production of rubber latex from trees see 634 986 5

898 Plants used in making insecticides

Including pyrethrum

For insecticides see 632 951

634 Fruit culture and orchards

Including propagation varieties yield storage of fruits and nuts

For melon see 635 61

SUMMARY

1 Pomaceous or pome fruits

11 Apple (Malus)

12 Crab apple

13 Pear (Pyrus)

14 Quince (Cydonia)

15 Medlar (Mespilus)

16 Loquat (Eriobotrya japonica)

.2 Drupaceous or stone fruits

21 Apricot (Prunus armeniaca)

22 Plum (Prunus)

.23 Cherry (Prunus cerasus)

.24 Racemose cherry

Including wild cherry chokecherry sand cherry

.25 Peach (Amygdalus persica)

26 Nectarine

.3 Citrus fruits

31 Orange

Including sour orange (Citrus aurantium) sweet orange (Citrus sinensis) Valencia navel orange

.32 Special varieties

Including mandarin Temple orange tangerine tangelo

634 323 Grapefruit (Citrus grandis)

Including pomelo shaddock

324 Kumquat (Fortunella)

33 Citron group

331 Citron (Citrus medica)

334 Lemon (Citrus limonia)

337 Lime (Citrus aurantifolia)

.36 Moraceous fruits

37 Fig (Ficus carica)

38 Mulberry (Morus)

39 Breadfruit (Artocarpus altilis)

4 *Minor fruits*

41 Anonaceous fruits

Including sour sop sweet sop Jamaica apple northern papaw, custard apple

For melon papaw, see 634 651

42 Myrtaceous fruits

Myrtle family

Including guava (Psidium)

425 Passifloraceous fruits

Passionflower family

Including passion fruit (maypop)

43 Sapotaceous fruits

Star apple or sapodilla family

44 Anacardiaceous fruits

Including mango Spanish plum

For cashew nuts see 634 573

45 Ebenaceous fruits

Ebony family

Including persimmon

46 Leguminous fruits

Bean family

Including tamarind

634.5 **Nuts**

For wild nut trees see 634.987 *peanuts* 635.659

51 Walnut (Juglans)

Including English black Japanese walnut butternut

52 Hickory nut (Hicoria)

Including pecan pignut

53 Chestnut (Castanea)

Including European American Japanese chestnut chinquapin

54 Filbert, hazelnut, cobnut (Corylus)

55 Almond (Prunus)

57 Other nuts

Including litchi (leechee) ginkgo

573 Cashew (Anacardium occidentale)

574 Pistachio (Pistacia vera)

575 Brazil nut (Bertholletia excelsa)

6 **Palmaceous fruits**

Palm and other tropical subtropical tree fruits

61 Coconut (Cocos nucifera)

62 Date (Phoenix dactylifera)

63 Olive (Olea europaea)

64 Pomegranate (Punica granatum)

651 Papaya (Carica papaya)

Including melon papaw melon zapote

For northern papaw see 634.41

653 Avocado (Persea gratissima)

7 **Small fruits**

71 Rubaceous cane or bramble fruits (Rubus)

711 Raspberry

.713 Blackberry

.714 Loganberry

717 Dewberry

634 72 Ribaceous fruits (Ribes)

721 Currants

722 Garden or common currant (Ribes rubrum)

723 Black currant

724 Buffalo Missouri flowering or golden currant (Ribes aureum)

725 Gooseberry (Saxifragaceae)

73 Huckleberry (Gaylussacia) and blueberry (Vaccinium)

74 Other bush fruits

Including Juneberry buffalo berry barberry elderberry

75 Strawberry (Fragaria)

76 Cranberry (Vaccinium)

77 Herbaceous or nonwoody fruits

771 Musaceous fruits

772 Banana (Musa sapientum)

773 Plantain banana (Musa paradisiaca)

774 Pineapple (Ananas sativus)

775 Cactaceous fruits

Including prickly pear tuna (Opuntia tuna)

8 Grape

81 Viticulture

Including management special techniques equipment

82 Injuries and diseases

Including blights pests

.83 Varieties

Including varieties adapted to specific environments varieties of specific colors

84 American species and stocks

85 Other species and stocks

Divide like 930–999 e g grape culture of Italy 634 854 5

87 Grapes for purposes other than winemaking

872 Table grapes

873 Raisins

634.9 Forestry

Art and science of forming, maintaining, cultivating forests

SUMMARY

.92 Forest economics [*formerly also* †333.75]

Including relation of forests to industries, forest influences on health, recreation

922 Forest geophysics

Including influence on climate, soil, water resources, erosion

925 Forest policy

Including public and private ownership government regulation, importance of forests for watershed protection, waterpower development, timber production

Divide like 930–999, e g, forest policy in the United States 634 925 73

927 Forest resources

Including production distribution, consumption of timber and other forest resources

.928 Forest management

Including personnel organization and plans

Class business management [*formerly* *634 928] in 658 934 9

928 4 Finance

Including valuation timber risks

928 5 Mensuration

Including determination of volume of timber stands, growth and yield, logs and lumber

.93 Forestry engineering

Including surveying construction relating to forest improvement

For a specific engineering process, see the subject, e g, road engineering 625 7

634 94 **Forest ecology**

Reaction of individual trees and tree groups to environment

Including site factors e g light soil, moisture climate [*formerly also* 551 58] formational forest ecology [*formerly also* 581 526 42]

95 **Silviculture**

Establishment development care reproduction of stands of timber

For commercial raising of ornamental trees see 635 977

956 Forestation

Establishment of forest stands

Including seeds and seeding planting reforestation nursery practice planting for shelter belts watershed protection

96 *Protection of forests against injury and disease*

Divide like 632 e g forest fires 634 961 8

For injuries, diseases pests of a specific species see the species e g diseases of pine tree 634 975 1 a specific disease or pest attacking both forest trees and other plants the disease or pest e g tent caterpillar 632 78

97 Forestry of specific kinds of trees

For forest exploitation and utilization see 634 98 cultivation of trees for a specific product the subject e g for production of coffee 633 73

972 Deciduous trees

972 1 Oak

972 2 Maple

For maples raised for sugar see 633 64

972 3 Poplar

972 4 Chestnut

972 5 Beech

972 6 Birch

972 7 Linden and basswood

972 8 Elm

973 Other dicotyledons

Divide like 583 e g locust tree 634 973 32

634 974 Monocotyledons

Divide like 584 e g, palm 634 974 5

975 Coniferous or evergreen trees

975 1 Pine

975 2 Spruce

975 3 Hemlock

975 4 Fir

975 5 Cypress

975 6 Cedar

975 7 Larch

975 8 Sequoia

975 9 Other coniferous trees

.98 Forest exploitation and utilization

Comprehensive works

Class wood technology in 674 1 rough lumber products in 674 28 [*both formerly* *634 98]

For exploitation and utilization of a specific species see the species e g oak bark products 634 972 1 exploitation and utilization of trees for a specific product, the subject, e g for production of quinine 633 88

982 Logging

Including machinery and tools transportation log sorting and grading

For grading lumber see 674 5

---

634 983–634 987 Primary products of forests

For production of secondary and finish products see the subject e g maple syrup 664 132 wood pulp 676 12, latex products 678 53

983 Logs and pulpwood

Class rough lumber products (crossties poles, piling posts mine timbers fuel woods [*all formerly* †634 983]) in 674.28

985 Barks

Including cork tannin barks medicinal barks

634.986 Saps

Including gums, resins, latexes

.9862 Naval stores

Including turpentine orchards, turpentining operations, extraction of gum from pine trees

For turpentine as a by product of pulp and paper industries, see 676 5

.9865 Rubber latex

Including rubber plantations, extraction of latex from rubber-producing trees

For rubber-producing plants other than trees, see 633 895

.9867 Food saps

.987 Fruits and nuts

Including tung oil nuts

For culture of fruits and nuts, see 634 1–634 873

.989 Other forest products

Including pine needles, Spanish moss, forest wastes

.99 Other uses of forests

Including grazing and pasture use, farm woodlands

For camping, see 796 54 fishing hunting as recreation, 799

635 Garden crops (Horticulture)

Plants usually grown on a smaller scale than field crops, raised for food, ornament, home use or commercial marketing

Including truck and home gardening, vegetable gardening

For landscape gardening, see 712, field crops, 633, flower gardening, 635 9

SUMMARY

635.1	Edible roots
.2	Edible tubers and bulbs
.3–5	Edible leaves, flowers, stems
.6	Edible fruits and seeds
7	Condimental and sweet herbs
8	Mushrooms and truffles
9	Flower gardening (Floriculture)

.1 Edible roots

.11 Beet

635.12	Turnip Including rutabaga, celeriac
.13	Carrot
.14	Parsnip
.15	Radish
.16	Salsify, oyster plant, vegetable oyster
.2	Edible tubers and bulbs
.21	Potato
.22	Sweet potato
.23	Yam
.24	Jerusalem artichoke
.25	Onion
.26	Other plants of genus Allium Including leek, garlic, shallot, chive
.3	Edible leaves, flowers, stems
.31	Asparagus
.32	Artichoke
.34	Cabbage Including kale, collard, kohlrabi
.35	Cauliflower Including broccoli
.36	Brussels sprouts
.4	Greens Including mustard, sorrel, dandelion
.41	Spinach
.42	Chard
.48	Rhubarb
.5	Salad greens
.52	Lettuce
.53	Celery
.54	Chicory

635 55 Endive

56 Cresses

Including water cress, garden cress, winter cress

.6 **Edible fruits and seeds**

61 Melon

Including muskmelon, cantaloupe, watermelon

62 Squash

Including pumpkin gourd

63 Cucumber and gherkin

64 Tomato

646 Eggplant

648 Okra

65 Legumes

Including beans

651 Broad bean

652 Kidney bean

Including garden, snap, string bean

653 Lima bean

655 Soybean

For soybean as a forage crop see 633 34

656 Peas

657 Chick pea

658 Lentil

659 Other legumes

Including peanuts

For peanuts as a forage crop, see 633 36

67 Corn

Including sweet corn

677 Popcorn

635.7 **Condimental and sweet herbs**

For growing of condimental plants for industrial use, see 633 84

71 Seasoning leaves and flowers

72 Mint

74 Flavoring for pickles and vinegar

Including dill, tarragon, samphire, costmary

75 Seeds for flavoring

Including anise, coriander, caraway

78 Garnishes

Including parsley, leaf chervil

.8 **Mushrooms and truffles**

.9 **Flower gardening (Floriculture)**

Flowers and ornamental plants grown for home use or commercial marketing

For flowering plants in landscape gardening, see 716

907 4 Flower and garden shows

Including exhibits of potted plants [*formerly* †635 965 5], exhibits of cut flowers [*formerly* †635 966 5]

91 Economics and operations of flower raising

Divide like 631, e g, fertilizers and improvement of soil in the florist business 635 918

For raising a specific species, see the species, e g, roses 635 933 3 of a specific group of plants, the group, e g, foliage plants 635 975, operations common to a variety of plants not limited to floriculture, 631

92 Diseases and injuries of plants

Comprehensive works on diseases and injuries of ornamental plants

For diseases and injuries affecting a specific species, see the species e g rose blight 635 933 3 diseases and injuries common to a variety of plants, not limited to floriculture, 632

93 Plants grouped by life duration

931 Annuals and biennials

Comprehensive works

For a specific species see the species, e g, aster 635 933 55

635 932 Perennials

Comprehensive works

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., rose 635 933 3

933–939 Individual species

Divide like 583–589, e g, cactus 635 933 47

If preferred, arrange alphabetically under 635 933

For a specific species of ornamental tree see 635 977 3–635 977 5, scientific classification and description, 582–589

94 Plants group by means of propagation

Including plants raised from seed runners cuttings

For a specific species, see the species, e g narcissus 635 934 25

944 Bulbs and tubers

95 Plants group by special conditions of growth

For a specific species, see the species, e g, orchid 635 934 15

952 ✓ Plants growing in special climates

Including tropical plants, arctic plants, alpine plants

953 Plants flowering at specific times

Including spring flowering plants, morning blooming plants

954 Plants growing under certain light conditions

Including sunshine, shade artificial light

955 Plants growing under certain soil conditions

Including moist, dry, rich, sandy soils

96 Plants group by purpose

For a specific species, see the species, e g, coleus 635 933 89

963 Borders or edging

964 Lawns

Including grass, other ground cover plants

965 House plants

Including potted plants window gardening

Class exhibits of potted plants [*formerly* †635 965 5] in 635 907 4

.966 Cut flowers

Class exhibits of cut flowers [*formerly* †635 966 5] in 635 907 4

635.966 3 Flower arrangement in vases

966 4 Floral designs

Including set floral pieces wired or tied corsages

967 Special kinds of gardens

967 2 Rock gardens

967 4 Water gardens

Including aquatic plants

967 6 Wild flower gardens

969 Nurseries

For nursery practice in forestry see 634 956
comprehensive works on plant nurseries 631 537

97 Other groupings

For a specific species see the species e g coleus 635 933 89

973 Everlastings

974 Climbing plants

Including vines creepers

975 Foliage plants

Including ferns mosses

976 Shrubs and hedges

Including deciduous and evergreen ornamental and flowering shrubs

977 Trees

Including commercial raising of ornamental trees miniature trees

For use of trees in landscape planning see 715 2 *fruit tree culture* 634 *forestry* 634 9

977 3–977 5 Individual species

Divide like 583–585 e g elm 635 977 396 2

If preferred arrange alphabetically under 635 977 3

98 Plants raised under glass

Including hotbeds cold frames bell glasses forcing of plants

982 Plants raised in greenhouses

Including conservatories

For greenhouses as means of protection and shelter of plants see 631 544

636–638 Animal husbandry

636 Livestock and domestic animals

For scientific classification and description, see 592–599

SUMMARY

08 Livestock management, breeding, care

For management of a specific species, see the spec- horses 636 1

081 Selection and acquisition of stock

For breeding, see 636 082

081 2 Branding and marking

Including catalogs of brands

081 3 Stock farms and ranches

Including descriptions of individual farms

For farms not limited to livestock,

082 Stockbreeding

Including *species, races, breeds, strains*, tion formation of stock, character and flock colony

082 2 Herdbooks, studbooks, flock books

082 4 Breeding and reproduction

Including inbreeding crossbreeding insemination incubation

636 13 Riding horses

Including saddle horses, hunters

14 Carriage horses

15 Draft horses

Including cart horses dray horses

16 Ponies

168 American ponies

Including mustangs broncos, Indian ponies, pintos, quarter horses

18 Other equines

Including asses, mules, zebras

.2 Cattle

Including other large ruminants

Divide 636 208–636 208 7, 636 208 9 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089, e g , branding cattle 636 208 12

For scientific description and classification, see 599 735

21 Uses

Divide like 636 088, e g , cattle for beef production 636 213

For production of a specific breed, see the breed, e g , Jersey 636 224

22 British cattle

.222 Beef breeds

Including Shorthorn, Hereford

223 Scotch Welsh, Irish breeds

Including Aberdeen Angus Galloway

224 Dairy breeds

Including Alderney, Jersey, Guernsey

.225 Scotch and Irish breeds

Including Ayrshire Kerry

.226 Dual purpose breeds

Including Devon Polled Durham Red Polled, Longhorn

.23 German, Dutch Danish, Swiss cattle

.232 Beef breeds

636.234 Dairy breeds

Including Holstein-Friesian

235 Dutch breeds

Including Dutch Friesian

For other Friesian breeds, see 636 234

.235 6 Danish breeds

.236 Dual-purpose breeds

237 Swiss breeds

24 French and Belgian cattle

Including beef, dairy, dual purpose breeds

.27 Other European cattle

Including Russian breeds

28 Non-European cattle

282 American beef breeds

.283 American dairy breeds

Including Holderness, Quebec Jersey

29 Other large ruminants

Including domesticated reindeer, buffalo, camel, zebu

.3 Sheep

Including comprehensive works on sheep, goats, other small ruminants

Divide 636 308–636 308 7, 636 308 9 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089, e g, sheep breeding 636 308 24

For scientific description and classification, see 599 735

31 Uses

Divide like 636 088, e g, production of wool 636 314

32 English sheep

Including long-wooled, short-wooled, mountain breeds

33 German, Dutch, Swiss sheep

Including low country or marsh, upland breeds

34 French and Flemish sheep

35 Italian sheep

636 36 Merino breeds

Including other Spanish breeds

367 Other European Merino breeds

368 Non European Merino breeds

Including American Delaine Australian

.37 Other European sheep

Including Russian breeds

38 Non European sheep

385 Asiatic sheep

386 African sheep

.39 **Goats**

Divide 636 390 8–636 390 87 636 390 89 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089 e g feeding of goats 636 390 84

For scientific description and classification see 599 735

391 Uses

Divide like 636 088 e g raising of goats for milk 636 391 3

392 British goats

Including long haired Irish short haired English goats

393 German and Austrian goats

393 6 Swiss goats

394 French goats

395 Italian goats

396 Spanish goats

397 Other European goats

.398 Non European goats

Including American Asiatic African goats

4 *Swine*

Divide 636 408–636 408 7 636 408 9 like 636 08–636 087 636 089 e g diseases of swine 636 408 96

For scientific description and classification see 599 734

41 Uses

Divide like 636 088 e g production of bacon 636 413

636.42 British swine

421 Small colored breeds

Including Essex, Sussex

422 Small white breeds

Including Windsor, Small Yorkshire, Coleshill

423 Large colored breeds

424 Large white breeds

Including Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, New Leicester, Lincolnshire

426 Medium colored breeds

Including Black Berkshire, Red Berkshire, Red Tamworth

427 Medium white breeds

Including Middle Yorkshire

43 German and Dutch swine

44 French and Swiss swine

45 Italian, Neapolitan, Maltese, Tuscan, Romagnole swine

46 Spanish and Portuguese swine

47 Other European swine

48 Non European swine

481 American swine

482 Poland China

483 Red Jersey or Duroc-Jersey

484 Other American breeds

Including Chester White, Hampshire, Cheshire, Victoria, mulefoot, razorback

485 Asiatic swine

486 African swine

489 Oceanic swine

Including Papuan swine

636 5 Poultry

Divide 636 508–636 508 7, 636 508 9 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089, e g poultry hatching 636.508 24

For scientific description and classification see 598 6

51 Uses

Divide like 636 088 e g raising chickens for egg production 636 513

52 British poultry

Including Dorking Sussex Kent Orpington Redcap

53 German and Dutch poultry*

Including Hamburg Lakenfelds, Ramelsloher, Styrian Bohemian

54 French and Belgian poultry

Including Crèvecoeur, Houdan La Flèche, La Bresse, Faverolles Gournay

55 Italian poultry

Including Leghorn Paduan Polverara Ancona

56 Spanish poultry

Including Castilian, Minorcan, Black Spanish Blue Andalusian Prat

57 Other European poultry

58 Non European poultry

581 American poultry

Including Dominique Jersey Blue Bucks County, Java, Winnebago

582 Plymouth Rock

583 Wyandotte

584 Rhode Island Red

585 Asiatic poultry

Including Cochin China Brahmaputra, Langshan Malay

587 Special varieties

587 1 Bantams

588 Other

Including game deformed silkies frizzles

636 59 Other domestic and game birds

.592 Turkeys

Including North American or wild turkey, Bronze, Bourbon Red

593 Guinea fowl

.594 Pheasants

Including partridge

595 Peacocks

596 Pigeons

Including pouter, English carrier, homing

For military use of pigeons, see 355 424

597 Ducks

598 Geese

.6 **Birds**

Raising, care of domesticated birds, other than poultry, useful for plumage or work, pet birds

For poultry, see 636 5, *scientific description and classification of birds,* 598 2–598 9

68 Song and ornamental birds

686 Caged and aviary birds

686 2 Canaries

Including finches

686 4 Budgerigars (Shell parakeets)

686 5 Parrots

Including macaws, cockatoos

.7 Dogs

Divide 636 708–636 708 7, 636 708 9 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089, e g diseases of dogs 636 708 96

For scientific description and classification, see 599 744 4

71 Breeds of dogs

Comprehensive works on various types and breeds

For a specific breed, see type of usefulness, e g , bulldogs 636 74

636 72 Utility dogs

.73 Draft and other work dogs

Including sled dogs, Eskimo dogs

.74 Watch dogs and herd dogs

Including shepherd dogs, police dogs

.75 Hunting and sleuth dogs

Including sporting dogs, gun dogs, hounds

.76 Pet dogs

765 Toy dogs

.77 Pictures and illustrations of dogs

For painting of dogs, see 758 3

78 Essays, stories, biographies of dogs [*formerly the* *800's]

.8 Cats

Divide 636 808–636 808 7, 636 808 9 like 636 08–636 087, 636 089, e g , feeding of cats 636 808 4

For scientific description and classification, see 599 744 2

81 Breeds

.87 Pictures and illustrations of cats

For painting of cats, see 758 3

.88 Essays, stories, biographies of cats [*formerly the* *800's]

.9 Other useful animals

Including selection, breeding care feeding, training, diseases of specific animals not provided for in 636 1–636 8

Arrange alphabetically by name of animal, using A1 for comprehensive works e g , skunks 636 9 S6

For culture of fish, see 639 3, of insects and other invertebrates, 638

92 Fur farming

Including comprehensive works on raising animals for fur

For raising a specific animal, see the animal, e g , Persian lamb 636 385, mink 636 9, trapping and hunting animals for fur, 639 1

637 Dairy industry

Including management of dairies production analysis testing of dairy products

For sanitary control and inspection of milk and milk products see 614 32

1 Milk industry

11 Dairy farms

Including description of individual farms

Class business management of dairy farms [*formerly* *637 11] in 658 937 1

12 Milk production and composition

Including choice of dairy cows

For a specific breed see the breed e g Jersey 636 224

124 Milking methods

Including hand and machine methods

125 Milking machinery

127 Composition and quality of milk

Including sampling analysis testing

For chemical analysis of milk see 543 2

13 Care of milk

131 Dairy buildings

132 Installations and apparatus for handling milk

133 Treatment of milk

Including cooling filtration pasteurization, sterilization irradiation homogenization

135 Distribution and transportation

14 Forms of milk for utilization and consumption

141 Whole milk

Including fresh milk evaporated milk

142 Condenst milk

143 Dried milk or milk powder

145 Milk sugar (Lactose) [*formerly also* †637 345]

146 Cultured milk

Including fermented milk (kumiss)

637.147 Skim milk

For casein-derived plastics, see 668 43, casein-derived fiber textiles, 677 472

.148 Cream

For ice-cream industry, see 637 4

.17 Milk other than cow's milk

Including mare's, ewe's milk

174 Goat's milk

Including yogurt

18 Substitutes for milk

Including soybean milk, coconut milk

.2 Butter industry

22 Composition and quality of butter

Including analysis, testing

For chemical analysis of butter, see 543.2

23 Buttermaking

Including processes, equipment, packing, transportation

For sanitary control and inspection, see 614 32

.24 By-products

Including buttermilk

[† 28] Butter substitutes

Class in 664 32

.3 Cheese industry

.32 Composition and quality of cheese

Including grades testing analysis

For chemical analysis of cheese, see 543 2

33 Cheese manufacture

Including factories apparatus transportation

For sanitary control and inspection, see 614 32

34 By products

Including whey

[†.345] Milk sugar

Class in 637 145

637 35 Varieties of cheese

.352 Cream cheese

.353 Soft cheese

Including semisoft, blue-mold, white-mold cheese

.354 Hard cheese

.355 Cheese from other than cow's milk

356 Sour-milk cheese

Including cottage cheese, pot cheese

.358 Procest cheese

Including cheese spreads

.4 **Ice-cream industry [*formerly* †*664.15]**

Including sherbets, ices, frozen custards

For ice-cream making at home, see 641 86

638 Insects and other useful invertebrates

For oysters and other mollusks, see 639 4

.1 **Beekeeping**

For scientific description and classification of bees, see 595 799

.11 Management

Including establishment of apiaries, selection of bees

For hive management, see 638 14

.12 Bees

Including habits, varieties

.13 Pasturage for bees

Including nectar plants, pollen plants

For supplementary feeding, see 638 14

14 Hive management

Including handling beehives, breeding, supplementary feeding, swarming control, comb honey removal

Class diseases [*formerly* *638 14] in 638 15

15 Diseases [*formerly* *638 14] and injuries

Including means of protection

638.16 Honey production

Including composition, preparation, varieties, alterations, substitutes

.169 Uses of honey

Including use of honey in medicine, e g , royal jelly

.17 Beeswax and other honeybee products

.19 Bees as pollinating agents

.2 Silkworm cultivation

.3 Resin- and dye-producing insects

Including lac insects, cochineal

For manufacture of lacquer, see 667.75, of shellac, 667.79

.5 Culture of miscellaneous useful invertebrates

.51 Worms

Including earthworm culture

.57 Praying mantises

639 Hunting and fishing industries

For hunting and fishing as sport, see 799, conservation of wildlife, 799, seafood processing and preservation, 664.94

.1 Hunting and trapping

For sealing, see 639.29

.11 Game animals

Including deer, big game fur-bearing animals

For fur farming, see 636.92

.12 Wild fowl

.14 Crocodiles and alligators

.2 Fishing, sealing, whaling

.21 Fresh-water fisheries

.22 Salt-water fisheries

639 27 Specific kinds of fish and amphibians

Divide like 597, e g , salmon fishing 639 275

.279 9 Reptiles

Including turtles, terrapins

For hunting and trapping crocodiles and alligators, see 639 14

28 Whaling

.29 Sealing

.3 Fish culture

.31 Culture in fresh water

Including lakes, streams

.311 Ponds

Including artificial ponds

.32 Culture in salt water

34 Ornamental fish culture

.37 Culture of specific kinds of fish and amphibians

Divide like 597, e g , frog culture 639 378

.379 9 Culture of reptiles

Including alligator farms, snake farms

.4 Mollusk fisheries

Including clams, mussels, scallops

41 Oysters

412 Pearl fishing

.5 Crustacean fisheries

Including lobsters, crabs, shrimp

.6 Other sea food

Including sea urchins, seaweed

.7 Sponges and coral

640 Home economics

Including public and private establishments

714 Extension work

641 Food

Including food for laborers [*formerly* †331 834]

For physiology of nutrition see 612 3 food in relation to health 613 2

01 Epicurism

Including pleasures of eating esthetics of cookery gourmets

For ethical aspects of gluttony see 178 9 overweight and health 613 25

1 Food values

Applied nutrition

Including food requirements for adults [*formerly* †612 395] nutrients required to meet body needs their proportions in various foods application of principles of nutrition in diet control

11 Organic food ingredients

Composition of foodstuffs

12 Proteins

Including meat *eggs nuts legumes*

13 Carbohydrates

Including *vegetables cereals fruits sugar*

14 Fats and oils

15 *Inorganic food ingredients*

16 Water

17 Salts minerals ash ingredients

18 Vitamins

For pharmacology of vitamins see 615 328 vitamin therapy 615.854

641.3 Animal and vegetable foods

Comprehensive works on foods derived from specific agricultural products

Including history, customs, supply, value, preparation

For cookery of specific foodstuffs, see 641.6, *commercial manufacture of foods,* 664

.31 Food selection and buying

Including retail food markets [*formerly* †641 4], quality, cost, other factors in buying food

.33 Products of field crops

.331 Cereals

Divide like 633 1, e g, rice 641 331 8

.336 Sugar

.337 Alkaloidal plants

Divide like 633 7, e g, coffee 641 337 3

.338 Seasonings and flavorings

Divide like 633 8, e g, spices 641 338 3

.34 Fruits

Divide like 634 e g, apples 641 341 1

.35 Vegetables

Divide like 635, e g potatoes 641 352 1

.36 Meat

Divide like 636 e g, chicken 641 365

.37 Dairy products

Divide like 637, e g, butter 641 372

.38 Honey

.39 Products of hunting and fishing

Divide like 639, e g, oysters 641 394 1

641.4 **Home preservation of foods**

Including comprehensive works on methods of food preservation

Class retail food markets [*formerly* †641.4] in 641 31

For commercial preservation of food, see 664 8, commercial preparation of fruit and vegetable juices, 663 63, home preparation of jelly, jam, marmalade, 641 8

42 Home canning [*formerly* †641.48]

Including fruits, vegetables, soups

For canning meats, see 641 49

44 Drying and dehydration [*formerly* †641 484]

Including concentrated and extracted foods

For drying meats, see 641 49

45 Freezing [*formerly* †641 485]

For freezing meats, see 641 49

46 Brining and pickling [*both formerly* †641 48]

For brining, pickling meats, see 641 49

[† 48] Home canning, pickling

Class canning in 641 42 pickling in 641 46

[† 484] Drying and dehydration

Class in 641 44

[† 485] Freezing

Class in 641 45

49 Meat processing and preservation

Including canning, drying freezing, brining, smoking, pickling, home slaughtering, dressing

493 Poultry processing and preservation

494 Sea food processing and preservation

.5 **Food preparation**

Including cookbooks, recipes

For menus and meal planning, see 642 1 commercial manufacture and preparation of food, 664

56 Cookery for special conditions

Including low-calorie recipes allergy cooking

562 Infants and children

For management of meals for infants and children see 649 3

641 563 Invalids and aged

Including hospital cookery

For food in relation to health, see 613 2, *dietotherapy,* 615 853

565 Religious limitations of food

566 Christian seasons and days

Including Lent, fast days

567 Limitations in other religions

Including Jewish Buddhist

57 Institutional and quantity cookery

For institutional management, see 647 9 *hospital cookery,* 641 563

572 Hotel and restaurant cookery

573 Armed services cookery

Including army, navy air force

[† 574] Shipboard cookery

Class in 641 575

575 Travel cookery

Including shipboard cookery [*formerly* †641 574]

576 Railway dining and buffet car cookery

577 Canteen cookery

Including emergency mass feeding in times of disaster

578 Outdoor cookery

Including camp cooking, barbecues

For camping see 796 54

58 Cookery with special appliances, utensils, fuels

For kitchen equipment, see 643 3

583 Cooking by oil

584 Cooking by gas

585 Cooking by alcohol

Including chafing dish cookery

586 Cooking by electricity

Including cooking with electric skillet frying pan, roaster, grill waffle iron

641 587 Steam cookery

Including pressure cooking

588 Slow and fireless cookery

Including Aladdin ovens

.59 Cookery of special countries

Including international cookery

591 Arctic and cold weather cookery

592 Tropical and hot weather cookery

593–599 National and regional cookery

Divide like 930–999, e g , German cooking 641 594 3

6 Cookery of specific foodstuffs

Divide like 641 3, e g , meat cookery 641 66

7 Cookery techniques

Including braising, stewing, steaming

For cookery of specific foodstuffs see 641 6, quantity cookery, 641 57 cookery with special appliances, 641 58

71 Baking and roasting

For home baking of cakes, see 641 631, desserts, 641 8

73 Boiling and simmering

Including soups

76 Broiling, grilling, barbecuing

For cooking by electricity, see 641 586, outdoor cookery, 641 578

.77 Frying and sautéing

.8 Composite dishes

Including jelly jam marmalade comprehensive works on desserts

For a specific dessert see the type of food e g , pies 641 631

.81 Sauces, relishes, appetizers

Including canapés hors d oeuvres

83 Salads

84 Sandwiches

For planning of picnic and travel lunches, see 642 3

641 85 Confectionery

Including candies, sweets, bonbons, comprehensive works on use and making of confectionery

For commercial manufacture of candies and confectionery, see 664 15

86 Ice cream

Including ices, sherbets, puddings comprehensive works on use and making of ice cream

For commercial manufacture of ice cream, see 637 4

87 Beverages

Including soft drinks, comprehensive works on use and making of beverages

For commercial manufacture of beverages, see 663, *bartenders' manuals and recipes,* 663 8

642 Dining and food service

For etiquette of hospitality, see 395 3, *table service,* 642 6

.1 Home and family meal planning

Including menus, meal management

[† 2] Refreshments

Class in 642 4

3 Camp, picnic, travel lunches

Including packt lunches

For camp cooking, see 641 578

4 Entertaining

Including light refreshments [*formerly* †642 2], luncheons, dinners receptions, buffet suppers, banquets, church suppers

.47 Catering

Service for all types of functions

For systems for serving large numbers, see 642 5

[† 48] Toasts, table anecdotes, conversation

Class in 808 85

642.5 Systems for serving large numbers

Including table d'hôte, à la carte

For quantity cookery, see 641.57, restaurant management, 647 95

.57 Lunch counters and cafeterias

Including quick service, short orders, snack bars, canteens

.58 School lunchrooms and cafeterias

Including management, service

For school meals, see 371 716

.6 Table service

Including table setting, carving, serving, changing courses

.7 Table furnishings

Including linen, china, silver, crystal, comprehensive works on use, history, making of each

For manufacture of table linens, see 677 6, of dishes and glassware, 666, of silverware, 739 238 3, of cutlery, 683 82

.8 Table decorations

Selection and arrangement of flowers, colors, lights

For floral arrangements, see 635 966 3

643 Home planning

Location and arrangement of home for convenient and economic administration

Including natural lighting

For architecture, see 720, materials and construction, 690, heating and ventilation in the home, 644, heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering, 697 artificial lighting, 644 3, plumbing and gas fitting, 696, furnishing, 645, interior decoration, 747

.3 Kitchens and equipment

Including location arrangement, comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of kitchen utensils, kitchen equipment

For cookery with special utensils or fuels, see 641 58, manufacture of kitchen utensils, 683 82, of kitchen equipment, 683 88

.4 Dining areas

Including pantries, breakfast rooms, bars

643 5 **Other special rooms**

Including living rooms, bedrooms, bathrooms, sunrooms, laundries, storage rooms

For laundry equipment, see 648.1, storage of materials, 648 8

.6 **Household appliances**

Comprehensive works

Including electric appliances, comprehensive works on laborsaving installations

For a specific appliance, see the use, e g, vacuum cleaners 648 5, manufacture of household appliances, 683 8

.7 **Household repair and home improvement**

Including remodeling, "how to do it" and 'fix it" books, yard or garden improvement

For building construction, see 690, built in furniture, 684.2, furniture repair, 645 4

644 **Heating, lighting, ventilation, water supply**

Description, suitability, choice, operation of systems in households

.1 Heating systems and appliances for household use [*formerly* *697]

Including comprehensive works on equipment

For installation, see 697, manufacture of equipment, 683 88

3 Domestic lighting [*formerly* *621 32]

Including lamps [*formerly also* †665 6], fixtures, fittings, accessories, comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For electric lighting, see 621 32, decorative lighting, 747 92, manufacture of fixtures, equipment, 683 8, natural lighting, 643

5 *Home ventilation [formerly *697]*

Including air conditioning for the home

For manufacture of ventilating and air conditioning equipment, see 697 9

6 Domestic water supply

Including hot-water supply

For water supply engineering, see 628 1, plumbing, 696 1

645 Home furnishing [*formerly* *747]

Furnishings from the point of view of the home decorator or housewife

For interior decoration, see 747, manufacture of home furnishings, 684

.1 Floor coverings

Including carpets rugs, linoleum, comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For manufacture of carpets and rugs, see 677 643, handmade rugs, 746 7, Oriental rugs, 746 75

.2 Wall coverings

Including wallpaper, paint

For wallpaper design see 745 54

.3 Window and door furnishings

Including curtains, draperies, shades, blinds, accessories, comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For manufacture of draperies, hangings, curtains, see 684 3

.4 Furniture and accessories

Including upholstery of furniture slip covers, comprehensive works on use and manufacture of furniture

For manufacture of furniture, see 684 1, of slip covers, 684 3

.6 Furnishings for special rooms

For decoration of specific rooms, see 747 7

.8 Outdoor furnishings

Including garden and patio furnishings comprehensive works on manufacture use history

For manufacture of garden, patio porch furniture, see 684 18

646 Management of clothing and personal appearance

Including clothing for workers [*formerly* †331 836] comprehensive works on clothing

For social and historic aspects of costume see 391 *apparel manufacture* 687 *manufacture of leather and fur garments* 685 2 *of footwear* 685 3 *of gloves and mittens* 685 4 *ethics of personal appearance* 177 4

01 Fashions

Including psychology and economics of fashions home clothing design comprehensive works on clothing design

For fashion modeling see 659 152 *commercial clothing design* 687 1

09 Climate and clothing

Including seasonal arctic tropical clothing

For military uniforms see 355 14

1 Textiles and fibers

Comprehensive works on materials used by housewife

For manufacture of textiles see 677

2 Sewing [*formerly also* †746 42]

Including mending darning reweaving machine sewing at home

Class embroidery in 746 44 knitting crocheting tatting in 746 43 [*all formerly* *646 2]

For clothing construction see 646 4 *manufacture of sewing machines* 681 746 2

[†26–†27] Knitting crocheting tatting

Class in 746 43

3 Clothing selection and buying

Guides to quality workmanship

32 Clothing for men

34 Clothing for women

36 Clothing for children

Including layettes baby clothes

646 4 **Clothing construction**

Including dressmaking directions for cutting and fitting remodeling patternmaking for various types of clothing and accessories

For commercial garment making see 687 1

42 Underwear

43 Outer house garments

Including dresses coats trousers

45 Outdoor garments

Including overcoats stoles sweaters

For millinery see 646 5

47 Garments for special purposes

Including lounging garments sportswear

48 Accessories

Including neckties collars cuffs belts aprons handkerchiefs

5 **Millinery**

Hatmaking at home

Including comprehensive works on use making history of hats

For commercial millinery see 687 4

6 **Care of clothing at home**

For home laundering see 648 1

62 Dry cleaning of clothes

For commercial dry cleaning see 667 12

63 Dyeing

For commercial dyeing see 667 2

7 **Care of personal appearance**

Including cleanliness good grooming charm bathing toilet

For personal hygiene see 613 manufacture of accessories for personal grooming 688 5

72 Beauty culture

Including professional hairdressing for women [*formerly* *646 74] professional treatment of skin nails [*formerly* *646 75] cosmetology administration of beauty shops

For personal care at home see 646 73 barbering 646 74 *manufacture of cosmetics 668 55*

646 73 Home care of skin and hair

For professional beauty treatment, see 646 72, manufacture of cosmetics, 668 55

74 Barbering

Including barbers' manuals, tools, materials, hairdressing for men, shaving, administration of barbershops

Class hairdressing for women [*formerly* *646 74] in 646 72

75 Slenderizing salons

Including massage, steam baths, professional reducing treatments

Class manicure [*formerly* *646 75] in 646 72

For exercise and health, see 613 71, reducing exercises, 796 41

647 Household management

Including organization, administration of private and public households

.1 Household expenses

Including budgets, finances, costs, shopping and buying for the home

For food selection and buying, see 641 31, clothing selection and buying, 646 3

.2 Household employees

Indoor servants

Selection and training of housekeepers, hostesses, cooks, butlers, maids, waitresses, laundresses, janitors, emergency help

Class outdoor employees [*formerly* *647 2] in 647 3

.3 Outdoor employees [*formerly* *647.2]

Including gardeners, chauffeurs, laborers

6 Hours and duties

Class wages [*formerly* †647 6] in 331 284 7

.9 Institutional household management

Including cooperative housekeeping [*formerly also* †334 4], collective housekeeping janitorial duties

For housing of laborers, see 331 833, housing and health, 613 5

92 Apartment house management

647.94 Hotel management

Including inns, taverns, hostels, clubs

For motels, see 647 97

943–.949 History and local treatment

Including history, description of specific hotels

Divide like 930–999, e g , Mayflower Hotel, Washington, D C 647 947 53

95 Restaurant management

Including restaurants for laborers [*formerly* †331 835], cafeterias, tea rooms, canteens, soda fountains, bars

For restaurant cookery, see 641 572, service, 642 5

953–959 History and local treatment

Including history, description of specific restaurants

Divide like 930–999, e g , restaurants in Washington, D C 647 957 53

96 Household management of other public buildings

Divide like 725, e g , management of office buildings 647 962 3

969 8 Religious and ecclesiastical buildings

Divide like 726, e g , management of monastery buildings 647 969 87

969 9 Educational and scientific buildings

Including buildings for research, learned societies, community centers

For management of school buildings, see 371 62, of museum buildings, 069 2, of library buildings, 025 9

.97 Tourist accommodation management

Including tourist and trailer camps, tourist homes, motor courts, motels

For hotels see 647 94

648 Household sanitation

1 Home laundering

Including processes, equipment, supplies for washing, drying ironing [*all formerly* †648 2–†648 4]

For home processes of dry cleaning, see 646 62, commercial laundering 667 13 manufacture of laundry equipment, 683 88

[†2–†4] Washing, drying, ironing

Class in 648 1

648.5 House cleaning

Including sweeping, dusting, polishing, dishwashing, by hand or with appliances, e g , vacuum cleaners

For manufacture of household appliances, see 683 8

.7 Household pests

Control and eradication

For insecticides, see 632 951

.8 Storage

Including preparation of materials for storage

For storage rooms, see 643 5

649 Child care and home nursing

.1 Child care and management

Guides for parents on care and training of infants and children

For child psychology, see 136 7, *pediatrics,* 618 92, *sociological aspects of child and the family,* 301 427

.2 Nursery management and routine

.3 Feeding and meals

Including food requirements for children [*formerly* †612 394], food for infants [*formerly* †613 22]

For cookery for infants and children, see 641 562

.4 Clothing, dress, cleanliness

For making of children's clothes see 646, *manufacture of children's clothing,* 687 13

5 Recreation and play

Including creative activities in the home, e g , paper work

.55 Amusements

Including toys, dolls, games in the home

For toy and doll manufacture, see 688 72, *indoor games and amusements,* 793

6 Manners and habits

8 Home nursing

Home care of the sick, invalids and infirm

For geriatrics, see 618 97, *pediatrics,* 618 92

650 Business and business methods

For chambers of commerce, see 381, businessmen's service clubs, e g, Rotary, 366

19 Success in business

Achievement of material success

For success in living, see 174

651 Office management

Including specific types of offices

Class manufacture of business machines [*formerly* *651] in 681 14

For writing, see 652, shorthand, 653, accounting, 657

.1 Office buildings

Comprehensive works

Including location layout, lighting, heating, ventilating, air conditioning sanitary facilities

For architecture of commercial buildings, see 725 2, heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering, 697, plumbing, 696, illumination engineering, 621 32

.2 Office equipment

Including supplies [*formerly* †651 46], fixtures, furnishings

For stationery supplies, see 651 71

23 Office furniture

Including comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history

For manufacture of office furniture, see 684 1

.26 Office mechanization and automation

Including electronic data processing in business and [illegible]

For [illegible]
e.g, [illegible]
e g [illegible], [illegible]
for a [illegible] in offices, the subject, e g, typewriters 652 3

262 Telecommunication equipment

Including telephones, intercom systems, loudspeakers

263 Voice recording and dictating machines

264 Calculators, tabulators, statistical machines

For accounting see 657

265 Numbering, counting, dating machines

651 3 **Office organization and administration**

32 Administrative units

Including management of branch offices, of office departments, divisions, sections

34 Management of office personnel [*formerly* *658 3]

Including selection in service training [*formerly* †651 455], promotion, demotion, termination

37 Job descriptions of office personnel

Including handbooks, manuals, occupational books

372 Office managers

373 Subadministrators

Including department, division section heads

374 Other employees

374 1 Secretaries

374 2 Bookkeepers

374 3 Clerical workers

Including typists, stenographers, clerks

38 Office salary administration [*formerly* *658 32]

Including bonus systems, profit sharing programs pay increases, pension systems, fringe benefits

For vacation and sick leave, see 651 42

4 Office efficiency

For office mechanization and automation see 651 26

42 Office attendance [*formerly* *658 381]

Including attendance records lunch and coffee breaks, overtime vacation and sick leave

44 Office rules and regulations

For office attendance, see 651 42

† 455] In service training

Class in 651 34

46] Supplies

Class in 651 2

47 Office inventories

651.5 **Business records management**

Information storage and retrieval systems in business

Including filing, indexing, preservation, destruction of business correspondence, reports, minutes, other special material [*formerly* †*651 6]

.53 Filing systems

Including numerical, alphabetical, chronological, classified arrangements

.54 Active files

.56 Inactive files (Business archives)

[†*.6] Special material

Class in 651 5

.7 **Preparation of written business communications**

Including writing, dictating, revising, editing

For records management, see 651 5

.71 Stationery supplies

Including letterheads, memo heads, post cards, envelopes

.74 Style manuals and business linguistics

Divide like 420–499, e g, business Spanish 651 746

For style manuals for typewriting, see 652 32

.75 Business correspondence

For sales letters, see 658 824, collection letters, 658 884

.77 Business minutes

.78 Business reports

652 Writing

For shorthand see 653 authorship techniques, 029 6, literary composition, 808

.1 **Penmanship**

Comprehensive works

For handwriting analysis and identification, see 137 7, in criminal investigation, 364 122, paleography, 417, manuscripts, 091, methods of teaching handwriting in elementary schools, 372 51

652.3 **Typewriting**

Including comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of typewriters

Class manufacture of typewriters [*formerly* *652 3] in 681 61

For job descriptions of typists, see 651.374 3

.302 **Typewriter manuals**

Including description, operation, maintenance, repair of typewriters

Arrange alphabetically by name of typewriter using A1 for comprehensive works, e g , Royal typewriters 652 302 R8

307 6 **Speed tests (Timed writing)**

.32 **Style manuals for typewriting**

322 **Letter typewriting**

323 **Manuscript typewriting**

Including typewriting theses, manuscripts for publication

.324 **Tabulation typewriting**

.4 **Duplicating methods**

Comprehensive works

Including stencil work

Class manufacture of machines duplicating by offset and by stencils [*both formerly* *652 4] in 681 6

For printing see 655 1–655 3, *photoduplication*, 778 1, *microphotography*, 778 315

8 **Cryptography and cryptanalysis**

Comprehensive works

Including business codes and ciphers

For a specific application of cryptography or cryptanalysis, see the subject, e g , telegraphic codes 621 382 1

653 Shorthand

.1 Principles and theories

Including legibility, brevity, simplicity

For principles and theories of a specific shorthand system, see the system, e g, principles of Gregg shorthand 653 427

.18 Applications of shorthand

Including personal use, office dictation, shorthand reporting

For job descriptions of stenographers, see 651.374 3, of secretaries, 651 374 1

.2 Abbreviation systems

Systems using conventional letters

Including Notehand®, Speedwriting®

.3 Machine shorthand systems and machines

Including Stenotype®, Stenograph®

Class manufacture of shorthand machines [*formerly* *653 3] in 681 61

For dictating and recording machines, see 651.263, manufacture of shorthand machines, 681 61

.4 Shorthand systems

Textbooks, theories techniques applications

Including all types of pen or pencil shorthand

For abbreviation systems, see 653 2, machine systems, 653 3

41 Multilingual shorthand systems

42 English language shorthand systems

421 Early forms of shorthand

Shorthand systems to 1837

For history of shorthand, see 653 09

422 Shorthand systems essentially nonphonetic

Including alphabetic (based on conventional spelling), syllabic, arbitrary types

---

653 423–653 428 Shorthand systems essentially phonetic

423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems

For Pitmanic systems, see 653 424

653 424 Pitmanic shorthand systems

Including Isaac Pitman Benn Pitman Graham Munson many others

425 Geometric joined vowel systems

Including Pernin Sloan Lindsley Dewey (1922)

For Dewey (1936) see 653 428

426 Semigeometric script geometric semiscript shorthand systems

Including Malone

For Gregg see 653 427

427 Gregg

428 Script shorthand systems

Including Dewey (1936)

For Dewey (1922) see 653 425 *Gregg* 653 427

43–499 Shorthand systems by language

Divide like 430–499 e g German language shorthand systems 653 43

For English language shorthand systems see 653 42

[†654] Communication

Class in 384

[† 1–† 4] **Wire telegraphy**

Class in 384 1

[† 5] **Submarine cable telegraphy**

Class in 384 4

[† 6] **Telephonic communication**

Class in 384 6

[† 7] **Alarm systems**

Class in 384 7

[† 8] **Pneumatic dispatch**

Class in 383 145

[† 9] **Other signaling devices**

Class in 384 9

655 Printing, publishing, bookbinding

Class manufacture of printing presses [*formerly* *655] in 681 62

For prints and print making, see 760, book illustration, 741 64, value and influence of the book, 002, bibliography, 010, music printing and publishing, 781 98

SUMMARY

655 1	History of printing
2	Type and typography
.3	Printing processes
.4	History of publishing and bookselling
.5	Publishing and bookselling (Book trade)
.6	Copyright
.7	Bookbinding

655.1–655.38 Printing and printing processes

1 History of printing

.108 87 Printers' marks

11 Invention of printing

12 Celebration of printing anniversaries

14–19 Printing in specific countries

Including histories and accounts of specific printing establishments [*formerly* *655 4]

Divide like 940–999, e g , printing in France 655 144

.2 Type and typography

Including composition

.21 Type founding

[†.22] Platemaking

Class in 655 3

.24 Type faces

Design and styles

Including specimen books

For decorative lettering, see 745 6

.25 Hand composition [*formerly* *655 28]

Hand typesetting

Including page design, type distribution

.255 Proofreading

655 258 Style manuals

27 Imposition and lockup

28 Machine composition

Machine typesetting

Class manufacture of composing machines in 681 6 hand composition in 655 25 [*both formerly* *655 28]

282 Linotype® and Monotype® composition

Including Intertype® composition

283 Typewriter composition

Including Varityper® teletypesetter composition

3 Printing processes

Offset relief intaglio printing processes

Including platemaking [formerly †655 22] presswork comprehensive works on printing presses on practical printing

For manufacture of printing presses see 681 6? *composition,* 655 2

31 Mechanical printing techniques

For photomechanical printing techniques see 655 32

312 Letterpress printing

Printing from metallic type

314 Plate printing

Printing from stereotypes electrotypes autotypes

Including printing commercial books newspapers magazines

For printing from machine engravings see 655 318

315 Planographic printing

Including commercial lithography

316 Silk screen printing

318 Machine engraving [*formerly* †768] and printing

Including engraving and printing of bank notes bonds securities paper money postage stamps

32 Photomechanical printing techniques [*formerly* †774]

Including photogelatin collotype photoprint processes

325 Photolithography [*formerly* †775]

Including photo-offset offset lithography

655.326 Photometallography [*formerly* †776]

Including photozincography, photoalgraphy, photoaluminography

.327 Photomechanical engraving [*formerly* †777]

Including photoengraving, photoetching, photogravure, photointaglio

.38 Printing for the blind

Including Braille printing

.4 History of publishing and bookselling

Divide like 930–999, e g, history of publishing and book trades in England 655 442

Class history of the making of books in 002, individual printing establishments in 655 14–655 19, chapbooks in 398 5 [*all formerly* *655 4]

For book trade, see 655 5, *copyright,* 655.6, *history of printing,* 655 1

[*.45] Bookbinding

Class in 655 7

.5 Publishing and bookselling (Book trade)

Including author-publisher relations, e g, selection of manuscript, price

For newspaper publishing, see 070, *music publishing,* 781 98, *history of publishing and bookselling,* 655 4

.53 Book design

Including format

.54 Cost of manufacture

.56 Retail book trade

57 Subscription book trade

.58 Direct-mail book trade

Including publishing societies book clubs

.59 Government and other official publishing

.592 Institutional publishing

Including publishing by universities

655 6 **Copyright**

Protection of original literary artistic expression

62 Copyright of nonbook materials

Including art maps motion pictures music photographs

Divide like 000–999 e g, music copyright 655 627 8

63 International copyright

64–69 Copyright in specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g, United States copyright 655 673

7 Bookbinding [*formerly* †686, *655 45]

For binding and repair of books in libraries see 025 7 *book trade* 655 5

72 Hand bookbinding

73 Commercial bookbinding

Including materials tools machinery techniques

74 Types of bindings

For rare bindings see 095

.742 Leather bindings

743 Cloth bindings

Including imitation leather bindings

744 Paper bindings

Including cardboard bindings

76 Book ornamentation

Including tooling, lettering marbling gilding

For decorative lettering see 745 6

[†656] **Transportation**

Class transportation services in 385–388 mechanical aspects of railroading in 625 27 seamanship in 623 88 sea navigation in 623 89

657 Accounting

Principles procedures equipment

For business mathematics see 511 8 comprehensive works on office calculators and tabulators 651.264

657 2–657 67 Branches of accounting

For a branch of accounting applied to a specific industry or occupation see 657 8

2 Bookkeeping (Constructive accounting)

Single and double entry bookkeeping

Including posting trial balances adjusting and closing books

For job descriptions of bookkeepers see 651 374 2

3 Financial statements

Including adjustment accounts profit and loss statements balance sheets good will evaluation depreciation liquidation realization

4 Cost accounting

Systems of ascertaining total cost of a service or finisht product

[*5] Accounting systems

Class in 657 8

6 Public accounting (C P A practice)

62 Installation of accounting systems

64 Auditing (Analytical accounting)

Including internal and public auditing detection of frauds and embezzlements in accounts

67 Tax accounting

8 Accounting systems in specific industries and occupations [*formerly* *657 5]

Including bookkeeping financial statements cost accounting auditing tax accounting in specific industries and occupations

If preferred instead of systematic arrangement in 657 83–657 869 arrange alphabetically by name of industry or occupation e g accounting systems for dentists 657 8 D4

83 Services

833 Finance and real estate

657.834 Professional services

For accounting for libraries see 025.11 for museums, 069.6

.835 Government

For government budgeting and accounting see 351.72, 352.17 military accounting, 355.62

.836 Insurance

.838 Public utilities

Including transportation communication

.839 Wholesale and retail trade

.86 Commodities

.862 Mining industries

.863 Agricultural industries

For farm accounting see 631.16

.867 Manufacturing industries

Including accounting in motor vehicle engineering [*formerly* 1629.213 7]

.869 Construction industries

658 Business and industrial management

Managerial methods policies operations

Including comprehensive works on management

For public administration see 350 office management 651 accounting 657 advertising, 659.1 factory engineering 621.7

SUMMARY

658.01	Theories of management
.1	Organization for control
.2	Plant equipment and facilities
.3	Personnel management and administration
.5	Production management
.7	Procurement storage shipment
.8	Marketing (Distribution of goods)
.9	Management of specific businesses and industries

.01 Theories of management

Including efficiency

658.1 Organization for control

For economic organization, see 338 7–338 8

[† 112] Location

Class in 658 21

114 Forms of ownership

For intercorporate relationships see 658 16

114 1 Individual proprietorships

114 2 Partnerships

Including limited partnerships [*formerly* †658 114 3]

[† 114 3] Limited partnerships

Class in 658 114 2

114 4 Stock companies

Unincorporated companies

114 5 Corporations

114 6 Trusts

14 Capitalization

Raising capital funds for establishment and promotion of enterprises thru loans sale of stocks bonds other securities

For credit systems see 332 7 *capital as wealth,* 339

15 Financial management

Interpretation and utilization of financial statements for managerial purposes

For preparation of financial statements, see 657 3, *disbursements* 658 17

151 Financial managers

Including directors trustees receivers

152 Control of investments

154 Budgetary control

155 Profit and loss studies

156 Dividend policies

157 Savings programs

658 16 Intercorporate relations

Including mergers, consolidations, holding companies, liquidations for control of management

Class internal organization [*formerly* *658 16] in 658 39

For organization to control production, see 338 8, forms of ownership, 658 114

.17 Disbursements

171 Taxation

Effects of taxation on managerial policies, methods, operations

For comprehensive works on corporation taxes, see 336.243

171 2 Federal taxes

171 3 State taxes

171 4 Local taxes

.2 Plant equipment and facilities

For design and construction of business and industrial buildings, see 725 2–725 4

21 Location of plant [*formerly also* †658 112]

Including location in relation to transportation markets, labor supply

23 Plant layout

Floor space arrangement for operations storage, comfort, convenience of employees

Including layout in specific industries and businesses, e g, automobile industry [*formerly* †629 234 2 *629 23]

24 Lighting equipment

For illumination engineering, see 621 32

25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning

For heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering, see 697

28 Safety equipment

For fire prevention and protection see 614.84

[† 281] Materials handling

Class in 658 512

658 3 Personnel management and administration [*formerly also* †331 14]

Including personnel management and administration in specific industries and businesses e g automobile industry [*formerly* †629.234 3] comprehensive works on management and administration of office and factory workers

Class management of office personnel [*formerly* *658 3] in 651 34

31 Employment practices

311 Selection of personnel [*formerly also* †331 115]

Including recruiting interviewing testing placing prospective employees

Class employment agencies [*formerly* *658 311] in 331 115

For labor market see 331 112 *discrimination in employment* 331 113

312 In service management of personnel [*formerly also* †331 123–†331 125]

Including performance ratings promotions transfers demotions

For merit ratings see 658 322 6 *in service training* 658 386 *termination of service* 658 313

312 4 Foremanship and supervision

For training foremen see 658 386

313 Termination of service

Including discharge administrative leave retirement terminal interviews

For pension systems see 658 325

314 Employee morale

Including incentives [*formerly* *658 32] suggestion systems [*formerly* *658 315] privileges

For merit ratings see 658 322 6

315 Employer-employee relationships

Class suggestion systems [*formerly* *658 315] in 658 314

For labor management conciliation see 331 15

.315 2 Employee representation in management [*formerly also* †331 152]

For labor management committees see 331 152

.315 5 Management of employee grievances

Including grievance procedures

658 32 Wage and salary administration

Class job analysis in 658 511, incentives in 658 314, office salary administration in 651 38 [*all formerly* *658 32]

For wages and earnings, see 331 2

321 Payroll administration

Including methods, procedures

322 Compensation plans

322 2 Job evaluation

Including job classification in terms of compensation

For job analysis, see 658 511

322 5 Bonus systems

.322 6 Merit ratings

For incentives, see 658 314, *performance ratings*, 658 312

324 Profit sharing [*formerly also* †331 24]

325 Pensions

Including administration of retirement and disablement compensation

For industrial pension systems, see 331 252

38 Conditions of employment

For industrial sociology, see 331 8

381 Work schedules

Including hours, vacations leave policies absenteeism

Class office attendance [*formerly* *658 381] in 651 42

382 Employee welfare

Including health and safety programs, counseling services

386 In service training

Including job instructions training executives and foremen

For foremanship and supervision, see 658 312 4

39 Internal organization [*formerly* *658 16]

Including military, line and staff, functional systems of intercommunication

.5 Production management

For production economics see 338 6–338 8

[507 2] Production research and development

Class in 658 57

658 51 Production programing

Scheduling the order of procedures, operations tasks

511 Job analysis [*formerly* *658 32]

Including output analysis

For job evaluation, see 658 322 2

512 Routing procedures

Including materials handling [*formerly also* †658 281]

516 Internal standardization

Including standardization of equipment procedures products

For standardization of weights and measures, see 389 16 *of a specific product the product, e g , gasolines* 665 538 2

53 Production charts

Including time and performance records

54 Methods analysis (Operation studies)

Work factors in relation to production

Including analysis of flow charts and layouts

For production charts see 658 53

542 Time and motion studies

544 Fatigue and monotony studies

56 Production controls

561 Production methods

Including mass production methods automation in production

For automatic control engineering see 629 8 *production programing* 658 51 *economic aspects of automation in industry* 338 45

561 2 Continuous process methods

561 4 Assembly line methods

561 5 Job-lot methods

562 Quality control

Including statistical methods inspection and sampling techniques

658 564 Unit packaging

For package research, see 658 83, packaging in advertising, 659 12

567 Control of industrial waste

Including comprehensive works on salvage and utilization of wastes

For salvage and utilization of a specific waste product, see the product e g, scrap metal 671 9

57 Production research and development

For products research, see 607.2

58 Equipment maintenance

Including maintenance and repair of tools, machines accessory equipment

.7 Procurement, storage, shipment

Organization, administration, procedures

72 Purchasing methods

Buying from manufacturers and middlemen thru bids and contracts

Including acquisition of raw materials

For government purchasing see 351 712, 352 16, wholesale marketing, 658 86, military purchasing 355 8

77 Receipt of goods

Including checking inspection, invoicing

78 Storage and material control

Including storage and material control in specific industries and businesses, e g, in automobile industry [*formerly* †629 234 8]

785 Warehousing

Including bonded and customs warehouses storage methods and appliances

787 Stock inventory

788 Shipment of goods

Operations of shipping departments

Including traffic management in business and industrial organizations

For transportation services, see 385–388

788 4 Packing for shipment

658.8 **Marketing (Distribution of goods)**

Comprehensive works on sales promotion, advertising, selling

For advertising, see 659 1, shopping and buying for the home, 647 1, marketing cooperatives, 334 6, securities exchanges, 332 61, marketing specific goods and services, 338 1–338 4

.801 Sales psychology [*formerly* *658.85]

807 Study and teaching of marketing

Class training of salesmen [*formerly* †658.807] in 658 85

[†.807 2] Market research and analysis

Class in 658 83

[† 808] Sales analysis

Class in 658 817

.81 Sales planning

Including organization and administration of sales departments

For sales promotion, see 658 82

.812 Sales policies

Including long run and short run plans, sales quotas

817 Sales records and analysis [*formerly* †658 808]

.818 Sales budgets

Estimates of probable sales and probable expenses of selling

Including sales forecasting, cost estimates

82 Sales promotion

Activities coordinating advertising and personal selling for increasing sales, e g displays [*formerly* †658 841, *658 84], shows and exhibitions [*formerly* †658 845, *658 84], demonstrations, other special sales events

For advertising see 659 1, salesmanship, 658 85

.824 Sales letters

.83 Market research and analysis [*formerly* †380 122, †658 807 2]

Consumer, motivation, distribution, medium, product, package research

Including market surveys area analysis, questionnaire techniques

Class methods of marketing [*formerly* †658 83] in 658 84

For sales analysis see 658 817, packaging in advertising, 659 12, unit packaging, 658 564

658 839 Market research and analysis by country

Divide like 940–999, e g , market research and analysis in England 658 839 42

.84 Marketing channels [*formerly* †380.12]

Comprehensive works on marketing methods [*formerly* †658 83]

Including markets, fairs, auctions

Class displays, exhibitions in 658 82, commercial travelers in 658 855 2, canvassing in 658 855 3, peddling in 658 855 4 [*all formerly* *658 84]

For wholesale marketing, see 658 86, *retail marketing,* 658 87

[† 841] Displays

Class in 658 82

[†.843] Peddling

Class in 658 855 4

[†.845] Exhibitions

Class in 658 82

[†.846] Commercial travelers

Class in 658 855 2

[†.847] Canvassing

Class in 658 855 3

.85 Salesmen and salesmanship (Personal selling)

Including training of salesmen [*formerly* †658 807]

Class sales psychology [*formerly* *658 85] in 658 801

For salesmanship in specific businesses, see 658 89

[* 851] Salesmanship in specific businesses

Class in 658 89

852 House salesmen

Selling in manufacturing plants, warehouses, stores

For retail marketing, see 658 87

853 Selling by telephone

658 855 Route selling

855 2 Field salesmen (Commercial travelers [*formerly* †658 846, *658 84])

Selling to middlemen, industrial and institutional users

For wholesale marketing, see 658 86

855 3 Canvassers and canvassing [*formerly* †658 847, *658 84]

House to-house selling with samples

855 4 Peddlers and peddling [*formerly* †658 843, *658 84]

.86 Wholesale marketing

Selling for resale and for use in business, institutional, industrial operations

Including functions, operations, services of merchant middlemen, jobbers, agent middlemen, e g, commission merchants, brokers, selling agents, manufacturers' agents, auction companies

87 Retail marketing

Selling to ultimate consumers

Including limited price variety stores, specialty stores, cash-carry and self-service stores

For personal salesmanship, see 658 85, consumer cooperatives, 334 5, point of-sale advertising, 659 157

871 Department stores

872 Mail-order houses

873 Chain-store systems

Including corporate and voluntary chain stores

874 Independent retail stores

877 Branch stores

878 Supermarkets

88 Credit and collections

Including credit bureaus

For credit and loan institutions, see 332 3

882 Mercantile credit

Credit for purchases extended by manufacturers to wholesalers retailers, other manufacturers, and by wholesalers to retailers

For commercial credit see 332 742

658 883 Consumer credit (Retail credit)

Credit for purchases extended to ultimate consumers by retailers

Including charge accounts, revolving accounts, installment plans, other deferred payment plans

.884 Collection methods

Including garnisheeing procedures, collection letters

89 Salesmanship in specific businesses [*formerly* *658 851]

Divide like 000–999, e g , selling automobiles [*formerly* †629 213 8] 658 896 292

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by name of business, e g , selling automobiles 658 89 A9

For comprehensive works on salesmen and salesmanship, see 658 85

.9 Management of specific businesses and industries

Including management of small businesses

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 659 91–659 998, arrange alphabetically by name of business or industry, e g , management of photographic studio 658 9 P5

.91 Service, financial, and professional businesses

Including businesses not provided for in 658 92–658 998

Divide like 000–999, e g , management of photographic studio 658 917 7

For business management of newspapers and periodicals, see 070 3

.92–.998 Specific industries

Divide like 620–698, e g , management of petroleum refining company 658 965 5, of forestry [*formerly* *639 928] 658 934 9, of dairy farms [*formerly* *637 11] 658 937 1

For management of farms, see 631 1 *of other businesses,* 658 91

659 Other topics in business

1 Advertising

101 Theoretical aspects of advertising

101 15 Psychology of advertising

For color in advertising see 659 132 5

[107 2] Advertising research

Class in 659 112 7

11 Organization and administration

111 Publicity and public relations

Including policies methods service to consumers

For comprehensive works on public opinion and propaganda see 301 154

112 Advertising agencies and departments

112 7 Advertising research

Comprehensive works

Including copy research mediums research

For market research and analysis see 658 83

113 Advertising campaigns

Including planning procedures analysis of results

118 Fraudulent advertising

For ethics in advertising see 659 106 9

12 Packaging and labeling

Use of trade marks trade names slogans on containers wrappings labels as a means of advertising

Including informative labeling

For package research see 658 83

13 Advertising mediums and techniques

For packaging and labeling see 659 12

132 Newspaper and magazine advertising

Including classified advertisements (want ads) coupon advertisements testimonial and descriptive advertisements

132 2 Copy writing

659 132 3 Art in newspaper and magazine advertising

For designing and drawing magazine and newspaper illustration, see 741 65

132 4 Advertising layout and typography

132 5 Color in advertising

.133 Direct mail advertising

Comprehensive works on preparation and distribution of circulars, letters, prospectuses, mail-order catalogs, broadsides

Including mailing lists

Class blotters, calendars [*both formerly* *659 133] in 659 137

For sales letters, see 658 824

134 Outdoor and transportation advertising

Including billboards signs, car cards and posters moving signs [*formerly* †659 135]

For designing and drawing posters, see 741 67

[† 135] Moving signs

Class in 659 134

.136 Spectaculars in advertising

Electric signs, neon signs, signs with moving colored lights

137 Advertising on novelties

Including advertisements on blotters calendars [*both formerly* *659 133], match covers post cards, programs, toys

138 Entertainment publicity

Including use of stunts and recreational mediums for advertising purposes

For broadcast advertising, see 659 14

138 2 Skywriting

138 8 Motion picture advertising [*formerly* *659 14]

For motion picture entertainment, see 791 43

659 14 Broadcast advertising

Including paid announcements sponsored programs quiz programs comprehensive works on audio visual advertising

Class motion picture advertising [formerly *659 14] in 659 138 8

142 Radio advertising

For radio entertainment see 791 44

143 Television advertising

For television entertainment, see 791 45

15 Display advertising

Persuasion thru examination of product and observing manipulation and operation of product

152 Exhibits and shows

Including fashion modeling [*formerly* *687]

153 Demonstrations

Including home demonstrations

157 Point of sale advertising

Including window showcase counter displays

16 Premiums and trading stamps in advertising

17 Contests and lotteries in advertising

For quiz programs see 659 14 solving puzzles 793 73

660–680 Manufactures

Including catalogs, directories, histories, process reports of manufacturing companies, manufactures based on plant, animal, mineral materials [*formerly* †679 1–†679 2]

For comprehensive works on manufactures, see 670, *on manufacture, use, history of a specific product, the product, e g, chinaware* 642 7, *comprehensive reports of manufacturing companies,* 338 4

660 Chemical technology (Industrial chemistry)

Including chemical technology of specific elements or groups of elements [*formerly* †661 1]

.28 Chemical engineering

Design, construction, operation of chemical plants

Class industrial stoichiometry, chemical engineering calculations [*both formerly* *660 28] in 660 76

For industrial electrochemistry, see 660 297

.280 72 Pilot plants

Tests of new processes on a moderately large scale

282 Chemurgy

Industrial utilization of organic raw materials, especially from farm products

Including chemical utilization of wood [*formerly* *668 7]

For materials limited to a specific chemical industry, see the industry, e g, production of polyvinyl alcohol products 668 423

.283 Equipment

Instruments, apparatus, machinery applicable to several chemical industries

Including autoclaves, columns, towers, mixing machines

For equipment limited to a specific chemical industry, see the industry, e g, gas compressors 665 74, *to a specific process, the process, e g, packt towers* 660 284 23

660.284 Industrial processes

For processes used for the production of a specific chemical product, see the product, e g, hydrogenated fats and oils 664 33

.284 2 Unit physical operations

Including mass transfer

.284 22 Crushing grinding, mechanical separation

Including screening

.284 23 Absorption and adsorption

Including packt towers

.284 24 Precipitation filtration, extraction

Including sedimentation

.284 25 Fractional distillation

.284 26 Drying and evaporation

Including freeze-drying heating cooling

.284 27 Heat transfer

Including heat exchangers

.284 29 Other unit operations

Including fluid flow, humidification dehumidification

.284 4 Unit chemical processes

Divide like 547 2, e g, industrial hydrogenation 660.284 43

.29 Industrial physical chemistry

Divide like 541 3 e g industrial electrochemistry 660.297

For electrometallurgy see 669 028 4

.76 Industrial stoichiometry [*formerly* *660 28]

Including chemical engineering calculations, chemical problems and questions

661 Industrial chemicals (Heavy chemicals)

Large-scale production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in the manufacture of other products

For coal and coal tar chemicals see 668 7

661.1–661.6 Inorganic chemicals

661.1 **Elements**

Comprehensive works

Class chemical technology of a specific element or group of elements [*formerly* †661 1] with the subject in 660–669, e g, of nitrogen 665 824, of metals 669

.2 **Industrial acids**

Class industrial alkalies in 661 3, industrial salts in 661 4, sulfates in 661 6, nitrates and nitrites in 661 65, cyanides in 661 7 [*all formerly* *661.2]

For industrial organic acids, see 661 86

22 Sulfuric acid

.23 Hydrochloric (Muriatic) acid

.24 Nitric acid

.25 Phosphoric acids

Including meta-, pyro- and ortho-phosphoric acids only

29 Other industrial acids

Including hydrofluoric acid

.3 **Industrial alkalies** [*formerly* *661 2]

.32 Soda

322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)

.323 Sodium bicarbonate

For sodium bicarbonate used as a baking aid (baking soda), see 664 6, *as a medicinal,* 615 2

.324 Sodium carbonate

.33 Potash

332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)

.334 Potassium carbonate

.34 Ammonia [*formerly* *661 9]

Including ammonium hydroxide [*formerly* *661 2]

For ammonium salts, see 661 5

.4 **Industrial salts** [*formerly* *661.2]

42 Chlorides and fluorides

For food salts, see 664 4

661 43 Phosphates and silicates

For phosphate fertilizers see 668 62 water glass 666 159

5 Ammonium salts

For ammonium fertilizers see 668 62

6 Sulfates and sulfites [*formerly* *661 2]

65 Nitrates and nitrites [*formerly* *661 2]

For nitrate fertilizers see 668 62

7 Cyanides (Nitriles) [*formerly* *661 2]

8 Organic chemicals

Comprehensive works

Including organic solvents

For cyanides see 661 7 cyclic organic chemicals 668 7

82 Industrial alcohols

Including denatured ethyl methyl (wood) isopropyl alcohols

For fuel alcohols produced from waste products see 662 669

83 Industrial esters (Essential oils)

Including ethyl acetate amyl acetate (banana oil) ethyl butyrate methyl salicylate (oil of wintergreen) other volatile oils

For essential oils used in perfumes see 668 54 wood oils 665 33

84 Industrial ethers (Essential ethers)

Including methyl ethyl vinyl, allyl ethers

For essential ethers used in perfumes see 668 54

85 Industrial aldehydes and ketones

Including formaldehyde acetaldehyde valeraldehyde acetone cyclobutanone

86 Industrial organic acids

Including acetic formic oxalic propionic tartaric fumaric acids

89 Other organic chemicals

Including industrial amines amides

[*9] Comprest and liquefied industrial gases

Class compression and liquefaction of gases in 665 8 and its subdivisions ammonia in 661 34

662 Explosives, fuels, and related products

.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)

.2 Explosives

Manufacture, storage, handling

Including comprehensive works on uses

For a specific use of explosives, see the subject, e g, blasting operations in mining 622 23

[*26] *Propellants, burning and deflagratory explosives*

Class in 662 3

27 *High explosives*

Nitroglycerin, dynamite, nitroguanidine, TNT (trinitrotoluene), ammonium picrate and chlorate, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite, hexagen), tetryl, HMTD (hexamethylene-triperoxidediamine)

Including primary explosives, e g, mercury fulminate, lead azide and picrate, diazonitrophenol

[*28] Blasting caps, detonators, primers, fuses

Class in 662 4

.3 Low explosives (Propellants) [*formerly* *662 26]

Burning and deflagratory explosives

Including black powder (gunpowder), smokeless powder, nitrocellulose (guncotton), cordite, flashless and coated powders

For rocket propellants, see 662 666

.4 Detonators [*formerly* *662 28]

Including blasting caps, primers, fuses

.5 Matches

.6 Fuel technology

Class natural gas [*formerly* †662 6] in 665 7

For petroleum technology, see 665 5, gaseous fuels, 665 7; coke, 662 72, charcoal, 662 74

---

662 62–662 65 Solid fuels

62 Coal technology

Including peat, lignites [*both formerly* *662 65]

For coal deposits see 553 2, coal mining 622 33, industrial carbons other than fuel 662 9

662 622 Analysis and testing of coal

Tests of physical properties (hardness, elastic limit) and chemical constitution of coal

Including carbonizing properties, petrographic studies of coal

Divide like 553 21–553.25, e g friability of anthracite coal 662 622 5

622 9 Analysis and testing of coal of specific areas

Divide like 940–999, e g, analysis of Ohio coal 662 622 977 1

623 Mechanical treatment of coal

Materials processes equipment used in washing [*formerly* †622 78], coloring drying grinding sizing coal

624 Storage and transportation of coal

625 Uses of coal

Comprehensive works only

Class carbonization of coal in 662 72, hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal in 662 662 2 [*both formerly* *662 625]

For a specific use of coal, see the subject, e g, domestic heating 644 1

[* 627] Coal tar

Class in *668 7*

[* 628] Coal and coal tar chemicals

Class coal and coal tar chemicals in 668 7, benzene toluene naphthalene in 668 72 wood preserving oils in 668 73, naphthas in 665 538 2

[* 64] Coke

Class in 662 72

.65 Other solid fuels

Including bagasse briquettes wood sawdust as fuels

Class charcoal in 662 74 lignites and peat in 662 62, petroleum coke in 665 538 8 gashouse coke in 662 72 [*all formerly* *662 65]

For solid rocket fuels, see 662 666

662.66 Synthetic liquid fuels

Including liquid fuels produced from coal, gas, wood, farm produce, waste products

.662 Synthetic petroleum

For petroleum, see 665 5

.662 2 Bergius process

Production of synthetic gasoline and other synthetic petroleum products thru hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal [*formerly* *662 625]

662 3 Fischer-Tropsch process

Production of synthetic gasoline and other synthetic petroleum products thru hydrogenation of natural gas, coal gas, or other fuel gases

666 Rocket fuels

Including liquid and solid rocket fuels (rocket propellants)

669 Other synthetic liquid fuels

Including production of fuel alcohols and benzene from waste products

[* 67] Gaseous fuels

Class in 665 7

.7 Residual products of carbonization

For a volatile product of carbonization, see the product, e g , benzene 668 72

72 Carbonization of coal [*formerly* *662 65]

Including coke [*formerly* *662 64], gashouse coke [*formerly* *662 65]

For coal tar, see 668 7, coal gases, 665 772, petroleum coke, 665 538 8

74 Carbonization of wood

*Destructive distillation of wood [formerly also †*668 7]*

Including charcoal [*formerly* *662 65]

For methyl (wood) alcohol, see 661 82, adsorbent charcoals, 662 93

.8 Other fuels

Including colloidal fuels, mud fuels, synthetic fuels not otherwise provided for

662 9 Non fuel carbons

.92 Graphite and graphite products

93 Adsorbent carbons

Including activated carbons, animal black, bone char, carbon black, adsorbent charcoals, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

For a specific use of adsorbent carbons, see the industry, e g, carbon black in rubber manufacture 678 23

663 Beverages

Manufacture, processing, bottling

Including materials machinery, testing

For inspection of beverages, see 614 34, chemical analysis, 543 1, home preparation, 641 87

.1 Alcoholic beverages

663.2–663 4 Fermented alcoholic beverages

For distilled liquors, see 663 5

.2 Wine and wine making

Including raw materials crushing stemming, pressing, fermentation, racking, aging, refrigeration, flash pasteurization, bottling

.22 Grape wines

Including fortified grape wines

.222 White wines

Including sherry, muscatel, angelica sauterne

.223 Red wines

Including port burgundy claret

.224 Sparkling wines

Including champagne sparkling burgundy

.29 Other wines

Including hard cider perry, blossom wines other fruit wines

.3 Malting and brewing [*formerly* *663 4]

Including raw materials fermentation, aging finishing, bottling

663 4 Beer

Including ale, porter, stout

Class brewing [*formerly* *663 4] in 663 3

.49 Other brewed beverages

Including sake, pulque

.5 Distilled liquors

Including distillation, rectification, aging, bottling

For mixt alcoholic beverages, see 663 8

.52 Whiskies

Liquors made by distilling fermented grain mash

Including bourbon, Scotch, vodka

.53 Brandies

Liquors made by distilling fermented fruit mash

Including cognac, armagnac, applejack, kirsch, slivovitz, other fruit brandies

.55 Compound liquors

Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, or fruits, e g , gin, cordials (liqueurs)

Including curaçao, kummel, absinthe

.59 Other liquors

Including mescal, potato whisky

.6 **Nonalcoholic beverages**

Manufacture, processing, bottling, canning

For chocolate, cocoa, tea, coffee, see 663 9, *milk production,* 637 12

62 Carbonated beverages

63 Fruit and vegetable juices

For freezing fruit and vegetable juices, see 664 85

.8 **Mixt alcoholic drinks**

Bartenders' manuals and recipes

Including cocktails, highballs, eggnogs, spiked punches

663.9 **Chocolate, cocoa, tea and coffee manufacture**

Processing, packaging

.92 Chocolate and cocoa manufacture

For use of chocolate and cocoa in another industry, see the industry, e.g., candies and confectionery 664 15

.93 Coffee processing

Roasting, blending, grinding, packaging coffee

Including manufacture of instant coffee

.94 Tea processing

Fermenting, oxidizing curing, firing, blending, packaging tea

Including manufacture of instant tea

.96 Herb teas

Including catnip, mate, sassafras teas

.97 Cereal beverages

664 Food technology

Commercial manufacture and preparation of foods

Including processes, equipment, practical testing

For beverages, see 663 home preparation of food, 641, agricultural production of foods, 630, economic aspects of food manufacture and processing, 338 476 64, chemical analysis of food, 543 1, food adulteration and inspection, 614 3

SUMMARY

664.1	Sugar manufacture and refining
.2	Stiffening and jellying agents
.3	Shortenings
4	Food salts
.5	Flavoring aids
6	Leavening agents and baking aids
.7	Grain processing
.8	Commercial preservation of food
.9	Meat packing and allied industries

.1 Sugar manufacture and refining

Class pectins [formerly †664 1] in 664 25

12 Cane and beet sugars and syrups

122 Cane sugar

Including molasses

664 123 Beet sugar

.13 Other sugars and syrups

For milk sugar, see 637 14, honey production, 638 16

.132 Maple sugar and syrup

.133 Corn and sorghum syrups

.139 Minor sugar sources

Including syrup from Jerusalem artichokes

.15 Candies and confectionery

Class ice cream industry [*formerly* †*664 15] in 637 4

For candymaking at home, see 641 85

.19 Industrial utilization of sugar by-products

Comprehensive works only

Class a specific use of sugar by products with the subject, e g, fodder 636 085

.2 Stiffening and jellying agents

.22 Starch manufacture and refining

Including cornstarch, potato starch cornstarch mixes

For starch pastes, see 668 33, use of starch in a specific industry the industry, e g, in commercial laundering 667 13

.23 Cassava products

Including tapioca, arrowroot

24 Other starches

Including sago and taro products

.25 Pectins [*formerly* †664 1]

Including liquid and powdered pectins

For jelly and jam making, see 664 83

26 Edible gelatins

Including vegetable gelatins, e g agar agar, gelatin dessert mixes

.3 Shortenings

Class salad oils [*formerly* †*664 3] in 665 32

For other edible fats and oils, see 665 2–665 3, butter manufacture, 637 23

.32 Oleomargarines [*formerly also* †637 28]

664 33 Hydrogenated fats and oils

Including Crisco®, Spry®

For oleomargarines, see 664 32

34 Lard

.4 Food salts

Including table salt, monosodium glutamate, sodium free salts

For brining fruits and vegetables, see 664 86, brining meats, 664 926

.5 Flavoring aids

Including spices condiments, herbs, flavoring essences and extracts, vinegar

For food salts, see 664 4, commercial preservation of food, 664 8

.6 Leavening agents and baking aids

Including baking powder baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast

.7 Grain processing [*formerly* †679 131 *and its subdivisions*]

72 Flour milling

722 Wheat flour

725 Milling other grains

Including production of corn meal, oatmeal rye flour, rice flour buckwheat flour

729 Prepared cereal processing

Including wheat meal ready to eat cereals

75 Flour products

For prepared cereal processing, see 664 729

752 Bakery products

Including commercial production of breads cakes, cookies, crackers

For baking at home, see 641 631

753 Cake and pancake mixes

755 Macaroni products

Including noodles spaghetti vermicelli

664.8 **Commercial preservation of food**

Class meat processing and preservation in 664 92, seafood processing and preservation in 664 94 [*both formerly* *664 8]

For home preservation of food, see 641 4

802 8 Processing and preservation techniques

802 82 Canning

802 84 Drying and dehydrating

802 85 Freezing

802 86 Brining, pickling, curing

Including smoking

802 87 Chemical preservation

Including use of ascorbic acid, propionic acid and its salts, ethylene gas, glycerol, sorbitol, benzoates

For brining pickling, curing, see 664 802 86

802 88 Preservation by electromagnetic radiations

Including sterilization of food by radio-frequency heating ultraviolet light treatment

82–88 Processing and preservation of fruits and vegetables

Divide like 664 802 8 e g freezing fruits and vegetables 664 85

For fruit and vegetable juices see 663 63

83 Jelly and jam making

Including commercial production of preserves, marmalades

.9 **Meat packing and allied industries**

902 8 Slaughtering techniques

902 9 Slaughterhouses

92 Meat processing and preservation [*formerly also* *664 8]

Divide like 664 802 8 e g., canning meat 664 922

For poultry processing and preservation, see 664 93

93 Poultry processing and preservation

Including poultry dressing

Divide like 664 802 8, e g frozen chicken 664 935

94 Sea food processing and preservation [*formerly also* *664.8]

Including fish and shellfish

Divide like 664 802 8, e g , smoke fish 664 946

665 Oils, fats, waxes

Including fixt oils, lubricants

For essential oils (volatile oils), see 661 83

.1 Wax technology

Manufacturing, extracting, processing, purifying, practical tests

For mineral waxes, see 665 4, paraffinic waxes derived from petroleum, 665 538 5

.12 Vegetable waxes

Including carnauba, candelilla (grass wax), laurel, myrtle, candleberry, bayberry waxes

.13 Animal waxes

Including spermaceti, lanolin (wool wax), insect waxes

For beeswax, see 638 17, sperm oil, 665 2

.19 Blended waxes

Including wax for candles, torches

For polishes, see 667 72

.2 Animal fats and oils

Rendering, refining, bleaching, fractionating, purifying, practical tests

Including tallow, fish oils, sperm oil, neat's foot oil

For butter manufacture, see 637 23, lard, 664 34

.3 Vegetable fats and oils

Extracting, refining, bleaching, fractionating, purifying, practical tests

.32 Salad and cooking oils [*formerly also* †*664 3]

For hydrogenated fats and oils, see 664 33

.322 Olive oil

.323 Cottonseed oil

.329 Other salad and cooking oils

Including corn, soybean, peanut, sesame oils

.33 Wood oils

.332 Turpentine

Including rosin oil wood and gum turpentines

For pine tar, see 668 47, paint diluents, 667 624, recovery of turpentine from pulping processes, 676 5

665 333 Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)

For use of tung oil as a paint drier, see 667 622

.35 Other industrial fats and oils

.352 Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)

For use of linseed oil as a paint oil, see 667 622

.353 Castor oil

For use of castor oil as a paint drier, see 667 622

.354 Cacao butter (Cocoa butter)

.355 Coconut oil

.4 Mineral oils and waxes other than petroleum

Including naturally occurring paraffin, ozocerite, asphalt, shale oils

For paraffinic waxes derived from petroleum, see 665 538 5, asphalts derived from petroleum, 665 538 8

.5 Petroleum technology

Including comprehensive works on petroleum and natural gas technology

For petroleum geology, see 553 282, extraction of petroleum, 622 338 2, synthetic petroleum, 662 662, natural gas technology, 665 7

[* 52] Properties, tests, testing methods

Class in 665 538

53 Refinery treatment of petroleum

532 Fractional distillation of petroleum

533 Cracking processes

Thermal and catalytic cracking hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates

.534 Purification and blending

Including chemical treatment of petroleum distillates

665 538 Direct petroleum products and by-products

Including properties tests, testing methods [*all formerly* *665 52], specifications additives

For a specific petroleum derivative, see the subject e g, explosives 662 2, gases produced from petroleum, 665 773, crude organic chemicals derived from petroleum, 668 7

538 2 Naphthas [*formerly also* *662 628] and gasolines

538 25 Aviation gasolines

High octane-rating gasolines

538 27 Gasolines for land vehicles

For diesel fuels, see 665 538 4

538 3 Kerosenes

538 4 Heavy fuel oils

Including gas oil absorber oil, diesel fuels, fuel oils for heating

538 5 Lubricating oils and greases

Including petrolatums paraffinic waxes

For naturally occurring paraffins see 665 4 a specific use of lubricants the subject e g lubrication of machinery 621 89

538 8 Residues (Bottoms)

Including bunker oils asphalts, road oils petroleum coke [*formerly* *662 65] petroleum pitch

For naturally occurring asphalts see 665 4, carbonization of coal 662 72

54 Storage and distribution of petroleums

Including transportation pumping systems meters pipelines

55 Uses of petroleum and petroleum by products

Comprehensive works only

For a specific use see the subject, e g synthetic rubber 678 72

[† 6] Lamps

Class in 644 3

665.7 Natural [*formerly also* †662.6] and manufactured gas technology

Including gaseous fuels [*formerly* *662 67] and illuminants

For helium, see 665 822, acetylene, 665 85

.73 Processing natural gas and methane gas

Drying, purification, fractionation, compression, oil absorption, conversion of crude natural gas

Class bottling [*formerly* *665 73] in 665 74

For organic chemicals derived from distillation of natural gas, see 668 7

.74 Storage, transportation, distribution of natural and manufactured gases

Including bottling [*formerly* *665 73], gas gathering lines, pipelines, pumping systems, compressors, meters, mains, other containers for natural and manufactured gas in gaseous and liquid forms

.75 Uses of gas

Comprehensive works only

For a specific use, see the subject, e g, cooking by gas 641 584

.77 Production of manufactured gas

772 Gases produced from coal and coke

Including coal gas, producer gas, water gas, carbureted blue gas blast furnace gas, city gas, coke oven gas, carbon monoxide

773 Gases produced from petroleum and natural gas

Including oil gas, refinery gas, reformed refinery gas, reformed natural gas, crackt gas, liquefied hydrocarbon gases, e g, butane, propane, pentane, butene and their mixtures

779 Other synthetic gases

Gases composed of mixtures of fuel gases from several sources

Including oxyhydrogen mixtures for calcium lights

For acetylene, see 665 85

665 8 **Other industrial gases [*formerly* *661 9]**

Manufacture, compression, liquefaction solidification, transportation storage in cylinders and other containers

For gaseous fuels and illuminants, see 665 7, ammonia, 661 34, acetylene, 665 85

81 Hydrogen

82 Liquefaction and fractionation of air

Including Claude process of liquefaction

822 Rare gases

Helium argon, neon xenon krypton

Including extraction of helium from natural gases

823 Oxygen

824 Nitrogen

825 Carbon dioxide

Including carbon dioxide generators dry ice (solid carbon dioxide)

For use of dry ice in refrigeration, see 621 564

83 Industrial halogen gases

Including chlorine fluorine

84 Sulfur dioxide

85 Acetylene

89 Other gases

Including ozone hydrogen sulfide

666 **Ceramic and allied industries**

For ceramic art see 738

.1 Glass technology

For stained glass and glassware see 748

12 Glass manufacture

Including materials melting working

For manufacture of a specific type of glass see the type, e.g plate glass 666 153

122 Glass blowing

Including glass blowing machines saggers

123 Glass pressing

666 124 Glass drawing

.125 Glass molding and casting

.126 Multiform processes

Cold molding glass powder under pressure and firing at high temperatures

.129 Other operations

Including annealing and tempering glass

.13 Properties and practical tests of glass

For engineering properties of glass, see 620 144

15 Types of glass

152 Window glass

153 Plate glass (Sheet glass)

Including tempered plate glass, insulated glass

154 Laminated glass

.155 Heat resistant glass

.156 Optical glass

For a specific application of optical glass, see the subject, e g, telescopes 522 2

.159 Soluble glass

Including water glass

19 Glass products

Comprehensive works

Including diversified glass products, e g, bottles

For manufacture of a specific glass product, see the subject, e g, spectacles 681 411

.2 Enamels and enameling

Including ceramic coatings vitreous and porcelain enamels, enameled metals

.3 Clay industries

Including commercial pottery [*formerly* †666 6], ceramic whiteware

Class porcelain in 666 5, stoneware, earthenware, terra cotta in 666 6 [*all formerly* *666 3]

[* 32] Clays

Class in 666 42

666 4 Ceramic processes

.42 Ceramic materials

Preparation, composition, properties of ceramic clays [*formerly* *666 32], glazes, colors

Including ball clay, kaolin, petuntse

43 Kilns and kiln-drying

5 Porcelain (Chinaware) [*formerly* *666 3]

Including bone china (artificial porcelain)

6 Stoneware and earthenware [*formerly* *666 3]

Including terra cotta

Class pottery [*formerly* †660 6] in 666 3

.7 Refractories and structural clay products

72 Refractory materials

Including asbestos [*formerly* †679 267], fire-clays alumina, graphite zirconia chrome, talc, mica

For deposits of refractory materials, see 553 67, refractories applied to a specific use, the subject, e g , refractories in metallurgical furnaces 669 82

73 Structural clay products

Including bricks tiles

For engineering properties of bricks and tiles, see 620 142

8 Artificial minerals and structural products

For structural clay products see 666 73 cementing materials, 666 9

.86 Synthetic earthy minerals

Including manufacture of synthetic mica feldspar graphite, cryolite

.88 Synthetic gem minerals

Including manufacture of synthetic diamonds garnets, rubies, sapphires

89 Artificial stones

Including concrete and concrete blocks cinder blocks artificial marble

For engineering properties of concrete, see 620 136

666 9 **Masonry adhesives**

Manufacture processes practical tests of cementing materials

For engineering properties of masonry adhesives see 620 15

92 Gypsum plasters

Including plaster of Paris cement plaster and mortar, Keene's cement

93 Limes

Including lime mortars

94 Portland cement

For concrete see 666 89 *engineering properties of cement,* 620 135

667 Cleaning, dyeing and related industries

.1 *Commercial cleaning and bleaching*

12 Commercial dry cleaning

Including dry cleaning textiles furs leather

For home dry cleaning see 646 62

13 Commercial laundering

Including starching

For home laundering see 648 1 *soaps* 668 12 *detergents and wetting agents* 668 14

14 Bleaching practice (Textile bleaching) [*formerly* †677 028 27]

2 Commercial dyes and dyeing

Comprehensive works

Class commercial process dyeing [*formerly* †*667 2] in 667 3 fur dyeing [*formerly* *667 2] in 675 3

25 Synthetic dyes

Large scale manufacture of dyes and dye auxiliaries e g, mordants lakes intermediates developers

Including coal tar dyes

Divide like 547 86 e g manufacture of Congo red 667 253

26 Natural dyes

For indigo see 667 256

667.3 **Commercial process dyeing [*formerly* †*667.2, †677.028 27] and printing**

Divide like 677, e g , dyeing and printing cotton textiles 667 32

.4 **Inks**

Class printing inks [*formerly* *667 4] in 667 5

.42 Writing inks

Including indelible inks, India inks

For use of inks in art, see 751 2

44 Sympathetic inks (Invisible inks)

.49 Specialty inks

Including stamp-pad inks inks for recording instruments

5 Printing inks [*formerly* *667 4]

Including newspaper inks, duplicating inks

.6 **Protective and decorative coatings**

For house painting, see 698 1

62 Oil soluble paints

For use of oil paints in art, see 751 2

.622 Paint oils, driers, plasticizers

Including dehydrated castor linseed, tung oils

623 Paint pigments and extenders

Including lithopone titanium dioxide, white lead, zinc oxide, iron oxide colored pigments, metal pigments

For carbon black, see 662 93

624 Paint diluents (Thinners)

63 Water-soluble paints

Including whitewash latex paints

69 Special purpose paints

Including fire-resistant paints luminous paints

.7 **Varnishes and allied products**

.72 Polishes

For scouring compounds see 668 127

.75 Lacquers

Including nitrocellulose (cellulose nitrate), acetate, glyptal lacquers

667 79 Spirit varnishes

Including shellac in alcoholic solution spar varnishes

8 Oil varnishes

Including japans combined with carbon black asphaltum or stearin pitch (blacking) colored japans

For enamels and enameling see 666.2

668 Other organic products

SUMMARY

1 Surface-active materials

Including emulsifiers

12 Soaps

For fats and oils see 665 *alkalies* 661 3 *glycerine* 668 2 *laundering* 667 13

124 Soluble soaps

Including framed and milled soaps soap chips and powders liquid soaps

125 Insoluble soaps (Metallic soaps)

Oleates and stearates of aluminum copper cobalt magnesium iron calcium

127 Scouring compounds

Manufacture of household scouring mixtures

14 Detergents and wetting agents

Non soap materials which manifest surface activity

Including sulfated oils sulfonated hydrocarbons fatty alcohol sulfates

2 Glycerine

668.3 **Adhesives and related products**

For gums and resins, see 668 47

32 Animal glues

Including albumin and casein glues, glues derived from gelatin and other meat-packing by-products

.33 Vegetable glues

Including starch pastes, mucilages, nitrocellulose and soybean glues

.34 Gelatin

Crude commercial gelatin

For edible gelatin, see 664 26, glues made from gelatin, 668 32

.4 **Plastics and related resins**

Including thermosetting and thermoplastic resins

For varnishes, see 667 6, fibers produced from synthetic resins, 677 474 4, elastomers, 678 7

.41 Techniques for manufacturing plastics

Materials, apparatus, machinery, processes

Including fillers, plasticizers

For manufacturing a specific plastic, see the plastic, e g, phenol aldehyde condensation products 668 423

412 Molding and casting operations

413 Extrusion operations

For extrusion of synthetic fibers, see 677 46–677 47

414 Laminating operations

415 Welding operations

419 Practical testing methods

Including properties, testing equipment

42 Plastics made from synthetic resins

422 Condensation polymerization plastics

Phenol aldehyde urea formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde thio urea formaldehyde (organic sulfur resins) condensation products organic silicon polymers (silicones) and alkyd resins only

668 423 Addition polymerization plastics

Polyvinyl (alcohols and esters), polyethylene, polyacrylic, polymeric amide (nylon), polyolefin, and polyaromatic plastics only

For addition polymerization fibers, see 677 474

43 Plastics made from proteins

Plastics derived from milk (casein), soybean corn (zein) proteins

For fibers derived from proteins, see 677 472

44 Plastics made from cellulose

Cellulose nitrate acetate, propionate, butyrate methyl ethyl, benzyl cellulose, mixt cellulose esters

Including celluloid [*formerly* 1679 8], cellophane

For fibers derived from cellulose, see 677 46 explosives 662.2

45 Plastics made from natural resins

Including shellac as a plastic

For shellac in alcoholic solution, see 667 79

47 Natural gums and resins not used in plastics

Including pine tar (wood tar)

For turpentine, see 665 332, natural latex, 678 5, coal tar, 668 7, asphalt, 665 4

.5 Perfumery and cosmetology

For chemical analysis of cosmetics and perfumes see 543 4

54 Perfumes

Including manufacture of essences essential oils and ethers used in perfumes

For flavoring essences, see 664 5

542 Natural floral oils and waters

544 Synthetic perfumes

55 Cosmetics

Including manufacture of cosmetic emulsions, creams, lotions, powders, deodorants, depilatories nail preparations, hair preparations

For soaps see 668 12, detergents, 668 14

668.6 **Synthetic agricultural chemicals and related products**

.62 Manufactured fertilizers [*formerly* *631.8]

Nitrates, phosphates, metaphosphates, superphosphates and sulfates of ammonium, calcium, sodium and potassium

Including manufactured soil conditioners

For use of fertilizers and soil conditioners, see 631.8

65 Pesticides [*formerly* †679 137 156]

For agricultural pest control, see 632 9, household pest control, 648 7, chemical analysis of poisons, 543 5

651 Insecticides and rodenticides

Fumigants, contact and stomach poisons

Including manufacture of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT), chlordan, rotenone

652 Fungicides

Including manufacture of sulfur and copper compounds, chloroquinones, dithiocarbamates

654 Herbicides

Manufacture of chemical weed killers

.7 **Crude organic chemicals (Cyclic organic chemicals)**

Organic chemicals (compounds) obtained by distillation of coal and coal tar [*formerly* *662 628], by distillation and cracking of petroleum and natural gases, from various fermentation processes

Including basic materials, e g, coal tar [*formerly* *662 627]

Class chemical utilization of wood [*formerly* *668 7] in 660 282, distillation of wood [*formerly* †*668 7] in 662 74

For alcohols, see 661 82, coke, 662 72, petroleum distillation residues, 665 532, synthetic liquid fuels, 662 66

72 Crude cyclic hydrocarbons

Including benzene, toluene, naphthalene [*all formerly* *662 628], xylene, anthracene

73 Tar acids

Including phenols cresols (wood preserving oils [*formerly* *662 628])

74 Tar bases

Including quinolines, pyridines

668 79 Cyclic intermediates

Chemicals obtained from crude organic chemicals for conversion into other intermediates finisht chemicals or chemical products

Including phthalic anhydride dichlorobenzene, cresylic acid, ethyl benzene

For a finisht chemical or chemical product, see the product, e g, plastics 668 4

669 Metallurgy

Production of metals and their alloys from ores and scrap metal

Including comprehensive works on metals e g, resources mining, metallurgy, manufacture of metal products

For economic geology, see 553 3–553 4 *mining,* 622 34, *metal manufactures,* 671–673, *scrap metal,* 671 9

SUMMARY

669 028	Metallurgical processes
1	Iron, steel and their alloys
2	Precious metals and their alloys
29	Radioactive metals
3	Copper and its alloys
4	Lead and its alloys
.5	Zinc, cadmium and their alloys
6	Tin and its alloys
7	Nonferrous metals and their alloys
.8	Metallurgical furnaces
9	Physical and chemical metallurgy

[* 016] Metallography

Class in 669 95

[* 018] Heat treatment and hardening of metals

Class in 671 36

028 Metallurgical processes

028 2 Pyrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by smelting roasting or furnace methods

For metallurgical furnaces see 669 8

669 028 3 Hydrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by leaching methods

028 4 Electrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by electrical means

Including vacuum metallurgy

669.1–669.7 Metallurgy of individual metals

.1 Iron, steel and their alloys

For fabrication of iron steel and their alloys see 672

14 Reduction and refining of iron ores

141 Production of commercial iron alloys

141 3 Blast furnace practice

Production of pig iron and crude cast iron

For steel castings see 672 25

141 4 Puddling furnace practice

Production of wrought iron

For mechanical working and forming of iron alloys see 672 3

141 9 Other iron alloy practices

Including production of iron powder and sponge iron

142 Production of commercial steel and alloy steels

Including utilization reduction refining of scrap iron and steel [*formerly* *669 143] in the production of commercial steel and alloy steels

142 2 Open hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)

142 3 Bessemer converter practice

Production of Bessemer steel ingot iron duplex process steel

142 4 Electric furnace practice

Including steel production in arc and induction furnaces

669 1429 Other practices

Including production of crucible steel

[* 143] Scrap iron and steel

Class utilization reduction refining of scrap iron and steel in 669 142

[* 16] Metallography of iron and steel

Class in 669 951

[* 18] Heat treatment and hardening of steel

Class in 672 36

669 2–669 79 Metallurgy of other metals

Class metallography of other specific metals [*formerly* subdivision *6 under *669 22–*669 734] in 669 952–669 957 9 heat treatment [*formerly* subdivision *8 under *669 22–*669 734] in 673

For fabrication of these metals see 673

.2 Precious metals and their alloys

.22 Gold

23 Silver

Including silver combined with lead

For lead see 669 4

24 Platinum

.29 Radioactive metals

Including radium thorium uranium actinium neptunium, plutonium polonium

.3 Copper and its alloys

Including brass bronze, Muntz metal phosphor bronze, gun metal copper aluminum alloys copper beryllium alloys aluminum bronze

For aluminum copper alloys see 669 722 German silver Monel metal® 669 733 Babbitt metal 669 6

.4 Lead and its alloys

Including antimonial lead

For silver combined with lead see 669.23

5 Zinc, cadmium and their alloys

Including spelter die-casting alloys

For German silver see 669 733 Wood's alloy 669 75

669.6 Tin and its alloys

Including Babbitt metal

For bronze, see 669 3

.7 Nonferrous metals and their alloys

Comprehensive works

For precious metals and their alloys, see 669 2, radioactive metals, 669.29, copper and its alloys, 669 3, lead and its alloys, 669 4, zinc, cadmium and their alloys, 669 5, tin and its alloys, 669 6, fabrication of nonferrous metals and their alloys, 673 7

.71 Mercury and amalgams

.72 Light metals and their alloys

722 Aluminum and its alloys

Including Duralumin®, aluminum-copper alloys

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 669 3, magnesium-aluminum alloys, 669 723

723 Magnesium and its alloys

Including magnesium aluminum alloys, magnesium-aluminum-manganese alloys (Dow metal®)

724 Beryllium and its alloys

725 Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals and their alloys

Including sodium potassium, lithium, strontium, calcium, barium and their alloys

For magnesium and its alloys, see 669 723, beryllium and its alloys, 669 724, radium, 669 29

.73 Ferro-alloying metals and their alloys

732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese and their alloys

733 Cobalt, nickel and their alloys

Including German silver, Monel metal®

.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten and their alloys

.735 Tantalum, zirconium and their alloys

.75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth and their alloys

Including Wood's alloy

.79 Minor metals and their alloys

Including hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium, tellurium, niobium, thallium

669.8 Metallurgical furnaces

Construction, operation, maintenance

For metallurgical furnaces used in a specific operation, see the subject, e g , Bessemer converter practice 669 142 3

.82 Refractory materials for metallurgical furnaces

.84 Metallurgical slags and fluxes

.9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

Including metallurgical analysis

.92 Assaying

Including cupellation [*formerly* †545 4], blowpipe analysis of metallic ores and alloys

.94 Physical metallurgy

Constitution, structure, properties, associated behavior of metals and alloys

For engineering properties of metals, see 620 16–620 18, microscopic study of metal and alloy structure, 669 95

.95 Metallography [*formerly* *669.016]

Microscopic and photographic study and analysis, interpretation of metal and alloy structure

Including electron and X ray metallography

951 Metallography of iron, steel and their alloys [*formerly* *669 16]

952–957 9 Metallography of other specific metals [*formerly* subdivision *6 under *669 22–*669 734]

Divide like 669 2–669 79, e g , metallography of aluminum 669 957 22

670 Manufactures

Comprehensive works

Including manufacture of intermediate products

For industrial chemistry see 660 manufacture of specific finisht articles and goods 680 manufacture of a specific article not provided for in 660–680 the subject e g of automobiles 629 2

671 Metal manufactures

Metal fabrication and manufacture of metal products

For manufacture of specific metals see 672–673 manufacture of a specific metal product the product e g automobiles 629.2

2 Foundry practice

Including hot working operations

.22 Foundry equipment

.23 Mold and pattern making

.24 Melting practice

.25 Molding and casting practice

Production of metal castings

Including sand die centrifugal other methods of molding and casting

3 Mechanical working and forming

Including cold working operations

.32 Rolling processes

.33 Forging pressing stamping processes

Including hammering spinning piercing processes

For welding by hammering and pressing see 671 529

.34 Extruding and drawing processes

.35 Machining and grinding processes

.36 Heat treatment and hardening of metals [*formerly* *669 018]

Including annealing tempering age-hardening

.37 Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)

.5 Joining and cutting operations

.52 Welding operations

.521 Electric welding

Including arc and resistance welding

671 522 Gas welding

Including acetylene welding

529 Other methods of welding

Including welding by hammering and pressing

.53 Cutting operations

Including flame and arc cutting

56 Soldering and brazing operations

59 Other methods of joining

Including riveting

For rivets, see 621 884, *riveting machinery* 621 978

.7 Finishing and surface treatment

Including surface hardening

72 Buffing and polishing operations

73 Coatings

For metal enameling, see 666 2

732 Electroplating

733 Hot-metal dipping

Including galvanizing processes

734 Metal spraying

735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)

Vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition

739 Other finishing processes

Including chemical treatment, oxidation finishing processes

.8 Metal products

For art metalwork, see 739 *metalcrafts,* 745 56

82 Sheet metal products

821 Pattern making for sheet metal products

83 Forged, prest and stampt metal products

Including tubes, pipes

84 Extruded and drawn metal products

Including wire metal cordage and cables [*formerly* †677 72], conducting wires and cables [*formerly* †677 73]

87 Powder metallurgical products

671.9 Scrap metal

Collection classification, utilization of scrap metal

For a specific scrap metal, see the metal, e g, iron and steel scrap 672 9, utilization of scrap metal in production of metals, 669

672 Iron and steel manufactures

Fabrication and products of iron, steel and their alloys

Divide like 671, e g, steel castings 672 25

Class manufacture of cutlery in 683 82, of stoves in 683 88 [*both formerly* †672]

.36 Heat treatment and hardening of steel [*formerly* *669 18]

673 Other metals manufactures

Fabrication and products of metals and their alloys other than iron and steel

Divide like 669 2–669 7 e g, fabrication of aluminum 673 722 If desired, divide specific metals, but not groups of metals, further like 671 e g, welding of aluminum 673 722 52, heat treatment and hardening of aluminum [*formerly* *669 722 8] in 673 722 36

674 Lumber industry

For logging see 634 982

.1 Wood technology [*formerly* *634.98]

For preservation of building construction wood see 691 1, seasoning of wood 674 38, wood products, 674 8, chemical utilization of wood, 660 282

12 Structure and identification of wood

Including texture grain, figure moisture content and distribution microscopic structure

13 Properties and tests of wood

132 Physical properties of wood

Including thermal electrical acoustic properties, reflectivity luminescence

For engineering properties of wood, see 620 12

674 134 Chemical properties of wood

Including chemical composition and analysis comprehensive works on wood extractives

For chemistry of a specific wood component, see the subject, e g, cellulose chemistry 547 782, *industrial extraction of a specific wood component, the subject, e g, cellulose manufacture* 676 4, *chemical utilization of a wood extractive, the subject, e g, manufacture of rayon* 677 46

14 Types of wood

142 Hardwood

Wood of broad leaved, deciduous trees

Including oak, maple, cherry, chestnut, elm, basswood

.144 Softwood

Wood of coniferous trees

Including pine spruce, fir, hemlock, cypress, cedar

.2 Sawmill operations

Conversion of logs into lumber

22 Sawmill equipment

Including power saws, edgers, slashers, trimmers handling and conveying equipment

28 Sawmill products

Including rough lumber products [*formerly* †634 983, *634 98], dimension stock (cut stock)

For wood waste and residues, see 674 84, *surfaced lumber,* 674 42 *pattern lumber,* 674 43

282 Round timbers

Including poles, piles posts

For mine timbers see 674 283

283 Mine timbers

284 Railroad ties

Including crossties (sleepers), switch ties, bridge ties

285 Fireplace wood

286 Shooks

Including cooperage and box lumber

287 Shingles and shakes

674.3 Storage and seasoning of lumber

.32 Lumberyards

.38 Seasoning of lumber

For preservation of building construction wood see 691.1

.382 Air seasoning

.384 Dry kiln seasoning

Including lumber kilns

.386 Chemical methods of seasoning

Including seasoning with urea salt

.4 Remanufacture of lumber

For products of wood using industries see 674.8 furniture manufacture and cabinetmaking 684.1–684.2 carpentry 694

.42 Planing mill operations

Production of surfaced lumber from rough lumber

Including planing mills and equipment e g saws for resawing planers

Class molders [formerly *674.42] in 674.43

.43 Woodworking plants

Production of pattern lumber (workt lumber) e g shiplap bungalow drop beveled sidings tongue and groove products

Including equipment for secondary woodworking operations e g molders [formerly *674.42] matchers shapers lathes sanders grinders other finishing machines

.5 Grading of lumber

Including inspection and specifications of rough and surfaced lumber

For grading logs see 634.982

.8 Wood using industries

Including manufacture of wood products

For rough lumber products see 674.28 furniture manufacture and cabinetmaking 684.1–684.2 a specific use of a product the subject e g veneers in cabinetmaking 684.2 a secondary wood industry the industry e g manufacture of wood pulp 676.12 carpentry 694

.82 Wooden containers (Cooperage)

Including wooden crates boxes barrels casks

674.83 Veneers and composite woods

Including manufacture, machinery, pressing, drying, finishing

For adhesives, see 668 3

833 Veneers

Including face, commercial, container veneers

For manufacture of wooden containers, see 674 82

834 Plywood

Wood panels consisting of an odd number of veneer sheets glued together with the grains of the layers at right angles to one another

.835 Wood laminates (Specialty plywoods)

Wood panels consisting of an even number of veneer sheets bonded together under high pressure and heat with the grains of the layers parallel to one another

Including high-density wood, sandwich panels

.84 Wood waste and residues

Including excelsior, wood flour, sawdust, wood shavings, other mill residues

For a specific use of wood waste, see the subject, e g, sawdust as fuel 662 65

.88 Minor wood products

Including wood-cased lead pencils, toothpicks, spools, woodenware, picture frames

For matches, see 662 5

.9 Cork and cork products

For a specific use of cork or a cork product, see the subject, e g, bottling 663

675 Leather and fur industries

For hand tooling of leather, fur craft, see 745 53

.2 Leather processing

Including materials, apparatus, machinery, finisht leathers

For artificial leather, see 677 682, *manufacture of leather goods,* 685

22 Preliminary operations

Including salting, fleshing unhairing (liming), bating, washing hides and skins

675 23 Tanning operations

Including tanning with vegetable and mineral tannins

For chemistry of tannins, see 547 783, tanning furs, 675 3

24 Dressing operations

Including fat liquoring (lubricating), stuffing, toggling, pasting

25 Finishing operations

Including dyeing, boarding, embossing, buffing (suede leather), glazing, moldproofing, production of patent leather

29 Properties and practical tests of leather

Including tensile strength flexibility, elasticity, resistivity to chemical reagents, aging properties

.3 *Fur dressing*

Treatment of raw pelts, e g, preliminary dressing, tanning bleaching, dyeing [*formerly* *667 2], glazing, plucking, shearing

For fur farming, see 636 92, trapping for fur, 639 11, leather tanning, 675 23 textiles woven from animal hair, 677 3, manufacture of fur apparel, 685 24

676 Pulp, paper and related industries

Including materials machinery processes and their chemistry, properties tests recovery of waste products

For paper fabrics, see 677 57, paper handicraft, 745 54

.1 Pulp and its manufacture

For a specific utilization of pulp, see the subject, e g, utilization in paper manufacture 676.2, purified pulp, 676 4

12 Wood pulp

For pulpwood, see 634 983

122 Mechanical process (Groundwood process)

Including manufacture of pulp from steamed wood

124 Soda process

125 Sulfite process

For neutral sulfite semichemical process, see 676 127

126 Sulfate process (Kraft process)

676 127 Semichemical process

Including neutral sulfite semichemical process

13 Rag pulps

14 Other pulps

Pulps manufactured from straw jute hemp bamboo cornstalks bagasse waste paper

Including Pomilio process nitric acid pulping

17 Properties and tests of pulp

18 Pulp products other than paper

182 Molded pulp products

For paper plates see 676 34

183 Pulpboards

Including wallboards chip boards fiberboards

For paperboard see 676 288

.2 Paper, paperboard and their manufacture

Manufacture of basic paper and paperboard products from pulp

For manufacture of converted paper products see 676 3, photographic paper 771 532 3

22 Handmade paper and its manufacture

23 Machine made paper and its manufacture

For specific types of paper and paperboard see 676 28

232 Papermaking machines and processes

Including beaters and refiners Fourdrinier Harper Jordan Yankee papermaking machines stock preparation equipment

234 Calendering and finishing

Including surface finishes sizing coloring creping

235 Machine coating processes

.27 Properties and tests of paper

Including physical tests e g bursting strength opacity durability chemical tests e g Herzberg Lofton Merritt Bright modified iodine stain tests

For properties and tests of a specific kind of paper see the kind e g currency paper 676 282 6

676.28 Types of paper and paperboard

Including manufacture, properties, tests

.282 Graphic arts papers

Including writing and ledger papers, bond and other fine papers

For school tablets, see 676.286

.282 3 Stationery

Including onionskin paper

.282 4 Book papers

Comprehensive works

For coated papers, see 676.283

.282 5 Drawing and art papers

.282 6 Currency papers

Including paper for bonds and securities

.283 Coated papers

Including machine coated and off machine coated papers

.284 Specialty papers

.284 2 Tissue papers

Including cigarette paper, carbon tissue, cutlery tissue, tracing paper, fruit and candy wrappings, Japanese tissue

For onionskin paper, see 676.282 3

.284 4 Blotting and saturating papers

Including filter papers, paper towels

.284 5 Parchment and vulcanized papers

Including glassine and greaseproof papers

For coated papers, see 676.283

.286 Newsprint

Including other unsized papers, e.g., paper for school tablets, scratch pads, handbills

676.287 Wrapping and bag paper

Including kraft wrapping "brown wrapper," butcher paper, Manila paper bogus wrapping

288 Paperboard

Including pasteboard Bristol board cardboard food board

For pulpboards see 676 183

289 Roofing and building papers

Including asbestos paper

For use of roofing and building papers see 693–698

29 Identification of paper

Including watermarks

3 Converted paper products industry

Conversion of paper and paperboard into finisht products

32 Paper boxes and cartons

Including folding boxes corrugated and solid paperboard boxes

For food board containers see 676 34

33 Paper bags

34 Food board containers

Including paper plates and cups milk cartons ice-cream containers frozen food cartons

4 Cellulose and its manufacture

Production of purified pulp (alpha cellulose) from wood pulp and cotton linters

For cellulose chemistry see 547 782 a specific product derived from cellulose the product e g plastics made from cellulose 668 44

44 Cellulose derivatives

Comprehensive works on manufacture of cellulose esters and ethers

For a specific cellulose derivative see the subject e g nitrocellulose 662 3

676.5 By-products of pulp and paper industries

Including recovery of tall oil, turpentine, resins, fatty acids

.52 Industrial lignin

677 Textile and fiber manufactures

Manufacture of cloth and other fiber products by weaving, knitting, knotting, crocheting, braiding, bonding, laminating

For fiber plant cultivation, see 633 5, commercial process dyeing, commercial printing of textiles, 667.3, textile handicrafts, 746, apparel manufacture, 687

SUMMARY

677 02	Textile manuals
.1	Textiles woven from bast fibers
2	Textiles woven from seed hair fibers
.3	Textiles woven from animal hair
4	Silk textiles and synthetic textiles
.5	Mineral fibers and fabrics
.54	Braiding and matting processes
.55	Elastic fibers and fabrics
.57	Paper fibers and fabrics
.6	Other fabrics and processes
.7	Cordage, trimmings, allied products

.02 Textile manuals

022 *Textile designs and designing*

Working patterns for ornamental woven effects

For fancy weaves, see 677 61

.028 Textile manufacturing techniques

Comprehensive works

For manufacturing a specific textile, see the textile, e g, flax processes 677 112

.028 1 Textile mills

Including layout, equipment, organization

For textile power machinery, see 677 028 5

677 028 2 — Textile processes

Comprehensive works on processes and machinery used in processes

For textile power machinery, see 677 028 5

.028 21 — Preparation of fibers

Production of fiber slivers, batts

Including carding, combing

028 22 — Manufacture of yarns and threads

Spinning, twisting, reeling, throwing fiber slivers

Including winding yarn and thread in skeins and balls on bobbins and spools

028 24 — Manufacture of woven cloth

Weaving operations

Class finishing operations [*formerly* †677 028 24] in 677 028 25

For mesht and knotted fabrics, see 677 66, bonding and laminating, 677 69

028 25 — Basic finishing operations [*formerly* †677 028 24]

Including shearing, singeing, beetling, mercerizing, tentering, calendering, pressing, creping

For functional finishes, see 677 68

[† 028 27] — Bleaching and dyeing

Class textile bleaching in 667 14, commercial process dyeing in 667 3

028 3 — Raw materials

Including properties of raw fibers

For preparation of fibers, see 677 028 21

677 028 5 Textile power machinery

Comprehensive works

For use of machinery in textile processes see 677 028 2 knitting machines 677 661 manufacture of textile power machinery 681 767 7

028 52 Power spinning machines

Including spinning frames mules rings jennies

For spinning wheels see 746

028 54 Power looms and loom accessories

Including Jacquard looms and cards

Class braiding machinery in 677 54 finishing machines in 677 028 55 [*both formerly* †677 028 54]

For hand looms see 746

028 55 Finishing machines [*formerly* †677 028 54]

Machines for basic finishes

For machines for functional finishes see 677 68

028 6 Textile products

028 62 Yarns and threads

028 64 Fabrics

028 7 Tests of textile products

Including specifications identification properties

---

677 1–677 2 Textiles woven from vegetable fibers

Including textiles of simple weaves e g plain (tabby) twill satin weaves

For fancy weaves see 677 61 cordage and trimmings 677 7

1 Textiles woven from bast fibers

Including ramie pina coir similar fibers

11 Flax industry

112 Flax processes

Including flax dressing basic finishing operations

113 Raw materials

Including properties of raw flax

For properties of flax products see 677 117

677.116 Flax products

Including linen yarn, thread, fabrics

For flaxseed oil, see 665 352

.117 Tests of flax products

Including specifications, identification, properties of linen yarn, thread, fabrics

For properties of raw flax, see 677 113

.12 Hemp industry

Including sisal abacá

13 Jute industry

.2 Textiles woven from seed hair fibers

Including kapok, milkweed fibers

21 Cotton industry

Divide like 677 11, e g, mercerizing cotton 677 212

677.3–677.44 Textiles woven from animal fibers

Including basic weaves, e g, plain (tabby), twill weaves

For fancy weaves see 677 61, cordage and trimmings, 677 7

3 Textiles woven from animal hair

31 Sheep wool industry

Divide like 677 11, e g, production of woolen suiting 677 316

For napt fabrics, see 677 62

---

677 32–677 35 Specialty fibers

32 Llama wool industry

Including alpaca llama, vicuña

33 Goat hair industry

Including mohair cashmere, Angora

34 Camel hair industry

35 Rabbit hair industry

For felting see 677 63, fur dressing, 675 3

36 Reprocest and re used wool industry

677.4 Silk textiles and synthetic textiles

Including basic weaves, e g , plain (tabby), twill, satin weaves

For fancy weaves and blended fibers, see 677 61, cordage and trimmings, 677 7

---

677 41–677 44 Textiles woven from silk fibers

41 Cultivated silk industry

Divide like 677 11 e g , weighting silk 677 412

42 Wild silk industry (Tussah silk)

Including silk pongee, shantung

44 Reprocest and waste silk industry

Including noil silk

---

677 46–677 47 Synthetic fibers and fabrics

Including chemical processing extrusion of filaments, spinning, weaving finishing

46 Rayons

Regenerated cellulose and cellulose derivative fibers and fabrics

For plastics derived from cellulose, see 668 44

461 Nitrocellulose rayon (Chardonnet process)

462 Cuprammonium rayon

463 Viscose rayon

464 Cellulose acetate rayon

47 Noncellulose synthetic fibers and fabrics

472 Textiles derived from proteins

Textiles derived from milk (casein) soybean corn (zein), and other proteins

For plastics derived from proteins, see 668 43 reprocest and re used silk, 677 44

473 Polyamide fibers and fabrics (Nylon)

For nylon as a plastic, see 668 423

474 Addition polymerization fibers and fabrics

For nylon, see 677 473 addition polymerization plastics, 668 423

474 2 Polyacrylic fibers and fabrics

Including Orlon® Acrilan® Dynel®

677 474 3 Polyester fibers and fabrics

Including Dacron®

474 4 Polyvinyl resin fibers and fabrics

Including Vinyon®, Saran®

.5 Mineral fibers and fabrics

51 Asbestos textiles

Including woven and matted asbestos textiles

52 Glass textiles

.54 Braiding and matting processes

Raffia, rush, cane, bamboo, rattan braiding and matting on industrial basis

Including machinery [*formerly* †677 028 54]

For basketry as an art, see 746 41 *matted asbestos textiles,* 677 51, *felting processes,* 677 63, *matted paper fabrics,* 677 57, *decorative braids,* 677 76

.55 Elastic fibers and fabrics

Including threads and filaments woven and knitted fabrics of natural and synthetic rubber

.57 Paper fibers and fabrics

Including woven and matted fabrics

.6 Other fabrics and processes

61 Blended fabrics and fancy weaves

For fabrics in leno weave, see 677 65

615 Fabrics in dobby weave

Including bird's eye sharkskin, huckaback, figured madras

616 Fabrics in Jacquard weave

Including damask, brocade, brocatelle, lamé, upholstery fabrics

For tapestry, see 677 642

617 Fabrics in pile weave

Including velvet, velveteen velour, plush, chenille, corduroy, frieze, terry cloth

For woven carpets, see 677 643

677 62 Napt and fulled fabrics

Including finisht products

624 Flannels and swanskins

Including swansdown

626 Blankets and lap robes

Including machine quilted blankets

63 Felts and felting

Including finisht products

632 Felt cloth

Including felt carpets yard goods

635 Felt hatmaking

64 Tapestry and carpet industries

642 Tapestries

Including reversible and nonreversible machine made tapestries

For hand woven tapestries see 746 3 tapestry rugs 677 643

643 Carpets and rugs

Machine-made pile chenille tapestry short napt reversible hookt Oriental patterned carpets and rugs

For felt carpets see 677 632 handmade rugs, 746 7 Oriental rugs 746 75

65 Machine lace and lace making

Including bobbin lace tulle embroidered lace fabrics in leno weave e g marquisette grenadine

For mesht and knotted fabrics see 677 66

66 Mesht and knotted fabrics

Including machine crocheted and tatted laces netting

For hand crocheted and tatted laces see 746 43

661 Machine knitting and knitting machines

For knitting a specific article see the subject e g hosiery 687 32 hand knitting 746 43 manufacture of knitting machines 681 767 7

677.68 Functional finishes of fabrics

Including processes and machinery

.681 Crease- and wrinkle resistant fabrics

Including Tebilizing®

.682 Waterproof and water-repellent fabrics

Including plastic coated fabrics, oilcloth, oilskin, moleskin, artificial leather

.688 Controlled shrinkage in fabrics

Including Sanforizing®

.689 Flameproof and flame-resistant fabrics

.69 Bonding and laminating processes

Including fused fabrics, linoleums

For felting, see 677.63; woven and matted paper fabrics, 677.57

.7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products

.71 Ropes, twines, strings

Including cordage of hemp, flax, silk, wool, coir, nylon

For splicing, marling, knotting, see 623.88

[†.72] Metal cordage and cables

Class in 671.84

[†.73] Conducting wires and cables

Class in 671.84

[†.75] Braids, lacings, ribbons, cords

Class in 677.76

.76 Textile trimmings (Passementerie)

Machine-made decorative cords, braids, lacings, ribbons [*all formerly* †677.75], gimps, tinsel, tapes, bias bindings, upholstery trimmings

For handmade trimmings, see 746.27

.77 Machine embroidery

Including swivel (dotted Swiss), clip spot, lappet, Schiffli embroidery

For machine embroidered lace, see 677.65; handmade embroidery, 746.44

[†.8] Manufacture of textile machinery and equipment

Class in 681.7677

678 Rubber, rubberlike materials, and their manufacture

For rubber chemistry see 547 842

.2 Manufacture of rubber

Comprehensive works on processing crude natural synthetic, and reclaimed rubber

Including machinery

For rubber goods see 678 3 manufacture of natural rubber 678 62 processing natural latex 678 52, manufacture of synthetic rubber 678 722

.22 Mastication

Including mixing milling plasticizing crude rubbers

.23 Compounding and compounding ingredients

Including use of solvents antioxidants, accelerators pigments, e g carbon black titanium oxide

.24 Vulcanization

Including hot (Goodyear) and cold vulcanizing processes

.27 Other processes

Including molding extruding calendering

.29 Reclaimed rubber

Collecting sorting classifying [*all formerly* *678 8] processing natural and synthetic scrap rubber tests of reclaimed rubber

Including devulcanization

For utilization of reclaimed rubber in a specific process see the process e g vulcanization 678 24

.3 Rubber goods

Including natural and synthetic rubber products

For latex products see 678 53 elastic fibers and fabrics, 677 55

.32 Rubber tires

For a specific use of tires see the use, e g, automobile tires 629.248 6 inner tubes 678 35

.33 Rubber overshoes

.34 Articles molded and vulcanized in presses

Including soles heels hot water bottles bathing caps tiles, doorstops hollow ware

678 35 Extruded articles

Including rubber bands, inner tubes, tubing windshield wipers, gaskets, weatherstripping

36 Reinforst articles

Including dipt, spread, electrodeposited articles, e g , conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting

For plastic coated fabrics, see 677 682

.4 Properties of rubber

Comprehensive works on properties of natural and synthetic rubber in crude and vulcanized forms

Including physical and chemical properties, e g , tensile strength, hardness, elasticity, aging and deterioration, analysis, tests

For properties of latexes, see 678 54, of crude natural rubber, 678 64, of synthetic rubber, 678 724, engineering properties of rubber, 620 194, tests of reclaimed rubber, 678 29

.5 Latexes

Natural and synthetic latexes

For coagulation of synthetic latexes, see 678 722, extraction of latex from plants, 634 986 5

.52 Processing latex

.522 Preliminary treatment

Including preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging, preparation of latex biscuits

For preparation of crude rubber from latex, see 678 62

.524 Vulcanization

.527 Other processes

Including molding, coating, casting, dipping, spreading, electrodepositing

.53 Latex products

Including products made directly from vulcanized and unvulcanized latex

532 Latex foam products

Including manufacture of latex foam mattresses, pillows, upholstery, latex foam in sheets and fragments

533 Dipt and cast latex products

Including manufacture of toy balloons, meteorological balloons, surgeons' gloves, feeding bottle nipples, pen sacs, cast toys and models

678 538 Other latex products

Including extruded, spread, sprayed, electrodeposited products

For latex paints, see 667 63

.54 Properties of latexes

Including physical chemical, colloidal properties, analysis, tests

For comprehensive works on properties of rubber, see 678 4, properties of crude rubber, 678 64, of synthetic rubber, 678 724

.6 Crude natural rubber (Raw rubber)

62 Manufacture of crude rubber

Production of crepe and smoke sheet rubber by coagulation of latex, milling drying smoking coagulum

Including grading, packing, storing crude rubber

For further processing of crude rubber, see 678 2, processing natural latex, 678 52

64 Properties of crude rubber

Including physical and chemical properties analysis, tests

68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber

Including cyclo rubbers rubber hydrochloride halogenated rubbers

For a specific utilization of a chemical derivative of rubber see the subject e g paint plasticizers 667 622, chemical derivatives of synthetic rubbers, 678 728

.7 Elastomers

Elastic rubberlike substances having some of the properties of natural rubber

72 Synthetic rubber

Including butadiene-styrene rubbers (GR S), chloroprene rubbers (GR M) acrylonitrile rubbers (GR A), isobutylene rubbers (GR I) polyurethane, cis polydienes

722 Manufacture of synthetic rubber

Emulsion polymerization of basic monomers, coagulation of synthetic latexes drying coagulums

For further processing of crude synthetic rubber, see 678 2 synthetic rubber products 678 3

678 724 Properties of synthetic rubber

Including physical, chemical, colloidal properties, analysis, tests

For comprehensive works on properties of rubber, see 678 4 properties of crude rubber, 678 64 of latexes, 678 54

728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber

Production, properties, utilization

Including isomerized synthetic rubber

For high-styrene resins see 678 73, chemical derivatives of natural rubber 678 68

73 High styrene resins (Elasto-plastics)

Production, properties, utilization

For a specific utilization of a high styrene resin, see the subject, e g , plastics made from synthetic resins 668 42

[*.8] Scrap rubber

Class in 678 29

679 Manufacture of miscellaneous products

For manufacture of small articles, see 688

[†.1] Manufactures based on plant and animal materials

Class with the subject in 660–688, e g , grain processing 664 7 pestifuges 668 65

[† 137 1] Tobacco products

Class in 679 7

[†* 2] Manufactures based on mineral materials, tobacco products

Class manufactures based on mineral materials [*formerly* †679 2] with the subject in 660–688, e g asbestos manufactures 666 72, tobacco products [*formerly* *679 2] in 679 7

679 4 **Ivory, horn, and feather products**

43 Ivory products

For ivory carving see 736 6

47 Feather products

Including preparation of feathers and downs for use in pillows mattresses upholstery

For use of feathers in millinery see 687 42

6 **Brooms and brushes**

Including brooms and brushes made of vegetable animal and synthetic fibers and bristles

7 **Tobacco products [*formerly* †679 137 1, *679 2]**

Processes machinery packaging

Including chewing tobacco snuff

For tobacco culture curing aging see 633 71 drugs derived from tobacco 615 3 manufacture of pesticides derived from tobacco 668 65

72 Cigars

73 Cigarettes

For cigarette paper see 676 284 2

[† 8] **Celluloid**

Class in 668 44

9 **Waste materials**

Comprehensive works on salvage and utilization of waste and scrap materials

For salvage and utilization of a specific material see the material e g scrap rubber 678 29 chemurgy 660 282

680 Other manufactures

Including manufacture of specific finisht articles and goods

For handicrafts, see 745 5, *hobbies,* 790 2, *comprehensive works on manufacture, use, history of a specific finisht article, the use, e g, telescopes* 522 2, *comprehensive reports of manufacturing companies,* 338 4

681 Precision instruments and apparatus, and related machines

SUMMARY

681 1	Wheel mechanisms and related devices
.2	Scientific measuring instruments
.4	Optical instruments
.6	Printing and duplicating machines
7	Other instruments and machines
8	Sound and music instruments

.1 Wheel mechanisms and related devices

.11 Horology

Manufacture of instruments for measuring and indicating time

Including repairing, testing, adjusting timepieces

.111 Ancient and primitive instruments

Including manufacture of sundials, water clocks (clepsydras), portable sundials, hourglasses (*both formerly* †681 119)

.112 Clockwork

Constituent parts of clocks and watches, e g, gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices

.113 Clocks

Including manufacture of private and public clocks

For pneumatic clocks, see 681 115, *electric clocks,* 681 116, *clock parts,* 681 112

114 Watches

Including manufacture of pocket and wrist watches precision timepieces, e g chronometers railroad watches

For stop watches, see 681 118, *watch parts,* 681 112

115 Pneumatic clocks

116 Electric clocks

681 118 Chronographs and chronoscopes

Including manufacture of stop watches metronomes tachometers time clocks time and-date recorders

[† 119] Portable sundials and hourglasses

Class in 681 111

12 Industrial measuring instruments [*formerly also* †681.26 *formerly* *621]

Including manufacture of flow meters e g electric water gas meters of gauges comprehensive works on manufacture of industrial and scientific measuring instruments

For scientific measuring instruments see 681.2

13 Cameras and accessories [*formerly* *771 3]

Including manufacture of studio hand motion picture cameras projectors

For manufacture of sound picture recording and reproducing machines see 681 844

[† 131] Automatic dispensing machines

Class in 629 82

[† 135] Phonographs

Class in 681 843

14 Business machines [*formerly* *651]

For manufacture of stenographic machines see 681 61 *of time clocks time-and-date recorders* 681 118

---

681 141–681 144 Computation instruments and machines [*formerly* *510 78]

141 Adding and calculating machines

142 Automatic (electronic) digital computers

Including manufacture of UNIVAC RAYDAC BINAC puncht card computing machines comprehensive works on manufacture of puncht card machines

For manufacture of puncht card sorting machines see 681 148

681.143 Analogue machines

Including manufacture of differential analyzers, slide rules, planimeters

.144 Other digital machines

Including manufacture of abacuses

.145 Cash registers

.147 Machines for counting discrete units

Including manufacture of voting machines

.148 Sorting machines

Including manufacture of puncht card sorting machines

For puncht card computing machines, see 681 142

[†.15] Mechanical toys

Class in 688 728

.2 Scientific measuring instruments [*formerly* *500–*599]

For industrial measuring instruments, see 681 12

.25 Specific measuring instruments

Divide like 500, except as provided for in 681 414–681 416, e g, manufacture of thermometers 681 253 65, of balances 681.253 154

[† 26] Industrial measuring instruments

Class in 681 12

.4 Optical instruments [*formerly* *535.8]

41 Specific types of optical instruments

411 Spectacles [*formerly* *617 7]

For manufacture of lenses, see 681 42, of spectacle frames, 681 43, optometry, 617 75

412 Telescopes

Including manufacture of opera glasses, spyglasses

.413 Microscopes

Divide like 578 1, e g, manufacture of electron microscopes 681 413 5

414 Spectroscopes

Divide like 535 84, e g, manufacture of chromatic spectroscopes 681 414 3

415 Photometers

681.416 Polarimeters

.42 Lenses

Including manufacture of converging, diverging, achromatic, astigmatic, anastigmatic, contact, Polaroid® lenses

.43 Spectacle frames [*formerly* *617.7]

[†.44] Setting and adjusting

Class in 617.75

.6 **Printing and duplicating machines**

Including manufacture of composing machines [*formerly* *655 28], of machines duplicating by offset and by stencils [*both formerly* *652 4]

.61 Stenographic machines

Including manufacture of manual and electric typewriters [*formerly* *652 3], shorthand machines [*formerly* *653 3]

.62 Printing presses [*formerly* *655 3]

Including manufacture of manual and mechanical presses

[†.63] **Apparatus for telecommunication**

Class in 621 382–621 389

.7 **Other instruments and machines [*formerly* *000–*999]**

Divide like 000–999, except as provided for elsewhere in 600–699, e g, manufacture of textile machinery and equipment [*formerly* †677 8] 681 767 7, medical instruments and apparatus 681 761, agricultural machinery 681 763

.8 **Sound and music instruments [*formerly* †*780–†*789]**

Including sound recorders and reproducers [*formerly* *621 345]

.81 Conventional musical instruments

Divide like 786–789 6, e g, manufacture of pipe organs 681 816 6

For manufacture of electronically operated conventional instruments, add 8 to the instrument number, e g, manufacture of electronic organs 681 816 68

For comprehensive works on musical instruments, see 781 91, hand construction of a specific musical instrument, the instrument, e g, violin 787 12

.82 Mechanical musical instruments

Including manufacture of hand organs, music boxes

.83 Automatic musical players

Including player pianos

681 84 Other sound recorders and reproducers

Including manufacture of dictation machines

842 *Sound records and recorders*

Including manufacture of disc tape wire cylinder belt *records*

843 Sound reproducers

Including manufacture of phonographs [*formerly also* †681 135] radiophonographs automatic record changers

For communication engineering see 621 382–621 389

844 Sound picture recording and reproducing machines

Comprehensive works

For manufacture of cameras and accessories see 681 13 *of lenses* 681 42 *of sound recorders* 681 842 *sound picture recording* 778 534 4

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)

1 **Horseshoeing**

4 **Hand forged tools and ironwork**

For ornamental ironwork see 739 4

683 Hardware

3 **Locksmithing**

Including manufacture of locks keys hasps hinges catches

34 Safes and strongboxes

4 **Gunsmithing**

Manufacture and repair of small firearms

For ordnance see 623 4 *arms and armor* 739 7

8 **Household appliances**

82 Kitchen utensils

Including manufacture of cutlery [*formerly* †672] pots pans pails

83 *Electrical appliances*

Including manufacture of electrical toasters waffle irons flatirons mixers vacuum cleaners

683 88 Heavy equipment

Household equipment requiring installation

Including manufacture of stoves and ranges [*formerly* 1672], heating equipment, water heaters, washing machines, dryers dishwashers, garbage disposal units

For manufacture of refrigerators, see 621 57, *of boiler furnaces,* 621 183, *of fans and blowers,* 621 6

684 Manufacture of furnishings and related products

Including construction, repair, refinishing of articles made from wood and other materials

For lumber industry, see 674, *wood handicrafts,* 745 51, *carpentry,* 694

.1 Manufacture of furniture

Including home and office furniture, upholstery

For furniture as home equipment, see 645, *manufacture of doll furniture,* 688 723

12 Upholstered furniture

Including manufacture of sofas, couches, upholstered chairs

13 Chairs and tables

For manufacture of upholstered chairs, see 684 12, *of desks,* 684 14

14 Desks

Including manufacture of metal and wooden desks

15 Beds

Including manufacture of bedsprings, mattresses

For manufacture of foam rubber mattresses, see 678 532

18 Garden, patio, porch furniture

Including manufacture of wrought iron, tubular, rattan furniture

.2 Cabinets

Including manufacture and veneering of chests, dressers, book cases china and linen cabinets file cabinets shelving built in furniture

Class veneering in architectural design and decoration [*formerly* *684 2] in 729 6

For installation of built in cabinets, shelves, bookcases, see 694 7

684 3 **Other furnishings**

Including manufacture of draperies hangings slip covers curtains

For machine made carpets and rugs see 677 643 handmade rugs 746 7 manufacture of picture frames 674 88

7 **Carriages and wagons**

Including manufacture of carts wheelbarrows

For manufacture of automobiles see 629.2

.8 **Home workshops**

Including woodworking manuals tools machinery

For making a specific product see the subject e g chairs 684 13 manual training in schools 371 426 household repair and home improvement 643 7

685 Manufacture of leather goods and related products

For leather processing e g tanning, dressing see 675 2 fur dressing, 675 3 hand tooling of leather and fur craft 745 53

1 Saddlery and harness making

2 Leather and fur garment making

22 Leather garments and accessories

Including manufacture of leather jackets skirts trousers aprons belts

For leather shoes see 685 31 leather gloves and mittens 685 4 handbags and purses 685 51

.24 Fur garments and accessories

Fur craftsmanship [*formerly* *687 1]

Including manufacture of fur coats jackets stoles neckpieces, muffs hats

For fur trimmed garments see 687 1 fur gloves and mittens 685 4

.3 **Footwear**

For rubber overshoes see 678 33 rubber soles and heels 678 34

31 Leather and fabric shoes

Manufacture and repair of boots shoes slippers of leather fabric plastics composite materials

32 Wooden shoes

Including manufacture of clogs

36 Footwear for specific activities

361 Ice skates

LIBRA

685.362 Roller skates

.363 Snowshoes

Class skis [*formerly* †685 363] in 685 364

.364 Skis [*formerly* †685.363]

.37 Stilts

.38 Orthopedic appliances

For comprehensive works on orthopedic appliances, see 617 307 8

.4 Gloves and mittens

Manufacture of leather, fur, fabric, knitted gloves and mittens

.43 Boxing gloves

.5 Travel and camping equipment

.51 Luggage

Manufacture of trunks, suitcases, valises, handbags, purses, brief cases of leather, fabric, wicker, composite materials

.53 Camping gear

Manufacture of tents, camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags

[†686] Bookbinding

Class in 655 7

687 Apparel manufacture

Class fashion modeling [*formerly* *687] in 659 152

For home sewing and tailoring, see 646 4, *home millinery,* 646 5, *costume* 391, *leather and fur garment making,* 685 2, *fashion drawing,* 741 672

.1 Commercial garment making

Design patternmaking and grading, pressing, cutting, tailoring, dressmaking

Including manufacture of fur-trimmed garments

Class fur craftsmanship [*formerly* *687 1] in 685 24

For comprehensive works on clothing design, see 646 01

11 Men's apparel

12 Women's apparel

13 Children's apparel

Including infants' apparel, layettes

687 15 Special types of garments

Including manufacture of uniforms ceremonial and academic robes ecclesiastical vestments

19 Dress accessories

Including manufacture of collars cuffs ties scarves handkerchiefs belts jabots

For leather belts see 685 22

2 Underwear

Including manufacture of lingerie night clothes dressing gowns

25 Foundation garments

Including corsets brassières

3 Knitwear

For underwear see 687 2

32 Hosiery

38 Sweaters

4 Commercial hatmaking

Comprehensive works on manufacture of hats

For felt hatmaking see 677 635 fur hatmaking 685 24

41 Men s hats

42 Millinery

8 Industries auxiliary to garment making (Notions)

Including manufacture of buttons hooks and eyes snaps slide fasteners needles pins shoulder pads dress shields

For manufacture of thread see 677 028 62

688 Manufacture of small articles

For manufacture of miscellaneous products see 679 of notions 687 8 of minor wood products 674 88 of dress accessories 687 19

1 Models and modelmaking

Comprehensive works

For making models of a specific object see the subject e g train models 625 19

2 Costume jewelry

Mass production of costume ornaments from inferior metals and ornamental stones and from miscellaneous materials

For jewelry made of precious metals see 739 27 handmade ornaments the specific craft e g shell craft 745 55

688.4 Smokers' supplies

Including manufacture of pipes, hookahs, cigarette holders and cases, tobacco pouches, lighters, ash trays

For tobacco products, see 679 7

.5 Accessories for personal grooming

Including manufacture of razors and razor blades, electric shavers, combs, nail care tools, tweezers

For brushes, see 679 6, cosmetics, 668 55

.7 Recreational equipment

For use of equipment in recreational activities, see 790–799, recreational equipment made of rubber, 678

.72 Toys for children

For playing with toys, see 649 55

722 Dolls

Including manufacture of puppets and marionettes

.723 Doll houses and furniture

724 Stuft toys other than dolls

.728 Mechanical [*formerly* †681 15] and electrical toys

Including musical toys

For manufacture of aerial toys, see 688 761 5

---

688 74–688 79 Equipment for games and sports

.74 Equipment for games of skill

Divide like 794, e g , manufacture of chessmen 688 741

75 Equipment for games of chance

Divide like 795, e g , manufacture of playing cards 688 754

76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games

Divide like 796, e g , manufacture of tennis rackets 688 763 42

For manufacture of boxing gloves, see 685 43, of footwear for specific activities, 685 36–685 37, of motor vehicles, 629.2, of camping gear, 685 53

79 Equipment for fishing

Including manufacture of fishing rods, creels, fishhooks, flies

689

690 Building construction

Erection of buildings

For design and construction of specific types of buildings, see 725–728, of other structures, the structure, e g, bridges 624.2, of elementary forms for buildings, 721, comprehensive works on civil engineering, 624

691 Building construction materials

Including selection, deterioration preservation, construction properties

For comprehensive works on engineering properties and tests of specific materials see 620 12–620.199, comprehensive works on properties and tests of a specific material the subject, e g, of wood 674 13 a specific type of building construction, the type, e g steel construction 693 7 structural design in kinds of material, 624 18, building materials for libraries, 022 2

.1 Timber

12 Decay and its prevention

Spraying painting, impregnating timber with coal tar creosote, zinc chloride, other fungicides

Including weathering, fungi penetration dry rot

For painting as a finishing detail in construction see 698 1

14 Termite damage and its prevention

Including impregnation of timber with termite resistant chemicals, artificial petrifaction of timber

For termite resistant construction see 693 842

15 Treatment for fire resistance

Impregnation of timber with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

For fireproof construction, see 693 82

.2 Building stones

Including granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, slate

.3 Concrete and reinforst concrete

.4 Ceramic and clay materials

Including brick, tile, adobe

691.5 **Masonry adhesives**

Including gypsum plaster, lime, Portland cement

.6 **Glass**

Including glass blocks

For ornamental glass design, see 729 8

.7 **Structural iron and steel**

.8 **Other structural metals**

87 Structural aluminum

9 **Other building materials**

92 Plastics

95 Insulating materials

Including rock wool asbestos wallboard

96 Bituminous materials

Asphalts and tars used for roofing and waterproofing

97 Prefabricated housing materials

For design and construction of prefabricated houses see 728 64

692 Construction business practices

.1 **Architect's plans**

Rough sketches and working drawings of buildings

Including blueprints of building plans

For plans of a specific building, see 725–728

.2 **Architect's detail drawings**

Including large scale drawings of trims moldings, other details of buildings

For detail drawings of a specific building see 725–728

.3 **Building standards and specifications**

Including specification writing comprehensive works on contracts and specifications

For building contracts see 692 4

.4 **Building contracts**

Including lump-sum and cost plus fee contracts subcontracts

692.5 **Quantities and costs**

Including estimates of materials, time, labor costs, estimating methods

.6 **Building supervision**

.8 **Contracting as a profession**

Including practices, fees, commissions

For architecture as a profession, see 720 69

.9 **Building laws and codes [*formerly also* †614.784, †614 85]**

Regulations of construction, alteration, repair, remodeling, moving, zoning, maintenance, occupancy

Divide like 940-999, e g , building codes of Massachusetts 692 974 4

For laws and regulations on electric installations, see 621 300 7, plumbing codes, 696 9

693 Systems of building construction

Techniques, machinery, tools

Including comprehensive works on building construction methods and materials

For building construction materials, see 691, design in specific materials, 624 18, design and construction of a specific type of building 725–728, design and construction of elementary forms for buildings, 721, wood construction, 694

693.1–693.542 Masonry construction

.1 **Stone masonry**

Including stonecutting [*formerly also* †515 81]

.2 **Stabilized earth construction**

.21 Brick masonry

Including brickwork bricklaying

For hollow brick masonry, see 693 4

.22 Adobe construction

Including pisé and other prest earth building construction

.3 **Tile and terra cotta masonry**

For hollow tile masonry, see 693 4

693.4 **Hollow block masonry**

Including concrete block [*formerly* †693.5], cinder block, hollow tile, hollow brick masonry

.5 **Concrete and reinforst concrete masonry**

Class concrete block masonry [*formerly* †693.5] in 693.4

.52 Concrete masonry

.522 Precast concrete masonry

Including precast reinforst concrete masonry

For concrete block and cinder block masonry, see 693.4

.54 Reinforst concrete masonry [*formerly* †721.97]

For precast reinforst concrete masonry, see 693.522

.542 Prestressed concrete masonry

.6 **Plaster and lathwork**

Including stucco, scagliola, other types of internal and external plastering

.7 **Steel construction [*formerly* †721.93]**

Methods of erection of structural steel parts and supports for buildings

Including riveted, bolted, arc welded construction, structural steel framing

For reinforst concrete masonry, see 693.54; *welding operations,* 671.52

.8 **Resistant construction**

For resistant construction of libraries, see 022.2

.82 Fireproof construction

Including fireproofing of schools [*formerly* †371.627.8]

.83 Insulated construction

.832 Thermal insulation

For air conditioning, see 697.93

.834 Acoustical insulation (Soundproofing)

.84 Pest resistant construction

.842 Termite resistant construction

.844 Rodent resistant construction

693.85 Shock resistant construction

.852 Earthquake-resistant construction

.854 Blast resistant construction

Including bombproof construction

For design and construction of air raid shelters see 623.388

.89 Other types of resistant construction

.892 Waterproof construction

For foundations see 721.1 *roofs* 721.5

.893 Moistureproof construction

Including constructional control of condensation in buildings

For ventilating and air conditioning, see 697.9

.898 Lightning resistant construction

.9 Ice and snow construction

Including construction of igloos

For ice crossings see 625.892

694 Wood construction (Structural woodworking)

Including carpentry [*formerly also* †515.82] structural joinery

.02 Carpentry manuals

.024 Manuals for amateur carpenters

.2 Rough carpentry (Framing)

Construction of frame of wooden structures

Including posts [*formerly* †694.4] beams [*formerly* †694.3] walls floors partition frames sidings sills joists

For roofing and roofing materials see 695 *design and construction of interior details of buildings* 721

.28 Scaffolding in building

[†.3–†.4] Beams posts

Class in 694.2

694.6 Finish carpentry

Construction of interior details [*formerly* *695]

For design and construction of a specific interior detail, see the subject, e g, doorways 721 8

.7 Fine joinery

Including built-in cabinets, shelves, bookcases

For manufacture of furniture and fine woodwork, see 684 1–684.2

8 Stairbuilding [*formerly also* †515 83]

695 Roofing and roofing materials

Covering and repairing roofs

Including installation, maintenance, repair of roof gutters and flashings

Class construction of interior details [*formerly* *695] in 694 6

For comprehensive works on roofs, see 721 5, roof design, 729 35, roof engineering 624 9, selection, deterioration, and preservation of building construction materials, 691

.1 Wooden shingle roofing

.2 Slate roofing

3 Concrete [*formerly* †695 6] and tile roofing

.4 Metal roofing

Including metal sheet roofing

For iron and steel roofing, see 695 5

43 Copper roofing

44 Lead roofing

46 Tin roofing

47 Aluminum roofing

.5 Iron and steel roofing

.6 Composition roofing

Including asbestos roofing prepared roll roofing [*both formerly* †695 7] mineral surfaced asphalt shingles, asbestos-cement roofing

Class concrete roofing [*formerly* †695 6] in 695 3

695 7 **Textile roofing** [*formerly also* †695 8]

Including felt duck canvas roofing

Class asbestos roofing prepared roll roofing [*both formerly* †695 7] in 695 6

[† 8] **Textile roofing**

Class in 695 7

9 **Other roofings**

Including thatch roofing

696 Plumbing and pipe fitting

Design installation supplies repair of pipes and plumbing fixtures

Including comprehensive works on plumbing heating ventilation

For heating ventilation and air conditioning engineering see 697, *roof gutters and flashings* 695 *sanitary and municipal engineering* 628

1 Water pipes and fixtures

For hot water pipes and fixtures see 696 6

12 Water supply plumbing

Pipes bringing clean water into structures

Including valves cocks faucets

For domestic water supply see 644 6

13 Water drainage plumbing

Pipes removing contaminated water sewage and other wastes from structures

Including house drainage [*formerly* †628 6 *628] venting

18 Plumbing and plumbing fixtures in specific parts of buildings

182 Lavatory plumbing

Including water closets tub and shower fixtures basins

183 Laundry plumbing

184 Kitchen plumbing

Including installation of garbage disposal units dish washers

.2 Gas pipes and fixtures

696.3 **Steam pipes and fixtures**

For steam heating, see 697.5

.6 **Hot-water pipes and fixtures**

Including installation of water heaters, water-softening equipment, repair of calkt joints

For hot-water heating, see 697 4

.8 **Other plumbing services**

Including thawing of frozen water pipes in buildings

For thawing frozen water mains, see 628 15

.9 **Plumbing laws and codes**

Divide like 940–999, e g , plumbing codes of Oregon 696 979 5

697 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering [*formerly also* †628.8]

Including principles, systems, equipment, installation, maintenance and repair

Class comprehensive works on domestic heating and ventilating [*formerly* *697] in 644

697.1–697.2 Local heating

.1 **Open fires**

Heating rooms with wood, coal, charcoal, gas fires in fireplaces, braziers

Class convectors in 697 32 radiators in 697 507 8, district heating in 697 54 [*all formerly* *697 1]

.2 **Space heaters**

Class radiant panel heating in 697 72, solar heating in 697 78 [*both formerly* *697 2]

.22 **Stationary stoves**

Including stoves burning wood, coal, charcoal, gas, oil

For cooking stoves, see 643 3

.24 **Portable heaters**

Including oil, gas, electric heaters

697 3 **Central heating systems**

Including central systems using gas oil coal coke wood

For radiant panel heating see 697 72

32 Warm air heating

Including convectors [*formerly* *697 1] heat pump heating

For heat pumps see 621 563

322 Gravity circulation systems

323 Forst circulation systems

For year round air conditioning see 697 933

4 Hot water heating

Including boilers accessories e g radiators

5 Steam heating

507 8 Radiators [*formerly* *697 1]

Comprehensive works

For radiators used in a specific system of heating see the system e g radiators in hot water heating 697 4

52 Steam heating single buildings

54 District heating [*formerly* *697 1]

Heating a group of buildings from a central station

7 **Other methods of heating buildings**

Class comprehensive works on induction and conduction heating [*formerly* *697 7] in 621 396

72 Radiant panel heating [*formerly* *697 2]

Including hot-air hot water steam and electric radiant panel heating

For portable electric heaters see 697 24

78 Solar heating [*formerly* *697 2]

For solar houses see 728 69

79 Nuclear heating

8 Chimneys and flues

697.9 **Ventilation and air conditioning in buildings**

Including comprehensive works

For ventilation and air conditioning in structures other than buildings, see the subject, e g, ventilation and air conditioning in airplanes 629 134 42

.92 Ventilation in buildings

Including ventilating fans, blowers, exhausters, punkas

For chimneys and flues, see 697 8

93 Air conditioning in buildings

For thermal insulation see 693 832, refrigeration, 621 56

931 *Principles of air conditioning*

Including principles of air distribution, humidification and dehumidification temperature controls, design of air conditioning systems, psychrometric considerations

933 Central station systems of air conditioning

Selection installation operation, maintenance and repair

Including conduit system year round air conditioning

For heating systems, see 697 1–697 78

934 Unit installations for air conditioning

935–938 Air conditioning in specific types of buildings

Divide like 725–728, e g, air conditioning in hotels 697 938 5

For home ventilation and air conditioning, see 644 5

698 **Detail finishing in building construction**

Including application installation of decorative and protective coatings and coverings

For interior decoration, see 747

.1 Painting in building construction

Including mixing and application methods

For painting structures other than buildings see the structure, e g motor vehicle bodywork 629 26

12 Exterior painting

128 Sign painting

698.14 Interior painting

Including painting floors, walls, ceilings

For painting woodwork see 698.3

.2 Calcimining in building construction

Including whitewashing

3 **Wood finishing**

Staining, polishing, varnishing, waxing, graining, marbling

Including painting and enameling woodwork

5 **Glazing and leading windows**

6 **Paper hanging**

[† 7] **Wall hangings**

Class in 747.3

[† 8] **Relief work**

Class in 729.5

9 **Floor coverings**

Measuring, cutting, laying linoleum, tiles, carpeting

For decorative treatment of floors see 747.4

[†699] **Rolling stock**

Class in 625.22

700 The arts

Fine, decorative, graphic, useful, sportive arts

For literature, see 800, *costume,* 391

701 Philosophic aspects of art

For philosophic aspects of a specific field of art, see the subject, e g, philosophy of music 780 1

.1 Theories of art

15 Psychology of art

[† 16] Styles in art

Class in 709 01–709 04

17 Esthetics of art

For comprehensive works on esthetics, see 111 85

18 Art criticism and appreciation

184 Audio visual aids in art appreciation

.8 Art techniques

Including composition use of models

702 Handbooks and outlines

703 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

704 Essays and lectures

.9 Collected writings on art

Divide like form division 08 e g sales catalogs 704 95

94 Specific subjects in art

Comprehensive works on art in more than one field considered primarily from viewpoint of subject treatment

For the work of a specific artist, see the history of art in the specific country regardless of subject, e g, nudes of Michelangelo (sculptured and painted) 709 45, *the work of an artist in a specific field of art, the history of the field of art in the specific country e g, religious paintings of Michelangelo* 759 5

704 942 Human figure in art
Including portraits

942 1 Nude figures

942 2 Draped figures

942 3 Men

942 4 Women

942 5 Children [formerly also †136 757]

942 6 Groups

943 Nature in art
Including landscapes seascapes

943 2 Animals

943 4 Plants and flowers

944 Architectural subjects in art

945 Devices, patterns, ornamentation in art

946 Symbolism and allegory in art
For religious symbolism in art see 704 948

947 Mythology in art
Including gods goddesses mythological heroes other legendary characters

948 Religion in art
Including religious symbolism in art

948 2 Christian art
For use and symbolism of art in religious services and buildings, see 246

[† 948 3] Early Christian and Byzantine art
Class in 709 02

948 4 Biblical characters in art
For Trinity in art see 704 948 5 apostles and saints, 704 948 6, devils, 704 948 7

704 948 5 Trinity in art

Including God Jesus Christ, Holy Ghost in art

948 55 Madonna and child in art

948 56 Holy Family in art

948 6 Apostles and saints in art

Including angels in art

948 7 Devils in art

948 9 Other religions in art

Divide like 294–299, e g, Buddha in art 704 948 943

For Biblical characters in art, see 704 948 4, mythology in art, 704 947, symbolism in non Christian religions, 291 37

949 Other specific subjects in art

Divide like 000–999 except as provided for above, e g, representation of industrial subjects 704 949 6

705 Periodicals

706 Organizations and societies

.9 Persons in relation to art

Including art as a profession

Divide like 920–928 e g doctors as artists 706 961

.907 Women and children as artists

992 Art patrons and patronage

994 Art dealers

707 Study and teaching

For audio visual aids in art appreciation, see 701 184

708 Art galleries and museums, private collections

Including collections of antiques

Use 708 001–708 009 for form divisions

For collected writings on art, see 704 9

01–07 Museum economy

Divide like 069 1–069 7, e g, art forgeries 708 054

708 1–708 999 Art galleries and museums, private collections in specific countries

Including histories guidebooks comprehensive catalogs of art galleries and museums private collections

For exhibits other than in specific museums see 707 4

708 1 United States and Canada

11 Canada

13 United States

14–19 States in the United States

Divide like 974–979 e g galleries in New York State 708 147

2 England

Including comprehensive works on art galleries and museums private collections in Great Britain and Ireland

For Scotland see 708 941 *Ireland* 708 941 5 *Wales* 708 942 9

3 Germany

Divide like 943 for art galleries and museums private collections in countries whose history classes in 943, e g in Poland 708 38

4 France

5 Italy

6 Spain

69 Portugal

7 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

71 Finland

8 Scandinavia

81 Norway

85 Sweden

89 Denmark

9 Other countries

Divide like 930–999 except as provided for above e g Mexican galleries 708 972

709 History of art

Development, critical appraisal, collections of works of specific periods and schools of art

For history of a specific field of art, see the subject, e g, history of painting 759

---

709 01–709 04 Historic periods of art

Art of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

Including styles in art [*formerly* †701 16]

For art in a specific country or by an individual artist, see the national school regardless of period, e g, primitive African art 709 6

01 Ancient art [*formerly also* †709 3]

Comprehensive works

For art in specific ancient countries, see subdivisions of 709 3

011 Art of primitive peoples

For prehistoric art see 571 7

02 Medieval art

Including early Christian Byzantine [*both formerly* †704 948 3] Romanesque, Gothic art

03 Renaissance art, 1400–1600

Including classicism

Class 20th century art [*formerly* *709 03] in 709 04

033 17th and 18th century art

Including baroque and rococo art

035 19th century art

Including neoclassicism comprehensive works on modern art

For 20th century art see 709 04

04 20th century art [*formerly* *709 03]

Including cubism surrealism abstraction, other international movements

709 3–.9 **Art of specific countries**

Including works of individual artists in more than one specific field of art regardless of subject or period

Divide like 930–999, e g , works of Michelangelo 709 45

Class comprehensive works on ancient art [*formerly* †709 3] in 709 01

710 Landscape and civic art

For architecture of buildings, see 720

711 Area planning

Design and control of human environmental areas for beauty, comfort, convenience, health

For landscape gardening, see 712, social planning 309 2, economic planning, 338 9, maps, 912

.01 Theory

Class population trends [*formerly* *711 01] in 711 13

[026] Laws and regulations

Class in 711 172

[061] Government organizations

Class in 711 173

.1 **Practical aspects of area planning**

Including economic aspects, technical procedures

12 Professional practice

Including collection of data, preparation of plans models, presentation, estimation of cost, supervision

13 Social factors affecting planning

Including population trends [*formerly* *711 01]

For population statistics, see 312, social change, 301 24

17 Legislation and administration

172 Laws and regulations

For zoning laws, see 711 51, land economics, 333

173 Administration

Including government planning departments, commissions

.2 **National and international planning [*formerly* *309.22–*309.23]**

711.3 Regional planning [*formerly* *309.24]

State [*formerly* *309 25], interstate, county planning

Including rural development programs

For planning metropolitan areas, see 711 43

.4 City planning [*formerly also* †614.781]

Comprehensive works

Including designs and plans for specific types of cities

For planning specific city areas, see 711 5, planning transportation facilities 711 7, other utilities, 711 8, structural elements in city planning, 711 6

409 History and local treatment

Including plans and planning for specific cities regardless of type

Divide like 930–999, e g , master plan for Newark, New Jersey 711 409 749 32

.41 Plans based on street patterns

Including gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans

.42 Plans based on topography and climate

.43 Plans based on size

Including plans for metropolitan areas

.45 Plans based on function

Including capital, industrial, resort cities, cities serving primarily as religious [*formerly* †711 46], educational [*formerly* †711 47], residential [*formerly* †711 48] centers

[† 46–† 48] Religious, educational, residential cities

Class in 711 45

.5 Planning specific city areas

51 Zoning laws and regulations

Divide like 940–999 e g , zoning laws of Chicago 711 517 731 1

[†* 52] Recreational areas, blighted areas

Class recreational areas [*formerly* *711 52] in 711 558, blighted areas [*formerly* †711 52] in 711 59

711.55 Planning functional areas

Class cultural and intellectual centers [*formerly* *711.55] in 711.57

For plans of cities based on functions, see 711.45

551 Planning civic centers

Including administrative, governmental areas, centers for public works

For cultural and intellectual centers, see 711.57

552 Planning commercial areas

Including shipping centers [*formerly* †711.553], industrial centers [*formerly* †711.554], business districts, shopping centers

For transportation facilities in city planning see 711.7

[†553–†554] Planning shipping centers, industrial centers

Class in 711.552

555 Planning medical centers

556 Planning prison and reformatory areas

557 Planning hotel and restaurant areas

Including motels, tourist camps

558 Planning recreational areas [*formerly* *711.52]

Including parks [*formerly also* †614.783], playgrounds, plazas, bathing beaches, athletic fields, theater districts

For landscaping public parks, see 712.5, *water parks,* 714, *planning preservation of public parks,* 719.32

56 Planning areas for religious centers

57 Planning cultural and intellectual areas [*formerly* *711.55]

Including areas for libraries, museums, colleges, universities, other schools

58 Planning residential areas

Including neighborhood and community planning in suburban and rural residential areas apartment house districts

For residential architecture see 728, *residential landscape design,* 712.6, *sociological aspects of community planning,* 309.26 *planning low-cost and low rental housing,* 711.59

[†585–†586] Slums, blighted areas

Class in 711.59

711.59 **Planning urban redevelopment**

Including slums [*formerly* †711 585] and slum clearance, blighted areas [*formerly* †711 52, †711 586], and their re development, planning low-cost and low-rental housing

.6 **Structural elements in city planning**

Adaptation of structures to surroundings

Including site planning

For structures in landscaping, see 717

.7 **Planning transportation facilities**

Planning for national, international, regional, local transportation

.73 Planning for motor traffic and transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711 77]

74 Planning for pedestrian traffic

75 Planning for railroad transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711 77], local street railways, rapid transit systems, subways and elevated ways [*formerly also* †614 782]

.76 Planning for marine transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711 77], ports, harbors, waterfronts

[† 77] Terminal facilities

Class in 711 73, 711 75–711 76, 711 78

78 Planning for air transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †629 136 2, †711 77]

.8 **Planning for other utilities**

Including planning for water supply, sanitation, power transmission, subsurface pipes and pipelines

712 Landscape architecture (Landscape gardening)

For planning natural landscape reserves, see 719

.2 **Principles of landscape design**

Including esthetics, style, effect, composition

.3 **Professional practice**

Including preparation and presentation of plans, estimation of cost, supervision

712.5 **Landscaping public parks and grounds**

Including landscaping commons, fairgrounds, amusement parks, zoological and botanical gardens, grounds of public buildings

For landscaping semiprivate and institutional grounds, see 712 7, *roads and highways,* 713

[†.53] Water parks and recreational waterfronts

Class in 714

.6 **Landscaping private parks and grounds**

Including residential landscape design

.62 Landscaping home gardens

Including design of back yards, penthouse gardens, gardens devoted to special plants, e g, old-fashioned, rose, rock gardens

.64 Landscaping private estates

.7 **Landscaping semiprivate and institutional grounds**

Including landscaping grounds of country clubs, golf clubs, hotels, hospitals, churches, universities, industrial plants

For landscaping public grounds, see 712 5, *roads and highways,* 713

713 **Landscaping roads and highways**

Including landscaping streets, paths, promenades, other public thorofares

714 **Water features in landscaping**

Including design of water parks and recreational waterfronts [*both formerly* †712 53], esthetic use of artificial pools, fountains, cascades

715 **Woody plants in landscaping**

Including use of flowering woody plants in landscaping

For botany of woody plants, see 582 15, *herbaceous plants in landscaping,* 716

1 Topiary work

Training and trimming woody plants into ornamental shapes

.2 Trees in landscaping

For forestry, see 634 9, *commercial raising of ornamental trees,* 635 977

.3 Shrubs in landscaping

.4 Woody vines in landscaping

716 **Herbaceous plants in landscaping**

Including lawns, mosses, ferns, hothouse plants, ornamental and flowering herbaceous plants

For woody plants in landscaping, see 715, *floriculture,* 635 9, *herbaceous plants in botany,* 582 12

717 **Structures in landscaping**

Including relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape design

For architectural design, see 729, *building construction,* 690

718 **Planning cemeteries**

Design, laws and regulations, administration

Including consideration of approaches, plantings, monuments, markers buildings in planning

For mortuary architecture, see 726 8, *disposal of dead,* 614 6, *burial customs,* 393

8 Planning national memorial cemeteries

719 **Planning natural landscape reserves**

Planning for preservation of natural scenery

Including administration laws and regulations

For conservation policies on land resources, see 333 72

3 Types of reserved lands

For economic aspects of specific natural resources, see 333 7–333 92

32 Public parks and natural monuments

Including international, national, state, local parks

For planning recreational areas in cities, see 711 558, *landscaping public parks,* 712 5, *water parks,* 714

.33 Forest and water-supply reserves

For forest economics, see 634 92

.36 Wildlife reserves

720 Architecture

Plan, design, construction, decorative treatment of buildings

For structural elements in city planning, see 711 6, *in landscape architecture,* 717, *naval architecture,* 623 81, *building construction and materials,* 690, *architects' plans and drawings,* 692 1–692 2, *architectural drawing,* 744 424

69 Architecture as a profession

Including licensing and registration of architects

For directories of architects, see 720 58, *contracting as a profession,* 692 8

.9 History and local treatment

Including periods of architecture in specific countries [*formerly* †723–†724], development and critical appraisal of architecture in specific countries comprehensive works on individual architects

Divide like 940–999, e g, French architecture 720 944

For ancient architecture, see 722, *medieval, Renaissance, modern periods of architecture extending over more than one country,* 723–724, *works of an individual architect on a specific subject, the subject, e g, cathedrals* 726 6

[†* 93] Ancient architecture

Class in 722

721 Architectural construction

Comprehensive works on design and construction [*formerly* *729 3] of structural elements of buildings

Including design and construction of interior details of buildings, e g, walls, partitions

For design of structural elements, see 729 3, *structural engineering,* 624 1, *design and construction of specific buildings,* 725–728 *building construction,* 690

1 Foundations for buildings

For foundation engineering, see 624 15

.2 Walls for buildings

Including design and construction of footings, arcades, colonnades, entablatures and their parts, gable walls, partitions, bearing and retaining walls of buildings

For design of walls, see 729 31, *columnar constructions,* 721 3, *curved constructions,* 721 4

721.3 **Columnar constructions**

Including design and construction of piers, abutments, colonnettes columns, posts, pedestals for buildings

For columnar design, see 729 32, colonnades and entablatures, 721 2, columnar doors and windows, 721 8

.4 **Curved constructions**

Including design and construction of curved details in buildings

For design and construction of arcades, see 721 2, of door and window arches, 721 8, structural design of arches, 624 177

41 Arches [*formerly also* †721 42]

For arch design, see 729 33, groined arches, 721 44

[† 42] Other arches

Class in 721 41

43 Vaults

For vault design, see 729 34

44 Groined vaults

Including groined arches

45 Other types of vaults

Including design and construction of tunnel expanding rib and fan vaults

46 Domes [*formerly also* †721 47]

For cupulated roofs, see 721 5

[† 47] Other domes

Class in 721 46

48 Niches

.5 **Roofs**

Including design and construction of dormers roof cornices, skylights cupulated roofs spires pinnacles gable roofs

For roof design see 729 35 covering and repairing roofs, 695, roof engineering 624 9

6 **Floors**

For floor coverings see 698 9 decorative treatment of floors, 747 4

7 **Ceilings**

For ceiling design, see 729 34, decorative treatment of ceilings, 747.3

721.8 **Other architectural elements**

Including design and construction of doors, doorways, portals, windows, enclosures of doors and windows, balconies, porches, verandas, shutters, blinds, louvers, fastenings

For design of these elements, see 729 38

[†.9–†.92] **Cast and wrought ironwork**

Class in 739 4

[†.93] **Steel construction**

Class in 693 7

[†.97] **Reinforst concrete masonry**

Class in 693 54

722–724 Architectural periods

Chronological development of architectural styles

Including architecture of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

For architectural periods in specific countries, see 720 9, a specific kind of building in a specific style, the kind, e g, Gothic cathedrals 726 6

722 **Ancient architecture [*formerly also* †*720.93]**

.1 **Ancient Oriental architecture**

Comprehensive works

Including ancient Chinese and Japanese architecture

For ancient Southeast Asian architecture, see 722 4, ancient west Asian architecture, 722 5, comprehensive works on Oriental architecture, 720 95

.2 **Ancient Egyptian architecture**

.3 **Ancient Semitic architecture**

31 Phoenician architecture

Including architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos

32 Colonial Phoenician architecture

Including architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus

33 Ancient Jewish architecture

.4 **Ancient architecture of Southeast Asia**

Including architecture of ancient India, Tibet, Burma, Siam, Cambodia, Java

SUMMARY

725 1	Government buildings
2	Commercial buildings
3	Transportation and storage buildings
4	Industrial buildings
5	Health and welfare buildings
6	Prisons and reformatories
7	Refreshment and park buildings
8	Recreation buildings
9	Other public buildings

725 1 Government buildings

For architecture of prisons and reformatories see 725 6

11 Capitols

Including international national state legislative buildings

12 Executive departments

Including departments ministries of justice foreign affairs defense

13 County and city buildings

Including city halls hôtels de ville

14 Customs buildings

15 Courthouses

Including international national state county municipal courthouses

158 Archives buildings

Including halls of records

16 Post offices

17 Official residences

Including executive mansions palaces of rulers embassies legations consulates

18 Military buildings

Including barracks forts armories arsenals

188 Police stations

19 Other government buildings

Including municipal and private waterworks sanitation plants light and power plants

191 Fire stations

725.2 **Commercial buildings**

21 Stores and shops

Including shopping centers

22 Combined store, office and apartment buildings

23 Office buildings

Including skyscrapers, medical office buildings and clinics

235 Radio and television buildings

Including radio and television towers

24 Financial institutions

Including banks, trust and investment institutions

25 Exchanges

Including stock and commodity exchanges, boards of trade, chambers of commerce

3 **Transportation and storage buildings**

31 Railroad passenger stations

32 Railroad freight stations

33 Accessory railroad buildings

Including roundhouses, shops, tool houses, guard and signal houses

34 Marine transportation buildings

Including harbor, dock, pier buildings

35 Warehouses

36 Storage elevators

Including grain and ore elevators

38 Motor vehicle transportation buildings

Including bus terminals, public garages, filling stations

39 Air transportation buildings

Including hangars, terminal buildings, shops

4 ***Industrial buildings***

Including factories, mills, shipyards

5 **Health and welfare buildings**

For medical office buildings and clinics see 725.23

51 General hospitals and sanitariums

For children's hospitals see 725.57

725 52 Psychiatric hospitals

Including institutions for alcoholics [*formerly* †725 65], drug addicts [*formerly* †725 66]

.53 Institutions for the mentally deficient

54 Institutions for the physically handicapt

55 Institutions for the indigent

56 Institutions for the aged

57 Child welfare institutions

Including children's general hospitals institutions for dependent children [*formerly* †725 58]

[† 58] Institutions for dependent children

Class in 725 57

59 Other welfare institutions

Including homes for veterans

For hospitals see 725 51–725 52

592 Veterinary hospitals and clinics

6 Prisons and reformatories

Including juvenile reformatories, internment camps

[† 65–† 66] Institutions for alcoholics, drug addicts

Class in 728 52

.7 Refreshment and park buildings

For recreation buildings see 725 8

71 Restaurants

Including drive in restaurants

72 Taprooms

73 Bathhouses

74 Swimming pools

[† 75] Buildings for watering places and health resorts

Class in 728 5

76 Park buildings

Including amusement park buildings [*formerly* †725 77], casinos [*formerly* †725 78]

[†.77–†.78] Amusement park buildings, casinos

Class in 725 76

725 8 Recreation buildings

For refreshment and park buildings, see 725 7

81 Music halls

Including concert and orchestra halls

82 Theaters

Including motion picture theaters, opera houses

827 Stadiums

Including amphitheaters, buildings for outdoor sports

83 Auditoriums

84 Buildings for indoor games

Including boys' clubs, bowling alleys, halls for pool, indoor tennis, card games, chess, checkers

85 Gymnasiums and athletic clubs

86 Rinks and dance halls

87 Boathouses

Including canoe clubs, yacht clubs, recreation piers

88 Riding clubs

89 Other recreation buildings

Including race tracks

9 Other public buildings

91 Exhibition buildings

Including fair buildings

94 Memorial buildings

Including war memorial buildings

97 Towers

Comprehensive works

Including bell towers, clock towers, observatory towers

For a specific type of tower, see the type, e.g, church towers 726 597

726 Ecclesiastical buildings

.1 Non Christian temples and shrines [*formerly* †726.42]

14 Hindu and Buddhist temples

143 Buddhist temples

726.145 Hindu temples

.15 Zoroastrian temples

.17 Bahai temples

.19 Other non-Christian temples

Including Shinto shrines, Taoist temples

For mosques and minarets, see 726.2; synagogues and Jewish temples, 726.3

.2 Mosques and minarets

.3 Synagogues and Jewish temples

.4 Parish houses and chapels

Including Sunday school buildings, baptistries, and shrines as separate buildings

For wayside shrines, see 726.9; details of churches and cathedrals, 726.59

[†.42] Shrines

Class non-Christian shrines in 726.1

.5 Christian churches

Class cathedrals [*formerly* *726.5] in 726.6

.58 Christian churches by denomination

Divide like 280, e.g., Protestant Episcopal churches 726.583

.59 Details of churches and cathedrals

.591 Entrances and approaches

Including porticoes, vestibules

.592 Naves and transepts

.593 Chancels

Including sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms

.594 Clerestories

.595 Side chapels

For chapels as separate buildings, see 726.4

.596 Sacristies and baptistries

For baptistries as separate buildings, see 726.4

.597 Church towers and steeples

726 6 Cathedrals [*formerly* *726 5]

For details of cathedrals see 726 59

63 Cathedrals of Orthodox Church (Eastern Church)

Including cathedrals of Greek Russian Rumanian churches

64 Roman Catholic cathedrals

65 Anglican cathedrals

Including cathedrals of Church of England Episcopal Church in Scotland Protestant Episcopal Church

69 Accessory structures of cathedrals

Including cathedral cloisters chapter houses

For cloisters as separate buildings see 726 79

7 Monastic buildings

Including abbeys priories friaries convents monasteries

77 Buildings for specific Christian orders

Including buildings for brotherhoods and sisterhoods

Divide like 271 1–271 98 e g Franciscan monasteries *726 773*

779 9 Buildings for orders of other religions

Divide like 290 e g Buddhist monasteries *726 779 943*

79 Accessory monastic structures

Including refectories cloisters cells

8 Mortuary buildings

Including mortuary chapels tombs crematories morgues towers

9 Other religious buildings

Including parsonages episcopal palaces missions buildings of religious associations wayside shrines

727 Educational and research buildings

1 Elementary schools

Class secondary schools [*formerly* *727 1] in 727 2

2 Secondary schools [*formerly* *727 1]

3 Colleges and universities

38 Accessory structures

Including dormitories dining halls music rooms

4 Professional and technical schools

Divide like 000–999 e g law school buildings *727 434*

727.5 Research buildings

Including laboratories, botanical and zoological gardens, observatories

Divide like 000–999, e g, astronomical observatories 727.552

.6 Museums

Divide like 000–999, e g, science museums 727 65

Class comprehensive works on museum buildings [*formerly* *727 6] in 069 2

For art museums, see 727.7

.7 Art museums and galleries

.8 Libraries

727 8–727 84 to be used only by libraries wishing to keep architecture of libraries with architecture of other kinds of buildings, otherwise class libraries [*formerly* *727 8] in 022 3

.82 General libraries

Including public, college and university libraries

83 Special libraries

Divide like 000–999, e g, music libraries 727 837 8

84 Branch libraries

.9 Other educational and research buildings

Including community centers, learned society buildings

728 Residential buildings

.1 Temporary buildings

Including temporary unit and multiple dwellings

Class multiple dwellings [*formerly* *728 1], tenements [*formerly* †*728 1] in 728 2

.2 Multiple dwellings [*formerly* *728.1]

Including tenements [*formerly* †*728 1], permanent apartments, flats, apartment hotels

For hotels, see 728 5, temporary multiple dwellings, 728 1, row houses, 728 31, combined store, office and apartment buildings, 725.22

728.3 **Urban houses**

Houses of two or more stories

Class palaces [*formerly* †728 3] in 728 82, prefabricated houses [*formerly* *728 3] in 728 64

For ramblers, cottages, ranch style houses, bungalows, see 728 64

.31 Row houses

Including row houses of brick [*formerly* †728 32], wood [*formerly* †728 33], stone, concrete

For end units of row houses, see 728 34

[†.32–†.33] Brick, wooden row houses

Class in 728 31

34 Semidetacht houses

Including semidetacht houses of brick [*formerly* †728 35], wood [*formerly* †728 36], stone, concrete, end units of row houses

[†.35–†.36] Brick, wooden semidetacht houses

Class in 728 34

.37 Detacht houses

Comprehensive works

Including detacht houses of brick [*formerly* †728 38], wood [*formerly* †728 39], stone, concrete

Class mansions [*formerly* †728 37] in 728 83

For rural, suburban, farm dwellings, see 728 6

[†.38–† 39] Brick, wooden detacht houses

Class in 728 37

.4 **Club houses**

Including country, city, political, fraternal clubs

For yacht clubs, see 725 87

.5 **Hotels and inns**

Including buildings for watering places and health resorts [*formerly* †725 75], motels, hostels, resort hotels

28 6 Small dwellings

Including rural suburban farm dwellings

For resort dwellings see 728 7

[† 61–† 63] Cottages and bungalows, stone, brick houses

Class in 728 64

64 One story dwellings

Cottages bungalows [*both formerly* †728 61] ranch houses ramblers split level houses made of stone [*formerly* †728 62] brick [*formerly* †728 63] composite materials [*formerly* †728 65] wood [*formerly* †728 66] concrete

Including prefabricated dwellings [*formerly* *728 3]

For vacation cabins see 728 7

[† 65–† 66] Houses of composite materials, wooden houses

Class in 728 64

67 Farmhouses

Including farm cottages [*formerly* †728 68]

[† 68] Farm cottages

Class in 728 67

69 Solar houses

7 Resort dwellings

Including vacation cabins hunting lodges houseboats house trailers

For resort hotels see 728 5 trailers 629 226

8 Countryseats

Elaborate large dwelling places

Including historic palatial dwellings

81 Castles

82 Palaces [*formerly* †728 3] and chateaux

For palaces of rulers see 725 17 of bishops 726 9

.83 Mansions [*formerly* †728 37] and manor houses

For executive mansions see 725 17

84 Villas

9 Accessory domestic structures

Including gatehouses private garages conservatories farm buildings e g stables and silos

729 Architectural design and decoration

Systematic arrangement of elements and details of buildings

For comprehensive works on design and construction of structural elements of buildings, see 721, architectural drawing, 744 424, theory of design, 745 4, design and construction of specific types of buildings, 725–728

.1 Façades and elevations

Including principles of composition

.18 Sections

.2 Planning

Including consideration of function, size, arrangement of interior, communication, lighting, acoustics

For architects' plans, see 692 1

.3 Design of details

Design of structural elements

Class comprehensive works on design and construction of structural elements [*formerly* *729 3] in 721

.31 Walls

Including use of architectural materials for decorative purposes, paneling, entablatures, moldings

.32 Columns and colonnades

Including the architectural orders, entasis, pilasters

.33 Arches and arcades

.34 Vaults and domes

Including groined, ribbed, fan vaulting

.35 Roofs and roof structures

Including spires, chimneys, gables pediments

.36 Towers

.38 Doors and windows

.39 Stairs and ramps

Including balustrades

.4 Painted and architectural decoration

Including decorative painting as an adjunct to architecture

For comprehensive works on murals, see 751.73, specific murals, the school of painting, e g, paintings in the Sistine Chapel 759 5

729 5 **Decoration in relief** [*formerly also* †698 8]

Including carved and sculptured decoration and ornament Gothic tracery gargoyles

For sculpture see 730

6 **Veneering** [*formerly* *684 2] **and incrustation**

Including use of wood stone metal enamel as architectural decoration

7 **Mosaic decoration** [*formerly* *738 5]

Including mosaic pavements

72 Mosaic murals

Including history and critical discussion of early Christian and Byzantine mosaics

For mosaic paintings see 751 48

8 **Ornamental glass design** [*formerly* *748 5]

For stained glass see 748 5

9 **Ecclesiastical furniture** [*formerly* *749]

Fixt and built in furniture

Class other built in furniture [*formerly* †729 9] in 749 4

For religious aspects and use see 247 1

91 Sacramental furniture

Including altars baptismal fonts confessionals

92 Rostral furniture

Including pulpits lecterns prayer desks

93 Seats and canopies

Including bishops thrones baldachins choir stalls pews

[† 95] Fireplaces

Class in 749 62

96 Screens and railings

Including rood screens altar screens altar and chancel railings

97 Organ cases

98 Lighting fixtures

Class other lighting fixtures [*formerly* †729 98] in 749 63

730 Sculpture

Art of producing purely decorative or expressive representations in the round or in relief by modeling in plastic materials

Including molding and casting in metal [*formerly* *739], sculpture in wood [*formerly* *736 4], stone [*formerly* *736 5], and similar materials, comprehensive works on sculpture and related arts

For minor arts related to sculpture, see 736–739

.7 **Study and teaching**

For study and teaching of techniques of sculpture, see 731 4

.9 **History of sculpture**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of work of specific periods in specific countries [*formerly* †734 4–†734 9, †735 4–†735 9] and schools of sculpture

Including medieval Eastern sculpture [*formerly* †*734 5], modern Latin American sculpture [*formerly* †735 8, *735], works of individual sculptors regardless of medium, technique, subject, or period

Divide like 940–999, e g, Italian sculpture 730 945

For periods of medieval, Renaissance, modern sculpture extending over more than one country, see 734–735, history of a related decorative art, the art, e g, history of numismatics 737 09, sculpture in specific forms and subjects, 731 5–731 7, ancient sculpture, 732–733

[†*93] Ancient sculpture

Class in 732–733

731 Materials, techniques, representations in sculpture

Class carving in wax, snow, soap, other materials [*formerly* *731] in 736 9

.1 **Composition and design in sculpture**

731.2–731.48 Materials and techniques

.2 **Materials**

Including metals, wood stone, clay, wax, other plastic materials, finishing materials

Class methods and techniques [*formerly* †731 2] in 731 4

[† 253–† 259] Carving in wax, snow, soap, other materials

Class in 736 9, cire perdue process in 731 456

.3 **Equipment**

Including tools, machines, accessory equipment

731.4 Methods and techniques of sculpturing [*formerly also* †731.2]

Including comprehensive works on materials, equipment, techniques

For materials, see 731.2, equipment, 731 3

---

731 42–731 45, 731 47 Sculpturing in metal

For art metalwork, see 739

42 Modeling

Modeling in clay, plasticene, other plastic materials with or without armatures

Including modeling for metal and ceramic sculpture

For modeling ceramic ware, see 738 142, firing modeled clay objects prior to molding, 731 47

.43 Molding

Preparation of waste piece, or flexible molds from modeled objects

[† 44] Stamping

Class in 739 14

45 Casting

Including reproductions of ceramic sculpture

452 Plaster and cement casting

453 Casting synthetic plastics

456 Bronze casting

Including cire perdue (lost wax) process [*formerly* †731 253] and its modifications

457 Other metal castings

Including casting stainless steel and aluminum, electrolytic casting

46 Carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture

462 Sculpturing in wood

For wood carving see 736 4

463 Sculpturing in stone

Including cutting [*formerly also* †515 81], pointing

For stone carving see 736 5

731 47 Firing and baking modeled objects

Preparation of modeled clay objects for molding

Including firing ceramic sculpture

For firing ceramic ware, see 738 143

48 Restoration techniques

---

731 5–731 8 Representations in sculpture

5 Representation styles and forms

For sculpture in the round see 731 7

52 Styles of representation

Comprehensive works on idealistic naturalistic grotesque styles in sculpture

For specific periods of sculpture, see 732–735 schools of sculpture 730 9

[† 53] Sculpture in the round

Class in 731 7

54 Sculpture in relief

Comprehensive works

For reliefwork on specific buildings see 729 5 carving in stone, 736 5

542 Portals and doors

549 Monumental reliefs

55 Mobiles and stabiles

7 Sculpture in the round [*formerly* †731 53]

Including specific types in sculpture by purpose and form

For specific subjects in sculpture see 731 8

72 Decorative sculpture

722 Garden sculpture and fountains

724 Sculptured vases and urns

[† 73] Statues

Class in 731 8

74 Busts

75 Masks

Including death masks

731.76 Monuments

Comprehensive works

For monumental reliefs, see 731 549, monuments representing a specific subject, the subject, e g , religious monuments 731.88

.8 **Specific subjects in sculpture**

Including statues [*formerly* †731 73]

Divide like 704 94, e g , statues of Venus 731 87

.81 Equestrian sculpture

732–735 Periods of sculpture

Chronological development of sculpture

732 **Ancient [*formerly also* †*730.93] and primitive sculpture**

Including ancient Oriental sculpture

For modern Oriental sculpture, see 730 95

.2 **Primitive sculpture**

Comprehensive works on sculpture of primitive peoples regardless of period

For primitive sculpture in a specific area, see sculpture in the area, e g primitive African sculpture 730 96, prehistoric sculpture, 571 73

.3 **Ancient Jewish sculpture**

.4 **Ancient sculpture of India**

.5 **Ancient Median, Persian, Assyro-Babylonian sculpture**

.6 **Ancient European sculpture**

Including sculpture of Germanic tribes, Celts, Slavs

.7 **Ancient Chinese sculpture**

.8 **Ancient Egyptian sculpture**

.9 **Sculpture in other ancient countries**

Divide like 939, e g , Phoenician sculpture 732 944

733 **Classical sculpture [*formerly also* †*730.93]**

For Aegean sculpture, see 732 91

3 Greek sculpture (Hellenic sculpture)

.4 Etruscan sculpture [*formerly* †733.575]

733 5 Roman sculpture

[† 575] Etruscan sculpture

Class in 733 4

734 Medieval sculpture, ca 500–1400

Sculpture of medieval period extending over more than one country

For medieval sculpture in a specific country see history of sculpture of the country e g Romanesque sculpture in France 730 944

22 Early Christian and Byzantine sculpture

24 Romanesque sculpture

25 Gothic sculpture

[† 4–† 9] Medieval sculpture in specific countries

Class in 730 9

[†* 5] Eastern sculpture

Class in 730 95

735 Renaissance and modern sculpture, 1400–

Sculpture of Renaissance and modern periods extending over more than one country

Class sculpture of Latin America [*formerly* *735] in 730 98

For Renaissance and modern sculpture in a specific country see history of sculpture of the country e g 20th century sculpture in France 730 944

21 Renaissance sculpture, 1400–1800

Including baroque rococo Churrigueresque sculpture

22 19th century sculpture

Including classical revival romanticism realism in sculpture

29 20th century sculpture

[† 4–† 9] Renaissance and modern sculpture in specific countries

Class in 730 9

736–739 Minor arts related to sculpture

Including history criticism collections exhibitions materials techniques

For a specific minor art see the subject e g glassware 748 2

736 **Carvings and carving techniques**

Shaping materials thru cutting carving engraving chiseling whittling or similar methods

For carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture see 731 46

2 **Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)**

202 8 Lapidary work

Cutting [*formerly* *739 27] polishing engraving gems

For mounted gems see 739 27

22 Specific forms of engraved gems

For scarabs see 736 209 32

222 Cameos

223 Intaglios

---

736 24–736 28 Specific carved gems

24 Jade

25 Sapphires

28 Obsidian

.3 **Engraved seals, stamps, signets**

Including personal and official seals seals for special occasions and organizations

For numismatics see 737

4 **Wood carving**

Including whittling small objects scrollwork chip carving wood rasp carving wood carving as a hobby

Class sculpture in wood [*formerly* *736 4] in 730

For ornamental woodwork see 745 51

46 Pyrography

Including pyrography on leather

For hand tooling of leather see 745 53

5 **Stone carving**

Including carving of lettering inscriptions designs on stone

Class sculpture in stone [*formerly* *736 5] in 730

For carving precious and semiprecious stones see 736.2

736 6 **Carved ivory, bone, horn**

Including carved amber tortoise shell

68 Netsukes

For carved jade see 736 24

.7 **Ornamental fans**

Including carved and painted fans

9 Other materials and forms [*formerly* †731 253–†731 259, *731]

93 Wax carving

94 Snow and ice carving

95 Soap carving

737 Numismatics

For engraved seals stamps signets see 736 3

2 **Medals and medallions**

Including medals and orders of honor and merit talismans amulets

3 **Counters, tokens, jettons**

4 **Coins**

Including design

For mint practices see 332 46

407 5 Coin collecting and collections

49 History of coins

Divide like 930–999 e g coins of United States 737 497 3

738 Ceramic arts

For ceramic and allied industries see 666 ceramic sculpture 730–735

---

738 1–738 3 Pottery

For potters marks see 738 88

1 **Materials and techniques of pottery** [*formerly also* †738 21–†738 22, †738 31–†738 32]

12 Materials

Including kaolin petuntse other clays glazes color materials

13 Equipment

Including potter s wheel kilns accessory equipment

738 14 Methods and techniques

Including comprehensive works on materials equipment, methods

For materials, see 738 12 equipment, 738 13

142 Modeling and casting

143 Firing processes

Including firing before and after glazing

144 Glazing processes

15 Other decorative treatment

Including underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing sgrafitto decoration, transfer painting

2 Porcelain (China)

[† 21–† 22] Materials and techniques

Class in 738 1

27 Specific varieties of porcelain

Arrange alphabetically, e g, Haviland porcelain 738 27 H3

28 Specific objects of porcelain

Including vases, tableware

3 Earthenware

Including comprehensive works on pottery

For porcelain, see 738 2 ornamental bricks and tiles, 738 6

[† 31–† 32] Materials and techniques

Class in 738 1

37 Specific varieties of earthenware

Arrange alphabetically e g Wedgwood pottery 738 37 W3

38 Specific earthenware objects

382 Vases

Including comprehensive works

For sculptured vases, see 731 724, porcelain vases 738.28

.383 Other earthenware containers

Including jars, jugs pitchers

738.4 **Enamels and enameling**

Including cloisonné, champlevé, basse-taille, surface painted enamels

For jewelry, see 739 27, *nielloing,* 739 15

.47 Specific varieties of enamels

Divide like 930–999, e g, ancient Egyptian enamels 738 473 2

.5 **Mosaic ornaments and jewelry**

Class mosaics in architectural design and decoration [*formerly* *738 5] in 729 7

For mosaic painting, see 751 48

.6 **Ornamental bricks and tiles**

Including terra cottas

.8 **Specific objects in ceramics, enamels, mosaics**

Including lighting fixtures, candlesticks, stoves, braziers, other objects not otherwise provided for

.88 **Potters' marks**

739 Art metalwork

Creation of decorative metallic forms other than sculpture

Class metal sculpture [*formerly* *739] in 730

For metalcrafts, see 745 56, *metal manufactures,* 671–673

.1 **Materials and techniques of metalwork**

For materials and techniques of a specific type of metalwork, see the subject, e g, goldsmithing 739 22

13 Equipment

Including tools, machinery, accessory equipment

.14 Methods and techniques

Shaping metals by hammering and beating (repoussé work) [*formerly* †739 15], stamping [*formerly also* †731 44], forging, welding, rolling, drawing

Including casting small metallic objects

For casting in sculpture, see 731 45, *in ceramics,* 738 142

15 Decorative treatment

Including painting, chasing, nielloing, patinating

Class hammering and beating (repoussé work) [*formerly* †739 15] in 739 14

739.2 **Work in precious metals**

Including materials, e g , precious metals and their alloys, tools and equipment, processes, e g , hammering, welding, decorating, specific articles of solid and plated ware

21 Gold and silver marks

Comprehensive works

For gold marks, see 739 228 8, silver marks, 739 238 8

22 Goldsmithing

For jewelry, see 739 27

.227 Goldwork in specific countries

Including specific articles of gold and gold plate in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g , goldwork in United States 739 227 73

.228 Specific articles of gold and gold plate

For specific articles of gold and gold plate in specific countries, see 739 227

.228 2 Ecclesiastical articles

228 3 Tableware

228 4 Receptacles

Including vases boxes, loving cups

228 8 Marks

23 Silversmithing

Divide like 739 22, e g , Sheffield plate 739 237 427 4

For jewelry see 739 27

24 Platinumwork

For jewelry, see 739 27

.27 Jewelry

Including design of settings mounting gems repairwork

Class cutting gems [*formerly* *739 27] in 736 202 8

For carving precious and semiprecious stones, see 736 202 8 mosaic ornaments and jewelry, 738 5, manufacture of costume jewelry 688.2

.3 Ornamental cases for watches and clocks

For making watches and clocks, see 681 11, clockcases as furniture, 749 3

739.4 **Ornamental ironwork**

Ornamental work in wrought iron [formerly also 721.92], cast iron [formerly also 721.91], stainless steel

Including grills, balcony motifs, balustrades, knockers, ornamental nails

For hand forged tools and ironwork, see 682.4

.47 Ironwork in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., ironwork in Charleston, South Carolina 739.477 579 1

.5 **Work in other metals**

Including hammered and forged monumental representations

.51 Copperwork

.512 Bronzework

Including bronze cases, boxes, other miscellaneous articles

.52 Brasswork

.53 Work in tin and its alloys

.532 Tinsmithing

.533 Pewterware

.54 Work in lead

.55 Work in zinc

.56 Work in nickel

.57 Work in aluminum

.58 Work in chromium

.7 **Arms and armor**

Including ornamentation of suits of armor, side arms, firearms, shields

For gunsmithing, see 683.4; ordnance, 623.4

740 Drawing and decorative arts

741–744 Drawing and sketching

For painting see 750

741 Freehand drawing

For drawing and sketching specific subjects see 743 technical drawing 744

2 Drawing in specific mediums

22 Charcoal drawing

Including drawing in charcoal and crayon stump drawing

23 Chalk drawing

Including drawing in chalk and crayon crayon only pastel drawing

24 Pencil drawing

25 Silverpoint drawing

26 Pen and ink drawing

For silhouettes see 741 7

.29 Other types of drawing

Including scratchboard drawing airbrush drawing

4 Drawing techniques and composition

Including design line light and shade proportion

For perspective see 742 drawing in specific mediums 741.2

5 Cartoons and caricatures

Including methods materials

501 3 Influence and value of cartoons and comics

For ethical aspects see 175 83

58 Animated cartoons

Including materials and methods of drawing for motion picture cartoons

59 Collections of cartoons and caricatures

591 Collections by cartoonist

593–599 Collections by country

Divide like 930–999 e g English cartoons 741 594 2

741 6 Commercial art

61 Principles of illustration

[† 63] Drawing of specific subjects

Class in 743

64 Book illustration

Including book jackets

642 Illustration of childrens books

65 Magazine and newspaper illustration

67 Advertising illustration

Including posters

672 Fashion drawing

68 Greeting cards and calendars

7 Silhouettes

9 Collections of drawings

Class collections of drawings on specific subjects [formerly *741 9] in 743 9

[†.91] Collections by artist

Class in 741 93–741 99

92 Collections by period

921 Ancient drawings

922 Medieval drawings

923 Renaissance drawings 1400–1800

924 Modern drawings 1800–

93–99 Collections by country

Including collections by individual artists [formerly †741 91] regardless of subject or period

Divide like 930–999 e g collections of Italian drawings of the 20th century 741 945

742 Perspective

Including theory principles methods of drawing in perspective

For other methods of projection see 744

743 **Drawing of specific subjects [*formerly also* †741.63]**

.4 **Human figure**

Including anatomy for artists

For fashion drawing, see 741 672

.5 **Draperies**

Including draped figure

.6 **Animal life**

62–69 Specific animals

Divide like 592–599, e g , drawing birds 742 682

.7 **Plant life**

Including trees, flowers, fruit

.8 **Drawing other specific subjects**

Divide like 704 94 except as provided in 743 4–743 7, e g , drawing landscapes 743 83

.9 **Collections of drawings on specific subjects [*formerly* *741.9]**

Collections by several artists in more than one period

Divide like 704 94, e g , collections of drawings of buildings 743 94

For collections of drawings by individual artists, see 741 93–741 99, *drawings of a specific period,* 741 92

744 **Technical drawing**

For freehand drawing, see 741

.2 **Drafting room practice**

Including preservation and storage of drawings [*formerly* †744 8] equipment [*formerly* †744 3], arrangement, organization, management

[†.3] **Equipment**

Class in 744 2

.4 **Drafting procedures and conventions**

Including orthographic, isometric, spheric projections

For perspective, see 742, *descriptive geometry,* 515

42 Types of technical drawing

422 Engineering drawing

Including mechanical drawing

744.424 Architectural drawing

[†.428] Map projection

Class in 526 8

.429 Production illustration

Nontechnical graphic representations of component parts of a mechanism or assembly to show parts included in the assembly and their relationships

Including pictorial drawings, sectioned photographs, phantom views, exploded views

.43 Other drafting conventions

Including lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows

.5 Reproduction methods

Including photostats, blueprints, blueprint reading

For photostat production, see 778 12, blueprinting process, 772 2

[†.8] Preservation and storage of drawings

Class in 744 2

745–749 Decorative arts and crafts

745 Decorative art and design

Including folk art

.2 Industrial art and design

Comprehensive works on artistic design of mass produced commodities

For design of a specific commodity, see the subject, e g, airplane design 629 134

.4 Design

Comprehensive works on theories, principles, elements of pure and applied design

For industrial design, see 745 2, design in a specific art form, the form, e g, design in freehand drawing 741 4

44 Historic styles of design and decoration

Including collections of natural, grotesque, geometric designs and motifs

.441 Ancient design and decoration

745 442 Medieval design and decoration

443 Renaissance design and decoration 1400–1800

444 Modern design and decoration 1800–

449 National design and decoration

Divide like 930–999 e g colonial American design and decoration 745 449 73

5 **Handicrafts**

Productive creative work done by hand with the aid of simple tools or machines

Including design and instruction in crafts

For textile handicrafts see 746

---

745 51–745 59 Handicrafts in specific materials

51 Woodworking

Including marquetry inlay trim ornamental wood work

For wood sculpture see 731 462 wood carving 736 4 woodworking plants 674 43 ornamental woodwork as furniture 749 5 as architectural decoration 729 6

[†• 52] Textile handicrafts

Class in 746

53 Leatherwork

Including hand tooling of leather furcraft

For leather goods manufacture see 685 pyrography on leather 736 46

54 Paper and papier maché

Including design of end papers gift wrappings design and history of wallpaper

For paper and pulp manufactures see 676

55 Shellcraft

For carved ivory horn bone see 736 6

56 Metalcrafts

For metal sculpture see 730–735 art metalwork 739 metal manufactures 671–673 tolecraft 745 72

745 57 Rubber and plastic materials

For rubber manufactures see 678 *plastics and related resins,* 668 4

[†* 58] Basketry, raffiawork, rushwork

Class in 746 41

59 Handicraft in other materials

6 Decorative lettering

66 Heraldic design

For heraldry see 929 6

67 Manuscript illumination

Including methods and materials only

For illuminated manuscripts and their history see 096

7 Stencil handicrafts [*formerly* †747 94]

For stenciled textiles see 746 6

72 Tolecraft

Including tray painting

74 Decalcomania

8 Composite representation

Including cycloramas

For painted cycloramas dioramas see 751 74

746 Textile handicrafts [*formerly also* †*745 52]

Design methods materials history collecting

Including tools e g spinning wheels hand looms bobbins

For textile manufactures see 677

1 Hand woven fabrics

Comprehensive works

For tapestries see 746 3 *rugs and carpets* 746 7

2 Laces and related fabrics

For mesht and knotted fabrics see 746 43

22 Bobbin darned needlepoint laces

Including tulle pillow lace

27 Trimmings (Passementerie)

Including braids cords fringes

746 3 Tapestries

Including cartoons for tapestries

39 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e g, French tapestries 746 394 4

.4 Other textile crafts

41 Braided and matted fabrics

Including basketry, raffiawork, rushwork [*all formerly* †*745 58]

For hand woven fabrics, see 746 1

[† 42] Sewing and smocking

Class sewing in 646 2 smocking in 746 44

43 Mesht and knotted fabrics

Knitting crocheting tatting [*all formerly also* †646 26–†646 27 *646 2]

Including knitted crocheted tatted laces

For bobbin darned needlepoint laces see 746 22, *crocheted and knitted rugs,* 746 73

44 Art needlework (Embroidery [*formerly also* *646 2])

Including smocking [*formerly* †746 42], appliqué [*formerly* †746 45], couching [*formerly* †746 48] cutwork, needlepoint crewelwork drawn work hardanger

445 Pictures and hangings

Including samplers

[† 45] Appliqué

Class in 746 44

46 Quilts and quilting

Including patchwork [*formerly* †746 47]

[† 47] Patchwork

Class in 746 46

[† 48] Couching

Class in 746 44

5 Beadwork

Including needle and loom beadwork

746.6 **Resist-dyeing techniques**

Including tie-dye, batik, resist-painting techniques, e.g., hand painted and stenciled textiles

.7 **Handmade rugs and carpets**

72 Hand-woven rugs without pile

Rugs woven in plain, twill, Jacquard tapestry weaves

Including Navaho rugs

For hand woven pile rugs, see 746.75

73 Crocheted and knitted rugs

74 Hookt rugs

Including latchet rugs

75 Hand woven pile rugs

Including Oriental rugs

Divide like 950, e.g., Persian rugs 746.755

For hand woven rugs without pile, see 746.72

759 Caucasian rugs

79 History of rugs and rugmaking

Divide like 930–999, e.g., handmade rugs in France 746.7944

.8 Waxwork

Including dipt and poured candles wax flowers

For wax carving, see 736.93

747 Interior decoration

Planning designing, decorative treatment of structural interiors and their furnishings

Class home furnishing [*formerly* *747] in 645

For architecture, see 720, furniture 749 color, 752

.2 **History of interior decoration**

Divide like 749.2 e.g., modern interiors 747.204

.3 **Ceilings and walls**

Including hangings [*formerly also* †698.7], stenciling [*formerly* †747.94], decorative painting, paneling woodwork

For mural painting as fine art, see 751.73, wallpaper design, 745.54, handmade tapestries, 746.3

747.4 **Floors and floor coverings**

Including carpeting

For handmade rugs, see 746 7

.5 **Draperies and upholstery**

Including decorative treatment of doors and windows

For textile handicrafts, see 746

.7 **Decoration of specific rooms**

[† 72] Drawing rooms, parlors

Class in 747 75

73 Home libraries

Including studies [*formerly* †747 74]

[† 74] Studies

Class in 747 73

75 Living rooms

Including drawing rooms, parlors [*both formerly* †747 72]

76 Dining rooms

.77 Bedrooms

Including nurseries

.78 Bathrooms

Including powder rooms

79 Recreation rooms

Including family rooms

.8 **Decoration of specific buildings**

Divide like 725–728, e g , church decorations 747 865

.9 **Specific decorations**

92 Decorative lighting

93 Decoration for specific occasions

Including parties, weddings, holidays

[† 94] Stencil decoration

Class stencil handicrafts in 745 7, stenciling on walls and ceilings in 747 3

748 **Glassware and stained glass**

Including design, identification, collecting

For glass technology, see 666 1

.2 **Glassware**

Ornamental and useful glass products other than stained glass

Including blown, prest, molded, cast, decorated glass

For specific articles of glass, see 748 8, *methods of decorating glass,* 748 6

.29 History of glassware

Including period styles of glass

290 1 Ancient glassware

290 2 Medieval glassware

290 3 Renaissance glassware, 1400–1800

.290 4 Modern glassware, 1800–

.291–.299 Glassware in specific countries

Divide like 708 1–708 9, e.g., French glassware 748.294

[† 3] **Glass cutting**

Class in 748 6

[†.4] **Painted glass**

Class in 748 5

.5 **Stained glass**

Including painted glass [*formerly* †748 4], leaded glass mosaic glass

Class ornamental glass design [*formerly* *748 5] in 729 8

.59 History of stained glass

Divide like 748 29, e g, stained glass of French cathedrals 748 594

.6 **Methods of decorating glass**

Including engraving and cutting [*formerly* †748 3], sand blasting, glass etching spun glass techniques

For stained glass see 748 5

.8 **Specific articles of glass**

Including mirrors, paperweights

For lighting fixtures, see 749 63

749 **Furniture and accessories**

Including design, historic development, collecting of fine furniture

Class fixt and built in ecclesiastical furniture [*formerly* *749] in 729 9

For upholstery, see 747.5

.2 **Historic styles of furniture**

Including antiques and reproductions

.201 Ancient furniture

.202 Medieval furniture

.203 Renaissance furniture, 1400–1800

204 Modern furniture, 1800–

.21–29 Historic styles in specific countries

Divide like 708 1–708 9, e g , English furniture 749.22

.3 **Specific kinds of furniture**

Including clockcases [*formerly* †749 74], buffets and cupboards [*formerly* †729 94], screens [*formerly also* †729 96], chairs, tables, chests

.4 **Built-in furniture [*formerly also* †729.9]**

Including storage walls

For manufacture of built in furniture, see 684 2, *installation,* 694 7

.5 **Ornamental woodwork**

For woodworking as a craft, see 745 51, *as architectural decoration,* 729 6

.6 **Heating and lighting fixtures**

62 Heating fixtures [*formerly also* †729.95]

Including fireplaces, mantels, inglenooks

.63 Lighting fixtures [*formerly also* †729.98]

Including chandeliers, lamps

For ecclesiastical lighting fixtures, see 729 98

.7 **Other accessories**

Including picture frames and framing, shadow boxes

[†.74] Clockcases

Class in 749.3

750 Painting

For commercial art, see 741 6, hand-painted textiles, 746 6, a specific painter and his work, the school of painting regardless of medium, technique, or subject, e g, religious oil paintings of Leonardo da Vinci 759 5

.7 Study and teaching

For study and teaching of techniques of painting, see 751 4

[.84] Collections of paintings

Class in 758 9

[†.9] History

Class in 759

751 Painting materials and methods

.2 Materials

Including surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings

.3 Equipment

Including models, tools

.4 Methods and techniques

Including composition

.42 Water-color painting

Including gouache painting

.43 Tempera painting

44 Fresco painting

45 Oil painting

46 Encaustic or wax painting

48 Mosaic painting

49 Other methods of painting

Including airbrush painting, finger painting

.5 Reproduction and copying of paintings

For prints and print making, see 760

.58 Forgeries and alterations

Including expertizing, determination of authenticity

.6 Care and preservation of paintings

Including restoration of paintings

751.7 Paintings in specific forms

Comprehensive works only

For a specific painter and his work, see the school of painting [illegible] *f Diego* [illegible] *painting* [illegible] *or tapestries, 746 3*

.72 Easel paintings

Including altarpieces, diptychs, triptychs

.73 Murals

.74 Panoramas

Including cycloramas, dioramas

.75 Scene paintings

Including theatrical scenery

.76 Decorative paintings

For decorative painting in architecture, see 729 4

752 Color theory and practice

Including color symbolism, color composition, artist's palette

For physics of color, see 535 6, color vision and perception, 152 1

753–758.7 Specific subjects of painting

Comprehensive works on paintings considered primarily from viewpoint of subject treatment, the artists being of secondary importance

For a specific painter and his work, see the school of painting regardless of meduim, technique, or subject, e g , still-life paintings of Cézanne 759 4

753 Epic paintings

Including paintings of gods, heroes, other legendary characters

For religious paintings, see 755

754 Genre paintings

Paintings in which subjects of everyday life are treated realistically

755 Religious paintings

Divide like 704 948, e g paintings of Jesus Christ 755 5

For altarpieces, diptychs, triptychs, see 751 72

756 Historical paintings

Including battles, coronations, other famous events

757 Figure paintings

Including portraits

.2 Nude figures

.23 Draped figures

.3 Men's portraits

.4 Women's portraits

.5 Children's portraits

.6 Group portraits

.7 Miniature paintings

Including portraits on ivory

For miniatures or illuminations in manuscripts, see 096, *technique of manuscript illumination,* 745 67

.9 Collections of portraits

For a collection of painted portraits with subject rather than artistic interest, see the subject, e g , general collections 920, *collections of portraits of physicians* 926 1

758 Other subjects of painting

.1 Landscape paintings

.2 Marine paintings

Including seascapes

.3 Animal paintings

Including hunting, sporting subjects

.4 Still life paintings

.42 Flower paintings

.6 Industrial and technical subjects

.7 Architectural subjects

.9 Collections of paintings

Comprehensive works only

For collections of paintings of a specific painter, see the school of painting regardless of medium, technique, or subject, e g , collection of Van Gogh paintings 759 949 2

759 History of painting [*formerly* †750 9]

Development critical appraisal collections of work of specific periods and schools of painting

---

759 01–759 06 Periods of painting

Paintings of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

For painting in a specific country or by an individual artist see the national school regardless of period e.g modern Spanish paintings 759 6 paintings by Botticelli 759 5

01 Ancient painting

Comprehensive works [*formerly* †759 93]

Class ancient painting in specific countries [*formerly* *759 01] in 759 93

011 Painting of primitive peoples

For primitive painting in a specific area see painting in the area e g primitive African painting 759 96 a specific "primitive" (untutored) painter the school of painting e g Grandma Moses 759 13 prehistoric painting 571 72

02 Medieval painting

Including early Christian Byzantine Romanesque Gothic painting

03 Renaissance painting 1400–1600

Including classicism [*formerly* †759 911]

04 17th and 18th century painting

Including baroque rococo styles of painting

05 19th century painting

Including naturalism [*formerly* †759 912] impressionism [*formerly* †759 914] neoimpressionism intimism comprehensive works on modern painting

For 20th century painting see 759 06

06 20th century painting

Including postimpressionism [*formerly* †759 915] abstraction Dadaism other contemporary movements

759.1–759.999 National and international schools of painting

Including works of individual painters regardless of medium, technique, subject, or period

Under each school, arrange individual painters alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e g, paintings of Cézanne 759 4 C4

759.1 North American painting

For Mexican and Central American painting, see 759 972

.11 Canadian painting

.13 United States painting

.14–19 Painting in specific states of United States

Comprehensive works

Divide like 974–979, e g, Minnesota painters 759 176

For a specific United States painter, see 759 13

.2 English painting

Including comprehensive works on British painting

For Scottish painting, see 759 941, Irish painting, 759 941 5, Welsh painting, 759 942 9

.3 Central European painting

Painting of countries whose history classes in 943

Divide like 943, e g, Polish painting 759 38, German painting 759 3

.4 French painting

.5 Italian painting

For ancient Roman painting, see 759 937

.6 Spanish painting

.69 Portuguese painting

.7 Russian painting

.71 Finnish painting

.8 Scandinavian painting

81 Norwegian painting

85 Swedish painting

.89 Danish painting

759.9 Other schools of painting

.91 International schools

Comprehensive works only

For a specific international school, see the specific period, e g, impressionism 759 05

[†.911] Classicism

Class in 759 03

[†.912] Naturalism

Class in 759 05

[† 914] Impressionism

Class in 759 05

[†.915] Postimpressionism

Class in 759 06

.93 Ancient painting in specific areas [*formerly also* *759 01]

Divide like 930, e g, ancient Oriental painting 759 931

Class comprehensive works on ancient painting [*formerly* †759 93] in 759 01

.94 Modern European painting

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940 except as provided in 759 2–759 8, e g, modern Greek painting 759 949 5

.95 Asian painting

Including modern Far Eastern, Oriental, Near Eastern painting

Divide like 950, e g, Iranian painting 759 955

For ancient Oriental painting, see 759 931, Indonesian painting, 759 991

96 African painting

Divide like 960 e g, modern Egyptian painting 759 962

For ancient Egyptian painting, see 759 932

.972 Mexican and Central American painting

Including Caribbean painting

759 98 South American painting

Including comprehensive works on Latin American painting

Divide like 980 e g Brazilian painting 759 981

For Mexican and Central American painting see 759 972

99 Painting of Pacific and Atlantic islands Polar Regions

Divide like 990 e g Indonesian painting 759 991

760 Prints and print making

Including comprehensive works on graphic arts

For photography see 770 commercial printing 655 1–655 327 commercial art 741 6

[84] Collections of prints

Class in 769

761–767 Print making

Including designs materials methods and techniques of surface preparation and printing

Class collections [*formerly* *761–*767] critical appraisal [*formerly* *761–*767] in 769 work of individual print makers [*formerly* *761 *767] in 769 9

761 Relief processes (Block printing)

2 Wood engraving

Including printing in color and in black and white (chiaroscuro method) from woodcuts

3 Linoleum block printing

8 Metal relief engraving

[†762] Intaglio work

Class in 765 767

763 Lithographic processes

Printing from an inkt or painted flat surface

22 Lithography with lithographic stone

23 Lithography with aluminum surface

24 Lithography with zinc surface

764 Chromolithography

8 Serigraphy (Silk screen printing)

765–767 Intaglio work [*formerly also* †762]

765 Metal engraving

Comprehensive works

For metal relief engraving see 761 8 mezzotints and aquatints 766 etching and dry point work 767

2 Line engraving

.5 Stipple engraving

6 Criblé engraving

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, and related processes

For etching and dry point work see 767

2 Mezzotinting

3 Aquatinting

Tinted etching

For comprehensive works on etching see 767 2

7 Composite processes

The use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and dry point work

2 Etching

Comprehensive works

For tinted etching see 766 3 glass etching 748 6

3 Dry point work

For line engraving see 765 2

[†768] Machine engraving

Class in 655 318

769 Collections of prints [*formerly also* *761–*767]

Including critical appraisal [formerly *761–*767]

For history of prints and print making e g development of techniques see 760 9

1 Collecting prints

Including care and preservation of prints

[†.2] Collections of prints by individual print makers

Class in 769 9

769 3 **Collections by artist copied**

Collections not limited to one country

Class collections limited to one country [formerly †769 3] in 769 9

4 **Collections by subject**

Comprehensive works

Divide like 704 94 e g portrait engravings 769 42

For work of a specific print maker regardless of medium technique or subject see 769 9

41 **Engravers' and collectors marks**

5 **Applications of print making processes**

Including engraved lettering inscriptions decorative designs on diplomas name cards post cards posters

[† 6] **Collections by technique**

Class in 769 9

9 **Collections by country**

Including collections of work of individual print makers [formerly †769 2 formerly also *761–*767] and reproductions of artists work [formerly †769 3] regardless of medium technique [formerly †769 6] or subject

Divide like 930–999 e g Currier and Ives lithographs of railroads 769 973

For reproductions of the work of a specific artist not limited to one country see 769 3 collections by subject not limited to one country 769 4

770 Photography

For a specific application of photography see the subject e g astronomical photography 522 63

1 **Photography as an art**

Including theory composition and perspective in photography

15 **Photographic optics**

Comprehensive works on light in photography [formerly *771 44]

For optical parts of cameras see 771 35 sensitometry 771 534 optics 535

770.2 **Manuals, handbooks, guides**

Comprehensive works on cameras and processing operations

For cameras, see 771.3, photographic equipment and supplies, 771

.24 Guides for amateur photographers

For guides in using a specific camera, see 771 31

.28 Techniques in photography

For processing techniques in color photography, see 778 63–778 66

.281 Manufacture of photosensitive surfaces

Including manufacture of photographic plates, films, papers

For photographic chemistry, see 771 5

.282 Camera techniques

Including loading, focusing, exposure, plate and film removal

For photographic optics, see 770 15, focusing and exposure apparatus, 771 37, photography under specific conditions, 778 7

---

770 283–770 284 Darkroom practice

.283 Preparation of negatives

Developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying exposed plates, films, paper

Including auxiliary processes, e g, desensitizing, reducing, intensifying

For reversing negatives, see 770 285

.284 Preparation of positives (Contact printing)

Exposing, developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying photographic printing papers

Including finishing processes, e g, retouching, toning, coloring, mounting contact prints

For special printing processes, see 772–773, color photography 778 6

.285 Preservation of negatives and transparencies

Including storage aging effects, reversing negatives

770 286 Preservation of positives (contact prints)

For mounting contact prints see 770 284

287 Recovery of waste materials

69 **Photographers**

For biographies of photographers see 927 7

692 Photography as a profession

693 Photography as a hobby

771 Photographic equipment and supplies

1 Photographic studios and laboratories

Including darkrooms research establishments

2 Furniture and fittings

3 Cameras

Including comprehensive works on studio view hand miniature Polaroid® cameras comprehensive works on use manufacture history of cameras

Class special cameras in 778 manufacture of cameras in 681 13 [*both formerly* *771 3]

31 Specific types of hand cameras

Including guides in using specific cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name of camera e g Kodak® 771 31 K7

[† 34] Tripods

Class in 771 38

35 Optical parts of cameras

352 Lenses

For manufacture of lenses see 681 42

356 Filters

36 Shutters

37 Focusing and exposure apparatus

Including exposure meters view finders range finders

38 Camera accessories

Including tripods [*formerly* †771 34] carrying cases

771.4 **Apparatus for developing and printing**

Including trays, utensils, frames

For darkroom practice, see 770.283–770.284, chemical supplies 771 5

[† 44] Light

Class in 770 15

[† 442] Sunlight photography

Class in 778 712

[† 443] Artificial light photography

Class in 778 72

[† 448] Flash bulb photography

Class in 778 37

[† 449] Night photography

Class in 778 719

5 **Chemical supplies**

Including photographic chemistry, manufacture of chemical supplies

For manufacture of a specific chemical used in photography see the subject, e g, cyanides 661 7

52 Support materials

Backings of glass metal ceramics, cellulose compounds

53 Photosensitive surfaces

Comprehensive works

For manufacture of photosensitive surfaces, see 770 281

532 Specific photosensitive surfaces

532 2 Plates

532 3 Papers

532 4 Films

534 Sensitometry

Quantitative study of effects of exposure and development on photosensitive materials

771.54 Developing and printing supplies

Including inorganic and organic chemicals used in photography [*formerly* †771 6–†771 7], preparation of developing, reducing, toning, intensifying, fixing solutions

[†.6–†.7] Inorganic and organic chemicals

Class in 771.54

772–773 Special processes

Materials, equipment, methods

Including historic photographic processes

For contact printing, see 770.284, projection printing, 778 13, processing techniques in color photography, 778 63–778 66

772 Metallic salt processes of photography

.1 Direct positive and printing-out processes

For platinum printing out process, see 772.3

12 Daguerreotype process

14 Wet-collodion process

Including ferrotype, tintype processes

16 Kallitype processes

.2 Blueprinting process (Cyanotype process)

For blueprints and blueprint reading, see 744 5

.3 Platinotype processes

Including platinum printing-out process

773 Pigment processes of photographic printing

.1 Carbon and carbro processes

Including Artigue, Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome processes

.2 Powder processes (Dusting-on processes)

Including peppertype process

.3 Imbibition processes

.5 Gum-bichromate processes

.6 Photoceramics and photoenamels

.7 Diazotype processes

773 8 Oil processes

Including oil transfer, bromoil process and transfer

[†774] Photogelatin, collographic, photoprint processes

Class in 655 32

[†775] Photolithography

Class in 655 325

[†776] Photometallography

Class in 655 326

[†777] Photomechanical engraving

Class in 655 327

778 Specific fields of photography

Including special cameras [*formerly* *771 3]

For a specific application of photography, see the subject, e g, in X ray diagnosis 616 075 7

SUMMARY

778 1	Photoduplication (Photocopying)
2	Photographic projection
3	Scientific and technological applications of photography
4	Stereoscopic photography
5	Motion picture photography (Cinematography)
6	Color photography and photography of colors
7	Photography under specific conditions
8	Trick photography
9	Photography of specific subjects

.1 Photoduplication (Photocopying)

Duplication of photographs sketches, paintings drawings documents other printed matter thru photographic means

For contact printing see 770 284 reproduction of photographs by means of printing inks 655 32 microphotography 778 315

12 Facsimile production

Including photostats

For blueprinting process see 772 2 facsimile telegraphy 621 382 7 radiofacsimile, 621 384 2

13 Projection printing

Including enlarging processes

14 Reduction printing

For microphotography see 778.315

778 2 **Photographic projection**

Comprehens ve works on filmstrip and filmslide projection

Includ ng project on apparatus comprehensi e works on its use manufacture history

For stereoscopic projection see 778 4 motion picture projection 778 55 color projection 778 65 projection printing 778 13 manufacture of projectors 681 13

3 **Scientific and technological applications of photography**

Comprehens e works

For a spec fic scient fic or technological appl cation of photograpl y see the subject e g biological pl otomicrography 578 46

31 **Photomicrography**

Product on of enlarged photographs of microscopic objects

Including color photomicrography

For mot on p cture pl otomicrography see 778 56

315 **Microphotography**

Prod ction of photographic records on a reduced scale

Includ ng color mi rophotography (*formerly* †778 316) m crofilms m cropr nts microcards

For reduct on print ng see 778 14

315 078 Readers for m crophotographs

[† 316] **Color microphotography**

Class in 778 315

32 **Photography in terms of focus**

322 **Telephotography**

For aerial photograph j see 778 35 panoramic pl otograpl y 778 36

324 **Close up photography**

For portrait photography see 778 92

33 **Radiography (X ray photogr phy)**

Including fluoroscopy (*formerly* †778 34)

34 **Infrared photography**

Class fluoroscopy (*formerly* †778 34) in 778 33

778 35 Aerial photography

For telephotography see 778 322 panoramic photography 778 36 photogrammetry 526 982

36 Panoramic photography

For telephotography see 778 322 aerial photography 778 35

37 Ultra high speed photography

Including flash bulb photography [*formerly* †771 448 *778 7]

[† 38] Photogrammetry

Class in 526 982

4 Stereoscopic photography

Production of effects of binocular vision by photographic means

Including stereoscopic projection and projectors

For stereoscopic motion picture photography see 778 534 1

5 Motion picture photography (Cinematography)

53 Motion picture cameras

For motion picture cameras for amateurs see 778 534 9

534 Types of motion picture photography

For motion picture projectors and projection see 778 55

534 1 Stereoscopic motion picture photography

Production of effects of binocular vision in motion picture photography

Including Cinerama®

534 2 Color motion picture photography

534 4 Sound picture recording

For manufacture of sound picture recorders and reproducers see 681 8

534 7 Cartoon motion picture photography [*formerly* †778 58]

For drawing motion picture cartoons see 741 58

534 9 Amateur motion picture photography

Including motion picture cameras for amateurs

535 Editing motion picture films

Including titling [*formerly also* †778 58]

778 538 Motion-picture photography of specific subjects

Divide like 000–999, e g , newsreel photography 778 538 07

55 Motion picture projection and projectors

554 1 Projection of stereoscopic motion pictures

554 2 Projection of color motion pictures

554 4 Projection of sound pictures

554 9 Projection of amateur motion pictures

56 Motion-picture photomicrography

58 Preservation and storage of motion-picture films

Class titling in 778 535, cartoon motion-picture photography in 778 534 7 [*both formerly* †778 58]

.6 Color photography and photography of colors

For color motion picture photography, see 778 534 2, *color photomicrography,* 778 31, *color microphotography,* 778 315

62 Photography of colors in monochrome

Including orthochromatic and panchromatic photography

---

778 63–778 66 Processing techniques in color photography

63 Direct process reproduction in color photography

Including Lippmann process [*formerly* †778 64]

[† 64] Lippmann process

Class in 778 63

---

778 65–778 66 Indirect processes in color photography

65 Additive processes

Production of color films and projections by additive analysis and additive synthesis respectively

Including Autochrome®, Filmcolor®, Dufaycolor®, Finlay color®

66 Subtractive processes

Production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis respectively

Including Kodachrome®, Ektachrome®, Kodacolor®, Agfacolor®, Anscocolor®, Casparcolor® processes, Tricolor Carbro®, Chromatone®, Wash-Off Relief®, Kodak Dye Transfer®, Duxachrome®, Colorstil®, Autotype-Dyebro® prints

780 075 Official patronage and support

Including government subsidies, supervision, examination for musicians, registration of musicians

.1 **Philosophy and esthetics of music**

For theory of music, see 781

.13 Value of music

Including music in the home [*formerly* *780 07] and community, comprehensive works on influence and effect of music

For a specific application, see the subject, e g, music therapy 615 837, home and community songs, 784 61

[.14] Nomenclature and terminology

Class in 781 23

[.148] Music notation

Class in 781 24

.15 Music appreciation

Including comprehensive analytical guides and program notes [*formerly* †780 072]

For guides to music of a specific medium or composer, see the medium or composer, e g, Messiah 783 354, music of Brahms 780 81, thematic catalogs, 781 973 5

.65 Concert bureaus and concert management

For management of music business, see 658 917 8

[.69] Persons in relation to music

Class in 780 071–780 075

.7 **Study and teaching**

For tests of musical talent see 151 223 study of a specific instrument, the instrument e g of piano 786 3

.72 Music conservatories and schools

Including courses in general public and private schools at secondary and higher levels

For courses and methods of teaching music in elementary schools see 372 878 music in school curriculum, 375 78, school songbooks, 784 62 music research, 780 01

.729 Music education in specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g, *Boston Conservatory of Music 780 729 744 6*

780 73 Concert and recital programs

Comprehensive works

Including concerts [formerly also †791 2]

For program notes and analytical guides see 780 15 programs in a specific medium the medium e g violin programs 787 107 3

739 Programs in specific places

Divide like 940–999 e g Boston Pops concert programs 780 739 744 6

77 Methods of teaching music

Comprehensive works

Including dictation ear training pitch perception eye training music reading sight reading

For methods of teaching a specific instrument see the instrument e g teaching organ 786 7 execution and performance 781 63

79 Music festivals and competitions [*formerly also* †791 2]

Including musical gatherings

Divide like 940–999 e g Salzburg festival 780 794 363

For song festivals and competitions see 784 5

8 Collected works about music by one or more authors

Including quotations anecdotes critical and historical miscellany

.81 Collected scores of individual composers

For thematic catalogs of a composer's works see 781 973 5 collections limited to a specific medium the medium e g violin 787 154 criticism and appraisal of a composer's work 780 92

82 Collected scores by two or more composers

For collected scores limited to a specific medium see the medium e g collected violin scores 787 152 thematic catalogs 781 97

.84 Miniature pocket scores

Including collections individual works in miniature format

Arrange alphabetically by compilers and composers e g Beethoven's Symphony No 5 780 84 B4

If preferred class miniature scores in the same number as scores of conventional size prefixing MM to the number e g miniature scores of Beethoven's Symphony no 5 MM785 115 4

780.85 **Commercial circulars**

For music publishers and dealers' catalogs see 781.973 4

[†.881] Fiction and poetry on musical themes

Class in the 800 s

.9 **History and local treatment**

Class theories and forms from national viewpoint [*formerly* *780.9] in 781.7

.902 Middle Ages ca 450–1450

.903 Renaissance, 1450–1600

.903 2 Baroque period, 1600–1750

.903 3 Rococo and classical period, 1750–1825

.903 4 Romantic period, 1825–1900

.904 20th century, 1900–

Including neoromantic neoclassical movements impressionism

.92 Criticism and appraisal of work of individual musicians

Musicians composing or performing in more than one medium

Including if preferred musicians working in one medium

Including biography (but only in those libraries which classify biography by subject)

For criticism and appraisal of individual musicians working in one medium see the medium e g of violinists 787.108 1 *biography of musicians* 927.8

.93–.99 History of music in specific countries

Divide like 930–999 e g history of music in Spain 780.946

For theories and forms from racial and national viewpoint see 781.7

781 Theory and technique of music

For musicology see 780.01 *theory and technique of a specific medium the medium e g, violin* 787.1

.1 **Scientific theories**

Including mathematical theory of music acoustics in music, physiology of music

For physics of sound see 534 *musical sound,* 781.22, *physiology of singing voice* 784.92

781 15 Psychology of music

Including music and color

For tests of auditory perception, see 152.28, music therapy, 615 837

.2 Principles of music

.22 Musical acoustics

Including scales, intervals, tonalities, chords, pitch

For scientific theories of musical acoustics, see 781 1, harmony, 781 3

23 Nomenclature and terminology

For music dictionaries, see 780 3

24 Music notation

Including systems of notation, neumes, tablature, notation for the blind, reform proposals

.3 Harmony

Including realization of figured bass [*formerly* *781 66], thoro bass, modulation, keyboard harmony

For musical composition, see 781 61, melody, 781 41

.4 Counterpoint

Including canon and fugue

For scores of canons and fugues for a specific medium, see the medium, e g, piano fugues 786 42, musical form, 781 5, musical composition, 781.61, catches and rounds, 784 1

.41 Melody

Including melodic structure and techniques, twelve-tone technique, quarter-tone scale

For harmonic systems, see 781 3

.5 Musical form

Comprehensive works

For forms used in a specific medium or group of mediums, see the medium or group, e g, variations for symphony orchestra or other instrumental ensemble 785 34, kinds of vocal music, 784 1–784 7, canon and fugue, 781 4

[† 508 22] Sonata

Class in 781.52

[† 508 5] Dances

Class in 781 55

781 52 Sonata [*formerly* †781.508 22]

Comprehensive works

For sonatas in a specific medium, see the medium, e g, violin sonatas 787 1

55 Dance music [*formerly* †781 508 5]

Comprehensive works

Including works about the music of early dances, parlor and ballroom dances, folk and country dances, artistic dances

For dancing, see 793 3, *children's dancing games,* 796 13, *works about jazz,* 781 57, *ballet music,* 782 95, *dance orchestra,* 785 41, *dance music in a specific medium, the medium, e g, dance music for piano* 786 44–786 46

.56 Program music

For program music for a specific medium, see the medium, e g, for instrumental ensemble 785 32

.57 Jazz

Including ragtime, swing, blues music

For jazz orchestra, see 785 42, *jazz music for a specific medium, the medium, e g, jazz music for piano* 786 46

.6 Composition and performance

Comprehensive works

For composition and performance of music of a specific kind or in a specific medium, see the subject, e g, composition of grand opera 782 028 *violin performance* 787 107

.61 Musical composition

Including instrumental composition [*formerly also* *781 63], vocal composition

Class arranging [*formerly* *781 61] in 781 64

For harmony, see 781 3, *counterpoint,* 781 4, *improvisation,* 781 65, *composition of accompaniments,* 781 66, *embellishment,* 781 67

62 Rhythm and meter

Including relation of words to music

781 63 Performance [*formerly* *781 64–*781 67]

Including interpretation [*formerly* *781 65], execution, expression, comprehensive works on conducting

Class instrumental composition [*formerly* *781 63] in 781 61

For conducting a specific musical group, see the group, e g , conducting opera 782 07, improvisation, 781 65, accompaniment, 781 66, embellishment, 781 67

632 Orchestration and instrumentation

[† 632 5] Profession of orchestra leader and direction of orchestra

Class profession of orchestra leader in 780 071 2, direction of orchestra in 785 107

633 Score reading and playing

Including memorizing and phrasing [*both formerly* *781 65]

[* 64–* 67] Performance

Class in 781 63

64 Musical arrangement [*formerly* *781 61]

Including adaptation resolution instrumental reduction, transcription

642 Transposition

Including written transposition

65 Improvisation

Including extemporization

Class memorizing and phrasing in 781 633, interpretation in 781 63 [*all formerly* *781 65]

66 Accompaniment

Composition and performance

Class realization of figured bass [*formerly* *781 66] in 781 3

For accompaniment of a specific kind of music or performance see the kind e g instrumental accompaniment of church music 783 1

67 Embellishment

Including graces ornaments decoration

781.7 Theories and forms of music from racial or national viewpoint [*formerly* *780.9]

For folk songs, see 784 4, history of music in specific countries, 780 93–780 99, national airs, songs, hymns, 784 71

71 Primitive music

Including American Indian music

.72 Music of peoples not otherwise provided for

Including gypsy music

73 Ancient music [*formerly* *780 93, *formerly also* †781 8]

Divide like 930, e g , ancient Egyptian music 781 732

74–79 Music of modern peoples and races

Divide like 940–999, e g , German music 781 743

[†.8] Ancient music

Class in 781 73

.9 Other topics

91 Musical instruments

Comprehensive works

Including history hand construction, repair, tuning, verification

Class manufacture of musical instruments [*formerly* †781 91] in 681 81

For a specific instrument, see the instrument, e.g , violin 787 1

.96 Works of dramatic authors

Comprehensive works

Including librettos scenarios opera poems ballet poems

For librettos for a specific kind of composition see the subject, e g , librettos for Rigoletto 782 12, libretto writing 782 028

969 Manuscripts and autographs of musicians

Including first editions special editions, letters, scores and parts of music

For a manuscript of a specific subject, see the subject e g a manuscript of an unaccompanied violin solo by Kreisler 787 154 1

781 97 Bibliographies of music scores

Including thematic catalogs comprehensive bibliographies of music itself and works about music

Class bibliographies of works about music [*formerly* *781 97] in 016 78

973 Catalogs of music scores

Divide like 017 e g auction catalogs 781 973 3

For catalogs of phonograph records see 789 913

973 5 Catalogs of musical works of specific composers

Including thematic catalogs bibliographies

98 Music publishing

For publishers catalogs see 781 973 4

981 Music printing

Including other methods of reproduction

782 Dramatic music [*formerly also* †785 22]

028 Composition of opera and other dramatic music

Including libretto writing scenario writing and translating *arrangement*

07 Opera production and musical dramaturgy [*formerly* †792 4–†792 6]

Including training of performers conducting of operas operettas, ballets *other music for theatrical production* professional and amateur performance

For stage guides, see specific form e g for grand opera 782 12 ballet production 792 8 theatrical production 792 motion-picture radio television play production 791 4

08 Collections of stories, plots analyses

For works about one or more operas of a single composer see 782 1 about one or more operettas of a single composer 782 81 about one or more ballets of a single composer 782 95 about plays the 800 s, about motion picture radio television plays 791 4

1 Opera

Including works about Wagnerian German French Italian grand opera [*all formerly* †782 2–†782 5] comic and satiric opera [*formerly* †782 6] opera bouffe [*formerly* †782 7] chamber opera

Class operetta [*formerly* *782 1] in 782 81

12 Librettos and stage guides

782 15 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements abridgments excerpts

152 Collections by two or more composers

154 Single works and collections by one composer

[† 2–† 5] Epic, Wagnerian other German French Italian grand opera

Class in 782 1

[† 6] Comic and satiric opera

Class in 782 1

[† 7] Opera bouffe

Class in 782 1

8 Theater music

81 Operettas [*formerly* *782 1]

Including musical comedies revues

Divide like 782 1 e g excerpts from scores of musical shows by one composer 782 815 4

82 Secular cantatas

Including secular oratorios [*formerly* †785 21]

Divide like 782 1 e g librettos 782 822

For sacred cantatas see 783 4 sacred oratorios 783 3

83 Incidental dramatic music

Including instrumental and vocal music intended for use with stage performances

Divide like 782 1 e g incidental music for a specific play 782 835 4

85 Film music

Divide like 782 1

.86 Radio music

Divide like 782 1

.87 Television music

Divide like 782 1

782.9 **Other forms of dramatic music**

Including music for pantomimes, masks, pageants

For theatrical production, see 792

.95 Ballet music

Divide like 782 1, e g , music for a specific ballet 782 955 4

For ballet production, see 792 8

783 Sacred music

Including church music

For hymnology, see 245, music in public worship, 264.2

026 Music of specific Christian denominations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 280, e g , music of Presbyterian Church 783 026 5

If preferred, add 0 and divide further like 783 1–783 9, e g , Presbyterian hymnbooks 783 026 509 Denominational libraries may prefer to class music of other denominations here, while classing music of their own denomination in 783 1–783 9

For a specific kind of church music, see the kind, e g , hymnbooks 783 952

029 Music of other religions

Comprehensive works

* Divide like 290, e g , music of Buddhist religion 783 029 43

For a specific kind of religious music, see the kind, e g , liturgical music 783 2

.1 **Organ, orchestral, instrumental church music [*formerly* *785–*789]**

Works about the subject only

Including accompaniment

Class instrumental sacred music itself (scores and parts) [*formerly* †783 1] in 785–789

783.2 **Liturgical and ritualistic music**

Works about music for public worship and prayer of all religions and sects

For liturgical texts without music, see 264, sacred oratorios, 783 3, nonliturgical sacred choral music, 783 4

.205 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

205 2 Collections by two or more composers

205 4 Single works and collections by one composer

21 Missal, divine liturgy, communion

Divide 783 215 like 783 205, e g, music arrangement for communion 783 215 4

22 Common (Ordinary) of the Mass

Including Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

Divide 783 225 like 783 205

23 Proper of the Mass

Including offertory gradual, tract, sequence, tropes, verses

Divide 783 235 like 783 205

For Requiem Masses, see 783 29

.24 Music for other specific services

Including vespers, complins, antiphonal responsive services, morning and evening prayer

Divide 783 245 like 783 205

[† 25] Plain song

Class in 783 5

26 Litanies

Divide 783 265 like 783 205

27 Lenten and penitential music

Including Good Friday The Reproaches

Divide 783 275 like 783 205

28 Liturgical dramas and mysteries

Including Christmas Easter liturgical music

Divide 783 285 like 783 205

For Christmas carols, see 783 65

783.29 Other special services

Including solemnities, Requiem Masses, processionals, recessionals

Divide 783.295 like 783.205

.3 Sacred oratorios

Large sacred choral works complete

Including Passion music, comprehensive works on sacred and secular oratorios

For secular oratorios, see 782.82; sacred cantatas, 783.4

.32 Librettos

.35 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.352 Collections by two or more composers

.354 Single works and collections by one composer

.4 Shorter nonliturgical sacred choral pieces

Including anthems, motets, choruses, sacred cantatas, comprehensive works on sacred and secular cantatas

Divide like 783.3, e.g., collections of anthems by several composers 783.452

For liturgical motets and anthems, see 783.2; secular cantatas, 782.82; sacred oratorios, 783.3

.5 Chants

Including plain chant (plain song) [*formerly* †783.25], harmonized chant, Gregorian, Ambrosian, Anglican chant, Jewish chant

Divide like 783.3

.6 Carols

Including popular canticles

Divide 783.63 like 783.35, e.g., collections of traditional carols 783.632

For church choirs, see 783.8; hymn tunes, 783.9

.65 Christmas carols

Divide like 783.3

783.66 **Christmas music**

Comprehensive works about the subject only

For a specific kind of Christmas music, see the subject, e g, collections of Christmas oratorios 783 352, Christmas music for a specific medium, the medium, e g, excerpts of Christmas music for organ 786 805 2

.67 **Sacred songs for one [*formerly* *784.3] or more voices**

Songs not otherwise provided for in 783 4–783 9

For songs for congregational singing, see 783 9

.675 **Music itself (Scores and parts)**

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, evangelistic songs for one or more voices [*formerly* †*783 7*]

Divide like 784 306, e g, soprano solo 783 675 12

For works about evangelistic music, see 783 7

.7 **Evangelistic music**

Works about the subject only

Including mission revival Sunday school music

Class music itself (scores and parts) of evangelistic songs for one or more voices in 783 675, for congregational singing in 783 95 [*both formerly* †*783 7*]

.8 **Church choirs**

Works about the subject only

Including junior choirs vocal quartets, church choir training and conducting

For choral training and conducting, see 784 96, music itself (scores and parts) for choirs, the kind of music, e g, anthems 783 45

.9 **Congregational singing**

Including hymnody psalmody, hymn tunes

For chanted psalms, see 783 5, hymnology, hymns without music, 245

95 **Music itself (Scores and parts)**

Including evangelistic songs for congregational singing [*formerly* †*783 7*]

Divide like 783 35, e g, hymnals 783 952

For works about evangelistic music, see 783 7

784–789 Individual mediums of musical performance

Including works on history, instruction, composition arrangement technique, interpretation, performance, programs, scores and parts

When choice must be made from among the numbers for two or more different mediums performing together, class by the number for that medium which is highest on the following list, e g duets for violin and flute 785 727 1

- Voice
  - Children
  - Women
  - Men
- String instruments
  - Arranged as in 787
- Wind instruments
  - Arranged as in 788
- Percussion instruments
  - Arranged as in 789
- Keyboard instruments
  - Accordion
  - Organ
  - Harpsichord
  - Piano

For dramatic music performed in a specific medium see 782

784 Vocal music

With or without instrumental accompaniment

Including secular vocal music other than dramatic, songs, comprehensive works on secular and sacred vocal music

For sacred vocal music, see 783, dramatic vocal music, 782

SUMMARY

784 1	Choruses and part songs
.2	Large secular choral works
3	Songs for one or more voices
4	Folk songs
5	Song and choral festivals
6	Songs for groups
7	Other kinds of songs
.8	Collected songs
9	Vocal performance

784.015 Analytical guides and program notes

.028 Composition of vocal music

Including arrangement

[.07] Instruction and study

Class in 784.93

.073 Vocal concert and recital programs

784.1–784.7 Specific kinds of songs and vocal music

Including collections [formerly also †*784.8]

For vocal music intended for dramatic performance, see 782, sacred vocal music, 783, collections of various kinds of songs, 784.8

.1 Choruses [*formerly also* †784.6] and part songs

Including choral pieces not originally composed for orchestral accompaniment and not provided for in 784.4–784.7, madrigals, glees, rounds, catches

.106 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.106 81 Children only

.106 82 Women only

.106 83 Men only

.106 84 Mixt choruses

.106 85 Vocal parts with choruses

.2 Large secular choral works

Compositions originally composed for chorus and orchestra with or without solo voices

.206 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.3 Songs for one or more voices

Including vocal chamber music, art songs, dance songs, ballads, ballades, canzonets, songs not provided for in 784.4–784.7

Class sacred solo songs [*formerly* *784.3] in 783.67

784 306 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.306 1 One voice part (Solos)

306 11 Children

306 12 Women

Including soprano, mezzo soprano, contralto voices

306 13 Men

Including tenor, baritone, bass voices

306 2 Two voice parts (Duets)

Including mixt duets

Divide like 784 306 1, e g, duets for women 784 306 22

306 3 Three voice parts (Trios)

Including mixt trios

Divide like 784 306 1

306 4 Four voice parts (Quartets)

Including mixt quartets

Divide like 784 306 1

306 5 Five voice parts (Quintets)

Including mixt quintets

Divide like 784 306 1

306 6 Six voice parts (Sextets)

Including mixt sextets

Divide like 784 306 1

306 7 Seven, eight, nine voice parts (Septets octets, nonets)

Including mixt songs

Divide like 784 306 1

.4 Folk songs

Including comprehensive works on folk songs, folk song collecting folk music

For [illegible]
song [illegible]
the [illegible]
786 [illegible]

406 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

784.49 Folk songs and folk music of specific countries

Works about the subject only

Divide like 930–999, e g, folk songs of France 784.4944

For scores and parts of folk songs, see 784.406, of instrumental folk music, the specific medium, e g, collections of folk music arranged for violin 787.152

.5 Song and choral festivals

Works about the subject only

Including competitive festivals, e g, eisteddfod, sangerfest

For general musical competitions and festivals, see 780.79

.6 Songs for groups

Unorganized groups, groups not organized primarily for musical purposes

Class choruses [*formerly* †784.6] in 784.1

For choral societies, see 784.96

.606 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.61 Home and community songs, popular songs

Including community singing singing in the home

For children's songs see 784.624, student songs, 784.62

.610 6 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.62 Student and school songs

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

.622 College and university songs

Including songs of professional and technical schools, college fraternity songs

.622 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections single works arrangements, abridgments excerpts

.623 High school songs [*formerly* *784.624]

.623 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

784 624 Children's songs

Including elementary school songs

Class secondary school songs [*formerly* *784 624] in 784 623

For kindergarten songs, see 372 215, *children's singing games,* 796 13

624 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

66 Songs of societies, special groups, service clubs

Including Masonic songs, Rotary, Lions Club songs

For college fraternity songs, see 784 622, *topical songs,* 784 68

660 6 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

68 Topical songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

Divide like 000–999, e g , baseball songs 784 687 963 57, labor songs 784 683 31

.7 Other kinds of songs

.71 National airs, songs, hymns

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

Including martial and political songs

For theories and forms of music from racial and national viewpoint, see 781 7, *folk songs,* 784 4

719 National songs of specific countries

Works about each and music itself (collections, single works, arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

Divide like 930–999, e g , national air of Spain 784 719 46

784 75 Songs of ethnic and cultural groups not otherwise provided for

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

751 American Indian songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections single works arrangements abridgments excerpts)

752 Gypsy songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections single works arrangements abridgments excerpts)

754 Creole songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections single works arrangements abridgments excerpts)

755 Anglo and Celtic American songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections single works arrangements abridgments excerpts)

756 American Negro songs and spirituals

Including minstrel and plantation songs

756 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections single works arrangements abridgments excerpts

8 Collected songs

Collections of music itself too general or comprehensive for 784 1–784 7

Class collections of specific kinds of songs [*formerly* †*784 8] in 784 1–784 7

81 Collected solos

Including arrangements abridgments excerpts

Divide like 784 306 1 e g collections of women s solos 784 812

82 Collected duets

Including mixt duets

Divide like 784 306 1 e g collections of tenor duets 784 823

.83 Collected trios

Including mixt trios

Divide like 784 306 1

784 84 Collected quartets

Including mixt quartets

Divide like 784 306 1

85 Collected songs for quintets, sextets, septets, octets, nonets

Including mixt songs

Divide like 784 306 1

87 Collections for male voices

88 Collections for female voices

.9 Vocal performance

Works about the subject only

Including solo and ensemble

92 Physiology of singing voice

For physiology of voice and speech, see 612 78

93 Voice training

Including tone formation, vowel exercises [*both formerly* †784 94], voice culture, vocal exercises, breathing, pronunciation, vowel formation, performance and interpretation

For public speaking, see 808 5

94 Special methods of musical expression

Including sight singing, solfeggios, sol fa, whistling

Class tone formation, vowel exercises [*both formerly* †784 94] in 784 93

95 Voice training for dramatic performance

Including training in dramatic interpretation

96 Choral societies

Including performance in concert, choral training and conducting

For church choir training and conducting, see 783 8, *choral music,* 784 1, *choir music,* 783 4, *choral festivals,* 784 5, *choral speaking,* 808 55

785–789 Instruments and instrumental music

Including works on history, band construction, care, repair, instruction technique, interpretation, conducting composition, musical form analytical guides programs, music itself (scores and parts), instrumental sacred music itself [*formerly* †783 1]

Class works about sacred instrumental music [*formerly* *785–*789] in *783 1*, manufacture of specific musical instruments [*formerly* †*785–†*789] in 681 8

For a specific instrument and music written and arranged for it, see the instrument, e g, music for viola 787 2, *dramatic instrumental music,* 782, *comprehensive works on musical instruments,* 781 91

785 Instrumental ensemble and its music

Including grouping of instruments arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris [*all formerly* †785 9], comprehensive works on instruments and instrumental music

For keyboard instruments see 786, *string instruments,* 787 *wind instruments* 788, *percussion instruments,* 789, *arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris for a specific medium, the medium, e g, orchestral arrangement of short compositions for single instrument* 785 3

SUMMARY

785 1	Symphony orchestra and its music
12	Band and its music
2	Orchestral music with incidental vocal parts
.3	Other music for symphony orchestra
4	Small or light orchestra and its music
5	Independent overtures for symphony orchestra
6	Concertos
7	Chamber music
8	Suites for symphony orchestra

015 Analytical guides and program notes

028 Composition for instrumental ensemble

Including arrangement

For compositions for band, see 785 120 28

062 Specific organizations

Divide like 940–999 e g Philadelphia Orchestra 785 062 748 11

073 Concert and recital programs

785 1 Symphony orchestra and its music

Including comprehensive works on orchestras bands and music composed and arranged for them

For band see 785 12 orchestra with voices 785.2 small orchestra 785 4 overtures 785 5 concertos 785 6 suites, 785 8 short and miscellaneous orchestral pieces 785 3

107 Orchestra training and conducting

Including direction of orchestra [*formerly* †781 632 5] symphony orchestra salon orchestra string orchestra organization management of orchestras

For band training and conducting see 785 120 7, dance orchestra training and conducting 785 410 7 jazz orchestra training and conducting 785 420 7

11 Symphonies

Including comprehensive works

Class symphonic poems [*formerly* †*785 11] in 785 32, variations [*formerly* *785 11] in 785 34

For symphonies for a medium other than full orchestra see the medium e g symphonies for band 785 12

115 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements abridgments excerpts

115 2 Collections by two or more composers

115 4 Single works and collections by one composer

12 Band and its music [*formerly* *788]

Including wind band brass band military band school band drum and bugle corps symphonies program music variations overtures suites for band

For wind instruments see 788 jazz band 785 42 rhythm and percussion band 785 43 dance orchestra 785 41 concertos with band 785 6 military band music itself 785 13

120 28 Composition for band

Including arrangement

120 7 Band training and conducting [*formerly* *788 07]

Including drum majoring organization management of bands

785 125 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115 e g, collections of band music by one composer 785 125 4

For military band music itself, see 785 13

13 Military band music itself

Including marches patriotic music

Divide like 785 115 e g, collections by one composer 785 134

For works about military band music, see 785 12

2 Orchestral music with incidental vocal parts

For dramatic orchestral music, see 782 sacred music with orchestral accompaniment, 783, secular vocal music with orchestral accompaniment, 784

[† 21] Secular oratorios

Class in 782.82

[† 22] Dramatic music for orchestra with voices

Class in 782

25 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115 e g, collections of orchestral music with voice parts by one composer 785 254

.3 Other music for symphony orchestra

Including shorter pieces not provided for elsewhere, romantic idyllic orchestral music, comprehensive works on such music for instrumental ensemble

For such music for another medium, see the medium, e g, for string orchestra 785 47

305 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115 e g collections of short romantic pieces by several composers 785 305 2

.32 Program music for symphony orchestra

Including symphonic poems [*formerly* †*785 11], comprehensive works on program music for instrumental ensemble

For program music for another medium, see the medium, e g, for salon orchestra 785 46

325 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115 e g, collections of symphonic poem arrangements by several composers for symphony orchestra 785 325 2

785 34 Variations and other large works for symphony orchestra [*formerly* *785 11]

Including comprehensive works on variations for instrumental ensemble

For variations for another medium, see the medium, e g, for string orchestra 785 47

345 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115

.4 Small or light orchestra and its music

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

For concertos with small orchestra, see 785 6, chamber music, 785 7

41 Dance orchestra and its music

For jazz orchestra, see 785 42, rhythm band, 785 43, dance forms of music, 781 55, dance music in a specific medium, the medium, e g, dance music for piano 786 44–786 46

410 7 Dance orchestra training and conducting

Including organization, management

415 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115, e g, arrangements for dance orchestra by one composer 785 415 4

.42 Jazz orchestra and its music

Including jazz band

For jazz as a form of music, see 781 57

420 7 Jazz orchestra training and conducting

Including organization management

.425 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115, e g, single works 785 425 4

.43 Rhythm band and orchestra

Including percussion ensemble, toy orchestra

435 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115

785.46 Salon orchestra and its music

Including theater, hotel, café orchestra

.465 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including symphonies, program music, variations, overtures suites for salon orchestra

Divide like 785 115

.47 String orchestra and its music [*formerly* *787]

For string instruments, see 787

.475 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including symphonies, program music, variations, overtures suites for string orchestra

Divide like 785 115

.5 **Independent overtures for symphony orchestra**

Including comprehensive works on overtures for instrumental ensemble

For opera overtures, see 782 1, overtures for another medium, the medium, e g, for salon orchestra 785 46

.55 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115, e g, scores of one overture 785 554

.6 **Concertos**

One or more solo instruments with symphony orchestra, small orchestra, or band

Including concerti grossi

For music for organ, piano, and orchestra, see 786 89

66–69 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 786–789, e g, violin concertos 785 671 Add 0 and divide further like 785 115, e g, collections of violin concertos by two or more composers 785 671 02

Where there is more than one solo instrument, divide by the number for that instrument which appears first in the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e g, concertos for flute and violin 785 671, do not divide for additional solo instruments or for the group medium

785.7 Chamber music

Works about compositions for two or more different solo instruments

Including string [*formerly* *787 04], wind [*formerly* *788 04] chamber music, plectral ensembles [*formerly* *787 95], duets with string instrument and keyboard instrument [*formerly* *787], with wind instrument and keyboard instrument [*formerly* *788]

Add 0 and divide like 785 72–785 79, e g, works about duets 785 702, about duets for flute and piano 785 702 851

For compositions for two or more of the same instrument, see the instrument, e g, for two or more violins 787 1, organ and piano music, 786 88

---

785 71–785 79 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements abridgments, excerpts, compositions in various forms, e g, sonatas

71 Collections of music for groups of different sizes

For collections limited to groups of a specific size, see 785 72–785 79

---

785 72–785 79 Music itself for groups of specific sizes

Including collections single works

For collections for groups of different sizes see 785 71

72 Duets

Divide like 786–789, using the number for that instrument of the two which appears first in the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e g, duets for violin and flute 785 727 1

73 Trios

Divide like 785 72

74 Quartets

Divide like 785 72

75 Quintets

Divide like 785 72

76 Sextets

Divide like 785 72

77 Septets

Divide like 785 72

785 78 Octets

Divide like 785 72

79 Nonets and larger combinations

Divide like 785 72

8 Suites for symphony orchestra

Including comprehensive works on suites for instrumental ensemble

For suites for another medium see the medium e g for salon orchestra 785 46 opera suites 782 1 ballet suites 782 95

85 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785 115 e g single suites 785 854

[† 9] Arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris

Class in 785 and its subdivisions

786 Keyboard instruments and their music

SUMMARY

786 1	Keyboard string instruments
2	Piano
.221	Harpsichord
23	Piano tuning and repairing
3	Piano instruction and study
4	Piano music
5	Keyboard wind instruments
6	Organ
7	Organ instruction and study
8	Organ music
9	Other keyboard instruments

1 Keyboard string instruments

101 5 Analytical guides and program notes

102 8 Composition for keyboard string instruments

107 3 Concert and recital programs

.2 Piano

For player piano see 789 72

[.207] Instruction and study

Class in 786 3

[.209] History

Class in 786 22

786 22 History

Including clavichord

221 Harpsichord

Including spinet virginal

23 Piano tuning and repairing

Including harpsichord tuning and repairing

Class manufacture [*formerly* 1*786 23] in 681 816 2

3 Piano instruction and study

Including performance and interpretation accompaniment on piano instruction and study of harpsichord

31 Hand

32 Touch

33 Studies and exercises

Including series covering more than one grade of difficulty études

For artistic études see 786 47

332 Scales

34 Octaves chords arpeggios

35 Pedal

36 Elementary instruction

Including juvenile and adult beginners

37 Intermediate instruction

38 Advanst instruction

4 Piano music

Music composed and arranged for piano harpsichord, other early keyboard string instruments

For piano concertos see 785 662

405 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided in 786 41 786 49

Including arrangements abridgments excerpts

405 2 Collections by two or more composers

405 4 Single works and collections by one composer

786 41–786 49 Special forms of piano music

786 41 Sonatas

Including sonatinas rondos

Divide 786 415 like 786 405 e g collections of piano sonatas by one composer 786 415 4

42 Fantasias

Including fugues rhapsodies arabesques

Divide 786 425 like 786 405

43 Romantic and descriptive music

Including nocturnes meditations ballads songs without words

Divide 786 435 like 786 405

786 44–786 46 Dances

For dance music with dance instruction see 793 3 dance forms of music 781 55 dance orchestra 785 41 ballet music 782 95

44 Marches polonaises polkas mazurkas

Divide 786 445 like 786 405

45 Other dance forms

Including national, classic idealized dance suites square dance music

Divide 786 455 like 786 405

46 Modern dance music

Including ballroom dance music jazz music

Divide 786 465 like 786 405

For jazz as a form of music see 781 57

47 Artistic études

Divide 786 475 like 786 405

For études for instruction see 786 33

48 Variations and suites

Including transcriptions

Divide 786 485 like 786 405

For dance suites see 786 45

786 49 Music for more than one performer

.495 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided for in 786 41–786 48

Including arrangements abridgments, excerpts

.495 6 One piano, two or more performers

.495 7 Two pianos, two or more performers

.495 8 Three or more pianos, three or more performers

---

786 5–786 9 Keyboard wind and electronic instruments and their music

.5 Keyboard wind instruments

Including comprehensive works on keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

.501 5 Analytical guides and program notes

502 8 Composition for keyboard wind instruments

507 3 Concert and recital programs

6 Organ

For reed organ, see 786 94, *electronic organ,* 786 92

[607] Instruction and study

Class in 786 7

[609] History

Class in 786 62

62 History

63 Organ care and repair

Including tuning

Class manufacture [*formerly* †*786 63] in 681 816 6

7 Organ instruction and study

Including performance and interpretation, accompaniment on organ, other keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

73 Studies and exercises

Including series covering more than one grade of difficulty

76 Elementary instruction

77 Intermediate instruction

78 Advanst instruction

786.8 Organ music

Including music composed and arranged for pipe organ, music for other keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

For organ concertos, see 785.666; works about sacred organ music, 783.1

805 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided for in 786.81–786.89

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Divide like 786.405, e.g., arrangements for organ by one composer 786.805.4

81 Sonatas

Including sonatinas and similar long works for organ alone

Divide 786.815 like 786.405, e.g., organ sonatas by one composer 786.815.4

82 Fugues

Including fugues with or without preludes; toccatas

Divide 786.825 like 786.405

For preludes, see 786.83

83 Preludes

Divide 786.835 like 786.405

For preludes and fugues, see 786.82

84 Interludes

Divide 786.845 like 786.405

85 Postludes

Divide 786.855 like 786.405

86 Offertories

Divide 786.865 like 786.405

87 Voluntaries and improvisations

Divide 786.875 like 786.405

.88 Organ and piano

Divide 786.885 like 786.405

89 Organ, piano, and orchestra

Divide 786.895 like 786.405

786 9 Other keyboard instruments

92 Electronic and semielectronic organs

For music for electronic organ see 786 8

923 Tuning and repairing

For manufacture see 681 866 8

94 Reed organ

Including harmonium cabinet organ melodeon

For music for reed organ see 786 8

943 Tuning and repairing

For manufacture see 681 816 92

97 Accordion

Including concertina bandonion

Divide like 787 1 e g single accordion solos unaccompanied 786 975 41

787 String instruments and their music

Class string orchestras in 785 47 duets with string instrument and keyboard instrument in 785 7 [*both formerly* *787]

For keyboard string instruments see 786 1–786 4 *concertos of string instruments* 785 67

[*04] String chamber music

Class in 785 7

787 1–787 42 Bowed string instruments

1 Violin

Including comprehensive works on bowed string instruments and their music

For a specific bowed string instrument see the instrument e g double bass 787 41

101 5 Analytical guides and program notes

Including analysis of various forms of violin music e g sonatas

102 8 Composition for violin

Including arrangement

787.107 Instruction and study

Including performance, interpretation

For instructive editions of violin music, see 787.151

.107 3 Concert and recital programs

108 1 Criticism and appraisal of specific violinists

Including compositions, performance

For collected violin scores of a single composer, see 787 154

.12 Hand construction, care, repair

For manufacture, see 681 817 1

.15 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, compositions in various forms, e g , sonatas

.151 Instructive editions

For instruction and study of violin, see 787.107

.152 Collections by two or more composers

Divide like 787 154, e g , collections of accompanied solos 787 152 2

154 Single works and collections by one composer

154 1 Solo, unaccompanied

154 2 Solo, accompanied

For duets for violin and second instrument, see 785 727 1

154 3 Two or more violins, unaccompanied

154 4 Two or more violins, accompanied

For chamber music combinations including violin, see 785 7

.2 **Viola**

Divide like 787 1, e g , single solos, unaccompanied 787 254 1

.3 **Violoncello**

Divide like 787 1

.4 **Other bowed string instruments**

41 Double bass

Including contrabass

Divide like 787 1, e g , care of double bass 787 412

787.42 Viols

Including vielle

Divide like 787 1

For wheel vielle, see 787 9

787.5–787 92 Plectral instruments

.5 Harp

Including comprehensive works on plectral instruments and their music

Divide like 787 1, e g recital programs 787 507 3

For a specific plectral instrument, see the instrument, e g, banjo 787 7

.61 Guitar

Including Hawaiian guitar, balalaika

Divide like 787 1, e g, instructive editions 787 615 1

.65 Mandolin

Divide like 787 1

67 Lute

Divide like 787 1

.7 Banjo

Divide like 787 1

.8 Zither

Divide like 787 1

.9 Other plectral instruments

Including hurdy gurdy [*formerly* *789 7], dulcimer wheel vielle

For street organ, see 789 71

92 Ukelele

Divide like 787 1, e g, ukelele music itself 787 925

[*95] Plectral ensemble

Class in 785 7

788 Wind instruments and their music

Class bands and band music in 785 12, duets with wind instrument and keyboard instrument in 785 7 [*both formerly* *788]

For keyboard wind instruments, see 786 5–786 9, *concertos of wind instruments,* 785 68

[*.04] Wind chamber music

Class in 785 7

[*.07] Band conducting

Class in 785 120 7

788.1–788 49 Brass wind instruments

For brass band, see 785 12

.1 Trumpet and bugle

Including cornet [*formerly* †788 3], valve bugle [*formerly* †788 47], comprehensive works on brass wind instruments and their music

Divide like 787 1, e g, single trumpet solos, unaccompanied 788 154 1

For a specific brass wind instrument, see the instrument, e g, *French horn* 788 41

.2 Trombone

Divide like 787 1

[†*.3] Cornet, mellophone, alto horn

Class cornet [*formerly* †788 3] in 788 1, mellophone, alto horn [*both formerly* *788 3] in 788 42

.4 Horns and other brass wind instruments

41 French horn

Including hunting horn

Divide like 787 1 e g single selections for two horns, accompanied 788 415 44

42 Saxhorn

Including alto horn mellophone [*both formerly* *788 3]

Divide like 787 1

For tuba see 788 48 *saxophone,* 788 66

[† 43] Saxophone

Class in 788 66

788 44 Baritone and euphonium [*both formerly* *788 47]

Divide like 787 1

For trombone see 788 2

45 Ophicleide

Including key bugle [*formerly* †788 46] cornett

Divide like 787 1

For cornet see 788 1 *serpent* 788 48

[† 46] Key bugle

Class in 788 45

[†* 47] Valve bugle baritone euphonium

Class valve bugle [*formerly* †788 47] in 788 1 baritone euphonium [*both formerly* *788 47] in 788 44

48 Bass horn

Including tuba sousaphone serpent

Divide like 787 1 e g instruction and study 788 480 7

49 Other instruments with cupt mouthpiece

Including alpenhorn [*formerly* †*788 9]

---

788 5–788 9 Wood wind instruments

.5 Flute group

Wind instruments with mouth hole

Including ocarina comprehensive works on wood wind instruments and their music

For a specific wood wind instrument see the instrument e g clarinet 788 62

51 Flute

Including piccolo fife

Divide like 787 1 e g selections for three flutes unaccompanied 788 515 43

53 Recorder

Including flageolet

Divide like 787 1

788.6 **Reed instruments**

For reed organ, see 786 94, *accordion,* 786 97

62 Clarinet

Including bass clarinet, basset horn

Divide like 787 1, e g , instruction and study 788 620 7

66 Saxophone [*formerly* †788 43]

Divide like 787 1

7 Double-reed instruments

Including oboe, oboe d'amore, oboe di caccia, English horn (cor anglais)

.8 Bass double reed instruments

Including bassoon, double bassoon, heckelphone, bombardon

.9 Other reed instruments without keyboard

Including bagpipe, harmonica, mouth organ, mouth harp

Class alpenhorn [*formerly* †*788 9] in 788 49

789 Percussion, mechanical, electrical instruments

789.1–789.69 Percussion instruments and their music

For percussion ensemble, see 785 43

.1 **Membranophone**

Including tambourine [*formerly* †*789 4], drum, timpano (kettledrum), tom tom, comprehensive works on percussion instruments and their music

Divide like 787 1, e g , single timpani solos with piano accompaniment 789 154 2

.2 **Cymbals [*formerly* *789.4]**

Divide like 787 1

.3 **Triangle [*formerly* *789.4]**

Divide like 787 1

.4 **Other percussion instruments of indefinite pitch**

Including castanets, maracas

Class tambourine [*formerly* †*789 4] in 789 1, cymbals in 789.2, triangle in 789 3 [*both formerly* *789 4]

.5 **Bells, carillons, chimes**

Including change ringing

789 6 Other percussion instruments of definite pitch

Including musical glasses [formerly †789 9], glockenspiel marimba, xylophone vibraphone celesta

69 Unsophisticated instruments

Including musical saw comb jew s harp

---

789 7–789 913 Mechanical and electrical reproduction of music

7 Mechanical instruments and devices

Class hurdy gurdy [formerly *789 7] in 787 9

For manufacture see 681.82

71 Barrel organ

Including hand organ street organ street piano

For hurdy gurdy see 787 9

72 Reproducing and player pianos [*formerly* †*789 9]

Including orchestrion

For manufacture see 681 83

8 Music box

9 Electronic musical instruments

Including emicon theremin trautonium

Class musical glasses [*formerly* †789 9] in 789 6 player piano [*formerly* †*789 9] in 789 72

For a modification or imitation of a standard instrument see its prototype e g electronic organ 786 92

91 Music recording

Including music recording on and playing from phonorecords (phonocylinders phonodiscs phonowires phonotapes phonofilms)

For manufacture of sound reproducers see 681 843

911 Phonographs

Including mechanical phonographs

For use of phonograph in education see 371 333
manufacture 681 843

912 Phonograph records (Phonorecords)

Including record collecting talking books

913 Catalogs of records

Including discography

790 Recreation

1 Philosophy and theory

For ethics of recreation see 175

13 Value of recreation

Comprehensive works on use and effect of recreation

Including effective use of leisure

For a specific use of recreation see the subject e g recreational therapy 615 851 5

19 Recreation for specific classes

Including recreational programs collections of recreational materials recreation for the family recreation for laborers [*formerly* †331 84]

For a specific recreation see the recreation e.g puzzles 793 73

192 Recreation for specific age groups

Children young adults adults aged

194 Recreation for groups by sex

Boys men girls women

196 Recreation for the handicapt

Including invalids convalescents

.2 Hobbies

Including collecting as a hobby

For a specific hobby see the subject e g shellcraft 745 55 *collecting specific objects the subject e g philately* 383 22

68 Recreation centers

Including community centers as recreation centers

For playgrounds see 796 068 *recreation for specific classes* 790 19 *architecture of recreation buildings* 725 8

8 Collections and polygraphy

For collecting as a hobby see 790 2

791 Public entertainment

For ethics of public shows see 175 1

068 Amusement parks

Including entertainments using amusement park equipment [*formerly* †791 7]

.1 Traveling shows

Production staging direction

Including medicine shows

Class conjuring juggling ventriloquism [*all formerly* †791 1] in 793 8

For circus see 791 3

12 Minstrel shows

Including minstrel skits [*formerly the* *800 s]

[† 2] Concerts

Class concerts in 780 73 music competitions in 780 79

3 Circus

Including clowns horse shows in circuses circus parades

For riding exhibitions see 798 24

4 Motion pictures, radio, television [*formerly* *792 93–*792 95]

Including comprehensive works on stage motion picture radio and television entertainment

For stage entertainment see 792

43 Motion picture entertainment [*formerly* *792 93]

Including comprehensive works on motion pictures

For motion-picture photography see 778 5 *a specific use of motion pictures the use e g motion pictures in advertising* 659 138 8

430 1 Theory and principles of criticism of motion picture entertainment

430 13 Influence and value of motion pictures

For ethical aspects see 175 1

430 2 Motion picture handbooks

Divide like 792 02 where applicable e g make-up for motion pictures 791 430 27

791 432 Script writing for motion pictures

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on motion picture script writing

For motion picture playwriting see 808 23

435 Types of motion pictures

Including newsreels documentary films plays

437 Specific films

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800 s]

Arrange alphabetically by title of film

If preferred class all scripts or those of literary value only in the 800 s

44 Radio entertainment [*formerly* *792 94]

Including comprehensive works on radio

For radio communication see 384 5 *radio engineering* 621 384 *a specific use of radio the use e g radio in education* 371 333

440 1 Theory and principles of criticism of radio entertainment

442 Script writing for radio

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on radio script writing

For radio playwriting see 808 22

443 Methods of presentation

Including live or recorded network production announcing place of commercials

445 Types of programs

Including news sports quiz shows music plays

447 Specific programs

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800 s]

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

If preferred class all scripts or those of literary value only in the 800 s

791.45 Television entertainment [*formerly* *792 95]

Including comprehensive works on television

For television communication, see 384 55, *television engineering*, 621 388, *a specific use of television, the use, e g , television in education* 371 335 8

450 1 Theory and principles of criticism of television entertainment

450 2 Television handbooks

Divide like 792 02 where applicable, e g make-up for television 791 450 27

452 Script writing for television

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on television script writing

For television playwriting, see 808 22

453 Methods of presentation

Including live or filmed, color, network production, announcing, place of commercials

455 Types of programs

Including news, sports, quiz shows, music plays

457 Specific programs

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800's]

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

If preferred, class all scripts, or those of literary value only, in the 800's

.5 Miniature theaters

Including toy theaters shadow plays

53 Puppetry

Including making and operating marionettes and puppets, producing and staging puppet plays

538 Texts of puppet plays

If preferred, class all texts or those of literary value only, in the 800's

791.6 **Pageantry**

Including processions, festivals, Mardi gras, illuminations, parades decoration of floats for parades

For water pageants, see 797.2, school pageants, 371 895, circus parades, 791 3, pageantry customs, 394 5, Mardi gras customs 394 25

62 Pageants

622 Religious pageants

624 Historical pageants

[†.7] **Public games and sports**

Class jousts in 394 7, use of playground equipment in 796 068, use of amusement park equipment in 791 068

.8 **Animal performances**

Including cockfighting rodeos

For circus, see 791 3, riding exhibitions, 798 24, shows of specific animals, the animal, e g, cat shows 636 8, racing of specific animals, 798, ethics of animal fighting, 175 6 cruelty to animals, 179 3

.82 Bullfighting

792 **Theater**

Stage presentations

For architecture of theaters, see 725 82, dramatic music, 782 writing for the theater, 808 2, texts of plays, the 800 s use of plays in schools, 371 895, ethics of theatergoing, 175.2 comprehensive works on stage, motion picture, radio, and television entertainment, 791 4

---

792 01–792 028 Special applications of form divisions

Where applicable, 01–028 may be used under any subdivision of 792, e g , costuming for ballet 792 802 6

01 Theory and principles of criticism of dramatic production

For criticism of plays as literature, see the 800's, e g, criticism of American 20th century plays 812 509

013 Influence and value of the theater

Including moral aspects

For ethics of the theater, see 175.2

792.02 **Theater handbooks**

Including comprehensive works on theatrical production and direction [*formerly* *792 9]

For motion picture, radio, television production, see 791 4

.022 Types of theaters

Including municipal theater, showboats amateur theatricals

.022 3 Little theater movement

.022 4 Summer theater

.022 6 Children's theater

.022 8 Arena theater

.025 Stage setting

Including scenery, lighting

.026 Stage costuming

.027 Theatrical make-up

.028 Acting

Including impersonation, improvisation use of expression and gestures stage fright

For voice, expression, gesture in public speaking see 808 52

.1 Tragedy

Including presentation of Passion plays, morality plays

For texts of literary plays, see the 800 s *e g , early English morality plays* 822 1

.2 Comedy

Including melodrama vaudeville

.3 Pantomimes

[† 4–† 6] Opera, comic opera, operetta production

Class in 782 07

.7 Music halls

Including histories programs performances, variety theaters, cabarets night clubs

.8 Ballet

For ballet music see 782 95

.82 Ballet dancing

Including choreography

792 84 Specific ballets

Including stories, plots

[•9] Theatrical production

Class stage show production in 792 02, motion-picture, radio, television production in 791 4

793 Indoor games and amusements

.1 **Private theatricals as home entertainment**

For amateur production of plays, see 792 022

.2 **Parties**

Including showers

.21 Children's parties

22 Seasonal parties

For holiday customs, see 394 26

.24 Charades and tableaux

.3 **Dancing**

For children's dancing games, see 796 13, dance music, 781 55, ethics of dancing, 175 3

.31 Folk and national dances

.319 Dances of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e g , folk dances of England 793 319 42

32 Theatrical dancing

Including artistic, classical, interpretative dancing, dancing in motion pictures and television

For ballet dancing, choreography, see 792 82

324 Tap dancing

Including clog dancing

33 Ballroom dancing

Including round dances, jitterbug dancing

34 Square dancing

35 Dances with accessory features

Including sword dance cotillion

38 Balls

Including court, public, costume balls

793.4 **Games of action**

Including blindman's buff

.5 **Forfeit and trick games**

.7 **Parlor games**

Games not characterized by action

.73 **Puzzles**

Including quizzes, literary games, e.g., anagrams, acrostics, Scrabble®

For charades, see 793.24

.732 **Crossword puzzles**

Including dictionaries for use in solving the puzzles

.735 **Riddles**

For history and folklore of riddles, see 398.6

.74 **Mathematical recreations**

Class magic squares [*formerly* *793.74] in 511.64

For mathematical problems, see 510.76

.8 **Parlor magic**

Including scientific recreations, conjuring, juggling, ventriloquism suitable for home entertainment, for public entertainment [*formerly* 1791.1]

For card tricks, see 795.438

.9 **Other indoor diversions**

Including amusements involving cutting and folding paper

For playing with toys, see 649.55; *model railroads,* 625.19

794 **Indoor games of skill**

For card games based on skill, see 795.41; *ethics of games of skill* 175.4

.1 **Chess**

.2 **Checkers and similar games**

.6 **Bowling** [*formerly* *796.31]

Including skittles, tenpins

For lawn bowling, see 796.31

.7 **Indoor ball games**

Including billiards, pool [*both formerly* *796.3], table tennis [*formerly* *796.34]

795 Games of chance

Including gambling, lotteries

For

e g,

chan

.01 Theory

Including gambling and betting systems, chances of winning

.1 Games with dice

Including backgammon, craps

.2 Wheel and top games

Including roulette

.3 Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters

Including dominoes, mah-jongg

.4 Card games

.41 Games based on skill

412 Poker

413 Whist

Including bridge whist

.414 Auction bridge

415 Contract bridge

.416 Pinochle

.418 Rummy

Including canasta, samba

.42 Games of chance

Including baccarat, faro, twenty-one

43 Games based on position and skill

Including card solitaire, patience

.438 Card tricks

For fortunetelling with cards, see 133 324

796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games

For athletics and sports in schools see 371 73–371 75

SUMMARY

796 1	Children s outdoor games
2	Active games requiring use of equipment
3	Ball games
4	Athletic exercises and gymnastics
5	Outdoor life
6	Cycling
7	Automobiling
8	Combat sports
9	Winter sports
797	Aquatic sports
5	Air sports
798	Equestrian sports
8	Racing other animals
799	Fishing hunting target shooting as sports

068 Playgrounds

Including sports using playground equipment [*formerly* †791 7]

For school playgrounds see 371 61

.077 Coaching

1 Children's outdoor games

13 Singing and dancing games

15 Play with aerial toys

Including kites

For model aircraft see 629 133 1

2 Active games requiring use of equipment

For ball games see 796 3

21 Roller skating

24 Pitching games

Including quoits horseshoe pitching

[† 26] Battledore and shuttlecock

Class in 796 345

796 3 **Ball games**

Class billiards pool [*both formerly* *796 3] in 794 7

31 Ball thrown directly by hand

Including handball lawn bowling

Class indoor bowling [*formerly* *796 31] in 794 6

32 Inflated ball thrown by hand

323 Basketball

325 Volleyball

33 Inflated ball driven by foot

332 Football

333 Rugby

334 Soccer

34 Racket games

Class table tennis [*formerly* *796 34] in 794 7

342 Tennis

343 Rackets and squash

345 Badminton

Including battledore and shuttlecock [*formerly* †796 26]

347 Lacrosse

35 Ball driven by mallet or bat

352 Golf

352 2 Miniature golf

353 Polo

For water polo see 797.25

354 Croquet

355 Hockey

For ice hockey see 796 962

357 Baseball

357 8 Softball

358 Cricket

[†.38] **Throwing sports**

Class in 796 435

796.4	*Athletic exercises and gymnastics*
	For athletics in schools, see 371 74
406 8	Gymnasiums and stadiums
41	Calisthenics
	Exercises for strength and suppleness
	Including gymnastics [*formerly also* †613 71], setting up exercises, exercises with dumbbells, Indian clubs
	For exercise and health, see 613 71
42	Track and field athletics
420 68	Athletic fields
426	Running
	Including sprinting hurdling
43	Jumping and vaulting
435	Throwing events [*formerly* †796.38]
	Including shot putting, discus throwing
44	Horizontal bars
	Including parallel bars
46	Trapeze work
	Including rope climbing, wire walking
47	Acrobatics
	Including tumbling, trampolining
48	Olympic games
.5	Outdoor life
	Including life on dude ranches
51	Walking
52	Mountain climbing
[† 53]	Touring
	Class in 796 7
54	Camping
545	Woodcraft

796.6 **Cycling**

Use of man-power driven or coasting vehicles as recreation or sport

Including soapbox racing [*formerly* *796 72]

Class motorcycling [*formerly* *796 6] in 796 75

For gliding as a sport, see 797 5, tobogganing, 796 95

.7 **Automobiling**

Use of motor driven vehicles as recreation or sport

Including touring [*formerly* †796 53]

.72 Automobile racing

Class soapbox racing [*formerly* *796 72] in 796 6

.75 Motorcycling [*formerly* *796 6]

Including motorcycle racing

.8 **Combat sports**

For combat with animals, see 791 8, ethical aspects, 175 6

81 Wrestling

Including Olympic Greco-Roman wrestling [*both formerly* †796 82]

815 Jujitsu [*formerly* *796 84]

[†.82] Olympic, Greco-Roman wrestling

Class in 796 81

83 Boxing

Including prize fighting

[* 84] Jujitsu

Class in 796 815

.86 Fencing

.9 **Winter sports**

.91 Ice skating

92 Snowshoeing

93 Skiing

For water skiing, see 797 17

95 Tobogganing

Including coasting

796 96 Ice games

Including curling

.962 Ice hockey

.97 Ice sports

Including iceboating

For ice skating, see 796 91

797 Aquatic sports

.1 Boating

Including regattas

122 Canoeing

.123 Rowing

.124 Sailing

.125 Motorboating

.14 Yachting

.142 Yacht racing

.17 Minor methods of navigation

Including surf riding, water skiing

.2 Swimming and diving

Including water pageants, synchronized swimming

.23 Diving

Including skin diving, deep sea diving

.25 Water games

Including water polo

.5 Air sports

Including aircraft racing

798 Equestrian sports

For raising and care of horses, see 636 1

2 Horsemanship

Including training of horses for exhibition and sport riding

For cavalry horsemanship see 357.2

23 Riding

24 Riding exhibitions

For circus see 791 3

4 Horse racing

For ethics of horse racing see 175 7

43 Flat racing

Including trotting pacing

45 Steeplechasing

46 Harness racing

48 Betting

Including pari mutuel

For betting on games of chance see 795 ethics of gambling 174 6 of betting 175 9

6 Driving and coaching

8 Racing other animals

Including dog racing

For ethics of racing see 175 7 raising and care of animals the kind of animal e g of dogs 636 7

799 Fishing, hunting, target shooting as sports

Including comprehensive works on conservation of wildlife [*formerly* *333 78]

For hunting and fishing industries see 639 wildlife refuges 333 78

1 Fishing

11 Fresh water fishing

Comprehensive works on fishing in ponds lakes rivers

For a specific method of fishing see the method e g angling 799 12

799 12	Angling
	Including fly casting, spinning
.13	Net fishing as a sport
	Including seining
.14	Other methods of fishing
	Including spear fishing
.16	Salt-water fishing
166	By oceans
	Divide like 551 46, e g, fishing in the Gulf of Mexico 799 166 3
17	Fishing for specific kinds of fish
	Divide like 597, e g, trout fishing 799 175
2	*Hunting*
21	Shooting game
	Including selection, care, use of hunting guns
	For target shooting, see 799 31, *gunnery,* 623 5
215	Hunting with bow and arrow
	For archery see 799 32
23	Hunting with retrievers and pointers
24	Small game hunting
241	Bird hunting
242	Land birds
244	Waterfowl
248	Hunting specific kinds of birds
	Divide like 598 3–598 9, e g, duck hunting 799 248 4
25	Hunting with hounds and falcons
	For hunting specific kinds of birds, see 799 248, *specific kinds of animals* 799 27
252	Falconry

799.26 Big game hunting

.27 Hunting mammals

Divide like 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephant hunting 799.2761

.279 Hunting other specific kinds of animals

Divide like 590, e.g., crocodile hunting 799.279814

For hunting specific birds, see 799.248

[†.28] Hunting with camera

Class in 778.932

.29 Hunting in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., hunting in Africa 799.296

3 Shooting other than for game

.31 Target practice

Including trapshooting, skeet shooting, selection, care, use of sporting guns

For gunnery, see 623.5

.32 Archery

For hunting with bow and arrow, see 799.215

Literature (Belles-lettres)

800 Literature (Belles-lettres)

Including poetry, drama, fiction about Jesus Christ [*formerly also* †*232.99], religious stories, allegories, satires [*all formerly* †*244] religious poetry [*formerly also* †*245], literature on musical themes [*formerly also* †780.881]

Class literature according to language in which originally written, e.g., Mexican literature 860; specific exceptions are shown in schedules, e.g., United States literature 810

If preferred, separate two or more literatures written in same language by prefixing distinguishing letters, e.g., Spanish literature 860, Mexican literature M860

If preferred, class all literature written in or translated into English in 820

If preferred, arrange all fiction in English alphabetically by author, omitting class number or substituting F for it

Divide specific literatures (but not groups of literatures) by form like 810, e.g., Portuguese poetry *869.1*, except Old English literature *829*, Latin literature 870, Greek literature 880

Class works combining two or more literary forms according to the following table of precedence, e.g., class drama in verse with drama, humorous fiction with fiction, humorous fiction in verse with poetry.

Drama
Poetry
Fiction
Essays
Oratory
Letters
Satire and humor
Miscellany

If preferred, arrange all works in a specific literature alphabetically by author instead of dividing by form

Class legends and stories of animals in 591.508, of dogs in 636.78, of cats in 636.88, motion picture scripts in 791.437, radio scripts in 791.447, television scripts in 791.457, minstrel skits in 791.12 [*all formerly the* *800's]

801 **Philosophy and theory**

.9 **Criticism**

Theory and technique of literary criticism

Including literary esthetics

For criticisms of a specific literature, see the literature, e g, criticisms of American poetry 811 09, *of the work of a specific author, the author, e g, criticisms of poems of an American poet of later 19th century* 811.4

802 **Handbooks and outlines**

803 **Dictionaries and encyclopedias**

804 **Essays and lectures**

Essays about literature

For collections of essays from several literatures, see 808 84, *essays about a specific literature, the subject, e g, essays on American literature* 810 4, *essays from a specific literature, the form, e g, English essays* 824

805 **Periodicals**

806 **Organizations and societies**

807 **Study and teaching**

808 **Literary composition (Rhetoric)**

For translating, see 410

06 Writing in special fields and for special groups

Class "how to write for profit" [*formerly* *808 06] in 029 6

For authorship of a specific literary form, see the form, e g, authorship of drama 808 2, *news writing,* 070 431, *preparation of manuscript for publication,* 029 6, *publishing,* 655 5, *script writing for radio,* 791 442, *for television,* 791 452, *for motion pictures,* 791 432

066 Professional and technical writing

Comprehensive works

For writing business records, see 651 7, *writing in a specific subject field, the subject, e g, medical writing* 610 14

068 Writing for children and young adults

Divide like 808 1–808 7, e g, writing children's stories 808 068 3

808.1 **Poetry**

Including comprehensive works on the art of poetry and versification

Class prosody [*formerly* *808 1] in 416, 426, etc

.12–17 Types of poetry

Divide like 811 02–811 07, e g , writing dramatic poetry 808 12

.2 Drama

For theatrical production see 792

22 Radio and television playwriting

For comprehensive works on radio script writing see 791 442, on television script writing, 791 452

23 Motion-picture playwriting

For comprehensive works on motion picture script writing see 791 432

24 One act playwriting

25 Writing other special kinds of drama

Including masks, miracle plays, moralities, Passion plays, Christmas plays other plays for special occasions

.3 **Fiction**

31 Short story writing

.4 **Essays**

.5 **Speech and public speaking**

Including art of conversation techniques for delivering public addresses, radio speeches, after dinner speeches, toasts and speeches for special occasions

52 Voice, expression, gesture

Including speech correction

For musical voice training, see 784 93, training of speech defectives 371 927

53 Debating

Including speech techniques for round table and forum discussions

For discussion groups as a means of adult education, see 374 24

808 54 Recitation techniques

Including delivery of monologs, dialogs, reading aloud

55 Choral speaking

.6 Letters

For business letter writing, see 651 75, etiquette of social letter writing 395 4

.7 Satire and humor

.8 Collections from several literatures

Divide like 808 1–808 7, e g, collections of after dinner speeches and toasts [*formerly* †642 48] 808 85 of dialogs 808 854

For collections on a specific subject, see the subject, e g, collections of writings on architecture 720 8

88 Miscellany

Including quotations epigrams

889 Miscellaneous collections illustrating special aspects

Divide like 809 9 e g, collections of literature treating of children 808 889 3

.89 Collections of literature for and by members of special groups

Including dialect literature literature of religious racial social groups e g Catholic literature, literature by Negro authors

.9 Literatures of artificial languages

Divide like 408 9 e g Esperanto literature 808 92

809 History and criticism of literature

Divide like 808 1–808 7 e g history of world poetry 809 1

For theory and technique of literary criticism, see 801 9

8 History and criticism of literature for and by members of special groups

.9 Special aspects of literary criticism

Subdivisions 91–93 below may be used with 0 under specific literatures and their forms e g romanticism in French literature 840 91 characters in early Italian fiction 853 109 2 treatment of nature in American poetry 811 093

91 Literary movements and schools

Including realism idealism naturalism, romanticism, symbolism in literature

809 92 Literary characters

.93 Treatment of special subjects in literature

Examples treatment of children [*formerly* †136 758], of nature

94–99 History and criticism of literature of countries using more than one language

Divide like 940–999, e g , history and criticism of Swiss literature 809 949 4

810 American (United States) literature in English

Including Canadian English literature, English literature of other American countries, dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of Canada or another country, e g , Canadian poetry C811 If preferred, class Canadian literature in 819, other in 819 9

For Canadian French literature, see 840, *comprehensive works comprising or on both English and American literature,* 820

811 American poetry

Use 811 002–811 007 for form divisions

01 Philosophy and theory

---

811 02–811 07 Types of poetry

Including collections by two or more authors works about each type

For works of a specific poet, see 811 1–811 54 *e g , poems by a later 20th century poet* 811 54

02 Dramatic poetry

03 Romantic and epic poetry

04 Lyric poetry

Including ballads

05 Didactic poetry

06 Descriptive poetry

07 Satirical and humorous poetry

08 Collections

09 History and criticism

.1–54 Periods of American poetry

Divide like 812 1–812 54, e g , poetry of later 19th century 811 4

812 American drama

.1 Colonial period, 1607–1776

.2 Post-Revolutionary period, 1776–1830

.3 Middle 19th century, 1830–1861

.4 Later 19th century, 1861–1900

.5 20th century

.52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.54 Later 20th century, 1945–

813 American fiction

Divide like 812

814 American essays

Divide like 812

815 American oratory

Divide like 812

816 American letters

Divide like 812

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

817 American satire and humor

Divide like 812

818 American miscellany

Literature not provided for in 811–817

Including epigrams reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 812

For collections of American literature, see 810 8

819 Canadian English literature

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate Canadian English literature by number from United States English literature

.9 English literature of other American countries

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number from United States and Canadian English literature

820 English literature

Including English language literature of all countries outside America, comprehensive works comprising or on both English and American literature, dialect literature

If desired prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country from that of England e g, Australian English literature A820, if preferred, class literature of other countries in 828 99

For American literature, see 810

821 English poetry

002–09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811 002–811 09, e g, English lyric poetry 821 04, study and teaching of English poetry 821 007

.1–914 Periods of English poetry

Divide like 822 1–822 914, e g, Elizabethan poetry 821 3

822 English drama

.1 Early English period, 1066–1400

.2 Pre Elizabethan period, 1400–1558

3 Elizabethan period, 1558–1625

33 William Shakespeare

A special table for arrangement of works by and about Shakespeare may be found at end of volume 2

.4 Post Elizabethan period, 1625–1702

5 Queen Anne period, 1702–1745

.6 Later 18th century, 1745–1800

.7 Early 19th century, 1800–1837

.8 Victorian period, 1837–1900

.91 20th century

912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

914 Later 20th century, 1945–

823 English fiction

Divide like 822

824 English essays

Divide like 822

825 **English oratory**

Divide like 822

826 **English letters**

Divide like 822

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

827 **English satire and humor**

Divide like 822

828 **English miscellany**

Literature not provided for in 821–827

Including epigrams, reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 822

For collections of English literature, see 820 8

.99 **English literature of countries other than England and the Americas**

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

829 **Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literature**

.1 Poetry

.2 Caedmon

.3 Beowulf

.4 Cynewulf

.5 *Homilies and other religious literature*

.6 Aelfric

.7 Alfred the Great

.8 Miscellaneous writings

.9 Historical and biographical writings

830 German literature

Including dialect literature

831 German poetry

002–09 Form divisions and types of poetry

Divide like 811 002–811 09 e g German lyric poetry 831 04 encyclopedia of German poetry 831 003

1–914 Periods of German poetry

Divide like 832 1–832 914 e g poetry of classical period 831 6

832 German drama

1 Early medieval period to 1150

2 Later medieval period, 1150–1300

3 Period of decline, 1300–1517

4 Reformation period, 1517–1625

5 Period of imitation, 1625–1750

6 Classical period, 1750–1830

7 Postclassical period, 1830–1856

8 Later 19th century, 1856–1900

91 20th century

912 Early 20th century 1900–1945

914 Later 20th century, 1945–

833 German fiction

Divide like 832

834 German essays

Divide like 832

835 German oratory

Divide like 832

836 German letters

Divide like 832

For letters chiefly of biographical interest see 920

837 German satire and humor

Divide like 832

838 German miscellany

Literature not provided for in 831–837

Including epigrams, reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 832

For collections of German literature, see 830 8

[*.99] Yiddish literature

Class in 892 49

839 Other Germanic literatures

.1 Western Germanic literatures

.2 Frisian literature

Class Old Saxon literature [*formerly* †839 2] in 839 4

.3 Netherlands literatures

.31 Dutch literature

Divide by literary form, e g, Dutch fiction 839 313, divide further by period, e g, Dutch fiction in the 19th century 839 313 5, using the following table

1 Medieval period to 1450
2 Renaissance period, 1450–1600
3 17th century
4 18th century
5 19th century
  Class 20th century [*formerly* †5] in 6
6 20th century [*formerly* †5]
62 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
64 Later 20th century, 1945–

.32 Flemish literature

Divide like 839 31

36 Afrikaans literature

.4 Low German (Plattdeutsch) literature

Including Old Saxon literature [*formerly* †839 2]

839.5 **Scandinavian literatures**

.6 **Old Norse (Old Icelandic) literature**

.69 **Modern Icelandic literature**

.699 **Faroese literature**

.7 **Swedish literature**

Divide by literary form, e g, Swedish fiction 839 73, divide further by period, e g, Swedish fiction in the 19th century 839 736, using the following table

1 Medieval period to 1520
2 Reformation period, 1520–1640
3 Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640–1740
4 Age of Dalin, 1740–1780
5 Age of Gustavus, 1780–1800
6 19th century
Class 20th century [*formerly* †6] in 7
7 20th century [*formerly* †6]
72 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
74 Later 20th century, 1945–

.8 **Danish and Norwegian literatures**

81 Danish literature

Divide by literary form, e g, Danish poetry 839 811, divide further by period e g, Danish poetry in the age of Holberg 839 811 4, using the following table

1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 Age of Holberg 1700–1750
5 Period of Enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 19th century
Class 20th century [*formerly* †6] in 7
7 20th century [*formerly* †6]
72 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
74 Later 20th century, 1945–

82 Norwegian literature (Rigsmaal literature)

Divide like 839 81, e g, Norwegian drama in 19th century 839 822 6

Class Landsmaal literature [*formerly* †*839 82] in 839 83

83 Landsmaal literature [*formerly* †*839 82]

.9 **Gothic literature**

840 French literature

Including French literature of countries other than France, dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country, e g , Canadian French literature C840, if preferred, class literature of other countries in 848 99

841 French poetry

.002–09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811 002–811 09, e g , French lyric poetry 841 04, outline of French poetry 841 002

.1–.914 Periods of French poetry

Divide like 842 1–842 914, e g , poetry of 18th century 842 5

842 French drama

- .1 Early period to 1400
- .2 15th century
- .3 16th century
- .4 Classical period, 1600–1715
- .5 18th century, 1715–1789
- .6 Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
- .7 Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848
- .8 Later 19th century, 1848–1900
- .91 20th century
  - 912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
  - 914 Later 20th century, 1945–

843 French fiction

Divide like 842

844 French essays

Divide like 842

845 French oratory

Divide like 842

846 French letters

Divide like 842

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

847 French satire and humor

Divide like 842

848 French miscellany

Literature not provided for in 841–847

Including epigrams, reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 842

For collections of French literature, see 840 8

.99 French literature of countries other than France

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

849 Provençal literature

Divide by literary form, e g , Provençal poetry 849 1, *divide further by* period, e g , Provençal poetry of the golden age 849 12, using the following table

1 Early period to 1100
2 Golden age, 1100–1300
3 14th and 15th centuries
4 Decline, 1500–1800, revival, 1801–1900
5 20th century
52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
54 Later 20th century, 1945–

.9 Catalan literature

Divide by literary form, e g , Catalan poetry 849 91, divide further by period, e g , Catalan poetry in the golden age 849 913, using the following table

1 First period to 1350
2 Second period, 1350–1450
3 Golden age, 1450–1500
Class decline, revival 20th century [*all formerly* †3] in 4–5
4 Decline, 1500–1840, revival, 1840–1900 [*both formerly* †3]
5 20th century [*formerly* †3]
52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
54 Later 20th century, 1945–

910.3 **Dictionaries and gazetteers**

Including comprehensive works on place names [*formerly* 929.4]

For gazetteers and place names of a specific place, see the place, e g, gazetteers of England 914.2, *personal names,* 929.4

.4 **Travel and adventure**

Comprehensive works

Including accounts of voyages, travels, journeys, trips, tours in several parts of the world

For travel, exploration, discovery in a specific place, see the place, e g, travel in France 914.4, *comprehensive works on explorations and discoveries,* 910.9, *collected travels,* 910.8, *legendary places,* 398.23, *scientific expeditions,* 508.3–508.9, *accounts of adventure not concerned with travel or exploration, the specific subject, e g, adventures of a test pilot* 629.134.53

.41 Trips around the world

Including voyages, flights, travel by any means

.45 Ocean travel and seafaring life

Including individual narratives, sailors' yarns, voyages of individual ships

For yachting, see 797.14, *guides to ocean travel,* 910.2

.453 Voyages of adventure

Including shipwrecks, mutinies, buried treasure, pirates' voyages

For marine salvage business, see 387.55, *legendary accounts of Captain Kidd,* 398.22

.8 **Collected travels and explorations**

Collections of original accounts by explorers and travelers not limited to any one place

For collected travels dealing with a specific place, see the place, e g, travels in North America 917

910.9 History of geography

Comprehensive works

Including history of geographical knowledge, of discovery and exploration

Divide like 930–999 by country responsible for the travel or exploration, e g , explorations by Portuguese 910 946 9

For history of exploration and growth of geographic knowledge of a specific place, see geography of the place, e g , growth of geographic knowledge of Australia 919 4, *Portuguese explorations in Brazil* 918 1

.91 Geography of zones and physical regions

Divide like form division 091, e g , geography of desert regions 910 915

For geography of Frigid Zones, see 919 8

911 Historical geography

Growth and changes in political divisions

Including historical atlases

For geopolitics, see 320 12, *anthropogeography,* 572 9, *demography,* 312, *migration and colonization,* 325

.3 Geography of ancient world [*formerly* *913]

Divide like 930, e g , geography of ancient Egypt 911.32

Class economic and commercial geography [*both formerly* *911 3] in *330 9*

.4–.9 Historical geography of modern places

Divide like 940–999, e g , historical geography of Europe 911 4

912 Atlases and maps

Comprehensive works

Including globes, charts, plans, relief models

Divide like 930–999, e g , atlases of France 912 44

If desired, separate maps from atlases by prefixing M to class number

For cartography, see 526 8, *photogrammetry,* 526 982, *atlases and maps on a specific subject, the subject, e g , historical atlases* 911, *aerial maps and charts* 629 132 54

.1 Eastern Hemisphere

.2 Western Hemisphere

913 Antiquities and archeology of historic times [*both formerly* *930–*999]

Including comprehensive works on prehistoric and historic archeology, methods and results of excavations

Divide like 930–999, e g , antiquities of France 913 44

Class in 913 3 antiquities of countries having both ancient and modern history numbers, e g , antiquities of Italy 913 37, unless the antiquities relate wholly or mainly to the country after it entered the modern period

If preferred, class antiquities of a specific country in 930–999, e g , antiquities of France 944 01

Class geography of ancient world [*formerly* *913] in 911 3

For prehistoric archeology, see 571, Biblical archeology, 220 93, American Indian archeological remains, 970 1–970 6, 980 1–980 6

914–919 Regional geography, description, travel

Including customs [*formerly* *390 9], civilization, culture guidebooks, gazetteers, place names, discovery and exploration, growth of geographic knowledge

Divide like 940–999 e g , guidebooks of London 914.21

If preferred, class travel in 940–999

For social history of a country, see history of the country, e g , social history of England 942

914 Geography of Europe

915 Geography of Asia

916 Geography of Africa

917 Geography of North America

918 Geography of South America

919 Geography of Pacific and Atlantic islands, of Polar Regions

920 Biography

Including autobiographies, diaries, personal narratives, portraits, eulogies, correspondence when none of these is primarily of literary, artistic, or subject interest

[illegible] col-
[illegible] ...phies
[illegible] class
in same number with individual biography

For collective biography of faculty and alumni of specific colleges and universities, see 378 4–378 98

002 Biography as a literary form

Including techniques of research, of writing, of criticism

01 Universal biography

02 Partial collections

Selective works not limited to any specific country or subject

03–09 Collective biography by place

Divide like 930–999, e g , collective biography of Englishmen 920 042

For collective biography of a specific subject in a specific place, see the subject, e g , biographies of English statesmen 923 242

920.1–928 Individual and collective biography by subjects

For biographies of individuals not clearly belonging to any specific subject, see 920

.1 Bibliographers

Including book collectors

.2 Librarians

.3 Encyclopedists

For lexicographers, see 924

920.4 **Publishers and booksellers**

.5 **Journalists**

Including radio and television news commentators

.6 **Academicians**

Collective biography only

For individual biography of academicians, see 920 1–920 5, 920 7–928

.7 **Women**

Including individual biographies not clearly belonging to any specific subject

.8 **Eccentrics**

Including the insane, individual biographies not clearly belonging to any specific subject

.9 **Other special classes not included in 921–928**

Divide like 000–999, e g , astrologers 920 913 35

For lives of slaves, see 326 92, of North American Indians, 970 2, of South American Indians, 980.2

921 Philosophers

Including psychologists

.1 **American and Canadian philosophers**

For Latin American philosophers, see 921 88

.2 **British philosophers**

Including English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophers

.3 **German and Austrian philosophers**

.4 **French philosophers**

.5 **Italian philosophers**

.6 **Spanish and Portuguese philosophers**

.7 **Russian philosophers**

For other Slavic philosophers see 921 8

.8 **Other modern philosophers**

Divide like 940–999 except for those provided for in 921 1–921 7 and 921 9 e g Scandinavian philosophers 921 848

.9 **Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophers**

Divide like 180, e g Aristotelian philosophers 921 95

922 Religious leaders

Including individual and collective biography of saints, theologians, ministers, priests, missionaries, monks, persons chiefly notable for their piety, collective biography only of communicants of specific religious groups and sects whose contributions have been in various other fields

For communicants of a specific religious group or sect whose contributions have been in a specific nonreligious field, see the subject, e g, Jewish musicians 927 8, a Roman Catholic general in United States Army 923 573, collective biography of Old and New Testament characters, 220 92, biographies of Old Testament characters, 221 92, of New Testament characters, 225 92, of Jesus Christ, 232 9, of other members of Holy Family, 232 93

.1 **Early church leaders**

Including churchmen of Eastern churches

Divide like 930–999, e g , Greek Orthodox clergy in United States 922 173

.2 **Roman Catholics**

Divide like 930–999

21 Popes

.22 Saints

.3 **Anglicans and Episcopalians**

Divide like 940–999

.4 **Continental Protestants**

Including Lutherans, Huguenots

Divide like 940–999

.5 **Presbyterians and Congregationalists**

Divide like 940–999

.6 **Baptists**

Divide like 940–999

.7 **Methodists**

Divide like 940–999

.8 **Members of other Christian sects**

81 Unitarians and Universalists

Divide like 940–999, e g , Unitarians in England 922 814 2

922.83 Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)

Divide like 940–999

.84 Swedenborgians

Divide like 940–999

.85 Christian Scientists

Divide like 940–999

.86 Friends (Quakers)

Divide like 940–999

.87 Mennonites

Divide like 940–999

.88 Shakers

Divide like 940–999

.89 Others

.9 Adherents of other religions

.91 Atheists and Deists

.912 Theosophists

.94 Hindus and Brahmans

.943 Buddhists

.95 Parsees

.96 Jews

.97 Moslems

.99 Others

923 Persons in social sciences

For biographies of slaves see 326.92

.1 Rulers

Including kings, queens, presidents

Divide like 930–999, e.g., presidents of United States 923.173

.2 Persons in political science

Including legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats

Divide like 930–999

For rulers see 923.1

923 3 **Persons in economics**

Including bankers, economists

Divide like 930–999

31 **Labor leaders**

Divide like 930–999, e g , labor union leaders in United States 923 317 3

.4 **Persons in law**

Including lawyers, judges

Divide like 930–999

.41 **Criminals**

Divide like 930–999

.5 **Public administrators**

Including military persons

Divide like 930–999

For rulers, see 923 1, legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, 923 2

.6 **Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers**

Divide like 930–999

.7 **Educators**

Divide like 930–999

.8 **Persons in commerce, communication, transportation**

Divide like 930–999

.9 **Explorers and geographers**

Including pioneers, frontiersmen

Divide like 930–999

924 Philologists

Including grammarians, lexicographers

Divide like 400, e g , biographies of Hispanic philologists 924 6

925 Scientists

Divide like 500, e g , biographies of botanists 925 8

926 Persons in technology (useful arts)

Divide like 600, e g , biographies of engineers 926 2

927 **Persons in arts and recreation**

Divide like 700, e g, biographies of actors 927 92

928 **Persons in literature**

Including historians biographers

Divide like 810–899, e g, Russian writers 928 917

929 **Genealogy and heraldry**

.1 **Genealogy**

Including methods and tools of genealogy, genealogical forms and blanks

.2 Family histories

.3 Genealogical sources

Including registers, wills, tax lists census records, court records intended for genealogical purposes

.4 Personal names

Class place names [*formerly* 929 4] in 910 3

.5 Epitaphs

For collections having literary interest see 808 88

.6 **Heraldry**

.7 Peerage and royal houses

Including titles of honor rank precedence, landed gentry

.71 Orders of knighthood

.72–.799 Royal houses nobility, gentry of Europe

Divide like 942–949 9 including Scotland and Ireland in 929 72 e g royal houses of France 929 74, Scottish peerage 929 72

.7999 Royal houses, nobility, gentry of countries outside Europe

Divide like 930–999, e g Japanese noblemen 929 799 952

.8 Armorial bearings

Including coats of arms crests, seals

.9 Flags

Including national state ship ownership flags flag etiquette

930–999 History of specific places

Class archeology of specific places in 913, diplomatic history of specific places in 327 [*both formerly* *930–*999]

If preferred, class archeology of specific places in 930–999, e g , archeology of Egypt 932

930 Ancient history

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep civilization with general history) ancient civilization

For ancient history of countries not provided for here, see 940–999, *ancient civilization,* 901 91

931 China to 420 A.D. [*formerly* *951]

Including comprehensive works on ancient Oriental history

If preferred, class ancient history of China in 951 01

For ancient history of a specific Oriental country, see the country, e g , ancient India 934, *ancient Japan* 952 01

932 Egypt to ca. 640 A.D.

01 History to 332 B C

02 Greco Roman period, 332 B C–640 A D

Including conquest by Alexander the Great, 332 B C , Moslem invasion 639–642

933 Judea to 70 A.D.

For Biblical history, see 220 95, 221 95, 225 95, *Judaism,* 296, *pre Judaic Palestine,* 939 45

934 India to ca. 650 A.D. [*formerly* *954]

If preferred class ancient history of India in 954 01

935 Median, Persian, Assyro-Babylonian Empires

Including Tigris Euphrates Valley, Mesopotamia

For a specific area in Asia Minor or Eastern Mediterranean, see 939 2–939 6

936 **Ancient European tribes**

For history of tribes in a specific country see the country e g Celts in France 944 01

3 Germanic tribes

31 Burgundians

313 Vandals

314 Alans

32 Saxons and Angles

33 Suevians

331 Alamanni (Alemanni)

332 Heruli

35 Lombards

36 Goths

361 Ostrogoths (East Goths)

362 Visigoths (West Goths)

4 Celts

7 Slavs

937 **Rome to 476 A D.**

---

937 01–937 09 Period divisions

01 Early Roman Kingdom to ca 500 B C

02 Roman Republic, ca 500–31 B C.

03 Unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B C

04 *Punic Wars* 264–146 B C.

05 Civil strife and early Empire, 146–31 B C

06 Roman Empire 31 B C–476 A D

07 Early and middle period, 31 B C–284 A D

08 Period of absolutism 284–395

Including early invasions

937 09 Final period 395–476

Including barbarian conquests fall of Rome

For tribes of barbarians see 936

937 1–937 9 Geographic divisions of Italian peninsula and adjacent islands

For a specific overseas province of Rome see the province e g Pannonia 939 8

.1 Liguria

.2 Gallia Cisalpina

.3 Venetia and Istria

.4 Umbria

Including Picenum Sabini

.5 Etruria

.6 Latium

Including Rome

.7 Southern peninsula

Including Campania Samnium Apulia

.8 Sicily

Including Syracuse

.9 Sardinia and Corsica

938 Greece to 323 A D

938 01–938 09 Period divisions

.01 Mythical age to 775 B C

.02 *Formation of states 775–500 B C*

.03 Persian Wars 500–479 B C.

.04 Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B C

Including Age of Pericles

.05 Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B C

.06 Spartan and Theban supremacy 404–362 B C

938.07	Macedonian era, 359–323 B.C.
.08	Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.
	Including Macedonian Wars and Roman conquests, 215–146 B.C.
.09	Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.

938.1–938.9 Geographic divisions

For Greek Archipelago, see 939.1

.1	Macedonia
.2	Thessaly and Epirus
.3	Acarnania, Aetolia, Locris, Doris, Phocis, Ithaca
.4	Boeotia, Megaris, Euboea
.5	Attica
.6	Peloponnesus
.7	Corinthia and Achaea
.8	Elis, Arcadia, Argolis
.9	Messenia, Laconia, Sparta

939 Other civilizations of the Mediterranean Basin

Including Hittites

.1	Greek Archipelago
11	Northern islands
	Including Thasos, Lemnos
12	Lesbos
13	Chios
14	Samos
15	Cyclades
16	Rhodes
17	Karpathos
18	Crete

939.2 Asia Minor and Eastern Mediterranean

.21 Mysia and Troas

Including Troy

.22 Lydia

.23 Ionia

.24 Caria

.25 Bithynia

.26 Phrygia

.27 Pisidia

.28 Lycia

.29 Pamphylia

.31 Paphlagonia

.32 Galatia

.33 Pontus

.34 Cappadocia

.35 Cilicia

.36 Commagene

.37 Cyprus

.4 Syria and neighboring regions

Including Palmyra

For Commagene see 939.36

.44 Phoenicia and Tyre

.45 Palestine

Including Philistines

For ancient Judea see 933

.46 Edom and Moab

.47 Arabia

.48 Arabia Petraea and Sinai

939 5 Black Sea region

Former heading Northwestern Asia

Including Sarmatia Colchis, Iberia Albania

For ancient southeastern Europe, see 939 8, modern Albania in Balkan Peninsula, 949 65

.51 Scythia

.55 Armenia

6 Caspian Sea region

Former heading South central Asia

Including Sogdiana, Hyrcania, Margiana, Bactriana, Ariana

.7 North Africa

For Egypt, see 932

71 Mauretania

72 Numidia

73 Carthage

74 Tripolis

Including Regio Syrtica, Tripolitana

75 Cyrenaica

76 Marmarica

77 Libya

Including Gaetulia

78 Ethiopia

.8 Southeastern Europe

Including Sarmatia in Europe Dacia Pannonia Illyria, Moesia Thracia

940–999 Medieval and modern history of specific places

Including political, social history, *ancient history of countries* not included in *930–939*

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep these topics with history) description, travel, culture, civilization, customs of specific places

Class comprehensive works on a geographic feature, such as a lake, river, mountain range, extending over more than one country, state, county or other unit, with the unit where it is noted in the schedules, e g , Danube River 949 6, Appalachian Mountains 974, Lake Winnipesaukee 974.245, class works on a specific part of such a feature located in a unit other than that where it is specifically noted in the schedules with the other unit, e g , Danube River in Bavaria 943 3, Cumberland Mountains 976 915 4, Lake Winnipesaukee in Carroll County, New Hampshire 974.24 For certain features of great extent or prominence, the schedules make special provision for major [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

are not regularly supplied to lead from the comprehensive number to numbers for the component parts

Class individual countries in World War I in 940 34–940 39, in World War II in 940 534–940 539 [*both formerly* *940–*999]

For description, travel, culture, civilization, customs of specific places, see 914–919

940 Europe

From fall of Rome, 476, to present

Including Mediterranean Sea history

For ancient history of Europe, see 930

.1 Middle Ages, 476–1453

11 Barbarian invasions and rise of new nations, 476–800

For a specific tribe of invaders, see the tribe, e g , Lombards 936 35, *a specific nation, the nation, e g , England* 942

940.14 Age of feudalism 600–1100

Including reign of Charlemagne Norman conquests

.17 Later Middle Ages 1100–1453

Including age of chivalry fall of Constantinople 1453

.18 Period of the Crusades 1096–1270

For religious history of the Crusades see 270 4–270 5

.2 Modern history, 1453–1914

Including comprehensive works on modern history of Europe 1453 to present

For World War I see 940 3–940 4 20th century 1918– 940 5

.21 Renaissance period 1453–1517

.22 Reformation to French Revolution, 1517–1789

Class Reformation in 940 23 late 17th and 18th centuries in 940 25 [*both formerly* †*940 22] Thirty Years War [*formerly* *940 22] in 940 24

.23 Reformation 1517–1648 [*formerly* †*940 22]

For religious history of Reformation see 270 6

.24 Thirty Years War 1618–1648 [*formerly* *940 22]

.25 Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1648–1789 [*formerly* †*940 22]

Including War of the Spanish Succession 1701–1714 War of the Austrian Succession 1740–1748 Seven Years War 1756–1763

.27 Napoleonic era 1789–1815

Including comprehensive works on Napoleonic Wars

For Napoleonic Wars in a specific country see the country e g Russia's war with Napoleon 947 07

.28 19th century 1815–1914

940 3 World War I, 1914–1918

SUMMARY

940 31	Political and economic history
32	Diplomatic history
33	Groups of countries concerned in the war
34–39	Participation of individual countries
4	Conduct of the war
401	Strategy
402	Mobilization
403	Racial minorities in the war
405	Repressive measures and atrocities
41	Military units
414	Operations in Europe
415	Operations in Asia
416	Operations in Africa
42–438	Campaigns and battles
439	Armistice, November 11, 1918
44	Air operations
45	Naval operations
46	Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
47	Prisons, health, social services
48	Personal narratives
483–484	Military life and customs
485–487	Secret service and spies
488	Propaganda
49	Graphic materials

[308 4] Audio visual aids

Class in 940 49

31 Political and economic history

311 Causes

311 2 Political and diplomatic causes

For propaganda see 940 488

311 3 Economic causes

312 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

Including peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940 32]

940 314 Results

Including peace terms

314 1 Treaties and conferences

Including terms of cessation of hostilities

For armistice see 940 439 peace conferences during the war 940 312 military conferences 940 4 consequences of treaties and conferences 940 314 2

314 2 Consequences of treaties and conferences

Including political diplomatic economic consequences occupation

For military occupation during the war see 940 4 occupation in a specific country the country e g, in Germany 943 085

314 22 Reparations

314 24 Territorial questions

314 25 Establishment of new nations

.314 26 Establishment of mandates

.314 4 Reconstruction

Comprehensive works

For reconstruction in a specific country see the country e g in Germany 943 085

.314 8 Effect on world conditions

Comprehensive works

For a specific effect see the subject e g effect on wages in Finland 331 294 71 effect on a specific country the country e g on China 951 041

315 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for e g doctors 940 475 divide like 000–999 e g librarians and World War I 940.315 02

.315 2 Clergy and churches

Divide 940 315 21–940 315 28 like 281–288 e g Roman Catholic Church and World War I 940 315 22 divide 940 315 289 like 289 e g Christian Scientists and World War I 940 315 289 5

For chaplains see 940 478

315 29 Non Christian groups

Divide like 290 e g rabbis and World War I 940.315 296

940 315 9 Refugees

Divide like 940–999, e g, French refugees 940 315 944

316 Other classes of persons not elsewhere classified

316 1 Noncombatants

Including children

316 2 Pacifists

316 3 Enemy sympathizers

318 Special aspects of the war

Except for aspects specifically provided for, e g, military aspects 940 4, divide like 000–999, e g, comprehensive works on economic aspects 940 318 33

For economic causes, see 940 311 3

32 Diplomatic history

Comprehensive works on relations between countries during the war

Class peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940 32] in 940 312

For diplomatic causes, see 940 311 2, *treaties and conferences,* 940 314 1, *their consequences,* 940 314 2

322 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, diplomacy of France concerning the war 940 322 44

324 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, diplomacy of Austria concerning the war 940 324 436

.325 Neutrals

Divide like 940–999, e g, diplomacy of Switzerland concerning the war 940 325 494

33 Groups of countries concerned in the war

Comprehensive works

For a specific activity of a group, see the subject, e.g, diplomatic history of the Allies 940 322, *specific countries,* 940 34–940 39

332 Allies and associated powers

334 Central Powers

335 Neutrals

940.34–.39 Participation of individual countries [*formerly* *940–*999]

Including mobilization in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., France in World War I 940.344

For works of purely local interest, see the specific locality, e.g., war activities of Omaha women 978.225; comprehensive works on mobilization 940.402

.4 Conduct of the war

Including military history, military conferences, military occupation

.401 Strategy

.401 2 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French strategy 940.401 244

.401 3 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German strategy 940.401 343

.402 Mobilization

Comprehensive works

Including recruitment, volunteering, drafts

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.34–940.39

.403 Racial minorities in the war

Including Negroes, American Indians, colonials

For specific military units, see 940.412–940.413

.405 Repressive measures and atrocities

For internment camps, see 940.472

.41 Military units

For medical corps, see 940.475; chaplains 940.478; intelligence 940.485

.412 Units of the Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., 92d (Negro) Division 940.412 73

940 413 Units of the Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, German troops 940 413 43

.414 Operations in Europe

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940 42–940 43

.414 3 German front

.414 4 French front

Including comprehensive works on western front

For German front, see 940 414 3

.414 5 Italian front

.414 7 Russian front

Including comprehensive works on eastern front

.415 Operations in Asia

Including Asia Minor

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940 42–940 43

.416 Operations in Africa

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940 42–940 43

.42 Campaigns and battles, 1914–1916

Class campaigns and battles, 1917–1918 [*formerly* *940 42] in 940 43

.421 1914, western front

Including battles in Flanders, Battles of the Ardennes, of the Marne

.422 1914, eastern front

Including Serbia, Albania

.423 1914, other areas

Including Asia, Africa, Pacific islands

.424 1915, western front

Including Austro-Italian front, first German assault on Verdun

940 425 1915, eastern front

Including Salonika comprehensive works on operations at Gallipoli and the Dardanelles

For naval operations see 940 455

426 1915, other areas

Including Asia Africa

427 1916, western front

Including Battle of the Somme, battles at Verdun, Austro-Italian front

427 5 1916, eastern front

Including Galicia specific parts of eastern front [*formerly* †940 427 6–†940 428 9]

[† 427 6–† 428 9] Specific parts of eastern front

Class in 940 427 5

429 1916, other areas

Including Asia Africa

429 1 Turkey in Asia Asia Minor

43 Campaigns and battles, 1917–1918 [*formerly* *940 42]

431 1917, western front

Including Austro-Italian front [*formerly* †940 432 1–†940 432 4] Second Battle of Flanders Second Battle of the Aisne, Battle of Cambrai introduction of tank warfare

432 1917, eastern front

[† 432 1–† 432 4] Austro-Italian front

Class in 940 431

433 1917, other areas

Including Asia Africa

434 1918, western front

Including final German offensives Austro-Italian front [*formerly* †940 437 1–†940 437 3]

435 Allied offensive July 18–September 24

940 436 Allied offensive September 25–November 11
Argonne-Meuse offensive

437 1918 eastern front

[† 437 1–† 437 3] Austro Italian front

Class in 940 434

438 1918 other areas

Including Asia Africa

439 Armistice November 11, 1918

439 3 Celebrations

For celebrations of Veterans Day see 394 268

44 Aerial operations

441 Air services

Includ ng observation scouting artillery detecting range finding signaling bombing auxiliary land and naval fighting antisubmarine activities coast patrol

For a specific incident see the subject e g bombardment of London 940 447

442 Air raids

Comprehensive works

For specific air raids see 940 444–940 448

443 Air bases

444 Events of 1914

Including raids on Paris and England

445 Events of 1915

Including raids on England

446 Events of 1916

Including Zeppelin attacks raids on Paris and England

447 Events of 1917

Including air battle over Hindenburg line raids on Paris and England

448 Events of 1918

Including raids on Paris

940 449 History of aerial operations

Including specific aircraft, specific fliers

Divide like 940–999, e g, American aviators in World War I 940 449 73

For specific air battles and raids, see 940 444–940 448

.45 Naval operations

.451 Submarine warfare

.451 2 German use of submarine (U-boat)

.451 3 Allied use of submarine

Divide like 940–999, e g, American submarines 940 451 373

.451 4 Important events

Including sinking of the Lusitania

.451 6 Antisubmarine warfare

.452 Blockades

Including blockade running

.453 Naval bases

.454 Events of 1914

.455 Events of 1915

For sinking of the Lusitania, see 940 451 4

.456 Events of 1916

.457 Events of 1917

.458 Events of 1918

.459 History of naval operations

Divide like 940–999, e g, British navy in World War I 940 459 42

For specific naval battles and events, see 940 454–940 458

940 46 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e g , Armistice Day 940 439 3, societies commemorating the war, 369

461 *Commemorative meetings*

Divide like 940–999, e g , German meetings 940 461 43

463 Flag presentations

Divide like 940–999, e g , flag presentations in the United States 940 463 73

464 Decorations

Including presentation of awards

Divide like 940–999, e g , presentation of Medal of Honor 940 464 73

465 Monuments

Divide like 940–999, e g , monuments of World War I in France 940 465 44

For monuments to a specific event, see the event, e g , monument at Château Thierry 940 435, architecture of war memorials 725 94, national memorial cemeteries, 718 8

467 *Rolls of honor*

Including lists of dead

Divide like 940–999, e g , roll of honor at Hattiesburg Mississippi 940 467 762 18

47 *Prisons*, health, social services

Including relief and welfare activities for armed forces and civilians

472 Prisons

Including internment camps

Divide like 940–999, e g , German prison camps 940 472 43

473 Exchange of prisoners

475 Medical services

Including activities of medical and hospital personnel

475 2 Sanitary affairs

940 475 3 Ambulance companies

475 4–475 9 Medical services of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, British medical services 940 475 42

476 Hospitals

476 34–476 39 Hospitals in specific locations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e g military hospitals in France 940 476 344

For hospitals maintained by a specific country see 940 476 4–940 476 9

476 4–476 9 Hospitals maintained by specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g, British hospitals in France 940 476 42

477 Relief and welfare work

477 1 Red Cross

477 2 Salvation Army

477 3 Young Men s Christian Associations

477 4 Young Womens Christian Associations

477 5 Knights of Columbus

477 6 Young Men s Hebrew Associations

477 7 Other

Including college units

477 8 Relief activities conducted by specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g relief activities of the United States 940 477 873

477 9 Relief activities in specific countries

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999 e g relief activities in Finland 940 477 947 1

For relief activities conducted by specific countries see 940 477 8

478 Chaplains

940.48 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e g, spies of Central Powers 940 487

.481 Individuals from Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, or in United States to state, e g, war experiences of soldier from Richmond, Virginia 940 481 755

.482 Individuals from Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, e g, war experiences of resident of Danzig 940 482 43

.483 Military life and customs of Allies and associated powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e g, life in the United States Navy 940 483 73

.484 Military life and customs of Central Powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e g, life in the Luftwaffe 940 484 43

.485 Secret service and spies

.486 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, French spies 940 486 44

487 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, Austrian spies 940 487 436

.488 Propaganda

.488 6 By Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, British propaganda 940 488 642

488 7 By Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, German propaganda 940 488 743

488 9 Propaganda in specific countries

Propaganda of both sides

Divide like 940–999, e g, French and German propaganda in Norway 940 488 948 1

For propaganda of only one side, see 940 488 6–940 488 7

.49 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

940 5 **20th century, 1918–**

Including comprehensive works on 20th century

For early 20th century to 1914, see 940 28, World War I, 940 3–940 4

51 1918–1930

52 *1930–1939*

53 World War II, 1939–1945

SUMMARY

940.531	Political and economic history
532	*Diplomatic history*
.533	Groups of countries concerned in the war
534–539	Participation of individual countries
54	Conduct of the war
540 1	Strategy
540 2	Mobilization
.540 3	Negroes *and American* Indians during the war
.540 4	Other racial and ethnic groups
540 5	Repressive measures and atrocities
541–542	Combined operations
.544	Aerial operations
545	Naval operations
546	Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
.547	Prisons health, social services
.548	Personal narratives
.548 3–.548 4	Military life and customs
548 5–548 8	Unconventional warfare
549	Graphic materials

[530 84] *Audio-visual aids*

Class in 940 549

531 Political and economic history

531 1 Causes

Including comprehensive works on the following wars as precursors of World War II Japanese invasions of China 1931–1937 Italo-Ethiopian War 1935–1936 Spanish Civil War 1936–1939

For history of a specific war see the subject e g., Italo-Ethiopian War 963 056

531 12 Political and diplomatic causes

940 531 13 Economic causes

.531 14 Social and psychological causes

For propaganda, see 940 548 8

.531 2 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

Including peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940 532]

.531 4 Results

Including political, diplomatic, economic consequences, terms of cessation of hostilities, conferences

For peace conferences during the war, see 940 531 2, military conferences, military occupation, 940 54

.531 44 Reconstruction

Comprehensive works

Including plans problems, discussions of the postwar world

For reconstruction in a specific country, see the country, e g, in England 942 085

.531 5 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for, e g, doctors 940 547 5, divide like 000–999, e g, librarians and World War II 940 531 502

.531 52 Clergy and churches

Divide 940 531 521–940 531 528 like 281–288, e g, Roman Catholic Church and World War II 940 531 522, divide 940 531 528 9 like 289, e g, Christian Scientists and World War II 940 531 528 95

.531 529 Non Christian groups

Divide like 290, e g, rabbis and World War II 940 531 529 6

.531 59 Refugees

Divide like 940–999, e g, French refugees 940 531 594 4

.531 6 Other classes of persons not elsewhere classified

.531 61 Noncombatants

Including children

.531 62 Pacifists

940 531 63 Enemy sympathizers

For anti-Axis national groups, see 940 532 2, pro-Axis national groups, 940 532 4

.531 8 Special aspects of the war

Except for aspects specifically provided for, e g , military aspects 940 54, divide like 000–999, e g , comprehensive works on economic aspects 940 531 833

For economic causes of the war, see 940 531 13

.532 Diplomatic history

Comprehensive works on relations between countries during the war

Class peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940 532] in 940 531 2

For diplomatic causes, see 940 531 12, treaties and conferences, diplomatic consequences, 940 531 4

.532 2 United Nations

Including anti-Axis national groups, e g , Free French, governments in exile, e g , Norwegian representatives in London

Divide like 940–999, e g , wartime diplomacy of de Gaulle 940 532 244

.532 4 Axis Powers

Including pro-Axis national groups, e g , quislings

Divide like 940–999, e g , wartime diplomacy of Petain 940 532 444

.532 5 Neutrals

Divide like 940–999, e g , diplomacy of Switzerland concerning the war 940 532 549 4

.533 Groups of countries concerned in the war

Comprehensive works

For a specific activity of a group, see the subject, e.g., diplomatic history of the United Nations 940 532 2, specific countries, 940 534–940 539

.533 2 United Nations

533 4 Axis Powers

.533 5 Neutrals

533 6 Occupied countries

.533 7 Occupied by Axis Powers

.533 8 Occupied by United Nations

940 534–539 Participation of individual countries [*formerly* *940–*999]

Including governments in exile, anti Axis national groups, pro-Axis national groups, mobilization in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, France in the war 940 534 4

For works of purely local interest, see the specific locality e g, war activities of New York City 974 71

.54 Conduct of the war

Including military history, military conferences, military occupation

.540 1 Strategy

.540 12 United Nations

540 13 Axis Powers

540 2 Mobilization

Comprehensive works

Including recruitment, volunteering drafts

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940 534–940 539

540 3 Negroes and American Indians during the war

For specific military units, see 940 541 2

540 4 Other racial and ethnic groups

540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities

For internment camps, see 940 547 2

541 Combined operations

Including land operations

For aerial operations, see 940 544, *naval operations,* 940 545

.541 2 Military organizations of United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e g, 92d (Negro) Division 940 541 273

For medical corps, see 940 547 5, *chaplains,* 940 547 8 *intelligence,* 940 548 6

940 541 3 Military organizations of Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, Austrian troops 940 541 343 6

For medical corps, see 940 547 5, *chaplains,* 940 547 8, *intelligence,* 940 548 7

[† 541 4] Battle fronts

Class in 940 542

542 Campaigns and battles

Including operational fronts [*formerly* †940 541 4]

542 1 European theater of operations

Including VE Day, war memorials of this theater

542 3 Middle East and Africa

542 5 Asian mainland Japan Netherlands East Indies

Including VJ Day

542 6 Islands of the Pacific Ocean

542 8 The Americas

542 9 Other areas

544 Aerial operations

Including antiaircraft defenses, combined air and naval blockades

For naval blockades see 940 545 2

544 1 Air services

Including observation, scouting range finding [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Class air fighting [*formerly* †940 544 1] in 940 544 2

544 2 Air campaigns and battles [*formerly* †940 544 1]

544 3 Air bases

Divide like 940–999 e g air bases in England 940 544 342

545 Naval operations

545 1 Submarine warfare

545 16 Antisubmarine warfare

940 545 2 Blockades

Including blockade running

545 3 Naval bases

546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e g, VE Day 940 542 1, societies commemorating the war, 369

.546 1 Commemorative meetings

Divide like 940–999, e g, German meetings 940 546 143

546 3 Flag presentations

Divide like 940–999, e g, flag presentations in the United States 940 546 373

546 4 Decorations

Including presentation of awards

Divide like 940–999, e g, presentation of Medal of Honor 940 546 473

546 5 Monuments

Divide like 940–999, e g, monuments of World War II in France 940 546 544

For monuments to a specific event, see the event, e g, American Memorial Chapel in Saint Paul's Cathedral 940 542 1, architecture of war memorials, 725 94, national memorial cemeteries, 718 8

546 7 Rolls of honor

Including lists of dead

Divide like 940–999, e g, roll of honor at Trenton, New Jersey 940 546 774 966

547 Prisons, health, social services

Including relief and welfare activities for armed forces and civilians

547 2 Prisons

Including internment camps

Divide like 940–999, e g, German prison camps 940 547 243

547 3 Exchange of prisoners

940 547 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical and hospital personnel

.547 52 Sanitary affairs

.547 53 Ambulance companies

.547 54–547 59 Medical services of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, British medical services 940 547 542

.547 6 Hospitals

.547 634–547 639 Hospitals in specific locations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e g, military hospitals in France 940 547 634 4

For hospitals maintained by a specific country, see 940 547 64–940 547 69

547 64–547 69 Hospitals maintained by specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e g, British hospitals in France 940 547 642

547 7 Relief and welfare work

547 71 Red Cross

547 78 Relief activities conducted by specific countries

Divide like 940–999 e g relief activities of the United States 940 547 787 3

547 79 Relief activities in specific countries

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e g, relief activities in Finland 940 547 794 71

For relief activities conducted by specific countries, see 940 547 78

547 8 Chaplains

548 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e g, spies of Axis Powers 940 548 7

548 1 Individuals from United Nations

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, or in United States to state, e g, war experiences of a soldier from New York City 940.548 174 7

940 548 2 Individuals from Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, e g, war experiences of a resident of Salzburg 940 548 243 6

548 3 Military life and customs of United Nations

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e g, life in the United States Navy 940 548 373

548 4 Military life and customs of Axis Powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e g, life in the Luftwaffe 940 548 443

548 5 Unconventional warfare

Including intelligence, subversion sabotage, infiltration

548 6 United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e g, French saboteurs 940 548 644

548 7 Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, German saboteurs 940 548 743

548 8 Psychological warfare

Including propaganda

548 86 By United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e g British propaganda 940 548 864 2

548 87 By Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e g, German propaganda 940 548 874 3

548 89 Propaganda in specific countries

Propaganda of both sides

Divide like 940–999 e g Free French and German propaganda in Norway 940 548 894 81

For propaganda of only one side see 940 548 86–940 548 87

549 Graphic materials

Including maps pictorial histories cartoons

55 Later 20th century, 1945–

941 Scotland

941.01–941.081 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1057

Gaelic period to Norman penetration

For ancient Celtic tribes see 936.4

02 Efforts at control by England, 1057–1314

Including Battle of Bannockburn 1314

03 Early period of independence, 1314–1424

04 James I–James V, 1424–1542

05 Reformation period, 1542–1603

Including reign of Mary Stuart 1542–1567

06 Personal union with England 1603–1707

07 18th century, 1707–1837

Including political union with England to form Kingdom of Great Britain 1707

08 19th century, 1837–1901

Victorian era

081 20th century, 1901–

941.1–941.495 Geographic divisions

1 Northern Scotland and coastal islands

Including comprehensive works on the Highlands

For Grampian Mountains see 941.2

11 Shetland Islands (Zetland County)

12 Orkney Islands

Including Scapa Flow

13 Caithness

14 Sutherland

941 15 Cromarty

Incorporated with Ross, 17th century

16 Ross and Cromarty

Including part of Outer Hebrides

17 Hebrides (Western Islands)

Comprehensive works

For a specific island or region see the county of which it forms a part, e g, Skye 941.21

.2 North central Scotland

Including Grampian Mountains, Strathmore

21 Inverness

Including Caledonian Canal, parts of Inner and Outer Hebrides

22 Nairn

23 Moray

Formerly Elgin

24 Banff

25 Aberdeen

26 Kincardine

3 Central lowlands

Including Firth of Forth

31 Angus

Formerly Forfar

32 Perth

33 Fife

34 Kinross

35 Clackmannan

36 Stirling

37 Dumbarton

38 Argyll

Including part of Inner Hebrides

39 Bute

Including Arran Bute, Great Cumbrae Little Cumbrae Islands

941 4 Southern Scotland

Including Clyde River Solway Firth

41 Renfrew

42 Ayr

43 Lanark

435 Glasgow

44 West Lothian

Formerly Linlithgow

445 Midlothian

Including Edinburgh

45 *East Lothian*

Formerly Haddington

455 Berwick

46 Peebles

465 Selkirk

47 Roxburgh

48 Dumfries

49 Kirkcudbright

Including comprehensive works on Galloway district

For Wigtoun see 941 495

495 Wigtown

.5 **Ireland**

941 51–941 59 Period divisions

51 Early history to 1086

Including settlement by Celts Milesians Danish invasions Battle of Clontarf 1014

For ancient Celtic tribes see 936 4

52 Period of English conquest 1086–1171

Including Synod of Cashel 1171 Norman settlement

53 Ireland under House of Plantagenet 1171–1399

.54 Ireland under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

941 55 Ireland under Tudors, 1485–1603

Including Statute of Drogheda (Poynings's Law), 1495

56 Ireland under Stuarts, 1603–1691

Including Battle of the Boyne, 1690 Treaty of Limerick, 1691

57 18th century, 1691–1800

Including Wolfe Tone s rebellion 1798

58 19th century, 1801–1900

Ireland as part of United Kingdom, 1801–1920

59 20th century, 1900–

Including Sinn Fein, Easter Rebellion, 1916, Irish Free State, Republic of Ireland (Eire), 1949– , comprehensive works on Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland

For history of Northern Ireland, 1920– , see 941 605

941 6–941.96 Geographic divisions

.6 Ulster (Northern Ireland)

605 Northern Ireland under Government of Ireland Act, 1920–

For comprehensive works on Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland, see 941 59

61 Antrim

Including Belfast

62 Londonderry

63 Donegal

County of Republic of Ireland

Including Aran Island

64 Tyrone

65 Down

66 Armagh

67 Monaghan

County of Republic of Ireland

68 Fermanagh

69 Cavan

County of Republic of Ireland

941.7 Connaught

.71 Leitrim

.72 Sligo

.73 Mayo

.74 Galway

Including Aran Islands

.75 Roscommon

.8 Leinster

81 Longford

.815 Westmeath

82 Meath

825 Louth

83 Dublin

84 Wicklow

85 Kildare

86 Offaly

Formerly King s County

87 Laoighis (Leix)

Formerly Queen s County

88 Carlow

.885 Wexford

.89 Kilkenny

.9 Munster

91 Waterford

92 Tipperary

93 Clare

94 Limerick

95 Cork

.96 Kerry

942 England

Including comprehensive works on Commonwealth of Nations, on British Commonwealth on British Empire on United Kingdom, on Great Britain

For a specific part of the Commonwealth of Nations, see the part, e g, Canada 971

---

942 01–942 085 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1066

Including Anglo-Saxon Roman British Danish periods reigns of Alfred the Great 841–899 of Edward the Confessor 1042–1066

For tribes of Angles and Saxons, see 936 32, of Celts, 936 4

02 Norman period, 1066–1154

Including growth of feudalism

021 William I, 1066–1087

Including Battle of Hastings

022 William II, 1087–1100

023 Henry I, 1100–1135

024 Stephen 1135–1154

03 House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399

031 Henry II, 1154–1189

032 Richard I, 1189–1199

033 John, 1199–1216

Including signing of Magna Carta 1215

For constitutional history see 342 42

034 Henry III, 1216–1272

035 Edward I, 1272–1307

036 Edward II, 1307–1327

037 Edward III, 1327–1377

For Hundred Years War, see 944 025

038 Richard II, 1377–1399

942.04 Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

Including Wars of the Roses, 1455–1485

.041 Henry IV, 1399–1413

.042 Henry V, 1413–1422

.043 Henry VI, 1422–1461

.044 Edward IV, 1461–1483

.045 Edward V, 1483

.046 *Richard III, 1483–1485*

.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603

.051 Henry VII, 1485–1509

.052 Henry VIII, 1509–1547

.053 Edward VI, 1547–1553

.054 Mary, 1553–1558

.055 Elizabeth I, 1558–1603

.06 Stuart period, 1603–1714

Including personal union with Scotland, 1603–1707

.061 James I, 1603–1625

.062 Charles I, 1625–1649

Including civil wars 1642–1646, 1648–1649

.063 Commonwealth, 1649–1660

.064 Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658

.065 Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659

.066 Charles II, 1660–1685

Restoration period

.067 James II, 1685–1688

.068 William III (of Orange) and Mary, 1689–1702

.069 Anne, 1702–1714

Including political union with Scotland to form Kingdom of Great Britain, 1707

942 07 House of Hanover, 1714–1837

071 George I, 1714–1727

072 George II, 1727–1760

073 George III, 1760–1820

Including formation of United Kingdom 1801

074 George IV, 1820–1830

075 William IV, 1830–1837

08 Victoria, 1837–1901

082 20th century, 1901–

Including reigns of House of Windsor, of Edward VII, 1901–1910

083 Period of World War I and postwar, 1914–1936

Including reign of George V, 1910–1936

084 Period of World War II, 1936–1945

Including reigns of Edward VIII, 1936 of George VI, 1936–1952

085 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including reign of Elizabeth II 1952–

942 1–942 99 Geographic divisions

.1 London metropolitan area

Including County of London, Greater London

12 Central London

Including City of London, Finsbury, Holborn

13 West London

Including West End Westminster, Chelsea, Fulham, Hammersmith, Kensington Paddington

14 North London

Including Saint Marylebone Hampstead, Saint Pancras, Islington, Stoke Newington, Hackney

942 15 East London

Including East End Shoreditch Bethnal Green Poplar Stepney

16 South London

Including Southwark Bermondsey Deptford Greenwich Woolwich Lewisham Camberwell Lambeth Battersea Wandsworth

17 Environs of London (Outer Ring)

Comprehensive works

For a specific part of Outer Ring see the part e g Croydon 942 21

19 Middlesex

.2 Southeastern England

Including Thames River comprehensive works on Wessex

For western Wessex see 942 3

.21 Surrey

23 Kent

.25 Sussex

27 Hampshire (Hants Southampton)

28 Isle of Wight

.29 Berkshire

3 Southwestern England

Including western Wessex

31 Wiltshire

33 Dorset

34 Channel Islands

Including Jersey Guernsey Alderney Sark

35 Devon

37 Cornwall

38 Somerset

942 4 **West Midlands**

Including Mercia comprehensive works on Midlands

For east Midlands see 942 5

41 Gloucester

43 Monmouth

44 Hereford

45 Shropshire (Salop)

46 Stafford

47 Worcester

48 Warwick

5 **East Midlands**

Including the Fens

51 Derby

52 Nottingham

53 Lincoln

54 Leicester

545 Rutland

55 Northampton

Including Soke of Peterborough

56 Huntingdon

565 Bedford

57 Oxford

575 Buckingham

58 Hertford

59 Cambridge

Including Isle of Ely

6 **Eastern England**

Including East Anglia

61 Norfolk

64 Suffolk

67 Essex

942.7 North central England

Including Northumbria

71 Cheshire

72 Lancashire

74 York

.8 Northern England

Including Lake District

81 Durham

82 Northumberland

Including Cheviot Hills

85 Cumberland

88 Westmoreland

89 Isle of Man

.9 Wales

91 Anglesey

92 Caernarvon

925 Merioneth

93 Denbigh

935 Flint

94 Montgomery

95 Cardigan

96 Radnor

965 Brecknock

97 Glamorgan

98 Carmarthen

99 Pembroke

943 Germany

Comprehensive works on the states or areas which became part of Germany in 1866

Including comprehensive works on central Europe, on Holy Roman Empire, on House of Hapsburg

For a specific country formerly part of Holy Roman Empire, see the country, e g , Liechtenstein 943 648, Hapsburg rule in a specific country, the country, e g , Austria 943 6, ancient tribes settling in Germany, 936

---

943 01–943 087 Period divisions

01 Early period and Empire of Charlemagne to 843

For reign of Charlemagne in another country, see the country, e g , in France 944 01

.02 Holy Roman Empire during 843–1519

021 Carolingian emperors, 843–911

022 Conrad I, 911–918, and Saxon emperors, 919–1024

023 Salian (Franconian) emperors, 1024–1125, and Lothair II, 1125–1137

024 House of Hohenstaufen, 1138–1197

025 House of Hohenstaufen and Interregnum, 1198–1273

026 Houses of Hapsburg and Luxemburg, 1273–1519

027 House of Luxemburg and Interregnum, 1378–1436

028 House of Hapsburg, 1437–1519

029 Maximilian I, 1493–1519

03 Reformation period, 1519–1618

Including period of Counter Reformation

031 Charles V, 1519–1556

Including wars with France, Knights' War, 1522–1523, Peasants' War, 1524–1525, Peace of Madrid, 1526 Treaty of Cambrai, 1529, Schmalkaldic League and Wars 1530–1547, Peace of Augsburg, 1555

For Charles V as Charles I, King of Spain, see 946 04

032 Ferdinand I, 1556–1564

943.033 Maximilian II 1564–1576

034 Rudolf II 1576–1612

035 Matthias 1612–1619

04 17th century 1618–1705

041 Period of Thirty Years War 1618–1648

For comprehensive works on Thirty Years War see 940.24

042 Ferdinand II 1619–1637

043 Ferdinand III 1637–1657

044 Leopold I 1658–1705

05 Rise of Prussia 1705–1790

051 Joseph I Emperor 1705–1711

052 Charles VI Emperor 1711–1740

053 Frederick the Great King of Prussia 1740–1786

Including First Silesian War 1740–1742

054 Charles VII Emperor 1742–1745

Including Second Silesian War 1744–1745

055 Francis I Emperor 1745–1765

056 Third Silesian (Seven Years) War 1756–1763

For comprehensive works on Seven Years War see 940.25

057 Joseph II Emperor 1765–1790

06 Period of Napoleonic Wars 1790–1815

Including end of Holy Roman Empire 1806 Confederation of the Rhine 1806–1815

For comprehensive works on Napoleonic Wars see 940.27

07 Unification 1815–1866

Including Schleswig Holstein Wars 1864–1866

08 Second Empire 1866–1918

081 North German Confederation 1866–1871

082 Franco-German War 1870–1871

083 William I 1871–1888 (King of Prussia 1861–1888)

084 Frederick 1888 and William II 1888–1918

.085 German Republic 1918–1933

943 086 Third Reich, 1933–1945

087 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including Allied occupation 1945–1949, Federal Republic, 1949– (West Germany), comprehensive works on Federal Republic (West Germany) and Democratic Republic (East Germany)

For German Democratic Republic, 1949– , see 943 108 7

943 1–943 58 Geographic divisions

.1 Prussia

Including comprehensive works on former state of Prussia on East Germany

For a specific part of former Prussia, see the part, e g, Westphalia 943 56

108 7 German Democratic Republic, 1949– (East Germany)

For comprehensive works on Federal Republic and Democratic Republic, see 943 087

11 East Prussia

112 Memel Territory

Part of Lithuania 1920–1939 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Lithuania in 947 5, if preferred use 947 5 also for specific parts of Lithuania

114 Kaliningrad (Konigsberg)

Oblast of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in 947 3 if preferred use 947 3 also for specific parts of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

116 Olsztyn

Province of Poland, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8 if preferred, use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

943 12 West Prussia

Including Polish Corridor city of Danzig

Part of Poland 1919–1939 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8 if preferred use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

For Polish Pomerania see 943 163

13 Poznan (Posen)

Province of Poland 1919–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8 if preferred use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

14 German Silesia

Greater part transferred to Poland 1945

Including comprehensive works on Silesia

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8 if preferred use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

For Czech Silesia see 943 73 Silesian Wars 943 053–943 056

15 Brandenburg

State of German Democratic Republic 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany see 943 1

155 Berlin

16 Pomerania

163 Polish Pomerania

Including Pomerelia

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8 if preferred use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

165 German Pomerania

Part of Mecklenburg 1945–

17 Mecklenburg

State of German Democratic Republic 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany see 943 1

175 Lübeck

Part of Schleswig Holstein 1937–

For comprehensive works on Schleswig Holstein see 943 51

943.18 Saxony-Anhalt

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

Including Prussian Saxony

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.19 Anhalt

.2 **Central Germany**

.21 Saxony

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.22 Thuringia

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.23 Saxe Weimar

.24 Saxe Altenburg

.25 Saxe Coburg Gotha

.26 Saxe Meiningen

.27 Schwarzburg

.28 Reuss

.3 **Bavaria**

Including Danube River in Bavaria

For comprehensive works on Danube River, see 949.6

.31 Upper Franconia

.32 Middle Franconia

.33 Lower Franconia

.34 Upper Palatinate

For comprehensive works on Palatinate, see 943.43

.35 Lower Bavaria

.36 Upper Bavaria

.37 Swabia

943.4 **West central and southwestern Germany**

Including Rhine River and Valley

.41 Hesse-Darmstadt

Including comprehensive works on Hesse formed, 1945, of Hesse Darmstadt, Waldeck, and most of former Hesse-Nassau

For Waldeck, see 943 57, Hesse Nassau, 943 58

.42 Rhine Province (Rhenish Prussia)

423 Cologne, Aachen, Dusseldorf

Districts of state of North Rhine-Westphalia, 1945–

For comprehensive works on North Rhine-Westphalia, see 943 55

.425 Coblenz and Trier

Districts of State of Rhineland Palatinate, 1945–

For comprehensive works on Rhineland Palatinate, see 943 43

.427 Saar

Autonomous 1919–1935, 1947–1956

43 Rhineland Palatinate

State formed 1945 of former Rhenish Palatinate, former Rhenish Hesse Montabaur, Coblenz, and Trier

Including comprehensive works on Palatinate

For Upper Palatinate see 943 34, Montabaur, 943 58, Coblenz and Trier, 943 425

[† 44–† 45] Alsace Lorraine

Class in 944 38

Libraries preferring to class works on Alsace-Lorraine under German administration with Germany may use 943 44 for Alsace-Lorraine 943 445 for Alsace alone, and 943 45 for Lorraine alone

46 Wurttemberg-Baden

47 Wurttemberg

48 Black Forest

Including Danube River in Germany

For comprehensive works on Danube River, see 949 6

49 Hohenzollern

943 5 **Northwestern Germany**

Including Lower Saxony

51 **Schleswig Holstein**

Under Danish rule 1027–1815 North Schleswig rejoined to Denmark 1920 Lubeck, former free Hanseatic city attacht 1937

For Denmark see 948.9 *Lubeck* 943 175
Schleswig Holstein Wars 943 07

515 **Hamburg**

518 **Helgoland**

52 **Oldenburg**

525 **Bremen**

53 **Hanover**

54 **Brunswick**

55 **North Rhine–Westphalia**

Formed 1945 of Lippe Westphalia, Cologne Aachen and Dusseldorf

For Cologne Aachen, Dusseldorf see 943 423

56 **Westphalia**

57 **Waldeck**

Part of Hesse-Nassau 1929–1945 of Hesse 1946–

For comprehensive works on Hesse see 943 41

58 **Hesse-Nassau**

Montabaur part of Rhineland Palatinate 1945– remainder part of Hesse, 1945–

For comprehensive works on Rhineland Palatinate see 943 43 *on Hesse* 943 41

6 **Austria**

Including comprehensive works on Austro-Hungarian Empire

For Hungary see 943 91 *ancient tribes settling in Austria* 936

---

943 602–943 605 Period divisions

.602 Medieval period to 1500

.603 16th to 18th centuries 1500–1815

943.604 19th century, 1815–1919

605 20th century, 1919–

United with Germany 1938–1945

943.61–943.69 Geographic divisions

61 Lower Austria

613 Vienna

615 Burgenland

62 Upper Austria

63 Salzburg

64 Tyrol

For Trento (Trentino) see 945.385

645 Vorarlberg

648 Liechtenstein

Independent 1719–

65 Styria

655 Maribor (Marburg)

Oblast of Slovenia 1918–

For comprehensive works on Slovenia see 943.67

66 Carinthia

67 Slovenia

Comprises Carniola, Karst, Maribor

Part of Yugoslavia 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia in 949.7; if preferred use 949.7 also for specific parts of Yugoslavia

For Maribor see 943.655; Karst, 943.682 3

68 Istria and Gorizia

682 Istria

For ancient Istria see 937.3

682 3 Karst

Part of Slovenia 1947–

For comprehensive works on Slovenia see 943.67

943 682 5 Free Territory of Trieste

.682 7 Istrian Peninsula

Part of Veneto, 1919–1947, of Croatia, 1947–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943 94

686 Gorizia

Part of Friuli–Venezia Giulia, Italy, 1947–

For Friuli–Venezia Giulia, see 945.39

.69 **Dalmatia**

Part of Croatia, 1919–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943 94

.7 Czechoslovakia

For ancient tribes settling in Czechoslovakia, see 936

---

943 702–943 704 Period divisions

.702 *Kingdom of Bohemia to 1918*

Including Hussite Wars, 1420–1431

703 Republic, 1918–1945

704 Later 20th century, 1945–

---

943 71–943.735 Geographic divisions

.71 **Bohemia**

Including Sudetenland

72 Moravia

Including province of Moravia and Silesia, 1945–1949

73 Czech Silesia

.735 Slovakia

.74 Galicia

.743 **Polish Galicia**

Part of Poland, 1919–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943 8, if preferred, use 943 8 also for specific parts of Poland

943.745 **East Galicia**

Part of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic in 947 71, if preferred, use 947 71 also for specific parts of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic

.75 Bukovina

Province of Rumania, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949 8, if preferred, use 949 8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.755 **North Bukovina**

Part of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1940–

Class comprehensive works on Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic in 947 71, if preferred, use 947 71 also for specific parts of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic

.8 Poland

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Poland with the part, e g, Gdansk 943 12 if preferred, class all specific parts of Poland in 943 8

For ancient tribes settling in Poland, see 936

802 Early period to 1795

Including partition [*formerly* †947 06]

803 Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918

804 Republic, 1918–1939

805 Later 20th century, 1939–

Including People's Democracy, 1947–

.9 Hungary, Transylvania, Slavonia, Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina

.91 Hungary

For invasion by ancient tribes see 936

910 2 Arpad dynasty, 894–1301

Including settlement by Magyars

910 3 Period of elective kings, 1301–1526

910 4 *Period of foreign rule, 1526–1918*

910 5 20th century, 1918–

943.915 Banat (Banat of Temesvar)

.915 1 Rumanian Banat

Province of Rumania, 1920–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949 8, if preferred, use 949 8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.915 3 Yugoslav Banat

Part of Vojvodina, 1920–

For comprehensive works on Vojvodina, see 949 71

.92 Transylvania

Province of Rumania, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949 8, if preferred, use 949 8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.93 Slavonia

United with Croatia, 1868–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943 94

.94 Croatia

Absorbed Slavonia, 1868, part of Yugoslavia, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia in 949 7, if preferred, use 949 7 *also for specific parts of Yugoslavia*

For Dalmatia, see 943 69, *Istrian Peninsula,* 943 682 7, *Slavonia,* 943 93

.95 Bosnia and Herzegovina

Part of Yugoslavia, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia in 949 7, if preferred, use 949 7 also for specific parts of Yugoslavia

955 Bosnia

.96 Herzegovina

944 **France**

Including comprehensive works on French Union on Overseas France

For a specific part of French Union, see the part, e g, Corsica 945 95

944 01–944 082 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 987

Including former Gaul, Merovingian dynasty, 486–751, Carolingian dynasty, 751–987, reign of Charlemagne, 771–814

For ancient tribes settling in France, see 936, *reign of Charlemagne in another country, the country, e g, in Germany* 943 01

02 Growth of royal power, 987–1589

Including wars with Italy, 1494–1559

021 Capetian House, 987–1328

Including reigns of Hugh Capet, 987–996, of Robert II, 996–1031 of Henry I 1031–1060

022 Philip I, 1060–1108, Louis VI, 1108–1137, Louis VII, 1137–1180

023 Philip II, 1180–1223, Louis VIII, 1223–1226, Louis IX, 1226–1270

024 Philip III, 1270–1285, Philip IV, 1285–1314, Louis X, 1314–1316, John I, 1316, Philip V, 1316–1322, Charles IV, 1322–1328

025 House of Valois, 1328–1498

Including reigns of Philip VI 1328–1350, of John II, 1350–1364 of Charles V 1364–1380, Hundred Years' War

026 Charles VI, 1380–1422, and Charles VII, 1422–1461

027 Louis XI, 1461–1483, Charles VIII, 1483–1498, Louis XII 1498–1515

028 Francis I, 1515–1547, and Henry II, 1547–1559

029 Francis II, 1559–1560, Charles IX, 1560–1574, Henry III, 1574–1589

944 03 House of Bourbon, 1589–1789

For Bourbon rule in another country see the country e g in Spain 946

031 Henry IV, 1589–1610

032 Louis XIII, 1610–1643

033 Louis XIV, 1643–1715

034 Louis XV, 1715–1774

035 Louis XVI, 1774–1792

Including antecedents of French Revolution

.04 Revolution 1789–1804

041 Period of Estates General National Assembly, Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792

042 First Republic 1792–1799

043 National Convention 1792–1795

Including abolition of monarchy rise of Napoleon

044 Reign of Terror 1793–1794

045 Directory 1795–1799

Including period of war with the Second Coalition

046 Consulate 1799–1804

Including dictatorship of Napoleon

05 First Empire 1804–1815

Including reigns of Napoleon I 1804–April 11 1814 of Louis XVIII April 1814–March 13 1815 Hundred Days March 1–June 22 1815

06 Restoration 1815–1848

061 Louis XVIII 1815–1824

062 Charles X 1824–1830

063 Louis Philippe 1830–1848 (July Monarchy)

07 Second Republic 1848–1852, and Second Empire, 1852–1870

Including revolution 1848 coup d etat 1851 reign of Napoleon III (Louis Napoleon) 1852–1870

944.08 Third Republic, 1870–1945

Including period of Franco-German War, territorial expansion in Africa

For Franco-German War, see 943.082

.081 Period of World War II, 1939–1945

Including German occupation, Vichy government, provisional government at Algiers, Free French movement

.082 Fourth Republic, 1945–

944.1–944.99 Geographic divisions

.1 Brittany

Region and former province

Including ancient Armorica

.11 Finistère

.12 Côtes-du-Nord

.13 Morbihan

.14 Loire-Inférieure

.15 Ille et Vilaine

.16 Maine

Region

Including Mayenne department, comprehensive works on former province of Maine

For a specific part of former province of Maine, see the part, e g Orne 944.23

.17 Sarthe

.18 Anjou

Region and former province

Including Maine-et-Loire department

.2 Normandy

Region and former province

.21 Manche

.22 Calvados

.23 Orne

944 24 Eure

25 Seine Maritime

Formerly Seine-Inférieure

.26 Picardy

Region

Including Somme department, comprehensive works on former province of Picardy

For a specific part of former province of Picardy, see the part, e g , Oise 944 35

.27 Artois

Region and former province, included in Pas-de-Calais department

28 French Flanders

Region and former province, coextensive with Nord department

.3 Champagne

Region

Including Marne River, comprehensive works on former province of Champagne

For a specific part of former province of Champagne see the part, e g , Yonne 944 41

31 Ardennes

32 Marne

331 Aube

332 Haute-Marne

34 Ile-de France

Region and former province

Including Seine River

345 Aisne

35 Oise

36 Paris metropolitan area

Including Seine department

For a specific part of metropolitan Paris, see the part, e g , Seine-et Marne 944 37

365 Seine et Oise

37 Seine et Marne

944.38 Lorraine [*formerly also* †943.44–†943.45]

Region and former province

Including Vosges Mountains, Argonne Forest, comprehensive works on Alsace-Lorraine

For Vosges department, see 944 39, *Alsace,* 944 383

.381 Meuse

.382 Meurthe et-Moselle

.382 5 Moselle

.383 Alsace [*formerly also* †943.445]

Region and former province

For Moselle, see 944 382 5, *Belfort,* 944 455

.383 3 Haut-Rhin

383 5 Bas-Rhin

.39 Vosges

For Vosges Mountains, see 944 38

.4 Burgundy

Region and former province

Including Saône River

.41 Yonne

.42 Côte-d'Or

43 Saône et-Loire

44 Ain

.45 Franche-Comté

Region and former province

Including Jura Mountains in France

453 Haute Saône

.455 Territory of Belfort

46 Doubs

944 47 Jura

.48 Savoy

Including Savoie department

.49 Haute-Savoie

.5 Orléanais

Region

Including Loire River, comprehensive works on former province of Orléanais

For a specific part of former province of Orléanais, see the part, e g , Yonne 944 41

51 Eure-et-Loir

.52 Loiret

.53 Loir-et Cher

.54 Touraine

Region and former province

Including Indre-et Loire department

For Indre, see 944 551

.55 Berry

Region and former province

551 Indre

552 Cher

56 Nivernais

Region and former province, coextensive with Nièvre department

.57 Bourbonnais

Region

Including Allier department, comprehensive works on former province of Bourbonnais

For Cher, see 944 552

.58 Lyonnais

Region and former province

581 Loire

582 Rhône

944.59 **Auvergne**

Region

Including Massif Central, comprehensive works on former province of Auvergne

For Haute Loire, see 944 81

.591 Puy-de-Dôme

.592 Cantal

.6 **Poitou**

Region and former province

.61 Vendée

62 Deux-Sèvres

.63 Vienne

.64 **Charente-Maritime department**

Formerly Charente-Inférieure

Including former Aunis province, former Saintonge province

.65 **Charente department**

Including region and former province of Angoumois

.66 **Limousin**

Region and former province

Including Haute-Vienne department

.67 Corrèze

.68 **Marche**

Region

Including Creuse department, comprehensive works on former province of Marche

For Haute Vienne, see 944 66

.7 **Guienne (Aquitaine)**

Region and former province

Including Landes region, Garonne River

.71 Gironde

.72 Dordogne

.73 Lot

944 74 Aveyron

Rouergue district

.75 Tarn et-Garonne

.76 Lot et Garonne

.77 Gascony

Region

Including comprehensive works on former province of Gascony

For a specific part of former province of Gascony, see the part, e g , Lot-et Garonne 944 76

.771 Gers

.772 Landes

78 Hautes-Pyrénées

.79 Béarn

Region and former province, generally coextensive with Basses Pyrénées department

.8 Languedoc

Region

Including Cevennes Mountains, Rhone River, comprehensive works on former province of Languedoc

For Tarn-et Garonne, see 944 75

81 Haute Loire

815 Lozère

82 Ardèche

83 Gard

84 Hérault

85 Tarn

86 Haute Garonne

87 Aude

88 Ariège

Including former Foix province

.89 Pyrénées-Orientales

Including region and former province of Rousillon, Pyrenees Mountains in France

944.9 **Provence**

Region and former province

Including comprehensive works on Riviera

For Basses-Alpes, see 944 95, Italian Riviera, 945 182

.91 Bouches-du-Rhône

Including Marseilles

.92 Vaucluse

Including former Comtat Venaissin, Canton of Valréas, enclave in Drôme department, Avignon

.93 Var

.94 Alpes-Maritimes

.949 Monaco

Enclave in Alpes-Maritimes independent principality to 1793, annext to France, 1793–1814, independent, 1814–

.95 Basses-Alpes

Department of Provence region

.96 Dauphiné

Region and former province of France

.97 Hautes-Alpes

.98 Drôme

For Canton of Valréas, enclave of Vaucluse, see 944 92

.99 Isère

945 **Italy**

For Roman Empire, see 937, a specific part of Italy, the part, e.g., Gorizia 943 686

945 01–945 092 Period divisions

01 Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476–774

Including barbarian invasions, creation of Papal States, 756, conquest by Charlemagne, 774

For ancient tribes settling in Italy, see 936 3, Papal States, 945 6

02 Frankish rule, 774–962

Including union of church and state in Holy Roman Empire, 800

For Holy Roman Empire, see 943

03 German emperors, 962–1122

Including Norman invasion of Sicily, 1059, rise of kingdom of Sicily, achievement of papal supremacy by Hildebrand (Gregory VII) thru Concordat at Worms, 1122

For Roman supremacy of the church, see 270 4

04 12th and 13th centuries, 1122–1300

Including growth of communes, formation of Lombard League, 1167, with self-government granted to Lombardy, 1183, Guelphs versus Ghibellines rise of Venice

For Venice, see 945 31

05 Renaissance period, 1300–1494

Including decline of temporal power of papacy, rule of despots, emergence by 1494 of five principal states Milan, Venice, Florence, Papal States, Naples

For history of a specific state, see the subject, e g, kingdom of Naples 945 7

945.06 European aggression, 1494–1796

Including sack of Rome, 1527, development of new national culture inspired by Renaissance

.07 Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796

Including rise of kingdom of Sardinia (House of Savoy), 1720

.08 Growth of nationalism, 1796–1870

Including loss of Lombardy and Venetia to Austria, wars of independence, 1848–1849, Risorgimento movement, 1849–1861, return of Lombardy by Peace of Zurich, 1859, Sardinia as dominant power under Victor Emmanuel II, 1861–1878, annexation of Venetia after war with Austria, 1866, unification of Italy by occupation of Rome, 1870

.09 Kingdom of Italy, 1870–1918

Including reigns of Victor Emmanuel II, 1870–1878, of Humbert I, 1878–1900, of Victor Emmanuel III, 1900–1947

.091 Fascist Italy, 1918–1946

Including dictatorship of Benito Mussolini, 1922–1945, Lateran Treaty establishing Vatican City, 1929

For Vatican City, see 945 634

092 Italian Republic, 1946–

945.1–945.95 Geographic divisions

.1 Piedmont

Region

11 Val d'Aosta

Autonomous, 1945– , formerly Aosta province formed from part of Torino, 1927, southern part returned to Torino, 1945

.12 *Torino*

13 Cuneo

14 Alessandria

Area reduced to form Asti province, 1935

15 Asti

Formed 1935 from part of Alessandria province

945 16 Novara

Area reduced to form Vercelli province, 1927

17 Vercelli

Formed 1927 from part of Novara province

.18 Liguria

Region

.182 Genova

Area reduced to form provinces of La Spezia (1923) and Savona (1927)

Including Italian Riviera

183 La Spezia

Formed from part of Genova province, 1923

184 Savona

Formed from part of Genova province, 1927

187 Imperia

Formerly Porto Maurizio province

.2 Lombardy

Region

Including Po River

21 Milano

Area reduced to form part of Varese province, 1927

22 Varese

Formed from parts of Milano and Como provinces, 1927

23 Como

Area reduced to form part of Varese province, 1927

24 Bergamo

25 Sondrio

26 Brescia

27 Cremona

28 Mantova

29 Pavia

945.3 Veneto

Part of Austria, 1797–1866, formerly included Istrian Peninsula (ceded to Yugoslavia, 1947), Trieste (since 1947 Free Territory of Trieste), province of Udine detacht 1947 to form part of Friuli-Venezia Giulia

For Istrian Peninsula, see 943 682 7, Gorizia, 943 686, Free Territory of Trieste, 943 682 5, Friuli-Venezia Giulia, 945.39

.31 Venezia

.32 Padova

.33 Rovigo

Including Polesine district

.34 Verona

.35 Vicenza

.36 Treviso

.37 Belluno

.38 Trentino-Alto Adige

Autonomous region 1947–

Formerly Venezia Tridentina

.383 Bolzano (Alto Adige)

.385 Trento (Trentino)

Part of Austrian Tyrol until 1919

.39 Friuli-Venezia Giulia

Autonomous region formed, 1945, of Udine province (Friuli) and part of Gorizia province

For Gorizia, see 943 686

.4 Emilia Romagna

Region, called Emilia until 1948

.41 Bologna

.42 Modena

945 43 Reggio Emilia

44 Parma

45 Ferrara

46 Piacenza

47 Ravenna

48 Forlì

49 San Marino
Independent 4th century

5 Tuscany
Region
Including Tuscan Archipelago Elba

51 Firenze
Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pistoia province

52 Pistoia
Formed 1927 from parts of Firenze and Lucca provinces

53 Lucca
Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pistoia province

54 Massa e Carrara
Formerly Apuania

55 Pisa
Area reduced by transfer of territory to Livorno province 1925

56 Livorno
Area increased by transfer of territory from Pisa province 1925

57 Grosetto
Including Maremma district

58 Siena

59 Arezzo

945 6 **Central Italy**

Including comprehensive works on former Papal States (States of the Church) territories united at various times under temporal power of Pope

For a specific region under Papal States see the region e g former Comtat Venaissin 944 92

62 Latium

Region

622 Frosinone

Formed 1926

623 Latina

Formerly Littoria

Including Pontine Marshes Pontine (Ponza) Islands

624 Rieti

Formed 1923 from part of Perugia province

625 Viterbo

63 Roma province

632 Rome

634 Vatican City

Independent papal state 1929–

65 Umbria

Region

651 Perugia

Area reduced to form provinces of Rieti (1923) and Terni (1927)

652 Terni

Formed 1927 from part of Perugia province

67 Marche

Region

671 Ancona

673 Macerata

675 Ascoli Piceno

677 Pesaro e Urbino

945 7 **Southern Italy**

Including former kingdom of Naples

71 Abruzzi e Molise

Region

711 Aquila

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

713 Chieti

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

715 Teramo

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

717 Pescara

Formed 1927 from parts of provinces of Aquila Chieti Teramo

719 Campobasso

Coextensive with Molise

72 Campania

Region

721 Avellino

723 Benevento

725 Caserta

Separate province until 1927, reconstituted 1945 mostly from Napoli province

73 Napoli

For former kingdom of Naples see 945 7

74 Salerno

75 Apulia (Puglia)

Region

751 Bari

753 Lecce

Area reduced to form provinces of Taranto (1923) and Brindisi (1927)

945 754 Brindisi

Formed 1927 from part of Lecce province

755 Taranto

Formerly Ionio

Formed 1923 from part of Lecce province

757 Foggia

77 Basilicata

Region

771 Potenza

Area reduced 1927 to form Matera province

772 Matera

Formed 1927 from part of Potenza province

78 Calabria

Region

781 Catanzaro

783 Reggio di Calabria

785 Cosenza

8 Sicily

Autonomous 1947–

Including provinces of Agrigento Caltanissetta Catania Enna Messina Palermo Ragusa Siracusa Trapani Lipari and Pantelleria Islands

85 Malta (Maltese Islands)

British crown colony 1800–

9 Sardinia

Autonomous 1947–

95 Corsica

Department of France

Occupied by Italian and German troops 1942–1945

946 **Spain**

For a specific region or administrative area of Spain, see the area, e g , Canary Islands 964 9

946 01–946 082 Period divisions

01 Early history to 711

Including invasions by Suevians, Vandals Visigoths, defeat by Moslems, 711

For an ancient tribe settling in Spain, see the tribe, e g , Visigoths 936 362

02 Moorish dynasties, 711–1479

Including conquest of Spanish March (Catalonia) by Charlemagne, development and consolidation of kingdoms of Asturias, Galicia, Leon, Castile, Navarre, Aragon

03 Union of Castile and Aragon, 1479–1516

Including reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I, expulsion of the last Moors, 1492

04 Early Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1598

Including reigns of Charles I, 1516–1556, of Philip II, 1556–1598

For Charles I as Charles V of Germany, see 943 031

05 Later Hapsburg rulers, 1598–1700

051 Philip III, 1598–1621

052 Philip IV, 1621–1665

For Thirty Years' War, see 940 24

053 Charles II, 1665–1700

054 Bourbon rulers, 1700–1808

055 Philip V, 1700–1746

Including War of Jenkins' Ear

For War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession, see 940 25

056 Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759

946 057 Charles III 1759–1788

058 Charles IV, 1788–1808

06 Peninsular War, 1808–1814

Napoleon's invasion of Spain

Including rule of Joseph Bonaparte

07 Bourbon restoration, 1814–1868

Including reigns of Ferdinand VII 1814–1833 of Isabella II 1833–1868

08 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1868–

Including revolution and second Bourbon restoration reign of Amadeo I 1871–1873 First Republic 1873–1874 reigns of Alfonso XII 1875–1885 of Alfonso XIII 1886–1931

For Spanish American War see 973 89

081 Second Republic, 1931–1939

Including Civil War 1936–1939

082 Francisco Franco, 1939–

---

946 1–946 88 Geographic divisions

1 Galicia

Region and former kingdom

11 La Coruna

13 Lugo

15 Orense

17 Pontevedra

19 Asturias

Region and former kingdom coextensive with province of Oviedo

.2 Leon

Region and former kingdom

.21 Leon province

.22 Palencia

Sometimes considered part of Old Castile

946.23 Valladolid

Sometimes considered part of Old Castile

.24 Zamora

.25 Salamanca

.26 Estremadura

Region formerly Vetonia, part of Roman province of Lusitania

.27 Badajoz

.28 Cáceres

.3 Castile

Region and former kingdom

For Valladolid, see 946.23 *Palencia* 946.22

.35 Old Castile

.351 Santander

.353 Burgos

For Trevino enclave, see 946.67

.354 Logroño

.355 Soria

.357 Segovia

.359 Avila

.4 New Castile

Including La Mancha

.41 Madrid

.43 Toledo

.45 Ciudad Real

.47 Cuenca

.49 Guadalajara

946.5 Navarre

Region and former kingdom of northern Spain and southwestern France, Lower Navarre ceded to France, 1589, and incorporated in Basses-Pyrenées in 1790, Spanish Navarre a Basque province

Including comprehensive works on Pyrenees

For Basses-Pyrénées, see 944 79, comprehensive works on Basque Provinces, 946 6

.55 Aragon

Region and former kingdom

.551 Teruel

553 Saragossa

.555 Huesca

.6 Basque Provinces (Vascongadas)

Including comprehensive works on territories inhabited by Basques

For Navarre, see 946 5, Basses Pyrénées, 944 79

61 Guipúzcoa

63 Vizcaya (Biscay)

For Orduña, see 946 69

.65 Alava

67 Treviño

Enclave of Burgos province in Alava

69 Orduña

Enclave of Vizcaya province between Alava and Burgos provinces

.7 *Catalonia*

Region

.71 Gerona

.72 Barcelona

.73 Tarragona

.74 Lérida

946 75 **Balearic Islands**

Archipelago and province of Spain

Including Majorca Minorca Ibiza Formentera

76 **Valencia**

Region and former kingdom

761 Castellón de la Plana

763 Valencia province

765 Alicante

77 **Murcia**

Region and former kingdom

771 Albacete

773 Murcia province

79 **Andorra**

Autonomous republic 8th century

8 **Andalusia**

81 Almeria

.82 Granada

83 Jaén

84 Córdoba

85 Málaga

.86 Seville

87 Huelva

88 Cadiz

Administers Ceuta *in Spanish North Africa*

For Ceuta see 964 2

89 **Gibraltar**

British crown colony 1704–

For engineering and construction of fortress of Gibraltar see 623 194 689

946 9 Portugal

Including comprehensive works on overseas provinces of Portugal

For a specific overseas province see the province e g Goa 954 799

---

946 901–946 904 Period divisions

901 Early history to 1143

Including comprehensive works on Roman province of Lusitania barbarian invasions Moslem conquest 711–719 Spanish conquest establishing County of Portugal recognition of independence at Peace of Zamora 1143

For an ancient tribe settling in Portugal see the tribe e g Visigoths 936 362 Estremadura region of Spain 946 26

902 Rise and fall of empire 1143–1640

Including expulsion of Moors consolidation of kingdom under House of Burgundy recognition of House of Avis 1385 rule of Spanish Hapsburg dynasty 1580–1640

903 Restoration of Portuguese monarchy, 1640–1910

Including House of Braganza and Coburg Braganza period of Peninsular War overthrow of monarchy 1910

For Peninsular War see 946 06

904 20th century, 1910–

Including Republic 1910–1926 presidency of General Oscar de Fragosa Carmona 1926–1951 Novo Estado 1933–

---

946 91–946 99 Geographic divisions

91 Minho

Formed 1936 from Braga and Viana do Castelo districts of former province of Entre Douro e Minho

915 Douro Litoral

Formed 1936 from part of former Entre Douro e Minho province and part of former Beira province

Including Pôrto district

92 Tras-os Montes e Alto Douro

Formed 1936 from former Trás-os Montes province and part of former Beira province

Including Bragança and Vila Real districts

946.93 **Beira Alta**

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province

Including major parts of Viseu and Guarda districts

.933 **Beira Baixa**

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province

Including Castelo Branco district

.935 **Beira Litoral**

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province and part of Estremadura province

Including major portions of Aveiro and Coimbra districts

.94 **Estremadura**

Surrendered territory 1936 to form Ribatejo and parts of Beira Litoral and Baixo Alentejo provinces

Including most of Lisboa, part of Leiria and Setubal districts

.945 **Ribatejo**

Formed 1936 from part of Estremadura province

Including Santarém district

.95 **Alto Alentejo**

Formed 1936 from part of former Alentejo province

Including Evora and major part of Portalegre districts

.955 **Baixo Alentejo**

Formed 1936 from part of former Alentejo province and part of Estremadura province

Including Beja district

.96 **Algarve**

Coextensive with Faro district

.98 **Funchal**

District, coextensive with Madeira and Pôrto Santo Islands

.99 **Azores**

Including Ponta Delgada, Angra do Heroismo, Horta districts

947 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

USSR and certain adjacent areas in Europe

Including comprehensive works on Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, on former Russian Empire

Class works on a specific part of European USSR with the part, e g, Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic 949 85, if preferred, class all specific parts of European USSR in 947

For comprehensive works on USSR in Asia, see 957, Soviet republics of central Asia, 958 4, Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic, 956 64, Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic, 949.85

---

947 01–947.085 Period divisions

.01 Origins to 862

Including early settlements by Slavs, Khazar state, penetration by Vikings (Varangians)

For a specific ancient tribe settling in Russia, see the tribe, e g, Slavs 936 7

.02 Kievan period, 862–1240

Including rule of Varangian princes, 862–1125, Mongol-Tatar invasions, 1223 to sack of Kiev, 1240

03 Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1480

Including reign of Alexander Nevsky establishing House of Rurik, rise of Muscovite state

04 Growth of nationalism, 1480–1689

Including reigns of Ivan III (the Great), 1462–1505, of Ivan IV (the Terrible), 1533–1584, Livonian War, 1557–1582, Time of Troubles, 1605–1613

05 Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725

Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721, establishment of Russian Empire

947 06 Growth of Empire, 1725–1796

Including reigns of Elizabeth, 1741–1762, of Catharine II (the Great), 1762–1796

Class partition of Poland [*formerly* 947 06] in 943 802

.07 Early 19th century, 1796–1855

Including reign of Alexander I, 1801–1825, invasion by Napoleon, 1812, reign of Nicholas I, 1825–1855, Crimean War, 1853–1856

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940 27

08 Later 19th century, 1855–1917

Including reigns of Alexander II, 1855–1881, of Alexander III, 1881–1894, of Nicholas II, 1894–1917, Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878, period of Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905, revolution of 1905

For Russo-Japanese War, see 952 031, *revolution of 1917,* 947 084 1

[*.083] Fall of Russian Empire, 1917–1939

Class revolution and period of Lenin in 947 084 1, period of Stalin in 947 084 2

084 20th century, 1917–

084 1 Revolution and civil war, 1917–1921, to death of Lenin, 1924 [*all formerly* *947 083]

Including provisional government of Kerensky, 1917, Bolshevik Revolution, foreign intervention, 1918–1920

084 2 Period of Stalin, 1924–1953

Including period 1924–1939 [*formerly* *947 083], period 1945–1953 [*formerly* *947 085]

085 Later 20th century, 1953–

Class period 1945–1953 [*formerly* *947 085] in 947 084 2

947.1–947 95 Geographic divisions

SUMMARY

947 1	Finland
2	White Sea region
.25	Karelia
3	West central region of RSFSR in Europe
4	Baltic Sea region
41	Estonia
43	Latvia
5	Lithuania
6	Western region of USSR in Europe
65	Belorussia
7	Black Sea region
71	Ukraine
8	Volga River region
87	Ural Mountains region
9	Caucasus region
91	Azerbaijan
95	Georgia

947 1 Finland [*formerly* *948 95]

Independent republic

Including Aland Islands

101 Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809

102 19th century 1809–1917

Period of autonomy under Russian rule

103 Independence 1917–

Including Russo-Finnish War 1939–1940 cession of Vyborg (Viipuri) and Pechengo (Petsamo) regions to USSR 1947

17 Finnish Lapland (Lapi)

Including comprehensive works on Lapland

For a specific part of Lapland see the part e g Soviet Lapland 947 2

947.2 **White Sea region**

Former heading Northern Great Russia

Including Dvina River, Lakes Onega and Ladoga, the following parts of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic former Northern Oblast, divided 1937, into Archangel and Vologda Oblasts, Murmansk Oblast with Kola Peninsula, Soviet Lapland

Class Novgorod Oblast [*formerly* 947 2] in 947 41

25 Karelia

Karelo Finnish Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940, reorganized 1956 as Karelian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic of RSFSR

Including Olonets

For Karelian Isthmus, see 947 45

3 **West central region of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Europe**

Former heading Southern Great Russia

Including comprehensive works on RSFSR, on RSFSR in Europe, on Great Russia

Class works on a specific part of European RSFSR, of Great Russia with the part, e g, Archangel Oblast 947.2, Kaliningrad Oblast 943 114, if preferred, class all specific parts of European RSFSR in subdivisions of 947

For RSFSR in Asia, see 957

31 Central industrial region

Including Moscow, Vladimir, Ivanovo, Yaroslavl, Kostroma, Ryazan, Tula Oblasts

35 Central black earth region

Including Orel, Kursk, Voronezh, Tambov Oblasts

.4 **Baltic Sea region**

Including Baltic States, former Baltic provinces

41 Estonia

Estonian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940, independent state, 1918–1940

43 Latvia

Latvian Soviet Socialist Republic formed 1940 independent state, 1918–1940

Including Courland

947 45 **Northwest region of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Europe**

Including ancient district of Ingermanland (Ingria) Novgorod [*formerly* †947 2] Leningrad Pskov Oblasts Karelian Isthmus

For Kaliningrad Oblast see 943 114 *Karelia* 947 25

5 **Lithuania**

Former heading Russian Poland

Lithuanian Soviet Socialist Republic formed 1940 independent state 1918–1940

Including early history union with Poland 1386–1795

Class works on a specific part of Lithuania with the part e g Memel Territory 943 112 if preferred class all specific parts of Lithuania in 947 5

For comprehensive works on Poland see 943 8

6 **Western region of USSR in Europe**

Including Bryansk Kaluga Smolensk Kalinin Velikiye Luki Oblasts of RSFSR

For Kaliningrad Oblast see 943 114

65 **Belorussia (White Russia)**

Belorussian Soviet Socialist Republic formed 1922

Including Pripet Marshes

7 **Black Sea region**

Including Sea of Azov

Class Bessarabia [*formerly* †947 7] in 949 85

For Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic see 949 85

71 **Ukraine (Little Russia)**

Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic formed 1922 independent state 1917 1922 Moldavian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic separated 1940 Transcarpathian Oblast of RSFSR (Ruthenia Carpatho-Ukraine) added 1945

Including Donets Basin (Donbas) and River Dniester and Dnieper Rivers

Class works on a specific part of Ukraine with the part e g East Galicia 943 745 if preferred class all specific parts of Ukraine in 947 71

76 **Crimea**

Peninsula and Oblast of RSFSR

947.77 Lower Don River region

Including Rostov Oblast of RSFSR

.8 **Volga River region**

Former heading East Russia

.81 Upper Volga region

Including Gorki and Kirov Oblasts, Mari and Udmurt Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics, of RSFSR

.83 Middle Volga region

Including the following parts of RSFSR Ulyanovsk, Penza, Kuibyshev Oblasts, Chuvash, Mordvinian, Tatar Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.85 Lower Volga region

Including Saratov, Stalingrad, Astrakhan Oblasts of RSFSR

.87 **Ural Mountains region**

Including Ural Mountains in Europe, the following parts of RSFSR Sverdlovsk, Molotov, Chelyabinsk, Chkalov Oblasts, Bashkir and Komi Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.9 **Caucasus region**

Including Caspian Sea, the following parts of RSFSR Grozny Oblast, Krasnodar and Stavropol territories, Kabardian, North Ossetian, Dagestan Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.91 Azerbaijan

Azerbaijan Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Including Nakhichevan Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, separated from Azerbaijan proper by Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic

For Iranian Azerbaijan, see 955.3–955.4

[*.92] Armenia (Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic)

Class in 956.64

.95 Georgia

Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

948 Scandinavia

Including North Sea, comprehensive works on northern Europe

For a specific part of northern Europe, see the part, e g, Finland 947 1, Baltic Sea, 947 4

---

948 01–948 08 Period divisions

01 Early history to 800

02 Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387

For Norse settlements in a specific country, see the country, e g, in Russia 947 02

03 Union of Kalmar, 1397–1523

Including personal union under Margaret from 1387

For period of union in Norway, see 948 102, in Sweden, 948 501, in Denmark, 948 902

04 Period of Reformation, 1523–1648

Including rise of Sweden, period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

For Thirty Years' War, see 940 24

05 Period of conflict, 1648–1792

Including period of Great Northern War, 1700–1720

For Great Northern War, see 947 05

06 Napoleonic era, 1792–1814

Including cession of Norway to Sweden by Denmark (Treaty of Kiel 1814)

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940 27

07 19th century, 1814–1905

Including granting of independence to Norway, 1905 (Karlstad Agreement)

08 20th century, 1905–

Including occupation of Denmark and Norway by Germans during World War II

948 1 Norway

Class parts of Norway [formerly *948 1] in 948 2 948 45

For an overseas possession of Norway see the subject e g Spitsbergen 998 1

---

948 101–948 104 Period divisions

101 Early history to 1387

Including unification under early kings

102 Union with Denmark 1387–1814

Including period of Kalmar Union 1397 1523

For Union of Kalmar see 948 03

103 Union with Sweden 1814–1905

104 20th century 1905–

Including reigns of Haakon VII 1905–1957 of Olaf V 1957–

---

948 2–948 45 Geographic divisions

.2 Eastern Norway [*formerly* *948 1]

Including Aust Agder Telemark Vest Agder Akershus Buskerud Hedmark Opland Oslo Ostfold Vestfold counties *Hamar [formerly †948 3]*

3 Western Norway [*formerly* *948 1]

Including Bergen Hordaland More og Romsdal, Rogaland Sogn og Fjordane counties

Class Hamar [*formerly* †948 3] in 948 2

4 *Central Norway (Trondelag) [formerly *948 1]*

Including Nord Trondelag Sor Trondelag counties

45 Northern Norway [*formerly* *948 1]

Including Nordland Troms Finnmark counties Lofoten and Vesteralen Islands Norwegian Lapland

For comprehensive works on Lapland see 947 17

948.5 Sweden

Class parts of Sweden [*formerly* *948 5] in 948 6–948 8

948.501–948 505 Period divisions

.501 Early history to 1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

For Union of Kalmar, see 948 03

.502 Vasa dynasty, 1523–1654

Including reigns of Gustavus I (Gustavus Vasa), 1523–1560, of Gustavus II (Gustavus Adolphus), 1611–1632, of Christina, 1632–1654

For Livonian War, see 947 04

.503 Decline of power, 1654–1818

Including reign of Charles XII, 1697–1718, period of Great Northern War, Holstein Gottorp dynasty, 1571–1818

For Great Northern War, see 947 05

.504 19th century, 1818–1905

Including reign of Charles XIV John (Bernadotte line), 1818–1844

505 20th century, 1905–

Including reigns of Gustavus V (Gustaf), 1907–1950, of Gustavus VI (Gustaf Adolf), 1950–

948 6–948 8 Geographic divisions

6 Southern Sweden (Gotaland) [*formerly* *948 5]

Including Alvsborg, Blekinge, Goteborg och Bohus, Gotland, Halland, Jonkoping, Kalmar, Kristianstad, Kronoberg, Malmohus, Ostergotland, Skaraborg counties, Oland and Gotland Islands, Gota Canal Gothenburg (Goteborg)

7 Central Sweden (Svealand) [*formerly* *948 5]

Including Gavleborg Kopparberg, Orebro, Sodermanland, Stockholm, Uppsala, Varmland, Vastmanland counties, Stockholm city

.8 Northern Sweden (Norrland) [*formerly* *948 5]

Including Jamtland Vasternorrland, Vasterbotten, Norrbotten counties, Swedish Lapland

For comprehensive works on Lapland, see 947.17

948.9 Denmark

Including Jutland Peninsula, Baltic islands of Zealand, Fyn, Falster, Lolland, Langeland, Bornholm

For Faeroe Islands, see 949 15, Greenland, 998.2, Baltic Sea, 947 4, North Sea, 948

948 901–948 905 Period divisions

901 Early history to 1387

Including Viking rulers, reign of Canute the Great, 995–1035, Valdemar (Waldemar) kings

For Canute the Great as king of England, see 942 01

902 Union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523, union of Schleswig-Holstein duchies and Denmark

For Union of Kalmar, see 948 03, Schleswig Holstein, 943 51

903 Union with Norway, 1523–1814

Including reign of Christian III, 1535–1559

For Great Northern War, see 947 05

904 19th century, 1814–1906

Including reign of Christian IX, 1863–1906, loss of duchies of Schleswig Holstein, 1864

For Schleswig-Holstein question, Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 1864–1866, see 943 07

905 20th century, 1906–

Including reign of Christian X, 1912–1947, return of North Slesvig (Schleswig) to Denmark, 1920, reign of Frederick IX 1947–

91 Copenhagen

[* 95] Finland

Class in 947 1

949 Other areas of Europe

SUMMARY

949.1	Iceland
.15	Faeroe Islands
.2	Netherlands (Holland)
.3	Belgium
.35	Luxembourg
.4	Switzerland
.5	Greece
.6	Balkan States
.61	Turkey in Europe
.65	Albania
.7	Yugoslavia
.77	Bulgaria
.8	Rumania
.85	Soviet Moldavia
.9	Islands of the Aegean Sea
.98	Crete

.1 Iceland

.101 Early history to 1262

Including submission to Norway

.102 Medieval period, 1262–1550

Including transfer to Denmark, 1380

.103 Early modern period, 1550–1848

.104 Modern period, 1848–

Including limited autonomy, 1874–1918, independence under Treaty of Union with Denmark, 1918–1943, republic, 1944–

.15 Faeroe Islands

Colonized by Norsemen, transferred to Denmark, 1380, autonomous, 1948–

.2 Netherlands (Holland)

Constitutional monarchy

Including comprehensive works on Union of the Netherlands

For an overseas territory of Union of the Netherlands, see the region, e.g., Netherlands Antilles 972.986

.201 Early history to 1477

Including rule of Franks, incorporation into Holy Roman Empire, Burgundian rule

949 202 Hapsburg rule, 1477–1568

Including Austrian, Spanish rule

.203 Struggle for independence, 1568–1648

Including Union of Utrecht, 1579, uniting northern provinces under William I of Orange (the Silent), recognition of independence, 1648, with addition of North Brabant and part of Limburg

.204 Dutch Republic, 1648–1795

Including reign of William III, 1672–1702, Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667, Great War against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678, Coalition War, 1690–1697 (England and Netherlands against France), war with England, 1780

For William III as king of England, see 942 068, War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession, 940 25

.205 Napoleonic era, 1795–1830

Including Batavian Republic, 1795–1806, Kingdom of Holland under Louis Napoleon, 1806–1810, annexation by France, 1810–1814, union of former United Provinces (Netherlands), former Austrian Netherlands (Belgium) and Luxembourg under William I, 1815–1830

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940 27, Belgium, 949 3, Luxembourg, 949 35

.206 Kingdom of the Netherlands, 1830–

Including reign of William III, 1849–1890

.207 20th century, 1901–

Including reigns of Wilhelmina, 1890–1948, of Juliana, 1948–

For Indonesian War, see 991 03

.3 Belgium

Constitutional monarchy, 1830–

Including comprehensive works on Meuse River, on the Ardennes

301 Early history to 1477

Including Roman and Frankish rule, incorporation into Holy Roman Empire, development of national state under Philip of Burgundy, 1396–1467

949 302 Foreign rule, 1477–1830

Including rule by Austria, Spain, France, Dutch rule as part of Kingdom of the Netherlands, 1815–1830

.303 Kingdom of Belgium, 1830–

Including reigns of Leopold I, 1831–1865, of Leopold II, 1865–1908

.304 20th century, 1909–

Including reigns of Albert I, 1909–1934, of Leopold III 1934–1951, of Baudouin, 1951–

.35 Luxembourg

Grand duchy

For Luxembourg province of Belgium, see 949 3

.4 Switzerland

Federal republic

---

949 401–949 407 Period divisions

401 Early history to 1291

Including rule of Frankish kings of Swabia and Burgundy, incorporation into Holy Roman Empire from 1032, formation of League of the Three Forest Cantons, 1291

402 Struggle for independence, 1291–1499

Including wars with Austria, war with Burgundy, 1474–1477, growth of Swiss Confederation, partial recognition of independence by Treaty of Basel, 1499

403 Period of the Reformation, 1499–1648

Including independence, 1648

404 Period of internal strife, 1648–1789

Including Peasant War, 1653, Villmergen Wars, 1656 and 1712

405 Napoleonic period, 1789–1815

Including Helvetic Republic, 1789–1803, restoration of Swiss Confederation, 1803, with official name of Switzerland

.406 19th century, 1815–1900

407 20th century, 1900–

949 43–949 47 Geographic divisions

949 43 Jura region

Including Jura Mountains cantons of Solothurn Vaud Neuchâtel Basel Land Basel Stadt

45 Mittelland

Including Swiss Plateau cantons of Geneva Fribourg Bern Lucerne Aargau Zurich Schaffhausen Thurgau

47 Alps

Including cantons of Valais Obwalden Nidwalden Schwyz Zug Saint Gall Appenzell Ausser Rhoden Appenzell Inner Rhoden Glarus Uri Grisons Ticino

5 **Greece**

Including Aegean Sea Ionian Sea comprehensive works on Byzantine Empire

For ancient Greece see 938 *Aegean Islands* 949 9 *Crete* 949 98

949 501–949 507 Period divisions

501 Eastern Roman Empire (Byzantine) to 717

Including reign of Constantine I 323–337 permanent separation of East and West, 395 reign of Justinian 527–565 Heraclian dynasty 610–695 wars against Avars and Persians

For Western Roman Empire see 937 09

502 Period of Byzantine prosperity 717–1057

Including reign of Leo III 717–741 Isaurian dynasty Macedonian dynasty 867–1081 final break with Rome 1054

503 Dissolution of Byzantine Empire 1057–1204

Including Comnenus dynasty 1081–1185

504 Latin and Greek states, 1204–1453

Including Latin dynasty 1204–1261 restoration of Byzantine Empire under Greek rule of Michael Paleologus 1259–1282 siege of Constantinople by Turks 1453

949 505 Turkish domination, 1453–1821

For Ottoman Empire, see 949 6

.506 Independence, 1821–

.506 1 Monarchy, 1821–1924

Including reigns of Otto I, 1832–1862, of George I 1863–1913, Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897, incorporation of Crete, 1913, period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913 addition of parts of Thrace, Macedonia, Epirus, abdication of King Constantine, 1917

For Balkan Wars, see 949 6

.507 20th century, 1924–

Including Hellenic Republic, 1924–1935, restoration of George II, 1935–1947, reign of Paul, 1947– , cession of Dodecanese by Italy, 1947

---

949 51–949 57 Geographic divisions

51 Central Greece

Including nome and island of Euobea, nomes of Aetolia, Acarnania, Attica, Boeotia, Eurytania, Phocis, Phthietis

For Cyclades, Northern Sporades, see 949 9, Kythera island, 949 52

512 Athens

52 Peloponnesus

Including nomes of Achaea Arcadia, Argolis, Corinthia, Elis, Laconia, Messenia Kythera island

53 Epirus

Including nomes of Arta, Ioannina, Preveza, Thesprotia comprehensive works on Epirus

For Albanian Epirus, see 949 65

949.54 **Thessaly**

Including nomes of Karditsa, Larissa, Magnesia, Trikkala

For Northern Sporades, see 949 9

.55 **Ionian Islands**

Including nomes and islands of Cephalonia, Corfu, Leukas, Zante, island of Ithaca

.56 **Macedonia**

Including Mount Athos, nomes of Chalcidice, Drama, Hematheia, Kastoria, Kavalla, Kilkis, Kozane, Pella, Pieria, Phlorina, Salonika, Serrai, comprehensive works on Macedonia

For Yugoslav Macedonia, see 949 76, Bulgarian Macedonia, 949 77, Thasos island, 949 9

.57 **Thrace**

Including nomes of Hevros, Rhodope, Xanthe, comprehensive works on Thrace

For Bulgarian Thrace, see 949 77, Turkish Thrace (Turkey in Europe), 949 61, Samothrace island, 949 9

.6 **Balkan States**

Including Balkan Peninsula, Danube River, Balkan Wars, 1912–1913, comprehensive works on Ottoman Empire, 1288–1918 [formerly *956 1]

For Greece, see 949 5, a specific part of Ottoman Empire, the part, e g, Anatolia 956 1

61 **Turkey in Europe**

Including Turkish Thrace, Istanbul, Bosporus, Sea of Marmara, Dardanelles

If preferred, class Turkey in Europe in 956 1

For Turkey in Asia, comprehensive works on Turkey, see 956 1, comprehensive works on Thrace, 949 57, Imbros and Tenedos islands, 949 9

.65 **Albania**

Republic, 1944–

Including Byzantine, Serbian, Ottoman rule, independence, 1912–1939, Italian protectorate, 1939–1944

949 7 Yugoslavia

Former kingdom, federal republic, 1945–

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Yugoslavia with the part, e g, Slovenia 943 67, if preferred, class all specific parts of Yugoslavia in 949 7

---

949 701–949 702 Period divisions

701 Early history to 1918

Including Turkish rule, 1459–1804, emergence of Serbia as principal power, period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

For Balkan Wars, see 949 6

.702 20th century, 1918–

Including establishment of Kingdom of Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes, 1918, change of name to Yugoslavia, 1929, addition of most of Istrian Peninsula, 1947

For Istria, see 943 682

---

949 71–949 76 Geographic divisions

For a specific part of Yugoslavia not provided for here, see the part, e g Croatia 943 94

71 Serbia

Independent kingdom including Bosnia, Macedonia, Epirus, Albania became part of Ottoman Empire, 1459, independent, 1878–1918 joined with Croatia Slovenia, Montenegro to form Kingdom of Serbs, Croats and Slovenes, 1918, constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

Including autonomous territory of Vojvodina, autonomous oblast of Kosovo-Metohija

For Yugoslav Banat (area of Vojvodina), see 943 915 3, Epirus 949 53, Albania, 949 65, Bosnia, 943 955, comprehensive works on Macedonia, 949 56

75 Montenegro

Joined with Serbia Croatia, Slovenia to form Kingdom of Serbs Croats, and Slovenes, 1918, constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

949 76 Macedonian People's Republic (Vardar Macedonia)

Constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

For comprehensive works on Macedonia, see 949 56

77 Bulgaria

Republic, 1946–

Including northern part of Thrace, part of Macedonia, South Dobruja

For comprehensive works on Thrace, see 949 57, *on Macedonia,* 949 56, *North Dobruja,* 949 83

770 1 Early history to 1878

Including first Bulgarian kingdom, 643–1018, Byzantine rule, 1018–1187, second Bulgarian kingdom, 1187–1395, Ottoman rule, 1395–1878

770 2 Autonomy and independence, 1878–1946

Including annexation of South Bulgaria (Rumelia), 1885, full independence under Ferdinand of Saxe-Coburg Gotha, 1908–1918, period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

For Balkan Wars, see 949 6

770 3 Later 20th century, 1946–

Including Bulgarian People's Republic, 1946–

8 Rumania

Formed, 1861, by union of Moldavia and Walachia, republic, 1947–

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Rumania with the part, e g , Transylvania 943 92, if preferred, class all specific parts of Rumania in 949 8

---

949 801–949 803 Period divisions

801 Foreign domination to 1861

802 Monarchy, 1861–1947

Including united principalities of Moldavia and Walachia, 1861–1881, kingdom of Greater Rumania under Carol I, 1881–1914, period of Balkan Wars 1912–1913, reigns of Carol II, 1930–1940 of Michael I

For Balkan Wars, see 949 6

803 Later 20th century, 1947–

Including Rumanian People's Republic, 1947–

949.81–949.83 Geographic divisions

For a specific part of Rumania not provided for here see the part e g, Rumanian Banat 943.915 1

949.81 Moldavia

Province of Rumania

For Bessarabia (Russian Moldavia) see 949.85

82 Walachia

Province of Rumania

83 Dobruja

Province of Rumania

85 Soviet Moldavia

Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic formed 1940

Including comprehensive works on Bessarabia [*formerly* †947.7]

For Ukrainian parts of Bessarabia see 947.71, Rumanian Moldavia 949.81

9 **Islands of the Aegean Sea**

Including Thasos Samothrace Lemnos Lesbos Chios Samos islands Cyclades Northern Sporades Turkish islands of Imbros (Imroz) and Tenedos (Bozcaada)

For Euboea see 949.51

96 Dodecanese (Southern Sporades)

Including Karpathos [*formerly* †949.97] Rhodes

Under Turkish rule 1522–1912 occupied by Italians 1911–1912 awarded to Italy 1920 transferred to Greece 1947

[†97] Karpathos

Class in 949.96

98 **Crete**

Autonomous state 1898–1908 union with Greece 1908–

950 Asia

Including comprehensive works on the Orient on the Far East on Eurasia

For Europe see 940 *Far East islands* 991–992 *comprehensive works on ancient Orient* 931

---

950 1–950 42 Period divisions

1 Early history to 1162

2 Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162–1480

Including reigns of Genghis Khan 1162–1227 of Kublai Khan 1216–1294 of Timur (Tamerlane) ca 1336–1405

3 European exploration and conquest, 1480–1905

Including growth of nationalism

4 20th century, 1905–

41 Early 20th century, 1905–1945

42 Later 20th century 1945–

951 China

Class history of China to 420 A D [*formerly* *951] in 931

---

951 01–951 05 Period divisions

01 Early history, 420–960

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep ancient history of China with later history) history to 420 A D

02 Sung to Ming dynasties 960–1644

Including conquests of Genghis Khan

025 Mongols 1253–1368

Including conquests by Kublai Khan 1253–1294

026 Ming dynasty 1368–1644

03 Ching (Manchu) dynasty 1644–1912

Including annexation of Formosa 1683 conquest of Tibet 1706–1720 Opium War 1840–1842 Boxer Rebellion 1900–1901

For Sino Japanese War 1894–1895 see 952 031

951.04 Early 20th century, 1912–1949

Class later 20th century [formerly 951.04] in 951.05

041 Early Republic, 1912–1927

042 Nationalist government, 1927–1949

Including Japanese aggression, occupation of Manchuria (Manchukuo) 1931–1945, independence of Outer Mongolia 1945, removal of government to Formosa 1949

For Japanese in Manchuria, see 951.8; Nationalist government in Formosa, 951.249

05 Later 20th century, 1949– [formerly 951.04]

Including People's Republic 1949– , comprehensive works on China under People's Republic and Nationalist government

For Nationalist government in Formosa, see 951.249

951.1–951.885 Geographic divisions

Administrative units (in curves) under People's Republic correspond roughly to regional divisions

SUMMARY

951.1	Eastern China
.15	Northern China
.2	South central China
.3	Southwestern China
.4	Northwestern China
.5	Tibet
.6	Sinkiang
.7	Mongolia
.8	Manchuria

1 Eastern China

Area (Hwatung) includes provinces North and South Anhwei, Chekiang, Fukien, North and South Kiangsu, Shantung

Including Hwang Ho (Yellow River)

For Anhwei, see 951.225; Chekiang, 951.242; Fukien, 951.245

13 Kiangsu

Including Shanghai, Nanking

951.14 **Shantung**

Including Weihaiwei, Kiaochow, Tsingtao, Tsinan

.15 **Northern China**

Area (Hwapei) includes provinces Hopeh, Shansi, Pingyuan, Suiyuan, Chahar

Including Hopeh, Tientsin, Peking

For Suiyuan, see 951 76, *Chahar,* 951 77

.17 **Shansi**

Including Tatung, which became part of Chahar, 1949

For Chahar, see 951 77

.18 **Honan**

Part of Chungnan area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Chungnan area, see 951 2

.185 **Pingyuan**

Part of Honan until 1949

[†.19] **Central China**

Class in 951 2

.2 **South central China**

Area (Chungnan) includes provinces Honan, Hunan, Hupeh, Kiangsi Kwangsi Kwangtung (including Hainan)

Including central China [*formerly* †951 19], Yangtze River

For Honan, see 951 18

21 **Hupeh**

Including Hankow

215 **Hunan**

Including Changsha

22 **Kiangsi**

Including Nanchang

.225 **Anhwei**

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

Including Anking

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area, see 951 1

951.24 East China Sea provinces

.242 Chekiang

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

Including Hangchow

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area, see 951 1

.245 Fukien

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area see 951 1

.249 Taiwan (Formosa) [*formerly also* †952 9]

Ceded to Japan, 1895, returned to China, 1945, seat of Nationalist government, 1949–

Including Quemoy, Pescadores

.25 Hong Kong

British crown colony

Including Kowloon

.26 Macao

Portuguese colony

.27 Kwangtung

Including South China Sea region, Hainan, South Sea islands and reefs, Swatow, Canton

.28 Kwangsi

.3 Southwestern China

Area (Sinan) includes provinces Kweichow, Yunnan, Sikang Szechwan

.34 Kweichow

Including Kweiyang

.35 Yunnan

Including Kunming

.37 Sikang

.372 Eastern Sikang

.374 Western Sikang

Including Tibetan Autonomous District

For Tibet, see 951 5

.38 Szechwan

Including Chungking Chengtu

951.4 **Northwestern China**

Area (Sipei) includes provinces Shensi, Kansu, Tsinghai, Ningsia, Sinkiang

Including Great Wall of China

For Sinkiang, see 951.6, *Ningsia*, 951 75

.43 Shensi

Including Sian

.45 Kansu

Including Lanchow

.47 Tsinghai

.5 **Tibet**

Autonomous region of central Asia, became a national autonomous province of China, 1951

Including Lhasa

For Tibetan Autonomous District, see 951.374

.6 **Sinkiang**

Part of Sipei area of People's Republic

Including Kunlun Mountains, Tien Shan, Taklamakan Desert

For comprehensive works on Sipei area, see 951 4

.7 **Mongolia**

Including Altai Mountains

71 Tuva

Incorporated in Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic, 1944, as Tuva Autonomous Oblast

73 Outer Mongolia

Including Mongolian People's Republic, Gobi Desert

74 Inner Mongolia

75 Ningsia

Part of Sipei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Sipei area, see 951 4

.76 Suiyuan

Part of Hwapei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Hwapei area, see 951 15

951 77 Chahar

Part of Hwapei area of People's Republic

For Tatung, see 951 17, comprehensive works on Hwapei area, 951 15

.775 *Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region*

Part of Tungpei area of People's Republic

Including Khingan [*formerly* †951 84]

For comprehensive works on Tungpei area, see 951 8

.78 Jehol

Part of Tungpei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Tungpei area, see 951 8

.8 Manchuria

Area (Tungpei) includes provinces Liaotung, Liaosi, Heilungkiang Kirin, Sungkiang, Jehol, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

For Jehol, see 951 78, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region, 951 775

.82 Liaoning

Including Antung province, Mukden

.822 Liaotung

.822 3 Kwantung (Port Arthur)

Including Dairen, Changsha Islands

.823 Liaosi

.84 Heilungkiang

Class Khingan [*formerly* †951 84] in 951 775

.88 Kirin

Including Changchun, Yungki

.885 Sungkiang

Including Harbin

.9 Korea (Choson)

Including Korean peninsula and offshore islands

951 901–951 904 3 Period divisions

.901 Early history to 1392

.902 Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

951 904 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including restoration of independence, 1945 foreign occupation, 1945–1948, separation into Republic of Korea and Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 1948

904 2 Korean War, 1950–1953

.904 3 Postwar history, 1953–

Comprehensive works on postwar history of Republic of Korea and Democratic People's Republic of Korea

---

951.93–951.95 Geographic divisions

.93 **Northern Korea**

Including Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 1948–

95 **Southern Korea**

Including Republic of Korea, 1948– , Seoul

952 Japan

---

952 01–952 04 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1186

02 Feudal period, 1186–1868

Including reign of the shoguns, Mongol invasions, 1274 and 1281, European contacts invasions of Korea, 1592 and 1596

025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1600–1868

Including visits of Commodore Perry, 1853–1854

03 Re-establishment of imperial power, 1868–1945

031 Meiji period, 1868–1912

Including adoption of constitutional form of government, 1889, Sino-Japanese War 1894–1895, acquisition of Pescadores and Formosa, 1895 Anglo-Japanese Alliance, 1902, Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905

For Formosa and Pescadores, see 951 249

032 Taishō period, 1912–1926

Including reign of Emperor Yoshihito, mandate of German-owned islands in Pacific, military expeditions into Siberia, 1918–1922

952 033 Early Showa period, 1926–1945

Including reign of Emperor Hirohito 1926– revival of militarism renewal of expansion on continent intervention in Shantung 1927–1929 occupation of Manchuria 1931–1945

Class Allied occupation after World War II [*formerly* †*952 033*] in *952 04*

04 Later Showa period 1945–

Including period of foreign occupation [*formerly* †*952 033*] and reconstruction 1945–1952

---

952 1–952 4 Geographic divisions

.1 Honshu

11 Northern Honshu

Including Aomori Iwate Miyagi Akita, Yamagata Fukushima

12 Central Honshu

13 East central Honshu

Including Ibaraki Tochigi Gumma Saitama Chiba Kanagawa Yokohama

135 Tokyo prefecture and city

14 West central Honshu

15 Northwest central Honshu

Including Niigata Toyama Ishikawa Fukui

16 Southwest central Honshu

Including Yamanashi Nagano Gifu Shizuoka Aichi Nagoya

166 Fujiyama

17 Southwestern Honshu

18 Southern Honshu

Including Mie Shiga Nara Wakayama Osaka

19 Western Honshu

Including Kyoto Hyogo Tottori Shimane Okayama Hiroshima Yamaguchi Kobe

.2 Kyushu

Including Fukuoka Saga Nagasaki Kumamoto Oita Miyazaki Kagoshima

952.3 Shikoku

Including Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi

.4 Hokkaido

Former Yezo, renamed 1868

Including Sapporo, offshore islands

For Kurile Islands, see 952 7

.6 Southern Sakhalin

Under joint Russo-Japanese control to 1875, incorporated in Siberia, 1875–1905, occupied by Japan (renamed Karafuto), 1905–1945, occupied by Soviet troops, 1945, incorporated in Soviet Union, 1947

For comprehensive works on Sakhalin, see 957 7

.7 Kurile Islands

Incorporated in Japan and renamed Chishima, 1875–1945, occupied by Soviet troops, 1945, incorporated in Soviet Union, 1947

.8 Southern islands

.81 Ryukyu Islands (Luchu)

Invaded by Chinese in 7th century, by Japanese in 17th century, incorporated in Japan, 1879, placed under United States military government, 1945, under native civil government, 1951

Including Okinawa

.85 Bonin Islands

Discovered by Spanish, 1543, claimed by Japan, 1875, annext, 1880, after Japanese surrender occupied by United States forces, 1945

[†.9] Taiwan (Formosa)

Class in 951 249

953 Arabian Peninsula

Including Rub al Khali, Dahana, comprehensive works on Arab states

For ancient history of Arabia, see 939 47, League of Arab States, 341 185 3

.1 Sinai Peninsula

Frontier province of Egypt

For Egypt, see 962, ancient history of Sinai, 939 48

953.2 **Hejaz**

Viceroyalty of Saudi Arabia, 1926–

Under Egyptian and Turkish domination until 1916, war with Ibn Saud of Nejd, 1924–1925, resulted in union of Hejaz and Nejd as Saudi Arabia with Hejaz administered as separate kingdom

Including Mecca

For comprehensive works on Saudi Arabia, see 953 8

.3 **Yemen and Aden**

.32 **Yemen**

Independent kingdom, ca 900– , affiliated with United Arab Republic to form United Arab States, 1958–

Including occupation by Turks, 1538–1630, Egyptian control, 1819–1840, occupation by Turks, 1849–1918

For comprehensive works on United Arab States, see 962

.34 **Aden Colony**

British crown colony, 1937–

.35 **Aden Protectorate**

Group of independent Arab tribal districts in protective treaty relations with Great Britain, under government of India until 1927, administered by Aden Colony, 1927–

4 **Hadhramaut and Mahri**

.5 **Oman**

.6 **Hasa (Al Ahsa)**

Ancient Bahrein, occupied by Turkish forces, 1871, attacht to Nejd, 1913–1914

For Nejd, see 953 8

.8 **Saudi Arabia**

Independent kingdom, 1932–

Former Nejd and dependencies conquered by Ibn Saud, 1902–1926, joined with Hejaz to form Saudi Arabia, 1932

For Hejaz, see 953.2

.83 **Qatar**

Independent sheikdom and British protectorate, under suzerainty of Bahrein prior to 1868

953.85 **Bahrein**

Archipelago and independent sheikdom, British protectorate since 1820

.87 **Kuwait**

Independent state, under British protection since 1899

.9 Syrian Desert

Comprehensive works

954 India

Including autonomous tribal areas

Class ancient history of India [*formerly* *954] in 934

954 01–954 04 Period divisions

01 Early history to Moslem conquests, ca 650

To be used only by libraries wishing to keep ancient history of India with later history

02 Moslem period, ca 650–1774

03 British rule, 1774–1947 [*formerly* *954 08]

Including rule of East India Company to 1858, Afghan Wars, 1839–1878, struggle for political freedom, 1919–1947, independence and partition into India and Pakistan, 1947

For Pakistan see 954 7

04 Republic of India, 1947– [*formerly* *954 09]

Member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1950–

[*08] British rule, 1774–1947

Class in 954 03

[*09] Republic of India, 1947–

Class in 954 04

954 1–954 9 Geographic divisions

SUMMARY

954 1 Northeastern region

Including Ganges River

12 Bihar

Administered by East India Company as part of Bengal presidency 1764–1912 included in province of Bihar and Orissa 1912–1937 autonomous province 1937 constituent state of Republic of India 1950–

13 Orissa

Conquered by British 1803 subdivision of Bengal until 1912 included in province of Bihar and Orissa 1912 became separate autonomous province 1936 constituent state of Republic of India 1950–

14 Bengal

142 West Bengal

Constituent state of Republic of India 1950–

Including Calcutta

145 East Bengal

Province of Pakistan 1947–

Including Brahmaputra River

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954 7 if preferred use 954 7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

954.15 Tripura

Former princely state in Bengal States, incorporated into India as chief commissioner's state, 1949

.16 Assam

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.17 Manipur

Former Assam state incorporated into India as chief commissioner's state, 1949

.19 Bhutan

Indian protectorate, 1910–

.2 Northern region

Including Himalayas

.23 North-West Frontier Province

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954 7, if preferred, use 954 7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

.25 Uttar Pradesh

Former United Provinces of Agra and Oudh constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.26 Nepal

Military oligarchy, complete independence recognized by Great Britain, 1923, democratic constitution, 1952–

.27 Sikkim

British sovereignty recognized in 1890 became independent state, 1947, protectorate of India, 1949–

.3 Central region

For Orissa, see 954 13, Hyderabad, 954 9

33 Madhya Pradesh

Former Central Provinces and Berar, constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

34 Bhopal

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1949–

36 Vindhya Pradesh

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

954.4 West central region

.42 Rajasthan

Formed by merger of several small princely states of former Rajputana States, 1948, constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Thar or Indian Desert

.43 Ajmer

Former Ajmer Merwara province, chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.45 Madhya Bharat

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.46 Saurashtra

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.47 Cutch

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

.5 Punjab

.52 Himachal Pradesh

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, formed 1948, by merger of former Punjab princely states and former Punjab Hill States

.53 Bilaspur

Formerly one of Punjab Hill States, chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

.54 Patiala and East Punjab States Union (PEPSU)

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1948–

55 Punjab of India (East Punjab)

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.56 Delhi

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.58 Punjab of Pakistan (West Punjab)

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Including Lahore

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954 7, if preferred, use 954 7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

954 59 Bahawalpur

Princely state, acceded to Pakistan, 1947

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954 7, if preferred, use 954 7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

.6 Jammu and Kashmir

Including Karakoram Mountains

.7 Pakistan

Separate dominion of Commonwealth of Nations after partition of India, 1947

Comprehensive works

Including Indus River

Class works on a specific part of Pakistan with the part, e g , East Bengal 954 145, if preferred, class all specific parts of Pakistan in 954 7

.71 Karachi

.73 Sind

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Including Khairpur

.79 Bombay

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Baroda

.799 Goa

Portuguese India

Including Angediva Island

.8 Southern India

Including French areas

.82 Madras

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Laccadive Islands

.83 Travancore-Cochin

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.85 Coorg

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.87 Mysore

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

954 88 Andaman and Nicobar Islands [*formerly* *992 5]

Chief commissioner s state of Republic of India 1950–

89 **Ceylon**

Dominion of Commonwealth of Nations 1948–

Including Maldive Islands

9 **Hyderabad**

Constituent state of Republic of India 1950–

955 Iran (Persia)

For ancient Persia see 935

---

955 02–955 05 Period divisions

02 Medieval history, 642–1499

03 Rise and fall of Persian dynasties 1499–1794

Including wars with Russia and Turkey invasion of India 1731

04 19th century 1794–1906

Including wars with Russia Turkey Afghanistan end of absol te monarcl y 1906

05 20th century 1906–

Including coup d etat by Riza Khan 1921 election of new shah (Pal leve dynasty) 1925

---

955 1–955 95 Geographic divisions

1 **Gilan (First Province)**

.2 **Teheran (Second Province)**

3 **East Azerbaijan (Third Province)**

4 **West Azerbaijan (Fourth Province)**

Incl ι ling part of Kurdistan Plateau

.5 **Kermanshah (Fifth Province)**

Including part of Kurdistan Plateau

6 **Khuzistan (Sixth Province)**

7 **Fars (Seventh Province)**

.8 **Kerman (Eighth Province)**

Iranian Baluchistan became part of Kerman 1938

For Iranian Baluchistan see 958 82

955.9 Khurasan (Ninth Province)

.95 Isfahan (Tenth Province)

956 Near East (Middle East)

Including comprehensive works on countries of the Arabian Peninsula, Turkey, Israel, Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Egypt, Libya, Iraq, Moslem Empire, Levant, Eastern question

For ancient history of Asia Minor and Eastern Mediterranean, see 939 2–939 6, *Syrian Desert,* 953 9, *a specific country, the country, e.g., Egypt* 962

.1 Turkey in Asia

Including comprehensive works on Turkey

Class Turkey in Europe, including Ottoman Empire [*formerly* *956 1] in 949 6, if preferred, class Turkey in Europe in 956 1

For Turco Italian War, 1911–1912, see 961 203

---

956 101–956 103 Period divisions

.101 Period of Ottoman Empire to 1918

.102 Early 20th century, 1918–1945

103 Later 20th century, 1945–

---

956 17–956 67 Geographic divisions

.17 Bursa (Khodavendikyar)

.2 Western Turkey (Aegean area)

Including Izmir (Smyrna), Aydin (Aidin) Afyon

For Imbros and Tenedos islands, see 949 9

3 North central Turkey (Black Sea area)

Including Eskisehir, Ankara (Angora), Kastamonu (Kastamuni), Samsun (Amisus) Amasya

.4 South Turkey (Mediterranean area)

Including Konya (Konieh), Antalya (Adalya), Tarsus, Adana (Seyhan), Iskenderun (Alexandretta), Gaziantep, Antakya (Antioch), Toros (Taurus) Mountains

45 Cyprus

Island under Turkish rule, 1571–1878, British colony, 1878–

5 East central Turkey

Including Trabzon (Trebizond), Sivas, Urfa (Edessa)

956.6 Armenia and Kurdistan

For ancient history of Armenia, see 939.55

62 Turkish Armenia

Including Kars (Chorsa), Erzurum (Erzerum), Van

64 Soviet Armenia

Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic [*formerly* *947.92], formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

67 Kurdistan

Including Elazig (Mamuret-el Aziz), Diyarbakir (Diarbekr), Bitlis

.7 Iraq

Including comprehensive works on Arab Federation (formed 1958)

For ancient history of Mesopotamia, see 935, a specific part of Arab Federation, the part, e g , Jordan 956.95

.8 Aleppo

Province of Syria

For Syria, see 956.91

.9 Eastern Mediterranean

91 Syria

Independent republic, 1941–1958, part of United Arab Republic, 1958–

For Aleppo, see 956.8, comprehensive works on United Arab Republic, 962

92 Lebanon

Independent republic 1941–

93 Jews

Comprehensive works on history of Jews since their dispersion

For ancient Judea, see 933, Israel, 956.94 history of Jews in a specific country other than Palestine (Israel), 325.256 93

94 Israel

Independent republic, 1948–

Including Palestine Zionism

For Pre Judaic Palestine, see 939.45, ancient Judea, 933

956.95 Jordan (Trans Jordan, Transjordania)

Kingdom, 1946- , part of Arab Federation, 1958-

For comprehensive works on Arab Federation, see 956 7

957 Siberia

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Asia

Including comprehensive works on the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in Asia

For a specific Soviet republic in Asia, see the republic, e.g., Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic 958 7

.3 Western Siberia

Including Altai Territory; Kurgan, Tyumen, Omsk, Novosibirsk, Tomsk, Kemerovo Oblasts

For Ural Mountains, see 947 87

.5 Eastern Siberia

Including Krasnoyarsk Territory, Irkutsk and Chita Oblasts, Buryat Mongol and Yakut Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics, Sayan Mountains

For Tuva, see 951 71

.7 Soviet Far East

Including Amur Oblast, Maritime and Khabarovsk Territories, northern Sakhalin, Amur River, comprehensive works on Sakhalin Oblast

For southern Sakhalin see 952 6 Kurile Islands, 952 7

958 Central Asia

For Middle East, see 956, ancient history of Caspian Sea region, 939 6

.1 Afghanistan

Independent kingdom, 1926-

Including northeastern region, Kabul, Hindu Kush

2 Southern region

Including Kandahar

3 Northwestern region

Including Herat

958.4 West Turkestan (Soviet Central Asia)

Including comprehensive works on Turkestan

For Chinese (Eastern) Turkestan, see 951 6, *Caspian Sea,* 947 9

.43 Kirghizia

Kirghiz Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1924

Including Tien Shan in Soviet Union

.45 Kazakhstan

First constituted, 1920, as the Kirghiz (after 1925, Kazak) Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, became, 1936, Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic

.5 Turkmenia

Former heading Kiva (Khiva)

Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1924, including parts of Khiva and Bukhara, remainder of Khiva incorporated in Uzbekistan

For Bukhara, see 958 6, *Uzbekistan,* 958.7

6 Tadzhikistan

Former heading Bokhara (Bukhara)

Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1929, parts of Bukhara incorporated, 1924, in Turkmenia and Uzbekistan

Including Pamirs

For Turkmenia, see 958 5, *Uzbekistan,* 958 7

7 Uzbekistan

Former heading Ferghana (Fergana) or Khokan

Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1924, including parts of Khiva and Bukhara

For Khiva, see 958 5, *Bukhara,* 958 6

.8 Baluchistan

.82 Western Baluchistan

Became part of Persia, 1895 Incorporated into Iranian province of Kerman, 1938

For Kerman see 955 8

958.84 Eastern Baluchistan

Became part of India, 1895, incorporated into Pakistan, 1947–1948

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954 7, if preferred, use 954 7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

959 Southeast Asia

Including comprehensive works on Burma, Thailand, Laos, Malaya, Singapore, Cambodia, Vietnam, Indonesia, the Philippines

For SEATO, see 341 185 9, Indonesia, 991, Philippines, 991 4

.1 Burma

.2 Upper Burma

.3 Thailand (*Siam*)

Independent constitutional kingdom, 1932–

.4 Laos

Constitutional monarchy, 1947–

.5 Malaya

Became independent member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1957

Including comprehensive works on Malay Peninsula and Malay Archipelago

For Malay Archipelago, see 991

52 Singapore

British crown colony, 1946–

.6 Cambodia

Constitutional monarchy, 1947– , joined French Union, 1950

.7 Vietnam

Former heading French Cochin China

Republic formed, 1945–1950, by union of Tonkin (North Vietnam), Annam (Central Vietnam), and Cochin China (South Vietnam)

Including comprehensive works on French Indochina

8 Annam

.9 Tonkin

960 Africa

For history to 640, see 939 7

.2 Early history, 640–1900

Including discovery, partition

.3 20th century

961 North Africa

Including comprehensive works on the Barbary States Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Tripolitania

For history of North Africa to 640, see 939 7

.02 Early history, 640–1830

Including period of piracy, 1516–1830

For Tripolitan War with the United States, see 973 47

03 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1 Tunisia

For ancient Carthage, see 939 73

102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516

103 Period of Ottoman rule, 1516–1881

104 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1881–

.2 Libya

For ancient Libya and Gaetulia, see 939 77

---

961 202–961 204 Period divisions

.202 Periods of Arab and Ottoman rule, 644–1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952

Including Turco-Italian War, 1911–1912, amalgamation of Tripolitania, Cyrenaica, Fezzan into a colony of Italian Colonial Empire in Africa, 1939

.204 Independence, 1952–

961 22–961 9 Geographic divisions

961 22 Tripolitania

For ancient Tripolis, see 939 74

.3 Fezzan

4 Cyrenaica

For ancient Cyrenaica, see 939 75

9 Libyan Desert

Comprehensive works

For Western Desert, Qattara Depression, see 962 2

962 Egypt

Including Nile River and Valley, comprehensive works on United Arab Republic, on United Arab States (both formed 1958)

For ancient Egypt, see 932, Egyptology, 913 32, Sinai Peninsula, 953 1, a specific part of United Arab Republic, of United Arab States, the part, e g., Syria 956.91

962 02–962 05 Period divisions

02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517

03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517–1882

04 British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922

05 Independence, 1922–

962 1–962 3 Geographic divisions

1 Lower Egypt

Nile Delta region to about 30°N

15 Isthmus of Suez

16 Cairo

2 Middle Egypt

Between Cairo and Asyut 30°N to about 27°N

Including Western Desert, Qattara Depression

.3 Upper Egypt

South of Asyut from 27°N

Including Arabian Desert

962.4 **Sudan**

Including comprehensive works on Anglo-Egyptian and French Sudan

For French Sudan see 966.2

962.402–962.404 Period divisions

402 From Arab invasion, 7th century, to 1820

403 Period of Egyptian and British rule, 1820–1956

404 Independence, 1956–

962.41–962.95 Geographic divisions

41 Northern Province

Including former provinces of Halfa, Berber, Nubia, Nubian Desert

5 Dongola

6 Central provinces

62 Khartoum

64 Blue Nile Province

Including Sennar [*formerly* 1962.9], former White Nile and El Fung Provinces

7 Darfur

Including former kingdom of Darfur

8 Kordofan

Including former province of Nuba Mountains

9 Eastern and southern provinces

Class Sennar [*formerly* 1962.9] in 962.64

92 Kassala

93 Upper Nile Province

Including Sobat and Pibor Rivers

94 Bahr el Ghazal

Amalgamated in 1935 with Mongalla to form Equatoria and separated in 1948

95 Equatoria

Including former province of Mongalla, Lado Enclave

963 **Ethiopia (Abyssinia)**

Including Ogaden, comprehensive works on Italian East Africa

For history to 640, see 939 78, *Italian Somaliland,* 967 73

---

963 02–963 06 Period divisions

02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1543

03 Period of conquest, 1543–1855

Including Portuguese, British French, Italian penetration

04 Later 19th century, 1855–1896

Including Ethiopian War, 1895–1896

05 Early 20th century, 1896–1941

056 Italo Ethiopian War, 1935–1936

057 Italian rule, 1936–1941

06 Independence, 1941–

5 Eritrea

Class Italian Somaliland [*formerly* *963 5] in 967 73

964 **Morocco**

For ancient Mauretania, see 939 71

---

964 02–964 04 Period divisions

02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830

03 19th century, 1830–1900

Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860

04 20th century

---

964 2–964 9 Geographic divisions

2 Spanish Morocco

Including Tetuan, Ceuta, Melilla, Rif Mountains

22 Tangier

International zone

964.3 French Morocco

.31 Northern region

Region west of Atlas Mountains and south to Wâdy Oum er Rbia

Including Casablanca, Rabat, Fez, Oujda

.4 Central region

Including Atlas Mountains

For Atlas Mountains in Algeria, see 965.1

.5 Southeastern region

.6 Southwestern region

Region south of Wâdy Oum er Rbia

Including Marrakesh, Agadir

.8 Spanish West Africa

Including Ifni, Spanish Sahara, Southern Protectorate of Morocco, Saguia el Hamra, Rio de Oro

.9 Canary Islands

Including provinces of Tenerife, Las Palmas

965 Algeria

Including comprehensive works on French North Africa: Algeria, French Morocco, Tunisia

For Numidia, see 939.72; French Morocco, 964.3; Tunisia, 961.1

965.02–965.04 Period divisions

.02 Periods of Arab, Berber, Ottoman rule, 647–1830

.03 Later 19th century

.04 20th century

965.1–965.7 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern Algeria

Including Atlas Mountains in Algeria

.11 Oran

.3 Algiers

965 5 Constantine

7 Southern Territories

Including Ain Sefra, Ghardaia, Touggourt (Tugurt), Saharan Oases

966 West Africa

.1 French West Africa

Comprehensive works on French overseas territories in West Africa Senegal, French Guinea, Ivory Coast, Dahomey, French Sudan, Mauritania, Niger, Upper Volta

For a specific territory of French West Africa, see the territory, e g, Dahomey 966 8

11 Sahara Desert

Including comprehensive works on the Sahara

For Spanish Sahara, see 964 8, Libyan Desert, 961 9, Arabian Desert, 962 3, Nubian Desert, 962 41

12 Mauritania

2 French Sudan

Including formation of colony from territories of Senegambia and Niger, 1904, change of name from Upper Senegal–Niger to French Sudan, 1920, addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

For Anglo Egyptian Sudan, comprehensive works on Sudan, see 962 4

21 Niger River

25 Upper Volta

Including establishment of colony, 1919, partition of territory among Ivory Coast, Niger, French Sudan, 1932 reconstitution as territory, 1947

26 Niger Territory

Including southwestern and northern regions [*formerly* †966 27–†966 28], addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

[†27–†.28] Southwestern and northern regions

Class in 966 26

3 Senegal

Including former Senegambia

32 Dakar

966.4 **Sierra Leone**

Comprehensive works on British colony establisht, 1808, and protectorate, 1896

Including Sherbro Island

.5 **Guinea**

Including Upper Guinea, comprehensive works on Upper and Lower Guinea

For Lower Guinea, see 967.1, a specific country in Upper Guinea, the country, e g, Sierra Leone 966.4

.51 Gambia (English Guinea)

British colony establisht, 1888, protectorate, 1902

.52 French Guinea

Including regions of French Guinea [*formerly* †966.53–†966.56]

For comprehensive works on French West Africa, see 966.1

[†.53–†.56] Regions of French Guinea

Class in 966.52

.57 Portuguese Guinea

.579 Bijagos (Bissagos) Islands

.58 Cape Verde Islands

.6 **Liberia**

Including Grain Coast

.68 **Ivory Coast**

Including addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

For comprehensive works on French West Africa, see 966.1

.7 **Ghana (Gold Coast)**

Became an independent member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1957 including former Gold Coast Colony proper, Ashanti, Northern Territories protectorate, trust territory of British Togoland

For Togoland see 966.81

.74 Ashanti

Came under Gold Coast protection 1901 incorporated in Ghana 1957

Including provinces of Ashanti [*formerly* †966.75–†966.76]

[†.75–†.76] Provinces of Ashanti

Class in 966.74

966 77 Northern Terntones

Made Bntish protectorate 1901 admmistered by Gold Coast Colony incorporated in Ghana 1957

Including provinces of the Terntones [*formerly* †966 78–†966 79]

[† 78–† 79] Provinces of Northern Terntones

Class in 966 77

8 **Dahomey**

Including Slave Coast

For comprehensive works on French West Afnca see 966 1

81 **Togoland**

Former German protectorate placed under Bntish and French trusteeship 1922 trust terntory of Bntish Togoland incorporated in Ghana 1957

9 **Nigena**

Including Bntish Cameroons

For comprehensive works on Cameroons see 967 11

99 **Islands of the Gulf of Guinea**

991 Fernando Po

Including Santa Isabel capital of Spanish Guinea

For comprehensive works on Spanish Guinea see 967 18

993 Pnncipe (Pnnce Island)

994 Sao Tomé (Saint Thomas)

996 Annobón

For comprehensive works on Spanish Guinea see 967 18

967 Central (Equatorial) Africa

Including comprehensive works on Negro Africa, on Negro history

For history of Negroes in a specific country other than Africa, see 325 267

.1 Lower Guinea

For comprehensive works on Guinea, see 966 5, a specific country in Lower Guinea, the country, e g , Gabon 967 21

.11 Cameroons

Comprehensive works on British and French Cameroons

Including regions of Cameroons [*formerly* †967 12–†967 17]

For British Cameroons, see 966 9

[† 12–† 17] Regions of Cameroons

Class in 967 11

18 Spanish Guinea

Including continental Spanish Guinea (Rio Muni), comprehensive works on Rio Muni, Fernando Po, Annobón

For Fernando Po, Santa Isabel, see 966 991, Annobón, 966 996

.2 French Equatorial Africa

Comprehensive works on Gabon, Middle Congo, Ubangi Shari, Chad

For a specific country in French Equatorial Africa, see the country, e g , Ubangi Shari 967 41, Middle Congo, 967 24

.21 Gabon

Including regions of Gabon [*formerly* †967 22–†967 23]

[† 22–†.23] Regions of Gabon

Class in 967 21

.24 Middle Congo

Originally French Congo a name later applied to all French Equatorial Africa became known as Middle Congo 1903

Including regions of Middle Congo [*formerly* †967.25–†967.28]

[†.25–†.28] Regions of Middle Congo

Class in 967.24

967.3 **Angola (Portuguese West Africa)**

For Principe Sao Tomé see 966.993–966.994

31 Cabinda (Kabinda)

Autonomous district and exclave of Angola

4 **Northern French Equatorial Africa**

For comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa see 967.2

41 Ubangi Shari

Became part of French Equatorial Africa as Ubangi Shari Chad 1910 lost Chad colony 1920

Including eastern region Banda [*formerly* †967.42]

[†.42] Eastern region Banda

Class in 967.41

43 Chad

Formerly part of Ubangi Shari Chad made separate colony, 1920

Including regions of Chad [*formerly* †967.44–†967.49]

[†.44–†.49] Regions of Chad

Class in 967.43

5 **Belgian Congo**

Formerly Congo Free State

Including Congo River Ubangi River Lake Edward

57 Ruanda Urundi

Formerly part of German East Africa 1899–1917

6 **British East Africa**

Comprehensive works on Kenya Tanganyika Uganda Zanzibar

For a specific British possession in East Africa see the possession e g Zanzibar 967.81

61 Uganda

Including native kingdom of Buganda Lake Albert

Class Lake Rudolf [*formerly* †967.618] in 967.62

62 Kenya

Including provinces of Kenya [*formerly* †967.63–†967.67 †967.69] Lake Rudolf [*formerly* †967.618]

[†.63–†.67] Provinces of Kenya

Class in 967.62

967.68 **Jubaland**

Incorporated in Italian Somaliland, 1925

For comprehensive works on Italian Somaliland, see 967 73

[†.69] **Northern Frontier District**

Class in 967 62

.7 **Somaliland**

71 French Somaliland

.72 British Somaliland (Somaliland Protectorate)

Including Socotra Island

.73 Italian Somaliland (Somalia) [*formerly* *963 5]

Including regions of Italian Somaliland [*formerly* †967 74–†967 77]

For Jubaland, see 967 68

[† 74–† 77] Regions of Italian Somaliland

Class in 967 73

.8 **Southern British East Africa**

81 Zanzibar

Including Pemba and Mafia Islands and adjacent small islands

82 Tanganyika

Including regions of Tanganyika [*formerly* †967 83–†967 89]
Kilimanjaro Lake Tanganyika, Lake Nyasa, Lake Victoria

[† 83–† 89] Regions of Tanganyika

Class in 967 82

.9 **Mozambique (Portuguese East Africa)**

Including Zambezi River Delagoa Bay

968 **South Africa**

Including Union of South Africa

---

968 02–968 05 Period divisions

02 Early history to 1488

03 Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814

968.04 19th century, 1814–1909

For South African (Boer) War, see 968.2

.05 20th century, 1909–

Including formation of the Union of South Africa

968.1–968.97 Geographic divisions

.1 Bechuanaland

Including comprehensive works on Bechuanaland Protectorate and British Bechuanaland, comprehensive works on High Commission Territories Bechuanaland, Basutoland, Swaziland

For British Bechuanaland, see 968.7, Swaziland, 968.34, Basutoland, 968.6

.2 Transvaal

Including South African (Boer) War, 1899–1902, the Veld

.22 Gold field area

Including Witwatersrand, Johannesburg

.3 Zululand

Annext to Natal, 1897, annext Amatongaland, 1898

For Natal, see 968.4

.34 Swaziland

Including regions of Swaziland [*formerly* †968.35–1968.36]

For comprehensive works on High Commission Territories, see 968.1

[†.35–†.36] Regions of Swaziland

Class in 968.34

.4 Natal

Annext Zululand, 1897

.5 Orange Free State

.6 Basutoland

Including Kaffraria, annext to Cape of Good Hope, 1865, Transkeian Territories, annext to Cape of Good Hope, 1879

For Cape of Good Hope, see 968.7, comprehensive works on High Commission Territories, 968.1

968.7 **Cape of Good Hope**

Including Mossel Bay, British Bechuanaland

For Walvis Bay exclave, see 968 8, comprehensive works on Bechuanaland, 968 1

.8 **South-West Africa**

Including Walvis Bay, exclave of Cape of Good Hope

.9 **Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland**

.91 Southern Rhodesia

.92 Matabeleland

Including Victoria Falls

.93 Mashonaland

Including Zimbabwe

.94 Northern Rhodesia

Including northwestern and northeastern Rhodesia [*formerly †968 95–†968 96*]

[†.95–†.96] Northwestern and northeastern Rhodesia

Class in 968 94

.97 Nyasaland

969 **South Indian Ocean islands**

.1 **Madagascar**

.4 **Islands north of Madagascar**

Including Comoro, Aldabra, Cosmoledo, Glorioso, Providence, Farquhar, Agalega Islands

.5 **Amirantes**

.6 **Seychelles**

.7 **Chagos Islands**

.8 **Mascarene Islands**

Including Rodrigues, Cocos Islands, Cargados Carajos Shoals

.81 Reunion

.82 Mauritius

.9 **Isolated islands**

Including Amsterdam Island, Saint Paul Island, Kerguelen Islands

970 North America

For history of Central America, see 972 8, *of South America,* 980, *discovery and exploration,* 973 1

.1 Indians of North America

Including Indians of Central America, comprehensive works on Indians of the Americas

Class lives of Indians in 970 2, Indian tribes in 970 3, Indians in specific places in 970 4, government relations with Indians in 970 5, specific subjects in relation to Indians in 970 6 [*all formerly* *970 1]

For Indians of South America, see 980 1, *a specific ancient Indian civilization, the subject, e g, Aztec civilization* 972 014, *prehistoric archeology,* 571, *anthropology,* 572

.2 Lives of Indians [*formerly* *970 1]

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collections

If preferred, class in 920–928, e g, biography of Jim Thorpe 927 96

---

970 3–970 6 Special topics

lass
on

Government relations 970 5
Specific subjects 970 6
Specific tribes 970 3
Indians in specific places 970 4

.3 Specific tribes [*formerly* *970 1]

Arrange alphabetically by tribe

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture, see 972 015, *on Aztec culture,* 972 014

970 4 Indians in specific places [*formerly* *970 1]

Divide like 971–979, e g, Indians in Wyoming 970 487

For Aztecs and Mayans in Mexico, see 972 014–972 015

.5 Government relations with Indians [*formerly* *970 1]

Including government policy, reservations, commerce

If preferred, class with the specific subject, e g, oil leases on Indian lands 333 8

For a specific Indian war, see the period of history, e g, French and Indian War 973 26

.6 Specific subjects [*formerly* *970 1]

Divide like 000–999, e g, modern Indian pottery 970 673 83, prehistoric Indian pottery 970 657 15

If preferre
738 3, if d
under spec

For Indian education, see 371 975, Indian religion, 299 7, Indian music, 781 71, Indian legends, 398 2, pre-Columbian American architecture, 722 91

971 Canada

971 01–971 064 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1763

Including Canada under French regime

011 Exploration and early settlement, 1497–1632

Including explorations of Cabot, 1497, of Cartier, 1534, of Champlain, 1603–1635, establishment of Hudson's Bay Company, 1670, early conflicts between French and English

.016 French and English expansion, 1632–1689

Including period of government by Company of New France, 1627–1663, royal province, 1663, exploration of the West, conflicts with Indians

971 018 Struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763

Including period of King William's War (War of the League of Augsburg), 1689–1697, of Queen Anne's War (War of the Spanish Succession), 1702–1713, of King George's War (War of the Austrian Succession), 1744–1748, of French and Indian War (Seven Years' War), 1755–1763

For King William's War, Queen Anne's War in United States history, see 973 25, King George's War, French and Indian War in United States history, 973 26 comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg, 944 033, on War of the Spanish Succession, on War of the Austrian Succession, on Seven Years War, 940 25

02 Early British rule, 1763–1791

Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764 Quebec Act, 1774, separation of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791

024 United Empire Loyalists

For American Revolution, see 973 3

03 Period of the separate colonies, 1791–1841

034 Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814

For comprehensive works on War of 1812, see 973 52

038 Rebellion, 1837–1838

039 Union of Upper and Lower Canada, 1841

04 Growth of responsible government, 1841–1867

048 Fenian invasions, 1866–1871

049 Confederation under British North America Act, 1867

05 Dominion of Canada during period 1867–1914

051 Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870

054 Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885

06 20th century, 1914–

061 Period of World War I, 1914–1921

062 Period between World Wars, 1921–1935

063 Mid-20th century, 1935–1957

064 Later 20th century, 1957–

971.1–971.9 Geographic divisions

Libraries which prefer alphabetic to systematic arrangement of local history under each province or territory may add to the number for the province or territory 09 for regions geographic features counties (where counties exist) and 093 for cities towns villages e g York County Ontario 971 309 Y6 Lake Nipissing Ontario 971 309 N7 Brantford Ontario 971 309 3 B8

SUMMARY

971 1	British Columbia
.2	Canadian Northwest
21	Yukon Territory
22	Northwest Territories
.23	Alberta
24	Saskatchewan
.26	Keewatin District
.27	Manitoba
28	New Quebec District
.29	Franklin District
3	Ontario
4	Quebec
.5	New Brunswick
6	Nova Scotia
7	Prince Edward Island
8	Newfoundland
88	Saint Pierre and Miquelon
9	Labrador Territory

971 1 British Columbia

Including Rocky Mountains in Canada

11 Northern region

Area north of 55°N

Including Peace River District in British Columbia

12 Central interior region

Area between 55°N and 51°N and east of Coast Mountains

Including interior plateau region Bulkley Mountains Fraser River and Valley Cariboo Mountains

971 13 Coastal region

Area south of 55°N to international boundary, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Coast Range and Cascades region

131 Queen Charlotte Islands

Including Hecate Strait, Queen Charlotte Sound

.132 Northwest coastal region

Area between 55°N and 51°N, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Prince Rupert, Skena River Ocean Falls, Dean Channel

133 Lower coastal mainland

Area south of 51°N to international boundary, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Vancouver, Port Moody, Port Coquitlam, New Westminster, Mission City, Chilliwack, lower Fraser Valley

.134 Vancouver Island

Including Victoria, Howe Sound, Queen Charlotte Strait, Georgia Strait, Juan de Fuca Strait

.14 Southern interior region

Area south of 51°N to international boundary, and east of Coast Mountains

141 Valleys of lower Thompson, Nicola, Similkameen Rivers

Including Kamloops

142 Okanagan Valley

Including Okanagan Lake, Kelowna, Vernon, Penticton

143 Selkirk Mountains region

144 Area between Monashee and Selkirk Mountains

Including Kootenay, Slocan Upper and Lower Arrow Lakes

145 Kootenay Upper Columbia Rivers Valley

Including Rocky Mountain trench region, comprehensive works on Columbia River in British Columbia

971.2 Canadian Northwest

Including former territory of Hudson's Bay Company, Prairie Provinces, Beaufort Sea

.21 Yukon Territory

Including Klondike River, Yukon River in Canada, Dawson

.22 Northwest Territories

Acquired by Canada, 1870, Keewatin District annext, 1905, Franklin District created, 1895, Ungava District ceded to Quebec, 1912

Including Canadian Arctic

For Keewatin District, see 971 26, former Ungava District, 971 28, Franklin District, 971 29

.221 Mackenzie District

Including Mackenzie River, Great Bear and Great Slave Lakes

.23 Alberta

.231 Northwestern region

Area north of 55°N, and west of 114°W

Including Lesser Slave Lake, Peace River, Grande Prairie, comprehensive works on Peace River District

For Peace River District in British Columbia, see 971 11

.232 Northeastern region

Area north of 55°N, and east of 114°W

Including Athabaska River, Thickwood Hills, Lake Claire, Wood Buffalo National Park

.233 Central region

Area between 55°N and 51°N

Including North and South Saskatchewan and Red Deer Rivers Edmonton, Banff Calgary, Drumheller, Lacombe, Buffalo, Jasper, Banff National Parks

.234 Southern region

Area south of 51°N to international boundary

Including Waterton Lakes National Park, Blairmore, Coleman, Macleod Lethbridge, Medicine Hat

971 24 Saskatchewan

241 Northern region (Forest region)

Area north of 55°N

Including Lake Athabaska

242 Central region (Park lands region)

Area between 55°N and 51°N

Including Battleford Biggar Prince Albert Saskatoon Last Mountain and Quill Lakes comprehensive works on Saskatchewan River

243 Southwestern region

Area south of 51°N and west of 106°W

Including Maple Creek Shaunavon Swift Current comprehensive works on Prairie region in Saskatchewan

244 Southeastern region

Area south of 51°N and east of 106°W

Including Regina Fort Qu Appelle Indian Head Melville Moose Jaw Weyburn

26 Keewatin District

Incorporated in Northwest Territories 1905

Including Southampton Coats Mansel Ottawa Belcher Akimiski Charlton Islands Hudson Bay

27 Manitoba

271 Northern region

Area north of 55°N

Including Hudson Bay Lowland region Churchill and Nelson Rivers Churchill Port Nelson

.272 Lake region

Area between 55°N and 50°30 N

Including Lakes Winnipeg Winnipegosis Manitoba, Dauphin Saint Martin Flin Flon The Pas Riding Mountain National Park Laurentian Plateau region

273 Southwestern region

Area south of 50°30 N and west of 98°W

Including Brandon Portage la Prairie Minnedosa Morden Virden, Assiniboine River comprehensive works on Prairie region in Manitoba

971.274 Southeastern region

Area south of 50°30′N, and east of 98°W

Including Winnipeg, Saint Boniface, Transcona, Red River of the North in Manitoba, comprehensive works on Lake Agassiz region

.28 New Quebec District

Formerly Ungava District, incorporated in Quebec, 1912 (part of Saguenay County)

Including comprehensive works on Ungava Peninsula

.29 Franklin District

Incorporated in Northwest Territories, 1895

Including Viscount Melville Sound, Banks, Melville, Victoria, Prince of Wales, Baffin, Ellesmere, Bathurst, Cornwallis, Devon, Bylot, Parry, Sverdrup Islands

.3 Ontario

Including former Upper Canada, comprehensive works on Great Lakes in Canada

Class comprehensive works on Lake Superior in 977 49, on Lake Huron in 977 4, on Lake Erie in 977 12, on Lake Ontario in 974 79 [*all formerly* *971 3]

For comprehensive works on Great Lakes, see 977

.31 Northern region

Including Lake Superior in Ontario, Hudson Bay Coast region

For comprehensive works on Lake Superior, see 977 49

.311 Kenora District

Including former Patricia District, Lake of the Woods in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake of the Woods, see 977 681

.311 7 Rainy River District

Including Rainy Lake in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Rainy River and Rainy Lake, see 977 679

312 Thunder Bay District

Including Fort William, Port Arthur, Slate and Saint Ignace Islands, Lake Nipigon

971 313 Algoma District

Including Michipicoten Island North Channel, Sault Sainte Marie

313 3 Sudbury District

313 5 Manitoulin District

Including Manitoulin, Cockburn Barrie Clapperton, Fitzwilliam, Birch Islands

314 Cochrane District

314 4 Timiskaming District

314 7 Nipissing District

Including Algonquin Provincial Park, Lake Nipissing

315 Georgian Bay region

Including Georgian Bay Islands National Park

For Manitoulin District, see 971 313 5

315 1 Parry Sound District

316 Muskoka District

Including Rosseau Lake

317 Simcoe County

318 Grey County

Including Owen Sound

32 Western region (Lake Huron counties)

Including Lake Huron in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Huron, see 977 4

321 Bruce County

322 Huron County

323 Perth County

325 Middlesex County

326 London

327 Lambton County

Including Saint Clair River in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Saint Clair River, see 977 441

971 33 Southwestern region

Including Lake Erie in Ontario, Niagara Escarpment

For comprehensive works on Lake Erie, see 977 12

331 Essex County

Including Lake Saint Clair, Detroit River in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Saint Clair, see 977 43, on Detroit River 977 433

332 Windsor

333 Kent County

334 Elgin County

335 Saint Thomas

336 Norfolk County

337 Haldimand County

338 Welland County

339 Niagara Falls

Comprehensive works

For Niagara Falls in New York State, see 974 799

34 West central region

Including Laurentian Plateau in Ontario

341 Dufferin County

342 Wellington County

343 Guelph

344 Waterloo County

345 Kitchener

Formerly Berlin

346 Oxford County

347 Brant County

348 Brantford

35 Southern region

Including Lake Ontario in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Ontario, see 974 79

351 Lincoln County

352 Wentworth County

971 353 Halton County

353 5 Peel County

354 York County

354 1 Toronto

355 Ontario County

356 Durham County

357 Northumberland County

Including Rice Lake

358 Hastings County

358 7 Prince Edward County

359 Lennox and Addington County

36 Central region

361 Haliburton County

364 Victoria County

367 Peterborough County

368 Peterborough

37 Southeastern region (Saint Lawrence River counties)

Including Thousand Islands in Ontario

For Saint Lawrence River see 971 4 comprehensive works on Thousand Islands 974 758

371 Frontenac County

372 Kingston

373 Leeds County

Including Rideau Lake and Canal

374 Grenville County

375 Dundas County

376 Stormont County

377 Glengarry County

38 Northeastern region (Ottawa Valley counties)

381 Renfrew County

382 Lanark County

971 383 Carleton County

384 Ottawa

385 Russell County

386 Prescott County

4 Quebec

Including former New France former Lower Canada Saint Lawrence River and Seaway, comprehensive works on Laurentian Plateau

41 Northern region

For New Quebec District, see 971 28

411 Mistassini Territory

412 Abitibi Territory

413 Abitibi County

414 Lake Saint John County

Including Lake Saint John East and Lake Saint John West Counties

416 Chicoutimi County

Including Saguenay River

417 Saguenay County

Comprehensive works

Including Anticosti Island

For New Quebec District see 971.28

419 Ashuanipi Territory

Ceded to Labrador in 1927

42 Western region (Ottawa Valley counties)

422 Hull County

Including former Ottawa County

422 1 Gatineau County

Formerly Wright County

Including Lake Baskatong Lake Poisson Blanc

422 2 Hull County

422 5 Labelle County

971 422 7 Papineau County

423 Argenteuil County

424 Terrebonne County

425 Two Mountains County

426 Vaudreuil County

Including Ile Perrot

426 5 Soulanges County

427 Montreal and Jesus Islands County

427 1 Laval County (Jesus Island)

428 Montreal County (Montreal Island)

Including Hochelaga County

428 1 Greater Montreal

Including Verdun Outremont West Mount, Mount Royal

428 5 Jacques Cartier County

43 Southwestern region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River and west of Richelieu River

Including Richelieu River, comprehensive works on Saint Lawrence Lowlands region

431 Huntingdon County

432 Beauharnois County

433 Châteauguay County

434 Laprairie County

435 Napierville County

436 Vercheres County

437 Chambly County

438 Saint Johns County

971 44 North central region

Area north of Saint Lawrence River from Montreal to Saguenay River

Including Montagne Tremblante Provincial Park Laurentides Provincial Park

441 Montcalm County

441 6 L'Assomption County

442 Joliette County

443 Berthier County

444 Maskinongé County

445 Saint Maurice County

446 Champlain County

446 6 Portneuf County

447 Quebec County

447 1 Quebec

448 Montmorency, no 1 County

448 7 Montmorency, no 2 County

Including Isle of Orleans

449 Charlevoix County

Including Charlevoix East and Charlevoix West Counties

45 South central region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River and east of Richelieu River to Quebec

451 Richelieu County

452 Saint Hyacinthe County

452 5 Bagot County

453 Rouville County

454 Yamaska County

455 Nicolet County

971 456 Drummond County

456 5 Arthabaska County

457 Wolfe County

457 5 Megantic County

458 Lotbinière County

459 Levis County

46 Southern region

Southern border area east of Richelieu River

Including Acadian region

461 Iberville County

462 Missisquoi County

463 Shefford County

464 Brome County

465 Richmond County

466 Sherbrooke County

467 Stanstead County

468 Compton County

469 Frontenac County

Including Lake Megantic

47 Southeastern region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River from Quebec to Gulf of Saint Lawrence

Including Notre Dame Mountains

471 Beauce County

472 Dorchester County

473 Bellechasse County

473 5 Montmagny County

474 L'Islet County

971 475 Kamouraska County

476 Temiscouata County

Including Rivière du Loup and Temiscouata Counties

.477 Gaspé Peninsula

Including Shickshock Mountains, Gulf of Saint Lawrence, Chaleur Bay

477 1 Rimouski County

477 5 Matane County

Including Matapédia and Matane Counties

478 *Bonaventure County*

479 Gaspé County

Including Gaspé East and Gaspé West Counties

479 7 Magdalen Islands

.5 New Brunswick

Including comprehensive works on Maritime Provinces [*formerly* *971 6]

For Nova Scotia see 971 6, *Prince Edward Island,* 971 7

51 Northern region

511 Restigouche County

512 Gloucester County

52 Eastern region

521 Northumberland County

522 Kent County

523 Westmorland County

53 Southern region

Including Bay of Fundy

531 Albert County

532 Saint John County

533 Charlotte County

Including Grand Manan Island

971 54 Central region

541 Kings County

542 Queens County

543 Sunbury County

55 Western region

Including Saint John River

551 York County

Including Fredericton

552 Carleton County

553 Victoria County

554 Madawaska County

.6 Nova Scotia

Including former Acadia

Class Maritime Provinces [*formerly* *971 6] in 971 5

61 Northern region

Including Western Plain region

611 Cumberland County

612 Colchester County

613 Pictou County

614 Antigonish County

62 Southern region

Including Atlantic Coast region

621 Guysborough County

622 Halifax County

Including Halifax

623 Lunenburg County

624 Queens County

625 Shelburne County

63 Western region

Including Bay of Fundy in Nova Scotia

631 Yarmouth County

632 Digby County

971 633 Annapolis County

634 Kings County

635 Hants County

69 Cape Breton Island

Including Bras d'Or Lake

691 Inverness County

Including Cape Breton Highlands National Park

693 Victoria County

695 Cape Breton County

696 Sydney

698 Richmond County

.7 Prince Edward Island

Including Northumberland Strait

71 Prince County

74 Queens County

75 Charlottetown

77 Kings County

8 Newfoundland

Including Strait of Belle Isle Cabot Strait

For Labrador Territory see 971 9

.88 Saint Pierre and Miquelon

French territory

.9 Labrador Territory

Including comprehensive works on Labrador Peninsula

For Ashuanipi Territory see 971 419 New Quebec District 971 23

972 Mexico

972 01–972 082 Period divisions

01 Pre Hispanic period to 1516

014 Aztecs

015 Mayas

Including comprehensive works on Mayan culture

For Mayas in Guatemala, see 972 810 1 in British Honduras 972 820 1

02 Colonial period, 1516–1810

Discovery to end of Spanish rule

03 Independence, 1810–1822

Revolutionary period

04 First empire and republic, 1822–1845

05 Period of war with United States, 1845–1848

For comprehensive works on Mexican War see 973 62

06 Reaction and reform, 1848–1861

07 European intervention, 1861–1867

08 Republic, 1867–

081 Later 19th century, 1867–1917

Republic under constitution of 1857

Including history 1911–1917 [*formerly* *972 09]

082 20th century, 1917– [*formerly* *972 09]

Republic under constitution of 1917

[* 09] 20th century, 1911–

Class in 972 081–972 082

972 1–972 7 Geographic divisions

1 Northern states

Including Tamaulipas Nuevo León Coahuila Durango Chihuahua Sonora

2 Baja California (Lower California)

Including Baja California Norte (state), Baja California Sur (territory)

972.3 **Central Pacific states**

Including Sinaloa, Nayarit, Jalisco, Colima, Michoacán

.4 **Central states**

Including Guanajuato, Aguascalientes, Zacatecas, San Luis Potosí, Querétaro, Hidalgo, Tlaxcala, Puebla, Morelos

.5 **Valley of Mexico**

Including Mexico (state), Federal District, Mexico City

.6 **Southern Gulf states**

Including Veracruz, Tabasco, Campeche, Yucatán, Quintana Roo (territory)

.7 **Southern Pacific states**

Including Guerrero, Oaxaca, Chiapas, Isthmus of Tehuantepec

.8 Central America

For Panama, see 986.2

.801 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

.802 Early 16th century, 1502–1535

Including discovery, exploration, conquest

.803 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

.804 19th century, 1821–1900

Including attempts at Central American federation, 1823–1838

.805 20th century, 1900–

.81 **Guatemala**

.810 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

Including Mayan civilization

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture, see 972.015

.810 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.810 3 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

.810 4 19th century, 1821–1900

Including establishment of republic

.810 5 20th century, 1900–

972 82 **British Honduras (Belize)**

British crown colony

820 1 Pre Hispanic period to 1502

Including Mayan civilization

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture see 972 015

820 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

820 3 Early colonial period, 1535–1821

Including settlement by British Spanish recognition of British sovereignty 1798

820 4 19th century, 1821–1900

Including period as dependency of Jamaica, 1882–1884

820 5 20th century, 1900–

83 **Honduras**

830 1 Pre Hispanic period to 1502

830 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

830 3 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

830 4 19th century, 1821–1900

830 5 20th century, 1900–

84 **El Salvador**

Divide 972 840 1–972 840 5 like 972 830 1–972 830 5, e g, discovery and exploration 972 840 2

85 **Nicaragua**

Divide 972 850 1–972 850 5 like 972 830 1–972 830 5 e g, *pre-Hispanic period 972 850 1*

86 **Costa Rica**

Divide 972 860 1–972 860 5 like 972 830 1–972 830 5 e g, 19th century 972 860 4

972.9 **West Indies (Antilles)**

Including Caribbean area, comprehensive works on Greater Antilles

901 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

.902 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608

Including colonization, colonial period

.903 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801

.904 19th century, 1801–1902

Including independence movements, autonomy, national development

905 20th century, 1902–

For The West Indies federation, see 972 97

.91 **Cuba**

910 1 Pre Hispanic period to 1492

910 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514

910 3 First colonial period, 1514–1763

Including siege of Havana and British occupation 1762–1763

910 4 Second colonial period, 1763–1810

910 5 Third colonial period, 1810–1899

For Spanish American War, see 973 89

910 6 20th century, 1899–

910 61 American military occupation 1899–1902

910 62 First republic, 1902–1933 [*formerly* *972 910 7]

910 63 Second republic, 1933– [*formerly* *972 910 8]

[* 910 7–* 910 8] First and second republics, 1902–

Class in 972 910 62–972 910 63

.912 Havana

Including Isle of Pines

972.92 **Jamaica**

Joined The West Indies federation, 1957

For Turks and Caicos Islands see 972 961, comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, 972 97

.920 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1494

920 2 16th century, 1494–1607

Including discovery, colonization

920 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1607–1801

Including end of Spanish rule, establishment of English civil administration, English occupation

920 4 19th century, 1801–1904

.920 5 20th century, 1904–

921 Cayman Islands

.93 **Dominican Republic**

Including comprehensive works on Hispaniola

For Haiti, see 972 94

930 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

930 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608

.930 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801

930 4 19th century, 1801–1902

930 5 20th century, 1902–

.94 ***Haiti***

Including Tortuga Island, Île de la Gonâve

For comprehensive works on Hispaniola, see 972 93

940 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

940 2 Spanish rule, 1492–1625

940 3 Haiti as French colony, 1625–1804

940 4 Independence and republic, 1804–1915

940 5 American occupation, 1915–1934

940 6 Republic, 1934–

972 95 Puerto Rico

950 1 Pre Hispanic period to 1493

950 2 16th century, 1493–1602

Including discovery early colonial period

950 3 17th and 18th centuries 1602–1804

950 4 19th century, 1804–1900

950 5 20th century, 1900–

950 53 Commonwealth, 1952–

96 Bahamas

Including Grand Bahama Island Great Abaco Island Bimini Islands Berry Islands New Providence Island on which is Nassau Andros Island Eleuthera Island Cat Island Great Exuma Island San Salvador (Watling) Island Long Island Crooked Island Acklins Island Mayaguana Little Inagua Island Great Inagua Island

961 Turks and Caicos Islands

Jamaica dependencies

97 Lesser Antilles (Caribbees)

Including comprehensive works on British West Indies on The West Indies federation 1957–

For a specific part of The West Indies see the part e g, Jamaica 972 92

971 Leeward Islands

Including French island of Guadeloupe and its dependencies Netherlands islands of Saint Eustatius and Saba Saint Martin divided between France and the Netherlands comprehensive works on French West Indies

For Martinique see 972 982 comprehensive works on Netherlands West Indies 972 986

971 5 Leeward Islands in The West Indies federation

Antigua Saint Christopher Nevis Montserrat

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation see 972 97

972 Virgin Islands

972 98 Windward Islands

981 Barbados

Joined The West Indies federation 1957

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, see 972 97

982 Martinique

Became overseas department of France 1946

For comprehensive works on French West Indies see 972 971

983 Trinidad

Joined The West Indies federation 1957

Including Tobago

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation see 972 97

984 Grenada Saint Vincent The Grenadines Saint Lucia, Dominica

Joined The West Indies federation 1957

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation see 972 97

986 Netherlands Antilles

Including Curaçao Aruba Bonaire comprehensive works on Netherlands West Indies

For Netherlands Leeward Islands see 972 971

99 Bermuda

British crown colony

973 United States

For specific states of the United States, see 974–979

SUMMARY

973.1	Discovery and exploration to 1607
.2	Colonial period, 1607–1775
.3	Revolution and confederation, 1775–1789
.4	Constitutional period, 1789–1809
.5	Early 19th century, 1809–1845
.6	Middle 19th century, 1845–1861
.7	Civil War, 1861–1865
.8	Later 19th century, 1865–1901
.9	20th century, 1901–

.1 Discovery and exploration to 1607

Including comprehensive works on exploration of North America of the New World

For discoveries and explorations in a specific country see the country e g Jacques Cartier in Canada 971.011, *North American Indians* 970.1–970.6

.11 Pre Columbian claims

.12 Chinese

.13 Norse

.14 Welsh

.15 Discoveries by Columbus

.16 Spanish and Portuguese explorations

.17 English explorations

.18 French explorations

.19 Explorations of other nations

973 2 **Colonial period, 1607–1775**

For history of a separate colony considered locally rather than as part of general colonial development, see the colony, e g , colonial history of Pennsylvania 974 802, *Spanish settlement of Florida* 975 901

.21 Virginia settlements, 1607–1620

.22 Other early settlements, 1620–1643

Including settlements by English in New England and elsewhere by Dutch on Hudson River, by Swedes on Delaware River, Pequot War, 1636–1638

23 Middle 17th century, 1643–1664

Including New England Confederation

24 Later 17th century, 1664–1689

Including conquest of New Netherland by English, 1664, King Philip's War, 1675–1676

.25 Period of early French wars, 1689–1732

Including King William's War, Queen Anne's War

For period of these wars in Canada, see 971 018, *comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg,* 944 033, *on War of the Spanish Succession,* 940 25

26 Extension of English rule, 1732–1763

Including King George's War, French and Indian War

For period of these wars in Canada, see 971 018, *comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession, on Seven Years' War,* 940 25

27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775

Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764

For causes of the Revolution see 973 311

973.3 Revolution and confederation, 1775–1789

For period of the American Revolution in England see 942.073 in Canada 971.024 works of purely local interest the specific locality e g New York City during the Revolution 974.72

SUMMARY

973.31	Political and economic history
.32	Diplomatic history
.33	Military operations
.34	Military units
.35	Naval history
.36	Celebrations commemorations memorials
.37	Prisons
.375	Medical services
.38	Personal narratives
.385	American secret service and spies
.381	Treason
.386	British secret service and spies
.39	Graphic materials

[.308 4] Audio visual aids

Class in 973.39

.31 Political and economic history

Including Continental Congress comprehensive works on consequences of Revolution

For diplomatic history see 973.32 military operations 973.33 naval operations 973.35

.311 Causes

.311 1 Stamp Act 1765–1766

.311 2 Commercial restrictions

Including Navigation Acts Townshend Acts burning of the Gaspée June 17 1772

For tax on tea see 973.311 5

.311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre March 5 1770

.311 4 Taxation and representation

.311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party December 16 1773

.311 6 Boston Port Bill 1774

973 313 Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776

Including Fourth of July celebrations Mecklenburg Declaration May 20 1775

If preferred class Fourth of July celebrations in 394 268

314 Loyalists (Tories)

For United Empire Loyalists in Canada see 971 024, *treason during the Revolution*, 973 381

315 Relation of special classes of persons to the Revolution

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for e g *doctors 973 375, divide like 000–999, e g clergy and* the Revolution 973 315 2 Negroes and the Revolution 973 315 967

317 Treaty of Peace, 1783

318 Confederation, 1783–1789

32 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

Divide like 940 e g, relations with France 973 324

33 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history see 973 35

331 Campaigns of 1775

Including sieges of Boston Ticonderoga Crown Point, Montgomery s and Arnold s expeditions to Canada

331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord

Including Patriots Day celebrations

If preferred class Patriots Day celebrations in 394 268

331 2 *Battle of Bunker Hill*

Including Bunker Hill Monument

If preferred class Bunker Hill Monument in 917 446

332 Campaigns of *1776*

Including Hudson River campaign British occupation of New York City Battles of Long Island Harlem Heights White Plains Fort Washington Washington in New Jersey Battles of Trenton and Princeton (January 3 1777)

973.333 Campaigns of 1777

Including Burgoyne's campaign, Battles of Bennington and Saratoga, Battle of Fort Stanwix (Fort Schuyler or Oriskany), Howe's campaign, British occupation of Philadelphia, Battles of Brandywine, Paoli, Germantown

.334 Campaigns of 1778

Including Battle of Monmouth, evacuation of Philadelphia, Indian attacks in New York State, Rhode Island campaign, capture of Savannah, Clark's expedition to the Illinois, 1778–1779

.334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778

.335 Campaigns of 1779

Including Penobscot expedition, Sullivan's expedition, Battles of Stony Point, Paulus Hook

.336 Campaigns of 1780

Including siege of Charleston, Battles of Waxhaws, Camden, King's Mountain

.337 Campaigns of 1781

.337 5 Siege of Yorktown

Including surrender of Cornwallis

.338 Campaigns of 1782

.339 Events of 1783

Including British evacuation of New York, Evacuation Day celebrations

If preferred, class Evacuation Day celebrations in 394.268

.34 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973.33, medical services, 973.375, rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.36, secret service, 973.385–973.386

.341 British troops

.342 Mercenaries

Including Hessians

.343 Indians

973.344–973.347 American troops

973.344 Troops from northern states

Divide like 974, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.344 8; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states, using A1 for comprehensive works

If desired, arrange troops from all states alphabetically here

.345 Troops from southern states

Divide like 975, e.g., Virginia troops 973.345 5; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states, using A1 for comprehensive works

If desired, arrange all states alphabetically in 973.344

.346 Auxiliaries

Including Poles, Swedes, Spanish

.347 French troops

.349 Special topics

Including Conway Cabal, mutiny of Pennsylvanians, Newburgh addresses

.35 Naval history

Including naval operations, naval units, privateering

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle, see the campaign or battle, e.g., French fleet at Yorktown 973.337 5

.36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., Fourth of July celebrations 973.313; a specific memorial not associated with a specific event, the place, e.g., Washington memorial headquarters at Newburgh 917.473 1; organizations commemorating the Revolution, 369.13; architecture of war memorials, 725.94; national memorial cemeteries, 718.8

[.367] Washington's headquarters at Newburgh and Morristown

Class headquarters at Newburgh in 917.473 1, at Morristown in 917.497 4

973 37 Prisons

Including exchange of prisoners

371 British prisons

Including prison ships

372 American prisons

375 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war

376 Hospitals

.38 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle event or subject see the subject e g British prison ships 973 371

381 Treason

For Loyalists see 973 314

382 Treason of Benedict Arnold

383 Treason of Charles Lee

385 American secret service and spies

Including Nathan Hale

386 British secret service and spies

Including Major John André

.39 Graphic materials

Including maps pictorial histories cartoons

4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809

41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797

42 *Indian wars, 1790–1791*

43 Washington s second term 1793–1797

44 Administration of John Adams 1797–1801

45 Troubles with France

46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809

Including Louisiana Purchase 1803

47 *Wars with Barbary States*

48 Jefferson s second term, 1805–1809

973.5 Early 19th century, 1809–1845

.51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817

.52 War of 1812, 1812–1814

For period of this war in England, see 942 073, in Canada, 971 034

[.520 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973 529

.521 *Political and economic history*

Including causes, consequences, Treaty of Ghent

For diplomatic history, see 973 522, military operations, 973 523, naval operations, 973 525

.522 *Diplomatic history*

Relations with other nations

.523 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land in the Northwest, New York, New England, Canada, naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history, see 973 525

.523 8 Campaign in the South

Including Battle of Bladensburg burning of Washington, bombardment of Fort McHenry

.523 9 Battle of New Orleans

.524 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973 523, medical services, 973 527 5, rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973 526, secret service, 973 528 5

.524 1 British troops

.524 2 Indian allies

973 524 4–524 7 American troops

Divide like 974–977 e g Virginia troops 973 524 55 using 973 524 4 for comprehensive works if preferred arrange alphabetically by states in 973 524 4 using A1 for comprehensive works or arrange states in each region alphabetically e g, Virginia troops 973 524 5 V8

525 Naval history

Including naval operations naval units privateering

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle see the campaign or battle e g naval fighting at Battle of New Orleans 973 523 9

525 4 Battle of Lake Erie

525 6 Battle of Lake Champlain

526 Celebrations commemorations memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor lists of dead

For celebrations commemorations memorials of a specific event see the event e g Perry s Victory and International Peace Memorial 973 525 4 organizations commemorating the war 369 14 architecture of war memorials 725 94 national memorial cemeteries 718 8

527 Prisons

Including exchange of prisoners

527 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war hospitals

528 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battl event or subject see the subject e g prison experiences 973 527

528 5 Secret service and spies

529 Graphic materials

Including maps pictorial histories cartoons

53 War with Algeria 1815

54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825

Including First Seminole War 1818 purchase of Florida 1819

For history of Florida see 975 9

973 55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829

56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837

Including Black Hawk War, 1832

561 Nullification

For constitutional law, see 342 73

57 Administration of Martin Van Buren 1837–1841

Including Second Seminole War 1835–1842

58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845

6 Middle 19th century, 1845–1861

Period of westward expansion

For events of this period in relation to the Civil War see 973 711

61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849

Including annexation of Texas 1845 settlement of Northwest boundary 1846

For history of Texas see 976 4 of Old Oregon Territory 979 5

62 Mexican War, 1845–1848

For period of this war in Mexico see 972 05

[620 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973 629

621 Political and economic history

Including causes consequences Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo Mexican cession

For diplomatic history see 973 622 military operations 973 623 naval operations 973 625

622 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

623 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles in New Mexico California Mexico

For naval operations see 973 625

973 624 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records, state organizations

For campaigns and battles, see 973 623, medical services, 973 627 5, rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973 626

625 Naval history

Including naval operations, naval units

626 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e g, commemorations of cession of New Mexico 973 621, organizations commemorating the war, 369 14, architecture of war memorials, 725 94, national memorial cemeteries, 718 8

627 Prisons

627 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war, hospitals

628 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific subject, see the subject, e g, campaign experiences 973 623

629 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

63 Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850

64 Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853

66 Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857

Including Gadsden Purchase

68 Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861

973 7 Civil War, 1861–1865

Administration of Abraham Lincoln

For history of Confederate States of America, see 973 713, history of the South, 975, local history of Confederate States, 975–976, period of this war in Canada, 971 04

SUMMARY

973 71	Political and economic history
.72	Diplomatic history
.73	Military operations
.74	Military units
.75	Naval history
.76	Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
.77	Prisons, health, social services
.78	Personal narratives
783	Union military life and customs
.784	Confederate military life and customs
785	Union secret service and spies
.786	Confederate secret service and spies
.79	*Graphic materials*

[708 4] Audio visual aids

Class in 973 79

71 Political and economic history

Including efforts to preserve peace

For diplomatic history, see 973 72, military operations, 973 73, naval operations, 973 75

711 Causes

711 1 Slavery

711 2 Extension of slavery

711 3 Compromises

Including Missouri Compromise, Compromise of 1850, Wilmot Proviso

711 4 Abolition movement

711 5 Fugitive slaves

Including underground railway, Dred Scott decision

711 6 John Brown's raid

973 713 Secession

Including persons in the South [*formerly* †973 716] comprehensive works on the Confederate States of America on the South during the war

For history of the South see 975 local history of Confederate States 975–976

714 Consequences

Including Emancipation Proclamation establishment of Freedmen s Bureau

For reconstruction see 973 8 emancipation 326 postwar relief work of Freedmen s Bureau 973 777

715 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for e g doctors 973 775 divide like 000–999 e g college students and the war 973 715 378

[† 716] Southern side

Class in 973 713

717 Southern Union sympathizers

718 Northern Confederate sympathizers

Including Copperheads

72 Diplomatic history

Including relations of Union with other nations Trent Affair [*formerly also* †973 751 •973 75]

721 Relations of Confederate States with other nations

73 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history see 973 75

731 Opening phase 1861–1862

Including bombardment of Fort Sumter First Battle of Bull Run (Manassas) operations in the West May 1861–February 1862 in the South July 1861–April 1862

973 732 Spring and summer campaigns, 1862

Including campaigns to open Mississippi River capture of Fort Henry, of Fort Donelson, fall of Nashville, occupation of Memphis, Battle of Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), capture of New Orleans, siege of Corinth, campaigns of Army of the Potomac Peninsular campaign from siege of Yorktown to Second Battle of Bull Run (Manassas)

For Battle of Monitor and Merrimac, see 973 752

733 Summer and fall campaigns, 1862

Including operations in the South other than those connected with opening the Mississippi, April 1862–June 1863, in the West, June 1862–January 1863, in Texas New Mexico, Arizona to May 1863, Burnside's offensive against Richmond with defeat at Battle of Fredericksburg

733 6 *Lee's invasion of Maryland*

Including Battles of Harper's Ferry, South Mountain, Antietam (Sharpsburg)

734 Summer campaigns, 1863

Including trans Mississippi campaigns to end of year; western campaigns siege of Port Hudson, Louisiana, eastern campaigns Hooker's offensive against Lee stopt at Chancellorsville

734 4 Grant's siege of Vicksburg

.734 9 Battle of Gettysburg

735 Fall campaigns, 1863

Including operations in the South bombardment of Fort Sumter and Charleston, Chickamauga and Knoxville campaigns

.735 9 Chattanooga campaign

Including Battles of Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge

736 Winter and spring campaigns, 1864

Including operations in the East, January–May, in the South, January–November, Grant and Meade offensive from Wilderness to Cold Harbor, Peninsular campaign followed by engagements at New Market, Lynchburg, Monocacy, Fort Stevens

973.737 Summer and fall campaigns, 1864

Including Sherman's Atlanta campaign, Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley, siege of Petersburg

.737 8 Savannah campaign

Including Sherman's march to the sea

.738 Final phase, 1865

Including Sherman's march thru the Carolinas, evacuation of Charleston, Sheridan and Grant in Virginia, surrender of Lee at Appomattox, surrender of Johnston to Sherman, final capitulation in trans-Mississippi area

.74 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records, foreign elements

For campaigns and battles, see 973 73, medical services. 973 775, chaplains, 973 778, secret service, 973 785–973 786, rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973 76

.741 Union Army

.741 5 Negro troops

.742 Confederate Army

Including guerrilla fighters

.744–749 State organizations

Including Negro troops of specific states

[illegible]

973 744, Confederate in 973 745

.75 Naval history

Including naval operations, Union naval units, specific Union ships, privateering, blockade running

Class Trent Affair [*formerly* *973 75] in 973 72

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle, see the campaign or battle, e g, Farragut's participation in capture of New Orleans 973 732

[†.751] Trent Affair

Class in 973 72

.752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac

.754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama off France

973 757 Confederate Navy

Including naval units, specific ships

76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e g, Lincoln's Gettysburg Address 973 734 9, a specific memorial not associated with a specific event, the place, e g, Confederate White House at Richmond 917 554 51, organizations commemorating the war, 369 15–369 17, architecture of war memorials, 725 94, national memorial cemeteries, 718 8

[† 768] Memorial Day

Class in 394 268

.77 Prisons, health, social services

Including services for armed forces and civilians, exchange of prisoners

.771 Confederate prisons

772 Union prisons

775 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war

776 Hospitals

777 Welfare work

Including United States Sanitary Commission postwar relief work, e g, Freedmen's Bureau

For soldiers' homes, see 362 61, establishment of Freedmen's Bureau, 973 714

778 Chaplains

Including United States Christian Commission

78 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e g, Union spies 973 785

781 Union side

782 Confederate side

783 Union military life and customs

784 Confederate military life and customs

Including Southern home life during the war

973.785 Union secret service and spies

.786 Confederate secret service and spies

.79 Graphic materials

Including maps pictorial histories, cartoons

.8 **Later 19th century, 1865–1901**

Period of reconstruction

.81 *Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869*

Including purchase of Alaska 1867

For history of Alaska see 979.8

.82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877

.83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes 1877–1881

.84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur 1881–1885

.85 First administration of Grover Cleveland 1885–1889

.86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893

.87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland 1893–1897

.88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901

Including annexation of Hawaii

For history of Hawaii see 996.9

.89 Spanish American War, 1898

For period of this war in Spain see 946.08

[.890 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.899

.891 Political and economic history

Including causes consequences acquisition of Philippines Puerto Rico Guam

For diplomatic history see 973.892 military operations 973.893 naval operations 973.895 history of Philippines 991.4 of Puerto Rico 972.95 of Guam 996.7

.892 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

973 893 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land

For naval history, see 973 895

.893 3 Cuban campaign

893 5 Puerto Rican campaign

.893 7 Philippine campaign

.894 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973 893, medical services, 973 897 5, rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973 896

.895 Naval history

Including organization of naval units, operations Battle of Manila Bay, sinking of the Merrimac, destruction of Cervera's squadron

.896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e g , commemorations of Battle of Manila Bay 973 895, organizations commemorating the war, 369 18, architecture of war memorials, 725 94, national memorial cemeteries, 718 8

897 Prisons, health, social services

Including services for armed forces and civilians

.897 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war, hospitals

898 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e g , sailors' narratives 973 895

899 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

973 9 20th century, 1901–

91 Early 20th century, 1901–1953

911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909

912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913

.913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921

Including purchase of Virgin Islands

For history of Virgin Islands, see 972 972

914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923

915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929

916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933

917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945

918 Administration of Harry S Truman, 1945–1953 [*formerly* *973 92]

92 Later 20th century, 1953–

Class administration of Harry S Truman [*formerly* *973 92] in 973 918

921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–

974–979 State and local history of United States

Libraries which prefer alphabetic to systematic arrangement of local history under each state may add to the number for the state 09 for regions geographic features counties and 093 for cities towns villages e g Hancock County Maine 974 109 H2 Mount Desert Island 974 109 M18 Bangor 974 109 3 B2

SUMMARY

974	Northeastern states
1	Maine
2	New Hampshire
3	Vermont
4	Massachusetts
5	Rhode Island
6	*Connecticut*
7	New York
8	Pennsylvania
9	New Jersey
975	Southeastern states
1	Delaware
2	Maryland
.3	District of Columbia
4	West Virginia
5	Virginia
6	North Carolina
7	South Carolina
8	Georgia
9	Florida
976	South central states
1	Alabama
2	Mississippi
3	Louisiana
4	Texas
6	Oklahoma
7	Arkansas
.8	Tennessee
9	Kentucky
977	North central states
1	Ohio
.2	Indiana
3	Illinois
4	Michigan
5	Wisconsin
6	Minnesota
7	Iowa
8	Missouri

978	Western states
.1	Kansas
.2	Nebraska
.3	South Dakota
.4	North Dakota
6	Montana
.7	Wyoming
8	Colorado
.9	New Mexico
979	Far western states
1	Arizona
2	Utah
3	Nevada
.4	California
.5	Oregon
6	Idaho
.7	Washington
.8	Alaska

974 **Northeastern states**

Including New England, Middle Atlantic states, comprehensive works on Appalachian Mountains, Connecticut River

.1 Maine

974 101–974 104 Period divisions

101 Discovery and early settlement to 1620

102 Colonial period, 1620–1776

103 Postcolonial period and statehood, 1776–1865

104 Modern period, 1865–

974 11–974 195 Geographic divisions

11 Aroostook County

Including Aroostook River

12 Somerset County

Including Kennebec River

125 Piscataquis County

Including Moosehead Lake, Mount Katahdin, Chesuncook Lake

13 Penobscot County

Including Penobscot River

14 Washington County

Including Machias River and Bay

974 145 Hancock County

Including Mount Desert Island Acadia National Park Deer Island Frenchman Bay

15 Waldo County

153 Knox County

Including Isle au Haut Vinalhaven Island Monhegan Island

157 Lincoln County

Including Boothbay Harbor

16 Kennebec County

Including Augusta

17 Franklin County

Including Rangeley Lakes

175 Oxford County

18 Androscoggin County

Including Androscoggin River

185 Sagadahoc County

19 Cumberland County

Including Sebago Lake Casco Bay

195 York County

Including Isles of Shoals

.2 *New Hampshire*

Including upper Connecticut River

201–204 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101 794 104 e g colonial period of New Hampshire 974 202

974 21–974 29 Geographic divisions

21 Coos County

Including Connecticut Lakes Umbagog Lake

22 White Mountains

Including Presidential Range Mount Washington

23 Grafton County

Including Franconia Mountains Squam Lake

24 Carroll County

974.245 Belknap County

Including Lake Winnipesaukee

25 Strafford County

26 Rockingham County

For Isles of Shoals see 974 195

27 Merrimac County

Including Concord Merrimac River

275 Sullivan County

28 Hillsboro County

29 Cheshire County

Including Mount Monadnock

3 Vermont

Including Green Mountains

301–304 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g early settlement of Vermont 974 301

974 31–974 39 Geographic divisions

31 Grand Isle County

Including Lake Champlain in Vermont

313 Franklin County

Including Missisquoi River

317 Chittenden County

Including Winooski River

32 Orleans County

325 Essex County

Including Maidstone Lake

33 Caledonia County

335 Lamoille County

Including Lamoille River Mount Mansfield

34 Washington County

Including Montpelier

35 Addison County

974 36 *Orange County*

365 Windsor County

Including White River

37 Rutland County

38 Bennington County

39 Windham County

4 Massachusetts

Including Connecticut River in Massachusetts

401–404 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g, colonial period of Massachusetts 974 402

---

974 41–974 497 Geographic divisions

41 Berkshire County

Including Berkshire Hills Hoosic River

42 Franklin County

Including Deerfield River

423 Hampshire County

426 Hampden County

43 Worcester County

Including Wachusett Mountain

44 Middlesex County

Including Charles River

45 Essex County

Including Cape Ann

46 Suffolk County

Boston metropolitan area

47 Norfolk County

48 Plymouth County

Including Plymouth Bay

485 Bristol County

49 Barnstable County (Cape Cod)

Including Cape Cod Bay Buzzards Bay

974 494 Dukes County

Including Martha's Vineyard, Elizabeth Islands

.497 · Nantucket County (Nantucket Island)

.5 Rhode Island

Including Narragansett Bay

.501–.504 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g, modern Rhode Island 974 504

---

974 51–974 59 Geographic divisions

.51 Providence County

52 Providence

53 Pawtucket

54 Kent County

55 Bristol County

56 Newport County

.57 Newport

58 Block Island

Including Block Island Sound

59 Washington County

.6 Connecticut

Including Connecticut River and Valley in Connecticut, Long Island Sound

For Long Island, see 974 721

601–604 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g, postcolonial period of Connecticut 974 603

---

974 61–974 69 Geographic divisions

.61 Litchfield County

Including Litchfield Hills

.62 Hartford County

63 Hartford

974 64 Tolland County

645 Windham County

65 *New London County*

66 Middlesex County

67 New Haven County

68 *New Haven*

69 Fairfield County

7 New York

701–704 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g colonial period of New York 974 702

---

974 71–974 799 Geographic divisions

71 Borough of Manhattan (New York County Manhattan Island)

Including comprehensive works on New York City

For a specific borough of New York City see the borough e g Queens 974 724

72 New York metropolitan area

721 Long Island

For Long Island Sound see 974 6

[† 722] Kings County

Class in 974 723

723 Borough of Brooklyn (Kings County [*formerly* †974 722])

Including Coney Island

724 Borough of Queens (Queens County)

724 5 Nassau County

725 Suffolk County

Including Gardiners Shelter Plum Fishers Islands Peconic Gardiners Bay

726 *Staten Island (Borough of Richmond Richmond County)*

727 Westchester County

974 727 5	Borough of the Bronx (Bronx County)
.728	Rockland County
73	Southeastern counties
	Including Hudson River
.731	Orange County
.732	Putnam County
733	Dutchess County
.734	Ulster County
	Including Ashokan Reservoir
.735	Sullivan County
736	Delaware County
737	Greene County
738	Catskill Mountains
739	Columbia County
74	Middle eastern counties
.741	Rensselaer County
742	Albany County
.743	Albany
744	Schenectady County
745	Schoharie County
746	Montgomery County
747	Fulton County
748	Saratoga County
.749	Washington County
75	Northern counties
751	Warren County
	Including Lake George
.752	Hamilton County
.753	Adirondack Mountains
.753 5	Essex County
	Including Mount Marcy, Lake Placid, Keene Valley, Whiteface Mountain

974.754 Lake Champlain
Comprehensive works
754.5 Clinton County
Including Ausable Chasm
755 Franklin County
Including Saranac Lakes
756 Saint Lawrence County
757 Jefferson County
Including Alexandria Bay
758 Thousand Islands
Comprehensive works
759 Lewis County
76 North central counties
Including Mohawk River and Valley
761 Herkimer County
762 Oneida County
Including Oneida Lake
763 Utica
764 Madison County
765 Onondaga County
Including Skaneatales Lake, Lake Onondaga
766 Syracuse
767 Oswego County
768 Cayuga County
Including Cayuga Lake, Owasco Lake
769 Seneca County
Including Seneca Lake
77 South central counties
771 Tompkins County
772 Cortland County
773 Chenango County
Including Chenango River

974 774 Otsego County

.775 Broome County

.776 Binghamton

.777 Tioga County

.778 Chemung County

.779 Elmira

.78 West central counties

Including Finger Lakes region

For a specific lake of the Finger Lakes region, see the lake, e g, Lake Onondaga 974 765

781 Schuyler County

Including Watkins Glen

782 Yates County

Including Keuka Lake

783 Steuben County

784 Allegany County

.785 Livingston County

.786 Ontario County

Including Canandaigua Lake

787 Wayne County

788 Monroe County

Including Genesee River

.789 Rochester

79 Western counties

Including Lake Ontario [*formerly* *971 3]

791 Orleans County

792 Genesee County

793 Wyoming County

794 Cattaraugus County

Including Allegany State Park

795 Chautauqua County

Including Chautauqua Lake

974 796 Erie County

Including Grand Island

797 Buffalo

798 Niagara County

799 Niagara Falls

For comprehensive works on Niagara Falls, see 971 339

.8 Pennsylvania

Including Susquehanna River

801–804 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g, modern Pennsylvania *974 804*

---

974 81–974 899 Geographic divisions

81 Southeastern counties

Including Schuylkill River

811 Philadelphia metropolitan area

Including Philadelphia County

812 Montgomery County

813 Chester County

Including Valley Forge State Park

814 Delaware County

Including Brandywine Creek

815 Lancaster County

816 Berks County

817 Schuylkill County

818 Dauphin County

Including Harrisburg

819 Lebanon County

82 Eastern counties

Including Pocono Mountains

821 Bucks County

822 Northampton County

974.823 Wayne County
Including Lake Wallenpaupack
.824 Pike County
.825 Monroe County
Including Delaware Water Gap
.826 Carbon County
.827 Lehigh County

.83 Northeastern counties
.831 Northumberland County
.832 Luzerne County
Including Wyoming Valley
.833 Wilkes Barre
.834 Susquehanna County
.835 Wyoming County
.836 Lackawanna County
.837 Scranton
.838 Columbia County
.839 Montour County

.84 Southeast central counties
.841 York County
.842 Adams County
Including Gettysburg National Military Park
.843 Cumberland County
.844 Franklin County
Including Tuscarora Mountains
.845 Perry County
Including Juniata River
.846 Mifflin County
.847 Juniata County
.848 Union County
.849 Snyder County

974 85 Northeast central counties

Including West Branch of Susquehanna River

851 Lycoming County

853 Centre County

854 Clinton County

855 Potter County

856 Tioga County

857 Bradford County

859 Sullivan County

86 Northwest central counties

Including Allegheny River

861 Clearfield County

862 Jefferson County

863 McKean County

865 Elk County

866 Cameron County

867 Warren County

868 Forest County

869 Clarion County

87 Southwest central counties

Including Allegheny Mountains in Pennsylvania

871 Bedford County

872 Fulton County

873 Huntingdon County

875 Blair County

876 Altoona

877 Cambria County

879 Somerset County

88 Southwestern counties

Including Chestnut Ridge Laurel Hill Monongahela River

881 Westmoreland County

974 882 Washington County

883 Greene County

884 Fayette County

885 Allegheny County

886 Pittsburgh metropolitan area

For a specific area of Pittsburgh metropolitan area see the area e g Aliquippa 974 892

888 Armstrong County

889 Indiana County

89 Northwestern counties

891 Butler County

892 Beaver County

893 Lawrence County

895 Mercer County

896 Venango County

897 Crawford County

899 Erie County

9 New Jersey

Including Delaware River

901–904 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g colonial period of New Jersey 974 902

For colonial period of East Jersey see 974 91 of West Jersey 974 95

974 91–974 998 Geographic divisions

91 East Jersey, 1676–1702

Colony occupying area north of a line extending from Little Egg Harbor to Delaware Water Gap settled by English and Scottish Calvinists

For subsequent history of area composing East Jersey see 974 92–974 948 of a specific county of East Jersey the county e g Monmouth 974 946

92 Northern New Jersey

921 Bergen County

Including Palisades Hackensack River

974 923 Passaic County

924 Paterson

926 Hudson County

927 Jersey City

928 Hoboken

93 Northeastern New Jersey

Including Passaic River

931 Essex County

932 Newark

933 Orange

936 Union County

937 Elizabeth

938 Rahway

94 Central New Jersey

941 Middlesex County

942 New Brunswick

944 Somerset County

Including Raritan [*formerly* 974 972] Raritan River

946 Monmouth County

Including Navesink River Sandy Hook

948 Ocean County

Including Toms River Barnegat Bay

95 West Jersey 1676-1702

Colony occupying area south of a line extending from Little Egg Harbor to Delaware Water Gap settled by Society of Friends

For subsequent history of area composing West Jersey see 974 96-974 998 *of a specific county of West Jersey the county e g Burlington* 974 961

.96 West central New Jersey

961 Burlington County

Including Mullica River

974.965 Mercer County

.966 Trenton

.967 Princeton

.97 Northwestern New Jersey

.971 Hunterdon County

[† .972] Raritan

Class in 974.944

.974 Morris County

Including Lake Hopatcong, Morristown National Historical Park

.976 Sussex County

Including Kittatinny Mountains

.978 Warren County

.98 Upper southern New Jersey

.981 Gloucester County

.984 Atlantic County

Including Great Egg Harbor River

.985 Atlantic City

.987 Camden County

.988 Camden

.99 Lower southern New Jersey

.991 Salem County

.992 Salem

.994 Cumberland County

.995 Bridgeton

.998 Cape May County

Including Cape May

975 **Southeastern states (South Atlantic states)**

Including comprehensive works on the South, Piedmont Plateau Atlantic Coastal Plain, Intracoastal Waterway

For Confederate States of America in United States history, see 973 713

.1 Delaware

Including Delaware Bay

.101–104 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g, colonial period of Delaware 975 102

---

975 11–975 17 Geographic divisions

11 New Castle County

12 Wilmington

14 *Kent County*

15 Dover

17 Sussex County

Including Rehoboth Bay

.2 Maryland

Including Potomac River

For Chesapeake Bay see 975 518

201–.202 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g postcolonial period of Maryland 975 203

---

975 21–975 297 Geographic divisions

21 Eastern Shore

Including Delmarva Peninsula

221 *Worcester County*

Including Chincoteague Bay Assateague Island

.223 Somerset County

Including Tangier Sound, Smith Island

.225 Wicomico County

975.227 Dorchester County

Including Bloodsworth Hooper Islands

.231 Caroline County

Including Choptank River

.232 Talbot County

.234 Queen Annes County

Including Kent Island Chester River

.236 Kent County

.238 Cecil County

Including Elk River

.24 Southern counties

.241 Saint Marys County

Including Patuxent River

.244 Calvert County

.247 Charles County

.251 Prince Georges County

.255 Anne Arundel County

.256 Annapolis

.26 *Baltimore metropolitan area*

.27 North central counties

Piedmont Plateau of Maryland

.271 Baltimore County

.274 Harford County

.277 Carroll County

.281 Howard County

.284 Montgomery County

.287 Frederick County

.288 Frederick

.29 Western counties

Ridge and valley region

.291 Washington County

.292 Hagerstown

975 294 Allegany County
295 *Cumberland*
297 Garrett County

3 District of Columbia (Washington)
Including comprehensive works on Washington metropolitan area

4 West Virginia
401–404 Period divisions
Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g, modern period 975 404

975 41–975 499 Geographic divisions

41 Ohio Valley region
411 Northern Panhandle counties
412 Hancock County
413 Brooke County
414 Ohio County
415 Wheeling
416 Marshall County
418 Wetzel County
419 Tyler County
42 Little Kanawha Valley counties
Including Little Kanawha River
421 *Pleasants County*
422 Wood County
423 Parkersburg
424 Ritchie County
426 Wirt County
427 Gilmer County
429 Calhoun County
43 Kanawha Valley counties
Including Kanawha River
431 Jackson County
433 Mason County

975.435	Putnam County
.436	Roane County
.437	Kanawha County
.438	Charleston
.439	Boone County
.44	Southwestern border counties
.441	Guyandot Valley
	Including Guyandot River
.442	Cabell County
.443	Lincoln County
.444	Logan County
.445	Wyoming County
.446	Tug Valley
	Including Tug Fork
.447	Wayne County
.448	Mingo County
.449	McDowell County
.45	Central Plateau
.451	Monongahela Valley counties
	Including Monongahela River in West Virginia
.452	Monongahela County
.453	Morgantown
.454	Marion County
.455	Taylor County
.456	Doddridge County
.457	Harrison County
.458	Clarksburg
.459	Barbour County
.46	Central counties of Central Plateau
.461	Lewis County
.462	Upshur County

975.464 Elk Valley
465 Webster County
466 Braxton County
467 Clay County
468 Gauley Valley
469 Nicholas County

47 New River Valley
471 Fayette County
473 Raleigh County
474 Mercer County
476 Summers County
478 Monroe County

48 *Allegheny Crest*
Including mountain regions

481 Cheat Valley counties
482 Preston County
483 Tucker County
485 Randolph County

486 Greenbrier Valley counties
487 Pocahontas County
488 Greenbrier County
489 White Sulphur Springs

49 Eastern Panhandle counties
Including Potomac Valley of West Virginia
491 Pendleton County
492 Grant County
493 Hardy County
494 Mineral County
495 Hampshire County
496 Morgan County
497 Berkeley County
499 Jefferson County

975 5 Virginia

Including Blue Ridge

501–504 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g colonial period in Virginia 975 502

975 51–975 599 1 Geographic divisions

51 Tidewater Virginia

Comprehensive works

513 Eastern Peninsula

515 Northampton County

Including Hog Cobb Smith Islands

516 Accomack County

Including Chincoteague Island

518 Chesapeake Bay

52 Northern Neck

Including Rappahannock River

521 Northumberland County

522 Lancaster County

523 Richmond County

524 Westmoreland County

525 King George County

526 Stafford County

527 Prince William County

527 5 Fauquier County

528 Loudoun County

529 Fairfax County

529 3 Falls Church

529 5 Arlington County

529 6 Alexandria

975.53 Rappahannock-York region

Including York River

.531 Mathews County

.532 Gloucester County

.533 Middlesex County

.534 Essex County

.535 King and Queen County

.535 5 King William County

.536 Caroline County

.536 5 Spotsylvania County

.536 6 Fredericksburg

.537 Orange County

.537 5 Greene County

.538 Madison County

.539 Culpeper County

.539 5 Rappahannock County

.54 York-James region

Including James River

.541 Hampton

Including former Elizabeth City County

.541 5 Warwick County

Merged with Newport News 1958

.541 6 Newport News

Absorbed Warwick County 1958

.542 York County

.542 5 James City County

.542 52 Williamsburg

.543 New Kent County

.544 Charles City County

.545 Henrico County

.545 1 Richmond

975.545 5 Goochland County
546 Hanover County
546 5 Louisa County
547 *Fluvanna County*
548 Albemarle County
548 1 Charlottesville
549 Nelson County
549 6 Amherst County

55 Southeastern counties
551 Princess Anne County
552 Norfolk County
Including Dismal Swamps in Virginia
552 1 Norfolk
552 2 Portsmouth
552 3 South Norfolk
553 Nansemond County
Including Lake Drummond
553 1 Suffolk
554 Isle of Wight County
555 Southampton County
556 Surry County
556 5 Sussex County
557 Greensville County
557 5 Brunswick County
558 Dinwiddie County
558 1 Petersburg
558 5 Prince George County
558 6 Hopewell
559 Chesterfield County

56 South central counties
Including Piedmont Region in Virginia Roanoke River
561 Powhatan County

975 561 5	Cumberland County
562	Buckingham County
562 5	Appomattox County
563	Prince Edward County
563 4	Amelia County
563 7	Nottoway County
.564	Lunenburg County
564 5	Mecklenburg County
565	Charlotte County
566	Halifax County
566 5	Pittsylvania County
566 6	Danville
567	Campbell County
567 1	Lynchburg
567 5	Bedford County
568	Franklin County
569	Henry County
569 2	Martinsville
569 5	Patrick County
57	Southwestern counties
571	Floyd County
571 4	Carroll County
571 7	Grayson County
572	Smyth County
572 5	Washington County
572 6	Bristol
573	Scott County
573 5	Lee County
574	Wise County
574 5	Dickenson County
575	Buchanan County
575 5	Russell County

975 576 Tazewell County
576 5 Bland County
577 Wythe County
577 5 Pulaski County
578 Giles County
578 5 Montgomery County
578 6 Radford
579 Roanoke County
579 1 Roanoke
579 5 Craig County
58 Central western counties
581 Alleghany County
581 1 Clifton Forge
581 4 Covington
583 Botetourt County
585 Rockbridge County
585 1 Buena Vista
587 Bath County
589 Highland County
59 Northwestern counties
Including Shenandoah Valley Shenandoah National Park
591 Augusta County
591 1 Staunton
591 3 Waynesboro
592 Rockingham County
592 1 Harrisonburg
594 Page County
595 Shenandoah County
597 Warren County
598 Clarke County
599 Frederick County
599 1 Winchester

975 6 North Carolina

601–604 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104, e g , modern period of North Carolina 975 604

975 61–975 699 Geographic divisions

.61 Coastal Plain

Including eastern North Carolina, flatwoods district

611 Northeast Coastal Plain counties

Including Roanoke River

612 Albemarle Sound

613 Currituck County

613 5 Camden County

Including Dismal Swamps

614 Pasquotank County

614 4 Perquimans County

614 7 Chowan County

Including Chowan River

615 Gates County

615 5 Hertford County

616 Bertie County

616 5 Washington County

617 Tyrrell County

617 5 Dare County

Including Roanoke Island, Cape Hatteras

618 Pamlico Sound

Including Cape Hatteras National Seashore Park

618 2 Hyde County

618 6 Beaufort County

Including Pamlico River

619 Craven County

Including Neuse River

619 4 Pamlico County

975 619 7 Carteret County
Including Raleigh Bay

62 Southeast Coastal Plain counties
Including Cape Fear River

621 Jones County
Including Whiteoak Swamp

623 Onslow County
Including Onslow Bay

625 Pender County

627 New Hanover County

629 Brunswick County

63 Southwest Coastal Plain counties
Including Sand Hills of North Carolina

631 Columbus County

632 Bladen County

633 Robeson County

633 5 Scotland County

634 Richmond County

635 Moore County

635 5 Lee County

636 Harnett County

636 5 Hoke County

637 Cumberland County

637 5 Sampson County

638 Duplin County

638 5 Lenoir County

638 6 Kinston

639 Greene County

639 5 Wayne County

639 6 Goldsboro

64 Northwest Coastal Plain counties

641 Johnston County

643 Wilson County

975 644 Pitt County
645 Martin County
646 Edgecomb County
647 Nash County
648 Halifax County
649 Northampton County

65 Piedmont Plateau
Including central North Carolina

651 Northeast Piedmont Plateau counties
652 Warren County
653 Vance County
653 5 Granville County
654 Franklin County
655 Wake County
655 1 Raleigh
656 Durham County
656 5 Orange County
657 Person County
657 5 Caswell County
658 Alamance County
659 Chatham County

66 Northwest Piedmont Plateau counties
661 Randolph County
662 Guilford County
663 Rockingham County
664 Stokes County
665 Surry County
666 Yadkin County
667 Forsyth County
668 Davidson County
Including Yadkin River
669 Davie County

975 67 South Piedmont Plateau counties

- 671 Rowan County
- 672 Cabarrus County
- 673 Stanly County
- 674 Montgomery County
- 675 Anson County
- 675 5 Union County
- 676 Mecklenburg County
- 677 Gaston County
- 677 5 Cleveland County
- 678 Lincoln County
- 678 5 Catawba County
- 679 Iredell County
- 679 5 Alexander County

68 Appalachian Mountain region

Including western North Carolina, Asheville Plateau

For Great Smoky Mountains National Park, see 976 889

681 Northern Appalachian region counties

Including Blue Ridge in North Carolina

- 682 Wilkes County
- 683 Alleghany County
- 683 5 Ashe County
- 684 Watauga County
- 684 5 Caldwell County
- 685 Burke County
- 686 Avery County
- 686 5 Mitchell County
- 687 Yancey County
  - Including Mount Mitchell
- 687 5 Madison County
- 688 Buncombe County
- 689 McDowell County

975 69 Southern Appalachian region counties

691 Rutherford County

691 5 Polk County

692 Henderson County

693 Transylvania County

694 Haywood County

695 Jackson County

696 Swain County

Including Great Smoky Mountains in North Carolina

697 Graham County

698 Macon County

698 5 Clay County

699 Cherokee County

7 South Carolina

701–704 Period divisions

Divide like 974 101–974 104 e g colonial South Carolina 975 702

---

975 71–975 799 5 Geographic divisions

71 Upland areas

Including Piedmont Plateau of South Carolina

72 Mountain counties

Including Blue Ridge in South Carolina Saluda River

721 Oconee County

Including Chattooga Ridge and River

723 Pickens County

725 Anderson County

727 Greenville County

729 Spartanburg County

975.73 Southwest Piedmont Plateau counties

.731 Laurens County

Including Enoree River

.733 Greenwood County

Including Lake Greenwood

.735 Abbeville County

.736 McCormick County

.737 Edgefield County

.738 Saluda County

.739 Newberry County

.74 Northeast Piedmont Plateau counties

.741 Union County

Including Broad River

.742 Cherokee County

.743 York County

.745 Lancaster County

Including Catawba River

.747 Chester County

.749 Fairfield County

.75 Coastal Plain (Low Country)

.76 Sand hills and upper pine belt, northeast section

Including Pee Dee, Lynches Rivers

.761 Kershaw County

.763 Chesterfield County

.764 Marlboro County

.766 Darlington County

.767 Lee County

.769 Sumter County

Including Wateree River

.77 Sand hills and upper pine belt, northwest section

.771 Richland County

Including Columbia

.772 Calhoun County

975 773 Lexington County

775 Aiken County

Including Aiken Plateau

776 Barnwell County

777 Allendale County

778 Bamberg County

779 Orangeburg County

78 Lower pine belt northeast section

Including Santee River

781 Clarendon County

Including Lake Marion

783 Williamsburg County

Including Black River

784 Florence County

785 Dillon County

786 Marion County

787 Horry County

789 Georgetown County

79 Lower pine belt, southwest section

791 Charleston County

793 Berkeley County

794 Dorchester County

795 Colleton County

797 Hampton County

798 Jasper County

799 Beaufort County

799 5 Sea Islands

Including Folly James Johns Wadamalaw Kiawah Edisto Saint Helena Ladies Port Royal Hunting Parris Hilton Head, Daufuskie Islands

975.8 **Georgia**

Including Chattahoochee River

.801–804 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e g, discovery and early settlement of Georgia 975.801

975.81–975.899 6 Geographic divisions

.81 North Georgia

.811 Northeastern counties

Including Savannah River

.812 Rabun County

.812 5 Habersham County

.813 Stephens County

.813 5 Franklin County

.814 Banks County

.814 5 Jackson County

.815 Madison County

.815 5 Hart County

.816 Elbert County

.816 5 Lincoln County

.817 Wilkes County

.817 5 Oglethorpe County

.818 Clarke County

.819 Oconee County

.819 5 *Barrow County*

.82 North central counties

Including Appalachian Mountains in Georgia

.821 Walton County

.821 5 Rockdale County

.822 *Gwinnett County*

.822 5 De Kalb County

975 823 Fulton County

Including since 1932 former Campbell County Milton County

823 1 Atlanta

823 4 Milton County

Merged with Fulton County, 1932

823 7 Campbell County

Merged with Fulton County 1932

824 Douglas County

824 5 Cobb County

Including Kennesaw Mountain

.825 Cherokee County

825 5 Pickens County

826 Dawson County

826 5 Forsyth County

827 Hall County

827 3 Lumpkin County

Including Blue Ridge in Georgia

827 7 White County

828 Towns County

.828 5 Union County

Including Brasstown Bald Mountain

829 Fannin County

829 5 Gilmer County

83 Northwestern counties

Including Appalachian Valley in Georgia

831 Murray County

832 Whitfield County

832 6 Catoosa County

833 Walker County

.834 Dade County

Including Lookout Plateau and Mountains

834 4 Chattooga County

835 Floyd County

975.836 Gordon County

836 5 Bartow County

Formerly Cass County

837 Paulding County

837 5 Polk County

838 Haralson County

839 Carroll County

84 Middle Georgia

Including Piedmont Plateau in Georgia

841 West central counties

.842 Heard County

.842 3 Coweta County

842 6 Fayette County

843 Clayton County

843 5 Henry County

844 Spalding County

844 6 Lamar County

845 Pike County

845 5 Meriwether County

846 Troup County

846 6 Harris County

.847 Muscogee County

847 6 Chattahoochee County

848 Marion County

.848 3 Talbot County

.848 6 Upson County

.849 Taylor County

.849 5 Schley County

.85 Central counties

Including Ocmulgee River

.851 Macon County

.851 5 Houston County

.852 Pulaski County

975 852 5	Bleckley County
853	Dodge County
853 5	Laurens County
854	Wilkinson County
854 5	Twiggs County
855	Bibb County
855 6	Peach County
856	Crawford County
856 3	Monroe County
856 7	Jones County
857	Baldwin County
857 6	Putnam County
858	Jasper County Called Randolph County, 1807–1812 *For present Randolph County, see* 975 893
858 5	Butts County
859	Newton County
859 5	Morgan County
86	East central counties Including Oconee River
861	Greene County
861 6	Taliaferro County
862	Hancock County
862 5	Warren County
863	McDuffie County
863 5	Columbia County
864	Richmond County Formed Saint Paul Parish until 1777
865	Burke County Formed Saint George Parish until 1777
866	Jefferson County Including Ogeechee River
866 6	Glascock County

975.867 Washington County

867.6 Johnson County

868 Treutlen County

868.4 Emanuel County

869 Jenkins County

869.5 Screven County

87 South Georgia

Including Coastal Plains of Georgia

871 Southeastern counties

Including Sea Islands of Georgia

872 Effingham County

Formed Saint Matthew and part of Saint Philip Parishes until 1777

872.4 Chatham County

Formed Christ Church Parish until 1777

Including Tybee, Wilmington, Skidaway, Ossabaw Islands

873 Bryan County

873.3 Liberty County

Formed Saint John, Saint Andrew, Saint James Parishes until 1777

Including Saint Catherines Island

873.7 McIntosh County

Including Sapelo Island

874 Glynn County

Formed Saint Patrick and Saint David Parishes until 1777

Including Saint Simons, Jekyll Islands

874.6 Camden County

Formed Saint Thomas and Saint Mary Parishes until 1777

Including Cumberland Island

975.875 Charlton County
  Including Okefenokee Swamp
.875 3 Brantley County
.875 6 Wayne County
  Including Altamaha River
.876 Long County
.876 3 Evans County
.876 6 Bulloch County
.877 Candler County
.877 5 Tattnall County
.878 Toombs County
.878 4 Appling County
.878 7 Bacon County
.879 Pierce County
.879 4 Ware County
.879 5   Waycross
.88 South central counties
  Including wire-grass region
.881 Clinch County
.881 4 Echols County
.881 7 Lanier County
.882 Atkinson County
.882 3 Coffee County
.882 7 Jeff Davis County
.883 Montgomery County
.883 5 Wheeler County
.884 Telfair County
.884 5 Wilcox County
.885 Ben Hill County
.885 5 Irwin County
.886 Berrien County
.886 4 Lowndes County
.886 5   Valdosta

975 887 Brooks County
887 6 Cook County
888 Tift County
888 5 Turner County
889 Crisp County
889 5 Dooly County
89 Southwestern counties
  Including Flint River
891 Sumter County
891 6 Webster County
  Called Kinchafoonee County, 1853–1856
892 Stewart County
892 4 Quitman County
892 7 Clay County
893 Randolph County
893 5 Terrell County
894 Lee County
894 5 Worth County
895 Dougherty County
895 6 Calhoun County
896 Early County
896 4 Miller County
896 7 Baker County
897 Mitchell County
897 5 Colquitt County
898 Thomas County
898 6 Grady County
899 Decatur County
899 6 Seminole County

975.9 Florida

975.901–975.906 Period divisions

901	Early Spanish period, 1513–1763
902	English period, 1763–1783
903	Spanish period 1783–1821
904	Territorial period, 1821–1845
905	Post territorial period and statehood, 1845–1865
906	Modern period, 1865–

975.91–975.999 Geographic divisions

91	Northeastern counties
911	Nassau County
	Including Amelia Island, Saint Marys River
912	Duval County
912.1	Jacksonville
913	Baker County
914	Union County
915	Bradford County
916	Clay County
917	Putnam County
918	Saint Johns County
919	Flagler County
92	East central counties
	Including lake region Kissimmee Prairie
921	Volusia County
922	Lake County
923	Seminole County

975 924 Orange County

925 Osceola County

Including Lake Kissimmee

927 Brevard County

Including Indian River Merritt Island Canaveral Peninsula

928 Indian River County

929 Saint Lucie County

Including Hutchinsons Island

93 Southeast coast

931 Martin County

Including Jupiter Island

932 Palm Beach County

935 *Broward County*

938 Dade County

Including Biscayne Bay Sands Elliott Old Rhodes Keys Key Biscayne

938 1 Miami and Miami Beach

939 The Everglades

Including Lake Okeechobee

94 Southwest coast

941 Monroe County

Including Florida Keys Florida Bay

944 Collier County

Including Ten Thousand Islands Big Cypress Swamp

946 Hendry County

Including Okaloacoochee Slough

948 Lee County

Including Caloosahatchee River

949 Charlotte County

Including Charlotte Harbor

975.9 95 South central counties

.951 Glades County

.953 Okeechobee County

Including Kissimmee River

.955 Highlands County

.957 Hardee County

Including Peace River

.959 De Soto County

.96 West central counties

.961 Sarasota County

.962 Manatee County

.963 Pinellas County

.965 Hillsborough County

Including Tampa Bay

.967 Polk County

.969 Pasco County

.97 Northern west central counties

.971 Hernando County

.972 Citrus County

Including Withlacoochee River

.973 Sumter County

.975 Marion County

.977 Levy County

.978 Gilchrist County

.979 Alachua County

Including Santa Fe River

.98 North central counties

Including Suwannee River

.981 Dixie County

.981 6 Lafayette County

.982 Suwannee County

975 983 Columbia County

984 Hamilton County

.985 Madison County

.986 Taylor County

.987 Jefferson County

.988 Leon County

988 1 Tallahassee

989 Wakulla County

Including Apalachee Bay

99 Northwestern counties

Including Panhandle of Florida

991 Franklin County

Including Apalachicola Bay

.992 Liberty County

Including Apalachicola River

992 5 Gadsden County

993 Jackson County

994 Calhoun County

994 7 Gulf County

995 Bay County

996 Washington County

996 5 Holmes County

997 Walton County

Including Choctawhatchee Bay

998 Okaloosa County

998 5 Santa Rosa County

Including Pensacola Bay

999 Escambia County

Including Santa Rosa Island

976 **South central states**

Including comprehensive works on Old Southwest lower Mississippi River and Valley, Gulf states, Gulf of Mexico

.1 Alabama

976 101–976 106 Period divisions

101 Discovery and early exploration, 1539–1701

102 French period, 1701–1763

103 British period, 1763–1783

104 *Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817*

105 Territorial period and statehood, 1817–1865

106 Modern period 1865–

976 11–976 199 1 Geographic divisions

11 Southern Alabama

12 Gulf and Lower Coastal Plain counties

Including Gulf Coast, Tombigbee River Alabama River

121 Baldwin County

Including coast strip Mobile Delta estuarial swamps, Perdido River

121 1 Mobile Bay

122 Mobile County

Including Mobile River Dauphin Island Isle aux Herbes Grants Pass

122 1 Mobile metropolitan area

123 Lime hills counties (Piney woods)

124 Washington County

124 5 Clarke County

125 Monroe County

126 Conecuh County

126 5 Escambia County

976 127 Covington County

Called Jones County, 1868

128 Lime sink counties (Wire grass region)

129 Geneva County

Including Pea River

129 5 Houston County

13 Southern red hills counties

Including southeastern counties

131 Henry County

132 Barbour County

133 Dale County

134 Coffee County

135 Pike County

136 Crenshaw County

137 Butler County

138 Wilcox County

139 Marengo County

139 5 Choctaw County

14 Black Belt counties

Including canebrake (prairie) region Chunnennuggee Ridge blue marl region central Alabama

141 Sumter County

142 Greene County

143 Hale County

144 Perry County

145 Dallas County

146 Autauga County

146 5 Lowndes County

147 Montgomery County

147 1 Montgomery

148 Bullock County

148 5 Russell County

149 Macon County

976 15 Northern Alabama

Including hill country, Piedmont region

151 Piedmont region counties (East central Alabama)

152 Elmore County

153 Tallapoosa County

Including Tallapoosa River Martin Lake

155 Lee County

156 Chambers County

157 Randolph County

158 Clay County

159 Coosa County

16 Coosa Valley region

Including Appalachian Valley and Blue Ridge in Alabama, Raccoon and Lookout Mountains, Coosa River

161 Talladega County

163 Calhoun County

Called Benton County, 1832–1858

164 Cleburne County

165 Cherokee County

166 De Kalb County

167 Etowah County

Formed as Baine County 1866 abolisht 1867 re-establisht as Etowah County 1868

169 Saint Clair County

17 Central Plateau and Basin counties

171 Plateau section counties

172 Blount County

173 Cullman County

174 Winston County

175 Basin section counties

176 Walker County

976 178 Jefferson County
Including Bankhead Lake
178 1 Birmingham metropolitan area
179 Shelby County

18 Central pine belt counties
Including west central counties
181 Chilton County
Called Baker County, 1868–1871
182 Bibb County
Called Cahaba County, 1818–1820
184 Tuscaloosa County
185 Pickens County
186 Lamar County
187 Fayette County
Including Sipsey River
189 Marion County

19 Tennessee Valley counties
191 Franklin County
191 5 Colbert County
192 Lawrence County
193 Morgan County
194 Marshall County
Including Guntersville Reservoir
195 Jackson County
Including Cumberland Plateau
196 Highland Rim counties
Including The Barrens
197 Madison County
198 Limestone County
Including Wheeler Lake
199 Lauderdale County
199 1 Muscle Shoals
Including Lake Wilson

976 2 Mississippi

.201–206 Period divisions

Divide like 976 101–976 106 e g , British period of Mississippi 976 203

---

976 21–976 299 5 Geographic divisions

21 Southeastern counties

Including former Mobile district of West Florida

211 Gulf Coast counties

Including Mississippi Sound

212 Jackson County

Including Pascagoula River, Horn Round Petit Bois Islands

213 Harrison County

Including Saint Louis Bay, Cat and Ship Islands

213 1 Biloxi and Gulfport

214 Hancock County

215 Pearl River County

216 Stone County

216 5 George County

217 Greene County

217 5 Perry County

218 Forrest County

219 Lamar County

22 Southwestern counties

Including former Natchez district of West Florida

221 Marion County

222 Walthall County

223 Pike County

224 Amite County

225 Wilkinson County

976 226 Adams County

.227 Franklin County

228 Jefferson County

Called Pickering County, 1799–1802

228 5 Claiborne County

229 Warren County

23 Choctaw Cessions counties

24 Yazoo–Mississippi Delta counties

Including Big Black and Yazoo Rivers

241 Issaquena County

241 4 Sharkey County

242 Washington County

.243 Bolivar County

244 Coahoma County

245 Quitman County

245 5 Tallahatchie County

246 Leflore County

247 Sunflower County

.248 Humphreys County

249 Yazoo County

25 Piney Woods region counties

Including Pearl River

251 Hinds County

251 1 Jackson

.252 Copiah County

.253 Lincoln County

.253 6 Lawrence County

.254 Jefferson Davis County

.254 5 Covington County

.255 Jones County

976 256 Jackson Prairie counties
257 Wayne County
257 5 Jasper County
258 Smith County
258 5 Simpson County
259 Rankin County

26 Plateau region counties
261 Western Plateau counties
Including central Mississippi
262 Madison County
262 5 Holmes County
263 Carroll County
263 5 Grenada County
Including Grenada Reservoir
264 Montgomery County
264 4 Attala County
265 Leake County
265 5 Scott County

266 Eastern Plateau counties
267 Newton County
267 3 Clarke County
267 6 Lauderdale County
267 7 Meridian
268 Kemper County
268 5 Neshoba County
269 Winston County
269 4 Choctaw County
269 7 Webster County
Called Sumner County 1874–1882

27 Chickasaw Cessions
28 Northern Plateau counties
Including northwestern Mississippi
281 Calhoun County

976.282 Yalobusha County

.283 Lafayette County
Including Sardis Reservoir

.284 Panola County

.285 Tate County
Including Arkabutla Reservoir

.286 Tunica County

.287 De Soto County

.288 Marshall County

.289 Benton County

.29 Northeastern counties

.291 Flatwoods region counties
Including black prairie belt Pontotoc Ridge

.292 Tippah County

.292 5 Union County

.293 Pontotoc County

.293 5 Lee County

.294 Chickasaw County

.294 5 Clay County
Called Colfax County 1871–1876

.295 Oktibbeha County

.295 5 Noxubee County

.296 Tennessee River hills

.297 Lowndes County

.297 5 Monroe County

.298 Itawamba County

.298 5 Prentiss County

.299 Alcorn County

.299 5 Tishomingo County

976 3 *Louisiana*

---

976 301–976 306 Period divisions

301 Discovery and early exploration, 1528–1718

302 French period 1718–1763

303 Spanish period 1763–1803

304 French and territorial period, 1803–1812

305 *Early statehood, 1812–1865*

306 Modern period, 1865–

---

976 31–976 399 Geographic divisions

31 Eastern Uplands parishes

Including former Baton Rouge district of West Florida

311 Washington Parish

312 Saint Tammany Parish

313 Tangipahoa Parish

314 Livingston Parish

315 Saint Helena Parish

316 East Feliciana Parish

317 West Feliciana Parish

318 East Baton Rouge Parish

318 1 Baton Rouge

319 Ascension Parish

32 Gulf Coast parishes

Including southern Louisiana coast and delta regions

33 Mississippi Delta parishes

Including southeastern Louisiana

331 Saint James Parish

976 332 Saint John the Baptist Parish
: Including Lake Maurepas Lac des Allemands

333 Saint Charles Parish
: Including Lake Salvador (Ouache)

334 Lake Pontchartrain

335 Orleans Parish

335 5 New Orleans metropolitan area
: Including Chalmette National Historical Park

336 Saint Bernard Parish
: Including Lake Borgne Chandeleur Sound and Islands

337 Plaquemines Parish
: Including Breton Sound Breton and Bird Islands

338 Jefferson Parish
: Including Barataria Bay Grand Isle Grand Terre Island

339 Lafourche Parish
: Including Timbalier Bay and Island

34 South central parishes

341 Terrebonne Parish
: Including Terrebonne Atchafalaya Caillou Bays

342 Saint Mary Parish
: Including Cote Blanche Bay

343 Assumption Parish

344 Iberville Parish

345 West Baton Rouge Parish

345 4 Pointe Coupee Parish

346 Saint Landry Parish

347 Lafayette Parish

348 Saint Martin Parish
: Including Evangeline country

349 Iberia Parish
: Including Grand Lake Marsh Island

976.35 Southwestern parishes

.351 Vermilion Parish

Including Vermilion Bay

.352 Cameron Parish

Including Grand, Calcasieu, Sabine Lakes

.353 Atakapas Prairie parishes

.354 Calcasieu Parish

.355 Jefferson Davis Parish

.356 Acadia Parish

.357 Evangeline Parish

.358 Allen Parish

.359 Beauregard Parish

.36 Central parishes

Including west central Louisiana, Western Uplands, Kisatchie National Forest, Red River in Louisiana

.361 Vernon Parish

.362 Sabine Parish

.363 De Soto Parish

.364 Red River Parish

.365 Natchitoches Parish

.366 Winn Parish

Including Saline Lake

.367 Grant Parish

.369 Rapides Parish

.37 East central parishes

Including Ouachita River

.371 Avoyelles Parish

.373 Concordia Parish

976.374 Catahoula Parish

.375 La Salle Parish
Including Catahoula Lake

.376 Caldwell Parish

.377 Franklin Parish

.379 Tensas Parish

.38 Northern parishes
Including northeastern Louisiana

.381 Madison Parish

.382 East Carroll Parish

.383 West Carroll Parish

.384 Morehouse Parish

.386 Richland Parish

.387 Ouachita Parish

.389 Union Parish

.39 Northwestern parishes

.391 Lincoln Parish

.392 Jackson Parish

.393 Bienville Parish
Including Lake Bistineau

.394 Claiborne Parish

.396 Webster Parish

.397 Bossier Parish

.399 Caddo Parish
Including Caddo Lake

976 4 Texas

976 401–976 406 Period divisions

401 Discovery and early exploration, 1519–1680

402 Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821

403 Mexican period, 1821–1836

404 Republic of Texas, 1836–1846

405 Early statehood, 1846–1865

406 Modern period, 1865–

976 41–976 496 Geographic divisions

41 Coastal Plains

Including Trinity, Brazos, Colorado Guadalupe San Antonio, Nueces Rivers

411 Gulf Coastal Plain counties

Including southeastern Texas, comprehensive works on Texas Gulf Coast

411 3 Nueces County

Including Corpus Christi Bay, Mustang Island

411 5 San Patricio County

411 7 Bee County

411 9 Refugio County

412 Aransas County

Including Aransas Bay, Saint Joseph Island

412 1 Calhoun County

Including Matagorda Island

412 3 Goliad County

412 5 Victoria County

412 7 Jackson County

413 Matagorda County

Including Matagorda Bay and Peninsula

413 3 Wharton County

976.413 5	Fort Bend County
.413 7	Brazoria County
.413 9	Galveston County
	Including Galveston Bay and Island
.414	Harris County
.414 3	Chambers County
.414 5	Jefferson County
.414 7	Orange County
.415	Pine Woods region counties
	Including Neches River
.415 3	Montgomery County
.415 5	Liberty County
.415 7	Hardin County
.415 9	Jasper County
.416	Newton County
.416 3	Tyler County
.416 5	Polk County
.416 7	San Jacinto County
.416 9	Walker County
.417	Trinity County
.417 3	Angelina County
.417 5	San Augustine County
.417 7	Sabine County
.417 9	Shelby County
.418	Nacogdoches County
.418 3	Cherokee County
.418 5	Rusk County
.418 7	Panola County
.418 9	Gregg County
.419	Harrison County
.419 3	Marion County
.419 5	Cass County
.419 7	Bowie County

976 42 East Texas Timber Belt counties

421 Red River County

421 3 Franklin County

421 5 Titus County

421 7 Morris County

421 9 Camp County

422 Upshur County

422 3 Wood County

422 5 Smith County

422 7 Henderson County

422 9 Anderson County

423 Freestone County

423 3 Leon County

423 5 Houston County

423 7 Madison County

423 9 Robertson County

424 Brazos County

424 1 Burleson County

424 3 Grimes County

424 5 Washington County

424 7 Lee County

424 9 Waller County

425 Austin County

425 1 Fayette County

425 3 Colorado County

425 5 Lavaca County

425 7 Gonzales County

425 9 De Witt County

426 Blackland Prairie counties

426 3 Lamar County

426 5 Fannin County

427 2 Hunt County

976 427 3	Delta County
427 4	Hopkins County
427 5	Rains County
427 6	Van Zandt County
427 7	Kaufman County
427 8	Rockwall County
428	Dallas County
428 1	Ellis County
428 2	Navarro County
428 3	Hill County
428 4	McLennan County
428 5	Limestone County
428 6	Falls County
428 7	Bell County
428 8	Milam County
428 9	Williamson County
43	Travis County Including Austin
432	Bastrop County
433	Caldwell County
434	Guadalupe County
435	Bexar County
44	Rio Grande Plain (Lower Rio Grande Valley) Including comprehensive works on Rio Grande *For upper Rio Grande of Texas, see 976 496, Rio Grande Valley of New Mexico, 978 95*
442	Medina County
443	Uvalde County
443 3	Kinney County
443 5	Maverick County
443 7	Zavala County
444	Frio County

976 444 3 Atascosa County
444 4 Karnes County
444 5 Wilson County
444 7 Live Oak County
445 McMullen County
445 3 La Salle County
445 5 *Dimmit County*
446 Webb County
446 3 Duval County
446 5 Jim Wells County
447 Kleberg County
Including Padre Island
447 3 Kenedy County
447 5 Brooks County
448 *Jim Hogg County*
448 3 Zapata County
448 5 Starr County
449 Hidalgo County
449 3 Willacy County
449 5 Cameron County

45 North central plains
451 Grand Prairie counties
451 2 Mills County
451 3 Lampasas County
451 5 Coryell County
451 8 Bosque County
452 Somervell County
452 2 Hood County
452 4 Johnson County
453 Tarrant County
453 2 Wise County
453 3 Cooke County

976 454	Cross Timbers Belt counties
	Including East and West Cross Timbers region
454 1	Montague County
454 2	Clay County
454 3	Archer County
454 4	Jack County
454 5	Young County
454 6	Stephens County
454 7	Eastland County
454 8	Brown County
454 9	Hamilton County
455	Comanche County
455 1	Erath County
455 2	Palo Pinto County
455 3	Parker County
455 5	Denton County
455 6	Collin County
455 7	Grayson County
46	Burnet Llano region counties
462	Llano County
	Including Lake Buchanan (Lake Hamilton)
463	Burnet County
464	Blanco County
465	Gillespie County
466	Mason County
467	McCulloch County
468	San Saba County
47	Northwestern Lowland counties
471	Concho County
472	Tom Green County
472 3	Coke County
472 4	Runnels County
472 5	Coleman County

976.472 6 Callahan County
.472 7 Taylor County
.472 8 Nolan County
.472 9 Mitchell County
.473 Scurry County
.473 2 Fisher County
.473 3 Jones County
.473 4 Shackelford County
.473 5 Throckmorton County
.473 6 Haskell County
.473 7 Stonewall County
.473 8 Kent County
.474 Dickens County
.474 2 King County
.474 3 Knox County
.474 4 Baylor County
.474 5 Wichita County
.474 6 Wilbarger County
.474 7 Hardeman County
.474 8 Foard County
.475 Cottle County
.475 2 Motley County
.475 3 Hall County
.475 4 Childress County

.48 Great Plains

.481 High Plains counties

Including Panhandle counties, comprehensive works on central western Texas, Cap Rock Escarpment

.481 2 Dallam County
.481 3 Sherman County
.481 4 Hansford County
.481 5 Ochiltree County
.481 6 Lipscomb County

976.481 7	Hemphill County
481 8	Roberts County
482	Hutchinson County
482 2	Moore County
482 3	Hartley County
482 4	Oldham County
482 5	Potter County
482 6	Carson County
482 7	Gray County
482 8	Wheeler County
483	Collingsworth County
483 2	Donley County
483 3	Armstrong County
483 4	Randall County
483 5	Deaf Smith County
483 6	Parmer County
483 7	Castro County
483 8	Swisher County
483 9	Briscoe County
484	Floyd County
484 2	Hale County
484 3	Lamb County
484 4	Bailey County
484 5	Cochran County
484 6	Hockley County
484 7	Lubbock County
484 8	Crosby County
484 9	Yoakum County
485	Terry County
485 1	Lynn County
485 2	Garza County
485 3	Borden County
485 4	Dawson County

976 485 5 Gaines County

485 6 Andrews County

485 7 Martin County

485 8 Howard County

486 Midland County

486 2 Ector County

486 3 Upton County

487 Edwards Plateau counties

Including Pecos River Balcones Escarpment

487 1 Sterling County

487 2 Glasscock County

487 3 Reagan County

487 4 Irion County

487 5 Crockett County

487 6 Schleicher County

487 7 Menard County

487 8 Kimble County

487 9 Sutton County

488 Val Verde County

488 2 Edwards County

488 3 Real County

488 4 Kerr County

488 5 Bandera County

488 6 Kendall County

488 7 Comal County

488 8 Hays County

49 Western Mountain and Basin region

Including Trans Pecos counties

491 Pecos Basin counties

491 2 Loving County

491 3 Winkler County

491 4 Ward County

491 5 Crane County

976.492 Stockton Plateau
.492 2 Terrell County
.492 3 Pecos County
.492 4 Reeves County
.493 Big Bend
.493 2 Brewster County
Including Santiago Mountains, Big Bend National Park
.493 3 Presidio County
.493 4 Jeff Davis County
Including Davis Mountains
.494 Culbertson County
Including Diablo Plateau, Sacramento Mountains
.495 Hudspeth County
Including Guadalupe Mountains
.496 El Paso County
Including upper Rio Grande of Texas

.6 Oklahoma

976.601–976.605 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682
.602 French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
.603 Indian Territory, 1803–1866
.604 Territorial period and statehood, 1866–1907
.605 Modern period, 1907–

976.61–976.699 Geographic divisions

.61 Western Oklahoma
Including former Oklahoma Territory, Canadian River
.611 Northwestern counties
Including High Plains region
.612 Panhandle of Oklahoma
Including Cimarron Territory, Canton Lake
.613 Cimarron County

976.613 5 Texas County

614 Beaver County

615 Harper County

615 5 Ellis County

Called Day County until 1907

616 Roger Mills County

Including Antelope Hills

617 Custer County

Including Gypsum Hills region

618 Dewey County

619 Woodward County

62 North central counties

Including Cherokee Outlet Cherokee Strip Salt Fork of Arkansas River

621 Woods County

622 Alfalfa County

623 Grant County

624 Kay County

625 Osage County

626 Pawnee County

627 Noble County

628 Garfield County

629 Major County

63 Central counties

Including Redbeds Plains region Cimarron River

631 Blaine County

Including Stony Hills

632 Kingfisher County

633 Logan County

634 Payne County

635 Lincoln County

636 Pottawatomie County

637 Cleveland County

976 638 Oklahoma County
638 1 Oklahoma City
639 Canadian County

64 Southwestern counties
641 Caddo County
642 Washita County
643 Beckham County
644 Greer County
644 5 Harmon County
645 Jackson County
646 Tillman County
647 Kiowa County
648 Comanche County
Including Wichita Mountains
649 Cotton County

65 Eastern Oklahoma
Indian Territory 1866–1907

651 South central counties
Including Washita River Arbuckle Mountains
652 Jefferson County
653 Stephens County
654 Grady County
655 McClain County
656 Garvin County
657 Murray County
Including Platt National Park
658 Carter County
Including Lake Murray
659 Love County

66 Southeastern counties
Including Red River Ouachita Mountains
661 Marshall County
Including Lake Texoma

976 662 Bryan County

663 Choctaw County

664 McCurtain County

665 Pushmataha County

666 Atoka County

667 Coal County

668 Johnston County

669 Pontotoc County

67 *Southern east central counties*

Including Sandstone Hills

671 Seminole County

672 Hughes County

673 Okfuskee County

674 McIntosh County

675 Pittsburg County

676 Latimer County

677 Haskell County

679 Le Flore County

68 Northern east central counties

Including Arkansas River in Oklahoma Ozark Plateau in Oklahoma Boston Mountains in Oklahoma

681 Sequoyah County

682 Muskogee County

683 Okmulgee County

684 Creek County

686 Tulsa County

687 Wagner County

Including Fort Gibson Reservoir

688 Cherokee County

Including Tenkiller Ferry Reservoir

689 Adair County

976 69 Northeastern counties

Including Prairie Plains region

691 Delaware County

Including Lake of the Cherokees

693 Mayes County

694 Rogers County

696 Washington County

697 Nowata County

698 Craig County

699 Ottawa County

7 Arkansas

---

976 701–976 705 Period divisions

701 Discovery and early exploration 1541–1686

702 French and Spanish periods 1686–1803

703 Preterritorial and territorial periods 1803–1836

704 Early statehood 1836–1865

705 Modern period 1865–

---

976 71–976 799 5 Geographic divisions

71 Highland area

711 Ozark Plateau counties

712 Northwestern counties

Including Springfield Plateau

.713 Benton County

714 Washington County

Called Lovely County 1827–1828

.715 Madison County

.716 Newton County

Including Boston Mountains Diamond Cave

976 717 Carroll County

718 Boone County

719 Marion County

Including Bull Shoals Lake

719 5 Searcy County

72 North central counties

Including Salem Plateau Black and White Rivers

721 Baxter County

Including Norfork Lake

722 Fulton County

Including Mammoth Spring

723 Sharp County

724 Randolph County

725 Lawrence County

726 Independence County

727 Izard County

728 Stone County

728 5 Cleburne County

729 Van Buren County

73 Arkansas River Valley counties

Including northern west central Arkansas Arkansas Ri

731 Conway County

732 Pope County

733 Johnson County

734 Franklin County

735 Crawford County

736 Sebastian County

737 Logan County

Called Sarber County 1871 1875

Including Magazine Mountain Blue Mountain R

738 Yell County

Including Mount Nebo Nimrod Reservoir

739 Perry County

976.74 Ouachita Mountains counties

Including southern west central Arkansas, Ouachita National Forest

.741 Garland County

Including Lake Hamilton, Hot Springs National Park

742 Hot Spring County

743 Montgomery County

744 Scott County

745 Polk County

746 Athens Plateau

747 Sevier County

748 Howard County

748.5 Pike County

749 Clark County

75 Mississippi Valley area

751 Southwestern counties

752 Nevada County

754 Hempstead County

.755 Little River County

756 Miller County

757 Lafayette County

759 Columbia County

76 South central counties

761 Union County

763 Bradley County

.764 Calhoun County

.766 Ouachita County

.767 Dallas County

.769 Cleveland County

Called Dorsey County 1873–1875

.77 Central counties

.771 Grant County

.772 Saline County

976 773 Pulaski County

773 1 Little Rock

Including North Little Rock

.774 Faulkner County

.776 White County

Including Little Red River

777 Prairie County

778 Lonoke County

779 Jefferson County

78 Mississippi Alluvial Plain counties

781 Southeastern counties

782 Lincoln County

782 5 Drew County

783 Ashley County

784 Chicot County

785 Desha County

.786 Arkansas County

787 Monroe County

788 Phillips County

789 Lee County

79 Northeastern counties

Including Crowley s Ridge Saint Francis River

791 Saint Francis County

792 Woodruff County

793 Cross County

794 Crittenden County

795 Mississippi County

796 Poinsett County

797 Jackson County

798 Craighead County

Including *Sunk lands*

799 Greene County

799 5 Clay County

Called Clayton County 1873–1875

976.8 **Tennessee**

Including Tennessee River Tennessee Valley Authority area

976.801–976.805 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682

.802 French Spanish English periods 1682–1769

.803 Early settlement and territorial period, 1769–1796

Including formation of Watauga Association District of Washington State of Franklin

.804 Early statehood 1796–1865

.805 Modern period 1865–

976.81–976.899 Geographic divisions

.81 West Tennessee

.811 Mississippi Valley counties

.812 Lake County

Including Reelfoot Lake

.813 Obion County

.815 Dyer County

.816 Lauderdale County

.817 Tipton County

.819 Shelby County

.82 West Tennessee Plain counties

Including Jackson Plain

.821 Fayette County

.822 Haywood County

.822 5 Crockett County

.823 Gibson County

.824 Weakley County

.825 Carroll County

.826 Henderson County

976.826 5 Chester County

Called Wisdom County, 1875–1879

827 Madison County

828 Hardeman County

829 McNairy County

83 Western Tennessee River Valley counties

831 Hardin County

Including Shiloh National Military Park

832 Decatur County

833 Benton County

834 Henry County

835 Stewart County

836 Houston County

837 Humphreys County

838 Perry County

839 Wayne County

84 Middle Tennessee

841 Highland Rim counties

842 Lawrence County

843 Lewis County

843 4 Hickman County

Including Duck River

844 Dickson County

845 Montgomery County

Called Tennessee County, 1788–1796 when it included Robertson County

Including Fort Donelson National Military Park

846 Cheatham County

846 4 Robertson County

847 Sumner County

976 848 Trousdale County
848 4 Macon County
849 Clay County
Including Dale Hollow Reservoir

85 Central Basin counties
Including Cumberland River
851 Jackson County
852 Smith County
853 De Kalb County
Including Center Hill Reservoir
853 5 Cannon County
854 Wilson County
855 Davidson County
855 1 Nashville
856 Williamson County
857 Rutherford County
858 Bedford County
858 5 Marshall County
859 Maury County

86 East Highland Rim counties
861 Giles County
862 Lincoln County
862 7 Moore County
863 Franklin County
864 Coffee County
865 Warren County
865 7 Van Buren County
866 White County
867 Putnam County
868 Overton County
868 7 Pickett County
869 Fentress County

976 87 Cumberland Plateau counties

Including South Appalachian Plateau

871 Scott County

872 Campbell County

873 Anderson County

Including Clinch River

874 Morgan County

875 Cumberland County

876 Bledsoe County

877 Sequatchie County

Including Sequatchie Valley, Waldens Ridge

878 Grundy County

879 Marion County

88 East Tennessee

Including Eastern Tennessee River Valley Appalachian Mountain region in Tennessee, Great Appalachian Valley

881 Southeastern counties

882 Hamilton County

James County 1871–1919, formed part of present *Hamilton County*

Including Chickamauga and Chattanooga National Park Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge Lake Chickamauga

883 Rhea County

883 6 Meigs County

884 Roane County

885 Knox County

Including Fort Loudoun Reservoir

886 Loudon County

886 5 McMinn County

887 Bradley County

887 5 Polk County

976.888 Monroe County

Including Unaka Mountains

.888 5 Blount County

.889 Great Smoky Mountains

Including Great Smoky Mountains National Park

.889 3 Sevier County

.889 5 Cocke County

Including French Broad River Mount Guyot

.89 Northeastern counties

Including Holston River

.891 Greene County

Including Bald Mountains

.892 Hamblen County

Including Cherokee Reservoir

.892 4 Jefferson County

Including Douglas Reservoir

.893 Grainger County

Including Clinch Mountains

.893 5 Union County

Including Norris Lake

.894 Claiborne County

Including Cumberland Mountains in Tennessee Cumberland Gap

.894 6 Hancock County

.895 Hawkins County

Including Holston Mountains

.896 Sullivan County

Including Boone Reservoir

.897 Washington County

.898 Unicoi County

.898 4 Carter County

Including Iron Mountains Watauga Reservoir

.899 Johnson County

Including Roan and Stone Mountains

976 9 **Kentucky**

Including Ohio River

For comprehensive works on Ohio Valley see 977

---

976 901–976 904 Period divisions

901 Discovery and early exploration, 1584–1736

902 French and territorial period 1736–1792

Including formation of Transylvania Colony Kentucky County of Virginia

903 Early statehood 1792–1865

904 Modern period, 1865–

---

976 91–976 999 Geographic divisions

91 Mountain region

Including Cumberland Plateau in Kentucky eastern Kentucky

911 Southern mountain region counties

Including southeastern Kentucky

912 Bell County

Formerly called Josh Bell County

Including Pine Mountain

912 5 Knox County

913 Whitley County

913 5 McCreary County

914 Laurel County

914 5 Clay County

Including Kentucky Ridge

915 Leslie County

915 4 Harlan County

Including Cumberland Big Black Little Black, Log Mountains

976 916	Letcher County
916 5	Knott County
917	Perry County
917 6	Owsley County
918	Jackson County
918 5	Lee County
919	Breathitt County
92	Northern mountain region counties
	Including northeastern Kentucky, Big Sandy, Tug Levisa Valleys
921	Wolfe County
921 5	Magoffin County
922	Floyd County
923	Pike County
924	Martin County
924 5	Johnson County
925	Morgan County
925 5	Elliott County
926	Lawrence County
927	Boyd County
928	Carter County
929	Greenup County
929 5	Lewis County
93	Bluegrass region
	Including northern Kentucky Kentucky River
931	Outer (Northern) Bluegrass counties
	Including Licking River
932	Mason County
932 5	Bracken County
933	Pendleton County
934	Campbell County

976 935 Kenton County
.936 Boone County
.936 5 Gallatin County
.937 Carroll County
.937 5 Trimble County
.938 Oldham County
.938 5 Henry County
.939 Owen County
.939 5 Grant County

.94 Inner (Southern) Bluegrass counties
Including central Kentucky
.941 Harrison County
.941 5 Robertson County
.941 7 Nicholas County
.942 Bourbon County
.942 5 Scott County
.943 Franklin County
.943 1 Frankfort
.943 5 Shelby County
.944 Jefferson County
Including beargrass region
.945 Bullitt County
Including Salt River
.945 5 Spencer County
.946 Anderson County
.946 5 Woodford County
.947 Fayette County
.948 Jessamine County
.948 5 Mercer County
Including Harrington Lake
.949 Washington County
.949 5 Nelson County

976.95 The Knobs counties

.951 Marion County

.952 Boyle County

.952 5 Garrard County

.953 Madison County

.954 Clark County

.955 Montgomery County

.955 5 Bath County

.956 Fleming County

.957 Rowan County

.958 Menifee County

.958 5 Powell County

.959 Estill County

.96 Pennyroyal counties

Including Mississippian Plateau of Kentucky, southern Kentucky, the Barrens, Highland Rim in Kentucky, cavernous limestone area

.961 Eastern Pennyroyal counties

.962 Rockcastle County

.962 5 Lincoln County

.963 Pulaski County

Including Lake Cumberland

.964 Wayne County

.965 Clinton County

.965 5 Russell County

.966 Casey County

Including Green River Knobs

976 967 Taylor County
967 5 Adair County
968 Cumberland County
968 5 Monroe County
969 Metcalfe County
969 5 Green County
97 Western Pennyroyal counties
971 Larue County
971 5 Hart County
972 Barren County
973 Allen County
973 5 Simpson County
974 Warren County
975 Edmonson County
975 4 Mammoth Cave
975 5 Butler County
976 Logan County
977 Todd County
978 Christian County
979 Trigg County
98 Western Basin counties
Including Green River
981 Lyon County
981 5 Caldwell County
982 Hopkins County
982 6 McLean County
983 Muhlenberg County
983 5 Ohio County
984 Grayson County

976.984 5 Hardin County

985 Meade County

985.4 Breckinridge County

986 Hancock County

986.4 Daviess County

986.5 Owensboro

987 Henderson County

988 Webster County

988.5 Union County

989 Crittenden County

989.5 Livingston County

Including Kentucky Reservoir

99 Jackson Purchase counties

Including Mississippi Valley in Kentucky

991 Marshall County

992 Calloway County

993 Graves County

995 McCracken County

996 Ballard County

997 Carlisle County

998 Hickman County

999 Fulton County

977 **North central states (Lake states)**

Including comprehensive works on Mississippi River and Valley Ohio Valley Great Lakes Northwest Territory

For comprehensive works on Ohio River see 976 9

1 Ohio

977 101–977 104 Period divisions

101 *Discovery and early settlement to 1763*

Including French period

102 British and early United States periods 1763–1787

103 Territorial period and early statehood, 1787–1865

104 Modern period 1865–

977 11–977 199 Geographic divisions

11 Northwestern counties

Including Maumee River lake plains region

111 Williams County

111 5 Fulton County

112 Lucas County

Including West Sister Island Maumee Bay

113 Toledo metropolitan area

114 Defiance County

115 Henry County

116 Wood County

117 Paulding County

118 Putnam County

119 Hancock County

12 North central counties

Including Lake Erie [*formerly* *971 3] Sandusky River

121 Ottawa County

Including Catawba North Bass Middle Bass South Bass Islands

977 121 4 Sandusky County
Including Sandusky Bay
122 Erie County
123 Lorain County
124 Seneca County
125 Huron County
126 *Wyandot County*
127 Crawford County
128 Richland County
129 Ashland County

13 Northeastern counties
Including the Western Reserve
131 Cuyahoga County
Including Cuyahoga River
132 Cleveland metropolitan area
133 Lake County
133 6 Geauga County
134 Ashtabula County
135 Medina County
136 Summit County
137 Portage County
Including Berlin Reservoir
138 Trumbull County
Including Meander Reservoir
139 Mahoning County

14 West central counties
Including interior plains region
141 *Van Wert County*
141 5 Mercer County
Including Lake Saint Marys
142 Allen County
143 Auglaize County

977 144 Hardin County

145 Shelby County

146 Logan County

146 5 Champaign County

147 Darke County

148 Miami County

149 Clark County

15 Central counties

Including Scioto River

151 Marion County

151 6 Morrow County

152 Knox County

153 Union County

153 5 Delaware County

154 Licking County

155 Madison County

156 Franklin County

157 Columbus

158 Fairfield County

159 Perry County

16 East central counties

Including Allegheny Plateau region

161 Wayne County

162 Stark County

163 Columbiana County

164 Holmes County

165 Coshocton County

Including Mohican River

166 Tuscarawas County

Including Tuscarawas River

167 Carroll County

168 Harrison County

977 169 Jefferson County

17 Southwestern counties
Including Miami River
171 Preble County
172 Montgomery County
173 Dayton
174 Greene County
175 Butler County
176 Warren County
176 5 Clinton County
177 Hamilton County
178 Cincinnati metropolitan area
179 Clermont County
179 6 Brown County

18 South central counties
181 Fayette County
181 5 Pickaway County
182 Ross County
183 Hocking County
183 7 Vinton County
184 Highland County
184 7 Pike County
185 Jackson County
186 Adams County
187 Scioto County
188 Lawrence County
189 Gallia County

19 Southeastern counties
191 Muskingum County
Including Muskingum River
192 Guernsey County

977 193 Belmont County

194 Morgan County

195 Noble County

196 Monroe County

197 Athens County

Including Hocking River

198 Washington County

199 Meigs County

2 **Indiana**

201–204 Period divisions

Divide like 977 101–977 104, e.g., territorial period of Indiana 977 203

---

977 21–977 299 Geographic divisions

21 Southeastern counties

Including uplands region

211 Dearborn County

212 Ohio County

212 5 Switzerland County

213 Jefferson County

214 Ripley County

215 Franklin County

216 Decatur County

217 Jennings County

218 Scott County

218 5 Clark County

219 Floyd County

22 South central counties

Including southern hill and lowlands region

221 Harrison County

222 Washington County

977.223	Jackson County
.224	Bartholomew County
.225	Brown County
.225 5	Monroe County
.226	Lawrence County
.227	Orange County
.228	Crawford County
.229	Perry County
.23	Southwestern counties
	Including White River Wabash lowland region
.231	Spencer County
.232	Warrick County
.233	Vanderburgh County
.234	Posey County
.235	Gibson County
.236	Pike County
.237	Dubois County
.238	Martin County
.238 5	Daviess County
.239	Knox County
.24	West central counties
	Including Wabash River, central plains region
.241	Sullivan County
.242	Greene County
.243	Owen County
.244	Clay County
.245	Vigo County
.246	Vermillion County
.246 5	Parke County
.247	Fountain County
.248	Montgomery County
.249	Putnam County

977 25 Central counties

.251 Morgan County

.251 5 Johnson County

252 Marion County

.252 1 Indianapolis metropolitan area

.253 Hendricks County

.254 Boone County

255 Clinton County

.255 5 Tipton County

256 Hamilton County

257 Madison County

258 Hancock County

259 Shelby County

26 East central counties

.261 Rush County

262 Fayette County

262 5 Union County

263 Wayne County

264 Henry County

265 Delaware County

266 Randolph County

267 Jay County

.268 Blackford County

269 Grant County

27 Northeastern counties

271 Huntington County

272 Wells County

273 Adams County

274 Allen County

.275 Whitley County

977.276 Noble County

277 De Kalb County

278 Steuben County

279 Lagrange County

.28 North central counties

Including northern hill and lake region

281 Elkhart County

282 Kosciusko County

283 Wabash County

284 Miami County

285 Howard County

286 Cass County

287 Fulton County

288 Marshall County

289 Saint Joseph County

.29 Northwestern counties

291 La Porte County

.292 Starke County

.292 5 Pulaski County

.293 White County

294 Carroll County

295 Tippecanoe County

296 Warren County

297 Benton County

.297 4 Newton County

.297 7 Jasper County

298 Porter County

.299 Lake County

977 3 Illinois

301–304 Period divisions

Divide like 977 101–977 104 e g territorial period of Illinois 977 303

---

977 31–977 399 9 Geographic divisions

31 Cook County

311 Chicago metropolitan area

32 Northeastern counties

Including Des Plaines River

For Cook County see 977 31

321 Lake County

322 McHenry County

323 Kane County

324 Du Page County

325 Will County

326 Kendall County

326 5 Grundy County

327 La Salle County

328 De Kalb County

329 Boone County

33 Northwestern counties

Including Rock River

331 Winnebago County

332 Ogle County

333 Stephenson County

334 Jo Daviess County

334 5 Carroll County

335 Whiteside County

336 Lee County

337 Bureau County

977 337 5	Putnam County
338	Henry County
339	Rock Island County
339 5	Mercer County
34	West central counties
341	Henderson County
341 5	Warren County
342	McDonough County
343	Hancock County
344	Adams County
345	Pike County
345 5	Scott County
346	Morgan County
346 5	Cass County
347	Brown County
347 5	Schuyler County
348	Fulton County
349	Knox County
35	Central counties
	Including Illinois River and Valley
351	Stark County
351 5	Marshall County
352	Peoria County
353	Woodford County
354	Tazewell County
355	Mason County
	Including Sangamon River
355 5	Menard County
356	Sangamon County
356 1	Springfield
357	Logan County
358	Macon County

977 358 5 De Witt County

359 McLean County

36 East central counties

Including Vermilion River

361 Livingston County

362 Ford County

363 Kankakee County

364 Iroquois County

365 Vermilion County

366 Champaign County

367 Piatt County

367 5 Moultrie County

368 Douglas County

369 Edgar County

37 Southeastern counties

Including Embarrass and Little Wabash Rivers Skillet Fork

371 Clark County

372 Coles County

373 Cumberland County

374 Jasper County

375 Crawford County

376 Lawrence County

377 Richland County

378 Wabash County

379 1 Edwards County

379 2 Wayne County

379 3 Jefferson County

379 4 Marion County

379 5 Clay County

379 6 Effingham County

379 7 Fayette County

379 8 Shelby County

977.38 Southwestern counties

Including Kaskaskia River

.381 Christian County

.382 Montgomery County

.383 Macoupin County

.384 Greene County

.385 Calhoun County

.385 5 Jersey County

.386 Madison County

.387 Bond County

.387 5 Clinton County

.388 Washington County

.389 Saint Clair County

.39 Southern counties

.391 Monroe County

.392 Randolph County

.393 Perry County

.394 Franklin County

.395 Hamilton County

.396 White County

.397 Gallatin County

.398 Hardin County

.399 1 Pope County

.399 2 Saline County

.399 3 Williamson County

.399 4 Jackson County

.399 5 Union County

.399 6 Johnson County

.399 7 Massac County

.399 8 Pulaski County

.399 9 Alexander County

977 4 Michigan

Including Lake Huron [*formerly* *971 3] Lake Michigan

401–404 Period divisions

Divide like 977 101–977 104 e g territorial period of Michigan 977 403

---

977 41–977 499 7 Geographic divisions

41 Southwestern counties of Lower Peninsula

Including Kalamazoo River

411 Berrien County

Including Saint Joseph River

412 Cass County

413 Van Buren County

414 Allegan County

415 Ottawa County

416 Barry County

417 Kalamazoo County

418 Kalamazoo

419 Saint Joseph County

42 South central counties of Lower Peninsula

421 Branch County

422 Calhoun County

423 Eaton County

424 Clinton County

425 Shiawassee County

426 Ingham County

427 Lansing

428 Jackson County

429 Hillsdale County

977.43 Southeastern counties of Lower Peninsula

Including Lake Saint Clair

431 Lenawee County

Including Raisin River

432 Monroe County

433 Wayne County

Including Detroit River

434 Detroit metropolitan area

435 Washtenaw County

436 Livingston County

437 Genesee County

Including Flint River

438 Oakland County

439 Macomb County

44 Southeast central counties of Lower Peninsula

Including Saginaw Bay

441 Saint Clair County

Including Saint Clair River

442 Lapeer County

443 Sanilac County

444 Huron County

445 Tuscola County

446 Saginaw County

447 Bay County

Including Saginaw River

448 Midland County

449 Gratiot County

45 Southwest central counties of Lower Peninsula

Including Muskegon River

451 Isabella County

452 Mecosta County

453 Montcalm County

977.454 Ionia County
455 Kent County
456 Grand Rapids
457 Muskegon County
458 Newaygo County
459 Oceana County
46 Northwest central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Manistee River
461 Mason County
Including Pere Marquette River
462 Manistee County
463 Benzie County
463.5 Leelanau County
Including part of former Manitou County; North and South Fox Islands; North and South Manitou Islands
464 Grand Traverse County
Including Grand Traverse Bay
465 Kalkaska County
466 Missaukee County
467 Wexford County
468 Lake County
469 Osceola County
47 Northeast central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Au Sable River
471 Clare County
472 Gladwin County
473 Arenac County
474 Iosco County
475 Ogemaw County
476 Roscommon County
477 Crawford County
478 Oscoda County
479 Alcona County

977 48 Northern counties of Lower Peninsula

Including Straits of Mackinac

481 Alpena County

482 Presque Isle County

483 Montmorency County

484 Otsego County

485 Antrim County

486 Charlevoix County

Including part of former Manitou County, Hog Beaver Garden High Islands

487 Cheboygan County

Including Black Lake and River

488 Emmet County

489 Manitou County to 1896

Divided in 1896 between Leelanau County and Charlevoix County

For Leelanau County see 977 463 5 *Charlevoix County* 977 486

49 Upper Peninsula

Including Lake Superior [*formerly* *971 3]

491 Chippewa County

Including Whitefish Bay Saint Marys River Sugar, Neebish Drummond Islands

492 Mackinac County

Including Mackinac Marquette Bois Blanc Islands Manistique Lake

492 5 Luce County

493 Alger County

Including Wood Grand Islands

493 5 Schoolcraft County

494 Delta County

Including Summer Poverty Saint Martin Islands

977 495 Menominee County

Including Menominee River

495 5 Dickinson County

496 Marquette County

497 Baraga County

497 5 Iron County

498 Gogebic County

Including Lake Gogebic

498 5 Ontonagon County

Including Porcupine Mountains

499 Houghton County

499 5 Keweenaw County

Including Keweenaw Peninsula

499 7 Isle Royale

Including Isle Royale National Park

5 **Wisconsin**

Including Wisconsin River

501–504 Period divisions

Divide like 977 101–977 104 e g territorial period of Wisconsin 977 503

---

977 51–977 599 Geographic divisions

51 Northwestern counties

Including Lake Superior lowland region Saint Croix River

511 Douglas County

512 *Superior*

513 Bayfield County

Including Sand Island

514 Burnett County

515 Washburn County

516 Sawyer County

977.517 Polk County
.518 Barron County
.519 Rusk County
Formerly Gates County
.52 North central counties
Including Lake Superior highland region
.521 Ashland County
Including Apostle Islands
.522 Iron County
.523 Vilas County
.524 Price County
.525 Oneida County
.526 Taylor County
.527 Lincoln County
.528 Clark County
.529 Marathon County
.53 Northeastern counties
Including Green Bay
.531 Forest County
.532 Florence County
.533 Marinette County
.534 Marinette
.535 Langlade County
Including Wolf River
.536 Shawano County
.537 Oconto County
.538 Waupaca County
.539 Outagamie County
.54 West central counties
Including western upland region Chippewa River
.541 Saint Croix County

977 542 Pierce County
543 Dunn County
544 Chippewa County
545 Eau Claire County
546 Eau Claire
547 Pepin County
548 Buffalo County
549 Trempealeau County

55 Central counties
Including central plain region Black River
551 Jackson County
552 Wood County
553 Portage County
554 Monroe County
555 Juneau County
556 Adams County
557 Waushara County
558 Marquette County
559 Green Lake County

56 East central counties
Including eastern ridge and lowland region Fox River
561 Brown County
562 Kewaunee County
Including comprehensive works on Door Peninsula
563 Door County
Including Washington Chambers Islands
564 Winnebago County
Including Lake Winnebago
565 Oshkosh
566 Calumet County
567 Manitowoc County
568 Fond du Lac County

977 623 5 Jackson County
624 Nobles County
625 Rock County
626 Pipestone County
627 Murray County
628 Cottonwood County
629 Watonwan County

63 Southwest central counties
Including Minnesota River and Valley
631 Brown County
632 Nicollet County
633 Sibley County
634 Renville County
635 Redwood County
636 Lyon County
636 5 Lincoln County
637 Yellow Medicine County
638 Lac Qui Parle County
639 Chippewa County

64 West central counties
Including central plains region
641 Swift County
642 Stevens County
643 Big Stone County
643 5 Traverse County
644 Grant County
645 Douglas County
646 Pope County

977 647 Stearns County

648 Kandiyohi County

649 Meeker County

65 Southeast central counties

651 Wright County

652 McLeod County

653 Carver County

654 Scott County

655 Le Sueur County

655 5 Rice County

656 Dakota County

657 Hennepin County

657 9 Minneapolis

Including comprehensive works on Minneapolis–Saint Paul (Twin Cities) metropolitan area

For Saint Paul see 977 658 1

658 Ramsey County

658 1 Saint Paul

659 Washington County

66 East central counties

661 Chisago County

662 Pine County

663 Kanabec County

664 Isanti County

665 Anoka County

666 Sherburne County

667 Benton County

668 Mille Lacs County

Including Mille Lacs Lake

669 Morrison County

977 67 Northeastern counties

Including northeastern highlands region

671 Crow Wing County

672 Aitkin County

673 Carlton County

674 Lake Superior region

Including Arrowhead country

675 Cook County

676 Lake County

Including Vermilion Range

677 Saint Louis County

Including Mesabi Range La Croix Lake

677 1 Duluth metropolitan area

For Superior, Wisconsin see 977 512

678 Itasca County

Including Winnibigoshish Lake

679 Koochiching County

Including Rainy River, Rainy Lake

68 North central counties

681 Lake of the Woods County

Including Lake of the Woods

682 Beltrami County

683 Clearwater County

684 Becker County

685 Hubbard County

686 Cass County

687 Wadena County

688 Todd County

689 Otter Tail County

977 69 Northwestern counties

Including Lake Agassiz plains region Red River of the North in Minnesota

691 *Wilkin County*

692 Clay County

693 Norman County

694 Mahnomen County

695 Polk County

Including Red Lake River

696 Red Lake County

696 5 Pennington County

697 *Marshall County*

698 Roseau County

Including Muskeg Bay

699 Kittson County

7 Iowa

Including Des Moines River

---

977 701–977 703 Period divisions

701 Discovery and early settlement, 1673–1838

702 Territorial period and early statehood 1838–1900

703 Modern period 1900–

---

977 71–977 799 Geographic divisions

71 Northwestern counties

Including Big Sioux and Little Sioux Rivers in Iowa

711 *Lyon County*

711 6 Osceola County

712 Dickinson County

712 5 Emmet County

713 Sioux County

977 714	O Brien County
715	Clay County
715 5	Palo Alto County
716	Plymouth County
717	Cherokee County
718	Buena Vista County
719	Pocahontas County
72	North central counties
721	Kossuth County
722	Winnebago County
723	Worth County
723 4	Mitchell County
724	Hancock County
725	Cerro Gordo County
726	Floyd County
727	Humboldt County
727 4	Wright County
728	Franklin County
729	Butler County
73	Northeastern counties Including Turkey River
731	Howard County
731 5	Chickasaw County
732	Winneshiek County
733	Allamakee County
734	Bremer County
735	Fayette County
736	Clayton County
737	Black Hawk County
738	Buchanan County
738 5	Delaware County
739	Dubuque County

977 74	West central counties
	Including Boyer Raccoon Rivers
741	Woodbury County
742	Ida County
742 4	Sac County
743	Calhoun County
744	Monona County
745	Crawford County
746	Carroll County
746 6	Greene County
747	Harrison County
748	Shelby County
748 6	Audubon County
749	Guthrie County
75	*Central counties*
751	Webster County
752	Hamilton County
753	Hardin County
753 7	Grundy County
754	Boone County
754 6	Story County
755	Marshall County
756	Tama County
757	Dallas County
758	Polk County
758 1	Des Moines
759	Jasper County
759 6	Poweshiek County

977 76 East central counties

Including Wapsipinicon, Cedar, Iowa Rivers

761 Benton County

762 Linn County

763 Jones County

764 Jackson County

765 Iowa County

765 5 Johnson County

766 Cedar County

767 Clinton County

768 Muscatine County

769 Scott County

769 1 Davenport

Including Davenport-Rock Island-Moline metropolit area

For Rock Island Moline see 977 339

77 Southwestern counties

Including Nishnabotna River

771 Pottawattamie County

772 Cass County

773 Adair County

774 Mills County

775 Montgomery County

776 Adams County

777 Fremont County

778 Page County

779 Taylor County

977.78 South central counties

.781 Madison County

.782 Warren County

.783 Marion County

.784 Mahaska County

.785 Union County

.785 6 Clarke County

.786 Lucas County

.786 5 Monroe County

.787 Ringgold County

.787 5 Decatur County

.788 Wayne County

.789 Appanoose County

.79 Southeastern counties

Including Skunk River

.791 Keokuk County

.792 Washington County

.792 6 Louisa County

.793 Wapello County

.794 Jefferson County

.795 Henry County

.796 Des Moines County

.797 Davis County

.798 Van Buren County

.799 Lee County

977.8 **Missouri**

Including Missouri River in Missouri

977.801-977.804 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early settlement 1673-1750

.802 French and Spanish periods 1750-1803

.803 Territorial period and early statehood 1803-1900

.804 Modern period 1900-

977.81-977.899 6 Geographic divisions

.81 Northwest counties

Including prairies region

.811 Atchison County

.811 5 Holt County

.812 Nodaway County

.812 6 Andrew County

.813 Buchanan County

.813 5 Platte County

.814 Worth County

Including Grand River

.814 5 Gentry County

.815 De Kalb County

.815 5 Clinton County

.816 Clay County

.817 Harrison County

.818 Daviess County

.818 5 Caldwell County

.819 Ray County

977 82 North central counties

Including Chariton River

821 Mercer County

821 5 Grundy County

822 Livingston County

822 5 Carroll County

823 Putnam County

823 5 Sullivan County

824 Linn County

825 Chariton County

826 Schuyler County

826 4 Adair County

827 Macon County

828 Randolph County

828 5 Howard County

829 Boone County

83 Northeastern counties

Including glacial plains region

831 Scotland County

831 5 Knox County

832 Shelby County

Including Salt River

832 5 Monroe County

833 Audrain County

833 5 Callaway County

834 Clark County

834 5 Lewis County

835 Marion County

835 5 Ralls County

836 Pike County

977 837 Lincoln County
838 Montgomery County
838 6 Warren County
839 Saint Charles County

84 West central counties
Including old prairies region
841 Jackson County
841 1 Kansas City metropolitan area
For Johnson County, Kansas, see 978 167 5, Wyandotte County, Kansas, 978 139
842 Cass County
843 Bates County
844 Vernon County
845 Lafayette County
845 5 Johnson County
846 Henry County
846 6 Saint Clair County
847 Saline County
848 Pettis County
849 Benton County
Including Lake of the Ozarks
849 6 Hickory County

85 Central counties
Including Ozark highlands region
851 Cooper County
852 Moniteau County
853 Morgan County
854 Camden County
855 Cole County
855 1 Jefferson City
856 Miller County

977 857	Pulaski County
858	Osage County
859	Maries County
859 4	Phelps County
86	East central counties
861	Gasconade County
862	Crawford County
863	Franklin County
864	Washington County
865	Saint Louis County
866	Saint Louis (city)
867	Jefferson County
868	Saint Francois County
869	Sainte Genevieve County
869 4	Perry County
87	Southwestern counties
871	Barton County
872	Jasper County
873	Newton County
873 6	McDonald County
874	Cedar County
874 5	Dade County
875	Lawrence County
876	Barry County
877	Polk County
878	Greene County
879	Christian County
879 4	Stone County
879 7	Taney County

977 88	South central counties
	Including Ozark Plateau in Missouri
881	Dallas County
881 5	Laclede County
882	Webster County
882 5	Wright County
883	Douglas County
883 5	Ozark County
884	Texas County
885	Howell County
886	Dent County
887	Shannon County
887 5	Oregon County
888	Iron County
888 5	Reynolds County
889	Carter County
889 4	Ripley County
89	Southeastern counties
	Including southeastern lowlands region
891	Madison County
892	Wayne County
893	Butler County
894	Bollinger County
895	Stoddard County
896	*Cape Girardeau County*
897	Scott County
898	Mississippi County
898 5	New Madrid County
899	Dunklin County
899 6	Pemiscot County

978 **Western states**

Including the West, Rocky Mountains Continental Divide, Missouri River

.1 **Kansas**

Including Kansas (Kaw) River

978 101–978 103 Period divisions

101 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803

Including Spanish and French periods

102 Territorial period, 1803–1861

103 Statehood, 1861–

978 11–978 199 Geographic divisions

11 Northwestern counties

Including High Plains in Kansas

111 Cheyenne County

111 5 Sherman County

112 Wallace County

112 5 Rawlins County

113 Thomas County

113 5 Logan County

114 Decatur County

114 5 Sheridan County

115 Gove County

115 5 Norton County

116 Graham County

116 5 Trego County

117 Phillips County

118 Rooks County

119 Ellis County

978.12	North central counties
	Including Central Plains in Kansas Solomon Republican Big Blue Rivers
121	Smith County
121.5	Osborne County
122	Jewell County
123	Mitchell County
124	Republic County
125	Cloud County
126	Ottawa County
127	Washington County
127.5	Clay County
128	Riley County
129	Geary County
13	Northeastern counties
	Including Bluestem Belt
131	Marshall County
132	Pottawatomie County
133	Nemaha County
133.5	Jackson County
134	Brown County
135	Doniphan County
136	Atchison County
137	Jefferson County
138	Leavenworth County
139	Wyandotte County
14	West central counties
	Including Arkansas River in Kansas
141	Greeley County
141.5	Hamilton County
142	Wichita County

978 142 5	Kearny County
143	Scott County
144	Finney County
145	Lane County
146	Ness County
147	Hodgeman County
148	Rush County
149	Pawnee County
15	Central counties
151	Russell County
152	Barton County
153	Lincoln County
153 5	Ellsworth County
154	Rice County
154 5	Saline County
155	McPherson County
156	Dickinson County
157	Marion County
158	Morris County
159	Chase County
16	East central counties
161	Wabaunsee County
162	Lyon County
163	Shawnee County
163 1	Topeka
164	Osage County
164 5	Coffey County
165	Douglas County
166	Franklin County
167	Anderson County
167 5	Johnson County

978 168	Miami County
169	Linn County
17	Southwestern counties
171	Stanton County
171 5	Morton County
172	Grant County
172 5	Stevens County
173	Haskell County
173 5	Seward County
174	Gray County
175	Meade County
176	Ford County
177	Clark County
178	Edwards County
178 5	Kiowa County
179	Comanche County
18	South central counties
181	Stafford County
181 5	Pratt County
182	Barber County
183	Reno County
184	Kingman County
184 5	Harper County
185	Harvey County
186	Sedgwick County
187	Sumner County
188	Butler County
189	Cowley County
19	Southeastern counties
191	Greenwood County
191 5	Elk County

978 191 8 Chautauqua County

.192 Woodson County

.192 5 Wilson County

.193 Montgomery County

.194 Allen County

.195 Neosho County

.196 *Labette County*

.197 Bourbon County

.198 Crawford County

.199 Cherokee County

.2 Nebraska

Including Platte River

---

978 201–978 203 Period divisions

201 Discovery and early exploration, 1739–1854

Including French period

202 Territorial period, 1854–1867

.203 Statehood, 1867–

---

978 21–978 299 Geographic divisions

21 *Eastern Nebraska*

22 Missouri River lowland region

.221 Northeastern counties

Including Loess Hills region

222 Dixon County

222 4 Dakota County

222 7 Thurston County

Called Blackbird County before 1889

.223 Cuming County

223 5 Dodge County

224 Burt County

978.224 5 Washington County

.225 Douglas County

.225 6 Sarpy County

.226 Southeastern counties

Including Drift Hills region

.227 Cass County

.227 3 Otoe County

Called Pierce County until 1855

For present Pierce County see 978.256

.227 6 Johnson County

.227 8 Nemaha County

Called Forney County until 1855

.228 Richardson County

.228 4 Pawnee County

.228 6 Gage County

Including former Jackson County

.228 7 Beatrice

.229 Lancaster County

Including former Clay County

For present Clay County see 978.235 7

.229 1 Lincoln

.229 6 Saunders County

Called Calhoun County until 1862

Including Todd Valley

.23 Southern central counties

Including Loess Plains region

.231 Blue River area

Including Big Blue and Little Blue Rivers

.232 Butler County

.232 4 Seward County

Called Greene County until 1862

.232 7 Saline County

Including former Johnston County

978.233 Jefferson County

Formerly called Jones County

For former Jefferson County, see 978.2335

.2335 Thayer County

Formerly Jefferson County

For present Jefferson County, see 978.233

.234 Fillmore County

.2345 York County

.235 Polk County

.2354 Hamilton County

.2357 Clay County

For original Clay County, see 978.229

.236 Republican River area

.237 Nuckolls County

.2374 Webster County

.2377 Franklin County

.238 Harlan County

.2384 Furnas County

.2387 Gosper County

.239 Phelps County

.2394 Kearney County

.2397 Adams County

.2398 Hastings

.24 Central counties

Including Platte Valley lowland region, Loup River area

.241 Hall County

.242 Merrick County

.2425 Nance County

.243 Howard County

.244 Sherman County

.245 Buffalo County

.246 Dawson County

978 247 Custer County

Including Garber and Kountze Counties as proposed in 1875

.248 Valley County

.249 Greeley County

.25 Northeast central counties

Including Loess Hills region, Elkhorn River area

.251 Boone County

.252 Platte County

Including former Monroe and Loup Counties

For present Loup County, see 978 276 7

253 Colfax County

253 5 Stanton County

Called McNeale County, 1855, Izard County, 1856–1862

254 Madison County

255 Antelope County

256 Pierce County

For original Pierce County, see 978 227 3

257 Wayne County

258 Cedar County

259 Knox County

Called L'Eau qui Court County until 1873

.26 Western Nebraska

27 North central counties

Including Sand Hills region

.271 Niobrara River (L'Eau qui Court, Running Water River) area

Including Northern Tablelands region

272 Boyd County

.272 5 Keyapaha County

.273 Cherry County

273 6 Brown County

.274 Rock County

978 274 5 Holt County

Including West County establisht 1860 but never organized

275 Southern Sand Hills area

276 Wheeler County

.276 4 Garfield County

276 7 Loup County

For original Loup County see 978 252

277 Blaine County

.277 4 Thomas County

277 7 Hooker County

278 Grant County

278 5 Arthur County

279 McPherson County

279 5 Logan County

28 Southwestern counties

281 Loess Canyons area

282 Lincoln County

Called Shorter County until 1861

283 Hayes County

283 5 Frontier County

284 Redwillow County

284 5 Hitchcock County

285 Perkins Plain area

286 Dundy County

287 Chase County

288 Perkins County

289 Keith County

Including McConaughy Lake

29 Northwestern counties

Including Western Tablelands region Panhandle

291 Deuel County

291 5 Garden County

8 292 Sheridan County

Including proposed Kersey County

293 Dawes County

294 Box Butte County

.295 Morrill County

Including North Platte Plain

.296 Cheyenne County

Including former unorganized Taylor County

297 Kimball County

Including proposed Potter County, former unorganized Lyons County

297 5 Banner County

298 Scotts Bluff County

.299 Sioux County

.3 South Dakota

Including comprehensive works on Dakota Territory

---

978 301–978 303 Period divisions

301 Discovery and early exploration, 1743–1861

Including French period

302 Territorial period, 1861–1889

303 Statehood, 1889–

---

978 31–978 397 Geographic divisions

.31 Glacial Drift region (Prairie Plains)

.311 Northern counties

Including Minnesota Basin counties, Coteaux des Prairies counties

.312 Roberts County

.313 Marshall County

314 Day County

.314 4 Brown County

978.315 Edmunds County
.316 McPherson County
.317 Campbell County
.318 Walworth County
.319 Potter County
.32 Faulk County
.321 Spink County
.322 Clark County
.323 Codington County
.324 Grant County
.325 Deuel County
.326 Hamlin County
.327 Brookings County
.327 3 Kingsbury County
.327 4 Beadle County
.328 Hand County
.328 3 Hyde County
.328 4 Sully County
.329 Hughes County
Including Pierre

.33 Southern counties
Including James River and Valley, Missouri Hills region
.331 Buffalo County
.332 Jerauld County
.333 Sanborn County
.334 Miner County
.335 Lake County
.336 Moody County
.337 Minnehaha County
.337 2 McCook County
.337 3 Hanson County
.337 4 Davison County
.337 5 Aurora County

978.338 Brule County

.338 2 Charles Mix County

.338 3 Douglas County

.338 4 Hutchinson County

.338 5 Turner County

.339 Lincoln County

Including Big Sioux River

.339 2 Union County

.339 3 Clay County

.339 4 Yankton County

.339 5 Bon Homme County

.34 Western Plains region

.341 Missouri Plateau counties

Including Grand Moreau Cheyenne Rivers

.342 Harding County

.343 Butte County

.344 Meade County

.345 Perkins County

.35 Corson County

.353 Ziebach County

.354 Dewey County

Including former Armstrong County

.355 Stanley County

.356 Haakon County

.357 Jackson County

.357 7 Jones County

.358 Lyman County

.359 Gregory County

.36 High Plains counties

Including White River

.361 Tripp County

.362 Todd County

.363 Mellette County

978 364 Washabaugh County

365 Bennett County

366 Shannon County

39 Black Hills region

391 Lawrence County

393 Pennington County

395 Custer County

397 Fall River County

.4 North Dakota

401–403 Period divisions

Divide like 978 301–978 303 e g territorial period of North Dakota 978 402

---

978 41–978 495 Geographic divisions

41 Red River Valley region

Including Red River of the North

412 Richland County

413 Cass County

414 Traill County

416 Grand Forks County

418 Walsh County

419 Pembina County

43 Glacial Drift Plains region

Including Sheyenne River James River in North Dakota

431 Sargent County

431 5 Ransom County

432 Barnes County

Including Lake Ashtabula (Baldhill Reservoir)

433 Steele County

434 Griggs County

435 Nelson County

978.436 Ramsey County
Including Devils Lake
.437 Cavalier County
.438 Towner County
.439 Benson County
.45 Eddy County
.451 Foster County
.452 Stutsman County
.453 LaMoure County
.454 Dickey County
.455 McIntosh County
.456 Logan County
.457 Kidder County
.458 Wells County
.459 Pierce County
.459 2 Rolette County
.46 Lake Souris Plain counties
Including Souris River, Turtle Mountains
.461 Bottineau County
.462 McHenry County
.463 Ward County
.464 Renville County
.47 Missouri Plateau counties (Coteau du Missouri)
.471 Divide County
.472 Burke County
.473 Williams County
.474 Mountrail County
.475 McLean County
Including Garrison Reservoir
.476 Sheridan County
.477 Burleigh County
Including Bismarck
.478 Emmons County

978.48 Great Plains region

Including Little Missouri River

.481 McKenzie County

.482 Dunn County

.483 Mercer County

.484 Oliver County

.484 4 Stark County

.485 Morton County

.486 Hettinger County

.487 Grant County

Including Heart Butte Reservoir

.488 Sioux County

.489 Adams County

.49 Badlands counties

.492 Bowman County

.493 Slope County

.494 Billings County

.495 Golden Valley County

.6 Montana

978.601–978.603 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1803–1864

.602 Territorial period, 1864–1899

.603 Statehood, 1899–

978.61–978.689 Geographic divisions

.61 Great Plains region

.611 Northern counties

Including Milk River

.612 Toole County

.613 Liberty County

978 614	Hill County
615	Blaine County
616	Phillips County
617	Valley County Including Fort Peck Reservoir
62	Daniels County
621	Sheridan County
622	Roosevelt County
623	Richland County
624	Dawson County
625	Prairie County
626	McCone County
627	Garfield County
628	Petroleum County
629	Fergus County
629 3	Chouteau County
63	Southern counties Including Yellowstone River
631	Golden Valley County
631 2	Musselshell County
631 3	Treasure County
632	Rosebud County
633	Custer County
634	Wibaux County
635	Fallon County
636	Carter County
637	Powder River County
638	Big Horn County
639	Yellowstone County

978 65 Rocky Mountains region

Including Bitterroot Range

.651 Central and southwestern counties

Counties predominantly east of the Continental Divide

.652 Glacier County

Including Waterton Glacier International Peace Park, Glacier National Park

.653 Pondera County

.655 Teton County

66 Lewis and Clark County

Including Helena

661 Cascade County

661 2 Meagher County

662 Judith Basin County

663 Wheatland County

664 Sweet Grass County

665 Stillwater County

665 2 Carbon County

666 Park County

666 2 Gallatin County

666 3 Madison County

666 4 Broadwater County

667 Jefferson County

668 Silver Bow County

669 Beaverhead County

68 Northwestern counties

Counties predominantly west of the Continental Divide

Including Cabinet and Purcell Mountains, Mission Range

681 Lincoln County

682 Flathead County

Including Lewis Range

978.8 Colorado

978.801–978.803 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803

.802 *Acquisition and territorial period, 1803–1876*

Including acquisition of East Colorado thru Louisiana Purchase of West Colorado from Mexico

.803 Statehood, 1876–

978.81–978.899 Geographic divisions

.81 Colorado Plateau region

.811 Northern Plateau counties

Including Colorado River in Colorado

.812 Moffat County

Including Dinosaur National Monument Yampa Plateau

.814 Routt County

Including Elk Head Mountains

.815 Rio Blanco County

.816 Garfield County

Including Roan Plateau and Cliffs

.817 Mesa County

.818 Delta County

.819 Montrose County

Including Uncompahgre Plateau

.82 Southern Plateau counties

.822 Ouray County

.823 San Miguel County

.825 San Juan County

.826 Dolores County

978.827 Montezuma County

829 La Plata County
Including La Plata Mountains

83 *Rocky Mountains region*

831 South central counties

832 Archuleta County

833 Conejos County
Formerly Guadaloupe County
Including San Luis Valley

835 Costilla County
Including Sangre de Cristo grant

836 Alamosa County

837 Rio Grande County

838 Mineral County
Including San Juan Mountains

839 Hinsdale County

84 West central counties
Including Sawatch Range

841 Gunnison County
Including Elk Mountains

843 Pitkin County

844 Eagle County

845 Summit County
Including Gore Range

846 Lake County
Including Leadville Basin

847 Chaffee County

978.849 Saguache County

Including Sangre de Cristo Range, Great Sand Dunes National Monument

.85 East central counties

.851 Huerfano County

Including Park Plateau

.852 Custer County

Including Wet Mountains

.853 Fremont County

Including Royal Gorge of the Arkansas

.855 Pueblo County

.856 El Paso County

.858 Teller County

.859 Park County

Including Mosquito Range, South Park

.86 North central counties

.861 Clear Creek County

.862 Gilpin County

.863 Boulder County

.865 Grand County

Including Rabbit Ears Range, Middle Park, Granby Reservoir

.866 Jackson County

Including Park Range, North Park

.868 Larimer County

.869 Rocky Mountain National Park

.87 Great Plains region (Eastern Colorado)

.871 Northern Plains counties

Including South Platte River

978 872	Weld County
874	Morgan County
875	Logan County
876	Sedgwick County
877	Phillips County
878	Yuma County
879	Washington County
88	West Central Plains counties
881	Adams County
882	Arapahoe County
883	Denver County
883 1	Denver
884	Jefferson County
886	Douglas County
887	Elbert County
889	Lincoln County
89	Southern Plains counties
891	Kit Carson County
892	Cheyenne County
893	Kiowa County
894	Crowley County
895	Otero County
896	Las Animas County Including Culebra Range
897	Bent County
898	Prowers County
899	Baca County

978.9 New Mexico

978.901–978.905 Period divisions

901 Discovery and early exploration, 1540–1598

902 Spanish period, 1598–1821

903 Mexican period, 1821–1848

904 Territorial period, 1848–1912

905 Statehood 1912–

978.91–978.993 Geographic divisions

91 Great Plains region

92 Raton Section counties

Including northeastern counties

922 Colfax County

923 Union County

924 Harding County

925 Guadalupe County

926 Quay County

927 Curry County

93 Llano Estacado counties

932 Roosevelt County

933 Lea County

94 Pecos Valley counties

942 Eddy County

943 Chaves County

944 De Baca County

95 Rocky Mountains region

952 Rio Arriba County

953 Taos County

978 954 Mora County

955 San Miguel County

956 Santa Fe County

Including Santa Fe

957 Sandoval County

958 Los Alamos County

96 Basin and Range region

Including upper Rio Grande Valley

961 Bernalillo County

962 Socorro County

Including Elephant Butte Reservoir, Jornada del Muerto, San Andres Mountains

963 Torrance County

964 Lincoln County

965 Otero County

Including Tularosa Valley White Sands National Monument Sacramento Mountains

966 Dona Ana County

967 Sierra County

968 Luna County

969 Grant County

969 3 Hidalgo County

Including Peloncillo Mountains

97 Colorado Plateau region

98 San Juan Basin counties

982 San Juan County

983 McKinley County

99 Datil Section counties

992 Valencia County

993 Catron County

Including Plains of Saint Augustine

979 **Far western states**

Including comprehensive works on Pacific Coast New Southwest

.1 Arizona

101–105 Period divisions

Divide like 978 901–978 905 e g territorial period of Arizona 979 104

---

979 13–979 179 Geographic divisions

13 Colorado Plateau region

Including comprehensive works on Colorado River

132 Grand Canyon National Park

Including Grand Canyon National Monument

133 Coconino County

Including Painted Desert Little Colorado River

135 Navajo County

137 Apache County

Including Petrified Forest National Monument

15 Mountain region (Mexican Highland region)

151 Greenlee County

153 Cochise County

154 Graham County

Including San Carlos Lake

155 Gila County

Including Roosevelt Reservoir

157 Yavapai County

159 Mohave County

17 Plains region (Sonoran Desert region)

Including Gila River

171 Yuma County

173 Maricopa County

Including Phoenix

979 175 Pinal County

177 Pima County

179 Santa Cruz County

.2 **Utah**

979 201–979 203 Period divisions

201 Discovery and early exploration, 1776–1848

Including Spanish and Mexican periods

202 Territorial period, 1848–1896

Including provisional State of Deseret

203 Statehood, 1896–

979 21–979 259 Geographic divisions

21 Wyoming Basin region

212 Cache County

213 Rich County

214 Summit County

Including Uinta Mountains

215 Daggett County

22 Rocky Mountains region

Including Wasatch Range

221 Uintah County

Including comprehensive works on Green River

222 Duchesne County

223 Wasatch County

224 Utah County

225 Salt Lake County

Including Salt Lake City

226 Morgan County

227 Davis County

Including Antelope Island

979.228 Weber County

.24 Great Basin region

.242 Box Elder County
Including Great Salt Lake

.243 Tooele County
Including Great Salt Desert

.244 Juab County
Including Deep Creek Mountains

.245 Millard County
Including Pavant Mountains Confusion Range

.246 Beaver County

.247 Iron County

.248 Washington County
Including Zion National Monument, Zion National Park

.25 Colorado Plateau region

.251 Kane County
Including Kaiparowits Plateau, Bryce Canyon National Park

.252 Garfield County
Including Paunsaugunt Plateau

.253 Piute County

.254 Wayne County

.255 Sevier County

.256 Sanpete County
Including Wasatch Plateau

.2566 Carbon County

.257 Emery County

.258 Grand County

.259 San Juan County
Including San Juan River

979.3 Nevada

979.301-979.303 Period divisions

301 Discovery and early exploration, 1825-1861

302 Territorial period and early statehood, 1861-1900

303 Modern period, 1900-

979.31-979.359 Geographic divisions

31 Eastern region

312 Lake Mead National Recreational Area

313 Clark County

314 Lincoln County

315 White Pine County

316 Elko County

Including Humboldt River

33 Central region

332 Eureka County

333 Lander County

334 Nye County

Including Yucca Flats, Frenchman Flat

335 Esmeralda County

35 Western region

351 Mineral County

352 Churchill County

353 Pershing County

354 Humboldt County

Including Black Rock Desert

355 Washoe County

356 Storey County

357 Ormsby County

Including Carson City, Lake Tahoe in Nevada

358 Lyon County

359 Douglas County

979.4 California

979.401–979.405 Period divisions

401 Discovery and early exploration, 1542–1769

402 Spanish period, 1769–1822

403 Mexican period, 1822–1848

404 Territorial period and early statehood, 1848–1900

405 Modern period 1900–

979.41–979.499 Geographic divisions

41 Northwestern counties

Including comprehensive works on northern California Coast Ranges in California

411 Del Norte County

412 Humboldt County

414 Trinity County

415 Mendocino County

417 Lake County

418 Sonoma County

419 Napa County

42 Northeastern counties

Including Cascade Range in California

421 Siskiyou County

Including Lava Beds National Monument, Klamath Mountains

423 Modoc County

Including Goose Lake

424 Shasta County

Including Lassen Volcanic National Park

426 Lassen County

979 427 Tehama County

429 Plumas County

43 North central counties

431 Glenn County

432 Butte County

433 Colusa County

434 Sutter County

435 Yuba County

436 Sierra County

437 Nevada County

438 Placer County

Including Lake Tahoe

44 East central counties

Including comprehensive works on central California Sierra Nevada

441 El Dorado County

442 Amador County

443 Alpine County

444 Calaveras County

445 Tuolumne County

446 Mariposa County

447 Yosemite National Park

448 Mono County

45 Central counties

Including Sacramento River and Valley, comprehensive works on the Great Valley (Central Valley)

451 Yolo County

452 Solano County

453 Sacramento County

454 Sacramento

979.455 San Joaquin County

456 Stockton

457 Stanislaus County

458 Merced County

46 West central counties

Including San Francisco Bay area Farallon Islands

461 San Francisco County

Including San Francisco metropolitan area

462 Marin County

463 Contra Costa County

465 Alameda County

466 Oakland

467 Berkeley

469 San Mateo County

47 Southern Coast Range counties

471 Santa Cruz County

473 Santa Clara County

474 San José

475 San Benito County

476 Monterey County

Including Salinas River

478 San Luis Obispo County

Including Santa Lucia Range

48 South central counties

Including San Joaquin River and Valley

481 Madera County

482 Fresno County

Including Kings Canyon National Park

483 Fresno

485 Kings County

486 Tulare County

Including Sequoia National Park Mount Whitney

979 487 Inyo County

Including Death Valley National Monument Owens Valley Inyo Mountains Panamint Valley and Range

488 Kern County

Including Tehachapi Mountains Kern River

49 Southern counties (Southern California)

491 Santa Barbara County

Including San Miguel Santa Rosa Santa Cruz, Santa Barbara Islands

492 Ventura County

Including Anacapa San Nicolas Islands

493 Los Angeles County

Including Santa Catalina and San Clemente Islands San Gabriel Mountains

494 Los Angeles metropolitan area

495 San Bernardino County

Including Mojave Desert San Bernardino Mountains

496 Orange County

Including Santa Ana Mountains

497 Riverside County

Including Joshua Tree National Monument

498 San Diego County

499 Imperial County

Including Salton Sea Imperial Valley Colorado Desert

5 **Oregon**

Including Old Oregon Territory Pacific Northwest

---

979 501–979 504 Period divisions

501 Discovery and early exploration 1543–1778

502 Spanish and British periods 1778–1819

503 Preterritorial and territorial periods 1819–1859

504 Statehood 1859–

979.6 Idaho

---

979 601–979 603 Period divisions

601 Discovery and early exploration, 1805–1863

602 Territorial period, 1863–1890

603 Statehood, 1890–

---

979 61–979 698 Geographic divisions

61 Southern Idaho

Including Snake River, Snake River Plains region

62 Southwestern counties

621 Owyhee County

623 Canyon County

624 Payette County

625 Washington County

626 Adams County

Including Seven Devils Mountains

627 Gem County

628 Ada County

628 1 Boise

629 Elmore County

Including Arrow Rock Reservoir, Sawtooth Range

63 South central counties

Including former Alturas County

631 Camas County

632 Blaine County

Including former Alta and Logan Counties Craters of the Moon National Monument, Pioneer Mountains

633 Minidoka County

634 Lincoln County

635 Jerome County

636 Gooding County

979.637 Twin Falls County

Including falls of Snake River, e.g., Salmon, Auger, Shoshone, Twin Falls

.639 Cassia County

Including Goose Creek Mountains Lake Walcott

64 Southeastern counties

Including southern mountain region

641 Oneida County

642 Franklin County

644 Bear Lake County

Including Wasatch Range in Idaho

645 Caribou County

Including Preuss Range, Aspen Ridge

647 Bannock County

Including Bannock Range

649 Power County

Including American Falls Reservoir

65 Northeastern counties

651 Bingham County

653 Bonneville County

Including Caribou Range, Grays Lake

654 Teton County

655 Madison County

656 Fremont County

657 Clark County

Including Birch Creek Valley

658 Jefferson County

659 Butte County

979 66 Central Idaho

Including Bitterroot Range in Idaho

67 Southeast central counties

Including Sawtooth Mountains

672 Custer County

Including Lost River Range

674 Boise County

676 Valley County

678 Lemhi County

Including Salmon River Mountains Lemhi Range Yellowjacket Mountains Beaverhead Mountains

68 North central counties

Including northern mountain region

682 Idaho County

Including Salmon River, Clearwater Mountains

684 Lewis County

685 Nez Perce County

Including Clearwater River

686 Latah County

688 Clearwater County

69 Northern Idaho

Including Panhandle region

691 Shoshone County

Including Coeur d Alene Mountains

693 Benewah County

694 Kootenai County

696 Bonner County

Including Cabinet Mountains in Idaho

698 Boundary County

979 7 **Washington**

979 701–979 704 Period divisions

701 Discovery and early exploration, 1592–1818

702 British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853

703 Territorial period, 1853–1889

704 Statehood, 1889–

979 71–979 799 Geographic divisions

71 Eastern Washington

72 Northeastern counties

Including Northeastern Highlands region

721 Pend Oreille County

723 Stevens County

Including Franklin D Roosevelt Lake

725 Ferry County

Including Kettle River Range

728 Okanogan County

Including Sawtooth Ridge

73 East central counties

Including Columbia Plateau region Columbia River

731 Douglas County

Including Grand Coulee Valley

732 Grant County

733 Franklin County

734 Adams County

735 Lincoln County

737 Spokane County

739 Whitman County

Including Palouse River

979 74 Southeastern counties

Including Snake River in Washington

.742 Asotin County

.744 Garfield County

.746 Columbia County

Including Blue Mountains region in Washington

.748 Walla Walla County

.75 Central counties

Including Cascade Mountains region

.751 Benton County

.753 Klickitat County

.755 Yakima County

Including Yakima Ridge, Yakima River and Valley

.757 Kittitas County

Including Wenatchee Mountains

.759 Chelan County

Including Entiat Range, Chelan Mountains, Wenatchee River and Valley

.76 Western Washington

.77 Puget Sound counties

Including Puget Sound, Puget Sound lowland region

.771 Snohomish County

.772 Skagit County

Including Fidalgo, Guemes, Cypress Islands, Rosario Strait

.773 Whatcom County

Including Lummi Island, Ruby Reservoir, Bellingham Bay

.774 San Juan County

Including San Juan, Orcas, Lopez Islands, Washington Sound, Haro Strait

.775 Island County

Including Whidbey and Camano Islands

.776 Kitsap County

Including Bainbridge Island, Hood Canal

979.777 King County
Including Vason Island

.778 Pierce County
Including Mount Rainier National Park

.779 Thurston County

.779 1 Olympia

.78 Southwest central counties
Including Columbia Cowlitz Basin

.782 Lewis County
Including Cowlitz River

.784 Skamania County

.786 Clark County
Called Vancouver County 1845–1849

.788 Cowlitz County

.79 Coastal counties
Including Coast Range coastal lowland regions

.791 Wahkiakum County

.792 Pacific County

.794 Olympic Peninsula
Including Olympic Mountains

.795 Grays Harbor County
Called Chehalis County 1854–1915

.797 Mason County
Called Sawamish County 1854–1864

.798 Jefferson County
Including Olympic National Park

.799 Clallam County
Including Juan de Fuca Strait

979.8 Alaska

979.801–979.804 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration 1741–1799

.802 Russian period, 1799–1867

.803 Preterritorial period, 1867–1912

Including discovery of gold settlement of boundary disputes

.804 Territorial period, 1912–1958

.805 Statehood 1958–

979.82–979.87 Geographic divisions

.82 Southeastern region

Coastal Range area between Dixon Entrance and Icy Bay

Including Alexander Archipelago Sitka Juneau Ketchikan

.83 South central region

Pacific Coast area from Icy Bay to Cook Inlet inland to Alaska Range

Including Alaska Range Mount McKinley National Park Kenai Peninsula Cook Inlet Matanuska Valley Wrangell and Chugach Mountains Anchorage Cordova

.84 Southwestern region

Area from Cook Inlet to Norton Sound

Including Kodiak Island Alaska Peninsula Mount Katmai Valley of Ten Thousand Smokes Aleutian Islands Bristol Bay Kuskokwim Mountains Nunivak Island Pribilof Islands Saint Lawrence Island Norton Sound

.86 Central Plateau region

Area from Alaska Range to Brooks Range

Including Seward Peninsula Nome Kotzebue Sound Yukon River and Valley, Fairbanks Tanana River

.87 Arctic Slope region (Polar region)

Area between Brooks Range and Arctic Ocean

Including Brooks Range Point Barrow Colville River

980 South America

Including comprehensive works on Latin America Spanish America the Andes

---

980 01–980 03 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1806

Including discovery exploration colonization

02 Wars of Independence, 1806–1830

03 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1–.6 Indians of South America

Divide like 970 1–970 6 e g South American Indian tribes 980 3, divide 980 4 like 981–989

For a specific ancient Indian civilization, see the subject e g, Inca civilization 985 01

981 Brazil

---

981 01–981 06 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1534

Including discovery, conquest

02 Hereditary captaincies, 1534–1549

03 Colonial period, 1549–1822

04 Empire, 1822–1889

For Paraguayan War 1865–1870 see 989 205

05 First republic, 1889–1930

06 20th century, 1930–

---

981 1–981.7 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern states

Acre, Amazonas Para, Amapá, *Rio Branco*

Including Amazon River

981.2 **Northeastern states**

Including Maranhão, Piauí

.3 Easternmost northeastern states

Ceará, Rio Grande do Norte, Paraíba, Pernambuco, Alagoas, Fernando de Noronha

.4 **Eastern states**

Including Sergipe, Bahia

.5 Southernmost eastern states

Minas Gerais, Espírito Santo, Rio de Janeiro (state), Federal District, Rio de Janeiro (city)

.6 **Southern states**

São Paulo, Paraná, Santa Catarina, Rio Grande do Sul

Including Paraná River in Brazil

.7 **Central west states**

Goias, Mato Grosso, Rondônia (called until 1956 Guaporé)

982 Argentina

982.01–982.06 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1516

02 Discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810

03 Revolutionary period, 1810–1829

Including Wars of Independence, 1810–1817

04 Republic, 1829–1861

05 Constitutional period, 1861–1910

For Paraguayan War, 1865–1870, see 989.205

06 20th century, 1910–

982.1–982.7 Geographic divisions

.1 **Río de la Plata region**

Buenos Aires (province and federal capital), La Pampa

Including Río de la Plata

For Uruguayan shore of Río de la Plata, see 989.51

982.2 **Mesopotamian region**

Santa Fe, Entre Ríos, Corrientes, Misiones

Including Paraná River, Uruguay River

.3 **Northeast region**

Chaco, Formosa

Including comprehensive works on Gran Chaco

For Chaco Boreal, see 989.22

.4 **Northwest region**

Salta, Jujuy, Catamarca, La Rioja, Tucumán

.5 **Central region**

Córdoba, Santiago del Estero

.6 **Central Highland region**

San Juan, Mendoza, San Luis

.7 **Patagonian region**

Neuquén, Río Negro, Chubut, Comodoro Rivadavia (military zone), Santa Cruz, Tierra del Fuego

Including comprehensive works on Tierra del Fuego

For Chilean islands of Tierra del Fuego, see 983 6

983 Chile

983 01–983 064 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1535

02 Discovery and conquest, 1535–1560

03 Colonial period, 1560–1810

04 Republic, 1810–1830

05 Autocratic republic, 1830–1861

06 Later republics, 1861–

061 Liberal republic, 1861–1891

Including war with Spain, comprehensive works on War of the Pacific, 1879–1883

For participation in War of the Pacific by a specific country, see the country, e g , by Bolivia 984 045

062 Revolution of 1891 [*formerly* *983 07]

983.063 Democratic republic 1891–1924 [*formerly* *983.08]

064 Republic 1924– [*formerly* *983.09]

[*07] Revolution of 1891

Class in 983.062

[*08] Democratic republic 1891–1924

Class in 983.063

[*09] Contemporary Chile 1924–

Class in 983.064

983.1–983.6 Geographic divisions

1 **Desert region**

Tarapacá Antofagasta Atacama

2 **Northern region**

Coquimbo Aconcagua Valparaiso

3 **Central region**

Santiago O'Higgins Colchagua Curicó Talca Maule Linares Ñuble Concepción

4 **Frontier region**

Arauco Bio-Bio Malleco Cautín

5 **Southern region**

Valdivia Osorno Llanquihue Chiloé

6 **Austral region**

Aysen Magallanes

Including Strait of Magellan

For comprehensive works on Tierra del Fuego see 982.7

984 Bolivia

984.01–984.05 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1532

02 Discovery and conquest 1532–1559

03 Colonial period 1559–1809

984 04 Republic, 1809–1899

041 War of Independence, 1809–1825

042 First republic, 1825–1831

044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839

Including confederation with Peru 1835–1836

045 Period of boundary wars 1839–1883

Including War of the Pacific 1879–1883

For comprehensive works on War of the Pacific see 983 061

046 Conservative republic, 1883–1899

05 20th century, 1899–

984 1–984 4 Geographic divisions

.1 **Mountain region**

La Paz Oruro Potosi

Including Lake Titicaca

2 **Valley region**

Cochabamba Chuquisaca Tarija

3 **Plain region Santa Cruz**

4 **Amazon region**

Beni Pando

985 Peru

985 01–985 063 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1519

Including Inca Empire

02 Discovery and conquest 1519–1555

03 Colonial period 1555–1808

04 Independence 1808–1824

05 Rise of military power, 1824–1867

Including confederation with Bolivia 1835–1836

985 06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1867–

061 1867–1883

Including War of the Pacific 1879–1883

For comprehensive works on War of the Pacific see 983 061

062 Reconstruction, 1883–1895 [*formerly* *985 07]

063 20th century, 1895– [*formerly* *985 08]

[*07] Reconstruction, 1883–1895

Class in 985 062

[*08] 20th century, 1895–

Class in 985 063

---

985 1–985 4 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern departments

Tumbes Piura Lambayeque Libertad Cajamarca

.2 Central departments

Lima Ancash Ica Junin Pasco Huanuco Huancavelica Ayacucho Apurimac

.3 Southern departments

Arequipa Moquegua Tacna Cuzco Puno

Including Lake Titicaca in Peru

.4 Eastern departments

Loreto, Amazonas San Martin Madre de Dios

986 **Colombia, Panama, Ecuador**

.1 Colombia

---

986 101–986 106 3 Period divisions

101 Early history to 1550

Including pre Hispanic period discovery conquest

102 Colonial period 1550–1810

103 Independence 1810–1819

104 Republic of Colombia 1819–1830

105 New Granada 1831–1863

Including Granadine Confederation 1858–1863

986 106 Later republics 1863–

106 1 United States of Colombia 1863–1886

106 2 Republic of Colombia 1886–1930 [*formerly* *986 107]

106 3 Later 20th century 1930– [*formerly* *986 108]

[*107] Republic of Colombia 1886–1930

Class in 986 106 2

[*108] Later 20th century 1930–

Class in 986 106 3

---

986 11 986 18 Geographic divisions

11 Atlantic Coast region

Bolivar Atlántico Magdalena Guajira

12 Northwestern region

Antioquia Norte de Santander Santander Chocó

13 North central region

Including Caldas Tolima Boyacá Arauca Vichada

14 Cundinamarca

Including Bogotá

15 South central region

Cauca Valle del Cauca Huila Meta

16 Southern region

Including Nariño Putumayo Caquetá Vaupés

17 Amazonas

18 San Andrés y Providencia

2 Panama

201 Early history to 1550

Including pre Columbian period discovery conquest

202 Colonial period 1550–1821

203 19th century 1821 1903

204 Independence 1903–1904

205 Republic 1904–

21 Panama (city)

986.3 **Panama Canal Zone**

.6 **Ecuador**

986.601–986.607 Period divisions

601 Early history to 1561

Including discovery, conquest

602 Colonial period, 1562–1809

603 Independence, 1810–1822

604 Quito Presidency as part of Greater Colombia, 1822–1830

605 Republic, 1830–1859

606 Restoration, 1860–1895

607 20th century, 1896–

986.61–986.65 Geographic divisions

61 Northern interior provinces

Bolivar, Carchi, Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, Imbabura, Pichincha, Tungurahua

62 Southern interior provinces

Azuay, Cañar, Loja

63 Coastal provinces

Esmeraldas, Guayas, Manabí, El Oro

Including Los Rios

64 Eastern provinces

Santiago-Zamora, Napo-Pastaza

65 Galápagos Islands

987 **Venezuela**

Including Orinoco River

987.01–987.063 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1498

02 Discovery and conquest, 1498–1528

987 03 Colonial period 1528–1806

04 Independence, 1806–1819

05 Venezuela as part of Greater Colombia 1819–1830

06 Later 19th and 20th centuries 1830–

061 Republic 1830–1864

062 Federal period 1864–1900 [*formerly* *987 07]

063 20th century, 1900– [*formerly* *987 08]

[*07] Federal period 1864–1900

Class in 987 062

[*08] 20th century, 1900–

Class in 987 063

---

987 1–987 71 Geographic divisions

1 **Western region**

Merida Trujillo Táchira

2 **Northwestern region**

Zulia Falcon Lara Yaracuy

Including Lake Maracaibo

3 **Central region**

Aragua Carabobo Miranda

4 **Lake region**

Apure Barinas Portuguesa Cojedes Guarico

5 **Eastern region**

Anzoátegui Sucre Nueva Esparta Monagas

6 **Guiana region**

Bolivar Territoria Delta Amacuro Amazonas

7 **Federal District**

71 Caracas

988 **Guiana**

1 **British Guiana**

2 **French Guiana**

3 **Dutch Guiana (Surinam)**

990 Pacific Ocean islands

Including Oceania, comprehensive works on islands of the world

For a specific island or group of islands not provided for here, see the subject, e g, Saint Helena 997.12, Madagascar 969 1, Galápagos Islands 986 65

991 Indonesia

Formerly Dutch (Netherlands) East Indies, republic formed, 1945, of Sunda Islands, Moluccas, numerous small islands

Including comprehensive works on Malay Archipelago (Malaysia), on Southwest Pacific

Class works on a specific part of Indonesia with the part, e g, Java 992 2, if preferred, class all specific parts of Indonesia in 991

For a specific part of the Malay Archipelago, of the Southwest Pacific, see the part, e g, Philippine Islands 991 4, Dutch New Guinea, 995 1, comprehensive works on Malay Peninsula and Malay Archipelago, 959 5

---

991 01–991 03 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1596

Including Hindu period, arrival of Portuguese, 1511, of Dutch, 1596

.02 Dutch colony, 1596–1945

Including wars with Portuguese and English, British rule, 1811–1816, Dutch colonial period, 1816–1942, Java War, 1825–1830, Japanese occupation, 1942–1945

03 Republic, 1945–

Including war with Dutch, 1945–1949, separate state, 1950–

991.1–991.3 Geographic divisions

For Sunda Islands, see 992

.1 Borneo

Including Indonesian Borneo

15 North Borneo, Sarawak, Brunei

British possessions and protectorate

.2 Celebes

.3 Moluccas (Spice Islands)

991 4 Philippine Islands

991 401–991 404 Period divisions

401 Early history to 1564

Including discovery 1521

402 Spanish period *1564–1898*

Including struggles with Portuguese and Dutch English rule 1762–1763

403 American period 1898–1946

Including Commonwealth 1935–1942 Japanese occupation 1942–1945

404 Republic, 1946–

991 41–991 49 Geographic divisions

41 **Luzon**

Including Manila Quezon City

43 **Mindoro**

44 **Palawan**

45 **Visayan Islands**

Including Bohol Cebu Masbate Leyte Negros Panay Samar

47 **Mindanao**

49 **Other islands**

Including Sulu Archipelago former sultanate ceded to Philippines *1940*

992 Sunda Islands

Part of Indonesia

Class comprehensive works on Indonesia in 991 if preferred use 991 also for specific parts of Indonesia

For Borneo see 991 1 *Celebes* 991 2

1 **Sumatra**

2 **Java**

Including Jakarta (Batavia) Madura

992 3 **Lesser Sunda Islands**

Including Bali Flores Lombok

4 Timor

Including Portuguese Timor colony (eastern half)

[*.5] Andaman and Nicobar Islands

Class in 954 88

993 New Zealand and Melanesia

1 **New Zealand**

Including comprehensive works on Australasia

For a specific part of Australasia see the part e g, Australia 994

---

993 101–993 103 Period divisions

101 Early history to 1840

Including early Maori civilization

102 Colonial period, 1840–1907

Including Maori wars 1843–1847, 1860–1870

103 Dominion status, 1907–

---

993 11–993 157 5 Geographic divisions

11 Outlying islands

Including Chatham Pitt Auckland Antipodes Islands

For a specific island dependency of New Zealand see the subject e g Cook Islands 996.23

12 North Island

122 Auckland province

Including Auckland city North Auckland land district

123 Taranaki province

125 Hawke's Bay province

Including Gisborne land district

127 Wellington province

Including Wellington city

993.15 South Island (Middle Island) and Stewart Island

Including Nelson province

.152 Marlborough province

.154 Westland province

.155 Canterbury province

Including Christchurch

.157 Otago province

Including Dunedin, Southland land district

.157 5 Stewart Island

.2 Melanesia

Comprehensive works

For Louisiade Archipelago, D'Entrecasteaux Islands, see 995 3, *Fiji Islands,* 996 11

.25 New Caledonia

Overseas territory of French Union, 1946–

Including Isle of Pines, Huon Islands, Chesterfield Islands, Walpole Island, Belep Islands, Wallis and Futuna Islands

.3 Loyalty Islands

Dependency of New Caledonia

4 New Hebrides

Anglo French condominium establisht, 1906

5 Solomon Islands

British protectorate

Including Bougainville and Buka (governed separately by Australia as mandated territory), Santa Cruz, New Georgia, Shortland, Guadalcanal, Malaita, San Cristobal, Santa Isabel, Choiseul

For comprehensive works on Territory of New Guinea, see 995 5

6 Bismarck Archipelago

Part of Territory of New Guinea under Australian trusteeship, 1947–

Including New Britain, New Ireland

For comprehensive works on Territory of New Guinea, see 995 5

7 Admiralty Islands

994 Australia

994.01–994.05 Period divisions

01 Early history to 1788

02 Settlement and early growth, 1788–1851

Including penal settlements

03 Colonial administration 1851–1901

Including discovery of gold 1851

04 Commonwealth, 1901–

Including period 1923–1945 [*formerly* †*994.05], comprehensive works on 20th century [*formerly* †994.05]

05 Later 20th century, 1945–

Class period 1923–1945 [*formerly* †*994.05] comprehensive works on 20th century [*formerly* †994.05] in 994.04

994.1–994.8 Geographic divisions

.1 Western Australia

Including Perth

.2 South Australia

Including Adelaide

.29 Northern Territory

Including Port Darwin, Arnhem Land

.3 Queensland

Including Brisbane Great Barrier Reef, Gulf of Carpentaria

.4 New South Wales

Including Sydney Murray River

For Australian Capital Territory see 994.7, Lord Howe Island 994.8

.5 Victoria

Including Phillip Island [*formerly* †994.8], Melbourne

.6 Tasmania

Including Hobart

994.7 **Australian Capital Territory**

Including Canberra

.8 **Outlying islands**

Including Lord Howe Island (dependency of New South Wales), Norfolk Island

Class Phillip Island [*formerly* 994 8] in 994 5

For Australian New Guinea, see 995 3, Territory of New Guinea 995 5

995 New Guinea (Papua)

.1 **Dutch (Netherlands) New Guinea**

.3 **Australian New Guinea (Territory of Papua)**

Including Port Moresby, Louisiade Archipelago D'Entrecasteaux Islands, comprehensive works on western New Guinea

For Territory of New Guinea, see 995 5

.5 **Territory of New Guinea**

Comprehensive works on northeastern New Guinea, Bismarck Archipelago, Buka and Bougainville in the Solomons, governed by Australia under United Nations trusteeship

For Bismarck Archipelago, see 993 6, Buka and Bougainville, 993 5

996 Polynesia

Comprehensive works

Including Central Pacific

For a specific island or group of islands of Polynesia, see the subject, e g , Ellice Islands 996 81, Micronesia, 996 5, Melanesia, 993 2

.1 **Islands of South Pacific**

Comprehensive works

For a specific island or group of islands of South Pacific, see the subject, e g , Society Islands 996 21, comprehensive works on Southwest Pacific, 991, Micronesia, 996 5, Melanesia, 993 2

11 Fiji Islands

Melanesian islands, ceded by native chiefs to Great Britain, 1874

For comprehensive works on Melanesia, see 993 2

996 12 Tonga (Friendly Islands)

British protectorate

.13 Samoa

Including American Samoa (Navigators' Islands)

For Western Samoa, see 996 14

.14 Western Samoa

Former German possession under United Nations trusteeship to New Zealand

.15 Tokelau (Union Islands)

Administered by Western Samoa as part of New Zealand trusteeship

.18 Isolated islands of South Pacific [*formerly* †997, *997.2]

Including Easter Island, Pitcairn and adjacent Henderson, Ducie, Oeno Islands

.2 French Oceania

.21 Society Islands

.211 Tahiti

22 Tubuai (Austral) Islands

Including Rapa Island, Gambier Islands

23 Cook Islands

Annext to New Zealand, 1901

24 Manihiki Islands

Under New Zealand Cook Islands administration

.3 Marquesas Islands

Acquired by France, 1842

.32 Tuamotu Islands (Low Archipelago)

Annext by France, 1881

.4 Line (Equatorial) Islands

Including Christmas, Fanning, Washington Islands [*all formerly* *996 81], administered by British colony of Gilbert and Ellice Islands, Flint, Vostok, Caroline (Thornton), Starbuck, Malden Islands Jarvis Island, claimed by both United States and Great Britain

For Palmyra Island, see 996 932

996.5 Micronesia

Including Wake Island [*formerly* *997 2] United States Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

6 Caroline Islands

Including Palau Truk Yap

7 Marianas (Ladrone) Islands

Including Guam (United States possession) Saipan Tinian

8 *Marshall Islands*

Including Bikini Eniwetok Kwajalein

81 Gilbert and Ellice Islands

Including Makin Tarawa comprehensive works on British colony of Gilbert and Ellice Islands (Gilbert Islands Ellice Islands Ocean Island Fanning Island Washington Island Christmas Island Phoenix Islands) Canton and Enderbury Islands claimed by both *United States and Great Britain*

Class Christmas Fanning Washington Islands [*formerly* *996 81] in 996 4

85 Nauru (Pleasant Island) [*formerly* *997 2]

Under United Nations trusteeship administered by Australia

9 Hawaiian Islands (Territory of Hawaii)

---

996 902–996 903 Period divisions

902 Native rule and republic to 1898

903 United States period 1898–

Annext 1898 territory 1900–

---

996 91–996 99 Geographic divisions

91 Hawaii County (Island of Hawaii)

Including Hilo Mauna Loa Mauna Kea

92 Maui County

921 Maui Island

922 Kahoolawe Island